temenos

# Journey Manager

DOCUMENTATION

VERSION 23.04

Information in this document is subject to change without notice. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, for any purpose, without the express written permission of TEMENOS HEADQUARTERS SA. © 2021 Temenos Headquarters SA - all rights reserved.

# TOC


**Welcome to the Temenos Journey Manager documentation!** ..... **72**

Main Navigation ..... 72

Product Menu ..... 73

Table of Contents ..... 73

Action icons ..... 73

Anchor links ..... 73

Quick links ..... 73

Search ..... 74

Filter options ..... 75

Google Search ..... 75

API technical docs ..... 75

Topics, versions and badges ..... 75

Topics ..... 75

Versions ..... 75

Badges ..... 76

Feedback ..... 76

What's Next ..... 76

**Temenos Journey Manager Overview** ..... **77**

AWS Cloud Deployment ..... 80

Azure Cloud Deployment ..... 80

Products ..... 81

**Cloud-hosted Temenos Journey Manager VDC Editions** ..... **83**

**Multi-tenancy Support** ..... **87**

**Introduction to Organizations** ..... **89**

**Journey Executive Reading Path** ..... **91**

**Journey Starter Reading Path** ..... **94**

**Journey Manager Overview** ..... **98**

**Journey Maestro Overview** ..... **102**

**Journey Exchange Overview** ..... **106**

**Contacting the Exchange Team** ..... **108**

**Exchange Package Architecture** ..... **109**

**Exchange Development Schedule** ..... **110**

**Exchange Partnerships** ..... **111**

**Exchange Developer Resources** ..... **112**

**Journey Workspaces Overview** ..... **113**

What is Workspaces? ..... 113

Who is Workspaces for? ..... 114

Getting Started ..... 114

Configuration ..... 114

Browser Support ..... 114

What's new? ..... 115

**Journey Analytics Overview** ..... **122**

Analytics Views ..... 123

Journey Analytics User Interface ..... 124

Terminology ..... 124

Transaction Status ..... 124

Strict No PII Policy ..... 124

Architecture ..... 125

Setup and User Administration ..... 126

Journey Analytics Open UX Support ..... 126
**Retail DAO Overview** ..... **127**
Application Flow ..... 127
Audience ..... 128
Areas of Value ..... 128
Prerequisites ..... 129
What Remains to Be Done ..... 129
**Adobe Reader PDF Form** ..... **130**
Adobe Reader Not Found ..... 130
Adobe Reader Update Required ..... 131
Adobe Reader JavaScript is Disabled ..... 131
For more information on particular browsers, see: ..... 131
**Unsupported Browsers** ..... **133**
Google Chrome ..... 133
To disable Chrome plugins ..... 133
Microsoft Edge ..... 134
**View PDF Documents in Chrome** ..... **135**
Chrome Troubleshooting ..... 136
Check for updates for Chrome, Adobe Reader and Acrobat ..... 137
Check your Adobe Reader and Acrobat settings ..... 137
Repair your Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat installation ..... 137
Uninstall either Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat installation ..... 137
Windows ..... 137
Mac ..... 138
Uninstall and Reinstall Adobe Reader or Acrobat ..... 138

**View PDF Documents in Firefox** ..... **139**

Using the built-in PDF viewer ..... 139

Using a PDF reader plugin ..... 139

If plugin is not working ..... 140

Testing the Adobe Reader Plugin ..... 141

If PDF files are downloaded instead of displayed, try these solutions ..... 141

**View PDF Documents in IE 8 and IE 9** ..... **142**

Using an Add-on to view PDF documents within an IE8 browser window ..... 142

1. Make sure that the system meets the requirements for the Acrobat product you use. ..... 143

2. Check your IE add-on ..... 143

3. Make sure that the ActiveX folder contains files required for web browsing. ..... 145

4. Use a supported version of the browser. ..... 145

5. How to turn on and off add-ons ..... 145

6. To delete Active X controls ..... 146

**View PDF Documents in IE 10** ..... **147**

Using the built-in PDF viewer ..... 147

Check your Browser Settings ..... 147

Still having Issues? Try these steps ..... 148

Method 1: Disable Add-Ons ..... 148

Method 2: Reset security settings for Internet Explorer ..... 149

Method 3: Run the Internet explorer performance troubleshooter and check if it helps. ..... 149

Method 4: Reset Internet Explorer 10 ..... 149

Method 5: uninstall the Adobe Acrobat Reader and install the latest version. ..... 150

**View PDF Documents in Safari** ..... **151**

System requirements ..... 151

Configuring Acrobat to display PDF files in Safari ..... 152

Troubleshooting issues in Safari ..... 152

Known Issues ..... 152

Reader's Preferences > Internet > Display PDF in Browser is always dimmed ..... 152

Uninstalling an older version of Acrobat or Reader after Acrobat X or Reader X has been installed removes the AdobePDFViewer plug-in ..... 153

Older versions of the AdobePDFViewer plugin can overwrite newer versions of the plug-in ..... 153

**View PDF Documents in Windows 8** ..... **154**

Using Acrobat Reader to be the Default PDF viewer ..... 154

**TransactField App Overview** ..... **156**

**Getting Started with TransactField App** ..... **159**

Installation ..... 159

Configuration ..... 160

Log in ..... 162

Self-registration ..... 162

Credentials provided to you ..... 163

Use your existing organizational credentials ..... 163

**How to Use TransactField App** ..... **165**

Synchronizing ..... 166

Disconnected ..... 167

WI-FI ..... 167

Navigating around TransactField App ..... 167

**Forms in TransactField App** ..... **172**
Types of Forms ..... 172
Widgets ..... 172
Fill out a Form ..... 173
**Task List in TransactField App** ..... **176**
Using the Task List ..... 176
**Use a Build-in Camera in TransactField App** ..... **180**
Barcodes ..... 180
Supported Formats ..... 182
UPC-A and UPC-E ..... 182
Code 93 ..... 183
Codabar ..... 183
Data Matrix ..... 183
EAN-8 and EAN-13 ..... 184
Code 128 ..... 184
RSS-14 ..... 184
Aztec ..... 185
Code 39 ..... 185
ITF ..... 185
RSS Expanded ..... 186
PDF 417 ..... 186
QR Code ..... 186
**View Form History in TransactField App** ..... **188**
Using the History folder ..... 188
Viewing Options ..... 188

**Multiple Languages in TransactField App** ..... **190**

**TransactField App Security** ..... **193**

Accessing Security ..... 193

Form Security ..... 193

**Configure TransactField App** ..... **195**

Client Settings ..... 195

System Settings ..... 198

Disable the Standard Submit or Attachment Button ..... 202

**Configure Form Tiles** ..... **204**

Extract a Customer Email from Form Data to Display it in a Task List ..... 204

Configure the form XML data extracts in Journey Manager: ..... 204

Configuing the field for TransactField App ..... 204

Synchronize the Device with Manager ..... 205

Extract a Date Field and Format it ..... 205

Customize a Title of a Tile ..... 206

Hide Default Fields ..... 207

Configure the History Screen Tiles Differently to the Task List and Saved Form Tiles ..... 207

Reference ..... 207

Supported Views ..... 208

Template Values ..... 208

Special date value handling ..... 208

**Composer User Guide** ..... **211**

**Getting Started in Composer** ..... **212**

Login Page ..... 212

Welcome Page ..... 212
Recent Forms ..... 213
Actions ..... 213
Product Information ..... 214
News ..... 214
Home Menu Choices ..... 215
Workspace ..... 215
Access Control ..... 215
System ..... 215
Top of Page Links ..... 215
Options ..... 215
Feedback ..... 218
Online Documentation ..... 218
Logout ..... 218
**Accessibility for Composer Developers ..... 219**
Checklist: ..... 219
1 Use sequential page navigation ..... 220
2. Use section headers ..... 220
3. Mark-up lists ..... 221
4. Add alternate text to images ..... 222
5. Do not use background images ..... 223
6. Use fieldsets ..... 223
7. Use caption placement top ..... 224
8. Use described by ..... 225
9. Check color contrast ..... 226

10. Do not use placeholder text ..... 226
11. Do not replace field captions with text ..... 227
12. Do not disable anything ..... 227
**The Composer Workspace** ..... **229**
The Hierarchy and Environment ..... 229
Workspace Hierarchy ..... 229
Merits of this Structure ..... 230
The Composer Hierarchy ..... 230
Accounts ..... 230
Organizations ..... 230
Projects ..... 232
Creating a Form ..... 233
**Composer Form Revisions** ..... **235**
Manage Revisions Functionality ..... 235
Accessing the Form Revision Dialog ..... 235
Menu ..... 235
Manage Form Revisions Dialog ..... 236
Form Revision Options ..... 237
Create ..... 237
Make Active ..... 238
Delete ..... 239
Rename ..... 240
View XML ..... 240
Read-Only Option ..... 241
Creating a Revision at Form Publish ..... 243

**Form Designer** ..... **245**
The Wireframe View ..... 245
Structure and Preview ..... 245
Dragging and Dropping on the wireframe. ..... 246
Widget Palette ..... 246
Overview of Widgets ..... 246
Organization of the Palette ..... 246
Assistants ..... 246
Field Types ..... 246
Favorites ..... 247
How to Use Widgets to Create Fields on Forms ..... 247
Widget Types ..... 247
Simple Widgets ..... 247
Blocks ..... 248
Sections ..... 248
For More on Widgets ..... 248
Structure Panel ..... 248
Standard Mode ..... 248
Showing the relationship between the Structure Panel and the Wireframe ..... 249
Advanced Mode ..... 250
Standard Mode vs Advanced ..... 251
Nuts & Bolts vs Content ..... 251
Composer Framework (Advanced Mode Only) ..... 251
How to Place a New Field into the Structure ..... 251
Drag and Drop ..... 251

Shortcut for Power Users ..... 254
Menu Bar ..... 254
Layout ..... 254
**Assistants** ..... **256**
Adding Assistants to a Form ..... 256
Assistants ..... 256
Checkboxes ..... 256
Using the Checkbox Assistant ..... 257
The resultant struture ..... 258
Radio Buttons ..... 258
The "Add a Radio Button Group" wizard dialog ..... 260
The structure the "Radio Button Assistant" adds to the form ..... 260
Dynamic Data ..... 261
Sections ..... 261
The Section Assistant wizard ..... 262
Tables ..... 262
Content Blocks ..... 263
**Predefined Blocks** ..... **265**
273
**Tables & Repeats** ..... **274**
Static vs Dynamic ..... 274
Editing Table Structure ..... 278
Adding a Footer ..... 278
Repeats ..... 281
Radio Buttons ..... 281

**Templates** ..... **282**

Overview ..... 282

Out of the Box ..... 283

Creating a New Form ..... 283

Choosing and previewing templates in wireframes withint the New Form wizard. 284

Basic Navigation Types ..... 284

Standard Navigation ..... 285

Accordion Navigation ..... 285

Wizard Navigation ..... 285

strictly in sequence ..... 285

LH Lists ..... 285

menu selection ..... 285

restricted menu selection ..... 285

Combinations of the Above ..... 286

Styling ..... 286

How to Change the Template ..... 286

Right-clicking on the top of the Structure Panel tree ..... 286

Samples of Templates and Styles ..... 286

A basic template, and how choice of color or theme changes the appearance. ... 287

Same form, different color scheme ..... 288

Same form, but with a more elaborate template. Note the Preview gives a more accurate reprentation of the form's appearance. ..... 289

**Edit Properties** ..... **291**

Invoking the Edit Properties Dialog ..... 291

Structure ..... 291

Edit Properties dialog for a tab with a Left Hand menu ..... 292
Notation Convention Used ..... 293
The Filter and View Buttons ..... 294
The Properties Tab ..... 294
The Other Tabs ..... 296
Sections Blocks ..... 297
Field Layout Control ..... 298
Problems with explicit position layouts ..... 298
Layout Managers and Hints ..... 298
The Layout Panels ..... 299
Layout Constraints ..... 299
The Effect of the Different Layout Managers ..... 301
Flow — Top to Bottom ..... 301
Flow — Left to Right ..... 302
Multiple fields per line ..... 303
Horizontal Layout ..... 303
Two-column forms ..... 303
Two Column Layout ..... 304
Grid Layout ..... 304
Grid layout with 3 radio buttons respectively 100%, 60mm and 100% ..... 305
Property editor for the parent block ..... 305
Tweaking the element with "Edit Properties -> Layout -> Layout Data" ..... 306
Grid layout where each of 5 columns set to 100% (Note: the caption on the 4th column) ..... 306
Fillers, Springs and Page Breaks ..... 307

Field Styling ..... 309
Using Stylesheets ..... 309
Stylesets ..... 309
Typed Styles ..... 309
Named Styles. ..... 309
Manual Overrides ..... 310
Custom Styling ..... 312
2 sample "HTML Custom Styling" panels ..... 313
A selected text field in preview ..... 313
Field Data ..... 314
Overview ..... 314
Data properties ..... 314
Data Model ..... 314
Data Properties ..... 314
Data Panel ..... 314
Initial Field Value ..... 316
Data Format ..... 316
Data Display Format ..... 316
Data Clearing Policy ..... 316
Values ..... 316
Dropdown Data Panel ..... 316
Dropdown Data Panel (Advanced Mode) ..... 317
Decimal Options Panel ..... 317
The Data Model Tab ..... 318
Scripting ..... 319

Overview of Scripting ..... 319
The Composer Scripting Language ..... 319
The Rules Tab ..... 319
"Rule" Properties ..... 320
"Policies" ..... 320
Editable Policy ..... 320
Editable Clearing Policy ..... 321
Visibility Policy ..... 321
Validation Policy ..... 321
Messages ..... 321
Actions ..... 322
Checkboxes ..... 322
Responsive Rulesets ..... 322
The Rule Editor ..... 322
The Script Editor ..... 323
The Specification Tab ..... 325
Dependencies ..... 325
Overview ..... 325
Inspecting Triggers ..... 326
Inspecting Dependencies ..... 327
**Preview & Publishing ..... 328**
Renditions ..... 328
Publishing to TM ..... 329
**Navigation ..... 331**
The Chrome of Navigation ..... 331

The Simplest Chrome: None ..... 332
Button Navigation ..... 332
Left Hand Menus ..... 334
LH Menu Variants (Unrecommended) ..... 335
Top Menus ..... 336
2-Level Menus ..... 336
Mobile Menu Chrome ..... 337
Navigation Choices ..... 338
Unconstrained vs Constrained ..... 338
Visible vs Hidden Navigation Choices ..... 338
Validation, Errors and Navigation ..... 339
Abandonment ..... 339
Portal Chrome ..... 339
Sections ..... 340
Introduction ..... 340
Maguire Template ..... 340
Adding a Section ..... 341
The Section Assistant wizard. ..... 341
Section Levels ..... 341
Maguire's Use of Sections ..... 341
Maguire Template use of Level 2 Sections ..... 341
Wizards ..... 341
2-Level Navigation ..... 342
MaGuire template top 2-level menu ..... 343
The Navigation Menu in Composer ..... 343

Features common to all templates ..... 343
Maguire Exclusive Features ..... 344
Headers and Footers ..... 345
The Simple Approach ..... 345
The Modern Approach ..... 347
Maguire-style Navigation ..... 347
Footers ..... 348
Recolor and Hide on Print ..... 349
**Layout ..... 350**
Legacy Layouts ..... 350
Overview ..... 350
Keep it simple ..... 352
Let Composer do the work ..... 352
Use Percentages, not Fixed Width layouts ..... 352
Use Field Styling ..... 352
Checkboxes and Radio Buttons ..... 352
Units and usage tips ..... 353
Caption Top or Caption Left ..... 353
Mixing Checkboxes or Radio Buttons with Textfields on a line ..... 353
Boxy Layout ..... 354
An example of a Boxy layout ..... 354
Layout Issues ..... 356
Measurements ..... 356
Recommendations ..... 357
Devices vs Desktop ..... 357

Delivery to Mobile Devices ..... 358
Two Modes of Delivery ..... 358
Mode 1: The Web Browser ..... 358
Mode 2: Via Native App ..... 360
Which Mode is Superior? ..... 360
Responsive Layout ..... 360
Introduction ..... 360
Composer use of Thresholds ..... 361
Previewing Responsive Behavior ..... 362
Grid Layout Caveats ..... 364
Actions ..... 365
Wrap ..... 365
Wrap and fill ..... 365
Fill ..... 365
Hide ..... 365
Hide (no media support) ..... 365
Show ..... 365
In Line Validation Methods ..... 366
Tool tips ..... 366
**Submissions & Attachments ..... 367**
File Uploading ..... 367
Defining Attachments in Composer ..... 367
TM Attachment Table ..... 367
TM Attachment Rule ..... 367
TM Submission Block ..... 368

How this structure renders in preview. ....368
Resuling "Submission Attachments" page. ....369
Delivery of Attachments ....369
Email Acknowledgements ....369
Signatures ....370
"Signatures are not required at this time. After you have submitted this form, print the receipt, sign it and send it in." ....370
Wet signature form after submission. ....371
Signature Pad Widget [HTML] ....371
The signature canvas. ....371
Notes ....372
**Dynamic Data** ....**373**
Overview ....373
What is Dynamic Data? ....373
Dynamic Data in Action ....373
The Dynamic Data Assistant ....374
Standard Block ....374
Repeatable Block ....374
Table ....374
The Dynamic Data Assistant wizard dialog. ....375
Dynamic Data Assistant creates the following strutcure and wireframe. ....376
Preview of the form with fake data generated by the Dynamic Data Assistant, desktop vs narrow mobile ....377
AutoSuggest ....378
Overview ....378

Reference Data Lookup Block ..... 380
CSV Data With Headings ..... 380
Panels in "Properties -> Data" for the "Type" node (a TM Reference Data Lookup block) ..... 381
CSV Data Without Headings ..... 382
Notes on Auto Suggestion _controller Data Configuration Parameters ..... 382
"Hide Standard Address Block" in VEDA Block Widget ..... 383
Sequence Numbers ..... 384
Internet Explorer 8 Issue ..... 384
Pagination ..... 385
Adding a Page Navigation Block ..... 385
2nd page of the page navigation output (using fake data). ..... 386
**TransactField App ..... 387**
How to Publish a Form to the TransactField App ..... 388
Mobile Camera Support ..... 388
The Standard "Take Picture" Button ..... 389
Very simple form with a camera button ..... 389
The form in the Mobile App, and the effect of the "Take Picture" buitton ..... 390
Suppressing the Attach and Submit Tabs ..... 391
Restricting Attachment File Types in the App ..... 392
**Multi-channel ..... 394**
Overview ..... 394
Authenticated Users ..... 394
With the Maguire Template ..... 394
With Other Templates ..... 394

The Task List ..... 395
TransactField App ..... 396
Anonymous Users ..... 396
**Form Sharing** ..... **398**
Overview ..... 398
Minimum Prerequisites for Form Sharing ..... 399
User Authentication Settings ..... 399
Simple Case using Prefabricated Blocks ..... 400
Why Hide the Sharing Block? ..... 405
Sharing in Collaborations ..... 405
**Composer Form Parts** ..... **406**
Overview ..... 406
Setting Up a Form Parts Project ..... 407
Creating Master Forms and Part-Forms ..... 409
Creating Parts within the Part Forms ..... 410
Combining the Parts to Create a Master Form ..... 413
Opaque and Transparent Parts ..... 415
Parts and Versioning ..... 417
Cross-part rules ..... 418
Simple - All Cross-part Rules in the Master Form ..... 418
Normal - Each Part References Other Parts it Requires. ..... 418
Advanced - Model/View/Controller ..... 420
**Usability & Accessibility** ..... **424**
General Statement ..... 424
FAQs ..... 425

Question: 425
Short Answer: 425
Long answer: 425
Tab Order 426
**Privacy 427**
General Overview 427
Privacy Concerns with Hidden Fields 427
Clear Hidden Data on Submit 427
Overriding 428
Clear Data when Hidden 428
When to Clear Data 428
**Validation 430**
Overview 430
Fixed Length 430
Regular Expression 430
Validation Script 431
Icon in Script Editor to access Composer classes listing 432
Validation and Hidden fields 432
Validation Messages 432
Validation settings for a text field 433
Resultant Validation messages on the Desktop 433
In Line Validation 434
Inline Validation Settings 434
Some of the important form-wide HTML Inline Validation options 434
Inline Validation Example 434

Wireframe of form used to demonstrate Inline Validation ..... 435
Desktop Inline Validation Method [HTML] ..... 435
None, Desktop ..... 435
Inline Validation: Desktop, None ..... 436
Per Field Block, Desktop ..... 436
Inline Validation: Desktop, Per Field Block ..... 437
Per Field, Desktop ..... 438
Inline Validation: Desktop, Per Field ..... 438
Per Section, Desktop ..... 439
Inline Validation: Desktop, Per Section ..... 439
Mobile Inline Validation Method [HTML] ..... 439
None, Mobile ..... 440
Mobile: Inline Validation method = None ..... 440
Per Field Block, Mobile ..... 441
Per Field, Mobile ..... 442
Per Section, Mobile ..... 443
**Analytics** ..... **444**
Overview ..... 444
Composer's Role in Analytics ..... 444
Background Saving ..... 444
The Cancel Button in Maguire Forms ..... 445
The Abandon Widget in non-Maguire Forms ..... 447
Scoring ..... 449
**Field Types** ..... **452**
Rich Text Fields ..... 452

Rich Text Editor ..... 452
Tag Reference ..... 455
Character tags ..... 455
Radio Buttons ..... 457
Creating Radio Button Groups Manually ..... 458
Mandatory Radio Buttons ..... 458
Calculating or Using the value of a Radio Button Group ..... 458
Dropdown Menus ..... 458
Display Values ..... 458
Values ..... 459
Cascading Dropdowns ..... 461
The Cascading Dropdown Manager predefined block dialog, with the XML pasted into the data textbox. "Save" creates the structure shown. ..... 462
The dialog for creating the "model" level cascading dropdown list. ..... 463
The final structure on the form. ..... 463
Preview of the cascading dropdowns. ..... 464
Prefilled Dropdown Lists ..... 464
Prefilled Dropdown Lists from Repeatable Areas ..... 465
**Repeats ..... 466**
Overview ..... 466
**Advanced Scripting ..... 468**
JavaScript in Composer ..... 468
Syntax ..... 468
"Me" Instead of "This" ..... 468
Other Departures from Standard JavaScript ..... 469

Classes and Functions ..... 469
Syntax Checking ..... 469
Composer Framework ..... 470
The JavaScript Libraries ..... 470
The Public API ..... 470
Documentation ..... 470
Calls ..... 471
Using JavaScript's Built-in Functions ..... 471
Parameters ..... 472
In the Script Editor ..... 472
Edit Parameter Data ..... 472
Parameter Types ..... 473
Node Reference ..... 474
Obtaining the Fullpath ..... 474
Obtaining the UID ..... 474
Data Types ..... 474
Overview ..... 474
JavaScript Types ..... 475
String ..... 475
Number ..... 475
Boolean ..... 475
Undefined ..... 475
Null ..... 475
Raw Data ..... 476
Conversions ..... 476

Explicit Conversions ..... 476
Implicit Conversion ..... 477
Comparisons ..... 477
Dates ..... 478
Date Formats and Patterns ..... 478
Recommendation for Dates ..... 479
Advanced Date Output Formats ..... 480
Regular Expressions ..... 482
Overview ..... 482
RegEx References ..... 482
How to Use Regular Expressions ..... 482
g ..... 482
i ..... 482
m ..... 483
Using Property Formulae ..... 483
Overview ..... 483
$BUILD ..... 483
$CHAR ..... 484
$DATA ..... 484
$ENCODE ..... 484
$FIELD ..... 485
$FIND ..... 486
$FLOAT ..... 487
$FORM ..... 487
$GENERATION ..... 487

$IF ..... 488
$INFO ..... 488
$LIST ..... 488
$LOCALE ..... 488
$LOOKUP ..... 489
$MATH ..... 489
$RULE ..... 490
$SEQUENCE ..... 490
$STRING ..... 490
$TEST ..... 490
**Optimizing Performance** ..... **492**
Overview ..... 492
Form Generation ..... 492
Form Rendering ..... 493
Speeding up Generation and Rendering ..... 493
Optimization Strategies ..... 494
Tuning Dependencies ..... 494
Inspecting Dependencies ..... 494
My Rule Dependencies ..... 494
Triggered Rules ..... 495
Dynamic vs Static Dependencies ..... 496
Trigger Conditions ..... 499
Trigger at Initialization ..... 501
Phase Changes ..... 501
Additional Events ..... 503

Caveats ..... 503

**Business Rules** ..... **504**

GeneralPurpose ..... 504

Error ..... 504

Warnings ..... 504

General Purpose ..... 505

Configuration Settings ..... 505

Visibility Rule ..... 505

Visibility Policy ..... 505

Additional Event LIsteners ..... 505

Business Rule Trigger ..... 505

The Relationship Between Nominated Widgets and the Rule ..... 505

The default ..... 505

Rule fires on change of any observed widget; as a result, the rule could fire many times and make the form laggy ..... 506

Rule fires less and only on a nominated form event or events; results in a more responsive form. ..... 507

Standard Composer Events ..... 507

Error ..... 508

Focus Field Target ..... 508

Clearing Policies ..... 508

Displaying Errors ..... 508

Warning ..... 509

Mandatory Checkbox Block ..... 509

Mandatory Block ..... 509

**Library Advanced Features** ..... **511**
Overview ..... 511
Composer Account Administration ..... 512
How Libraries Relate to Organizations and Projects ..... 512
Inheritance ..... 512
Visibility ..... 512
Ordinary Libraries at the Account Level ..... 512
Compatibility Libraries ..... 513
The Organization's Internal Library ..... 513
Search Path Inclusion at Organization Level ..... 513
Templates ..... 513
Visibility Summary ..... 514
Inheritance ..... 516
The Cascade ..... 516
Search Path Order ..... 516
Custom Types ..... 518
Localization Keys ..... 518
Non-editable ..... 518
Editable ..... 518
Style Packs ..... 522
Inheritance Within Forms ..... 523
Overview ..... 523
Widget Hierarchy ..... 523
Inheritance in blocks ..... 523
Starter Content ..... 524

Resources ..... 524
Custom CSS ..... 525
Custom JavaScript Libraries ..... 525
Templates ..... 526
Overview ..... 526
Stylesheet Modification ..... 527
Location of the Stylesheet Modifications ..... 527
Scope of Stylesheet Modifications ..... 527
Editing the Elected Stylesheets ..... 527
Template Editor ..... 527
Style Options tab ..... 528
Editing the XML Source of the Template ..... 529
Localization ..... 529
Overview ..... 529
Activating Localization ..... 530
Switching Template ..... 530
Activating a Template ..... 531
Setting Target Locales ..... 531
Generating Keys ..... 532
Generating the Properties File ..... 533
Use Source Language Values ..... 533
Use Google Translate Values ..... 533
Use Blank Values ..... 533
Save Non-form Properties to Global Properties File ..... 533
Deployment Options ..... 534

**Stylesheets** ..... **535**
Overview ..... 535
Typed Styles ..... 535
Named Styles ..... 536
Stylesheet Categories ..... 537
Editing Stylesheets ..... 537
Customizing Stylesheets ..... 539
**Form Designer Advanced Features** ..... **541**
Overview ..... 541
Bulk Editor ..... 542
Property Sets ..... 542
Artifacts Tab ..... 543
Data Model Tab ..... 544
XML Source Tab ..... 545
Localization Tab ..... 545
**Attachment Fields Overview** ..... **546**
Finding the Attachment Field in the Palette ..... 546
Configuring the Attachment Field ..... 547
Initial Config Options ..... 547
Basic Mode Config Options ..... 547
Advanced Mode Config Options ..... 549
Testing in Preview Mode ..... 549
The User Experience ..... 550
Interacting with the Attachment Field ..... 550
Drag and drop support ..... 550

Read-Only Behavior ..... 551
Exposing Attachments in Review & Approval Style Collaboration Jobs ..... 551
Support Notes ..... 551
**Obtain Form Details** ..... **552**
**Restore the Environment** ..... **555**
**Add Google Tag Manager to a Composer Form** ..... **558**
Import the Container into Google Tag Manager ..... 560
Configure Manager to Enable Analytics ..... 562
Enable Analytics for each Form ..... 563
Additional Forms Pages ..... 564
Configure Google Tag Manager ..... 565
Further Information ..... 567
Navigate and Locate Items in GTM ..... 567
General Functional Overview ..... 567
In-form Page Views ..... 567
Other Page Views ..... 568
**Composer Account Administration** ..... **570**
Aim of this Guide ..... 570
**The Workspace** ..... **571**
**Creating New Organizations** ..... **573**
**Creating New Projects** ..... **576**
**Creating & Importing Libraries** ..... **578**
**Export Options** ..... **580**
Inspecting an Organization's Libraries ..... 581
**Maintaining Libraries** ..... **582**

Sharing Libraries with Accounts ..... 582
Assigning Libraries to organizations from the Workspace ..... 582
Assigning and Maintaining Stylesheets ..... 583
Maintaining Custom Types ..... 586
Maintaining Templates ..... 588
Assigning Libraries ..... 591
**Maintaining Property Sets ..... 592**
**Publishing & Impact Analysis ..... 594**
Publish Targets ..... 595
Impact Analysis ..... 595
**Creating Users ..... 597**
Client Tier Users ..... 597
System Tier Users ..... 598
**Creating Roles ..... 599**
**Allocating Users ..... 607**
**Creating New Accounts ..... 609**
**Deployment Properties Setting ..... 610**
Display Important Information on the Composer Login Page ..... 610
**Maintaining Help, News, and Tips ..... 612**
**Organization Management ..... 614**
**Release Management ..... 616**
**Viewing the Logs ..... 618**
**Managed Datapacks ..... 620**
Background and strategic fit ..... 620
Features of using Managed Datapacks ..... 620

User interaction and design ..... 621
**Managed Support for BizPacks ..... 623**
Initial Allocation of Bizpack Support ..... 623
Importing the Bundled Packs ..... 623
Gaining Access to the BizPack Libraries ..... 623
Removing Access to the BizPack Datapacks ..... 624
Deprecated Widgets ..... 624
The Composer Palette ..... 625
**Managed Support for Maguire ..... 626**
**Composer Ant Support v4.5.0 ..... 627**
Requirements ..... 627
Setting up your Ant build file ..... 627
Composer Ant Tasks ..... 628
sfc-export-account ..... 628
Task Parameters ..... 629
Example ..... 629
sfc-export-org ..... 629
Task Parameters ..... 629
Example ..... 630
sfc-form-spec ..... 630
Task Parameters ..... 630
Examples ..... 631
sfc-import ..... 631
Task Parameters ..... 631
Example ..... 632

sfc-publish ..... 632
Task Parameters ..... 632
Example ..... 633
sfc-server ..... 633
Task Parameters ..... 633
Example ..... 634
**Composer On-premise Upgrade Guide (for major release)** ..... **635**
Upgrade Steps ..... 636
Follow up Actions ..... 637
1) Updating the Service Pack(s) (Not required for major releases) ..... 637
2) Adding Maguire Packs ..... 637
3) Activating Bizpacks ..... 638
4) Setting the current release ..... 639
5) Clients not on the latest release ..... 641
Rollback ..... 641
Upgrading from an older version ..... 641
Steps to upgrade ..... 642
**Composer On-premise Upgrade Guide (service pack release only)** ..... **643**
1) Updating the Service Pack(s) ..... 643
2) Adding Maguire Packs ..... 643
3) Setting the current release ..... 644
**Composer Attachment Definitions** ..... **646**
Transaction Manager ..... 646
Pros ..... 646
Composer Form ..... 646

TM Attachment Rule ..... 646
Pros ..... 647
Cons ..... 647
TM Attachment Table ..... 647
**Composer Attachment Restrictions ..... 648**
Transaction Manager - Document Types ..... 648
**Composer Attachment Time ..... 650**
**Composer Attachments in Repeats ..... 651**
**Transact for Salesforce App ..... 652**
User Interface Design ..... 653
Styling ..... 654
Navigation ..... 654
Information Architecture ..... 655
Integration Approach ..... 656
UI ..... 656
API ..... 656
Authentication / Identity Management ..... 657
Data Security ..... 657
Data Access Controls ..... 657
Off-Platform Data Storage ..... 658
Salesforce Organization Impacts ..... 658
Licensing ..... 658
Data Storage Requirements ..... 659
API Usage Volumes ..... 659
Batch Processing ..... 660

Reporting ..... 660
**Integrate Salesforce with Manager ..... 661**
Install the Transact for Salesforce App ..... 661
Create the API User Account in Salesforce ..... 662
Create the Manager Connected App in Salesforce ..... 663
Configure Permitted Users for the Connected App ..... 664
Create the API Named Credential in Salesforce ..... 664
Information required by the Journey Manager Team ..... 665
**Enable Access to the Transact for Salesforce App ..... 667**
**Manage User Licenses ..... 668**
**Retrieve the Consumer Key and Secret for the Salesforce App ..... 669**
**Retrieve the Security Token for the Salesforce User Account ..... 670**
**Remove Password Expiry on a Salesforce User Account ..... 671**
Creating a 'Password Never Expires' Permission Set ..... 671
Adding the 'Password Never Expires' Permission Set to a User Account ..... 671
**Configure the Transact for Salesforce App UI in Salesforce ..... 673**
Create the Visualforce Page ..... 673
Visualforce Markup Attributes ..... 674
Add the Visualforce page to the Page Layout ..... 676
**Configure Transact for Salesforce App ..... 677**
Create the API User Account in Manager ..... 677
Configure the Salesforce API Client Details ..... 678
Import the Manager Extension Packages ..... 678
Configure the Salesforce User Space ..... 679
Configure the Security Manager ..... 679

Configure the Delivery Service and Delivery Channel ..... 680
**Make Forms Available for Salesforce Users ..... 681**
**Group Forms Using Form Categories ..... 682**
**Configure Salesforce Delivery Channel ..... 683**
Completed Transaction Delivery ..... 683
Abandoned Transaction Delivery ..... 683
Saved Transaction Delivery ..... 683
**Configure a Prefill Generator in Salesforce ..... 684**
Create the Prefill Generator Record ..... 684
Managing Form Versions ..... 685
JSON Configuration Format ..... 685
Supported Parameters ..... 686
Object Type Definition ..... 686
Dealing with Complex Types ..... 687
The includeFields Directive (Required) ..... 687
The includeRelated Directive (Optional) ..... 687
The includeCustom Directive (Optional) ..... 688
XML Prefill Data Generation ..... 688
Custom Prefill Generators ..... 691
**Populate a Form with Salesforce Prefill Data ..... 692**
**Configure a Delivery Processor in Salesforce ..... 693**
Create the Delivery Processor Record ..... 693
JSON Configuration Format ..... 694
Object Type Definition ..... 697
The matchFields Directive (Optional) ..... 698

The insertFields Directive (Required) ..... 699
The updateFields Directive (Required) ..... 699
The sourceFields Directive (Required) ..... 699
The relations Directive (Optional) ..... 700
XML Consumption ..... 701
Custom Delivery Processors ..... 701
**Restrict Access for Selected Forms to User Groups ..... 704**
Create the Form Group ..... 704
Add Users to the Form Group ..... 704
Assign Forms to the Form Group ..... 704
**Enable Access to Restricted Forms ..... 706**
**Receive Administrator Alerts when Delivery Processing Fails ..... 707**
**Transact for Salesforce App Troubleshooting ..... 708**
Content cannot be displayed: You do not have sufficient privileges to access the page: /apex/Avoka_Transact_Lead ..... 708
Problem ..... 708
Solution ..... 708
Reference ..... 709
Could not identify SObject type <X> ..... 709
Problem ..... 709
Solution ..... 709
Delivery Error: No such column 'avoka__Delivery_Trigger_Type__c' on sobject of type avoka__Transact_Delivery__c ..... 709
Problem ..... 709
Solution ..... 711

Delivery Error: The requested resource does not exist ..... 711
Problem ..... 711
Solution ..... 712
Delivery Processing Error: Field <X> on <Y> is not CREATEABLE by <Z> ..... 712
Problem ..... 712
Solution ..... 712
Insufficient Privileges: You do not have the level of access necessary to perform the operation you requested... ..... 712
Problem ..... 712
Solution ..... 713
Missing "Reset My Security Token" Option ..... 713
Problem ..... 713
Solution ..... 714
Post Request: 403 Forbidden - You don't have permission to access /manager/secure/GroovyServiceServlet on this server ..... 714
Problem ..... 714
Solution ..... 714
Salesforce API Authentication Failure (Invalid Grant) ..... 714
Problem ..... 714
Solution ..... 715
Sorry, you are not licensed to use the Transact solution ..... 715
Problem ..... 715
Solution ..... 715
**Transact for Salesforce App Installation ..... 717**
Service Definition Import Options ..... 718

Security Manager Import Options ..... 718
**Installation Assets Version 1.4 ..... 720**
New Features ..... 720
Issues Resolved ..... 720
Installation Assets ..... 720
**Installation Assets Version 1.5 ..... 721**
New Features ..... 721
Issues Resolved ..... 722
Installation Assets ..... 722
**Installation Assets Version 1.6 ..... 723**
New Features ..... 723
Issues Resolved ..... 723
Installation Assets ..... 723
**Installation Assets Version 1.8 ..... 724**
New Features ..... 724
Issues Resolved ..... 724
Installation Assets ..... 724
**Installation Assets Version 1.10 ..... 725**
New Features ..... 725
Issues Resolved ..... 725
Installation Assets ..... 725
**Installation Assets Version 1.11 ..... 727**
New Features ..... 727
Issues Resolved ..... 727
Installation Assets ..... 727

**Transact Integration Gateway Overview** ..... **728**
Overview ..... 728
Usage and Deployment Models ..... 729
Delivery Integration ..... 729
Service API Gateway ..... 730
Gateway Security ..... 732
Reference Data Integration ..... 732
**Transact Integration Gateway Setup** ..... **734**
Prerequisites ..... 734
Transact Client SDK ..... 734
Installation ..... 735
Configuration ..... 735
Delivery Config ..... 736
Proxy Config ..... 738
Services Config ..... 740
Gateway Services Config ..... 742
Scheduler Config ..... 743
Storage Config ..... 744
**Transact Integration Gateway Development** ..... **746**
Groovy Development ..... 746
Security Restrictions ..... 746
Script Development ..... 746
Delivery Service Script ..... 747
Gateway Service Script ..... 750
Scheduled Service Script ..... 751

Adding JAR Libraries ..... 752
Logging ..... 753
**Transact Manager Previous Releases ..... 755**
**Transact Fluent SDK Overview ..... 756**
**Benefits of Using Groovy in Journey Manager ..... 758**
**Fluent Groovy Services vs Groovy Services ..... 762**
Fluent Groovy Service ..... 762
Groovy Service ..... 764
Configuration Example ..... 766
**Fluent API REST Service ..... 767**
Requests ..... 767
Responses ..... 769
Security ..... 770
Class Names ..... 770
**About Temenos Journey Manager Releases ..... 774**
Major Release ..... 774
Maintenance Release ..... 774
Release Notes Sitemap ..... 774
What's New ..... 775
**What's New in 23.04 ..... 776**
Journey Maestro ..... 776
Journey Manager ..... 777
Exchange ..... 777
Journey Analytics ..... 778
Journey Workspaces ..... 779

**What's New in 22.10** ..... **781**
Journey Maestro ..... 781
Journey Manager ..... 781
Exchange ..... 782
Journey Analytics ..... 783
Journey Workspaces ..... 783
**What's New in 22.04** ..... **785**
Journey Maestro New Features ..... 785
Journey Manager New Features ..... 785
Exchange New Features ..... 787
Journey Analytics New Features ..... 787
Journey Workspaces New Features ..... 787
**What's New in 21.11** ..... **789**
Journey Maestro New Features ..... 789
Journey Manager New Features ..... 789
Journey Analytics New Features ..... 790
Journey Workspaces New Features ..... 790
**What's New in 21.05** ..... **792**
Journey Maestro New Features ..... 792
Journey Manager New Features ..... 792
**What's New in 20.11** ..... **793**
Journey Maestro New Features ..... 793
Journey Manager New Features ..... 793
SpringboardSmall Business (SMB) New Features ..... 793
**What's New in 20.05** ..... **795**

Journey Maestro New Features ..... 795
Journey Manager v20.05 New Features ..... 795
Journey Analytics New Features ..... 796
Journey Workspaces New Features ..... 796
Exchange New Features ..... 796
Springboard v3.0.0 New Features ..... 797
**What's New in 19.11 ..... 798**
Journey Maestro New Features ..... 798
Journey Manager New Features ..... 798
Journey Analytics New Features ..... 799
Journey Workspaces New Features ..... 799
Exchange v19.11 New Features ..... 799
**Journey Manager Features ..... 801**
Main Features ..... 801
Features by Release ..... 802
23.04 ..... 802
22.10 ..... 803
22.04 ..... 804
21.11 ..... 804
21.05 ..... 805
20.11 ..... 806
20.05 ..... 806
19.11 ..... 807
19.05 ..... 808
18.11 ..... 808

18.05 ..... 810
17.10 ..... 810
5.1 ..... 811
5.0 ..... 813
4.3 ..... 813
**Maestro Features** ..... **815**
Main Features ..... 815
Features by Release ..... 815
23.04 ..... 816
22.10 ..... 816
22.04 ..... 816
21.11 ..... 817
21.05 ..... 817
20.11 ..... 818
20.05 ..... 818
19.11 ..... 819
19.05 ..... 819
18.11 ..... 819
**Journey Analytics Features** ..... **821**
Main Features ..... 821
Features by Release ..... 821
23.04 ..... 822
22.10 ..... 822
22.04 ..... 823
21.11 ..... 823

21.05 ..... 824
20.05 ..... 825
19.11 ..... 825
19.05 ..... 826
18.11 ..... 826
**Journey Workspaces Features** ..... **828**
Main Features ..... 828
Features by Release ..... 828
Journey Workspaces 23.04 ..... 828
Journey Workspaces 22.10 ..... 829
Journey Workspaces 22.04 ..... 830
Journey Workspaces 21.11 ..... 831
Journey Workspaces 20.05 ..... 832
Journey Workspaces 19.11 ..... 833
Journey Workspaces 19.05 ..... 833
Journey Workspaces 18.11 ..... 834
**Temenos Journey Manager Features Compatibility** ..... **836**
Manager ..... 836
Maestro ..... 837
Composer ..... 837
**Product Suite Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures** ..... **839**
**Product Suite Accessibility** ..... **840**
Accessibility Criteria ..... 841
Maestro Forms ..... 842
Springboard Applications ..... 842

Documentation ..... 842
**Temenos Journey Manager for Developers ..... 843**
Journey Maestro Design Environment ..... 844
Open UX Environment ..... 845
Integration ..... 846
Native Integration ..... 846
3rd Party Integration ..... 846
**Software Development Technologies ..... 847**
AngularJS ..... 847
JavaScript ..... 848
LESS ..... 848
HTML5 ..... 848
JSON ..... 849
CSS ..... 849
CSV ..... 849
XML ..... 850
**Migrate to Jakarta EE ..... 851**
Upgrade SDK Project ..... 851
Search and Replace Manually ..... 852
Use Eclipse Transformer Tool ..... 852
Upgrade Services and Security Managers ..... 853
**Temenos Journey Manager Integration ..... 855**
Integration Areas ..... 855
Transactions Discovery ..... 856
Data Pre-population ..... 856

Data Entry Streamlining ..... 857
Execution ..... 858
Save and Resume ..... 858
Delivery ..... 858
Authenticated and Unauthenticated Transactions ..... 859
Extension Points ..... 861
Calling External Services and API ..... 865
Web Site Integration and Single Signon ..... 866
Form Level Integration ..... 867
**Five Temenos Journey Manager Integration Areas ..... 868**
Delivery ..... 868
Form Discovery ..... 872
3 Pre-Population - Accelerating Data Entry ..... 873
Streamlining Data Entry ..... 873
Execution ..... 875
The Economics of Integration ..... 877
Why do we do integration? ..... 878
Assess the Value of Integration ..... 878
Consider Deferring Integration ..... 878
Consider Leveraging Existing Paper/image-based Processes ..... 879
Hidden Costs of Process Re-engineering ..... 879
**Temenos Transact Core Banking Integration ..... 881**
**Google Analytics Virtual Page Integration ..... 882**
**DocuSign Integration ..... 884**
Configure OAuth Authentication in a DocuSign Account ..... 884

Configure a DocuSign service connection ..... 885
Grant one-time Consent to a DocuSign API User ..... 885
**Continuous Integration Overview** ..... **886**
Continuous Integration Workflow ..... 889
**CI Version Control Systems** ..... **890**
**CI Servers** ..... **892**
**CI Build Systems** ..... **893**
**CI Dependency Management Systems** ..... **895**
**CI Application Packages** ..... **896**
Main JSON ..... 897
app-package-def.json ..... 897
Delivery Channels JSON ..... 898
delivery/rest-service-delivery-def.json ..... 898
Forms JSON ..... 898
forms/CCA-MAESTRO-AP/cca-maestro-form-def.json ..... 898
forms/CCA-MAESTRO-AP/locale-de.json ..... 902
Properties ..... 902
properties/property-def.json ..... 902
Service Connections ..... 903
connections/connection-def.json ..... 903
Services ..... 904
services/helloworld/service-def.json ..... 904
services/helloworld/HelloWorld.groovy ..... 905
**Journey SDK Maven Plugin** ..... **907**
Requirements ..... 907

Setup ..... 907
Examples ..... 908
Development Tips ..... 908
Passing arguments ..... 908
Running unit tests ..... 909
**Support Hub** ..... **911**
Support ..... 911
Support Portal Links ..... 911
Policies ..... 912
Resources ..... 912
System Requirement ..... 912
Legacy System Requirements ..... 912
**Journey Manager Support Handbook** ..... **914**
Support definitions ..... 914
Standard Platform Support ..... 914
Definition ..... 914
Examples ..... 914
Out of Scope ..... 914
Development Assistance ..... 915
Severity level definitions ..... 915
Severity 1Critical ..... 915
Severity 2 Urgent ..... 915
Severity 3 High ..... 916
Severity 4 Medium ..... 916
Severity 5 Low ..... 916

Contact Support ..... 916
Support Centers ..... 916
Business Hours ..... 916
Temenos Support Portal ..... 917
Client contact username and password ..... 917
Raise an Idea ..... 917
Raise a Support Request/Incident ..... 918
Issue Description Examples ..... 920
View existing support tickets ..... 920
What does the ticket status mean? ..... 921
Escalating a support ticket ..... 922
How do I escalate the visibility of a support ticket? ..... 922
What happens after an escalation request is made? ..... 922
New Product Releases ..... 922
Major Release ..... 922
Maintenance Release ..... 923
Release Notes Sitemap ..... 923
End-of-Life Policy ..... 923
Deprecation Schedule ..... 923
More information ..... 923
Temenos Journey Manager resources website ..... 923
**Temenos Journey Manager End-of-Life Policy ..... 925**
Feature and Maintenance Releases ..... 926
Release Notes ..... 926
Feature Lists ..... 926

End-of-Life Schedules ..... 926
Journey Manager ..... 926
Supported releases ..... 926
Unsupported (EOL) releases ..... 927
Journey Maestro ..... 927
Supported releases ..... 927
Unsupported (EOL) releases ..... 928
Journey Workspaces ..... 928
Supported releases ..... 928
Unsupported (EOL) releases ..... 928
Journey Maestro Support for End-of-Life AngularJS Releases ..... 928
Transact Composer ..... 929
Unsupported (EOL) versions ..... 929
TransactField App ..... 930
Unsupported (EOL) versions ..... 930
**Temenos Journey Manager Deprecation Schedule ..... 931**
**Reset Support Portal Password ..... 933**
**Changes to Our Product Names ..... 935**
Name Changes from the original Knowledge Base ..... 935
**Temenos Journey Manager System Requirements ..... 937**
Legacy ..... 937
**Journey Manager System Requirements ..... 938**
Cloud ..... 938
On Premise ..... 939
Browser ..... 939

Operating Systems ..... 939
Databases ..... 939
JDK ..... 940
Hardware ..... 940
**Journey Maestro System Requirements ..... 942**
Cloud ..... 942
Browser ..... 942
Recommended Hardware ..... 942
**Web browser support for Journey Maestro forms ..... 943**
Supported web browsers ..... 943
Desktop browsers ..... 943
Mobile browsers ..... 943
Legacy web browsers and devices ..... 944
Internet Explorer ..... 944
Microsoft Windows Phone ..... 945
**Journey Manager Certification Matrix ..... 946**
Operating Systems ..... 946
Databases ..... 947
JDK ..... 947
**Transact Composer Requirements ..... 949**
Cloud ..... 949
Adobe Flash ..... 949
Browser ..... 949
Recommended Hardware ..... 950
**Transact Integration Gateway System Requirements ..... 951**

Certified Operating Systems ..... 951
Recommended Hardware ..... 951
**TransactField App System Requirements** ..... **952**
**Legacy Browsers Requirements** ..... **953**
**Journey Platform Persona Overview** ..... **955**
Implementation Team ..... 955
Business as Usual (BAU) Team ..... 956
**Maestro Form Builder** ..... **958**
Prerequisite Skill set of a Form Builder ..... 958
Objectives and Goals of a Form Builder ..... 959
**Journey Solution Architect** ..... **960**
Example tasks of a Journey Solution Architect include: ..... 960
Prerequisite Skillset of a Solution Architect ..... 960
Objectives and Goals of a Solution Architect ..... 961
**Journey Platform Developer** ..... **962**
Example tasks of a Platform Developer include: ..... 962
Prerequisite Skillset of a Platform Developer ..... 963
Objectives and Goals of a Platform Developer ..... 963
**Maestro Template Designer** ..... **965**
Prerequisite Skill set of a Template Designer ..... 966
Objectives and Goals of a Template Designer ..... 966
**Journey Application Tester** ..... **967**
Example tasks of a JourneyApplication Tester include: ..... 967
Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey Application Tester ..... 967
Objectives and Goals of a Journey Application Tester ..... 968

**Journey Analytics User** ..... **969**

Prerequisite Skillset of Journey Analytics ..... 969

Objectives and Goals of Journey Analytics ..... 969

**Journey Implementation/Project Manager** ..... **970**

Example tasks of a Journey Implementation/Project Manager include: ..... 970

Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey Implementation/Project Manager ..... 970

Objectives and Goals of a Journey Implementation/Project Manager ..... 971

**Journey Champion/System Owner** ..... **972**

Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey Champion/System Owner ..... 972

Objectives and Goals of a Journey Champion/System Owner ..... 972

**Journey System Administrator** ..... **973**

Example tasks of a Journey System Administrator include: ..... 973

Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey System Administrator ..... 973

Objectives and Goals of a Journey System Administrator ..... 973

**Journey System Manager/DevOps** ..... **974**

Example tasks of a Journey System Manager/DevOps include: ..... 974

Prerequisite Skillset of a System Manager/DevOps ..... 974

Objectives and Goals of a System Manager/DevOps ..... 974

**Journey Support Team** ..... **975**

Example tasks of a Journey Support Team include: ..... 975

Prerequisite Skillset of the Support Team ..... 975

Objectives and Goals of a Support Team ..... 976

**Instructor-Led Training and eLearning overview** ..... **977**

**Instructor-Led Training ILT** ..... **978**

**eLearning** ..... **979**

Available eLearning Courses ..... 979
**eLearning Exercises** ..... **980**
Version 5.1 ..... 980
Version 17.10 ..... 980
**Help** ..... **981**
**Learning Center Help Guide** ..... **982**
New consolidated Journey Platform resources website ..... 982
Access the online courses at the new website - journey.temenos.com ..... 982
Access the online courses at the original location - learning.avoka.com ..... 982
Navigate through the Temenos Learning Center ..... 985
Home page and menu bar ..... 985
Status icon ..... 985
Course name ..... 985
Launch video ..... 985
**eLearning Exercises for Maestro v17.10** ..... **987**
Pre-requisite ..... 987
987
eLearning Exercises for Maestro v17.10 ..... 987
Whats new? ..... 987
Help ..... 988
**Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro v17.10 Exercise Files** ..... **989**
Step 1: Download the Exercise Project ..... 989
Step 2: Navigate to the Maestro Organization ..... 989
Step 3: Import Project ..... 990
Step 4: Set the Default Initial Version and Default Template ..... 990

**Assign an Entity to Multiple Items Exercise v17.10** ..... **992**
Step 1: Add a new Section and Components ..... 992
Step 2: Assign an Entity to multiple items ..... 992
Extra Help ..... 993
**Create an Entity in the ID Field Exercise v17.10** ..... **994**
Step 1: Create a Form ..... 994
Step 2: Create an Entity ..... 994
Step 3: Assign an Entity ..... 995
Step 4: Create a nested Entity ..... 995
Extra Help ..... 996
**Create an Entity in the Entity Panel Exercise v17.10** ..... **997**
Step 1: Create an Entity ..... 997
Step 2: Create a nested Entity ..... 997
Extra Help ..... 997
**Delete an Entity Exercise v17.10** ..... **998**
Step 1: Delete an Entity ..... 998
Extra Help ..... 998
**Duplicate IDs Exercise v17.10** ..... **999**
Step 1: Add a component with a duplicate ID and Review ..... 999
Step 2: Add a component with a duplicate ID and Accept ..... 999
Extra Help ..... 1000
**ID Management Exercise v17.10** ..... **1001**
Step 1: Create a new form ..... 1001
Step 2: Add a new Text Field component ..... 1001
Step 3: Update the Text Field component ..... 1001

Extra Help ..... 1002
**Impact Analysis Exercise v17.10 ..... 1003**
Step 1: Open the Order form ..... 1003
Step 2: Review the current references ..... 1003
Step 3: Add a new Text Field that references First Name ..... 1003
Step 4: Review the updated references ..... 1003
Extra Help ..... 1004
**Semantic Versioning Exercise v17.10 ..... 1005**
Step 1: Update the 10-develop version ..... 1005
Step 2: Create a Tagged version (based on 10-develop) ..... 1005
Step 3: Open the Tagged version ..... 1005
Step 4: Update the 10-develop version ..... 1005
Step 5: Create another Tagged version (based on 10-develop) ..... 1006
Extra Help ..... 1006
**Upgrade a Project Exercise v17.10 ..... 1007**
Step 1: Import a Legacy project ..... 1007
Step 2: Upgrade the project ..... 1007
Extra Help ..... 1008
**eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.1 ..... 1009**
Pre-requisite ..... 1009
1009
eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.1 ..... 1009
Help ..... 1010
**Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro v5.1 Exercise Files ..... 1011**
Step 1: Identify the Training Environment ..... 1011

1011

Step 2: Download the Exercise Project ..... 1011

Step 3 Import the Exercise Project ..... 1012

Result ..... 1012

Optional Step 4 Importing Legacy Projects ..... 1012

Step 5 Update Release Version ..... 1013

Extra Help ..... 1014

Importing a Project ..... 1015

**Calculation Rules Exercise v5.1** ..... **1018**

1018

Step 1Create a New Form ..... 1018

Step 2 Add Components to Page One ..... 1019

Step 3 Populate a Component Based on Entered Data ..... 1019

Step 4 Add Show if Rules ..... 1020

Step 5 Change the Clear Hidden Data Option ..... 1020

Step 6 Add an Order Details Section to the Form ..... 1021

Step 7 Add a Calculation Rule to the Item Total ..... 1021

Step 8: Add a Calculation Rule to the Sub-Total Component ..... 1022

Step 9: Add a Calculation Rule to the Total Due Component ..... 1022

Extra Help ..... 1022

Create a Show If Rule ..... 1023

Combine entered data into a component ..... 1024

Clear Hidden Data Immediately ..... 1025

Create a Mathematical Calculation Rule ..... 1025

Create a Calculation Rule for Repeated Items ..... 1026

**Compatibility Mode Exercise v5.1** ..... **1027**
Step 1: Import Compatibility Mode Project ..... 1027
Step 2: Update the Project to Maestro 5.1 ..... 1028
Extra Help ..... 1028
Import project ..... 1028
Change Release Version ..... 1029
**Create a New Form Exercise v5.1** ..... **1031**
Step 1: Create a New Form ..... 1031
Step 2: Add Components to Page One ..... 1032
Step 3: Add Components to Page Two ..... 1033
Step 4: Save the Form ..... 1035
Extra Help ..... 1035
Component Properties ..... 1035
Radio Button and Dropdown Options ..... 1036
Arrangement of Radio Button Options ..... 1038
**Creating Rules Exercise v5.1** ..... **1040**
Step 1Create a New Form ..... 1040
Step 2 Add Components to Page One ..... 1041
Step 3 Add a Rule to Billing Address ..... 1041
Step 4 Add a Rule to the Checkbox ..... 1042
Step 5 Add Components with a Mandatory If Rule ..... 1042
Extra Help ..... 1043
Create an Editable If Rule ..... 1043
Create a Change Rule ..... 1044
Create a Mandatory If Rule ..... 1045

**Creating Shared Components Exercise v5.1** ..... **1047**
Step 1Open Create Component Begin ..... 1047
Step 2 Setup a Repeating Block and Add Components ..... 1048
Step 3 Create Visibility Rule ..... 1048
Step 4 Wrap in block ..... 1049
Step 5 Create a Shared Component ..... 1050
Step 6 Edit a Shared Component ..... 1052
Step 7 Publish Updated Component ..... 1053
Extra Help ..... 1054
Using a Repeating Block Template ..... 1054
Create a Show if Rule ..... 1055
Wrap Components in a Block ..... 1057
Create Shared Component ..... 1059
**Layout Exercise v5.1** ..... **1062**
Step 1: Open the Existing Form Layout Begin. ..... 1062
Step 2: Adjust the Layout of Title, First Name and Last Name ..... 1062
Step 3: Adjust the Employment Details Components ..... 1063
Step 4: Adjust the Living Expenses Components ..... 1064
Step 5: Add a New Component to the Living Expenses Section ..... 1064
Extra Help ..... 1065
Change the layout of components ..... 1065
Change the position of components (using Offset) ..... 1066
Add a Currency Field ..... 1067
**Pages and Sections Exercise v5.1** ..... **1069**
Step 1: Create a New Version ..... 1069

Step 2: Update the Names of the Existing Pages and Sections ..... 1070
Step 3: Add a new section to the Applicant Details page ..... 1071
Step 4: Add a New Page with a Section ..... 1071
Step 5: Rearrange the Components ..... 1071
Step 6: Build the TM Form Version ..... 1072
Extra Help ..... 1073
Add a new page ..... 1073
Add a new section ..... 1074
Additional Text ..... 1074
Rearrange Components ..... 1075
**Repeating and Shared Components Exercise v5.1 ..... 1078**
Step 1 Open the Existing Form 'Repeating and Shared Components Begin' ..... 1078
Step 2 Add a New Page with Sections to Your Form ..... 1078
Step 3 Add Components to the Page ..... 1079
Step 4 Add a Shared Component ..... 1080
Extra Help ..... 1081
Add a new Page and Section ..... 1081
Using a Repeating Block Template ..... 1082
Using a Shared Component ..... 1083
**Rules without Scripting Exercise v5.1 ..... 1085**
Step 1 Open the existing form Rules without Scripting Begin. ..... 1085
Step 2 Create a Rule for Income Details ..... 1085
Step 3 Calculate the Total of the Four Expenses in the Expense Details Section 1086
Step 4 Add the Driver License Components to the Your Details Section. ..... 1086
Step 5 Create a Rule for Driver License ..... 1087

Extra Help ..... 1087
Create a Show If Rule ..... 1087
Create a Script Rule ..... 1089
Wrap Components in a Block ..... 1090
**Two Level Navigation Exercise v5.1** ..... **1093**
Step 1Open Two-Level Navigation Begin ..... 1093
Step 2 Add Page Groups to the Form ..... 1093
Step 3: Rename Pages ..... 1094
Step 4 Set Second Level Navigator to Equal Width ..... 1094
Extra Help ..... 1095
Using a Page Group ..... 1095
Set the Second Level Navigator to equal widths ..... 1096
**Validation Rules Exercise v5.1** ..... **1098**
Step 1Open Validation Rules Begin ..... 1098
Step 2 Create a Valid If Rule ..... 1098
Step 3 Create a Regular Expression Validation Rule ..... 1099
Extra Help ..... 1100
Create a Valid if rule ..... 1100
Create a Regular Expression rule ..... 1101
**eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.0** ..... **1103**
Pre-requisite ..... 1103
1103
eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.0 ..... 1103
Help ..... 1104
**Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro v5.0 Exercise Files** ..... **1105**

Step 1Identify the Training Environment ..... 1105
Step 2 Download the Exercise Project ..... 1105
Step 3 Import the Exercise Project ..... 1106
Result ..... 1106
Optional Step 4 Importing Legacy Projects ..... 1106
**Calculation Rules Exercise v5.0** ..... **1108**
1108
Step 1Create a New Form ..... 1108
Step 2 Add Components to Page One ..... 1109
Step 3 Populate a Component Based on Entered Data ..... 1109
Step 4 Add Show if Rules ..... 1110
Step 5 Change the Clear Hidden Data Option ..... 1110
Step 6 Add an Order Details Section to the Form ..... 1111
Step 7 Add a Calculation Rule to the Item Total ..... 1111
Step 8: Add a Calculation Rule to the Sub-Total Component ..... 1112
Step 9: Add a Calculation Rule to the Total Due Component ..... 1112
Extra Help ..... 1112
Create a Show If Rule ..... 1113
Combine entered data into a component ..... 1114
Clear Hidden Data Immediately ..... 1115
Create a Mathematical Calculation Rule ..... 1115
Create a Calculation Rule for Repeated Items ..... 1116
**Create a New Form Exercise v5.0** ..... **1117**
Step 1Create a New Form ..... 1117
Step 2 Add Components to Page One ..... 1118

Step 3 Add Components to Page Two ..... 1119
Step 4 Save the Form ..... 1121
Extra Help ..... 1121
Component Properties ..... 1121
Radio Button and Dropdown Options ..... 1122
Arrangement of Radio Button Options ..... 1124
**Creating Rules Exercise v5.0 ..... 1126**
Step 1Create a New Form ..... 1126
Step 2 Add Components to Page One ..... 1127
Step 3 Add a Rule to Billing Address ..... 1127
Step 4 Add a Rule to the Checkbox ..... 1128
Step 5 Add Components with a Mandatory If Rule ..... 1128
Extra Help ..... 1129
Create an Editable If Rule ..... 1129
Create a Change Rule ..... 1130
Create a Mandatory If Rule ..... 1131
**Creating Shared Components Exercise v5.0 ..... 1133**
Step 1Open Create Component Begin ..... 1133
Step 2 Setup a Repeating Block and Add Components ..... 1134
Step 3 Create Visibility Rule ..... 1134
Step 4 Wrap in block ..... 1135
Step 5 Create a Shared Component ..... 1136
Step 6 Edit a Shared Component ..... 1138
Step 7 Publish Updated Component ..... 1139
Extra Help ..... 1140

Using a Repeating Block Template ..... 1140
Create a Show if Rule ..... 1141
Wrap Components in a Block ..... 1143
Create Shared Component ..... 1145
**Layout Exercise v5.0** ..... **1148**
Step 1: Open the Existing Form Layout Begin. ..... 1148
Step 2: Adjust the Layout of Title, First Name and Last Name ..... 1148
Step 3: Adjust the Income Details Components ..... 1149
Step 4: Adjust the Expenses Details Components ..... 1150
Step 5: Add a New Component to the Expense Details Section ..... 1150
Extra Help ..... 1151
Change the layout of components ..... 1151
Change the position of components (using Offset) ..... 1151
Add a Currency Field ..... 1152
**Pages and Sections Exercise v5.0** ..... **1154**
Step 1Create a New Version ..... 1154
Step 2 Update the Names of the Existing Pages and Sections ..... 1155
Step 3 Add a new section to the Applicant Details page ..... 1156
Step 4 Add a New Page with Two Sections ..... 1156
Step 5 Rearrange the Components ..... 1157
Step 6 Publish the Form ..... 1158
Extra Help ..... 1159
Add a new page ..... 1159
Add a new section ..... 1160
Additional Text ..... 1161

Rearrange Components ..... 1161
**Repeating and Shared Components Exercise v5.0** ..... **1164**
Step 1 Open the Existing Form 'Repeating and Shared Components Begin' ..... 1164
Step 2 Add a New Page with Sections to Your Form ..... 1164
Step 3 Add Components to the Page ..... 1165
Step 4 Add a Shared Component ..... 1166
Extra Help ..... 1167
Add a new Page and Section ..... 1167
Using a Repeating Block Template ..... 1168
Using a Shared Component ..... 1169
**Rules without Scripting Exercise v5.0** ..... **1171**
Step 1 Open the existing form Rules without Scripting Begin. ..... 1171
Step 2 Create a Rule for Income Details ..... 1171
Step 3 Calculate the Total of the Four Expenses in the Expense Details Section ..... 1172
Step 4 Add the Driver License Components to the Your Details Section. ..... 1172
Step 5 Create a Rule for Driver License ..... 1173
Extra Help ..... 1173
Create a Show If Rule ..... 1173
Create a Script Rule ..... 1175
Wrap Components in a Block ..... 1176
**Two Level Navigation Exercise v5.0** ..... **1179**
Step 1 Open Two-Level Navigation Begin ..... 1179
Step 2 Add Page Groups to the Form ..... 1179
Step 3: Rename Pages ..... 1180
Step 4 Set Second Level Navigator to Equal Width ..... 1180

Extra Help ..... 1181
Using a Page Group ..... 1181
Set the Second Level Navigator to equal widths ..... 1182
**Validation Rules Exercise v5.0 ..... 1184**
Step 1Open Validation Rules Begin ..... 1184
Step 2 Create a Valid If Rule ..... 1184
Step 3 Create a Regular Expression Validation Rule ..... 1185
Extra Help ..... 1186
Create a Valid if rule ..... 1186
Create a Regular Expression rule ..... 1187
**Exercise_AssignEntityMultipleItems ..... 1189**
**Exercise_CreateEntity_EntityPanel ..... 1191**
**Exercise_CreateEntity_IDfield ..... 1193**
**Exercise_DeleteEntity ..... 1196**
**Exercise_DuplicateIDs ..... 1197**
**Exercise_IDManagement ..... 1199**
**Exercise_ImpactAnalysis ..... 1200**
**Exercise_SemanticVersioning ..... 1202**
**Exercise_UpgradeProject ..... 1205**
**Exercise - Assign an Entity to multiple items ..... 1206**
**Exercise - Create an Entity (Entity panel)_2 ..... 1208**
**Exercise - Create an Entity (ID field) ..... 1210**
**Exercise - Delete an Entity ..... 1213**
**Exercise - Duplicate IDs_3 ..... 1214**
**Exercise - ID Management_2 ..... 1216**

**Exercise - Impact Analysis_2** ..... **1217**

**Exercise - Semantic Versioning** ..... **1219**

**Exercise - Upgrade a project_2** ..... **1222**

**Glossary** ..... **1223**

# Welcome to the Temenos Journey Manager documentation!

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

Here are some tips on how to quickly and easily find the wealth of product information available on Temenos Journey Manager.

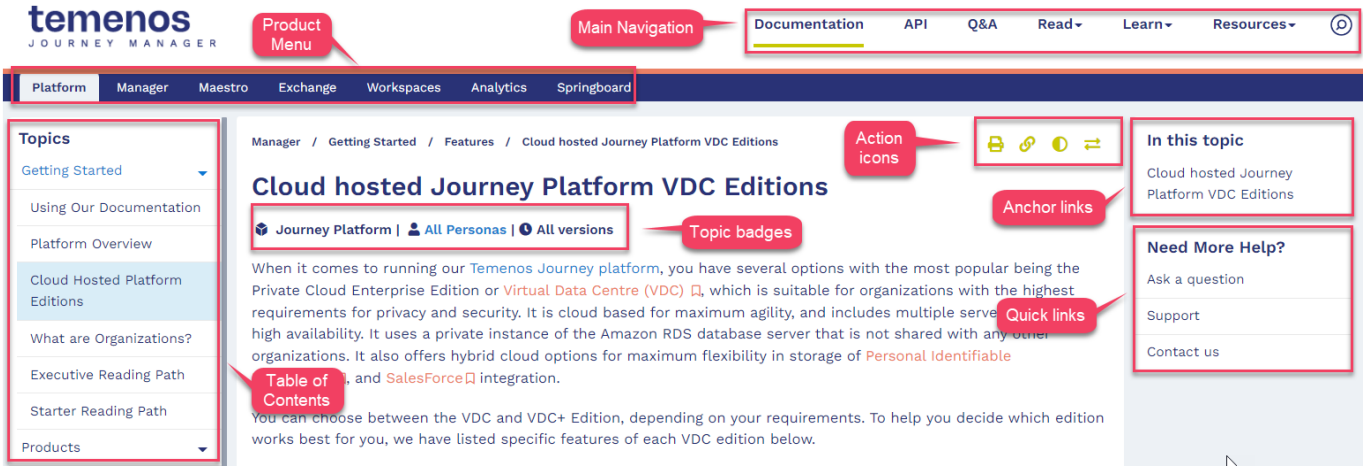
Each topic has been written in an intuitive way, and where possible, version agnostic, with an individual Table of Contents per product and a consolidated website-wide search function. Here are a few key concepts and navigation options for getting the best out of our offerings:


- Main Navigation
- Product Menu
- Table of Contents
- Action icons
- Anchor links
- Quick links
- Search
- API technical docs
- Topics, versions and badges
- Feedback
- What's Next


## Main Navigation

Use the Main Navigation to explore the Temenos Journey Manager resources website.

**Documentation** includes product documentation for all Journey Manager products, **API** contains the technical documentation, **Q&A** allows you to ask questions of the user community, **Read** displays the product announcements and blogs, **Learn** contains online learning videos for all products, and **Resources** presents the video library, product downloads, Exchange packages (with a region filter) and all product release notes. Use **Contact** to contact the Knowledge team with any question or feedback you might have.




# Product Menu

Use the Product Menu to select the Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) product you wish to explore. You will be presented with an individual Table of Contents for the documentation you are interested in.

# Table of Contents

Each Table of Contents contains the topics related to the product you selected from the Product Menu. Use **Platform** to read the higher level platform topics that relate to the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

# Action icons

Use the Action buttons to - **Print** the page, **Copy the URL** of the page to send to others, toggle between **Dark/Light Mode**, or **Expand/Collapse** the right hand side panel.

# Anchor links

Click on the anchor links in the **In this Topic** panel to jump to a specific section of the topic.

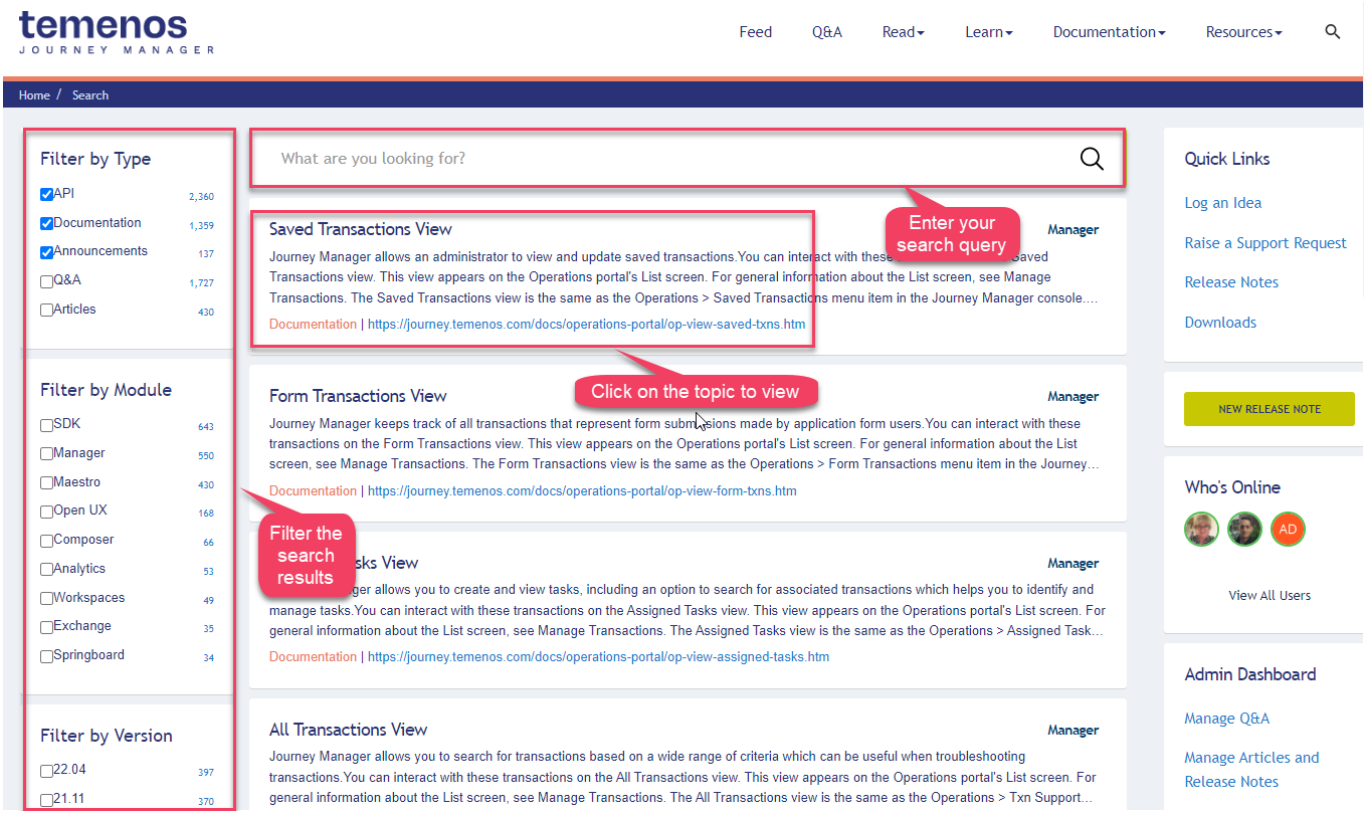
# Quick links

Use the quick links to **Ask a question** on the Q&A forum, go to the **Support** section, or **Contact** the TJM Knowledge Team.

# Search

Searching our documentation is the fastest and most flexible way to find what you need. The Search is always available on the Main Navigation and ready to go!

Click the Search icon to display the website-wide search page. Start typing what you're looking for in the search panel. As you type, the search engine looks through all our content on the website and lists everything that matches your query.




You will also notice that each search match displays a topic title, a paragraph where the search keyword or phrase is found, the type of documentation or article found (documentation, API, article, Q&A, announcement) and the URL of the topic.

Often the search query returns many pages of results, so scroll through the pages using the pagination at the bottom of the screen to find your exact match.

Simply click on the link of the topic or article you want to read.

#### Filter options

To narrow down the search results, you can filter using content type, version or product.

#### Google Search

You can also search our documentation using Google! Regularly Google index the web-site, so simply run a query from your browser, such as site:journey.temenos.com/docs/ "what you are looking for".

## API technical docs

If you are looking for technical or developer documentation, use the API section of the website.

## Topics, versions and badges

#### Topics

We use individual topics[1] to author and organize our documentation. Each topic is a self-contained article describing a particular concept or a procedure that can stand on its own, give enough information to the reader, and provide links to another related topic to create a learning path. Topics are designed to minimize repetition and ensure there's a single source of truth for every concept and feature.

#### Versions

Each topic is given a version 'badge' to indicate what version is applicable to the topic, such as when the topic is newly created, updated, or deprecated.

We have written the documentation in such a way as to make it version agnostic, and describe the most recent version of the products, unless otherwise specified. This allows the number of versions for each topic to be minimized, and all users have access to the same content, regardless of the product version they use. When there is a product or feature difference between versions, it is noted inline, for example | 22.10 This feature was deprecated in 22.10.

[1] Topic-based authoring is a modular approach to content creation where content is structured around topics that can be mixed and reused in different contexts.

#### Badges

Every topic also includes Product and Persona badges, as well as the Version badges mentioned above:

- Product - to identify the product, or products, the topic relates to.
- Persona - to help identify the reading audience and create a learning path. Read understanding personas for more information.
- Product version - that the topic is compatible to, and indicates whether the whole topic, or a feature, was created, updated or removed.

## Feedback

Use **Contact** from the Main Navigation, or **Contact us** in the quick links, to contact the Knowledge team with any question or feedback you might have.

## What's Next

Learn about the customer onboarding journeys you can create with Temenos Journey Manager. Read the Platform overview to get started!

# Temenos Journey Manager Overview

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Temenos Journey Manager platform is a system of engagement[1] that enables banks to create a seamless orchestration between the acquisition of customer data and the back-end system of record[2]. It lives in between your customer acquisition channels and your back-end systems, usually alongside your existing web CMS platform. This allows the Temenos Journey Manager platform to maintain the loose coupling between the customer channels coming in from multiple sources, and the back-end systems without needing major architectural changes to the existing infrastructure.

The Temenos Journey Manager platform solves the following key architectural challenges in building omnichannel[3] customer acquisition and onboarding[4] systems:

- Interoperability with existing systems of record
- Interoperability with 3rd party systems for actions like ID verification, risk scoring, and fraud detection
- Creation and maintenance of functionality common to any acquisition process, such as security, scalability, save & resume, receipt generation, attachments, and

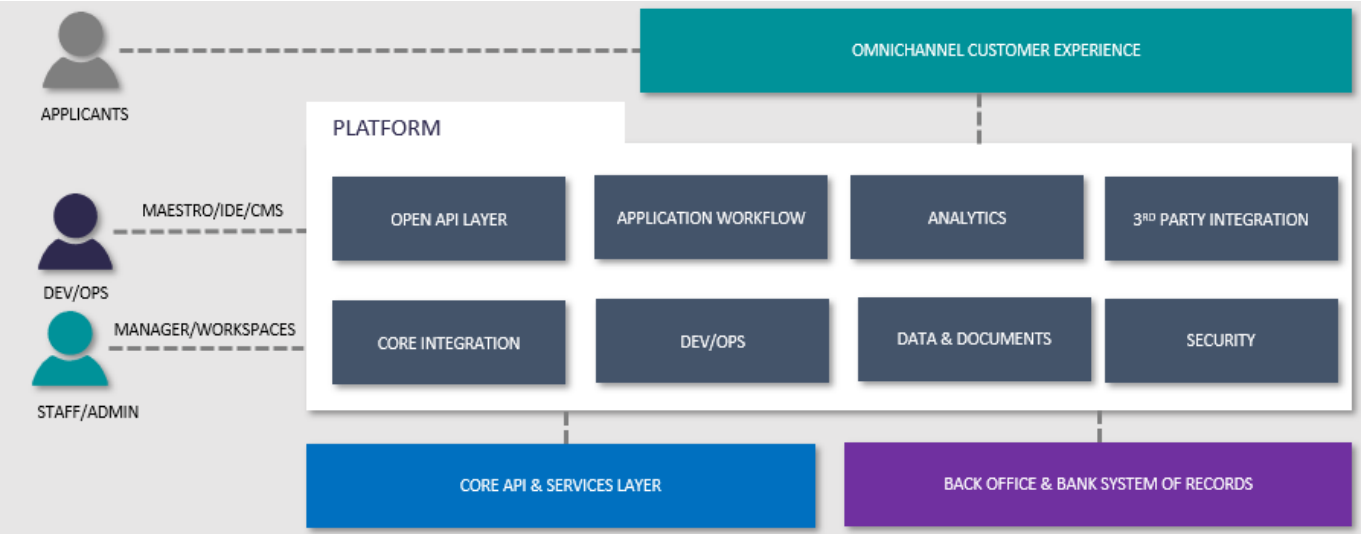
---

[1]Systems of Engagement (SoE) is the technology used by an organization to help facilitate and orchestrate the customer journey via more personalized, seamless interactions across the various touchpoints. These include social media channels, email marketing platforms, mobile apps, and content management systems.
[2]System of Record (SOR) is an ISRS (information storage and retrieval system) that is the authoritative source for a particular data element in a system containing multiple sources of the same element. To ensure data integrity, there must be one -- and only one -- system of record for a given piece of information.
[3]Omnichannel is a service delivery model that integrates different interaction points for customers such as online, by phone or in store. Omnichannel Banking offers banking access across these three methods.
[4]The steps required to get a new customer integrated into a new program. These steps may vary business to business.

bundling of multiple forms

- Behavioral Analytics for measurement and continuous improvement of the CX[1]

The Temenos Journey Manager platform supports all the key facets of the customer acquisition process, by providing features to the front-end channels as functions, and simplifying the omnichannel experience for the end consumer. It delivers the ability to maintain a loose coupling of the state, user data, and input actions of the consumer to the back-end system, which allows rapid deployment of customer initiatives without complex and costly changes to existing systems.



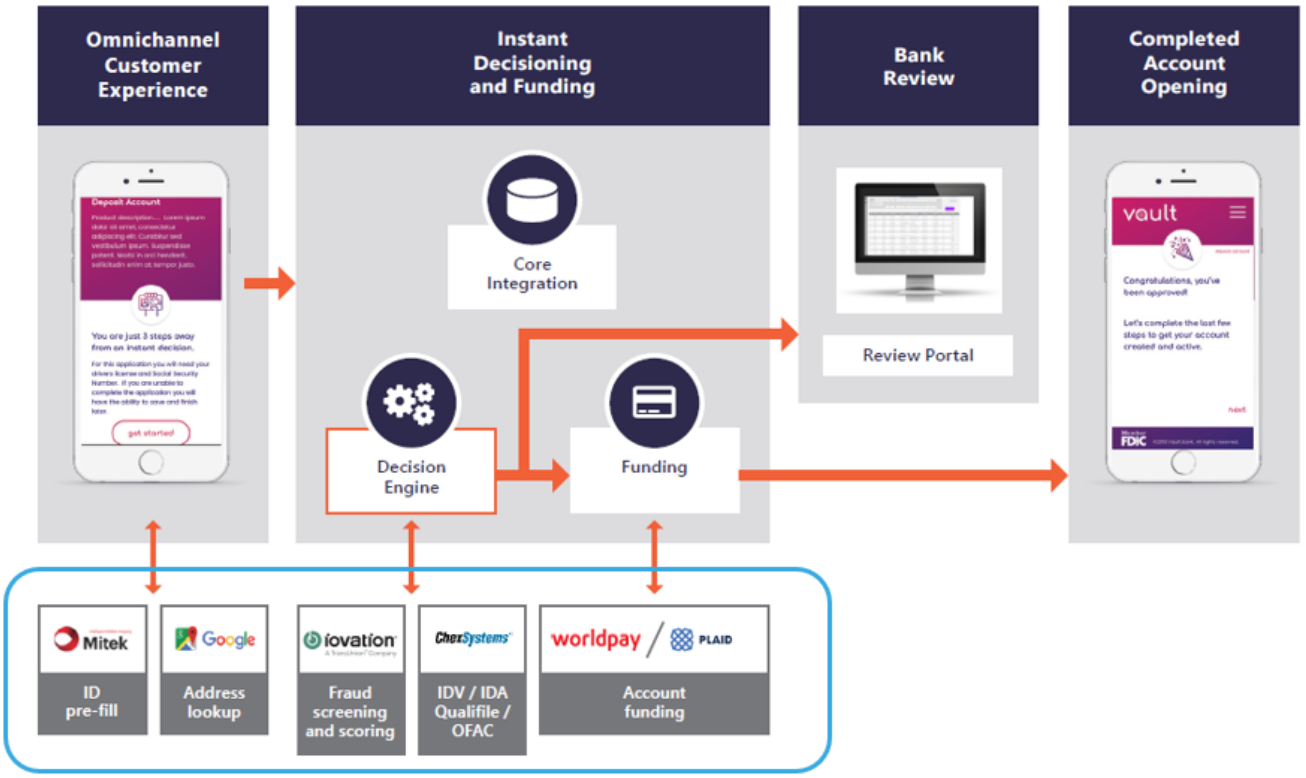

While describing the Temenos Journey Manager platform, we distinguish between applicants and customers. The definitions are provided below.

- An applicant is a person who uses application forms developed, hosted and managed by a Customer or a Client of Temenos Journey Manager. Other names for an applicant are: a customer end user, end user, form user, staff user, adviser, private banker, contact center.
- A customer is a person who uses Temenos Journey Manager to create, host and manage application forms. Other names for a customer is a client.

[1]Customer Experience (CX) is an aggregate of a customer's A-Z experience with a brand. It is not a snapshot in time, such as a key touchpoint or a critical interaction.

The Temenos Journey Manager platform acts as a PaaS[1], providing a service platform on which banks can deploy their web applications. Inside the platform, there are multiple services that run independently of one another maintaining the platform functionality, such as security, front-end services, management, and reporting and operational monitoring. These services can be independently scaled and adjusted to fit the need of the customer's applications. The PaaS architecture allows rapid and simple deployment and scaling of services needed to deliver complex user experience orchestrations.

The example of a deposit account opening application built on the Temenos Journey Manager platform is shown below:

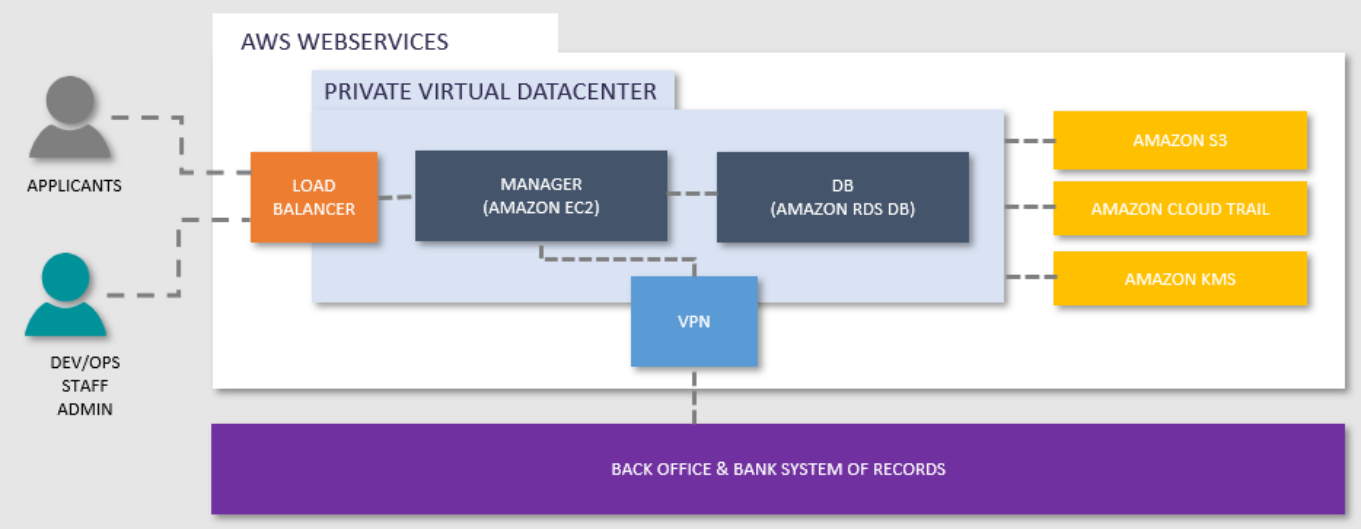



The Temenos Journey Manager platform is mostly deployed as a cloud-based system and configured as a private secure environment for each bank. End users engage in the customer acquisition journey through the Temenos Journey Manager platform's servers and application data is exchanged to and from bank systems of record via API

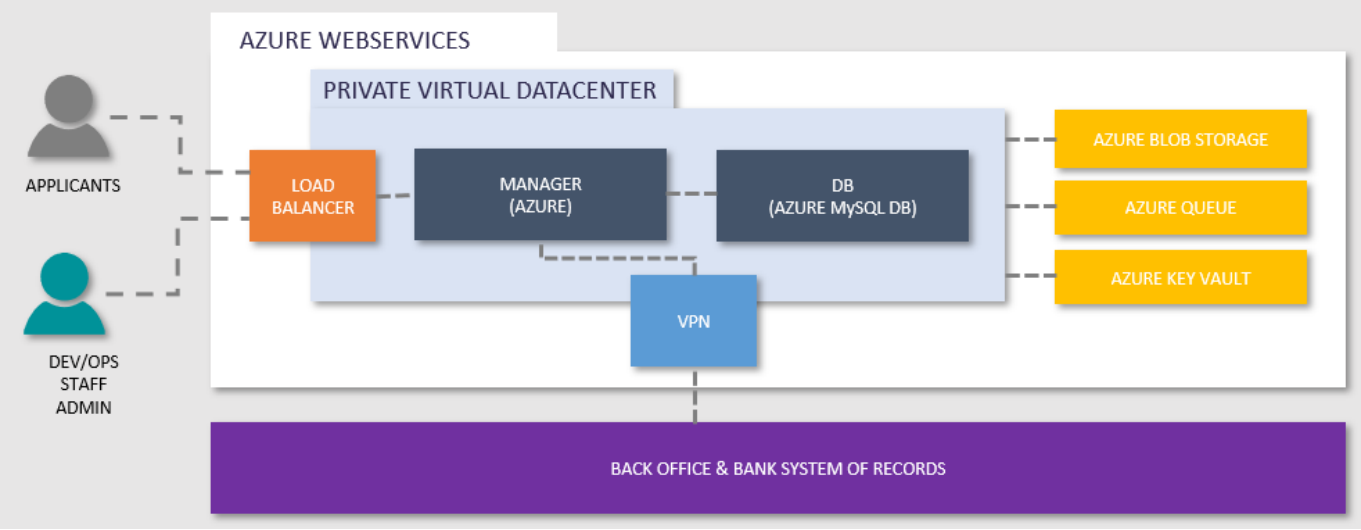
[1]Platform as a Service (PaaS) is a category of cloud computing services that provides a platform allowing customers to develop, run, and manage applications without the complexity of building and maintaining the infrastructure typically associated with developing and launching an app.

services. The Temenos Journey Manager platform configuration on the cloud provides for the highest levels of security, reliability, scalability and data integrity. We support both AWS and Azure clouds, as shown below.

## AWS Cloud Deployment




## Azure Cloud Deployment




Interacting with the Temenos Journey Manager platform PaaS is made simple through the ability to make API calls from the front-end framework of choice, meaning that the complexity of building multiple platform services is reduced to a set of standard REST API calls. This allows the bank development team to dictate the terms of engagement with the platform, choosing to either leverage in-house skills to build experiences or using our tools for building customer interaction workflows, saving time and expense against having to build the entire set of services from scratch.

# Products

The Temenos Journey Manager platform incorporates the following products, also known as modules, to design, manage, and optimize the customer experience across channels without impacting back-end systems:

Journey Maestro is the HTML5[1], design environment that allows business teams to build sophisticated and elegant web form applications.

Journey Manager is the enterprise management system that hosts the web form applications and enables sophisticated customer interaction and 3rd party system integration between form transactions and back-end business processes.

Journey Exchange is a catalog of pre-integrated FinTech applications to extend the power of the Journey Platform. These third party integration packages are made available to our Journey Platform customers for use in their online customer applications.

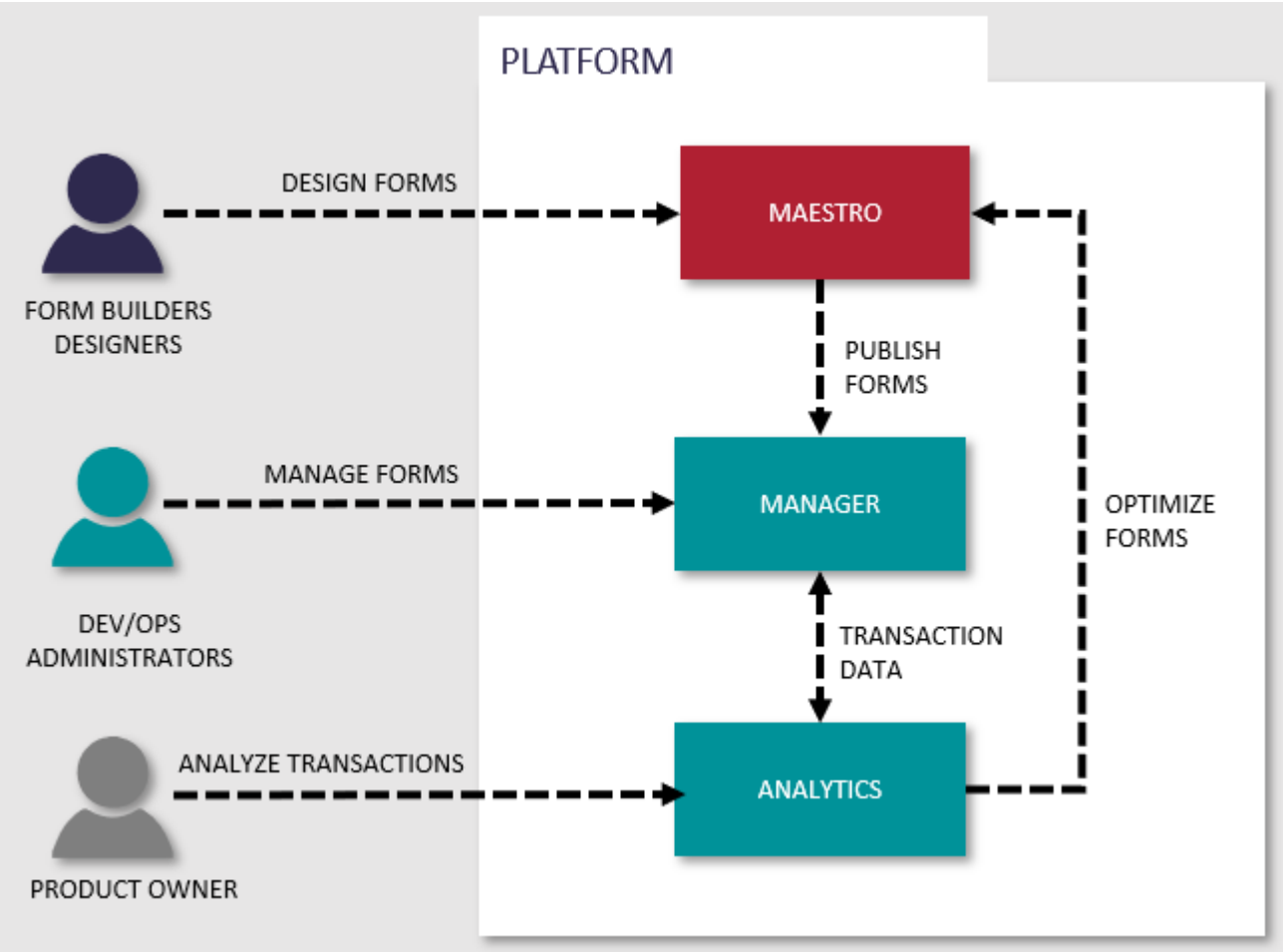
Journey Workspaces is an integral module of the Temenos Journey Platform that enables your organization to improve your customers' experience with onboarding assistance, rapid resolution, and communication of progress, regardless of the channel they are applying from. Out of the box, Workspaces includes the features you need to accomplish your business objectives.

Journey Analytics captures customer behavior to drive detailed form transaction analytics on how to reduce friction and abandonment within the web form applications. It allows you to watch transaction progress and monitor completion rates, bounce rates, and submission volume for different devices and forms. You can test new ideas with the standard Form A/B Testing in Manager or the more granular metrics with Custom Reports in Journey Analytics to instantly monitor results. Then when changes are needed, adjustments are data-driven similar to a web content manager, no coding changes required. This allows rapid deployment in a few clicks, no need for waiting on test and release cycles.

All our products are designed and built to be easily integrated with each other. The typical set up is shown below.

---

[1]Maestro forms are fundamentally built using HTML 5. The structure of the form and the text displayed in the form are all configured and established using HTML5. HTML is the standard markup language for creating Web pages and stands for Hypertext Markup Language. HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.




You can also integrate Manager with Salesforce using our API or use Open UX to design and create forms using your favorite IDE.

As you can see, the Temenos Journey Manager is based on various architectural and design principals. Most of these aspects are not covered in this overview article due to its complexity and sensitivity.

Next, learn more about platform integration and platform development.

# Cloud-hosted Temenos Journey Manager VDC Editions

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

When it comes to running our Temenos Journey Manager platform, you have several options with the most popular being the Private Cloud Enterprise Edition or Virtual Data Centre (VDC) [1], which is suitable for organizations with the highest requirements for privacy and security. This edition is cloud based, which provides you maximum agility as well as includes multiple servers to ensure high availability. It uses a private instance of the Amazon RDS database server that is not shared with any other organizations. It also offers hybrid cloud options for maximum flexibility in storage of Personal Identifiable Information[2], and SalesForce[3] integration.

You can choose between the VDC and VDC+ Edition, depending on your requirements. To help you decide which edition works best for you, we have listed specific features of each VDC edition below.

| Features | VDC Edition | VDC+ Edition |
|---|---|---|
| **Redundancy & Availability** | | |
| High Availability[4] Application Servers (Multi-AZ) (Traffic load balanced across application servers in separate data centers) | | |
| Transact Application Server Nodes (Production) 2+2 = 2x /manager (admin) portal nodes + 2x /workspace portal | 4+ (HA) (2+2) | 4+ (HA) (2+2) |

[1]Virtual Data Centre (VDC) is an automated and scalable Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS) cloud platform providing compute, network and storage.
[2]Personally Identifiable Information (PII) is information about an individual that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual‘s identity, such as name, social security number, date and place of birth, mother‘s maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked to an individual. In Europe, PII is known as personal data.
[3]Salesforce is the customer relationship management (CRM) platform.
[4]High availability (HA) is a characteristic of a system which aims to ensure an agreed level of operational performance, usually uptime, for a higher than normal period.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| nodes HA = High Availability (nodes deployed into separate AWS AZs) | | |
| High Availability RDS Database Server Replicated across separate data centers (Multi AZ) | | |
| Non-production environments (test, UAT, etc) included | 3 | 3 |
| Production - Service Level Availability Target (monthly) | 99.9% | 99.9% |
| Number of countries supported (ie tenants) (You can't use TM ORGs to segregate country solutions, or deploy additional instances) | 1 | 1 |
| Extra countries/tenants available (POA - price on application) (In standard/enterprise edition, you need to buy a new edition for an extra country) | | |
| RDBMS | Aurora | Aurora |
| **Backup & Recovery** | | |
| Database Backup Frequency | Continuous | Continuous |
| Backup Frequency (RPO[1]) | ~ 5 minutes | ~ 5 minutes |
| Database Recovery Time (RTO[2]) | 4 hours | 4 hours |
| **Security** | | |
| Customer Virtual Private Cloud (Solution installed in customer-specific AWS VPC with private subnets) | | |
| Data Sovereignty - All data resides in same geographic region. Regions are US (Oregon) EU (Ireland) Asia Pacific (Sydney) Other AWS Regions available as required | | |
| Strong AES 256-bit data encryption for data in transit and at rest | | |
| Separate security subnets for production and non-production environments | | |

[1]Recovery point objective (RPO) is the age of files that must be recovered from backup storage for normal operations to resume if a computer, system, or network goes down as a result of a hardware, program, or communications failure.

[2]Recovery Time Objective (RTO) is the targeted duration of time and a service level within which a business process must be restored after a disaster (or disruption) in order to avoid unacceptable consequences associated with a break in business continuity.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| IP White-listing | | |
| Automatic updates for o/s & security vulnerability patches | | |
| Anti-virus scanning | | |
| Dedicated RDS Database Server in same Virtual Private Cloud | | |
| Separate administration and end user portal servers | | |
| Encryption Data Key Management | Amazon KMS | Amazon KMS |
| Internal vulnerability scanning – Continuous (Qualys Cloud Agent) | | |
| External vulnerability scanning - Monthly (Qualys WAS scan) | | |
| Third-party penetration testing - Annually | --- | |
| Akamai - for WAF and CDN | Available (POA) | Available (POA) |
| **Network Connectivity Features** | | |
| AWS VPC Peering (Connect 2 AWS accounts; no service cost - AWS Doc) | Available | Available |
| AWS Direct Connect (Connect AWS to on premise; service cost not included - AWS Doc) | Available | Available |
| AWS VPN Site to Site | Available (POA) | Available (POA) |
| **Advanced Security Features** | | |
| Web Application Firewall (WAF) | Apache ModSecurity (fixed customized rules) | Sophos UTM |
| Network Protection (Deep packet inspection, Flood protection, DoS, DDoS and port scan blocking, Country blocking) | AWS Shield Standard (no DPI and Country blocking) | Sophos UTM |
| Advanced Threat Protection | --- | Sophos UTM SandStorm |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Outbound Proxy (whitelist) | Squid | Sophos UTM |
| **Security Extras** | | |
| AWS Dedicated Instances (dedicated hardware for application servers - AWS Doc) | Available (POA) | |
| Additional IPS / UTM (Sophos Unified Threat Management) layer (AWS Doc) | Available (POA) | |
| **Platform Issue - Response Times – Production** | | |
| Level 1 | 30 mins | 30 mins |
| Level 2 | 1hour | 1hour |
| Level 3 | 2 hours | 2 hours |
| Level 4 | 1business day | 1business day |
| **Platform Issue - Resolution Times – Production** | | |
| Level 1 | 2 hours | 2 hours |
| Level 2 | 4 hours | 4 hours |

If you have any further questions or you need more information including pricing, contact your Customer Success Manager.

Next, learn about the Temenos Journey Manager platform system requirements.

# Multi-tenancy Support

Journey Manager (JM) The transaction engine for the platform. | All Personas

Journey Manager supports multi-tenancy[1], so different customers can share the same Manager instance, running on the same operating system, on the same hardware, with the same data-storage mechanism. The Manager software design ensures tenant isolation so customers don't share or see each others data. This all allows you to achieve cost and operational efficiency by running our product in multi-tenanted environments. For more information, see Multi-tenancy.

NOTE

This feature is not a GA implementation of the publicly available product releases. We provide this feature for tailored solutions, such as Sprintboard Solutions, managed by Temenos and sold to specific customers.

Manager implementation of multi-tenancy is secure as it doesn't introduce many changes to already well-established security model of the product.

Our core design principles of multi-tenancy are based on using:

- Global forms, which are not assigned to one specific organization, but rather organizations are assigned to global forms
- Global services

Manager allows you to deploy global forms and global services that can be used by various tenants' applications.

The following products also support multi-tenancy:

- Analytics

---

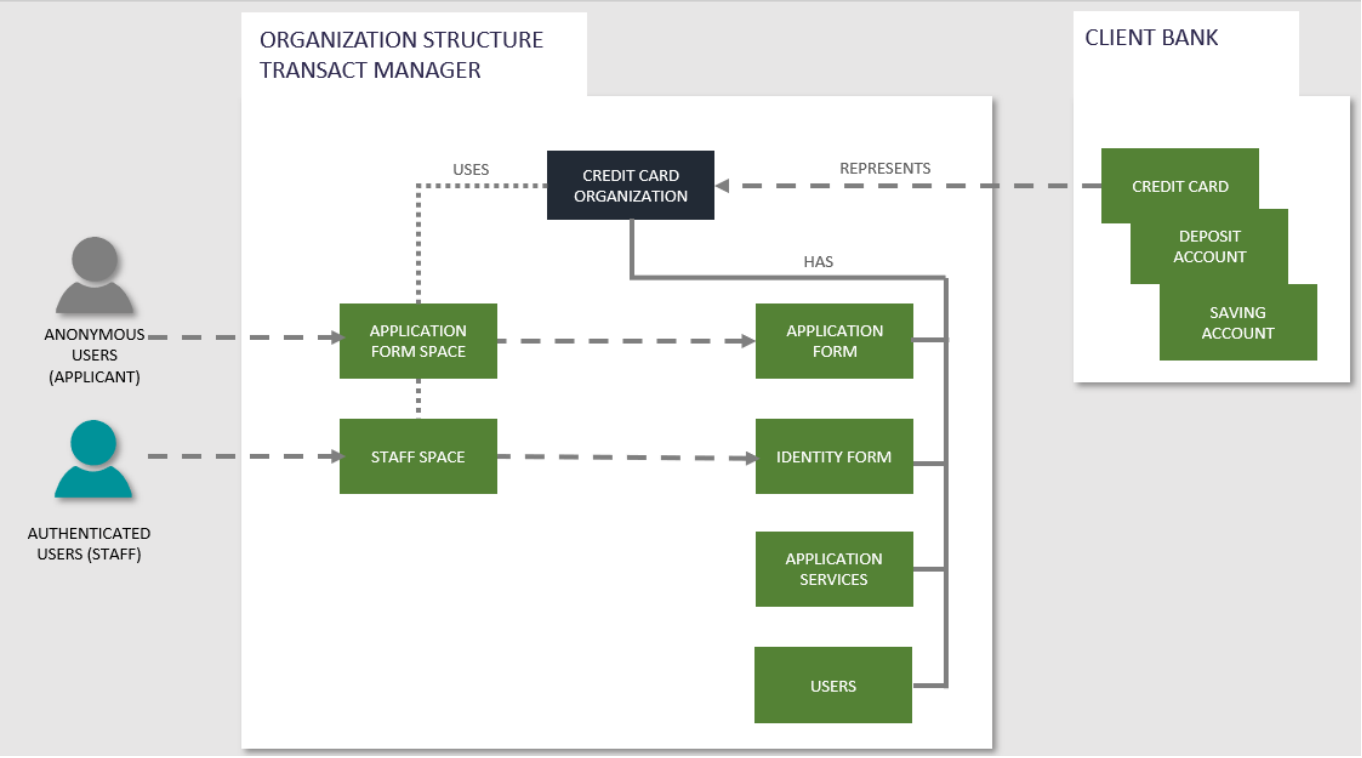
[1]Multi-tenancy is a software architecture in which a single instance of software runs on a server and serves multiple tenants. Systems designed in such manner are "shared" (rather than "dedicated" or "isolated"). A tenant is a group of users who share a common access with specific privileges to the software instance. With a multi-tenant architecture, a software application is designed to provide every tenant a dedicated share of the instance - including its data, configuration, user management, tenant individual functionality and non-functional properties.

Next, learn about ?

# Introduction to Organizations

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

An organization is a concept within the Temenos Journey Manager platform that allows you to represent your business such as a company, a department, a branch within the company, a government organization, or a product. For example, if a client bank uses credit card application process, you can create a corresponding structure in Journey Manager, as illustrated below.




You can use organizations to:

- Create a well-defined structure of your assets (forms and PDF receipts) and resources (libraries and templates) within an organization, manage and migrate them across different environments to speed up form development life cycle.
- Have different core module configuration on the organization, system, form, and project levels to allow you to change the way forms appear and operate.
- Install new modules into your organization to integrate with other external systems.
- Provide secure users access to the resources within the organization and assign them different roles to perform certain activities.

- Encapsulate development and testing of forms relevant to your organization.
- Focus on monitoring, collecting and analyzing only your organization's runtime data to guarantee and improve forms user journey.

Every Temenos Journey Manager platform's core module uses the concept of organizations, but in slightly different ways. The brief summary is shown below with the links to detailed information for each module:

- Manager organizations own forms and their assets.
- Maestro organizations hold projects, widgets and libraries.
- Exchange uses organizations to allow you to install modules only there.
- Journey Analytics uses organizations to control which form statistics users can view.

Next, learn about Manager.

# Journey Executive Reading Path

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Executive | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

As an executive, you have little to no free time to grasp a new concept or understand a new product, so we have short-listed topics you need to check to get to know our Temenos Journey Manager platform and its products.

First of all, this is all about customer onboarding[1], creating easy and smooth customer journeys, helping them to sign up for products they want to. This is not an easy task, but we have expertise and the Temenos Journey Manager platform to make it happen. Our platform enables you to create and manager these customer onboarding journeys where each journey is a single dynamic HTML form or a form bundle that navigate customers through each onboarding workflow. You can think of our platform as a fast and reliable framework to build, implement and deploy these forms and workflows.

The Temenos Journey Manager platform is a suite of core products working together to enable customer onboarding journeys. Journey Manager is the most important product and the heart of the platform. It's a complex application web server, written in Java[2] and Groovy[3] and deployed on a cloud or on-premise, that runs all other products, modules and bespoke solutions. Of course, it's not all that Journey Manager does - it has many other great features, such as form user data prefill, save and resume, and receipt generating to name a few.

---

[1]The steps required to get a new customer integrated into a new program. These steps may vary business to business.

[2]Java is a programming language that produces software for multiple platforms. When a programmer writes a Java application, the compiled code (known as bytecode) runs on most operating systems (OS), including Windows, Linux and Mac OS. Java derives much of its syntax from the C and C++ programming languages.

[3]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

The next product is Journey Maestro. It allows you to design, build and deploy application forms using the latest JavaScript[1] technologies.

Then, we have Journey Analytics that gives you a powerful tool to analyze customer journey experiences, so you can adjust your forms and business logic to continuously improve user experience and reduce the user abandonment.

The list wouldn't be complete without Transact Exchange, which provides a wealth of 3rd party FinTech[2] services, so you can easily plug them into your solutions using Groovy[3] scripts.

To make your life easier, we have developed Journey Workspaces, which is the user-friendly, feature-rich business portal for managing application forms and workflows. We've purposely developed the collaboration jobs framework to help you build and manage complex workflows without the need to use Business Process Modeling[4] tools.

And, of course, there's Journey Springboard, the out of the box Deposit Account Opening (DAO) application for the US market, which you can use as the best practice to implement your own custom solutions.

Now, this was the brief introduction on our platform. We hope you've clicked a few links above, so you got some good insights. We understand it may be overwhelming at first, but don't worry, you can use our documentation search and the table of contents to find out more about each product and how they may benefit you.

---

[1]Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.

[2]Financial Technology, also known as FinTech, is a new industry that uses new technology and innovation to improve activities in finance. It aims to compete with traditional financial methods in the delivery of financial services to customers by improving customer experience, reducing time-to-market, decreasing cost to mention a few.

[3]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

[4]Business Process Modeling Notation (BPMN) is a method of illustrating business processes in the form of a diagram similar to a flowchart.

Next, learn more about the starter path.

# Journey Starter Reading Path

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Starter | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

As a starter, you want to understand quickly a few key concepts about our Temenos Journey Manager platform and its products, so you can start using them.

Our platform is rich in functionality and therefore complex, so it takes some time to get your head around it. We recommend you begin with the executive path first, as you only need to read a handful of articles and understand a few key things.

The first product to learn about is Journey Manager, because it's the most important product that other products utilize. Journey Manager has to be installed and configured before you can start using it. You can install the product yourself, or ask your IT department to do it for you. However, Journey Manager is often installed and run on a cloud, so you only need to log in using credentials provided to you.

Your Journey Manager experience starts with the home dashboard. It is abundant with useful system information, recent forms and services, and transaction history, so it may be tricky to decide where to go next. We suggest you look at organizations, as this is the first building block you need to create and configure before you can deploy any forms. Then, check what form spaces are and whether you have permissions to access them. Form spaces host forms and control user accessibility using groups and roles. Manager comes with the advanced SSO[1] security configuration, including LDAP[2] and ADFS[3] to name a few, and you need to be quite familiar with these technologies to set it up.

One of the best features of Journey Manager is Groovy services, which you can use as they are or write your own. This gives you unbounded possibilities to implement various

---

[1]Single sign-on (SSO) is a property of access control of multiple related, yet independent, software systems. With this property, a user logs in with a single ID and password to gain access to any of several related systems.

[2]Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an open, vendor-neutral, industry standard application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an Internet Protocol network.

[3]Active Directory Federation Services.

solutions, but yet you have to know how to write Groovy[1] scripts. We recommend you check Transact Fluent SDK overview and benefits of using Groovy before you dive into writing your own stuff. It's worth looking at the standard services, as they may already address your needs, plus they are professionally written and thoroughly tested. This is especially the case for the 3rd party service integration that is usually complex and therefore time consuming part of application development. Luckily for you, we have Transact Exchange that comes with dozens of packages you can easily install and use to enhance you FinTech[2] applications.

Manager includes a powerful framework, the collaboration jobs, for building onboarding workflows. This is a quite complex area and requires significant knowledge of our products, but it's worth reading a few articles to understand what you can possibly achieve with this tool.

Journey Manager is the developer friendly product and comes with extensive logging and troubleshooting functionality, so you can debug your services and configurations to tune and fix them. Additionally, it allows you to create your solution in a development environment and then propagate it to another environment and finally to production using our multi-environment support. Journey Manager also supports the horizontal scaling, meaning you can add server nodes to cater for your production needs and demands. We recommend running several server nodes, with at least one dedicated node to generate and render receipts.

Journey Manager has a great deal of system configuration that is paramount to keep the product running. We recommend starting with outgoing email service and data retention management. While Journey Manager is designed to sustain high load of transactions, it requires some maintenance and operational support every now and then and

---

[1]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

[2]Financial Technology, also known as FinTech, is a new industry that uses new technology and innovation to improve activities in finance. It aims to compete with traditional financial methods in the delivery of financial services to customers by improving customer experience, reducing time-to-market, decreasing cost to mention a few.

when an issue occurs. There's a lot to learn here, so we suggest you start with submission life cycle and transaction details.

The next product you need to understand is Journey Maestro. It is extremely rich in functionality and has user-friendly interface allowing you to build sophisticated and elegant web form applications based on modern technologies, such as HTML5[1] and JavaScript[2]. We recommend looking at forms and components first, then get your head around libraries and entities, as these are enablers for best UX design principles and software reuse. This content is rather complex and requires some knowledge of HTML, JavaScript and UX design. When you've mastered form creation, you can learn how to build them in Maestro and then deploy them to Journey Manager, where they will be run.

Our Temenos Journey Manager platform enables you to apply SDLC[3] to the process of building, testing and running your form applications. Journey Analytics fulfills a very important role in this development cycle, as it allows you to analyze customer journey experiences that are based on your forms. There's a lot of theory behind how we collect, analyze and present data, but we recommend you start with the product's dashboard view and then follow the links as you read. If you're after a few simple reports and A/B testing caparisons, we suggest you look at Journey Manager's analytics, which is a simplified version of Journey Analytics. Nevertheless, this tool gives you a good insights on transaction trends, such as completion and conversion rates, form abandonment and bounce rate, that are the key metrics for form improvement to try to make the customer journey frictionless.

As you can see, there's a wealth of information generated during user interaction with forms. It's extremely difficult to manage it without our Journey Workspaces module, which provides key features for bank staff to provide great customer service. We

---

[1]Maestro forms are fundamentally built using HTML 5. The structure of the form and the text displayed in the form are all configured and established using HTML5. HTML is the standard markup language for creating Web pages and stands for Hypertext Markup Language. HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.
[2]Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.
[3]Software Development Life Cycle (SDLC) is a process used by the software industry to design, develop and test high quality softwares.

recommend starting with Workspaces UI Tour and Workspaces Core Concepts to gain an understanding of Workspaces fundamentals. One of our newest products is Journey Springboard, the out of the box Deposit Account Opening (DAO) application for the US market, which enables banks to rapidly deliver an outstanding digital customer acquisition journey using a pre-built solution on an extensible platform that grows with the bank. You can use it as a best practice, pre-built custom solution to get to market faster with acquisition journeys. The Springboard DAO solves the complex challenges of the deposit account opening process, including compliance and risk management requirements. Through pre-integrated connections to proven FinTech providers, Springboard DAO addresses the critical issues of fraud screening, ID verification, risk mitigation, data pre-fill, and funding.

Now, while this was more a detailed introduction on our products and the development practices we use, there's much more for you to read and learn. You can always go to our documentation search or navigate the table of contents to find out more about each product.

Next, learn about the Platform Developer path.

# Journey Manager Overview

Journey Manager (JM) The transaction engine for the platform. | System Manager / DevOps | 2105 This feature was updated in 2105.

Journey Manager is the heart of the Temenos Journey Manager platform. It is a system of engagement, purpose-built to manage customer onboarding[1] and customer journeys, such as account opening and servicing.

Manager productizes the technology needed for a best-in-class digital sales experience in a pre-built platform. This experience enables financial and government institutions, large or small, to create their user journeys without having to engineer complex features such as security, data capture, resiliency, convenience, and integration.

Manager is a complex software system, consisting of many interconnected components. It's designed to:

- Host application forms and associated resources, and provide customers with secure access to them.
- Manage forms' transaction flow.
- Create highly configurable services to implement the desired customer experience[2].
- Enable integration with various FinTech[3] services and systems.

---

[1]The steps required to get a new customer integrated into a new program. These steps may vary business to business.

[2]Customer Experience (CX) is the product of an interaction between an organization and a customer over the duration of their relationship. This interaction is made up of three parts: the customer journey, the brand touchpoints the customer interacts with, and the environments the customer experiences (including digital environment) during their experience. A good customer experience means that the individual's experience during all points of contact matches the individual's expectations.

[3]Financial Technology, also known as FinTech, is a new industry that uses new technology and innovation to improve activities in finance. It aims to compete with traditional financial methods in the delivery of financial services to customers by improving customer experience, reducing time-to-market, decreasing cost to mention a few.

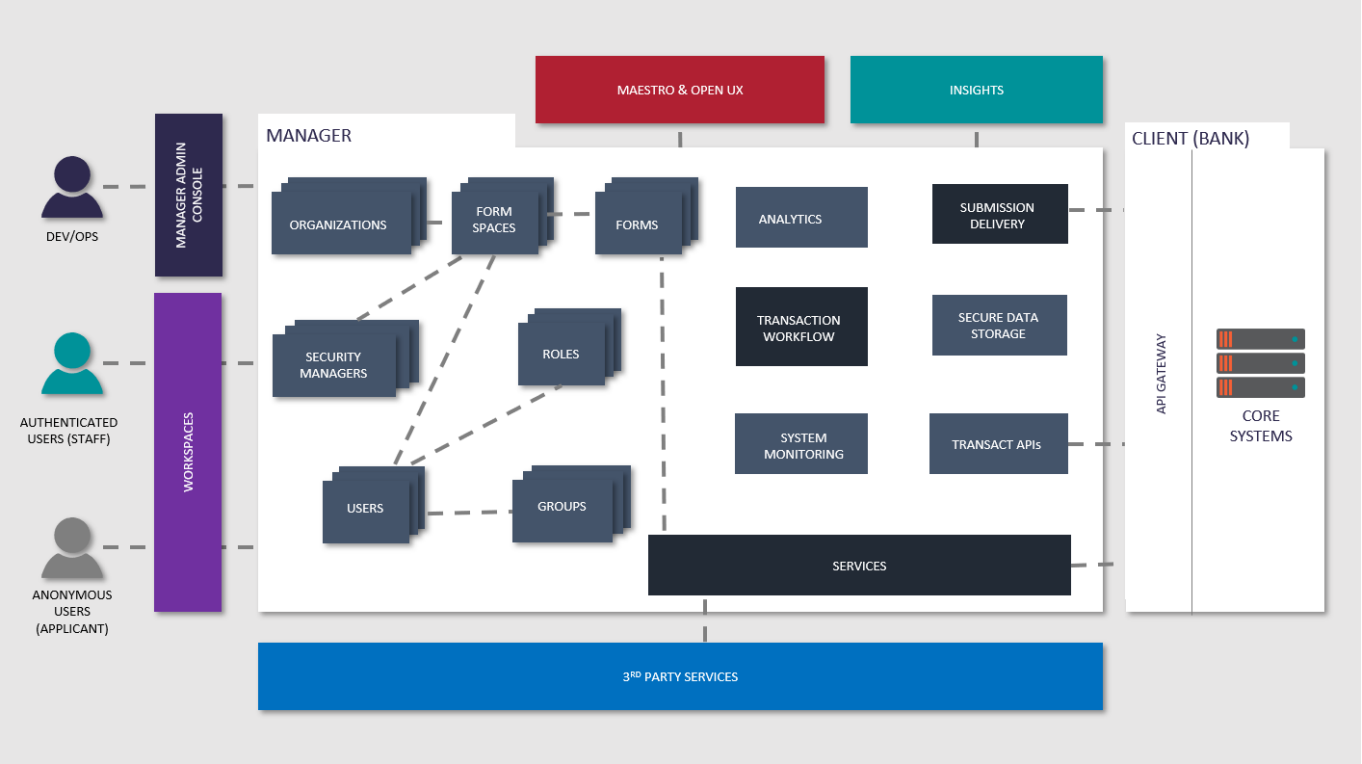
- Analyze actual customer behavior to continuously improve the customer experience.

Manager provides the following core capabilities:

- Form hosting - multiple forms can be hosted centrally and be made accessible to applicants by embedding links to the forms into organization's web pages or by using form search engines. You can also manage forms and process submissions made by users.
- Data pre-population - users can quickly complete forms that are pre-populated with their information, which comes from one or more user's profiles or organization provided data retrieved via web services or APIs.
- Receipts - users are provided with an electronic receipt that includes the submitted form, payment and submission information. Receipts can be viewed online, emailed, or downloaded and then printed.
- Payments - if a submission needs to be accompanied by a payment, Manager can be configured to read the correct payment amount from the form and process the payment using a secure credit card payment process.
- Supporting documentation - submissions can be supported by additional documents that may be uploaded electronically or submitted in paper form. Business logic in the forms can be applied to supporting documents.
- Submission delivery - completed submissions can be delivered by email to one or more user's addresses. The delivery process can be configured separately for each form.
- Form configuration and version control - forms provide fine-grained control over behavior, including form properties, form metadata, and custom rendering orchestrations. Forms also support version control enabling parallel development and multiple versions of the same form, so you can promote forms from development, to test, and finally production on separate servers.
- Task assignment - creates a task for a user or a group of users to work with forms to complete, review or reject then.
- Submission tracking - all submissions can be tracked from form download to submission delivery. Customer support can view forms and attachments to provide user assistance during the submission process.
- Reports - provides multiple charts and standard reports for reporting on submissions. Additional reports can be configured using advanced reporting modules. Reports can be displayed on a screen or can be automatically sent out via email.

For the complete list of all product capabilities, see Manager features.

The diagram below outlines the main components, with the submission delivery, transaction workflow and services being of the high significance.




Manager provides a well-defined structure to enable authenticated (staff) and anonymous (applicants) users' interaction with forms. An organization sits at the top of that structure, followed by form spaces and finally forms. A client can have multiple organizations, which each organization using several form spaces. Each form space can provide access to different forms and a form itself can be associated with several form spaces.

Manager is a secure system that allows you to enable fine grained user access to forms by using preconfigured security managers or and customized groups and roles. The platform developers or system admins can have dedicated access to configure, maintain and manage your Manager environment. Staff and applicants can access forms directly or indirectly through Journey Workspaces.

Manager provides rich and fine grained framework for developing, testing and deploying services that implement client's business logic, interact with FinTech services and external systems. Manager comes with many preconfigured core services, covering most of common client's requirements, but you can easily create new services using Transact Fluent API and Transact functions as they are based on the standard Groovy framework.

Manager includes pre-built connectors for best in class services such as fraud detection, ID verification, digital signatures, and over 30 different connection partners. The integration has already been done, so each connector can be added to the user experience as needed when designing the application.

Every user interaction with a form is a transaction that is created and managed in Manager using the submission delivery mechanism. You have a wide of range of tools to view and manage these transactions. Manager comes with analysis tools including Insights to drill down to transactions, analyze user tends so you can make an educated decision how to improve a customer journey.

Manager stores all users' transactions in a secure data storage. You can configure how long to keep and when to purge the data by customizing data retention policy. This configuration is important to maintain optimal performance of your server. At any given time, system administrators can check Manager system info and health to see if any additional tuning is required such as adding a new server node.

Manager can be deployed in the cloud environment[1], or on-premise depending on customer requirements and available infrastructure.

Manager is implemented using a broad range of open source 3rd party libraries.

Next, learn how to create an organization.

[1]Cloud computing is shared pools of configurable computer system resources and higher-level services that can be rapidly provisioned with minimal management effort, often over the Internet. Cloud computing relies on sharing of resources to achieve coherence and economies of scale, similar to a public utility.

# Journey Maestro Overview

MaestroThe UI design product. | Form Builder ▪ Platform Developer | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

Journey Maestro is a tool for designing and building application forms that implement various customer onboarding journeys. Maestro is a product suite of the Temenos Journey Manager platform, so it is seamlessly integrated with all other products to give you a maximum edge in creating web-based apps using latest technologies.

> NOTE
>
> Maestro 5.0 is the first version of our Maestro tool. It was versioned as 5.0 to keep it in line with Journey Manager version numbering. Therefore, Maestro forms are not supported in Manager prior to 5.0.

Maestro allows anyone with moderate technical expertise and skills to design and configure web-based forms using the built-in Maestro editor. The Maestro editor is a WYSIWYG[1] editor so you can see how a form will look like while creating it. You can also preview the form in different device emulators or render it as a PDF or HTML receipt. The Maestro editor comes with the rich text editor to give you a flexibility of using various content formatting.

The forms that Maestro produces are single-page AngularJS applications with responsive designs, and can be previewed in formats suitable for smartphones, tablets, and desktop computers. A single design runs on all devices, takes the screen size into account, and gives an optimal experience without creating versions for each device.

Maestro provides you with the following features to streamline your form development process:

- Drag-and-drop pre-built components directly into the WYSIWYG editor for rapid form creation
- Create custom components from scratch or by combining existing components

---

[1] WYSIWYG, an acronym for What You See Is What You Get, is a system in which editing software allows content to be edited in a form that resembles its appearance when printed or displayed as a finished product, such as a printed document, web page, or slide presentation.

- Use templates to maintain a consistent look and feel across a large number of forms
- Generate receipts based on the design of a form or design custom receipts
- Implement save and resume functionality without writing any code
- Define rules that run arbitrary JavaScript code when events, such as a click, occur
- Maintain multiple translations of a single form
- Configure form accessibility

For more information, see the complete list of Maestro features.

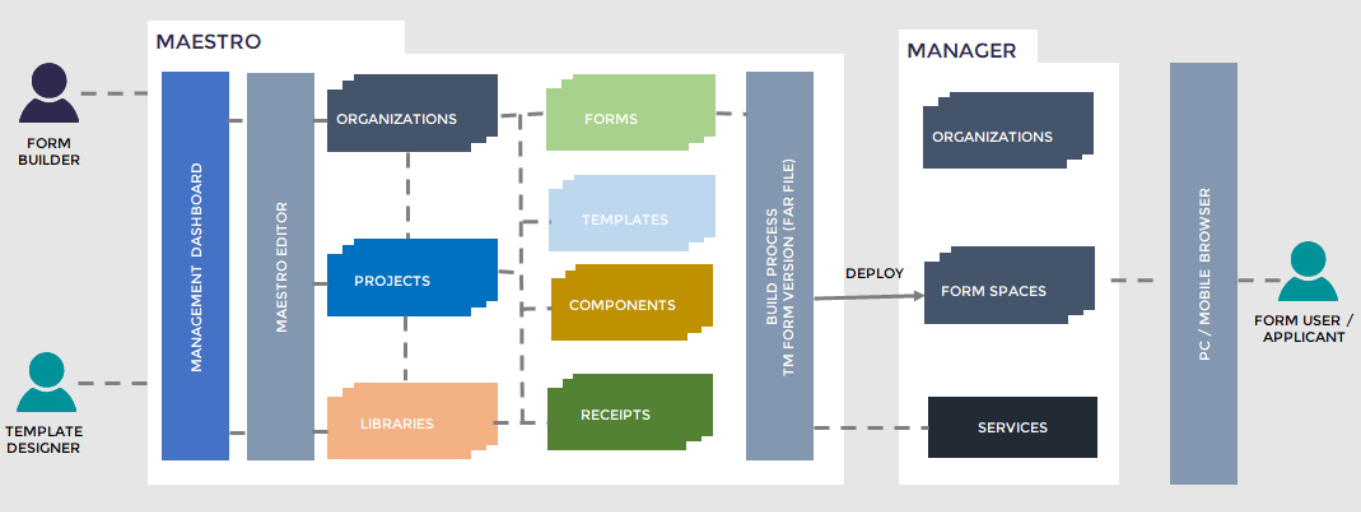
Maestro uses the following entities to enable you to design and build application forms efficiently:

- Organization - contains projects and organization level libraries
- Project - contains forms, components, templates and project level libraries
- Form - contains components to captured user data and pass it to Manager
- Template - a super form that defines and controls the look and feel of forms and receipts based on this template
- Receipt - a read-only statement for various stages of form application processes
- Component - a modular building block that can be dragged and dropped into all types of designs, including forms, receipts, templates, and even other components
- Library - related resources, such as components and shared components, images, core libraries, which can be used across different projects and even organizations

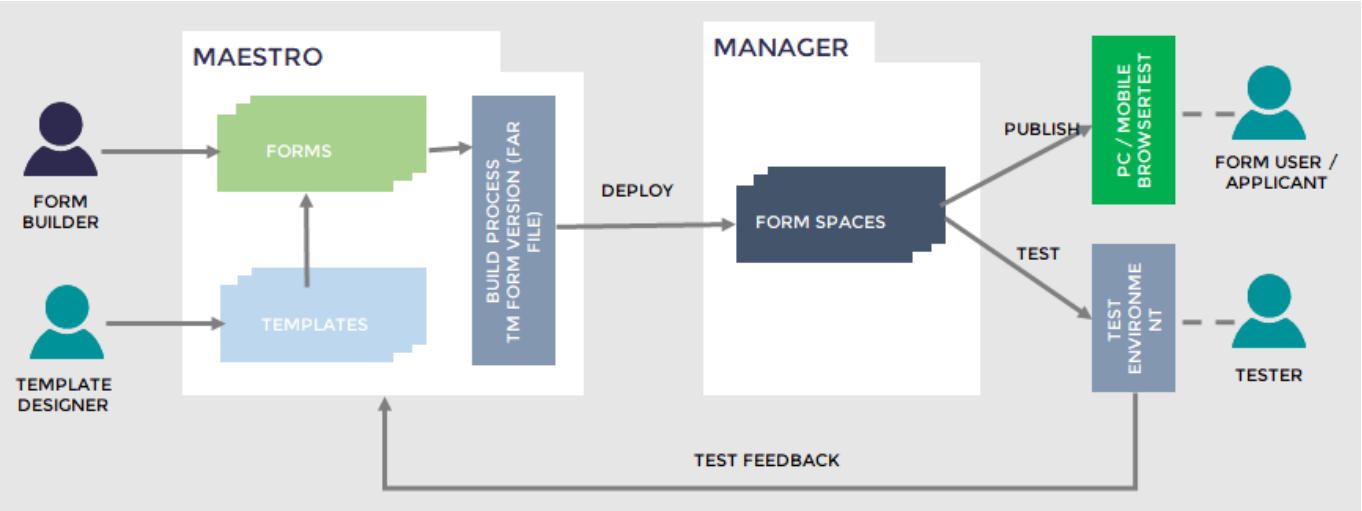
Organizations, projects and forms make up the three-tired hierarchy that allows you to minimize configuration effort yet maximize development efficiency by using a correct scope while defining and configuring a form.

Maestro relies on Journey Manager to host forms, process user inputs and store all relevant information to ensure a form user gets the best onboarding experience. Therefore, Manager has the similar concept of entities as Maestro, plus it also includes back-end configuration and data that are not exposed to web-based forms.

The diagram below shows the main entities of Maestro, communication with Manager and interaction with form users (applicants), Form Builders and Template Designers.




A typical Maestro form goes through several stages of the customer journey experience, such as, Prefill, Data Capture, Save and Resume, Payments, Notifications, and Collaboration between various participating or approving parties. Some of these stages have an impact on a form's design. Let's explain it with the diagram below, which outlines the development workflow that Maestro provides to Form Builders and Template Designers to create a customer journey.




This workflow begins with a template designed in Maestro by a Template Designer. Once the template is created, Form Builders can start work on new forms based on the template, taking advantage of the common features built into the template and maintaining compliance with brand guidelines. The Template Designer can continue adding to the template incrementally, even while Form Builders are creating forms based on the template, without affecting any forms in progress.

Once a form is implemented, the Form Builder can build the form and import it into Manager. After importing, the form can be tested across multiple environments and, if needed, further improvements can be made before the form is published into a production environment for customers to use.

Maestro forms move through various events of the journey experience, which is a sequence of events that include prefill, data capture, save and resume, payments, notifications, and collaboration activities between parties.

Next, learn about Management Dashboard.

# Journey Exchange Overview

Exchange Pre-configured Maestro services. | Platform Developer | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

The Journey Exchange is a catalog of pre-integrated FinTech[1] applications written for Maestro, such as Mitek, FIS, Mastersoft, and LexisNexis, to extend the power of the Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) platform.

These third party integration packages are made available to our Journey Manager customers for use in their online customer applications. A list of published and available packages per region is maintained at: Exchange Packages

The Journey Exchange catalog has been integrated into Journey Manager from 18.05 to allow you to easily download Exchange packages directly into your Manager environment.

You will need Exchange permissions to be able to do this. However, for all earlier versions of Manager, a zip file gives you access to the Exchange package services and Maestro assets. To find out more, refer to:

- Package Installation
- Exchange Permissions
- Package Configuration

Watch this video for an introduction to the Exchange.

[1] Financial Technology, also known as FinTech, is a new industry that uses new technology and innovation to improve activities in finance. It aims to compete with traditional financial methods in the delivery of financial services to customers by improving customer experience, reducing time-to-market, decreasing cost to mention a few.

Overview of the
Avoka Exchange
Compatibility requirements
Available from 18.05
AVOKA

# Contacting the Exchange Team

You can contact the Exchange Team to suggest an idea or raise a support request through the Temenos Support portal:

Need to log an idea or issue?

The Support Handbook shows you how to log them in the Support Portal.

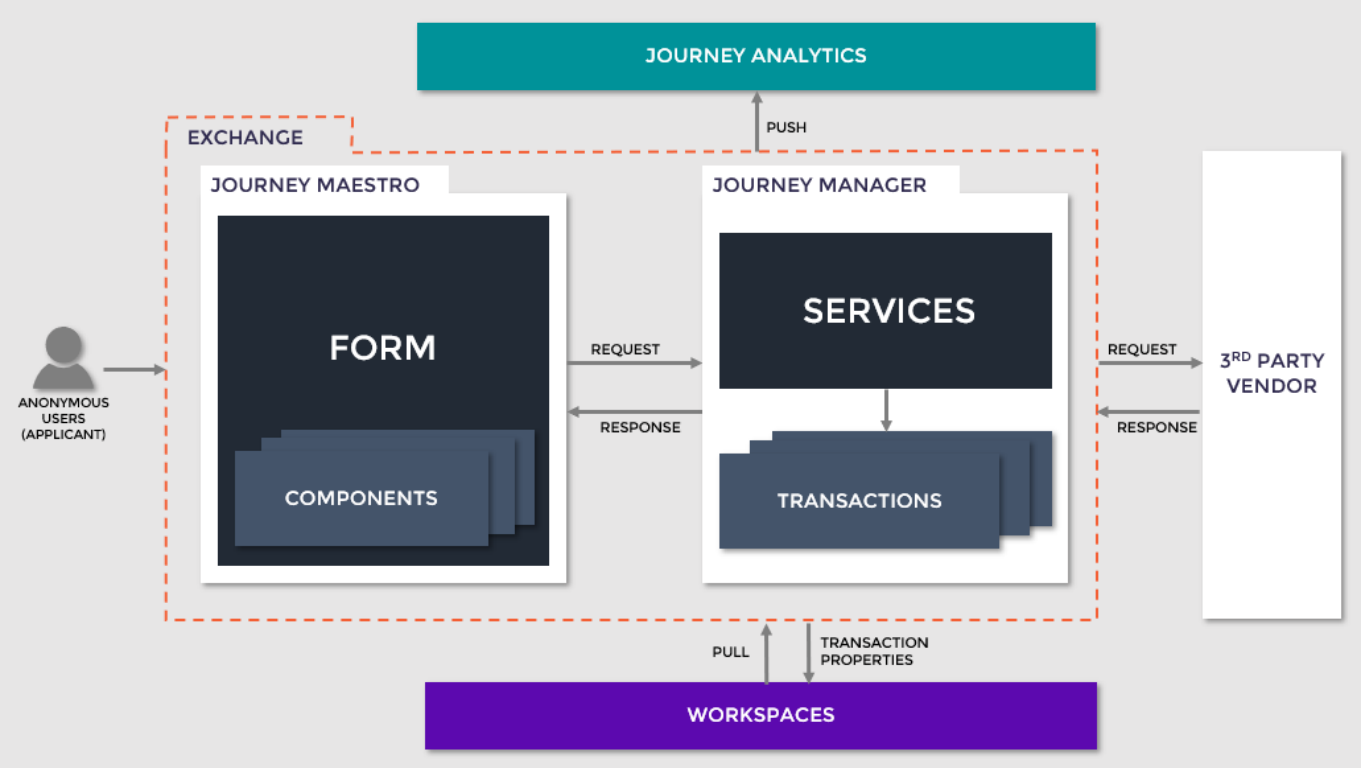
1. Ensure you're using the original Exchange package (not modified services or Maestro assets). * Support is only provided if the Manager services or Maestro assets have not been changed.
2. Include your Manager, Maestro and Exchange package versions.
3. Capture / reproduce the steps taken using a Maestro template (blank, Maguire, Blue Steel or Avalon). This is essential so that we can replicate the issue in our own environment.

# Exchange Package Architecture

All Exchange packages are based on the same architecture and interact with Manager and Maestro in the same manner.

As the user interacts with an Exchange package implemented in their application (form), the third party services are called via Manager, and these events are recorded in Journey Analytics, the platform's analytics tool, to be further analyzed in the future.

The transaction properties of the user's application are also sent to the Workspaces portal, so the application life cycle can be reviewed by the Workspaces users.



# Exchange Development Schedule

More Exchange packages are always being developed.

Packages being considered for development are here: Development Schedule

# Exchange Partnerships

Interested in becoming an Exchange Partner and publishing your own solutions?

The Exchange Partner Program is designed to allow your team to participate in the Avoka Exchange service by developing, certifying and publishing your own solutions. Find out what is involved:

- The Exchange Publishing Process
- Exchange Certification
- Developer Resources

# Exchange Developer Resources

Looking for answers as you develop? Let us assist you to get your Exchange package built, certified and published.

We've got some important tips and guidelines that are a great place to start: Developer Resources

# Journey Workspaces Overview

WorkspacesThis topic relates to Journey Workspaces | Workspaces UserIncludes bank staff, helpdesk, relationship managers, and managers | 18.11This topic was introduced with the 18.11 release | 22.10This topic was updated for the 22.10 release

Efficient resolution and assistance for customers is an essential part of omni-channel customer acquisition. Journey Workspaces, powered by Journey Manager, is an integral module of the Temenos Journey Manager that enables your organization to improve the quality of customer experience with onboarding assistance, rapid resolution, and communication of progress, regardless of the channel they are applying from.

## What is Workspaces?

Journey Workspaces is a highly configurable and feature-rich business portal for banking staff, designed to support resolution and customer service activities related to account opening and onboarding directly in the account opening process. Workspaces supports a digital workflow for in-bound applications that enables bank staff to initiate, review and resolve customer applications, and provide great customer service. Bank staff are offered an efficient method of receiving, tracking, organizing, and resolving pending applications that improves both their productivity and the accuracy of the application review process.

In the Workspaces portal, you can search and filter to find an application then view all the key application details, enabling bank staff to provide a richer customer assistance experience and make an informed decision about an application's outcome. You can filter and assign applications for review based on criteria such as workloads, decision status, risk, or incomplete application data. Application assignment features enable managers to control staff workloads, helping to reduce the onboarding delays that can lead to customer dissatisfaction. Throughout the account opening process, Workspaces captures notes and user- and system-initiated actions that document an easy-to-understand audit trail of the application life cycle. With visibility into all the application information at your fingertips, you can quickly resolve pending applications with a final decision and communicate back to the applicant to increase customer acquisitions and improve customer service.

Out of the box, Workspaces comes with a collection of thoughtfully designed, pre-tested templates for several role-based spaces that facilitate processing, helpdesk, and

application management activities as well as kick-starting applications on behalf of customers and monitoring their progress. These templates represent common work scenarios and take advantage of third-party integrations to add meaningful features. The templates accelerate the installation and configuration process and can also be used as the basis for your own custom Workspaces experience.

# Who is Workspaces for?

Workspaces provides features for several user types or purposes.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Review** | Processing Staff | Workspaces offers review capabilities for pending applications that need manual action. |
| **Support** | Helpdesk Staff | Workspaces allows support staff to find any application that needs further assistance quickly and easily. |
| **Assist** | Assisted Channel Staff | Workspaces allows assisted channel staff to kick start the application process and track application progress. |
| **Manage** | Managers / Supervisors | Workspaces provides tasks management capabilities for managers. |
| **Applications** | Authenticated Applicants | The Workspaces Applicants space offers a self-service portal for managing application creation, follow-ups, and keeping track of application progress. |

To learn more about the Workspaces Applicants space, see Workspaces Applicants Space Overview, The Applicants Space Search Screen, and The Applicants Space Details Screen.

# Getting Started

## Configuration

Workspaces is a highly configurable product, so we provide a set of default configurations to get you up and running faster. You can download the Workspaces distribution, including the default configurations. More information is available in the Workspaces technical documentation to help you configure your Workspaces portal to meet your needs.

## Browser Support

Journey Workspaces has been designed for and tested against the following web browsers.

- Google Chrome
- Mozilla Firefox
- Microsoft Edge

NOTE

Journey Workspaces support for Internet Explorer is discontinued. For details, see Update on TJM Support for IE11.

For the best experience, we recommend that you use the latest version of Chrome, Firefox, or Edge, and that you keep your browser updated, especially through the application of security patches.

While you may be able to access Journey Workspaces using other browsers, there's no guarantee that everything will work, and you may not enjoy the great user experience available when using a supported browser. We strongly recommend that you use a supported browser for the best Journey Workspaces experience.

## What's new?

Here's some information to help you discover the great new features and improvements in each Workspaces release.

- 23.04
- 22.10
- 22.04
- 21.11
- 20.05
- 19.11
- 19.05
- 18.11

Key features included in this release:

- **Improved UI and UX:** Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants have a fresh new user interface and improved user experience.
- **Table row expansion:** Expand table rows on the List, displaying additional information as a custom card.
- **Dedicated application and task panes:** An improved application details screen with dedicated panes for application- and task-level content.

- **New task switcher:** A new task switcher makes switching between tasks in an application seamless.
- **Consolidated notes:** A dedicated Notes card brings all notes added across an application together in one location.
- **Reply to notes:** A new comments feature lets users reply to any application note and view all the replies as a threaded conversation.
- **Simplified application timeline:** A streamlined application timeline feature that displays just the different stages of application progression.
- **Custom card enhancements:** Including:
  - Support for an alert icon on custom card tabs
  - Customize the link icon for invoking a fluent function
  - Tooltips for link icons in custom cards
  - Restored the numerical information display as a chart
  - Extended table cards support tables as a subsection
- **Error framework improvements:** The error reporting framework provides additional information about mapping field configuration errors.
- **Receipt improvements:** Improvements to the receipts data source to ensure Workspaces users can view receipts across the application.
- **Mobile responsive design:** A fully responsive Journey Applicants app for desktop and mobile in both landscape and portrait orientations.
- **Improved modal windows:** Modal window improvements include an optimized viewing area based on its content type.
- **Material icons:** Configuration now supports using any Material icons in Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants.
- **Data source improvements:** Configure the Workspaces List screen using data from job properties in addition to the transaction metadata.
- **On-screen configuration editor:** Improvements to the **experimental** on-screen Workspaces configuration editor including a preview of changes.

Key features included in this release:

- **Improved UI and UX:** A fresh new user interface for improved user experience.
- **Support for white-label themes:** Allows dynamic branding based on the logged-in user.
- **Space Grouping:** Group related spaces under the new hamburger menu which also shares reusable configurations.

- **Custom Card Grouping:** Improved custom cards that now allow several custom cards to be grouped within tabs.
- **Fluent Functions:** Native support for invoking Fluent Functions in Workspaces; available for custom actions, custom card links, and as a data source for custom cards.
- **Bulk Actions:** Perform a bulk operation of several commonly used actions: claim, release, assign, reassign, withdraw, and recover.
- **Reassign Tasks:** Reassign tasks without needing to unassign them first.
- **Timeline Stepper:** A new timeline stepper feature that provides a tramline view of application progress.
- **Tooltips:** Tooltips are now supported to display additional information on the List screen's table and in the Details screen's key info card.
- **Improved Modal Window:** Enhanced with an optimized content viewing area, and an option to open forms in a new browser tab.
- **Rules Support:** Configuration now supports rule definitions to control the display of custom actions, custom cards, and the upload attachments button.
- **Material Icons:** Use any Material icons in Workspaces and Journey Applicants configurations.
- **Additional Data Sources:** Configure the Workspaces Details screen using data from the initial transaction's properties, Fluent Functions, and job properties in addition to the current transaction's metadata.
- **On-screen Configuration Editor:** A new **experimental** feature to edit Workspaces configurations from the Workspaces UI and preview the changes.

Here's what's new and improved in Workspaces 22.04.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **construction** | Improved build and deployment process | Improved version control in Product Artifactory that allows easy access to a specific Workspaces release. |
| **admin_panel_settings** | Operations Space | A brand-new Operations portal that allows operations staff and administrators to search and view TJM transactions when providing operational assistance to banks and their customers. |
| **picture_in_picture_alt** | Theme support in Applicant space | Apply a theme to the Applicant space to match bank branding and color schemes. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **speaker_notes** | Notes feature in Applicant space | A new notes feature in the Applicant space that allows applicants to communicate directly with bank staff for assistance during the application process. |
| **search** | Search improvements | Improvements to the Workspaces search feature, allowing the user to return to the parent view quickly after completing a search. |
| **view_timeline** | Timeline improvements | Improvements to the Application timeline feature to filter out tasks or transactions that are not required. |
| **speaker_notes** | Notes improvements | Improvements to the Workspaces notes feature to make it easier for bank staff to communicate with applicants in the Applicant space. |
| **build_circle** | Migration to new automation framework | Migration from the old web driver framework to the Nightwatch framework for API, config, and UI automation. |

Here's what's new and improved in Workspaces 21.11.

| | |
|---|---|
| Improved build and deployment process | An improved build and deployment process for Workspaces is now available from the Product Artifactory. |
| Applicant Space template | A fully configurable workspace for authenticated non-bank users to manage the application journey. |
| Support for Job Properties | Support for configuring the Key Info card and custom cards using the application's job properties. |
| Localization improvements | Support for switching the language within Workspaces, and other minor enhancements to the localization framework. |
| Search improvements | Configure search to include fields that are not part of the item list data. |

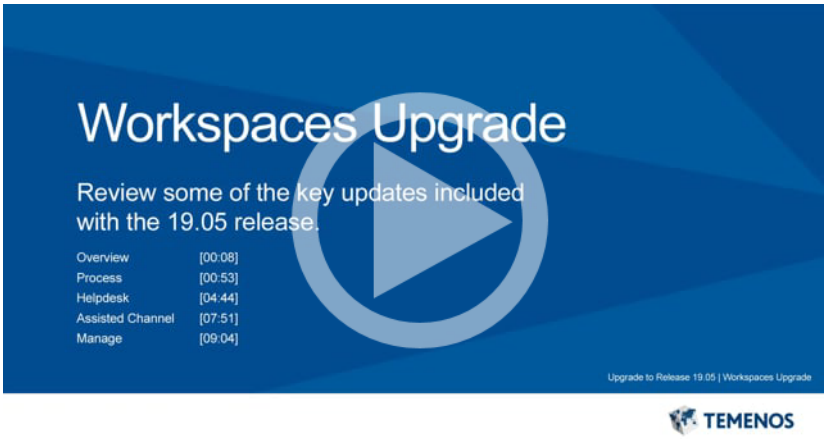
Here's what's new and improved in Workspaces 20.05.

| | |
|---|---|
| Improved build and deployment process | An improved build and deployment process for Workspaces that supports seamless integration to your DevOps practices such as CI/CD. |
| Task-specific actions | Task-specific actions are presented alongside each task in an application to give you confidence you are acting on the right task. |

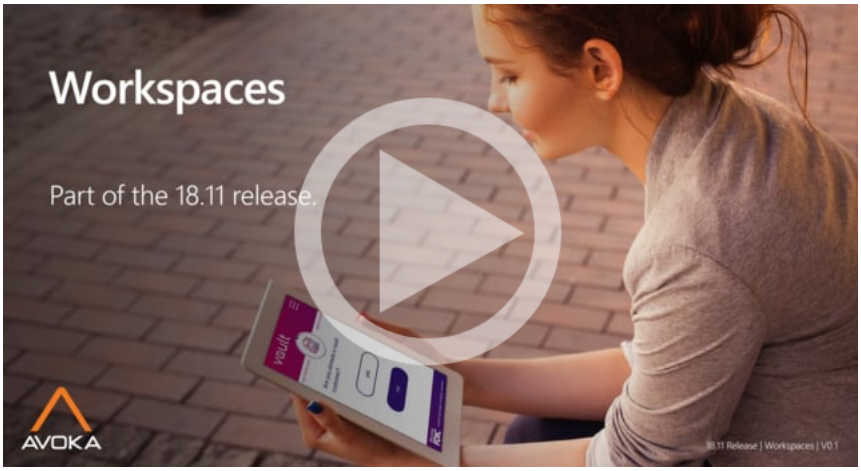
| | |
|---|---|
| Focused search | A new focused search option that lets you search on a specific application data item and get results faster. |
| Improved UI / UX | A fresh new user interface for an improved user experience. |
| Improved custom card configurations | Improved custom card configuration including permission control and an option to hide empty/null data. |
| Improved session logout | Automatic session logout after a defined period of inactivity. |
| Date picker enhancements | Enhancements to the date picker to support single date selection and custom date formats. |
| Enhanced search/-filter behavior | New search/filter behavior on the List pages: the latest search/-filter is retained in each space until cleared or the session ends. |
| Enhanced application assignment | The assignee full name is displayed when assigning a task to a user. |
| Enhanced application listing | An enhanced view configuration extending control over line wrapping in data tables. |
| Enhanced documents panel | Attachment name is now included for each item in the Documents panel. |

Watch this video to discover the great new features and improvements in Workspaces 19.11.

Watch this video to discover the great new features and improvements in Workspaces 19.05.




Watch this video to discover the great new features and improvements in Workspaces 18.11.


Workspaces
Part of the 18.11 release.
AVOKA
18.11 Release | Workspaces | V0.1

# Journey Analytics Overview

Journey Analytics The behavioural analytics tool. | Analytics User | Latest Version Latest version 23.04.0 cloud hosted.

Journey Analytics, formerly known as Transact Insights, is a purpose-built behavioral analytics module that provides additional extensive analytics on your applications hosted on the Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) platform.

Once set up, Journey Analytics aims to assist customers to track the performance of their applications on their Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) platform from an analytical perspective. Journey Analytics provides a wide variety of analytical views that capture completion analysis for one or more applications. As well as these features, Journey Analytics also supports rich filters that allow customers to understand the device type, browser and other attributes of the devices used to complete applications.

Journey Analytics must be enabled for Maestro, Composer or Open UX applications in Journey Manager to be able to collect Journey Analytics data.

A key value Journey Analytics offers is the behavioral analytics to assist our customers to understand user engagement with the form, the effort it takes to submit an application, and where users are abandoning their applications.

These fine-grained metrics help to identify abandonment hotspots in the customer application and further explore problematic fields to:

- Reduce the effort it takes the user to complete an application.
- Improve the user experience and onboarding [1] process.
- Optimize the application to drive conversion and completion.

[1] The steps required to get a new customer integrated into a new program. These steps may vary business to business.

## Analytics Views

Journey Analytics now offers eight main analytical views for both application performance analytics and user behavioral analytics:

1. Dashboard View – gives a high-level overview of application performance providing key metrics on completion, device distribution, completion times and recent completion history.
2. Timeline View – provides a trend of application statuses over a selected period. In addition, you can aggregate the data at various levels and split the data by device type, browser, application version and other options.
3. Dropoff View – provides behavioral analytics capturing key insights on user interaction with the application. It includes section and field level metrics that help to identify abandonment hotspots, problematic fields, and application flow.
4. Field Analysis View - provides detailed field-level statistics for each section of the application being analyzed. It also helps to identify abandonment hotspots by aggregating all field level behavioral data for all transactions during the selected time frame. In v18.05 and earlier this view is accessed through the Dropoff View.
5. User Journey View – this view provides a map of custom milestones implemented in the application and how users are progressing through them towards completing the application. It also provides insight into all possible journey paths users are taking to complete transactions, and allows customers to perform segmentation analysis of the users based on the data sent by the Segment APIs from the application form or Journey Manager. Introduced with Journey Manager 18.05.
6. Collaboration Job View - this view uses a node graph to represent the Collaboration Job workflow. It provides a view into key metrics at the job, step, action, section and field level. Introduced with Journey Manager 18.11.

7. Export View - this feature allows you to export analytics reports to CSV, with the ability to select the granularity of your reports and retrieve exports for multiple applications in a single file. Introduced with Journey Manager 19.05.
8. Custom Reports View - this view provides a customizable dashboard that makes it easy to compare the performance of your application versions, across many different metrics in a single view. Multiple analytics can be displayed in the form of report cards that can be arranged and resized in any location on the screen. Introduced with Journey Manager 19.05.

## Journey Analytics User Interface

The Journey Analytics User Interface is common to all analytical views. Use the interface to select the required analysis views, select the timeframe for analysis, and set global filters and preferences.

## Terminology

Journey Manager forms or applications designed in Maestro, Composer or Open UX are referred to as applications in Journey Analytics, and once a user submits the application in the browser it becomes a completed transaction in Journey Manager.

## Transaction Status

Transactions on Journey Manager may progress through any of the following statuses; Open, Bounced, Started, Saved, Completed, Abandoned.

## Strict No PII Policy

Transactional data entered by users is not stored in Journey Analytics, however, Journey Analytics does store information about the transaction status and user behavior events from the application. This behavioral data is stored and used to populate all the Journey Analytics analysis views.

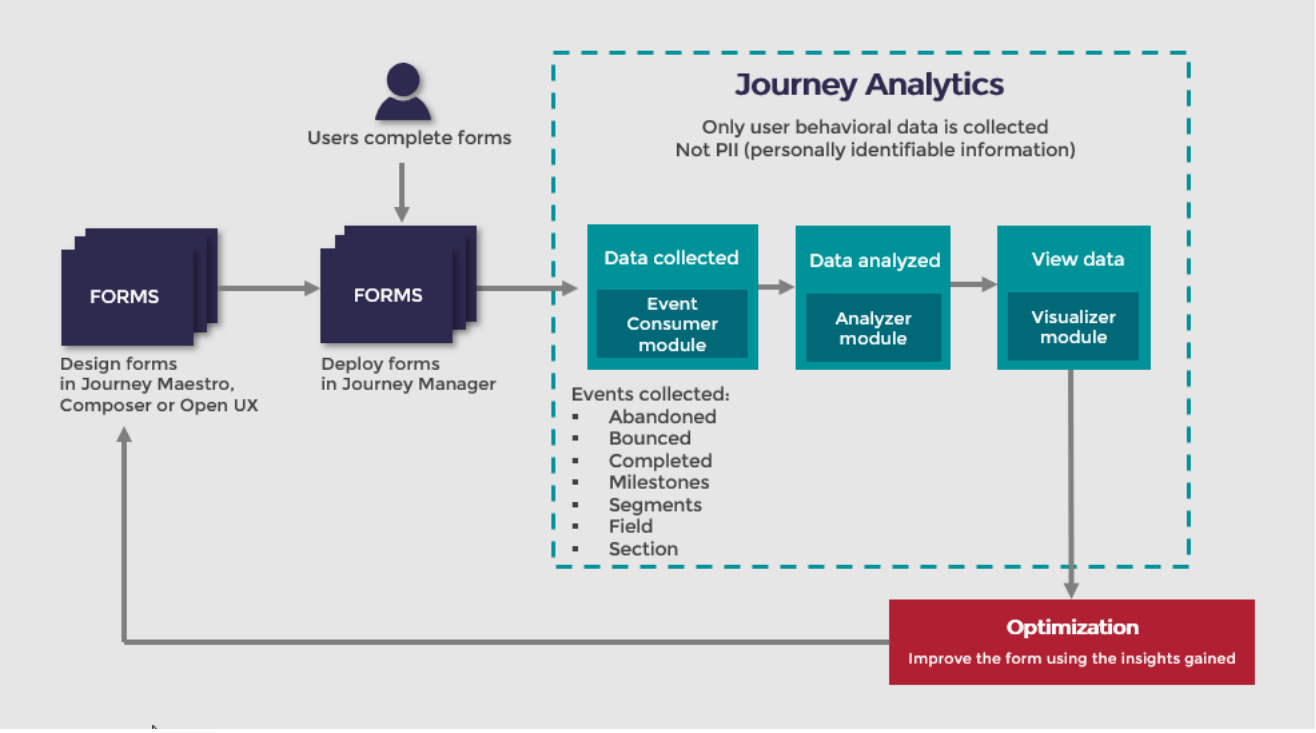
The transaction status and user behavior events DO NOT include any user input data itself and hence Journey Analytics DOES NOT collect any Personally Identifiable Inform-

ation[1] (PII). The Journey Analytics service has been explicitly designed to NOT record or store user input data and PII.

You may verify this by using the browser's F12 tool to monitor the network traffic of an Journey Analytics enabled application. Journey Analytics employs all possible mechanisms and strategies to NOT store data relating to PII. For more information, see Journey Analytics Data Privacy and Security.

## Architecture

Journey Analytics is built and hosted on the Google Cloud Platform (GCP) infrastructure. It is a fully managed service built using the GCP. The image below describes the high-level architecture of Journey Analytics and how it fits into the Temenos Journey Manager platform.




Journey Analytics collects events from two sources – Journey Manager and the browser where the application is rendered.

[1] Personally identifiable information (PII) is any data that could potentially identify a specific individual. Any information that can be used to distinguish one person from another and can be used for de-anonymizing anonymous data can be considered PII.

Journey Manager sends transaction status events and applications rendered in the browser send user interaction events. These two sources support the detailed statistical analysis of user behavior within applications.

The user interaction events from the browser include information such as - field visit, field completion, validation error, section navigation etc. These analytical events are directly comparable to the Google Analytics or Adobe Analytics events recorded by these analytics services. For more information, see Journey Analytics Data Privacy and Security.

## Setup and User Administration

Some setup and user administration is required to use Journey Analytics. Users must have the Journey Analytics user role and space added to their Journey Manager user accounts to be able to access Journey Analytics.

## Journey Analytics Open UX Support

Journey Analytics supports the Open UX framework via a separate npm package. For implementation details and an example Open UX React project, see Open UX.

# Retail DAO Overview

Springboard This topic is related to Springboard. | Form Builder | Retail DAO 4.0 This feature was updated in Retail DAO 4.0.

Springboard solutions enable US banks to rapidly deliver an outstanding digital customer acquisition journey using a ready-made solution on an extensible platform that grows with the financial institution. They are a starting point for customer projects, requiring far less development than a typical custom Temenos Journey Manager project.

This is achieved by pre-building many of the typical components required to support US solutions on the Journey platform. Examples of pre-built components include the option of a Product Selector, the Maestro Template and Forms, Functions including third-party integration and a standard Workflow or collaboration job to support manual review and decisioning.

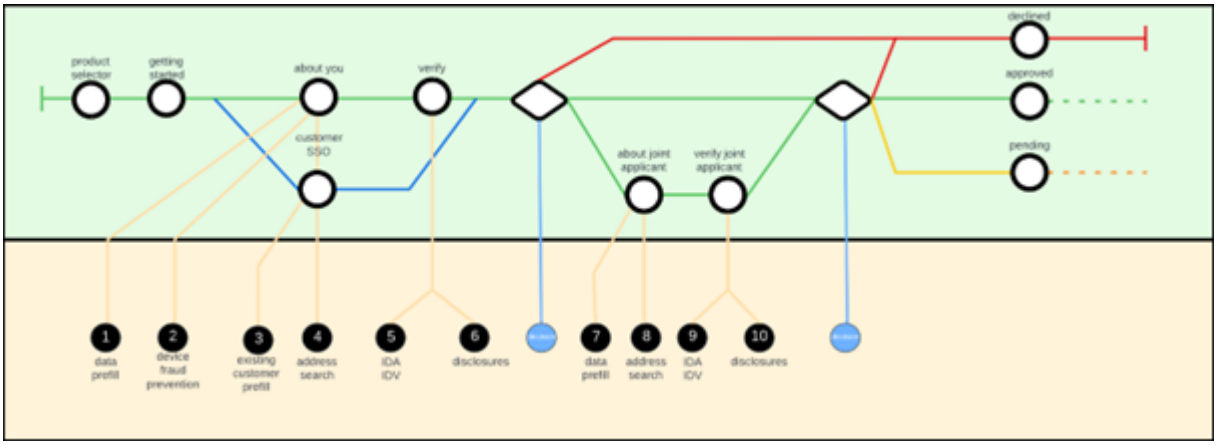
The Retail Springboard Solution for US Deposit Account Opening, Springboard Retail DAO[1] for short, is a ready-to-use solution to enable onboarding[2] of new and existing customers for US Direct Deposit Accounts (DDAs[3]).

For more information on each of the components supplied with the solution, see Retail DAO Components.

## Application Flow

A typical Springboard application flow is shown below.

[1]Deposit Account Opening ( DAO). DAO bank forms allow users to open Checking, Savings and Money Market Accounts.
[2]The steps required to get a new customer integrated into a new program. These steps may vary business to business.
[3]Direct Deposit Account (DDA) is simply a checking or savings account which offers the ability to send and receive funds electronically.




## Audience

This documentation is designed to assist your implementation team members with the initial setup of their local development environment, deployment of solution artifacts and configuration of standard solution components.

This document is also intended for all project team members:

- Project Manager
- Business Analyst
- Solution Architect
- Technical Lead
- Developers
- Quality Assurance Team

## Areas of Value

Springboard provides value to Implementation teams and our clients in several ways:

- Offers our clients a vision of what a best of breed DAO[1] solution should look like.
- Offers our clients a head start on developing a custom DAO solution by leveraging our best of breed Springboard solution.
- Serves as Temenos' current reference architecture for a Journey Manager / Journey Maestro DAO solution.
- Offers Implementation teams a framework for implementing a custom DAO solution.

---

[1] Deposit Account Opening ( DAO). DAO bank forms allow users to open Checking, Savings and Money Market Accounts.

## Prerequisites

To start using Springboard and get the most out of it, you need to be familiar with:

- The Temenos Journey Manager platform
- Journey Manager's services
- Maestro
- Narratives
- SCM
- Git

More information is available in our online documentation and on our resources website. We also offer instructor-led and online training (authentication required) on developing Temenos Journey Manager platform solutions.

## What Remains to Be Done

While substantial portions of the solution are pre-built, there is still work required for every customer specific implementation. Typically, the bulk of the work for a client should be focused into three main areas:

- Configuration/Setup - such as style/brand, labels, configurable options, deploying and testing components, testing integrations, etc.
- Core Banking Integration - to support account and customer creation, as well as other critical onboarding activities.
- Customization - which includes specific modifications to the project scope, which have been added to the project SOW (Statement of Work) or via CRs (Change Requests).

Next, learn about Springboard architecture.

# Adobe Reader PDF Form

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

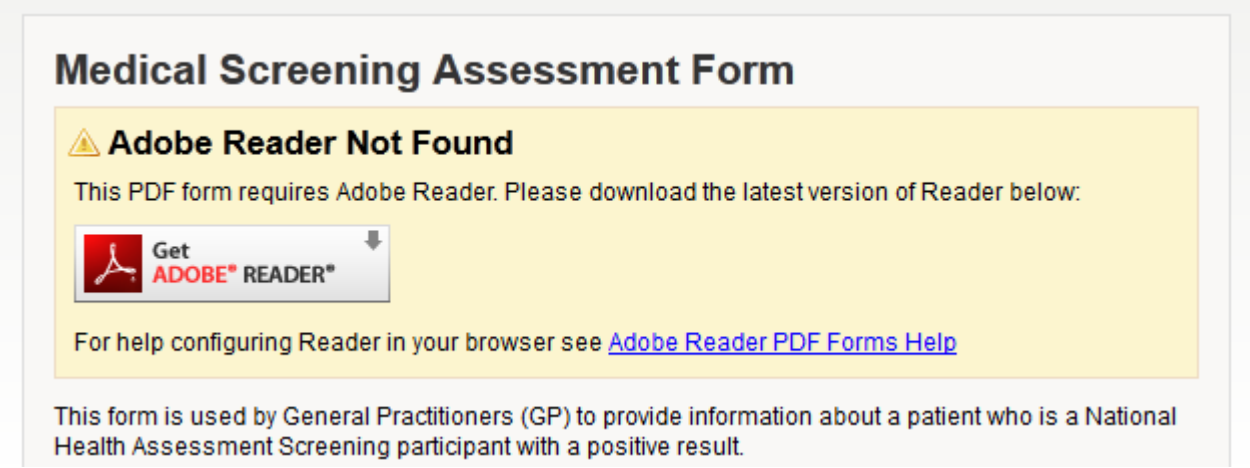
This article provides up to date information on how to get PDF Forms and Adobe Reader working on your computer.

NOTE

If you are using an Apple iPad, Android or Windows RT device, you will need to use a PC or Mac computer to complete your form. Currently XFA PDF forms are not supported on these tablet devices.

## Adobe Reader Not Found

This message is displayed when your browser could not find the Adobe Reader plug-in. This may be due to Adobe Reader not being installed on your computer or the plug-in is not configured in your browser.




To install Adobe Reader please download the free installer from Adobe at http://-get.adobe.com/reader/. We always recommend you use the latest version of Adobe Reader so you have the latest security updates have the best user experience. It is recommended that you don't use any versions before Reader 9 as these older versions are not supported by Adobe, and will not be updated to address the latest security threats.

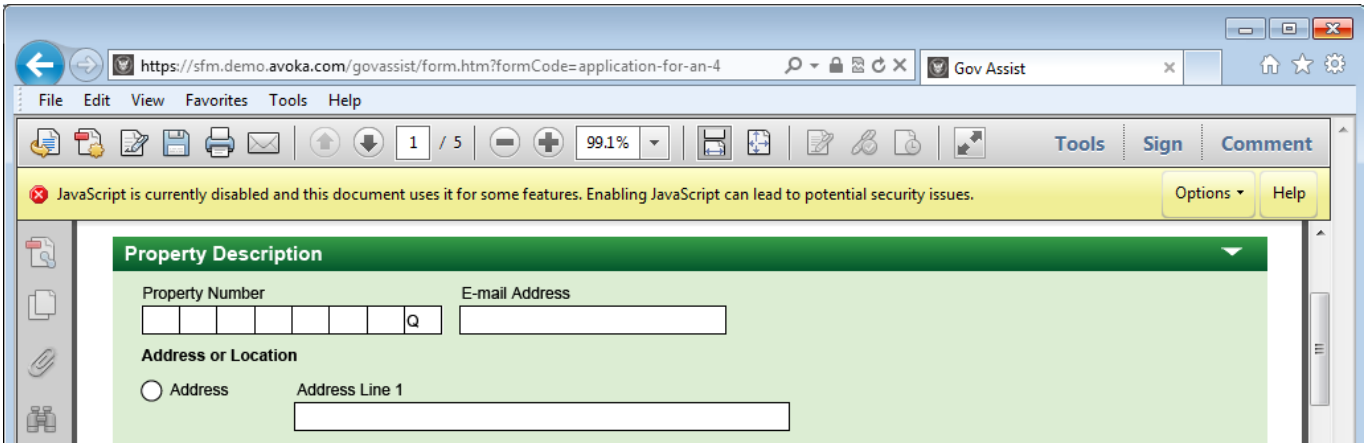
If you have Adobe Reader installed by its not available in your browser please check the following browser settings.

## Adobe Reader Update Required

If this message is displayed the PDF form requires a more up to date version of Adobe Reader. Please install the latest version of Adobe Reader from: http://-get.adobe.com/reader/

## Adobe Reader JavaScript is Disabled

If you open a PDF form and the following message ribbon is displayed then your Adobe Reader is configured to disable JavaScript.




Most PDF forms will not work without JavaScript[1] and you will need to enable it to complete your form.

To enable JavaScript:

1. Click on the Options ribbon menu and select the item 'Enable JavaScript for this document always'
2. In the 'Add to Privileged Location' click on the OK button

## For more information on particular browsers, see:

- Unsupported Browsers
- View PDF Documents in Chrome

---

[1]Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.

- View PDF Documents in Firefox
- View PDF Documents in IE 8 and IE 9
- View PDF Documents in IE 10
- View PDF Documents in Safari
- View PDF Documents in Windows 8

# Unsupported Browsers

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

A number of browser now no longer support Adobe Reader plugins and as such don't support in browser PDF forms. The browsers are listed below:

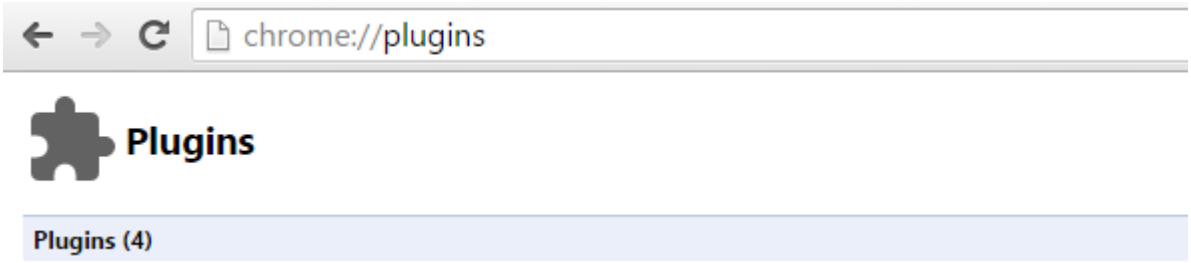
## Google Chrome

Google chrome now no longer supports NPAPI (Netscape Plugin API), which Adobe Reader utilized to run from within the browser. To use PDF forms now If you can try one of the following solutions:

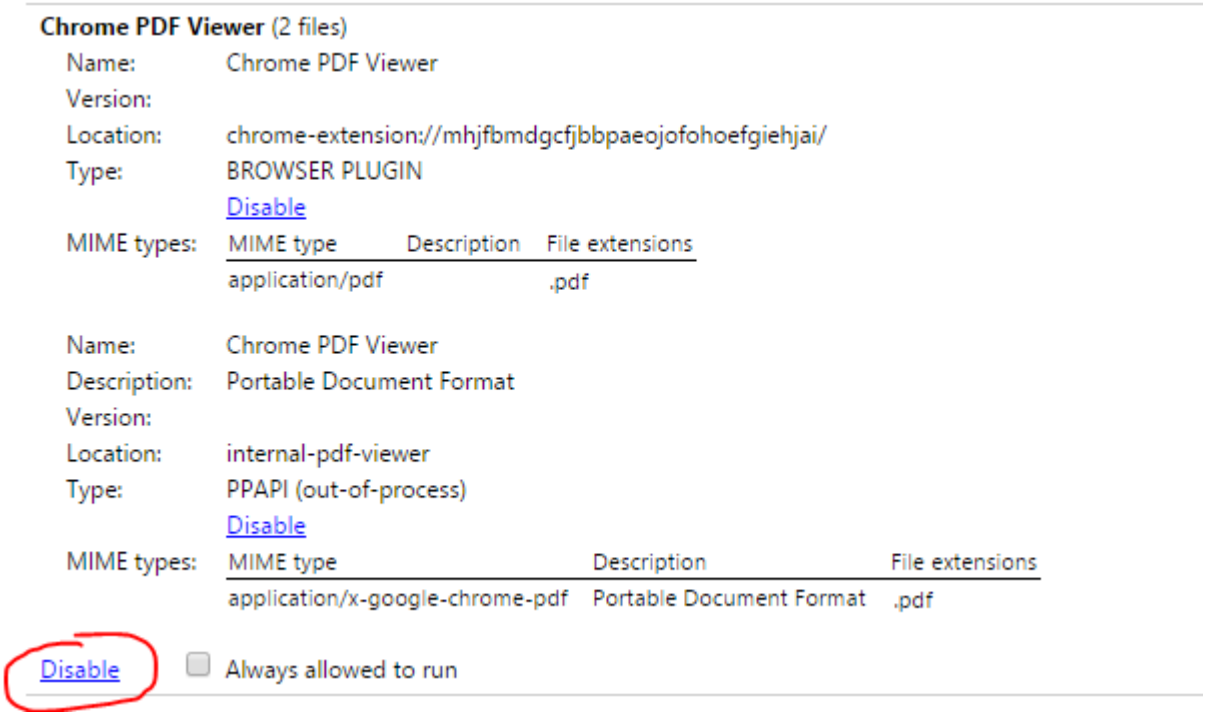
- Use a different browser, for example, Firefox or Internet Explorer.
- Disable reader, Chrome's default PDF viewer, so it will force Chrome to open the PDF in the default application for the PC, which can be set as Adobe Reader.

**To disable Chrome plugins**

1. Open Chrome and in the address bar type chrome://plugins




2. Click Details on the right hand side of the page.
3. Scroll down to Chrome PDF Viewer and click Disable at he bottom of the plugin information.




4. PDFs will now open to the default App on your machine.

## Microsoft Edge

The new Edge browser does not have any support for ActiveX plugins, which is what Adobe Reader uses in its browser plugins. Edge will open PDFs in the default PDF viewer app for your PC. If you still have troubles with PDFs in Edge, it is recommended that you use another browser, for example, Firefox.

Next, learn how to view PDF documents in Chrome.

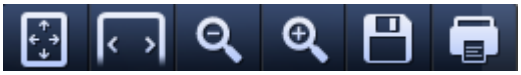
# View PDF Documents in Chrome

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

As we use PDF format for our application forms, you will need to get Adobe Reader working on your computer or in your browser. This article provides instructions how to use Google Chrome, a popular browser, to open PDF Forms.

By default, Chrome uses a built-in PDF viewer to open PDF files, so when you click a PDF link on a web page, the file opens directly in your browser.

The following controls are available in the lower-right area of the browser window:

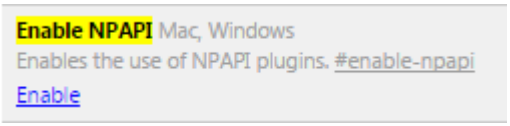


If you've disabled the built-in PDF viewer, Chrome will use Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader to display PDF files.

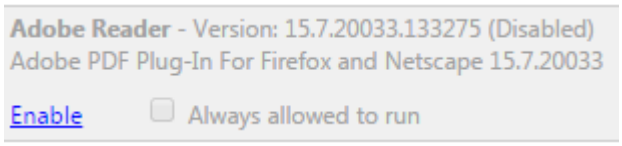
> WARNING
>
> Adobe Reader runs inside Chrome as a NPAPI (Netscape Plugin API) plugin. Google is phasing out support for NPAPI plugins from the Chrome browser. Since April 2015 (Chrome 42) NPAPI plugins have been disabled by default. It is possible to re-enable them via an override however from September 2015 (Chrome 45) this override will be removed and NPAPI support will be permanently removed from Chrome.

To re-enable NPAPI:

1. Enter: `chrome://flags/#enable-npapi` in the browser's address bar.
2. Look for the following Enable NPAPI entry.




3. Click Enable.
4. Restart Chrome and then enter `chrome://plugins/` in the browser's address bar.
5. Look for the following Adobe Reader entry.




6. Click Enable. This makes Adobe Reader the default PDF viewer inside your Chrome and consequently disables the Chrome PDF Viewer.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can set any of the plugin Enterprise policies, such as EnabledPlugins or PluginsAllowedForUrls, which temporarily re-enable NPAPI support.

After NPAPI support is removed from Chrome, if you need to use Adobe Reader inside a browser, you must use another browser until a replacement plugin becomes available for Chrome.

If you have enabled both NPAPI support and either the Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader plugin, but you are still experiencing problems please follow the following steps.

First check if the issue is specific to Chrome. Try opening PDFs in another browser on your computer, such as Firefox. If you experience similar problems viewing PDFs in another browser, the issue is likely not related to Chrome, so you need to visit the Adobe support site for additional help.

## Chrome Troubleshooting

If you are still having issues viewing PDFs and it is specific to Chrome, try the following solutions in the order that they arere listed:

## Check for updates for Chrome, Adobe Reader and Acrobat

1. Checking for Chrome updates here.
2. Check for Adobe Reader or Acrobat software updates here.

## Check your Adobe Reader and Acrobat settings

Follow the instructions below to confirm that either Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat is configured to display PDFs in the browser.

> WARNING
>
> Only one of the programs should be set to preview PDFs in the browser, not both.

1. In either Adobe Acrobat or Reader, select Edit > Preferences.
2. Click Internet.
3. Select the Preview PDF in browser or Display PDF in browser checkbox. If the checkbox is already selected, clear it, click OK, then go Preferences and select it again.
4. Click OK.
5. Follow the same steps in the other program, but make sure that the Preview PDF in browser checkbox is not selected.

## Repair your Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat installation

1. In Adobe Reader, select Help > Repair Adobe Reader Installation.
2. In Adobe Acrobat, select Help > Repair Acrobat Installation.

## Uninstall either Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat installation

If you have both Adobe Reader and Adobe Acrobat installed, they may conflict with each other. Try uninstalling one of the applications.

### Windows

1. Use the Add or Remove Programs function in your Windows Control Panel to remove either Adobe Reader and Acrobat from your computer.
2. Restart your computer after you have completed uninstalling the program.

**Mac**

1. Drag either Adobe Reader or Acrobat from the Applications folder to the Trash.
2. Remove AdobePDFViewer.plugin from the Library > Internet Plug-Ins folder.

## Uninstall and Reinstall Adobe Reader or Acrobat

1. Follow the steps from the section above to uninstall all versions of these programs.
2. Visit http://www.adobe.com/downloads/ to reinstall the latest version of Adobe Acrobat or Reader.

Next, learn how to view PDF documents in Firefox.

# View PDF Documents in Firefox

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

This article provides up to date information on how to get PDF Forms and Adobe Reader working on your computer.

## Using the built-in PDF viewer

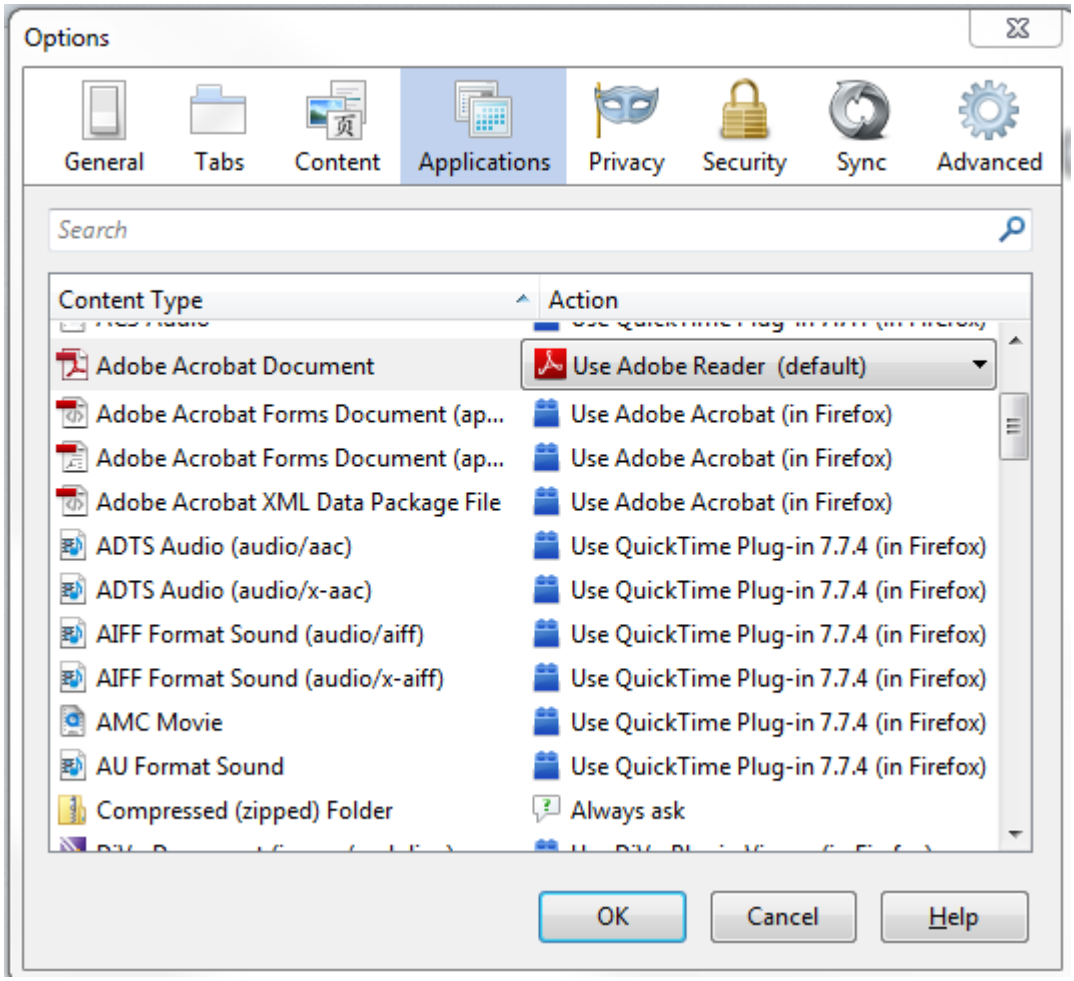
Firefox now includes a built-in PDF viewer that allows you to view almost all PDF files found on the web without a plugin. The built-in PDF viewer is enabled by default.

## Using a PDF reader plugin

To check what your Firefox browser is set to, go to the Tools Menu > Options and click on the Applications tab

To change from using the built-in PDF viewer to your PDF reader plugin:

1. Click Firefox at the top of the Firefox window and select Options.
2. Select the Applications panel.
3. Click Find Portable Document Format (PDF).
4. Select a desired PDF reader from the dropdown list, for example, Use Adobe Reader (default) in the Action column .




5. Click OK.

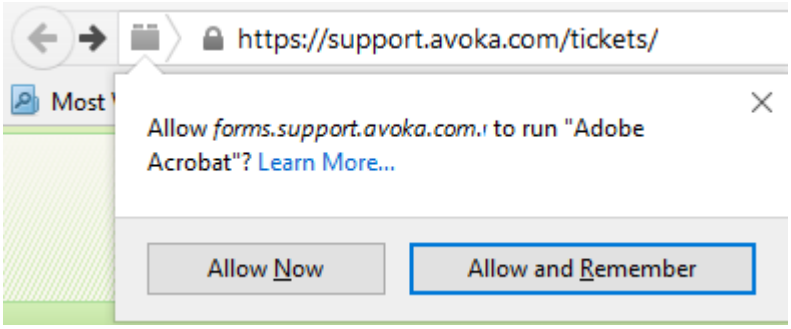
NOTE

The Firefox Software Update feature does not update installed plugins. For information about security and stability issues affecting Adobe Reader, see the Adobe security bulletins and advisories documentation.

To check if you have the latest versions of all your plugins, see plugin check documentation.

## If plugin is not working

Firefox can sometimes block plugins from working on certain web pages. If the PDF is not rendering check the plugin is allowed, click the plugin icon in the browser address bar and then click Allow and Remember.




### Testing the Adobe Reader Plugin

To test whether you are able to open PDF files, see Mozilla Privacy Policy PDF documentation.

### If PDF files are downloaded instead of displayed, try these solutions

To reset download actions:

1. Open your profile folder.
2. Click Firefox at the top of the Firefox window.
3. Go to the Help menu and select Troubleshooting Information.
4. Under the Application Basics section, click Show Folder. A window with your profile files will open.

> NOTE
>
> If you are unable to open or use Firefox, follow the instructions in Finding your profile without opening Firefox.

Next, learn how to view PDF documents in IE 8 and IE 9.

# View PDF Documents in IE 8 and IE 9

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

This article provides information on how to get PDF Forms and Adobe Reader working on your computer.

Internet Explorer is supported for use with Acrobat and Adobe Reader version 7.0.8 and higher. For versions of Acrobat earlier than 7.08, most functionality will work, but there may be issues with forms workflows.

If you run into any sort of issue, then you should upgrade to the latest version of Acrobat Reader (and if possible your browser version).

Internet Explorer 8 makes it more visible to the user which add-ons are enabled and disabled. This is done from the tools menu by selecting Manage Add Ons.

## Using an Add-on to view PDF documents within an IE8 browser window

When you install Acrobat or Adobe Reader on a system that includes a browser, you automatically configure the browser to open PDF files within the browser window. Acrobat and Adobe Reader install ActiveX plug-in files that allow you to use Internet Explorer or AOL to open PDF files.

If either application is installed, but PDF files don't open in the browser window, then work through the following steps to configure the browser:

## 1. Make sure that the system meets the requirements for the Acrobat product you use.

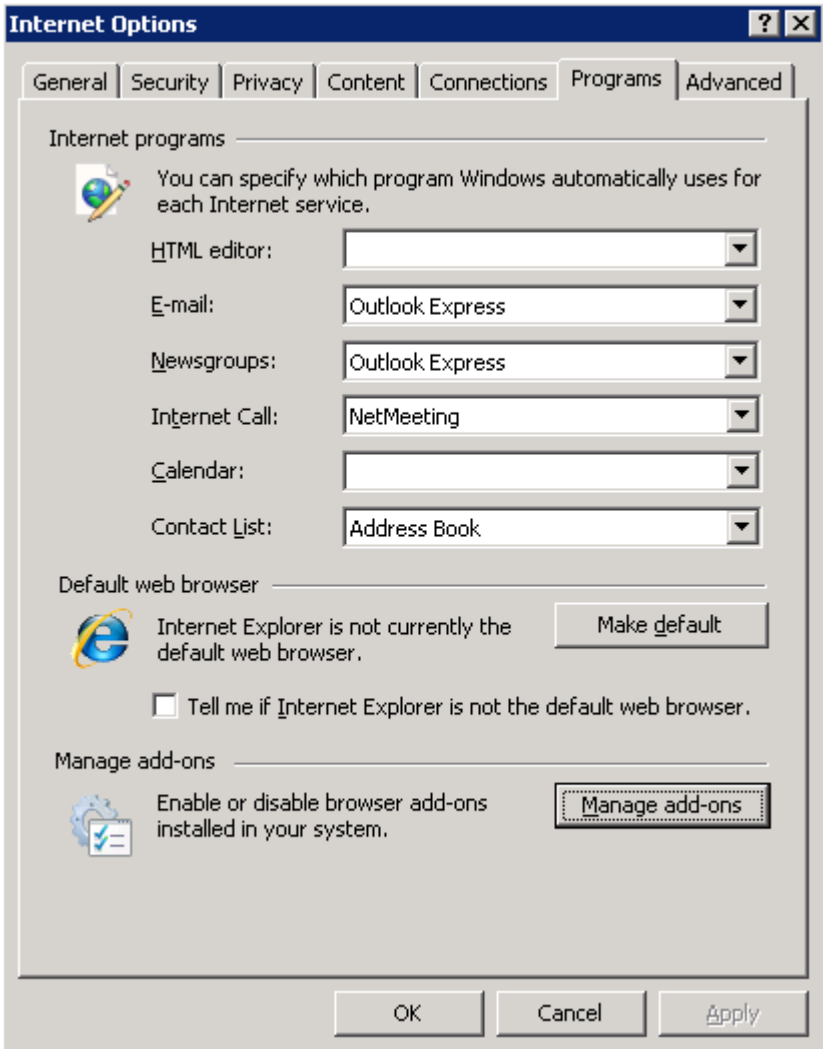
Acrobat may not run correctly if the system doesn't meet the following requirements:

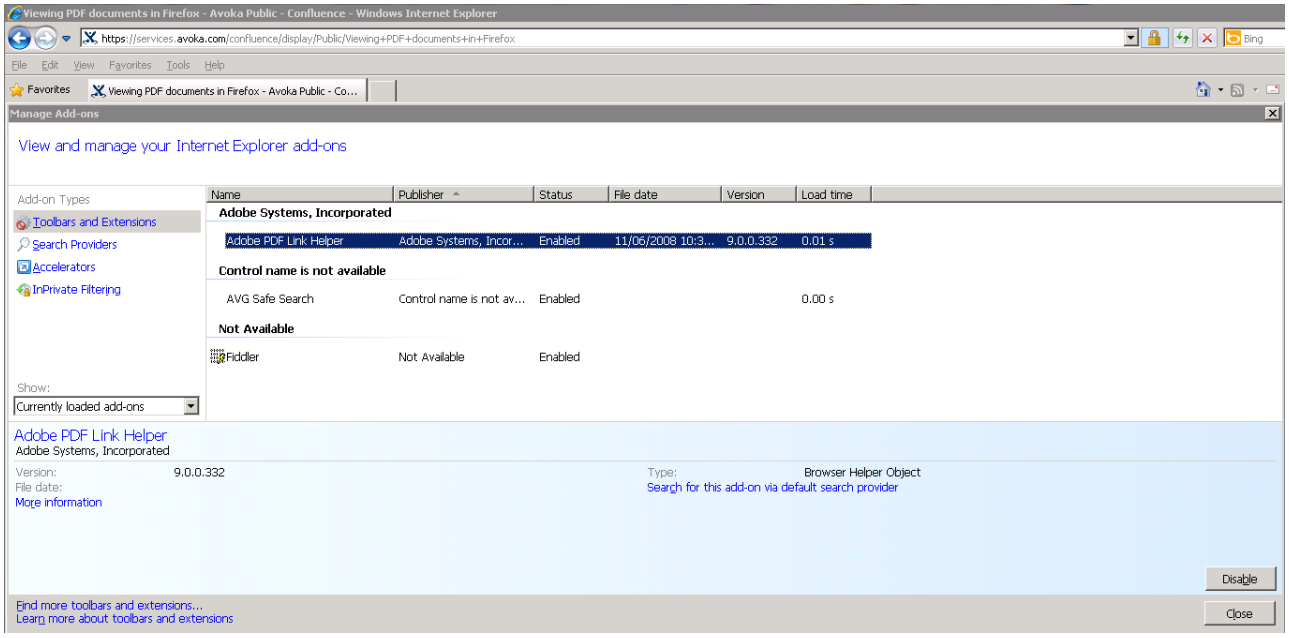
- Intel Pentium III processor or equivalent
- Microsoft Windows 2000 with Service Pack 4 or Windows XP Professional, Home Edition, or Tablet PC Edition with Service Pack 2
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0
- 256MB of RAM (512MB recommended)
- 860MB of available hard-disk space; cache for optional installation files (recommended) requires an additional 460MB of available hard-disk space.
- 1,024x768 screen resolution

## 2. Check your IE add-on

Internet Explorer 8 makes it more visible to the user which add-ons are enabled and disabled. This is done from the tools menu by selecting Manage Add Ons.

1. Click Start.
2. Type Internet Explorer and select Internet Explorer from the list.
3. Click Tools and select Manage add-ons.
4. Click Toolbars and Extensions under Add-on Types.
5. Select one of the following views of your add-ons under Show:
    - All add-ons - to display a complete list of the add-ons on your computer.
    - Currently loaded add-ons - to display only those add-ons that were needed for the current webpage or a recently viewed webpage.
    - Run without permission - to display add-ons that were preapproved by Microsoft, your computer manufacturer, or a service provider.




6. Click Close.

### 3. Make sure that the ActiveX folder contains files required for web browsing.

To open PDF files in a browser window, the ActiveX folder must contain the following files: AcroPDF.dll, AcroIEHelper.dll, and pdfshell.dll.

The ActiveX controls should be located in: Program Files\Common Files\Adobe\Acrobat\ActiveX

If any of these files are missing, then repair Acrobat or Adobe Reader by choosing Help > Repair Acrobat Installation, or reinstalling the application.

### 4. Use a supported version of the browser.

Make sure that you use a version of your web browser that Acrobat and Adobe Reader support.

Supported browsers for Adobe Acrobat 8, Adobe Reader 8 are Internet Explorer 6.0, 6.0 SP1, Internet Explorer 7.0, Firefox 15 or later, Mozilla 17, and AOL 9.

### 5. How to turn on and off add-ons

1. Click Start.
2. Type Internet Explorer and select Internet Explorer from the list.
3. Click Tools and select Manage add-ons.
4. Click All add-ons under Show.
5. Click an add-on, and then do one of the following:
    - Click Enable - to make the add-on available for use in the browser.
    - Click Disable - to turn the add-on off so it can't be used in the browser.
6. Repeat step 4 for each add-on that you want to turn on or off.
7. Click Close.

NOTE

Before you turn off a browser add-on, keep in mind that some webpages, or Internet Explorer itself, might not display properly if an add-on is turned off. We recommend that you only turn off an add-on if it repeatedly causes Internet Explorer to close.

## 6. To delete Active X controls

You can only delete ActiveX controls that you have downloaded and installed. You can't delete ActiveX controls that were pre-installed or add-ons of any kind, but you can turn them off.

1. Click Start.
2. Type Internet Explorer and select Internet Explorer from the list.
3. Click Tools and select Manage add-ons.
4. Click Downloaded controls under Show to display all ActiveX controls.
5. Click the ActiveX control you want to delete, and then click More information.
6. Click Remove. Administrator permission required If you're prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password or provide confirmation.
7. Repeat these steps for every control you want to delete.
8. Click Close.

For more information, see http://windows.microsoft.com/is-IS/windows7/How-to-manage-add-ons-in-Internet-Explorer-9.

Next, learn how to view PDF documents in IE 10.

# View PDF Documents in IE 10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

This article provides information on how to get PDF Forms and Adobe Reader working on your computer.

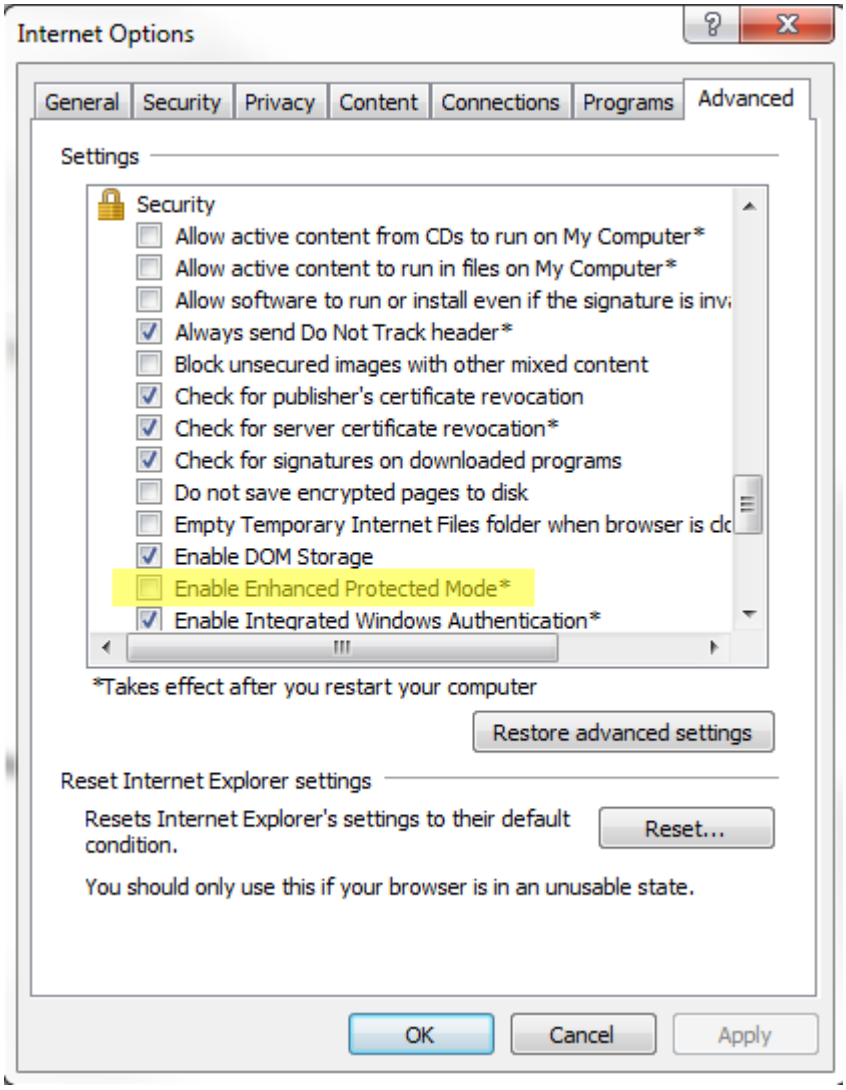
## Using the built-in PDF viewer

Internet Explorer includes a built-in PDF viewer that allows you to view almost all PDF files found on the web without a plugin.

If your PDFs are opening in a native application such as Acrobat Reader, check the IE settings as described below.

### Check your Browser Settings

1. Open the IE browser.
2. Select Tools Menu > Internet Options.
3. Click the Advanced Tab.
4. Scroll to the Security section and clear the Enable Enhanced Protected checkbox
5. Restart your computer and PDFs should now open in your IE browser.




6. Click OK.

# Still having Issues? Try these steps

## Method 1: Disable Add-Ons

1. Click Tools and select Manage add-ons.
2. Disable the add-ons by clicking them one at a time to highlight them and then click on disable button.
3. Re-enable the add-ons one by one and check with which Add-on you get this error message.
4. Disable the Add-on causing the problem.

## Method 2: Reset security settings for Internet Explorer

If you configure security settings to be too restrictive, you may prevent Internet Explorer from displaying certain Web sites. To determine whether an issue is caused by overly restrictive security settings, revert to default security settings. To do this, follow these steps:

1. Open Internet Explorer.
2. Click Tools and select Internet Options.
3. Click the Security tab.
4. Click Reset all zones to default level
5. Click OK.

## Method 3: Run the Internet explorer performance troubleshooter and check if it helps.

1. Press the 'Windows + W' key on the keyboard.
2. Type troubleshooter in the search box and then press enter.
3. Select Troubleshooting.
4. Click on view all and select Internet explorer performance.
5. Click next and follow the on-screen instructions.

## Method 4: Reset Internet Explorer 10

1. Drag the mouse to the bottom right corner and click on search.
2. Click Settings and type Internet Options.
3. Click Internet Options and select Advanced tab.
4. Click Reset.
5. Click OK.

NOTE

Please note that running Reset Internet Explorer Settings will reset all user-defined settings including those set by installed extensions, toolbars and other add-ons to IE Defaults. This includes all Security, Privacy and Zone settings. Also this will clear browsing history, delete all temporary Internet Files, cookies, form data and especially all stored passwords.

### Method 5: uninstall the Adobe Acrobat Reader and install the latest version.

Download the latest version at http://get.adobe.com/reader/otherversions/

If you have multiple Adobe Readers installed, uninstall them all then install the latest version. Adobe doesn't support multiple versions of Reader or Acrobat on the same computer. Multiple versions simultaneously installed can lead to software conflicts and errors. Uninstall all versions of Reader or Acrobat and then reinstall only one version of the product.

Next, learn how to view PDF documents in Safari.

# View PDF Documents in Safari

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

This article provides up to date information on how to get PDF Forms and Adobe Reader working on your computer.

The Adobe Reader and Acrobat stand-alone applications are unaffected and Safari 5.1 renders PDF documents natively.

However, the Adobe Reader and Acrobat browser plug-ins before 10.1.3 don't function as expected in LiveCycle and Acrobat workflows that require either plug-in to render PDF documents in Safari 5.1.

NOTE

Adobe Reader for XFA PDF forms is not available on iPad or iPhone devices.

## System requirements

Acrobat X and Adobe Reader X support viewing PDF files inside the Safari browser on Mac OS X.

For more information about system requirements, click these links for your product: Acrobat X Pro, Acrobat X Standard, Adobe Reader X.

Adobe PDFViewer for Mac OS X requires the following system requirements:

- Safari 4 for Mac OS X 10.5.8 and Mac OS X 10.6.4
- Safari 5 for Mac OS 10.6.4

- Acrobat and Reader via AdobePDFViewer Safari plug-in are 32/64-bit (64-bit available in Safari 10.6)

NOTE

If you don't have Acrobat or Reader, or haven't installed the PDFViewer plug-in, then Safari shows PDF files using the Mac OS X native PDF support. Support for many Adobe PDF workflows, such as the collaboration jobs or many forms and security features, is unavailable.

## Configuring Acrobat to display PDF files in Safari

The AdobePDFViewer plug-in is used to display PDF files in Safari using Acrobat and Reader. This plug-in is installed as part of the Acrobat X or Reader X installation.

The location of this plug-in on a Macintosh is `/Library/Internet Plug-ins/AdobePDFViewer.plugin`.

## Troubleshooting issues in Safari

Options include the following:

- Continue to use Safari 5.0.x and Mac OS X 10.6.
- Upgrade to Adobe Reader or Acrobat version 10.1.3 or later.
- Save the PDF file from Safari to the computer, and then open it directly in Adobe Reader or Acrobat.

For more information, see http://helpx.adobe.com/acrobat/kb/troubleshoot-safari-plug-acrobat-x.html.

## Known Issues

### Reader's Preferences > Internet > Display PDF in Browser is always dimmed

- To disable Safari integration, delete the AdobePDFViewer.plugin from `/Library/Internet Plug-ins`.
- To reenable Safari integration, rerun the installer over the current installation. Start the Acrobat/Reader X installer from the original media and follow the prompts to complete the installation.

### Uninstalling an older version of Acrobat or Reader after Acrobat X or Reader X has been installed removes the AdobePDFViewer plug-in

If Acrobat X or Reader X is installed alongside an older version of Acrobat or Reader, removing the older version removes the AdobePDFViewer plug-in.

To re-enable Safari integration, rerun the installer over the current installation. Start the Acrobat/Reader X installer from the original media, and then follow the onscreen prompts to complete the installation.

### Older versions of the AdobePDFViewer plugin can overwrite newer versions of the plug-in

Having multiple versions of Acrobat or Reader installed on the same system can cause plug-in conflicts. For example, suppose you have both Acrobat 9 and Acrobat X on your system and Acrobat 9 gets updated. In this case, the Acrobat 9 version of the AdobePDFViewer plug-in can overwrite the Acrobat X version of the plug-in. To correct the issue, follow these steps:

- Remove the previous version of Acrobat or Reader.
- Reinstall Acrobat X or Reader X from the original media.

Next, learn how to view PDF documents in Windows 8.

# View PDF Documents in Windows 8

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | v5.0 This feature is related to v5.0.

This article provides information on how to get PDF Forms and Adobe Reader working on your computer.

To make PDF forms work in Windows 8 you need to make Adobe Reader the default PDF Reader, as the Reader provided by Microsoft Windows does not support PDF forms.

Once you have Adobe Reader installed and configure please access forms with Internet Explorer in the Windows Desktop UI mode. To switch to Desktop mode press the keys `Windows + D`.

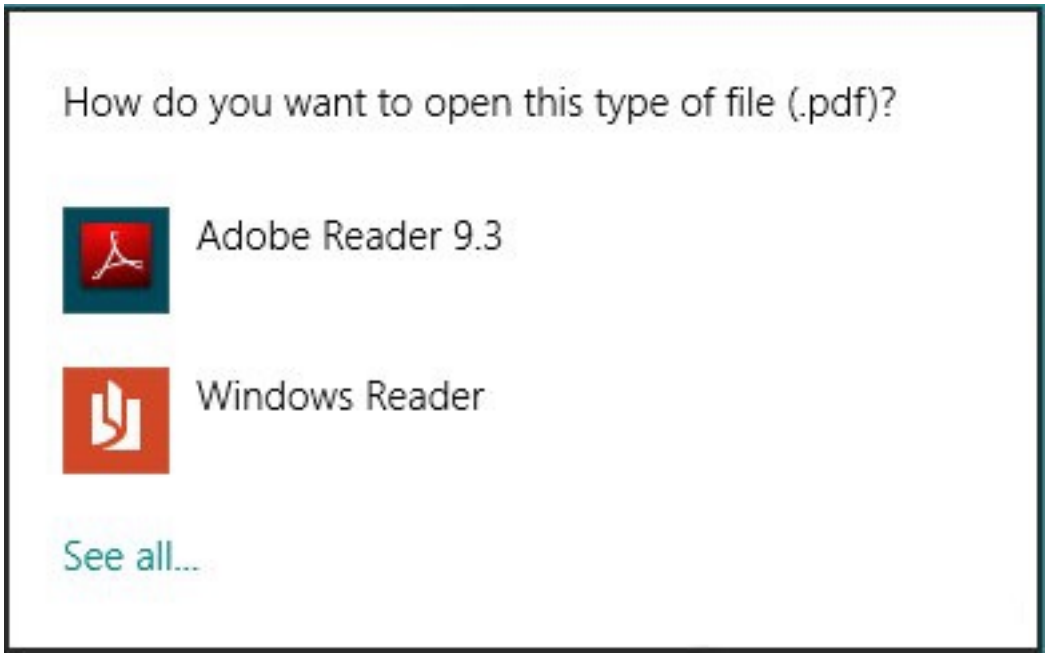
The Adobe Reader plugin is not compatible with Internet Explorer running in start screen or Metro UI mode.

To make Adobe Reader the default PDF Reader please follow the instructions below:

## Using Acrobat Reader to be the Default PDF viewer

Windows 8 doesn't associate Acrobat Reader as default application for PDF files after installing it. If you want to open all your PDF files using Acrobat Reader by default, follow the following steps:

1. Right click on any PDF file and click Properties.
2. Click Change against the Open With option to open a new window which shows valid applications associated with PDF files.




3. Click Adobe Acrobat.

NOTE

Once you have Adobe Reader installed and configure please access forms with Internet Explorer in the Windows Desktop UI mode. To switch to Desktop mode press the keys `Windows + D`. The Adobe Reader plugin is not compatible with Internet Explorer running in start screen or Metro UI mode.

Next, learn about unsupported browsers.

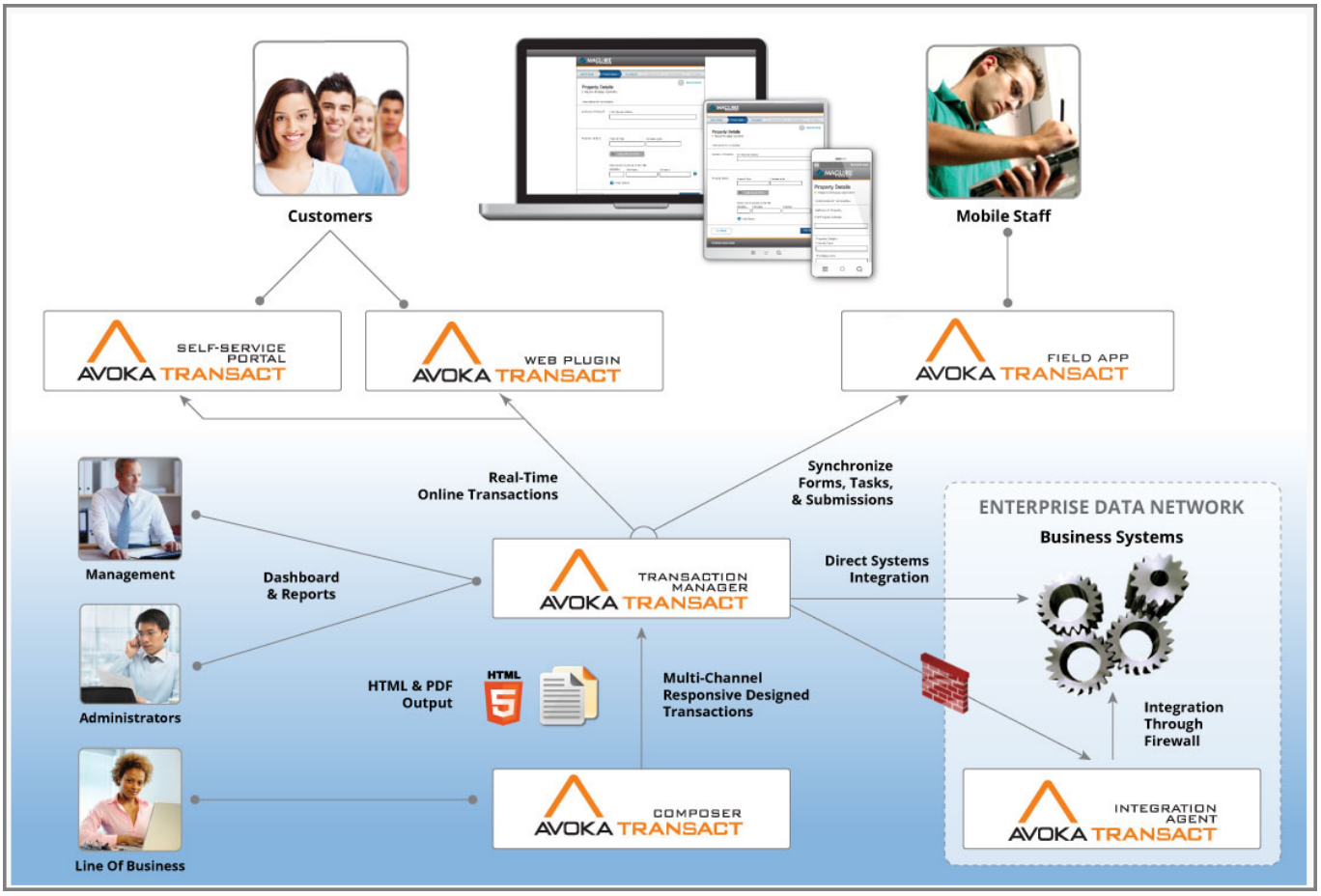
# TransactField App Overview

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.1This feature was deprecated in 21.1.

TransactField App works with the Temenos Journey Manager and enables mobile workers to do business whenever, and wherever, they require. It offers robust mobile capabilities and improves mobile workforce productivity by optimizing on-site data entry and making it easy for organizations to deliver quality service and measurable results, as well as speed up billing. Additionally, organizations can link the TransactField App to ERP[1] and CRM[2] systems to deliver work tickets, inspection jobs, and report forms to a mobile workforce – anytime, anywhere.

TransactField App runs on Apple and Android devices, Microsoft Windows desktop and tablet and synchronizes them with mobile data capture applications that are built using the Temenos Journey Manager. Interaction between TransactField App and the Temenos Journey Manager platform is illustrated with the diagram below.

[1]Enterprise resource planning (ERP) is the integrated management of main business processes, often in real-time and mediated by software and technology.
[2]Customer relationship management (CRM) is an approach to manage a company's interaction with current and potential customers. It uses data analysis about customers' history with a company to improve business relationships with customers, specifically focusing on customer retention and ultimately driving sales growth.




The TransactField App delivers the following capabilities to mobile workers:

- Allows mobile workers to take their forms with them out in the field and work either online or offline.
- Synchronizes SmartForms automatically to the device.
- Stores submitted form data temporarily on the device, completing the submissions when the user comes online.
- Enables forms to make use of device capabilities, including camera, geolocation (GPS), and scribble signature.
- Enforces security, including password protection and encrypted data on the device and over the wire.
- Provides full control over which forms go to which users through permissions and roles.
- Synchronizes to all apps when a new form or an updated form is deployed.

The following form transaction features supported by TransactField App and Self Service Portal. This table should help guide business on where to deploy their form transaction applications.

| Form Transaction Features | TransactField App | Web Portal |
|---|---|---|
| Offline Support | Y | N |
| Authenticated Access | Y | N |
| Anonymous Access | N | Y |
| Authenticated Save | Y | Y |
| Anonymous Save | Y | Y |
| Form Tasks | Y | Y |
| Form Group Access Control | Y | Y |
| Landing Page | N | Y |
| Terms & Conditions | N | Y |
| Attachments | Y | Y |
| Box Integration | Y | N |
| Card Payments | N | Y |
| eSignature and Wet Signatures | N | Y |
| Scribble Pad Signature | Y | Y |
| Email Verification | Y | Y |
| Prefill Service | Y | Y |
| Dynamic Data Service | Y (Available only when authenticated) | Y (Available only when authenticated) |
| PDF Form (XFA) | N | Y |

NOTE

The Self Service Portal does not support working offline or working in environments with very limited internet connectivity.

Next, learn how to get started with TransactField App.

# Getting Started with TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.11This feature was deprecated in 21.11.

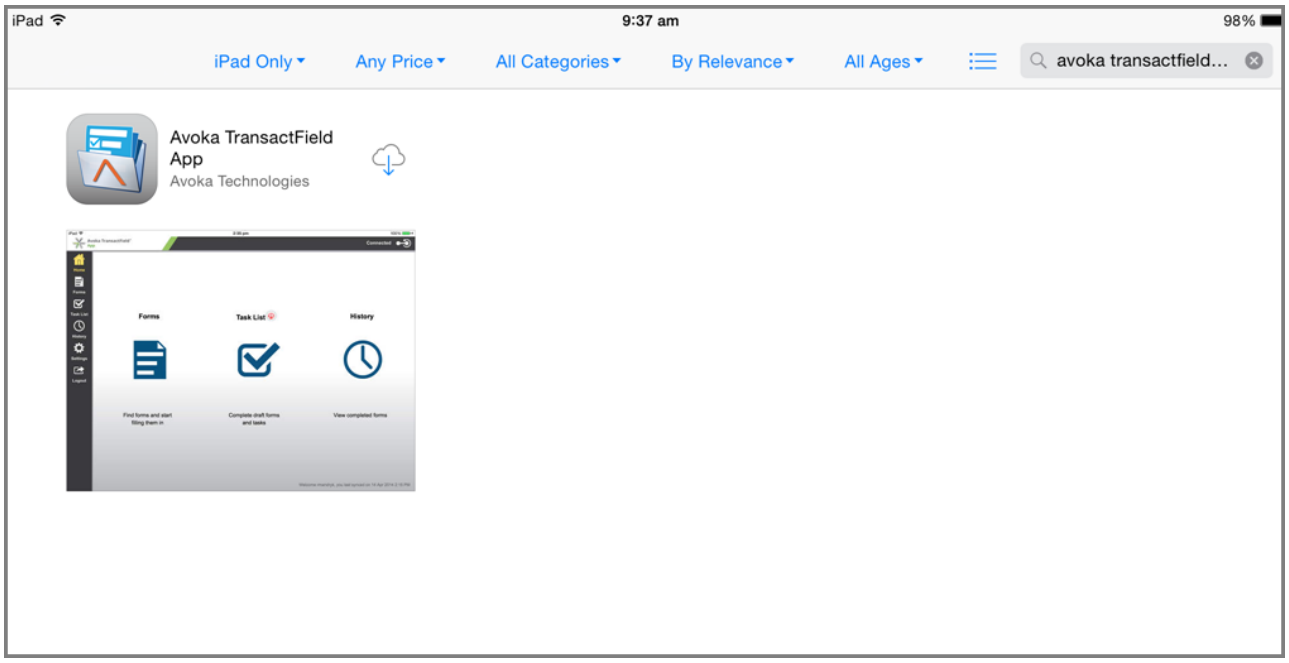
To use TransactField App, you need to install it on your device or a computer.

## Installation

You can download and install TransactField App from the Apple App Store, Google Play Store, and via standalone desktop version that runs on Windows 10.

To install TransactField App:

1. Locate the TransactField App application on the appropriate online application store.




2. Click TransactField App for more details, reviews and related information.
3. Click Install ("Free") to install the application.
4. Click TransactField App to open the application.

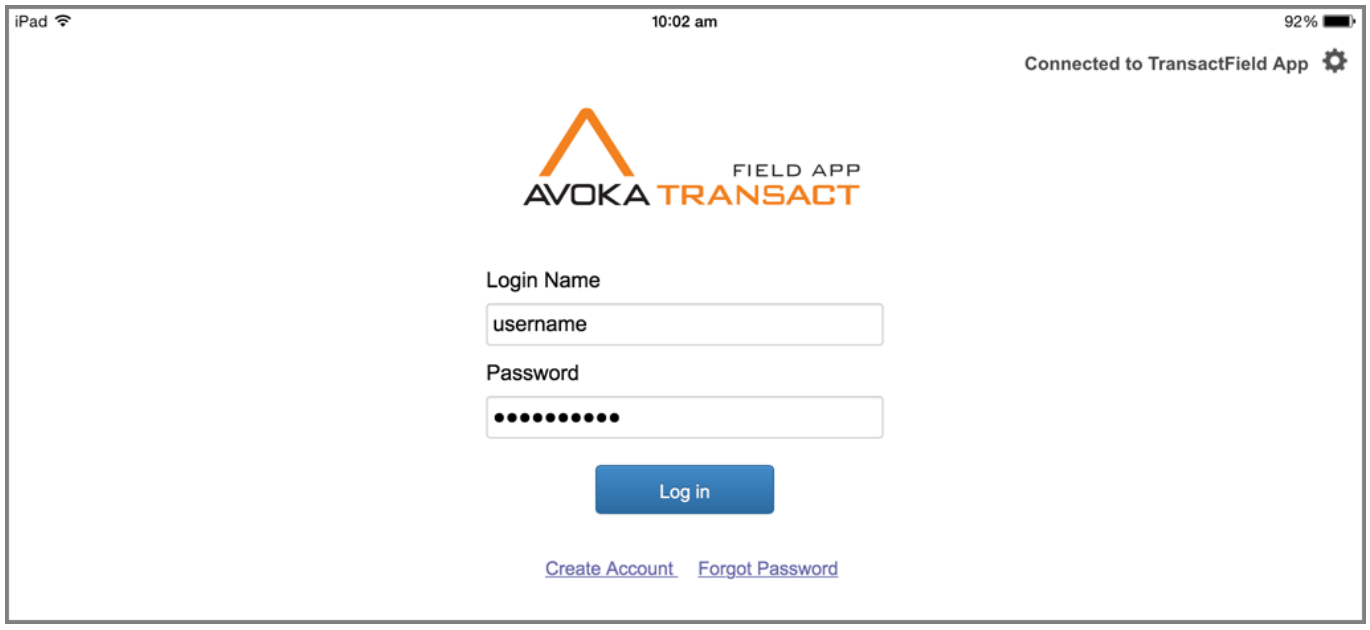
5. Configure the application.

NOTE

Don't uninstall TransactField App from the device, because it will delete all local not synchronized data. If you need to uninstall it, make sure you don't have any outstanding not synchronized work on your home screen. You should update TransactField App from the app store instead.

## Configuration

When you first launch TransactField App, you will be presented with the login screen as shown below.



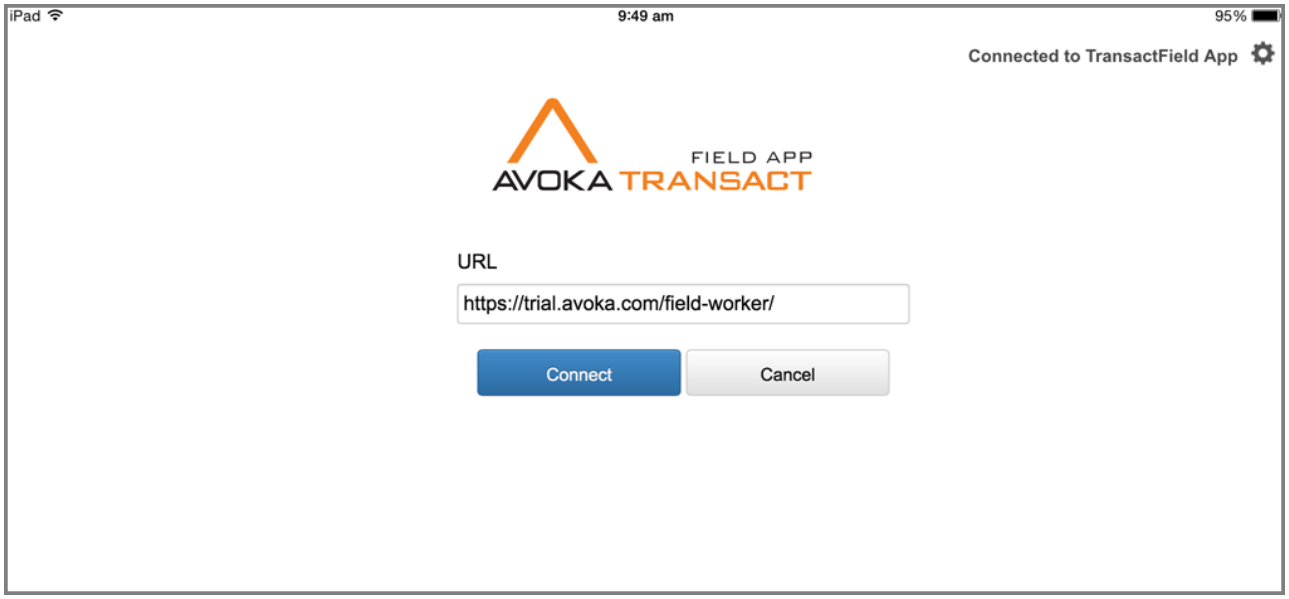

NOTE

If you can't see the Create Account button, refer to System Settings.

Each organization using TransactField App has their own Journey Manager server, which stores all the forms and submission and other relevant data. When you first install TransactField App, it is configured to use a standard Trial Server. You will need to configure it to point to your organization's Manager server. Your system administrator will send you information about which server you need to use.

To configure which Manager server to connect to:

1. Click Connected to.

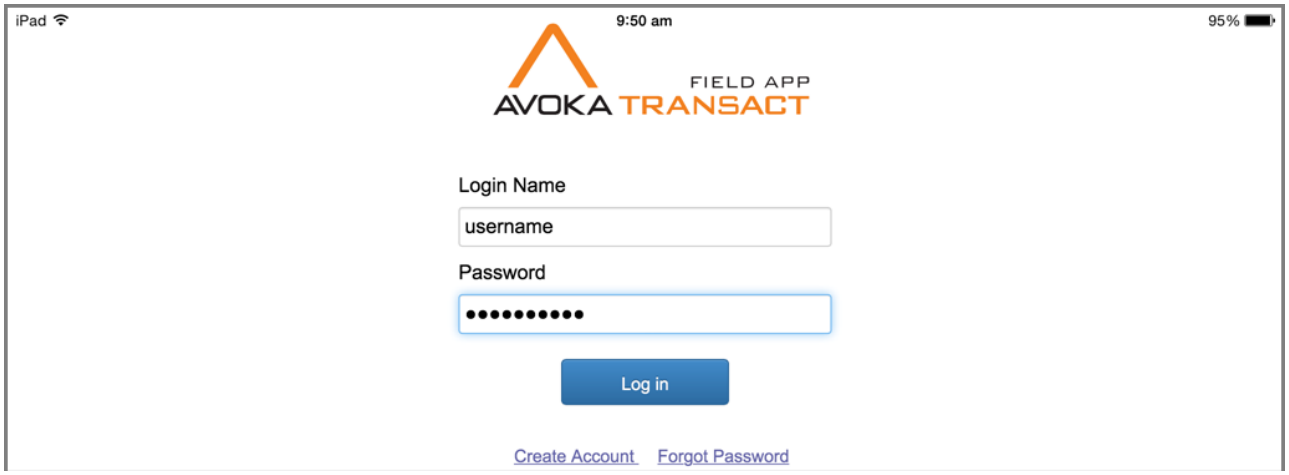



2. Enter the URL of your server.

> NOTE
>
> The default for users evaluating the app on trial is https://trial.avoka.com/field-worker/.

3. Click Connect.

4. Provide your Login Name and Password and click Log in or click Create Account.




NOTE

You will only need to configure the server once - TransactField App will remember the configuration.

NOTE

System Administrators can choose from a range of languages.

NOTE

Don't purge the device or change portal URL - this will delete all data from the device so you can not recover all unsynchronized data.

For more information on TransactField App configuration, see configure TransactField App.

# Log in

After launching TransactField App, you need to log into the server. There are several different ways to obtain your user-name and password.

## Self-registration

If security settings are configured, you may be allowed to create your own credentials in the system, as described below:

1. Click Create Account.
2. Enter your username and password.

### Credentials provided to you

Your system administrator have created an account for you already and have l provided a username and password to you:

1. Enter your username and password.
2. Click Log in.

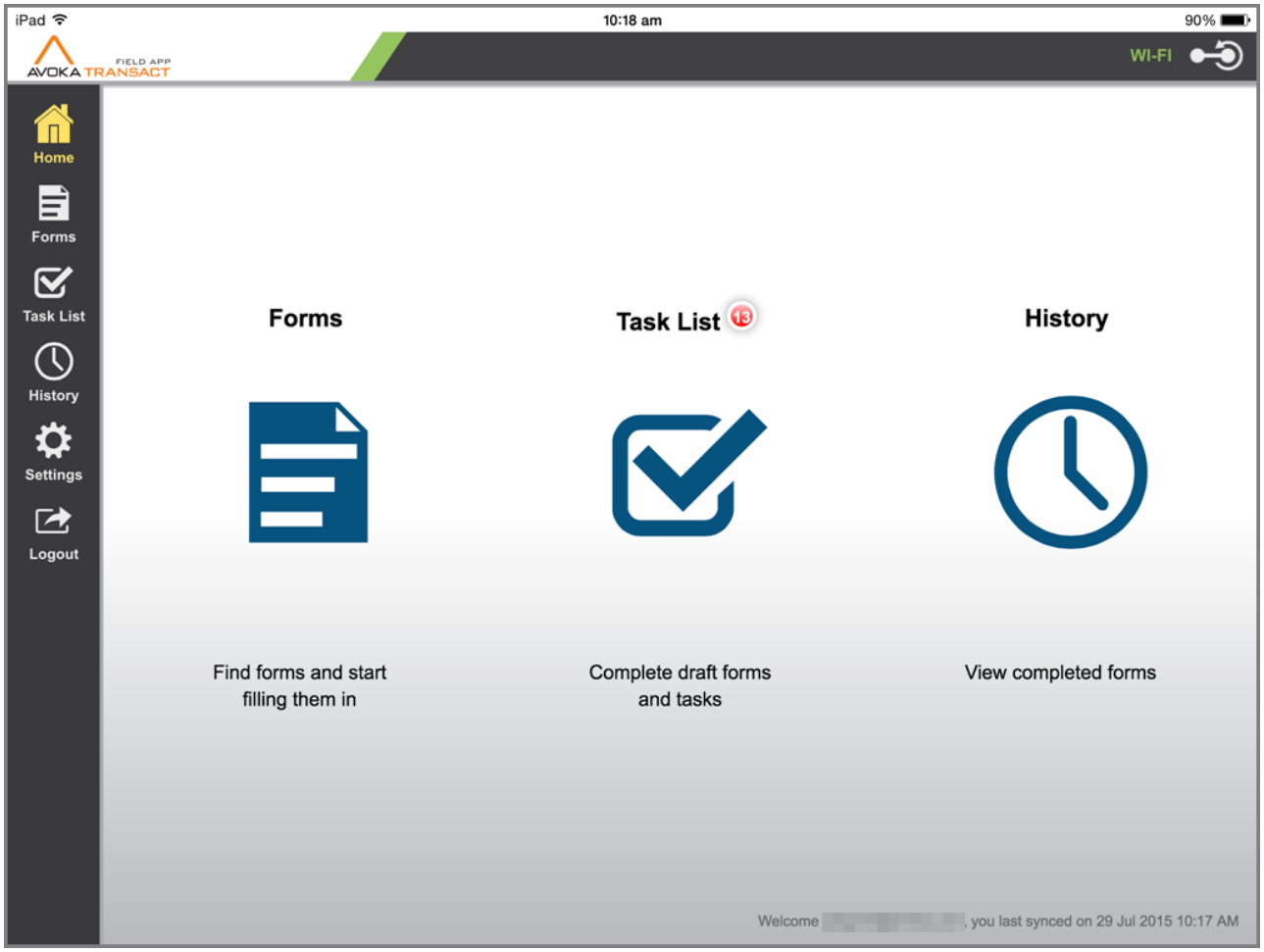
> NOTE
>
> Ensure that you are online the first time you log in, as TransactField App caches your credentials so you can work offline disconnected from the Manager server.

### Use your existing organizational credentials

In some cases, you can be configured to reuse your existing organization credentials:

1. Enter the usual username and password that you use when logging into your organizational network or a computer.

2. Click Log in to access the Transact Field App home screen. as shown below.




NOTE

You will be asked to login again after closing Transact Field App and reopening it, or after it has timed out.

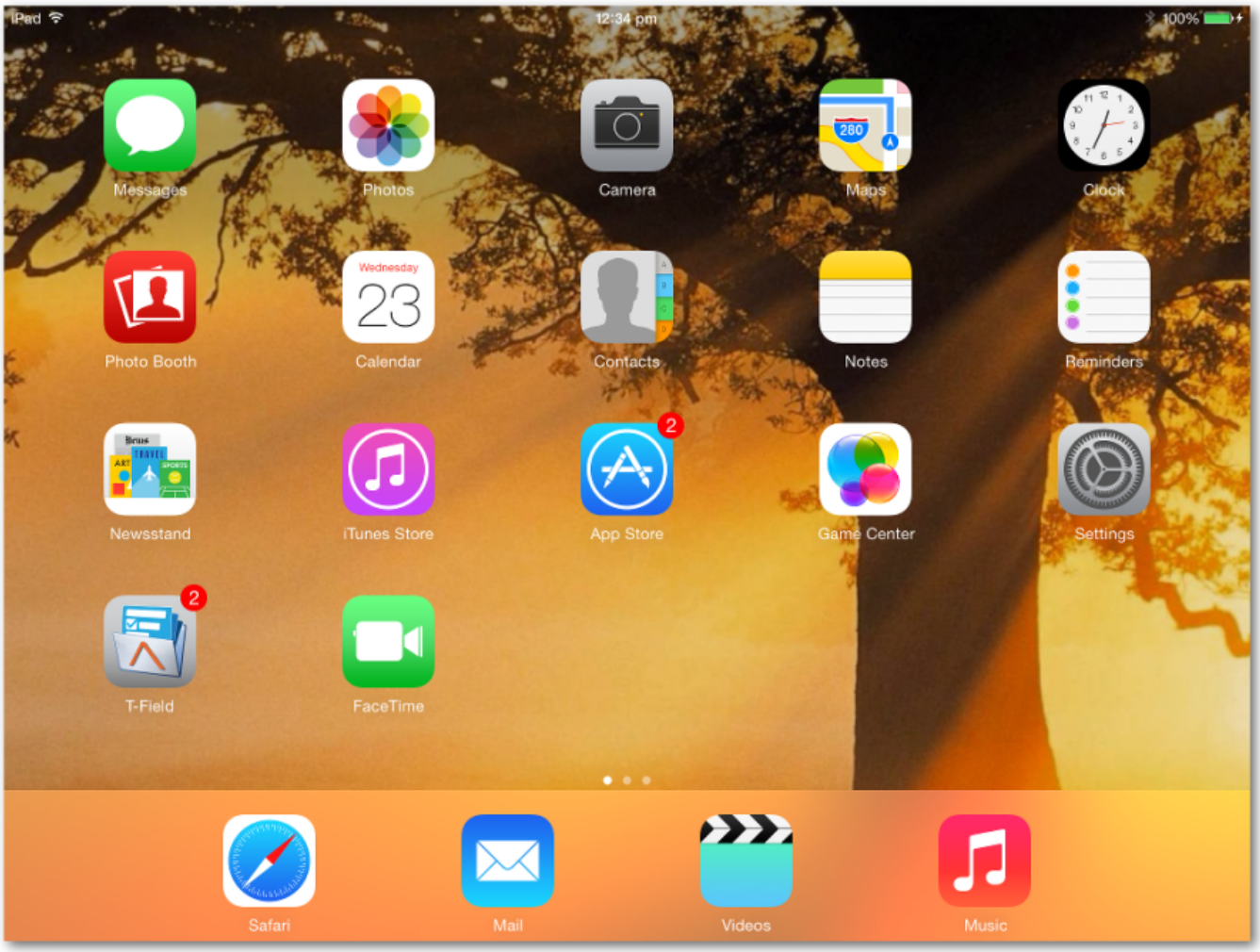
Next, learn how to use Transact Field App.

# How to Use TransactField App

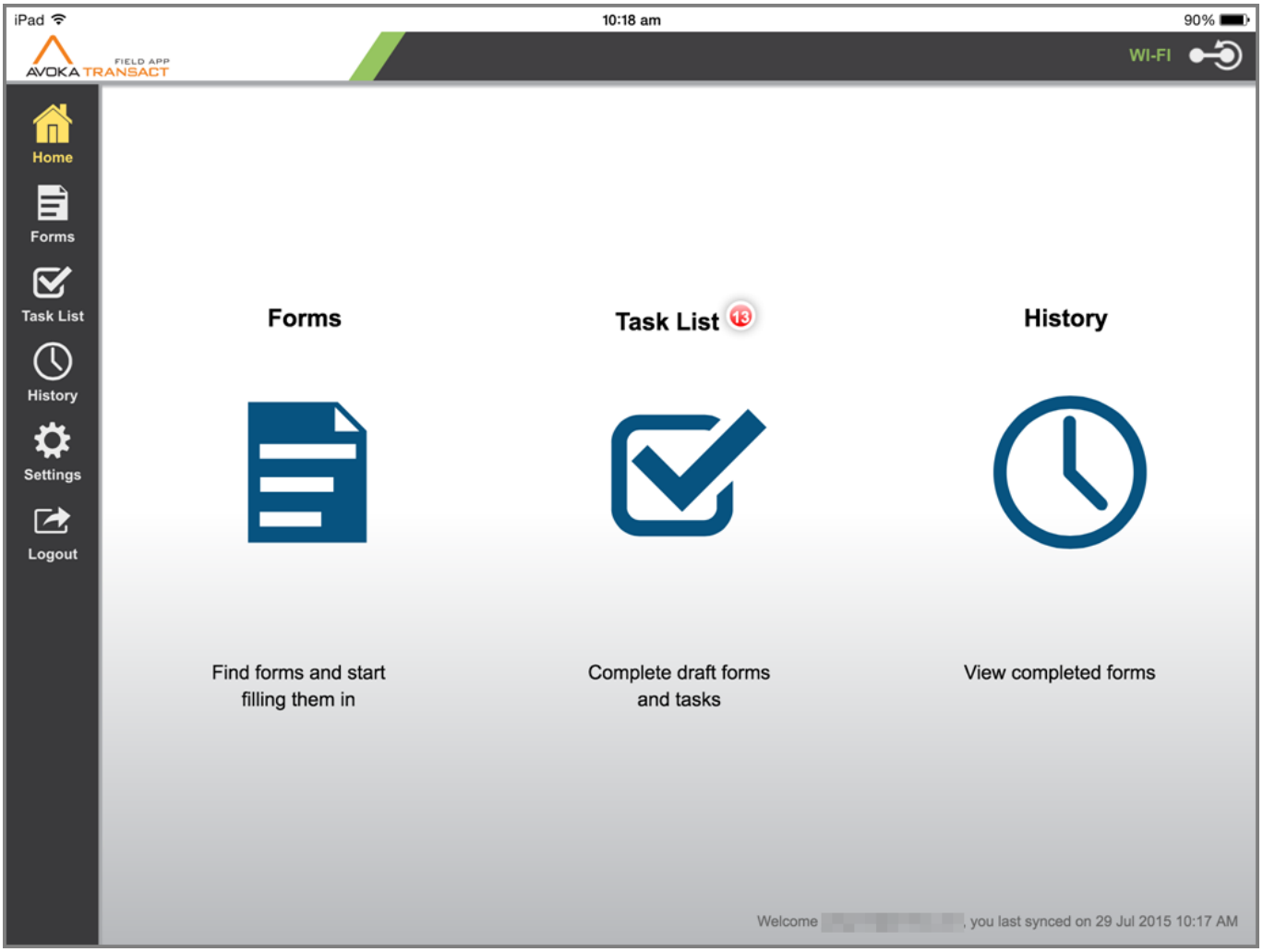
TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 2111This feature was deprecated in 2111.

TransactField App is used to collect some data remotely using online forms.

Once you have installed the app on your mobile device, it is accessed by selecting the icon on your mobile device, as shown below:



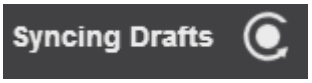

You will be directed to the home screen in TransactField App.




If you are online, the information on TransactField App will automatically synchronize with your server. The online status icon (found in the top right hand corner of your screen) is accessible from within any screen in TransactField App. The app will either be shown in one of the following states:

## Synchronizing

Synchronizing - the app is currently synchronizing with the server (several functions will be disabled till it is finished). The icon is a rotating animation and various messages display beside the icon, such as "Synching Profile", "Completing Sync", "Downloading n Templates" or "Downloading n Prefills".



## Disconnected

Disconnected - the app can not currently access the server. Tap on the icon to re-establish the connection and to re-sync.

## WI-FI

When connected the type of connection is displayed. This will be one of WI-FI, Cell or Connected (for Cable connections). Tapping on the icon will re-sync the app with the server

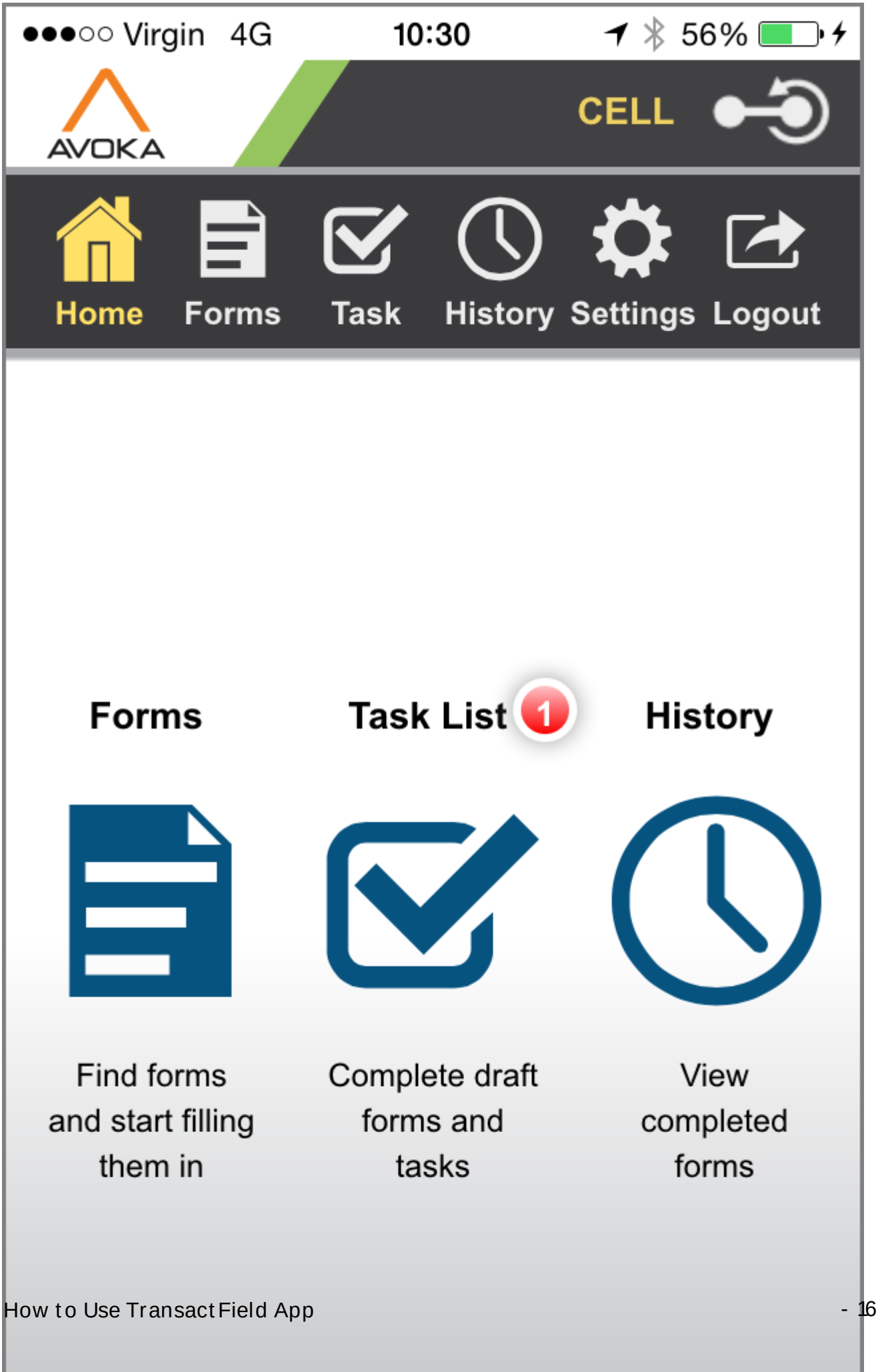
TransactField App will automatically synchronize with Journey Manager after a specified number of seconds (predefined in Journey Manager and visible in the app under "Settings -> Preferences -> Auto Sync Interval") if you are connected to the server.

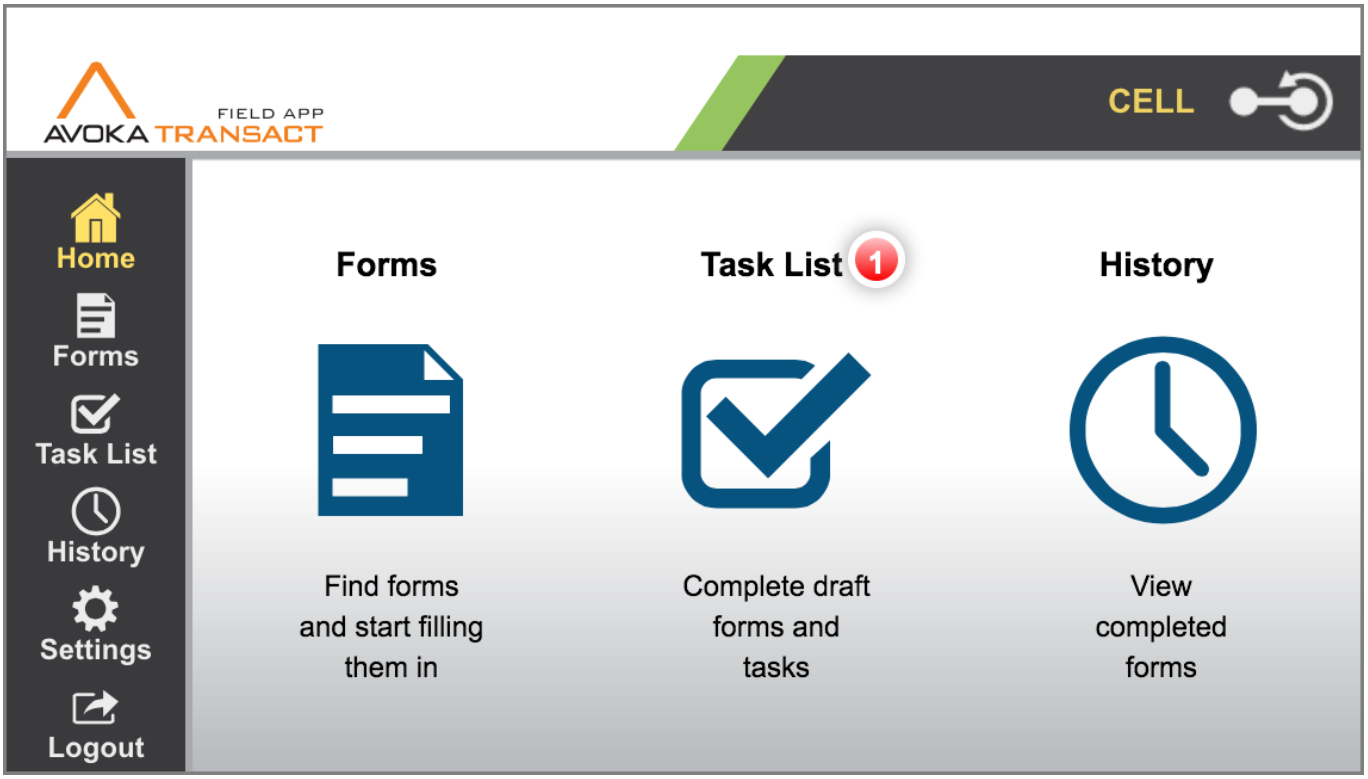
However clicking on the status icon allows you to manually synchronize TransactField App.

If you have a form open, Transact Mobile App will not synchronize. When you close the form, it will resume synchronizing.

## Navigating around TransactField App

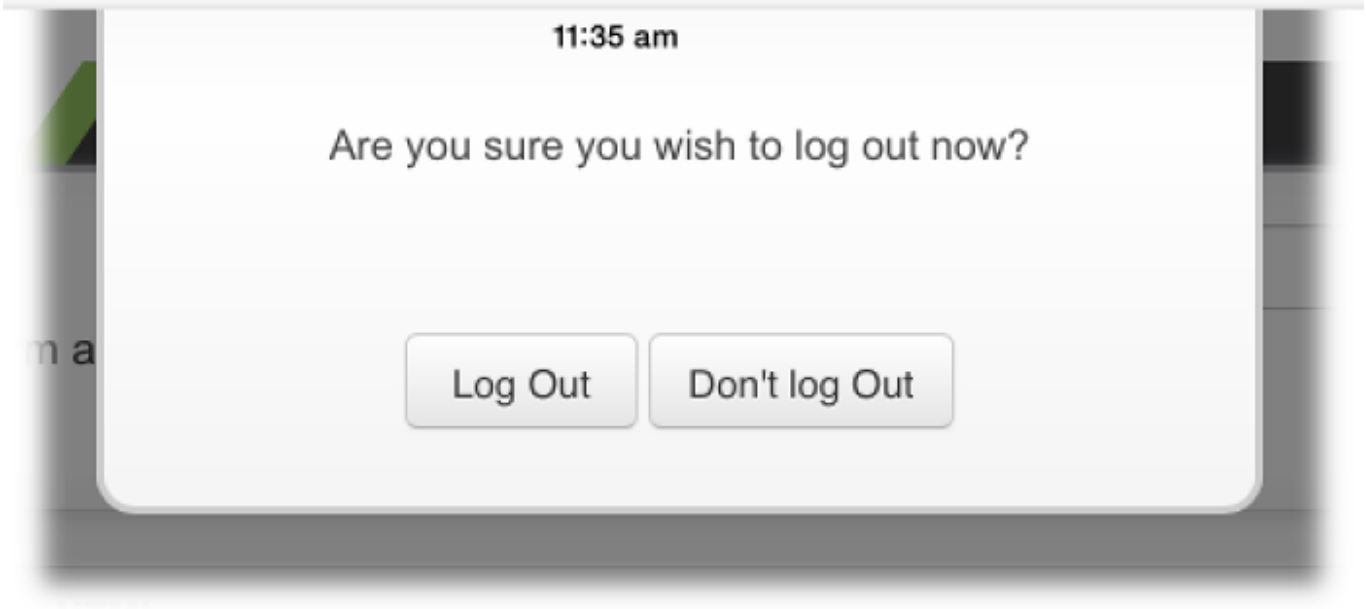
When you open TransactField App, you will be directed to the Home screen. The Home screen gives you access to the various capabilities within the application.


Virgin 4G
10:30
56%
AVOKA
CELL
Home
Forms
Task
History
Settings
Logout
Forms
Task List
1
History
Find forms and start filling them in
Complete draft forms and tasks
View completed forms

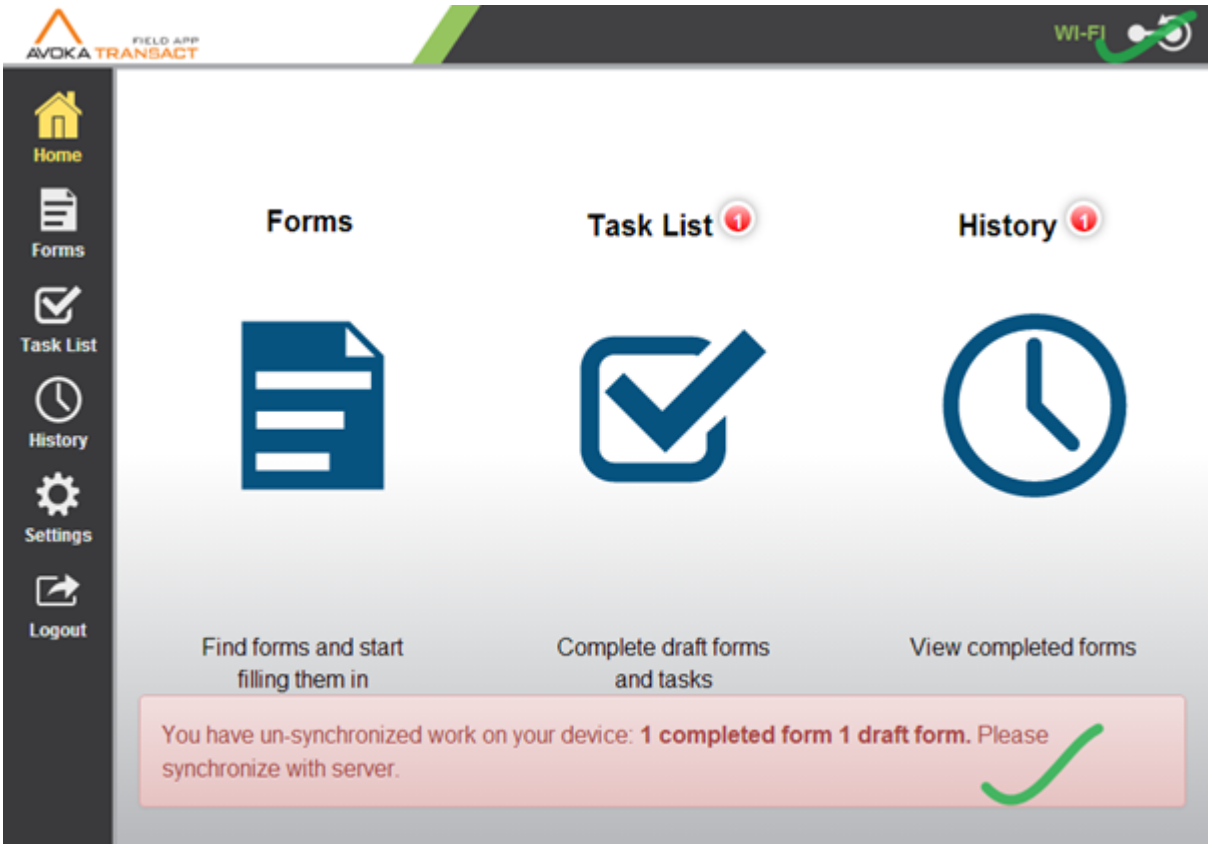



The Home screen consists of a menu (which will either be located across the top of the screen or to the left of the content area depending on the device type and orientation) and the content area where the 'Forms', 'Task List' and 'History' icons are visible by default.

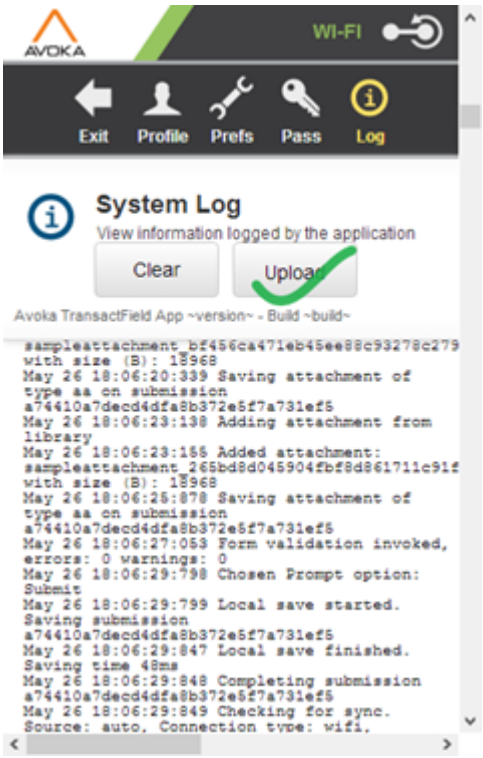
- Forms lists those forms you can access or have been allocated through Journey Manager.
- Task List shows your partially completed forms or those passed on to you for completion.
- History lists submitted forms and their receipt numbers. You cannot access forms after their submission.
- Settings is for making configuration changes to the TransactField App.
- Logout is for exiting the TransactField App.




Check TransactField App is Connected - this is displayed with indicator in top right corner (WI-FI, CELL, CABLE). When disconnected for a long time, attempt to connect device to network to minimize the risk of losing your work.



If you have synchronization errors and you have outstanding work (Home screen red warning box) even after several sync attempts, upload detailed log, as displayed below, and contact your administrator.




NOTE

You can check the TransactField App synchronization and device logs in Journey Manager.

Next, learn about forms in TransactField App.

# Forms in TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.11This feature was deprecated in 21.11.

TransactField App allows you to access and view a list of your forms.

## Types of Forms

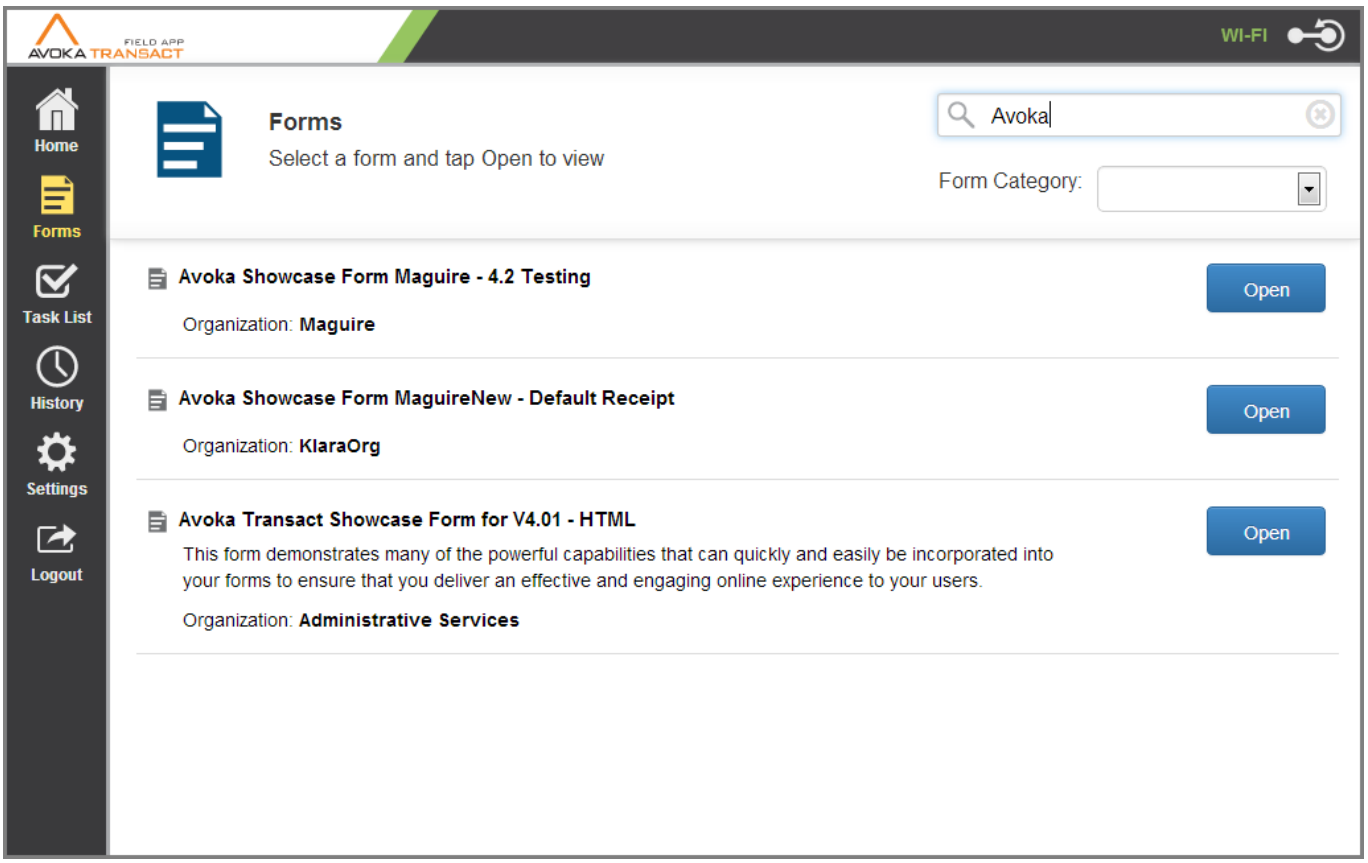
- Some forms may only require a handful of fields to gather information, while others will require a complex structure that changes the face of the form depending what the user inputs.
- In the "Top to Bottom" form structure, fields are simply laid out one below the previous one and navigation occurs by simply 'swiping your finger' up and down the screen.
- In a form containing a wizard structure, form pages contain navigation buttons typically 'Next' and 'Previous' to move between pages. There might also be a menu on the left or top side of the form which allows an alternate way to navigate among form pages.
- The interaction with the form should be the same all devices. However, the form may re-arrange itself depending on the width of the screen being used: this is called responsive behavior.

## Widgets

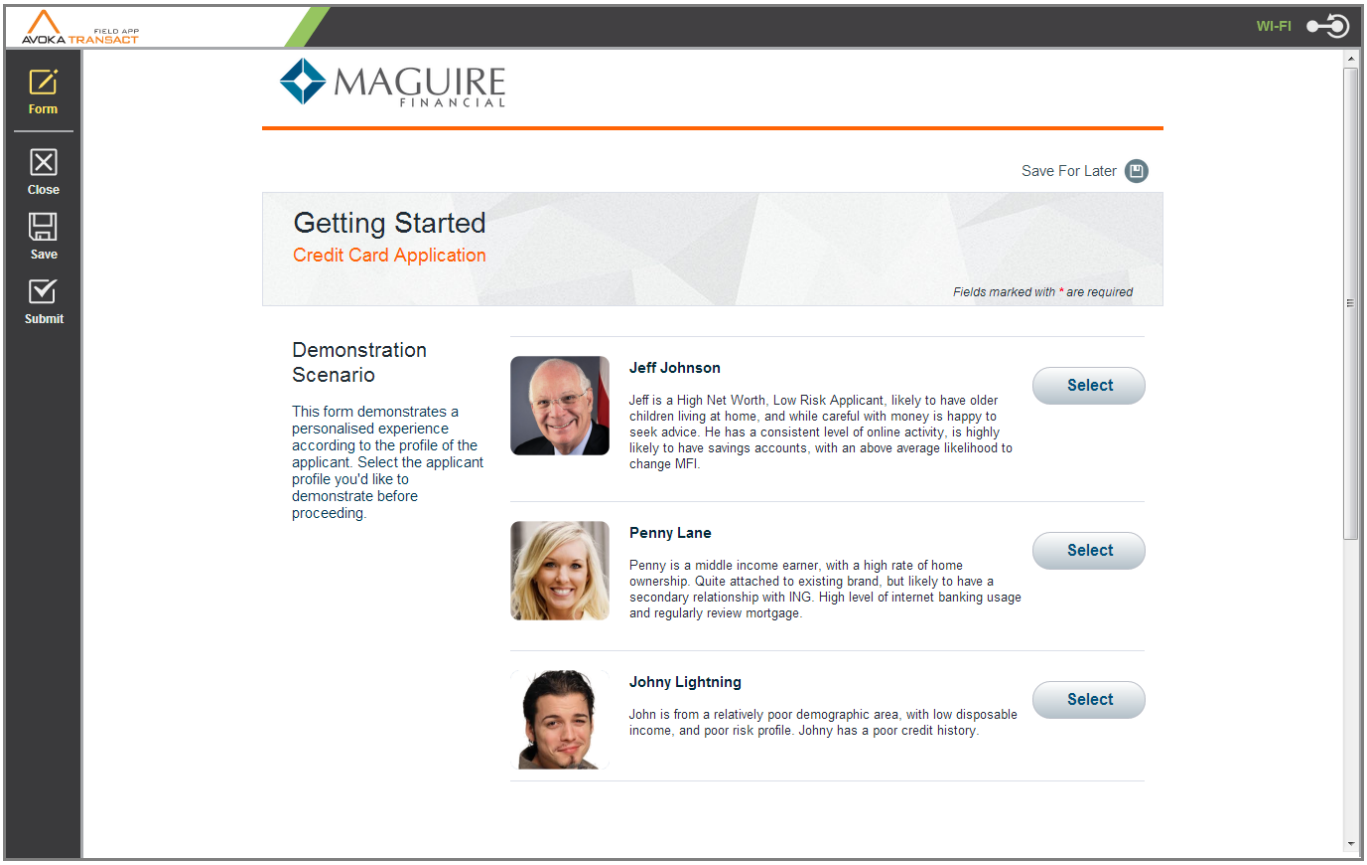
- Most forms will contain the basic widget types, e.g.: a text field which enables the form filler to enter information and radio buttons or check boxes to enable the form filler to make choices.
- Some widgets, such as the date picker and radio buttons, have the same functionality on all devices but display different on mobile devices.
- Other widgets may only be used on a mobile device. These include:
    - The camera widget with gallery integration which allows the mobile form filler to easily capture a picture, such as a damaged vehicle, a patient's injury, a driver's license, or a passport. Pictures are submitted as part of the form submission. The camera widget only works on devices that have a camera.
    - The scribble signature field that allows signatures created with a finger or stylus to be collected right on the screen.

# Fill out a Form

Selecting Forms either from the tab menu or the home screen, directs you to a list of accessible forms with brief descriptions, if available.




Tapping on Open takes you to the form's first page. The tab menu may also change to form-specific functions.

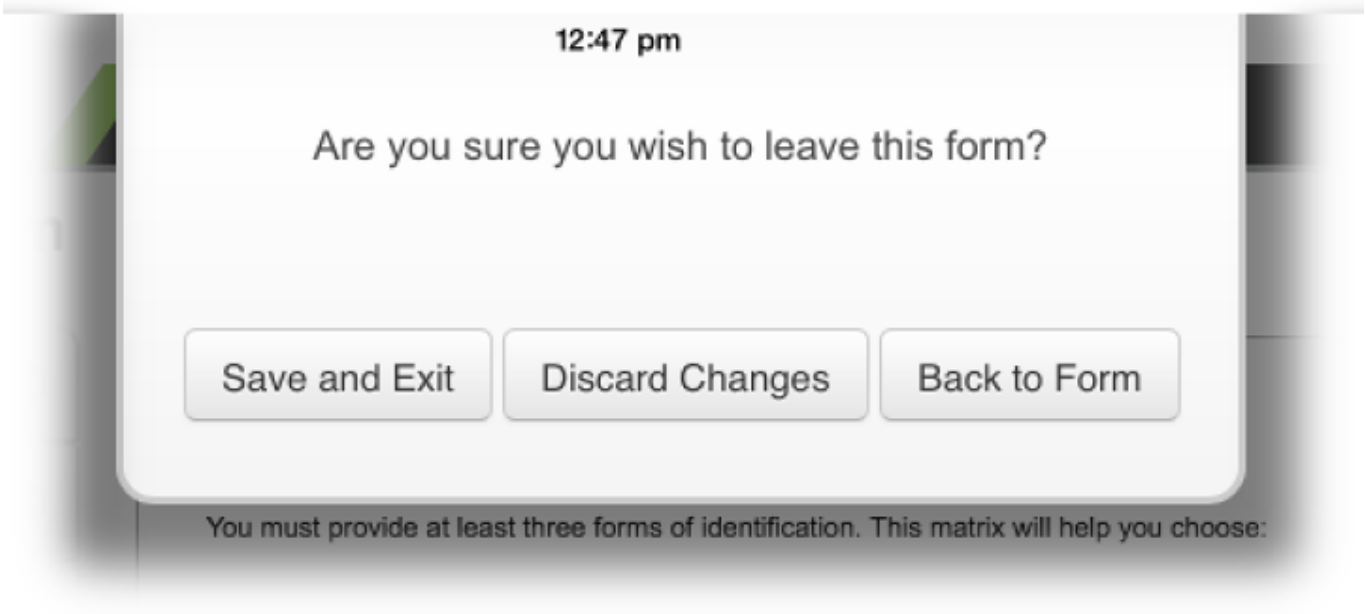



The Submit icon is selected to complete the form. If the user is online, the form will be submitted and an entry goes in the History tab, together with a Reference number. If you are not connected, it is shown in the Task tab, with the status Pending. It moves to History after a successful synchronization.

It is possible to suppress the submit button in the Mobile App and only submit via a form submit button or visa-versa. This can be achieved through configuration settings made in Composer or in Transaction Manager.

TransactField now supports in-form attachments. The form is setup with the supporting widget. When selected the attachments can be sourced directly from the device's internal camera, from the internal camera roll, or from your corporate Box cloud service.

The 'Close' icon allows the form filler to exit the form with various options:




- Save and Exit saves the form into your Task List for future completion.
- Discard Changes does not save any changes made.
- Back to Form takes you back to the open form.

Next, learn about tasks in TransactField App.

# Task List in TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.11This feature was deprecated in 21.11.

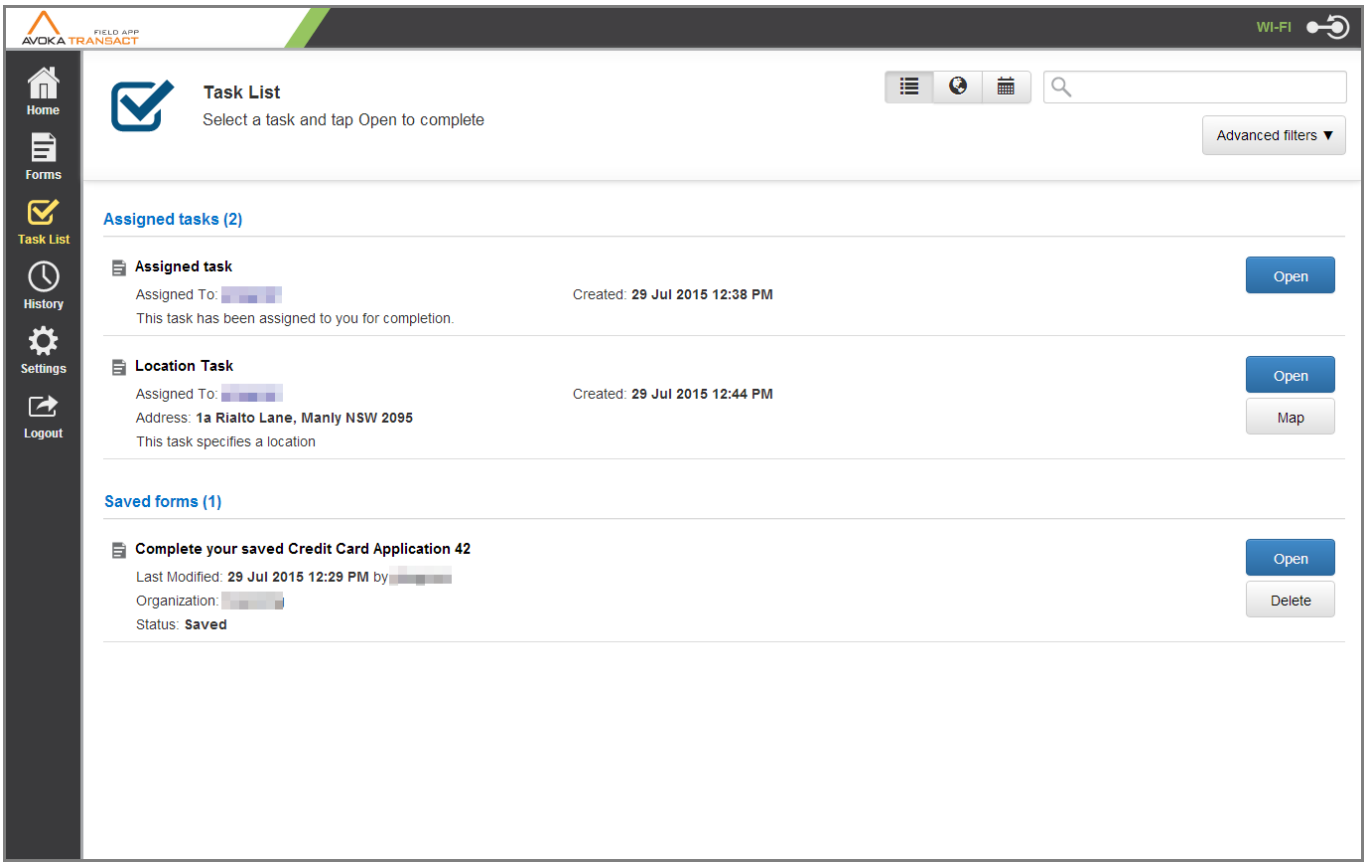
Task List contains any partially-completed forms, which can include:

- Forms started by you and then saved for later submission.
- Pre-populated forms assigned to you for completion.
- Submitted forms that have not been synchronized.

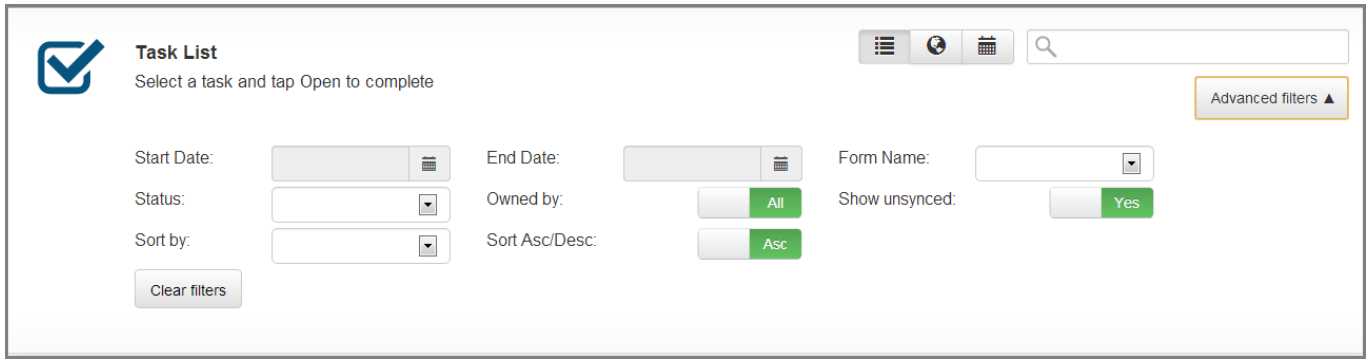
## Using the Task List

There is a maximum number of tasks that can appear in the 'Task List'. This is set in Journey Manager by your administrator.

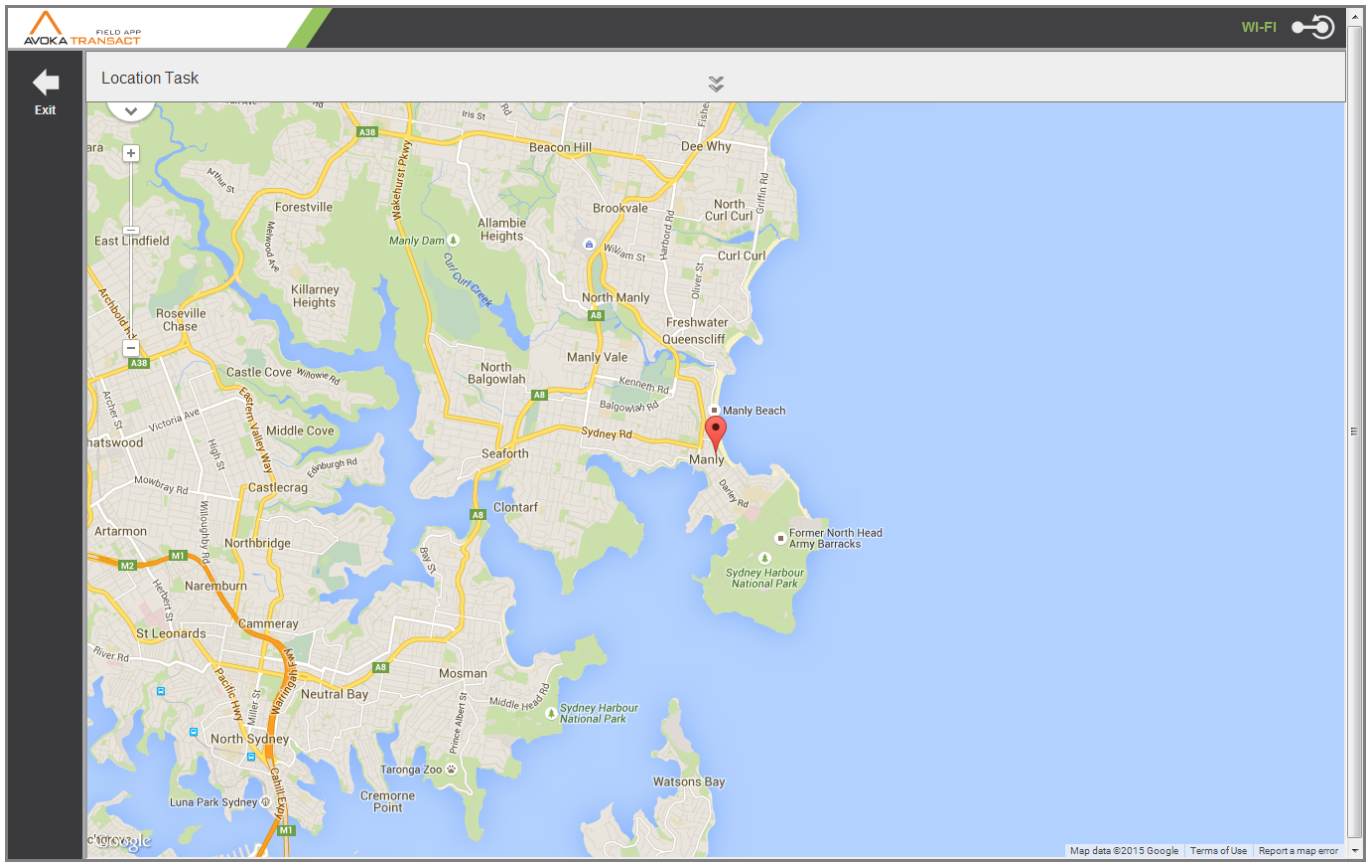
Task List Sections: The following screen shows that the user has 2 assigned tasks and one saved form in their queue.




Filtering: Tasks can be filtered using the Advanced filter options.

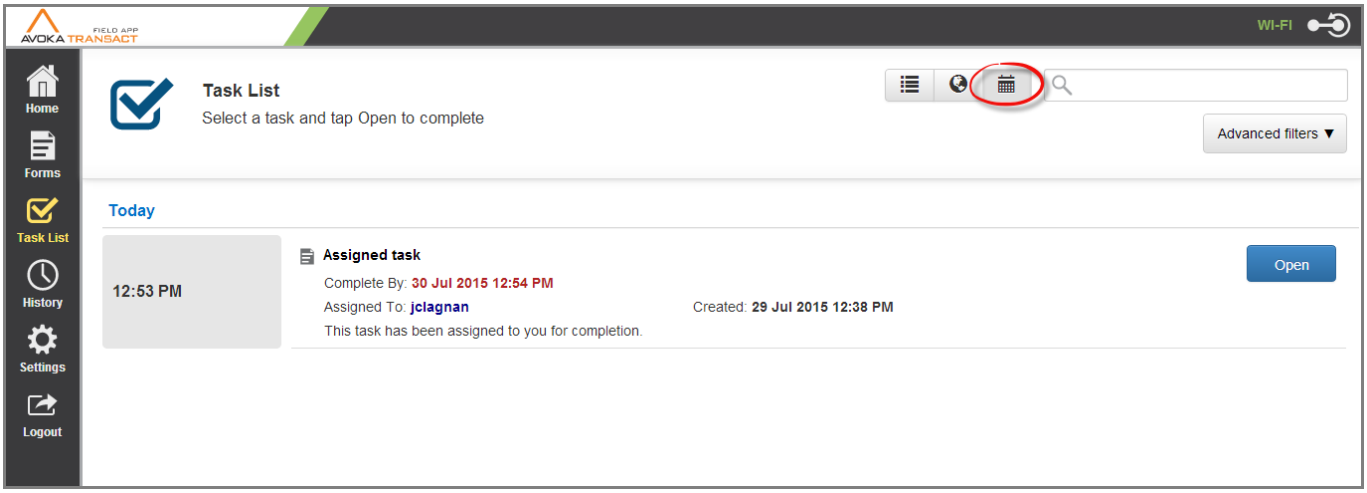



Location options: Tasks can be specified with a location. This will introduce a map option to the task and will allow the map to be shown to the user when selected.

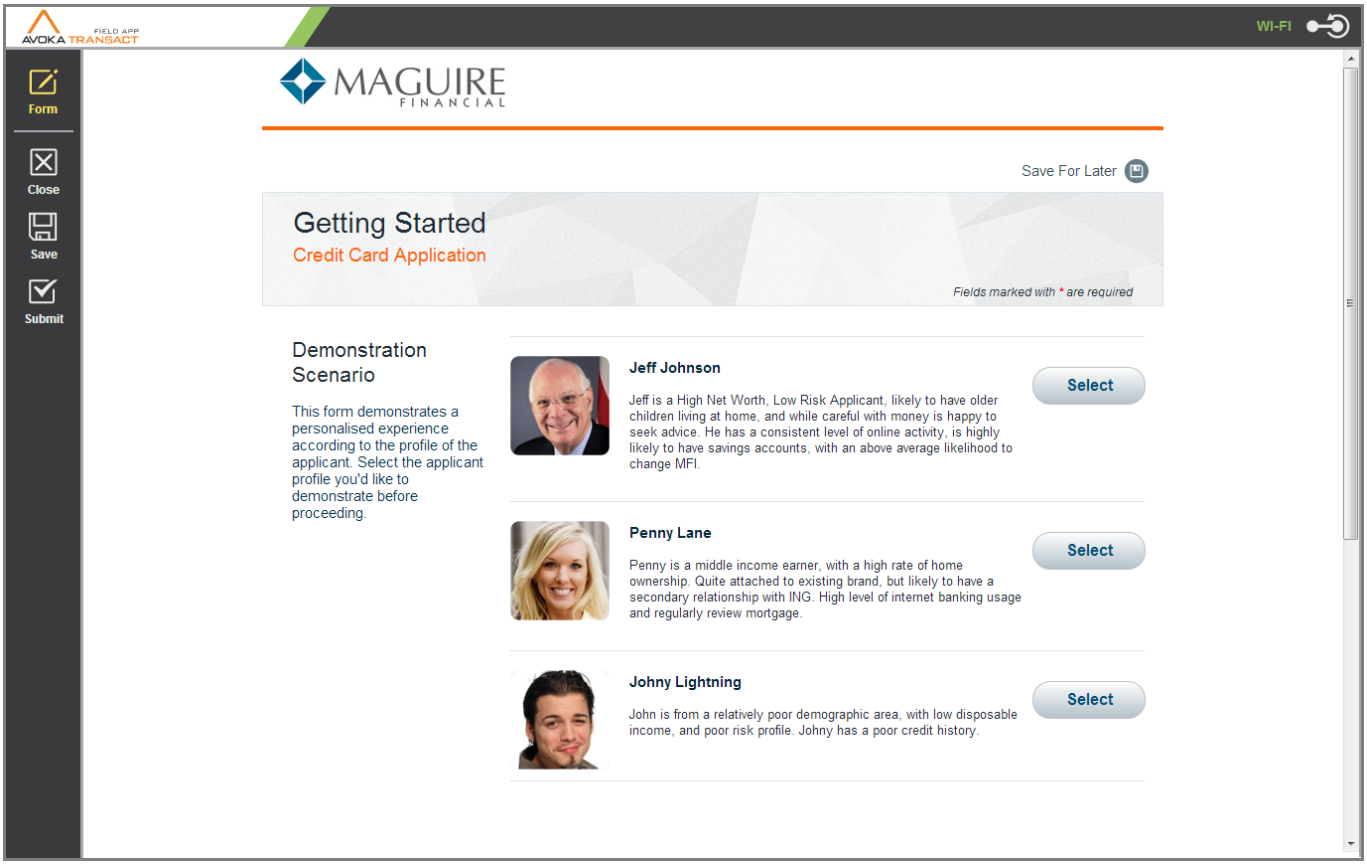



Task scheduled/expiry dates: A task can have dates assigned to it. They are shown in the task tile as below.

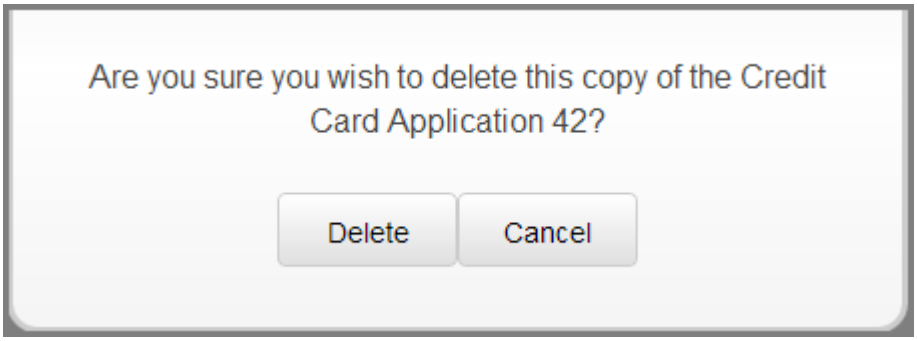
The date filter icon will show the scheduled tasks in time order.



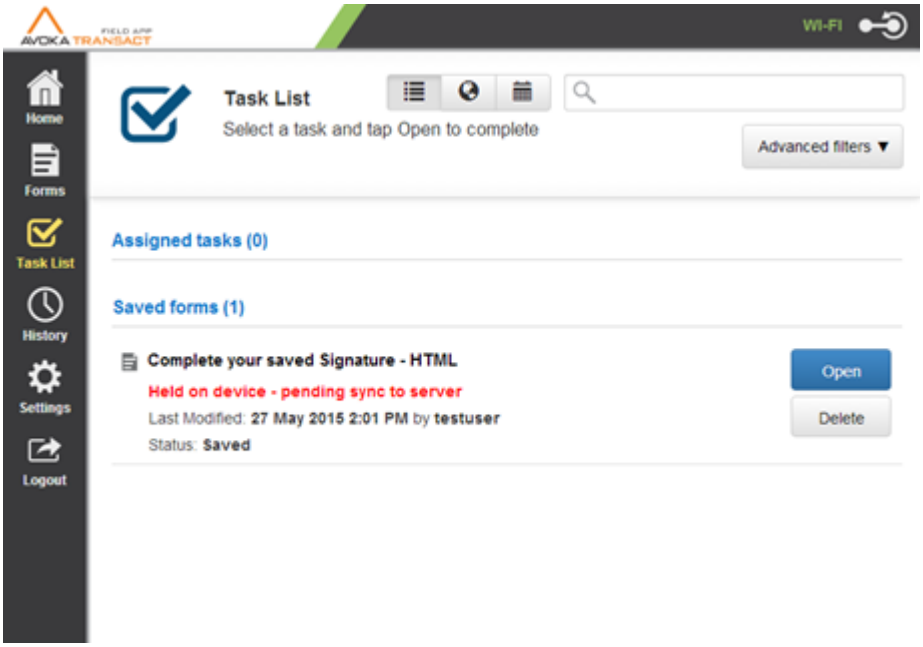

Task Open button is for editing the form.




Task Delete displays this confirmation message:




Check your home screen, task list and history page for outstanding items. As displayed on screen-shots you can easily see if there is any outstanding work. In this case tap on sync icon in top right corner or on red warning box on home screen to synchronize.




Next, learn about a built-in camera in Transact Field App.

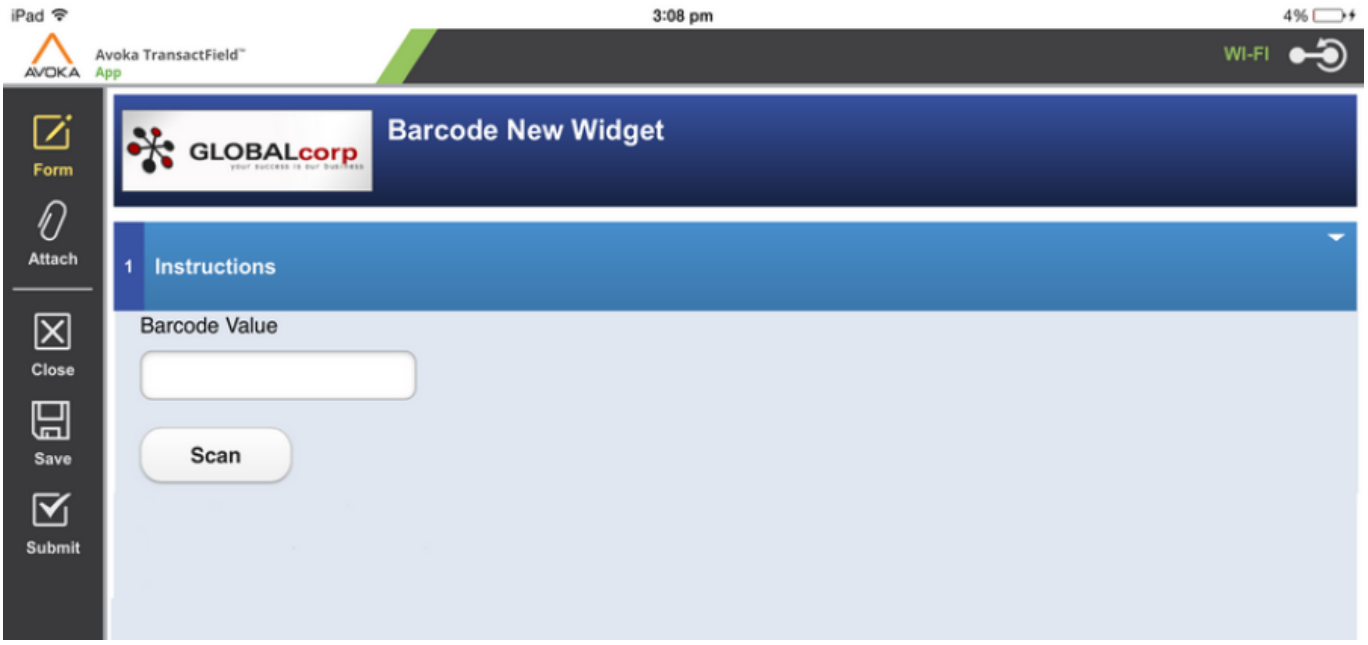
# Use a Build-in Camera in TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.1This feature was deprecated in 21.1.

There are some form functions available only through native apps, the inbuilt camera being one of them. HTML forms can have the user upload images from the device's camera roll as attachments, but the mobile app can go further and have the user snap a photo from the form. The mobile App can also handle bar codes in a way not available to HTML forms accessed through a web browser.

## Barcodes

The Temenos Journey Manager platform allows a form to have a barcode[1] button, so a device camera reads a barcode and its data is returned to the form. This eliminates the need for a user to submit the form for the barcode to be deciphered, because it is now done within TransactField App.




[1]Barcode is a machine-readable code in the form of numbers and a pattern of parallel lines of varying widths, printed on a commodity and used especially for stock control.

The barcode must be positioned over the semi-transparent red line, the device must be moved close enough that the image focuses and when the software finds that it can read the image, the user is taken back to the form with the Barcode Value field filled in with the value of the code.

The barcode scanner module behaves slightly differently in Android and Windows phone devices: there may not be the red line display (to simulate a laser scanner) and the camera's focus may operate differently.

Note: for iPads, iPhones and iPod Touches — the camera's auto-focus software does not work in the usual way, by tapping on a point in the preview window. The only real control, other than physically moving the whole device, is the "Cancel" button at the bottom of the window. The user does not have a shutter control to take the picture in the usual way. Instead the App goes back to the form when it has successfully read the barcode.

## Supported Formats

TransactField App supports the following AIM[1] formats:

### UPC- A and UPC- E

The Universal Product Code or UPC barcode was the first bar code symbology widely adopted. Its birth is usually set at April 3, 1973, when the grocery industry formally

[1]Association for Automatic Identification and Mobility (AIM) is an industry trade group that developed and standardized bar codes, Automatic identification and data capture.

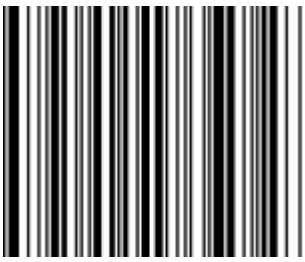
established UPC as the standard bar code symbology for product marking. Foreign interest in UPC led to the adoption of the EAN code format, similar to UPC, in December 1976.

## Code 93

Code 93 offers higher information density for alphanumeric data than either Code 39 or Code 128. Code 93 is used primarily by Canada Post to encode supplementary delivery information. Every symbol includes two check characters.

## Codabar

Codabar can encode the digits 0 through 9, six symbols (-:.$/+), and the start/stop characters A, B, C, D, E, *, N, or T.



## Data Matrix

Data Matrix is a two-dimensional matrix symbology containing dark and light square data modules. It has a finder pattern of two solid lines and two alternating dark and light lines on the perimeter of the symbol. A two-dimensional imaging device such as a

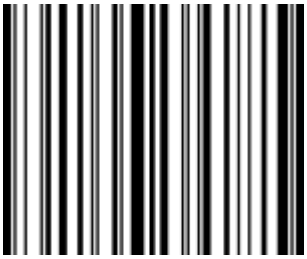
CCD camera is necessary to scan the symbology. Data Matrix is used for small item marking applications using a wide variety of printing and marking technologies.

### EAN-8 and EAN-13

See the UPC variants above

### Code 128

Code 128, a very high-density barcode symbology, is currently used extensively world wide in shipping and packaging industries. The symbol can be as long as necessary to store the encoded data. It is designed to encode all 128 ASCII characters, and will use the least amount of space for data of 6 characters or more of any 1-D symbology.



### RSS-14

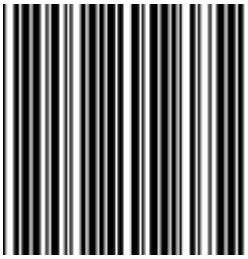
RSS (Reduced Space Symbology) is now called GS-1 Databar. See http://www.databar-barcode.info/ Example: Databar-14:

## Aztec

Partially supported.Aztec Code is a two-dimensional matrix symbology containing dark and light square data modules. It has a finder pattern of concentric square rings centered on a single dark module located in the center of the symbol. A two-dimensional imaging device such as a CCD camera is necessary to scan the symbology. Aztec Code is used for small item marking applications using a wide variety of printing and marking technologies, and is also well suited for displays of cell phones and other mobile devices.

## Code 39

Code 39, pioneered by the defense and automotive industries, is an alphanumeric bar code. The symbol can be as long as necessary to store the encoded data. It is designed to encode 26 uppercase letters, 10 digits and 7 special characters. It can be extended to code all 128 ASCII characters by using a two character coding scheme.



## ITF

ITF barcodes, also known as Interleaved 2 of 5 barcodes, encode 14 numeric digits and are generally used for the packaging level of products. Since they can deal with high

printing tolerances, ITF is a good choice when barcodes need to be printed on corrugated cardboard.

## RSS Expanded

RSS Expanded is capable of storing 74 numeric or 41alphabetic characters and is normally used in point of sale retail applications. See http://www.bardecode.com/en1/rss-expanded-examples/

We support most variants.

## PDF 417

Current support needs further work. PDF417 is a two-dimensional, multi-row symbology designed to be scanned by laser scanners and linear CCD scanners and used to encode data files with hundreds or thousands of characters in a laser scannable symbol. PDF417 is used in a variety of applications, primarily transport, identification cards, and inventory management.

## QR Code

QR Code is a two-dimensional matrix symbology containing dark and light square data modules. It has position detection patterns on three of its four corners and features direct encodation of the Japanese Kana-Kanji character set. A two-dimensional imaging device such as a CCD camera is necessary to scan the symbology. Although initially used for tracking parts in vehicle manufacturing, QR Codes are now used in a much broader context, including both commercial tracking applications and convenience-oriented applications aimed at mobile phone users (known as mobile tagging).

This is the recommended barcode format. Our testing shows it is the most suitable for mobile.

Next, learn how to view history in TransactField App.

# View Form History in TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.1This feature was deprecated in 21.1.

The History folder contains a list of submitted and synchronized forms and the current status of the submission. The status may be updated by downstream processes to indicate the progress of your submission as it flows through the organization.

## Using the History folder

The History List is limited to a maximum number of submissions (predefined in Journey Manager).

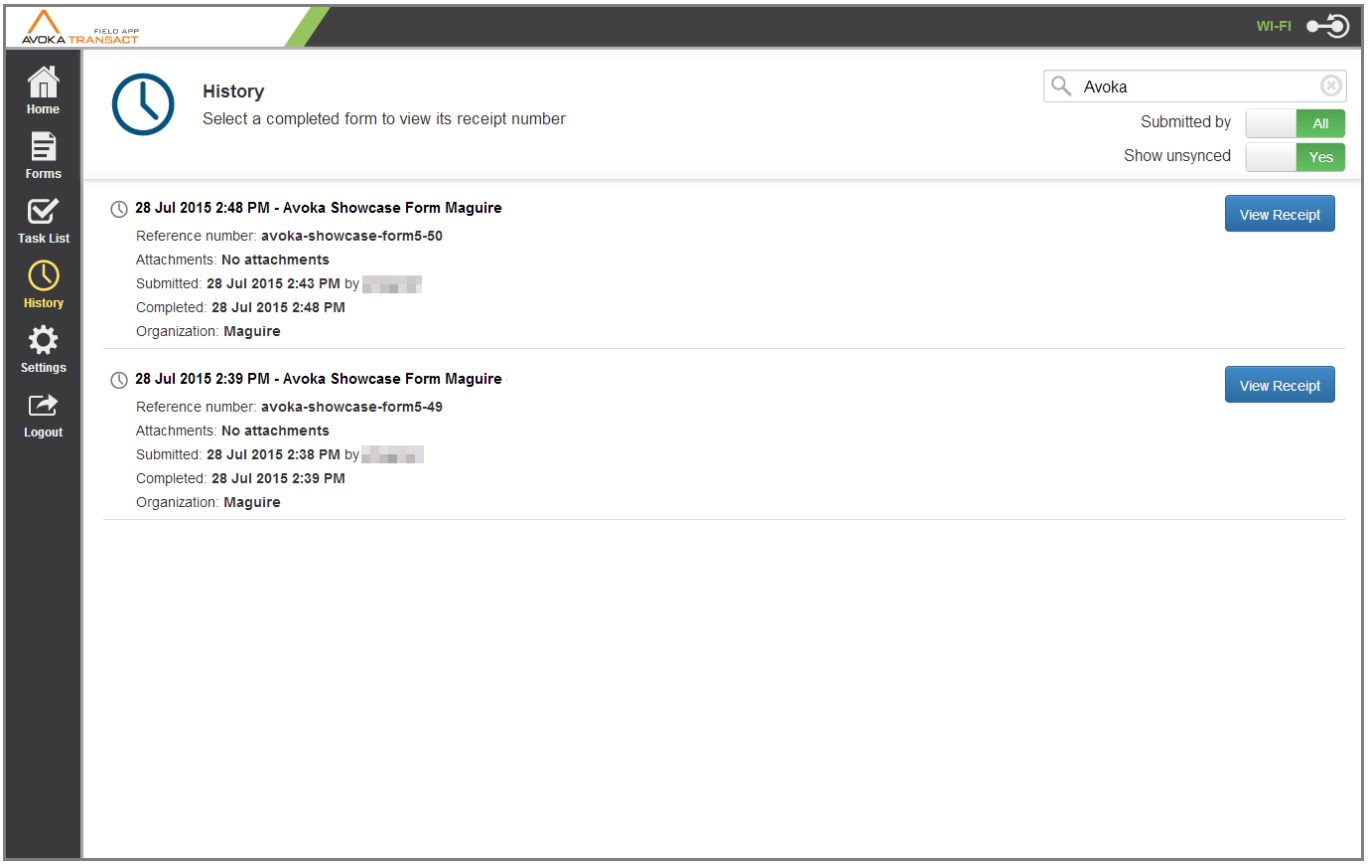
### Viewing Options

The "Search" Field at the top right of the screen filters forms by input keywords. In the screen below we have used "Avoka" as the search criteria.

There are two filter switches to further assist when many items exist:

'Submitted by', defaulted to "All", it allows users 2 options: 'Me' and 'All'. This filters which forms become visible.

'Show unsynced' defaulted to "Yes". This allows a user to exclude any unsynchronized items from the view




Reference Number: will contain the system reference number for the submission e.g. child-protection-rep1

Total Payment: will contain either 'No payment' (not required in the form) or a payment amount.

Attachments: will contain 'No attachments' (not required in the form) or a list of attachments that were uploaded to the form.

Submitted: will contain the date and time of form was submission (whether online or offline) and when the submission actually completed.

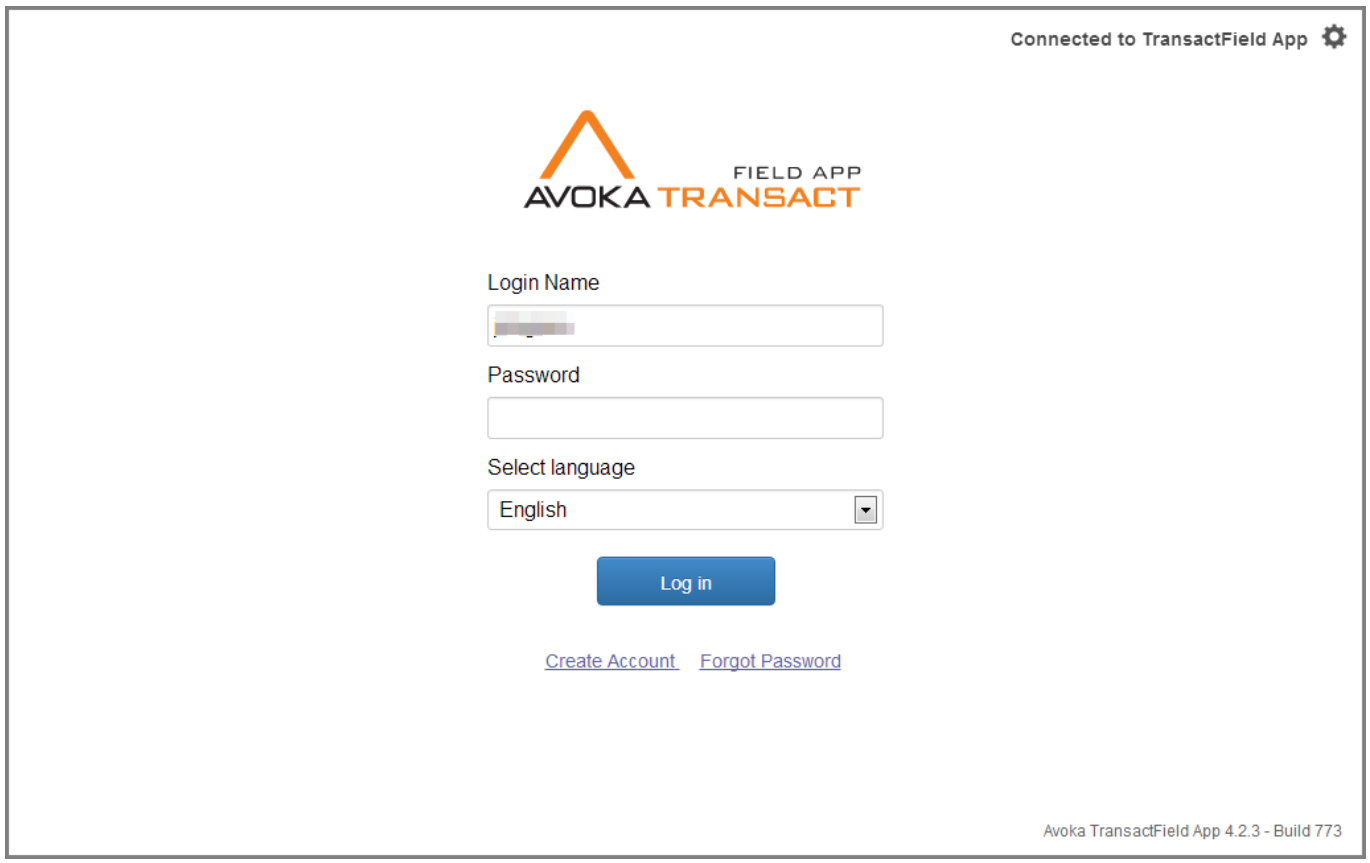
The 'View Receipt' button may, or may not, be seen in the History listing (predefined in Journey Manager). Clicking on it, will open the mobile device's web browser to display your receipt. Note that you will have to login using the same credentials used to login to the Mobile App. This connects the browser with the Mobile App.

Next, learn about multiple languages in Transact Field App.

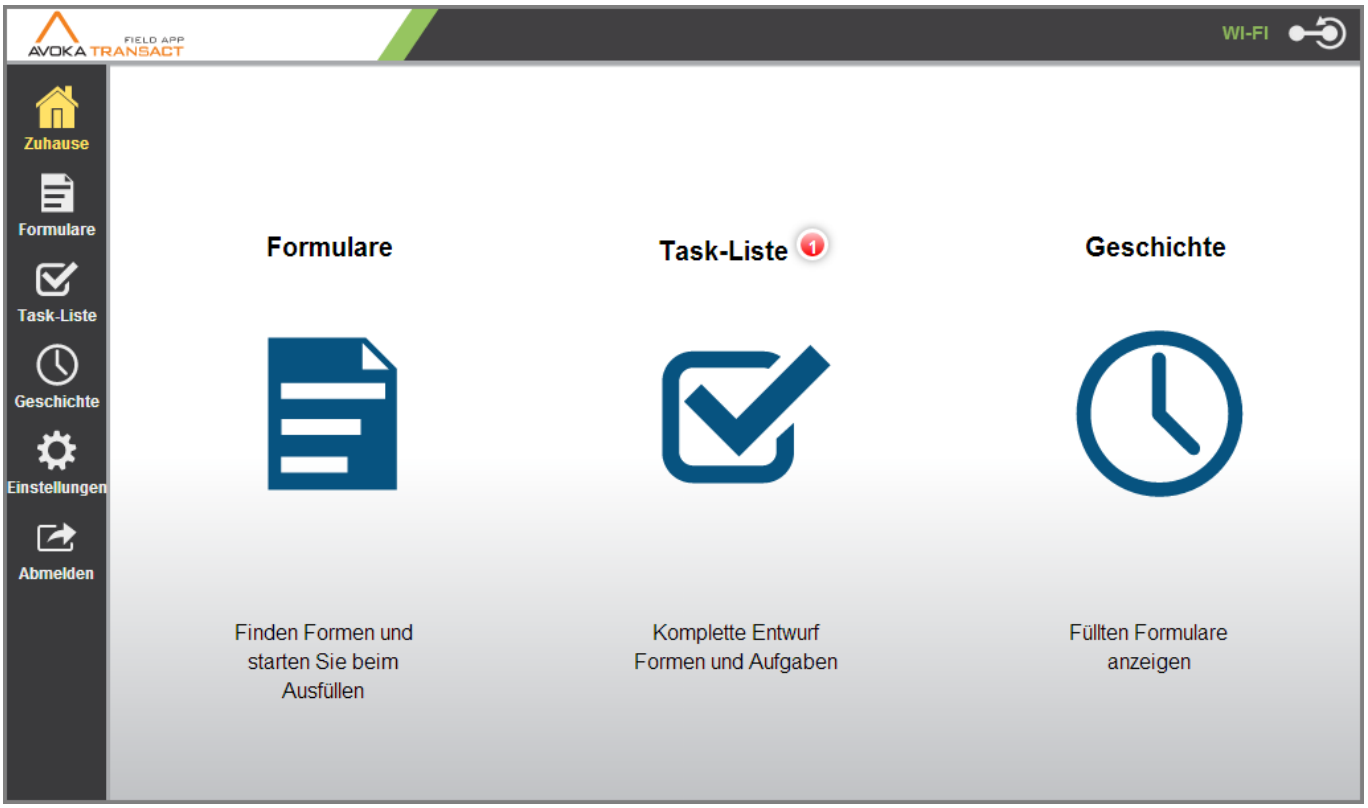
# Multiple Languages in TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 2111This feature was deprecated in 2111.

Journey Manager can be configured to support multiple languages, which is called localization. You can log in using localization support.



FIELD APP
English
German
Czech
Portuguese
Chinese
German
einloggen
Konto erstellen
Passwort vergessen


AVOKA TRANSACT
FIELD APP
WI-FI
Zuhause
Formulare
Task-Liste
Geschichte
Einstellungen
Abmelden
Formulare
Task-Liste
Geschichte
Finden Formen und starten Sie beim Ausfüllen
Komplette Entwurf Formen und Aufgaben
Füllten Formulare anzeigen

With the Manager server configured to enable localization, the login screen will display a selection of languages. The actual choice depends on the localization settings of the server. Selecting a language other than the default changes the chrome of TransactField App, namely all surrounding navigation links and icons such as the left-hand menu on a device in portrait orientation, as shown above.

The form contents are not automatically translated: each of the forms must be localized in Composer (See the Composer User Guide on how to do this). Each form though, can be localized for several languages and served according to the user's language selection.

Journey Manager can be configured to display the app in any language of your choice. There is an automatic translation facility in Manager, based on the Google Translate platform. We strongly advise to check all the text fragments in the app with fluent speakers in the target language to ensure the machine translations are accurate.

Next, learn about security in TransactField App.

# TransactField App Security

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.1This feature was deprecated in 21.1

This topic discusses the various security measures within TransactField App. For more information, see our security architecture document.

## Accessing Security

The TransactField App has various levels of security:

- The first time you log in, you must be online, and your user-name and password are verified against Journey Manager.
- On subsequent logins:
  - If you are online, you will always be authenticated against Journey Manager.
  - If you are offline, you can still log in and be authenticated against an encrypted stored copy of your credentials.

Note: This means that if your server password has changed, you must continue using your old password offline until you log in online.

- If your session is inactive for a specified length of time (predefined in Journey Manager), the session will time out and you will be required to log in again.
- If you fail to log in successfully after a specified number of times (predefined in Journey Manager), the TransactField App data (including data not saved back to the server) on your mobile device will be permanently deleted.
- All the TransactField App data is securely stored with 128-bit encryption.
- All communication is through the 'https' protocol to avoid 'man-in-the-middle' attacks.

### Form Security

In Journey Manager, administrators can set up 'Form Work Group Support' which impacts the stage at which a group of users may access a form in TransactField App.

The stages of a form include one or more of the following:

- New forms - visible in the 'Forms' listing.
- Saved or Assigned Forms - visible in the 'Task List'.
- Completed Forms - visible in the 'History' listing

Next, learn how to configure TransactField App.

# Configure TransactField App

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.11This feature was deprecated in 21.11.

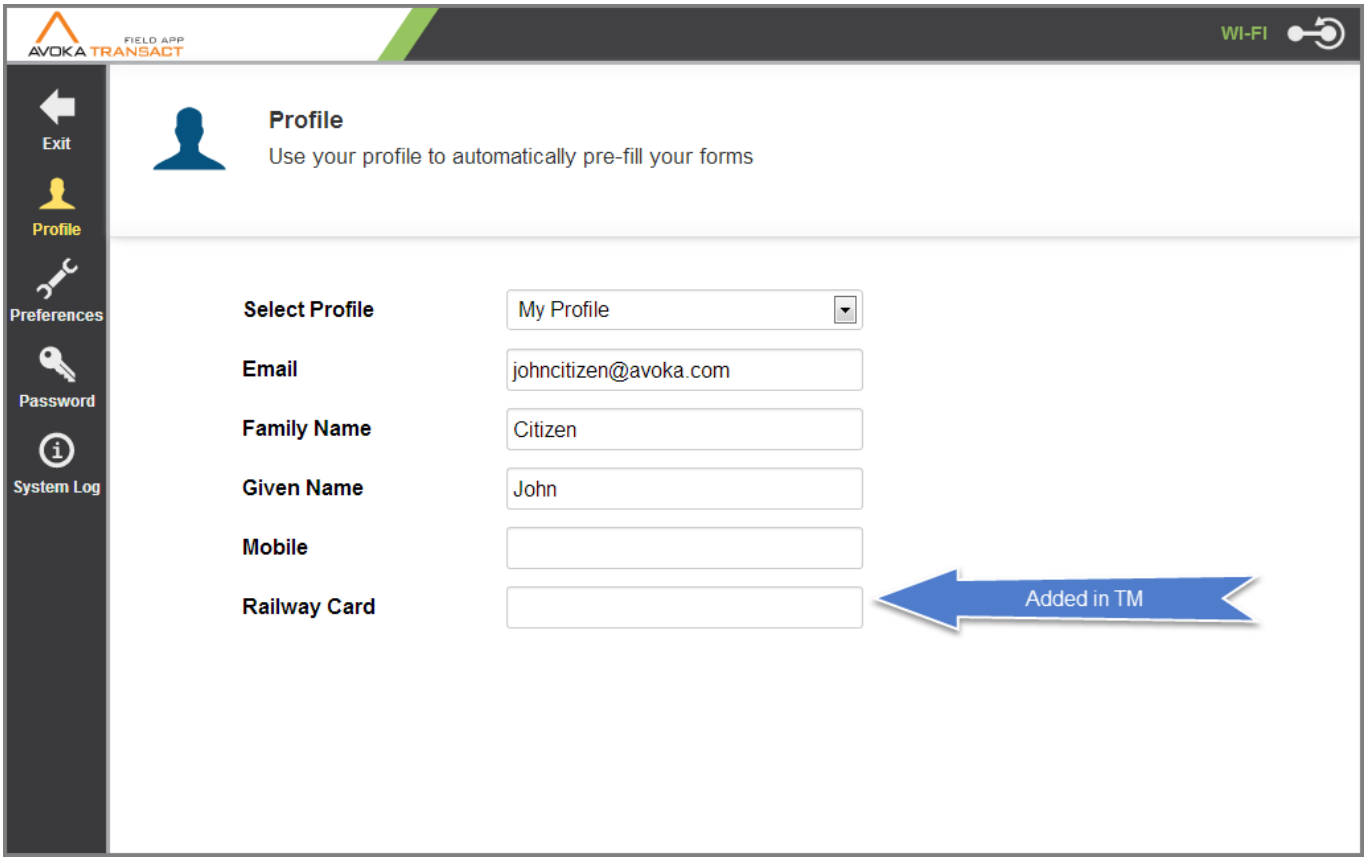
You can configure TransactField App using:

1. Client settings in the Settings tab of TransactField App, which you can modify.
2. System settings that are configured by a Journey Manager administrator. You can't change these settings in TransactField App. For more information, see configure form tiles.

## Client Settings

Click Settings to change configuration in TransactField App.

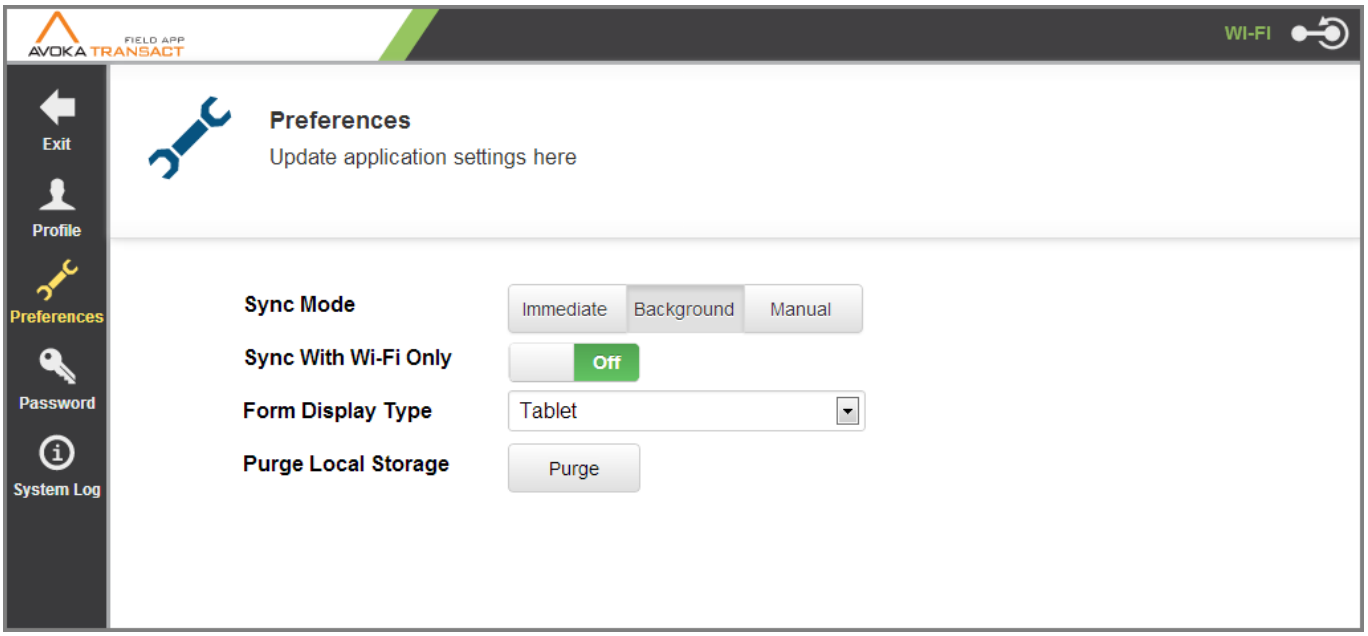
Click Profile to change configuration of the user profile details.



This will cause the following to take place:

- Changed profile information is updated in Journey Manager next time you are connected to it.
- The information that you see on this page may vary depending on the configuration settings that your administrator has set up.
- It is also possible for you to configure multiple profiles, however this feature is rarely enabled.

Click Preferences.




- Click Sync Mode to change it to:
  - Immediate — which is how previous versions of the app used to synch. Synchronization happens after every form save, submit or delete and you could not open any form for several minutes until synching finished. An immediate sync will always occur when you login for the first time, change servers or after a local storage purge.
  - Background (default) — Synchronization now happens at regular time intervals (default is 30 seconds), not every time forms change as per the previous option. You can also delete multiple forms without the need to wait for synchronization after the deletion of each form.
  - Manual — synchronization happens only when you initiate it by tapping on the sync button.This mode is for situations when you are working offline, for example, and don't want your work being frequently synchronized.
- Click Sync With Wi-Fi Only to conserve mobile data bandwidth.

- Select a form display type from the Form Display Type dropdown list, which can be changed from Tablet though this is not recommended if you are on a mobile device.
- Click Purge Local Storage to delete TransactField App data stored on your mobile device. This should be used with caution and only as a last resort when corruption of local data may have occurred.

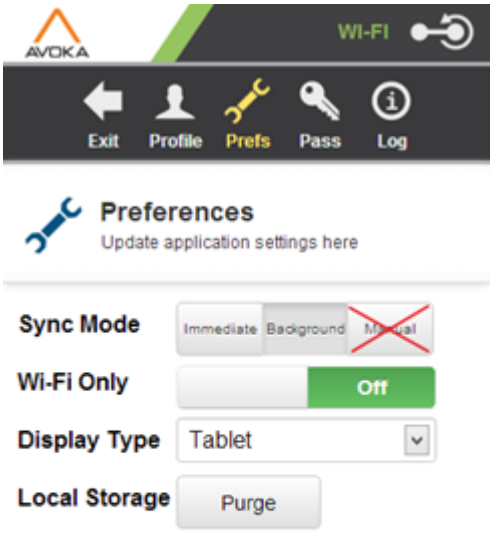
Click Password to change your password.

> NOTE
>
> After you click Change, you will be taken to the TransactField App login screen.

Click System Info to view useful information to diagnose problems within TransactField App.

Click Upload to populate the TransactField App Client Log in Journey Manager the next time you are connected to the server.

Don't turn sync mode to manual without a good reason. Background sync mode is the default setting and will synchronize the app with the server regularly (usually every 30 seconds depending on Manager setting). It's important to have your work regularly backed up. Manual sync mode can be used temporarily under very unstable network conditions. Ensure you switch back to Background sync mode in regular conditions.




# System Settings

There are a number of server side TransactField App Portal Properties which can be configured by system administrators.

| Setting | Description | Default |
|---|---|---|
| Auto Sync Interval | The auto sync interval in seconds during which a sync action is performed. | 30 |
| Box Client Id | The client key for Box | <key> |
| Box Client Secret | The secret key for Box | <key> |
| Client Auto Save Interval | Interval in seconds specifying how often client automatically saves open forms. | 60 |
| Client Delete DB After Max Login Attempts | The TransactField App should delete the local database after the maximum number failed logins have been attempted. | 3 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Client Deprecated Versions | Comma separated list of T-Field versions which will be forced to update. | string |
| Client HTTP timeout | Client HTTP request timeout in seconds. | 180 |
| Client Group Filter Default | The client task list and history group filter default setting. | Group |
| Client Log Length | Number of lines which will be persisted in log file on device. | 1000 |
| Client Log Location | Settings which turns on location logging in sync message. When enabled, sync message will include user latitude and longitude. | False |
| Client Session Timeout | The user inactivity duration in minutes after which the client is logged out. The default zero value means do not log the user out. | 5 Minutes |
| Client Sync Mode | The predefined syncing mode for users. If Editable, user can choose the mode on device. | Editable |
| Client Sync WIFI Only | Settings which allow client syncing on Wifi connection only. If Editable, user can choose setting on device. | Editable |
| Client Use Native XML Parser | Use native XML parser on iOS devices. | True |
| Email 2FA Message | Email message for 2FA user account enrolment. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Email 2FA Subject | Email subject for 2FA user account enrolment. | |
| Email Form Receipt Subject | Email subject for submitted form receipt email. | "Form Receipt" |
| Email Form Receipt Message | Email message for submitted form receipt email. | "You recently submitted a <form name> at <portal name>. Your submission reference number is: ..... Please see the attached PDF for a copy of your form submission. " |
| Email Lost Password Subject | Lost password reset email subject. | "Transaction Manager Lost Password" |
| Email Lost Password Message | Lost password reset email message. | "Thank you, an email with your new password will be sent to you in a few minutes. Please check your email SPAM folders if you don't receive an email, also note if you don't have a valid account you will not receive an email." |
| Email Submission Status Message | Email subject for submission processing status update |  #if ($jobProcessMessageText)  ${jobProcessMessageText}  #else  ${user.fullName} your form tracking code ${submission.trackingNumber} status has been updated to: ${submission.processingStatus}  #end |
| Email Submission Status Subject | Email subject for submission processing status update | ${submission.formName} Update |
| Email Template HTML | Email border template HTML | HTML template code |
| Email Template Mode | Specify the location of | "Use Email Template HTML" |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | the Email HTML border template to use. | |
| Forget Password Message | Password reset confirmation message to user. | "Thank you, an email with your new password will be sent to you in a few minutes. Please check your email SPAM folders if you don't receive an email, also note if you don't have a valid account you will not receive an email." |
| Form Load Timeout | Client maximum time allowed to load a form in milliseconds. | 120000 |
| Google API Key | Google API Services Access Key | |
| Max Attachment Pixel Dimension | The maximum height or width (whichever is bigger) in pixels. Otherwise the image will be resampled to the same aspect ratio with the maximum dimension the specified value. The default value, "0", means that images will not be resampled. Note: unresampled images in viewers that do not honour EXIF data, Windows Photo Viewer for example, may need rotation to be in the correct orientation. The resampling feature in Transaction Manager will take EXIF orientation into account. | 800 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Max Client History Submissions | The max number of Submission History records the client can download from the server. | 60 |
| Max Client User Tasks | The max number of Task records the client can download from the server. | 30 |
| Sync Logging Level | The server sync logging level. If 'Detail' enabled then all sync calls will be logged. | Summary |

A number of these properties control the TransactField App's behavior and the client synchronizes with these:

- Auto Sync Interval
- Client Sync Mode
- Client Sync WiFi Only
- Client Delete DB After Max Login Attempts
- Client Session Timeout
- Max Client User Tasks
- Max Client History Submissions

## Disable the Standard Submit or Attachment Button

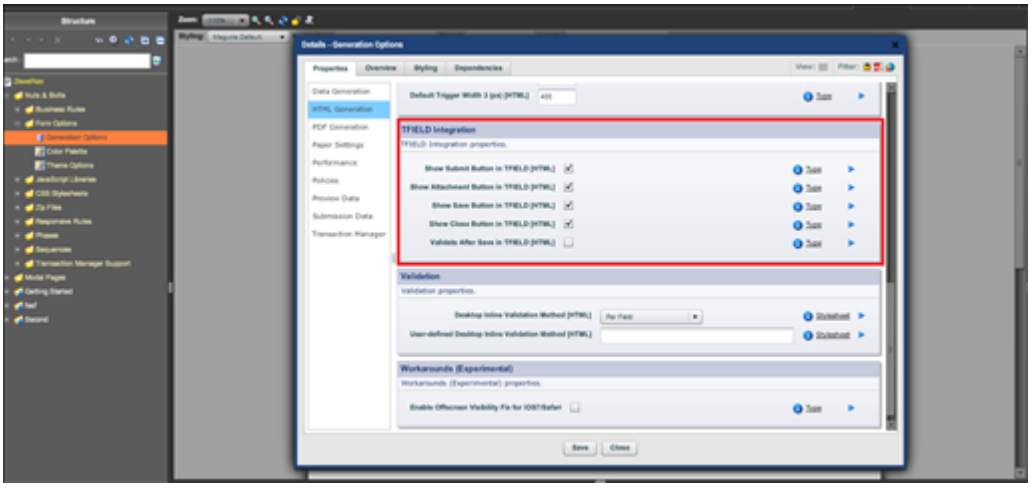
To disable the standard Submit or the Attachment button, go to Nuts & Bolts > Form Options > Generation Options > Properties > HTML Generation > TFIELD.

Why would you use these options:

If a form has no mandatory fields, it would be useful to place the Submit button at the end of the form to prevent the form filler submitting the form too early. In this case, you would disable the mobile app submit button by unchecking the option, and place a submit button on the form.

If you had a form with no attachments, it is useful to remove the attachment button from the application to minimize confusion. Additionally, if you have elected to use the

camera or gallery widget button in the form, and prefer your users to use the in form options, you may wish to un-check this option.



Next, learn how to use TransactField App.

# Configure Form Tiles

TransactField AppThis topic is related to TransactField App. | Deprecated in 21.11This feature was deprecated in 21.11.

TransactField App allows you to configure form tiles and data extracts from forms. Form tiles custom information is useful for faster navigation, filtering and sorting of saved tasks, forms and history items, especially when there are many items. This is mostly accomplished from Journey Manager. You can configure TransactField App to achieve the following.

## Extract a Customer Email from Form Data to Display it in a Task List

To show a custom field on a TransactField App tile from a form:

### Configure the form XML data extracts in Journey Manager:

1. Log on to Journey Manager
2. Select Form > Data Config > Form Data Extract Mapping
3. Name the field Email and enter the XPath[1] to the field in form data XML

### Configuing the field for TransactField App

TransactField App needs to know what is available and how it should be displayed in the form tiles

- A tiles.json file needs to be created. This shows the minimal configuration to display the extracted email field for the appropriate form. The field will be displayed with "My Email" label.

[1] XPath (XML Path Language) is a query language for selecting nodes from an XML document. In addition, XPath may be used to compute values (e.g., strings, numbers, or Boolean values) from the content of an XML document. XPath was defined by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C).

```
[
	{
		"formCode" : "avoka-showcase-form5",
		"views" : [{
			"type" : "saved",
			"fields" : [{
				"label" : "My Email",
				"value" : "formDataMap.email"
			}]
		}]
	}
]
```

- In the example above the field is named "Email" in Manager and is accessed in tiles.json file as formDataMap.email. Note that Extract Field Names are transformed to camel case notation so a field called "Delivery Email" would be accessed as formDataMap.deliveryEmail
- the last step is to upload tiles.json file to Manager in T-Field portal

### Synchronize the Device with Manager

This will download data extract rules and the `tiles.json` to device.

- open the form and enter e-mail address into mapped field
- save and close the form
- The email address from the form will be displayed in the tile as below

## Extract a Date Field and Format it

Date fields need special handling as they are encoded in XML in a fixed format. To display them in more user friendly format follow these steps:

- Extract date field from Manager
- Name it Date by following this instruction: Form > Data Config > Form Data Extract Mapping
- Update the `tiles.json` to display the new field on the tile, for example a Visit Date label, as shown below

```
[
	{
		"formCode" : "avoka-showcase-form5",
		"views" : [{
			"type" : "saved",
			"fields" : [{
				"label" : "My Email",
				"value" : "formDataMap.email"
			}, {
			"label" : "Visit Date",
			"value" : "formDataMap.date",
			"dateFormat" : "EEE, d MMM yyyy"
			}]
		}]
	}
]
```

- The `dateFormat` field specifies date format string, which is similar to Java's SimpleDateFormat.

## Customize a Title of a Tile

TransactField App shows a form name in the title by default . You can change it with an expression in `tiles.json` file by adding the following line `"title" : "Customer {{formDataMap.email}} visited on {{formDataMap.date|date:'EEE, d MMM yyyy HH:mm:ss '}}"`.

```
[
	{
		"formCode" : "avoka-showcase-form5",
		"views" : [{
			"type" : "saved",
			"title" : "Customer {{formDataMap.email}} visited on {{formDataMap.date|date:'EE
MMM yyyy HH:mm:ss '}}",
			"fields" : [{
				"label" : "My Email",
				"value" : "formDataMap.email"
				}, {
				"label" : "Visit Date",
				"value" : "formDataMap.date",
				"dateFormat" : "EEE, d MMM yyyy"
			}]
		}]
	}
]
```

## Hide Default Fields

- Default fields such as "Status", "Organization", "Last Modified" or all task related fields can be hidden.
- This can be achieved by specifying `hiddenFields` in the `tiles.json`, as shown below.

## Configure the History Screen Tiles Differently to the Task List and Saved Form Tiles

- Separate templates can be created for saved forms, tasks, and history items.
- These require a separate `view` in the `tiles.json`, as shown below.

## Reference

- Default fields such as "Status", "Organization", "Last Modified" or all task related fields can be hidden.
- This can be achieved by specifying `hiddenFields` in the `tiles.json`.

## Supported Views

- In the `tiles.json` file for each form, multiple view types can be specified. If a view without type exists, it will be used as default for all views. Any subsequent views will override the default.
    - saved
    - task
    - history

## Template Values

- TransactField App allows access to information not only from submission xml but also from submission and form metadata:
    - formDataMap
    - form
    - submission

## Special date value handling

- dates are by default stored as yyyy-MM-dd in submission xml
- to allow for more friendly formats in form tiles, users can specify `dateFormat` for fields and also for titles (see tiles.json example)
- date format uses angular date filter for formatting which is very close to Java SimpleDateFormat format but doesn't support few options (era, long time zone name):
    - https://docs.angularjs.org/api/ng/filter/dat
    - https://-docs.oracle.com/javase/6/docs/api/java/text/SimpleDateFormat.html

Detailed Example of the `tiles.json` file

```
[
	{
		"formCode" : "transact-showcase-fm",
		"views" : [{
			"title" : "Saved title: Customer {{formDataMap.deliveryEmail}} visited
{{formDataMap.myDate|date:'EEE, d MMM yyyy HH:mm:ss Z'}}",
			"type" : "saved",
			"fields" : [{
			"label" : "Delivery Email",
			"value" : "formDataMap.deliveryEmail"
		}, {
			"label" : "Form Name",
			"value" : "submission.formName"
		}, {
			"label" : "Visit Date",
			"value" : "formDataMap.myDate",
			"dateFormat" : "EEE, d MMM yyyy HH:mm:ss Z"
		}, {
			"label" : "Address",
			"value" : "formDataMap.address"
		}],
		"hiddenFields" : ["Last Modified", "Status", "Attachments", "Submitted"]}, {
			"title" : "Task title Customer visited {{formDataMap.myDate|date:'dd MM yyyy'}}"
			"type" : "history",
			"fields" : [{
			"label" : "Delivery Email",
			"value" : "formDataMap.deliveryEmail"
			}, {
			"label" : "Form Name",
			"value" : "submission.formName"
			}, {
			"label" : "Visit Date",
			"value" : "formDataMap.myDate",
			"dateFormat" : "dd.MM.yyyy"
			}, {
			"label" : "Form Version",
			"value" : "form.currentVersionNumber"
			}
			],
			"hiddenFields" : ["Last Modified", "Status", "Attachments", "Submitted"]
		}]
```

```
        }
]
```

You can hide the following fields:

```
[
        /**drafts*/
        "Last Modified",
        "Organization",
        "Status",
        /**tasks*/
        "Scheduled",
        "Complete By",
        "Assigned To",
        "Created",
        "Address",
        "Latitude/Longitude",
        "Message",
        /**history*/
        "Processing Status",
        "Status Updated",
        "Reference number",
        "Attachments",
        "Total Payment",
        "Submitted",
        "Completed"
]
```

Next, learn how to use TransactField App.

# Composer User Guide

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

This User Guide aims to describe the available Composer functionality in detail. It is comprised of descriptions of Composer functionality as well as "How To" articles that step through set up procedures. Links and references are provided throughout the guide to other Avoka Knowledge Base Spaces that describe the functionality in more detail.

NOTATION

Throughout this administration guide, we use the notation "->" to indicate a location in the interface to carry out a task.; for example: "Access Control -> Users -> New System User"
Angle brackets ("< >") indicate the general name, for example "<Account>" for "Foobar Account" or "My Account" or whatever.

Next, learn how to get started with Composer.

# Getting Started in Composer

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

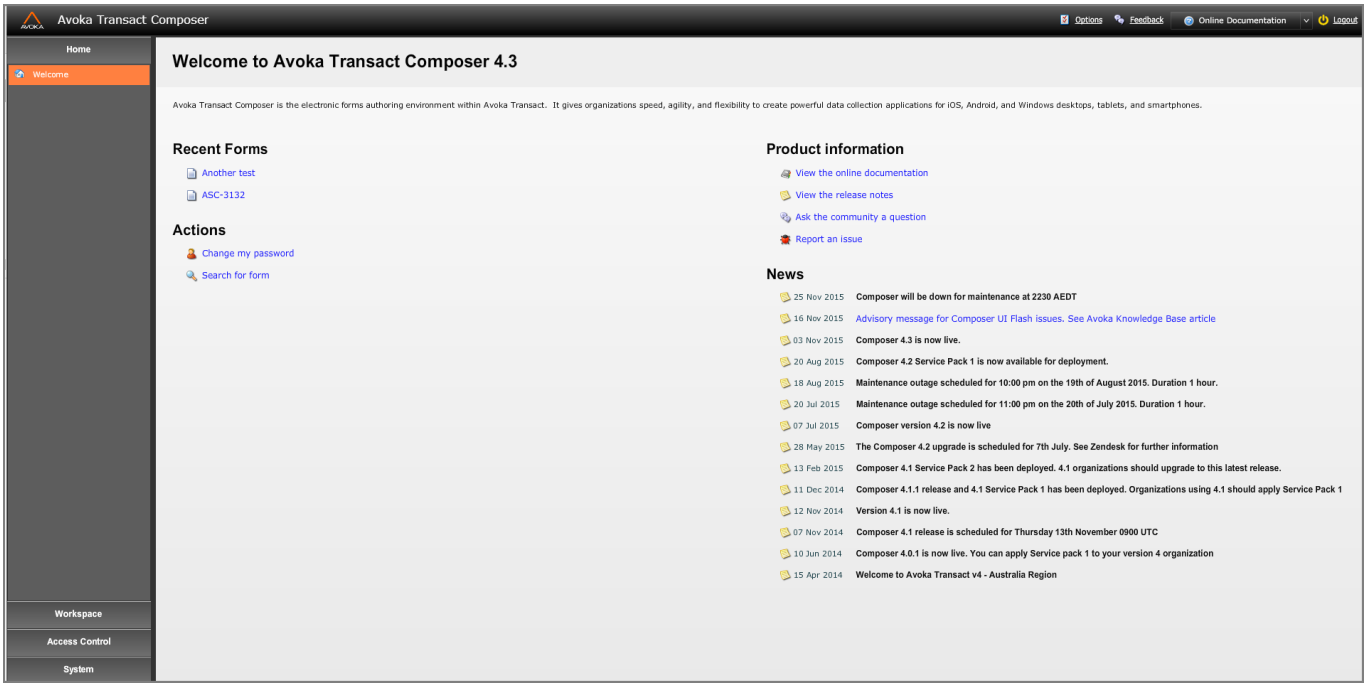
Before you can start using Composer, you must login in. There are various user roles and there is a well defined hierarchy of documents (or forms) into Organizations and Projects that define user access. For more information on Access Control, see Composer Administration Guide.

## Login Page

The composer login page presents the user with a standard user name and password dialogue as well as several links to assist the user in getting started. One of the link is the request password reset that sends an email containing a link with a token to an email address specified in the User name field so a user can reset a password. This is shown when the user tries to reset the password.

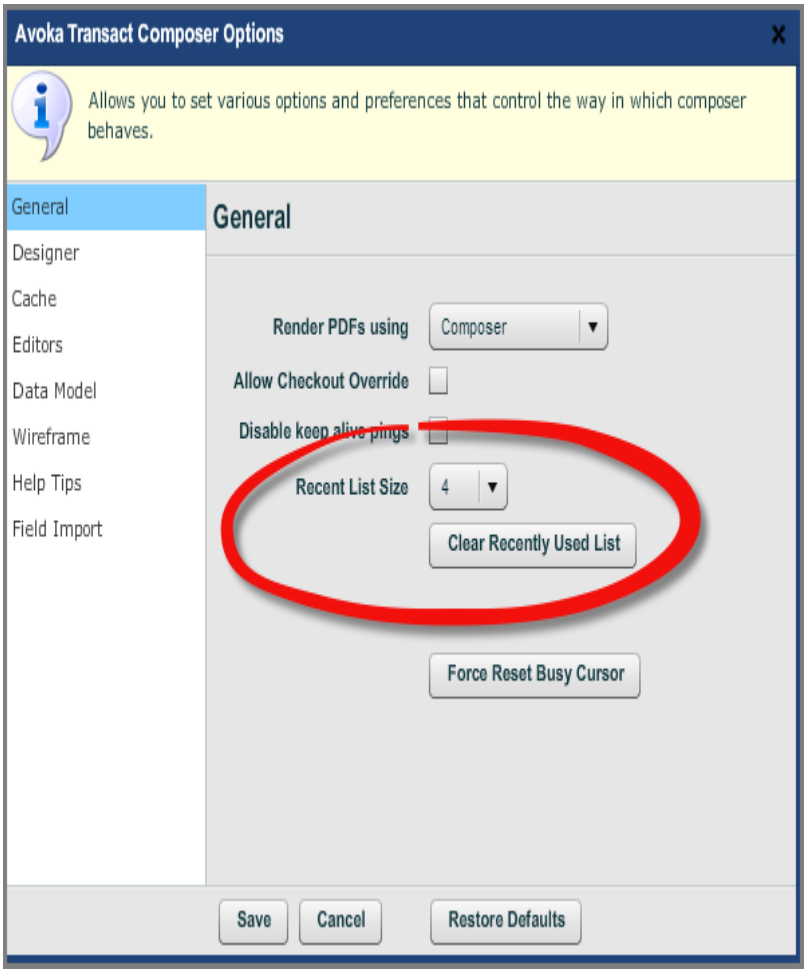
## Welcome Page

The main area of the Welcome page is divided into sections described below. These are intended to make it easy for users to navigate around the product. This example is for an administrator and thus may contain options not available to other users.



## Recent Forms

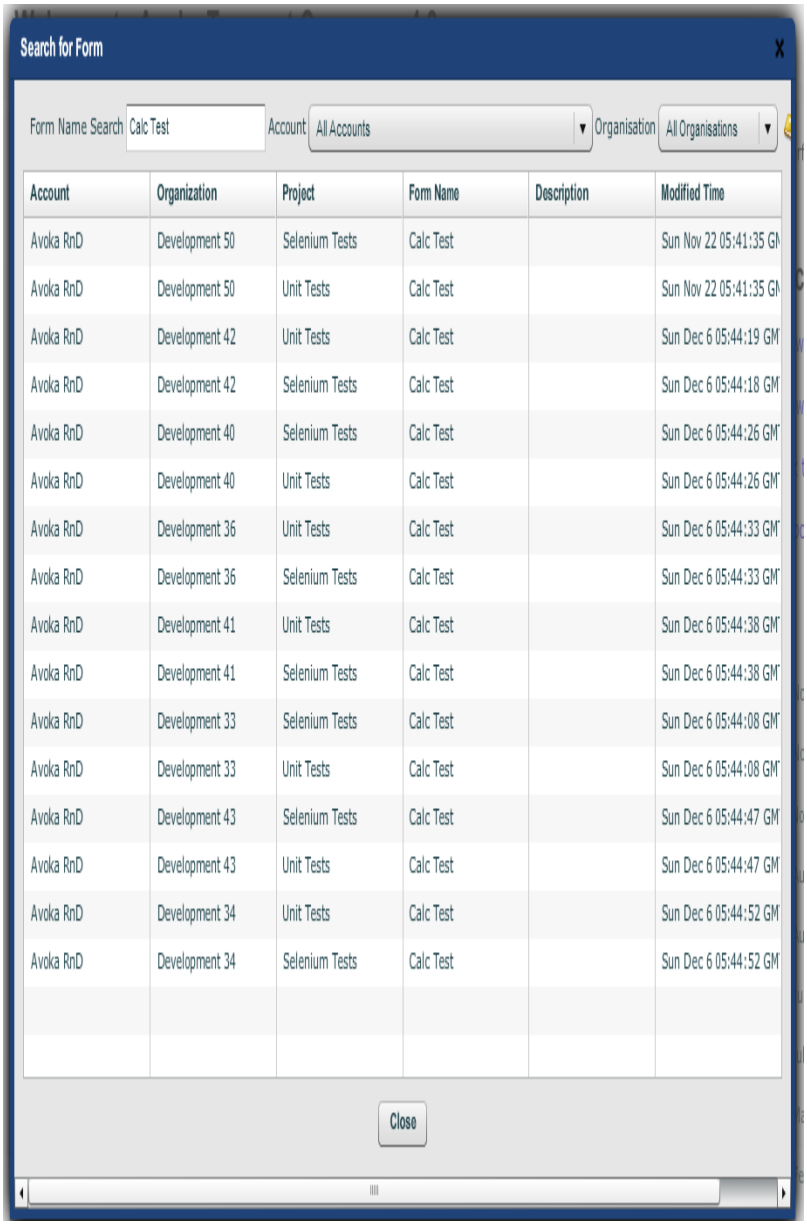
This section retains a list of most recently used forms. These are kept across sessions. The default saves the last 4 forms viewed but can be configured to store up to 10. The configuration can be changed from the "Options=>General" link at the top of the Composer Screen.




## Actions

This is where you can change your password or search for a form.

**Form Search** allows a user to search for a forms in Accounts and Organizations they have permission to access.




## Product Information

These are quick links to documentation, releases notes, Avoka Questions and the Avoka Support Portal.

### News

The Composer administrator can post news of releases, advisories or other important information. This is done via System=>Deployment .

## Home Menu Choices

### Workspace

The heart of Composer's user interface where all the design work takes place.

### Access Control

Used to control Composer Security and is only visible to users with the appropriate access levels.

### System

This is used to configure Composer and is only visible to users with the appropriate access levels.

## Top of Page Links

### Options

The Options dialog allows a user to set the default configurations for their Composer session. The following table lists the options:

| Category | Function | Default | Description |
|---|---|---|---|
| **General** | | | **These are General Configuration Options** |
| | Render PDFs using | Composer | Options: Composer, Adobe LiveCycle, XDP |
| | Allow Checkout Over-ride | Off | Setting that will ignore the form check-out status on Open/Preview only. Save/Publish will honor the checkout state. |
| | Disable keep alive pings | Off | By default Composer pings the server to avoid the session being closed. |
| | Recent List Size | 4 | The number of Recently Accessed Forms retained on the Welcome Screen |
| | Clear Recently Used List | - | Clears the List |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Force Reset Busy Cursor | - | Occasionally the Cursor can remain as busy. This will reset the cursor back to its original state. |
| **Designer** | | | **Options to Configure the designer screens** |
| | Show Internal Fields | Off | By default internal fields are hidden on form open. This will override that setting. |
| | Show Names on Structure Tree | Off | By default the field label is shown in the tree. This setting will switch to showing the Internal Name of the Field. |
| | Enable Parts on Standard Projects | Off | This will enable the Form Parts functionality in standard projects rather than requiring a Parallel Development Project (version 4.2 or later). |
| | Expand Transparent Parts | Off | This makes the contents of imported transparent parts visible in the structure tree (version 4.2 or later). |
| **Cache** | | | **Allows the manipulation of the local Cache size. This can assist with performance of the UI** |
| | Organization Cache Size | 3 | How many Organizations can be cached |
| | Current Cache Contents | - | Show the Organizations that are in the Cache |
| | Clear Cache | - | Clears the current organization cache |
| | Show Load Times | Off | This setting will display a pop up with the form load time in milliseconds. |
| **Editors** | | | **Configuration settings when the editor dialogs are opened.** |
| | Show Advanced Properties | Off | By selecting this option the advanced properties of the field are shown |
| | Default Units | Form Units | Allows selection of default units in the editor |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Hide Script Editor Tree at startup | Off | Forces the script editor tree to NOT be built at startup. |
| **Data Model** | | | |
| | Link Data Model Trees | On | Links tree selection in data model view. |
| **Wireframe** | | | **Controls how the wireframe looks and works.** |
| | Default Zoom Factor | 110% | Changes the default wireframe zoom. This can be adjusted when the form is open. |
| | Show Measurement Tooltips | Off | Shows approximate measurements of a field dimensions as a tooltip in the wireframe |
| | Freeze Wireframe | Off | Will set off wireframe redraws |
| | Use embedded fonts | On | Controls whether the wireframe will use its embedded font |
| | Auto Refresh Problems/Dependencies | On | When selected the wireframe will auto refresh Problems and dependencies automatically |
| | Check Errors Before Preview | Off | |
| | Show Wireframe on Form Open | On | This option can restrict the wireframe from being shown at form open. This can assist with opening times on large forms. |
| | Show Empty Block Border | On | Setting it on will show a border around an empty block. This makes it easy to drop in items. |
| **Help Tips** | | | **Controls whether Help Tips are displayed** |
| **Field Import** | | | **Settings used with the Field Import Function** |
| | Show Field Import Dialog | On | |
| | Create New Field | On | |

Instead of Updating
Existing Field

## Feedback

This link shows the dialog that provides information that includes form details, the Composer build used, the search path details and the browser details.
This information can be copied and pasted into support Jiras or emails.

## Online Documentation

This links to this guide in HTML. It is also a dropdown menu (click on the arrow to the right of "Online Documentation") and you have the following choice:

- Online Documentation - The link is set under System=>Deployment properties
- Release Notes - Link to Avoka knowledge base. The link is set under System=>Deployment properties
- Javascript Documentation (giving the Composer Framework — see Scripting)
- About Avoka Transact Composer (Specifies, version number, build date and number and build environment)

## Logout

Logs the user out.

# Accessibility for Composer Developers

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Accessibility can be considered the degree to which electronic services and products can be accessed by the largest number of users possible. Although, often focused on disabled people using assistive technology including screen-readers, this is relevant to all people, including those that are on slow broadband, using non mainstream operating systems, using a mobile device or speaking non-native languages.

Since 1999 the primary international standard for website accessibility has been the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) developed by the W3C. This has formed the basis for accessibility legislation around the world, including Section 508 in the US and the 2000 Government Online Strategy in Australia.

Many Avoka clients care about accessibility because it is good for society and, in some sectors, compliance has been legislated.

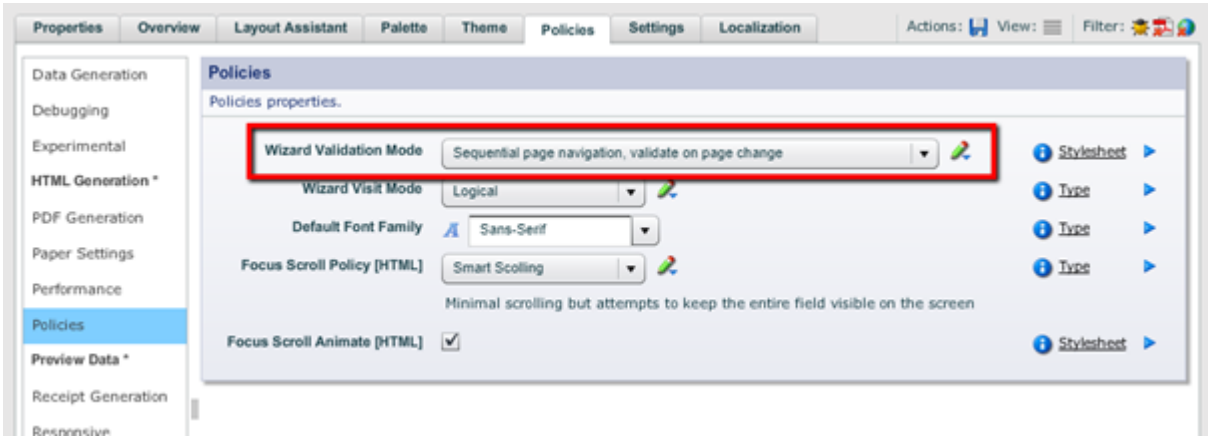
Avoka Composer provides as much of the basic, field-level accessibility as possible automatically. For instance, linking a field's caption text with its input. This document provides a guide of the additional tasks that a Composer form developer must perform to achieve maximum accessibility.

**Checklist:**

1. Use Sequential page navigation
2. Use Section headers
3. Mark-up lists
4. Add alternate text to images
5. Do not use Background Image
6. Use Fieldsets
7. Use Caption Placement Top
8. Use Described By
9. Check color contrast
10. Do not use Placeholder Text
11. Do not use a separate Text for field captions
12. Do not disable anything

## 1. Use sequential page navigation

Structure > [Root] > Edit Properties > Policies > Wizard Validation Mode

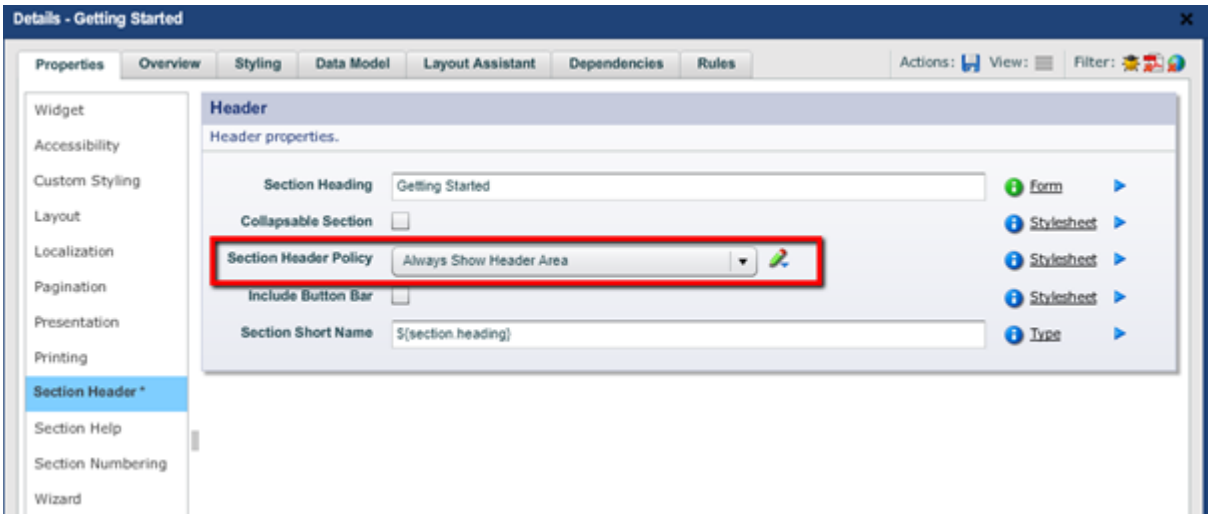



This policy property defines how validation and navigation operates for the form as a whole. Sequential page navigation is better for accessibility as it provides a simpler experience where users navigate through the form sequentially, one page at a time, and does not allow them to progress until the current page passes validation.

Unconstrained page navigation allows the user to navigate to any page, in any order which can be confusing (particularly on mobile devices) and does not perform full form validation until they attempt to submit from the final page. Having to then potentially correct issues across multiple pages can be a challenge.

## 2. Use section headers

Structure > Section > Edit Properties > Properties > Section Header > Section Header Policy

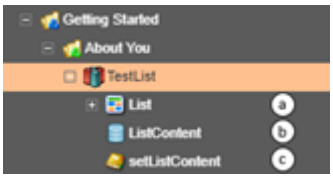


Correctly marked-up headings are provided automatically by the form header and sections at levels 1, 2 and 3. Use section headers and do not manually create them with text objects.

## 3. Mark-up lists

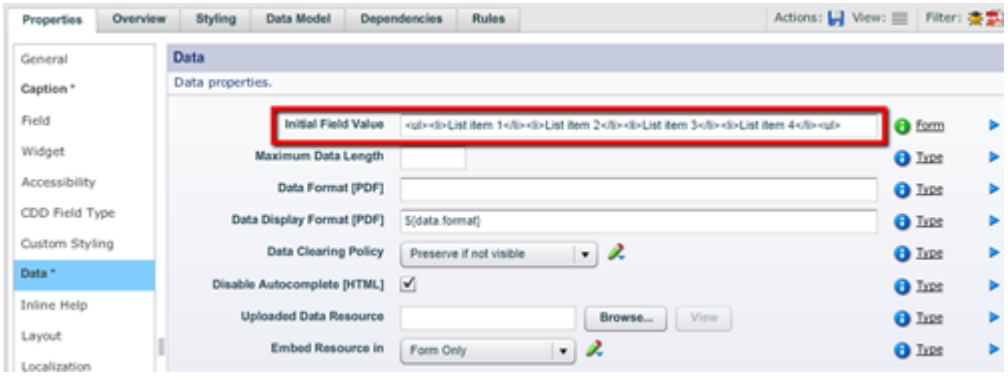
Lists that are created in the rich text editor are visually represented as a list but are not marked-up correctly in the HTML. See the example below that demonstrates a technique for providing marked-up lists.

Example list structure:

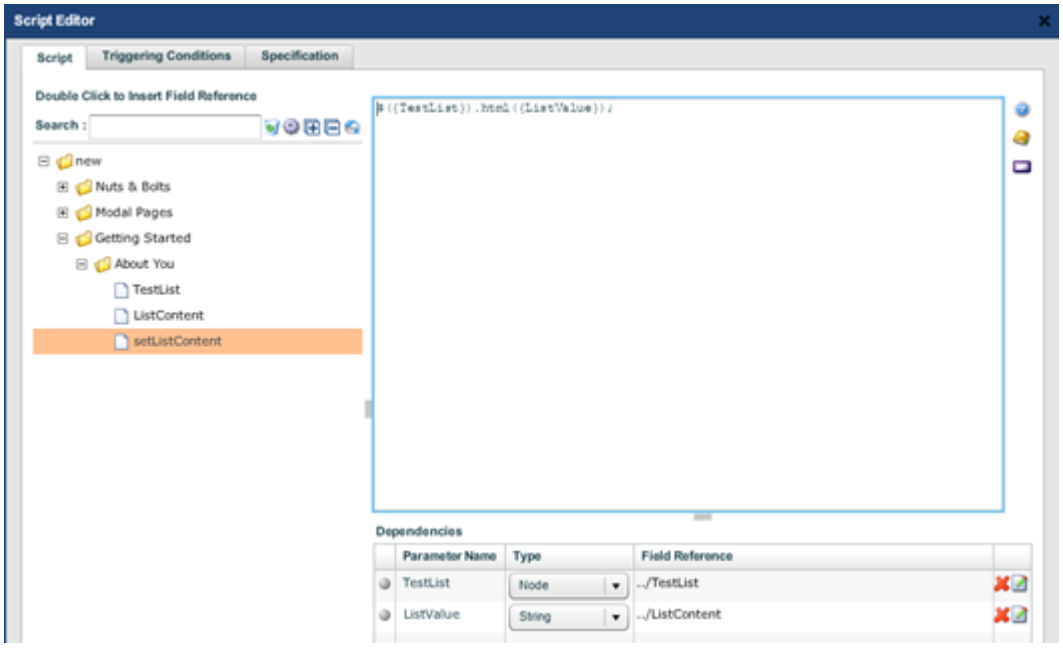



a) TestList - Create a rich text placeholder for the list with no content

b) ListValue - Create a data field with the list HTML mark-up as the initial field value:

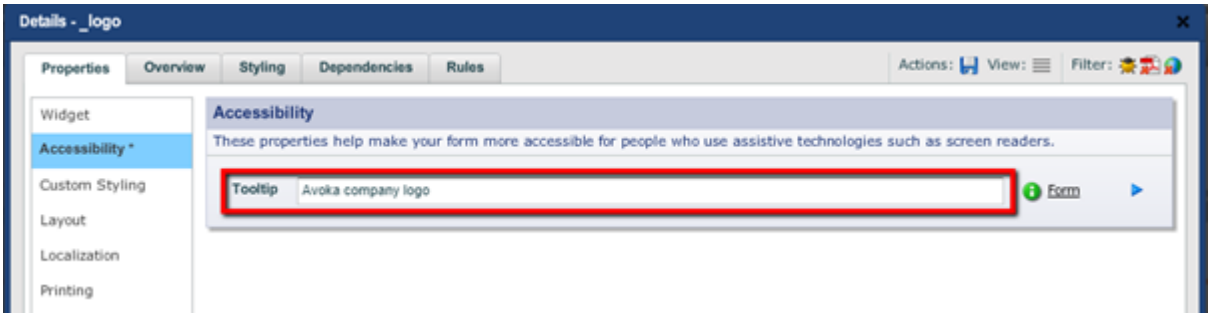



c) setListContent - Create a general purpose business rule that triggers on Initialization and uses JQuery to set the ListValue HTML onto the TestList:




## 4. Add alternate text to images

Image > Edit Properties > Accessibility > Tooltip



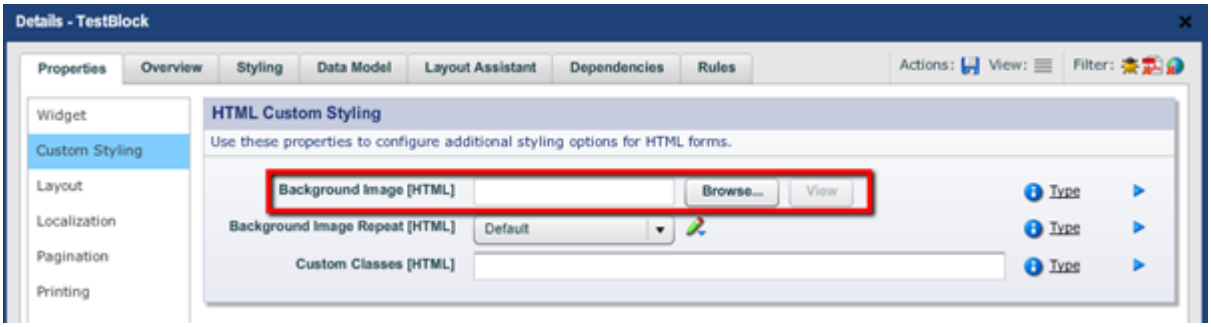

Images can be informative or decorative. The form developer must use their judgement on whether an image should be treated as decorative or informative:

Decorative images do not convey information to the user and are typically used to make the form more visually attractive by adding visual components such as separators and textured backgrounds. An image is also considered decorative if it conveys information that is also fully provided by surrounding text. Decorative images should not have alternate text.

Informative images do convey information to the user that is not provided by surrounding text and should have alternate text that conveys the meaning or content of the image. The alternate text need not be a literal description of the image and should be as succinct as possible.

## 5. Do not use background images

Component > Edit Properties > Properties > Custom Styling > Background Image [HTML]

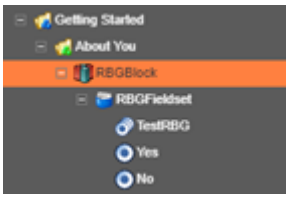



Informative images should not be used as a background image as it is not possible to provide them with alternate text and some browsers remove background images when put in high contrast mode. It is fine to use decorative images as a background image.

See section 4. Add alternate text to images, for a definition of informative and decorative images.

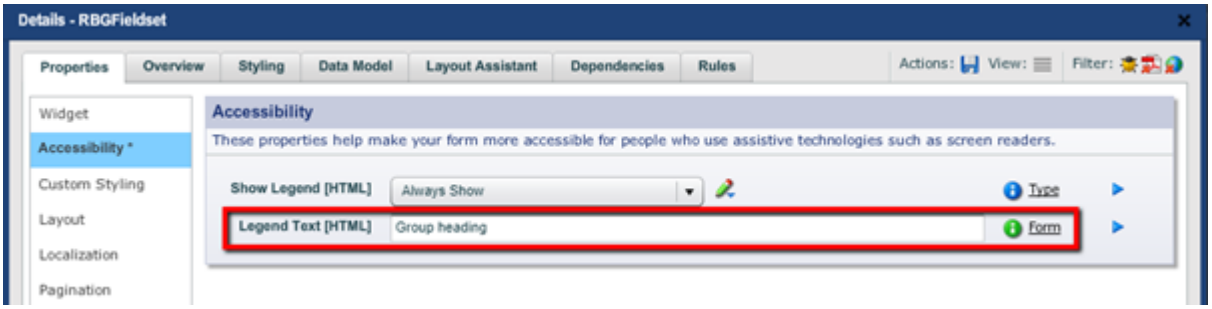
## 6. Use fieldsets

Fields that are not stand-alone and only make sense in the context of a group of fields should be contained within a fieldset. For instance radio buttons, telephone region code and number and address fields:




A meaningful description of the group should be provided in the fieldset's Legend Text which is usually displayed on-screen as a heading:

Fieldset > Edit Properties > Properties > Accessibility > Legend Text [HTML]

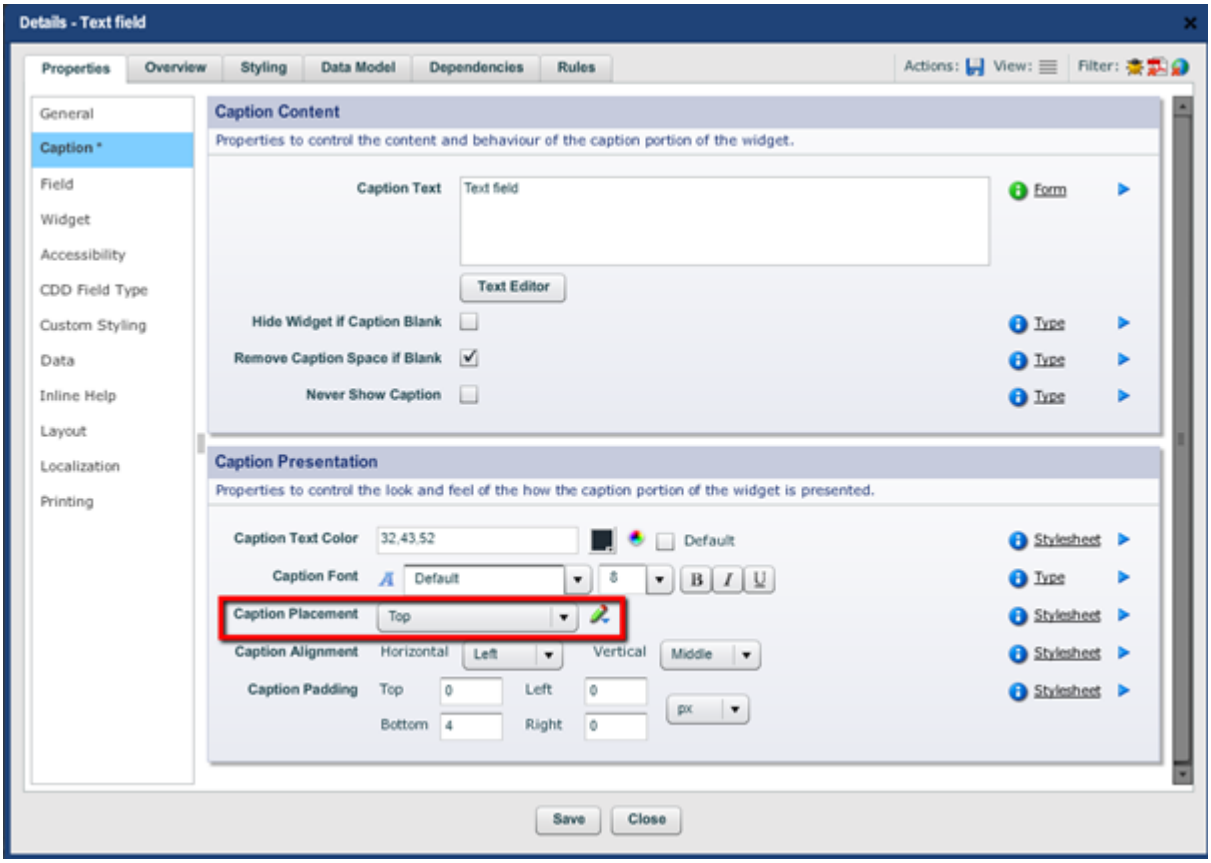



The legend text will be used by assistive technology to inform the user of context for fields within the group. For instance, tabbing to a radio button whilst a screen-reader is running might inform the user that they are currently focused on a radio button with caption ‘Yes’ for the fieldset ‘Would you like to purchase insurance?’.

Without the fieldset, the user would only be informed that they are focused on a radio button with caption ‘Yes’ which is clearly insufficient. To avoid repetition, the majority of assistive technology will only inform the user of the fieldset legend for the first field focused within the group, regardless of which field that is i.e. not necessarily the first field in the group by position.

## 7. Use caption placement top

Field > Edit Properties > Properties > Caption > Caption Placement

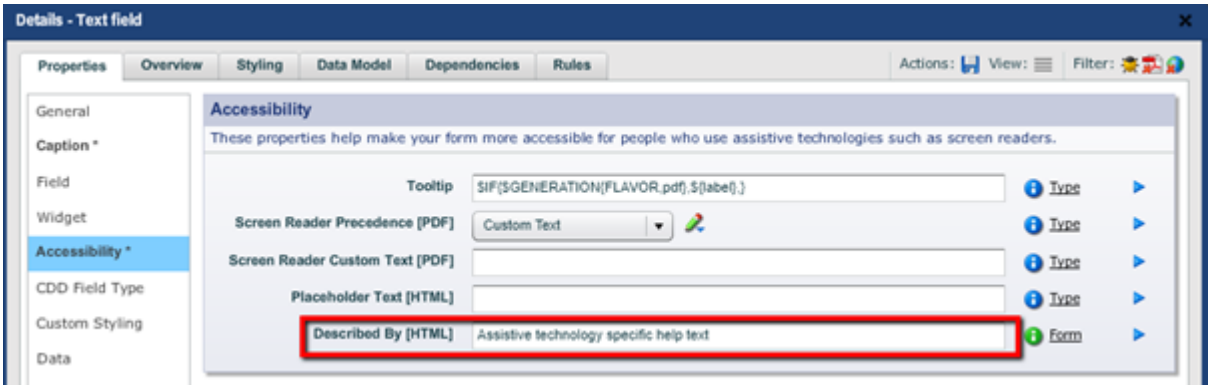



'Caption placement top' is best for accessibility as it keeps the caption closest to its field. In particular, this makes it easier for users of magnifier software to locate the field associated with a caption without having to move the cursor too far and reduces the chances of finding the wrong input by mistake.

Top placement also provides the best scan line between captions and inputs for fields. A scan line refers to eye movement along a straight line as a sighted user browses a form or searches for a specific field. Other caption placement results in additional, unnecessary movement as the sighted user's eye jumps around between captions and inputs that are less aligned.

## 8. Use described by

Field > Edit Properties > Properties > Accessibility > Described By [HTML]




Use the 'described by' property on fields to provide additional information to users of assistive technology that is not required to be displayed on-screen for sighted users. This is a useful technique for helping users of assistive technology work with non-standard fields where the behaviour is obvious to sighted users e.g. a field will auto-forward focus to the next field once it has been filled-out and so the user need not tab.

'Described by' cannot be used to reference another visible component on the form.

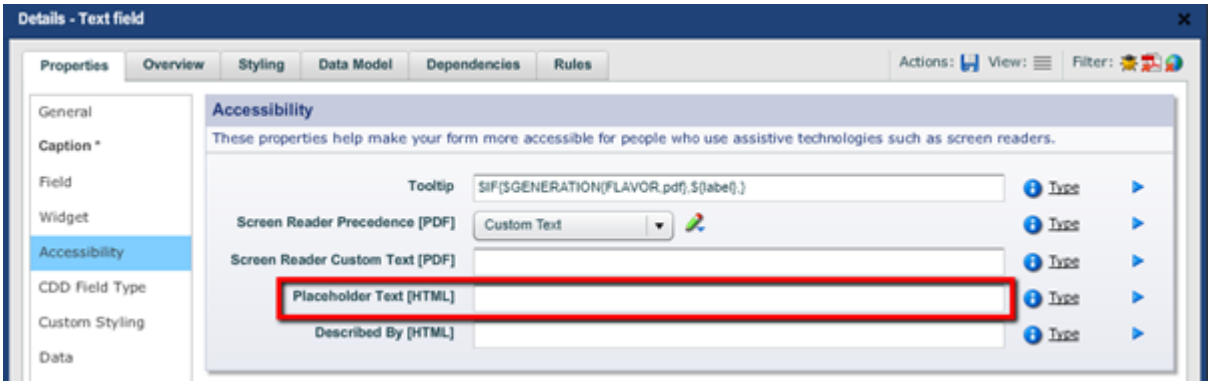
## 9. Check color contrast

Colors used in a form must meet accessibility requirements for contrast of foreground and background objects for partially sighted and color-blind users.

You can check your form using a contrast tool such as Vision Australia's Colour Contrast Analyser.

## 10. Do not use placeholder text

Field > Edit Properties > Properties > Accessibility > Placeholder Text [HTML]

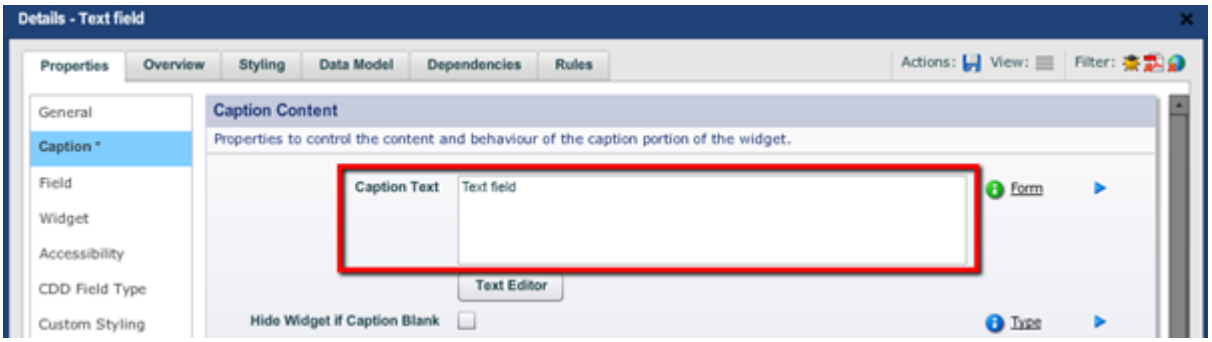



Placeholder text is the light grey text that is displayed in a field until data is entered at which point it is removed.

Placeholder text is not accessibility compliant due to the lack of consistent support in assistive technology. Some assistive technology ignore placeholder text entirely. Some always notify the user of the placeholder text regardless of whether there is data in the field or not and makes no differentiation between the placeholder text versus the entered data. Only a small proportion of assistive technology do the correct thing in only notifying the user of the placeholder text when it is visible on-screen.

## 11. Do not replace field captions with text

Field > Edit Properties > Properties > Caption > Caption Text




It can be tempting to hide the built-in field caption and create a replacement with a separate text object in order to achieve layouts such as a caption that is wider than its field.

Although, this approach may look identical on-screen to sighted users, this does not provide the browser functionality where selecting a caption sets focus to its field.

To resolve the specific case of long captions, it is better for accessibility to use a combination of shortening the caption, widening the field and moving non-critical information from the caption to a popover tooltip or a message box located close to the field.

## 12. Do not disable anything

Disabled form content is problematic for accessibility and should be avoided.

Typically, disabled content is visible on-screen for sighted users but not active and visually indicated as disabled with grey-out styling. Disabled content is not discoverable for uses of assistive technology which results in a mismatch of information. For instance, in the case of disabling the continue button for a page until certain actions are performed a sighted user can see that the button is disabled and may be able to deduce that they need to perform an action before it will be enabled.

However, a user of assisted technology will have no knowledge of the existence of the continue button at all which is likely to lead to confusion of what is expected for them to progress.

In this case, it is better for all users to keep the continue button enabled and inform the user what is expected of them with error messaging if they attempt to progress without completing necessary actions.

The other common alternative approach to disabling components is to hide them.

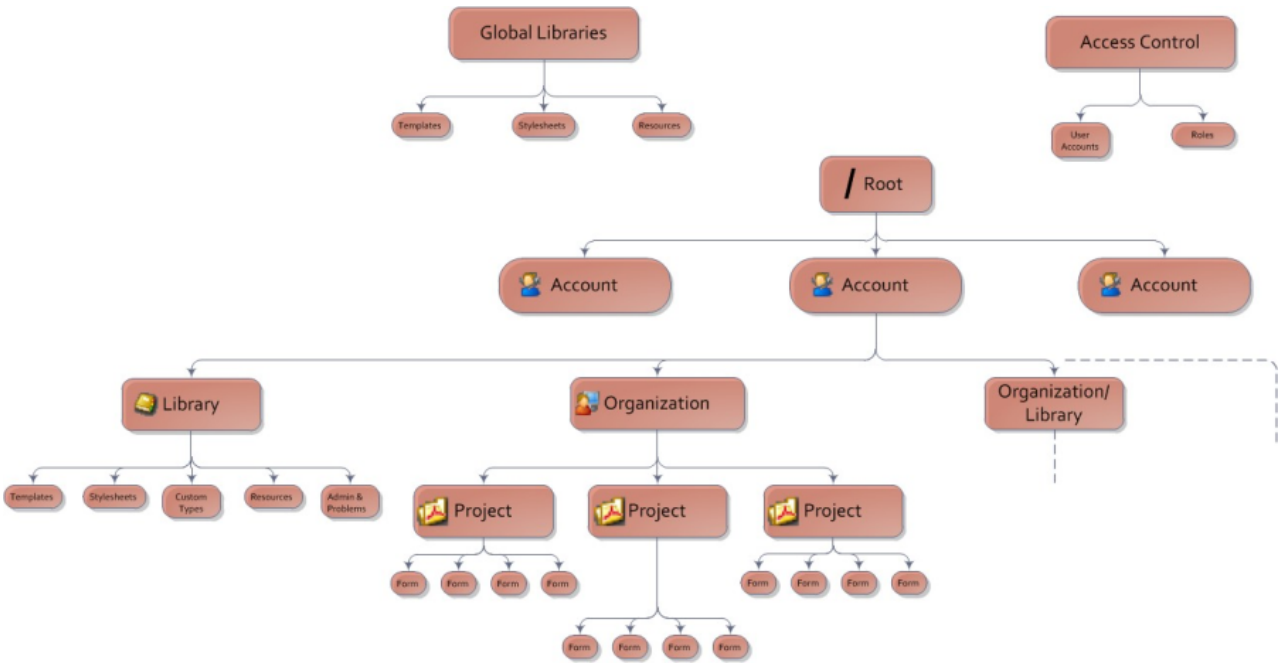
# The Composer Workspace

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The Workspace in Composer is the container for all forms and their environments. Libraries are integrated into the workspace and their allocation and sharing across projects are now dynamic and efficient. The implementation of compatibility with older versions, of patching and of service pack installation is all available to authorized users.

## The Hierarchy and Environment

### Workspace Hierarchy




The Workspace divides into "Accounts". Accounts can have several "Organizations". Each Organization has several "Projects". Each Project has its set of forms. In this model, forms are not dynamically shared between projects but can be between Organizations.

When designers require personal workspaces, they do this at the Project level.

All forms can be saved to version control and can be rolled back to a previously

versioned revision, if required. If designers delete forms, they are actually not deleted from the Composer database and can be recovered.
If a form is open in Composer by one designer, other designers are locked out. There is a form lock override available however this needs to be used with caution to ensure changes are not lost.
Each Account can have a number of Libraries which are dynamically shared at the Organization and Project levels. Administrators are free to allocate whole Libraries as they see fit, or the components of Libraries.

**Merits of this Structure**

Composer caches Organizations allowing faster navigation times around the Workspace. By default, Composer caches 3 organizations. This is configurable using the Options=>Cache.

Both Global Libraries and Access Control sit above the Account hierarchy. Global Libraries can be shared dynamically across Accounts, allowing — if desired — patching to these Global elements without intervention by end users or administrators.
Users can be given access to several Accounts, and within those be given access to different functions. Libraries are shared at the Account level, and the one Account can have several Libraries so that branding can be controlled across the Enterprise in both similarity and difference from department to department.

# The Composer Hierarchy

## Accounts

An Account is the top level of the Composer tree hierarchy. It holds one or more Organizations which in turn can contain one or more projects. Most users only belong to one Account.

The screen below shows the Account "Avoka RnD". It houses several Development Organizations.

## Organizations

Organizations are a way of splitting up the account into entities that match the client's business. For example this may be by department or distinct business units. Users can

belong to one or more organizations depending on the way their permission set. The following screen shot shows the organization "Development 42". It has expanded to display its underlying projects.

There are several capabilities that are accessed at the organization level.

| Asset Type | Description |
|---|---|
| Projects | A grouping for forms. To create a new project, click on the Create New Project button. |
| Style Sheets | A list of style sheets available for your organization. Many of the standard style sheets will be inherited from Composer default style sheets, and these cannot be modified. If you want to modify one of these style sheets, you must first make a copy of it. For an explanation of style sheets, see this topic: Overview |
| Custom Types | Custom types are the widgets or blocks that have been created for your organization. You can modify or delete these types if you have the required privileges.<br><br>Some types available to your organization are not modifiable. This are either types that are inherited from Composer defaults, or complex types that are not editable using the standard block editor. You can view these types by clicking the "Include non-editable types" checkbox.<br><br>**Warning**: Be very careful of modifying or deleting custom types, as they may be in use by multiple forms. Always perform an impact analysis before modifying. If in doubt, make a copy of the type rather than modifying it. For more information on Impact analysis, see this topic: Impact Analysis |
| Resources | A resource can be any file used in your forms. Typically these are images and JavaScript libraries. |
| Templates | A template allows you to customize the form-design experience and the forms that are produced by Composer. This is for advanced users only. |
| Administration | This contains the next 3 sub-tabs |

| | |
|---|---|
| | **Assigned Users**<br><br>A list of users assigned to this organization. Administrators can create new users, add and remove users from the organization, and change their roles.<br>Users are global to the Composer instance.<br>**Note**: Depending on the way that your organization is set up, you may need to add users to individual projects as well as to the organization.<br>**Note**: It is strongly suggested to use a user's email address as their user-id. This avoids possible name conflicts.<br>**Property Sets**<br><br>This is a list of the set of properties that can be used on the Bulk Editor page.<br>**Settings**<br><br>This tab displays several settings about the current user and organization, including:<br><br>• publish targets<br>• the ability to perform impact analysis on widgets, blocks, style sheets, and templates. |
| Problems | This shows any issues in the organization. |

# Projects

A project is a convenient container of a number of forms - usually forms get created in groups or batches, and a project is a simple way to group them. Restrictions can be placed on which users have access to each project.
Click on the Create New Project button at the organization level to create a project, and follow the wizard steps.

There are several capabilities that are accessed through project level tabs:

| Asset | Description |
|---|---|
| Forms | A list of forms in this project. You could double-click on the form in the list in order to open it.<br>You can perform a number of actions on a form: |

Open Form: allows form editing. You can do this by clicking the icon, or by double-clicking.

Open Form - No Wireframe: Opens a form for editing with no wireframe shown. This is especially useful for large forms that may take a long time to open.

Update Form Details: Modify a form's properties, including its name and description.

Save As: Make a copy of a form.

Delete Form.

Preview Form. The rendition types and defaults are controlled by the template being used.

Unlock form. (Administrators only.) This allows a form that has been opened by another user to be unlocked. Use this with caution, as the current user will no longer be able to save their changes.

Publish form. Publish the form to Transaction Manager or as a zip file.

View Form Statistics. Various statistics about the form such as how many fields, dependencies and so forth.

Manage Form Revisions: This can be used to create new and use old form revisions, for example, revert to a previous version.

Generate Form Specification.

**Note**: You cannot open a form that is currently being edited (i.e. "checked out") by another user, who is identified in the "Checkout by" column.
**Note**: if you open a form in a Read-only organization, you will be able to modify the form, but not save it.

| | |
|---|---|
| Assigned Templates | The templates available to this project. Advanced users only. |
| Assigned Users | The users that are assigned to this project. The user must first be assigned to the organization. |

### Creating a Form

To create a new form, click on the Create New Form button in the project's toolbar, and follow the wizard's instructions. The wizard content can change depending on the template that has been selected. The Avoka Maguire template adds a screen where the form developer can choose various functions that can be included directly in the form.

Here are the steps to the New Form Wizard:

| Step | Description |
|---|---|
| 1 Name and Description | Enter the name and description of your form. Choose the name carefully, as this will appear in the form header by default (this can be changed if desired). The description is not used within the form, and is used only to describe the form to other users of Composer. |
| 2. Template | Select a template. This will vary based on how your organization has been set up. Most organizations will only have a single template. |
| 3. Additional Values | Select additional values, such as the heading lines of your form. These will vary depending on how your template has been configured. Some of the fields entered here will appear on the header or footer of your form, and some options may control they way in which your form is generated.<br>There are a number of special values that may be used:<br>• $FORM{NAME} - this is the name of your form as you typed it in the first page of the wizard, and as it appears in the list of forms in your project. Using this will ensure that the name of your form in Composer matches the name at the top of your form. However, this may not always be what you want, so feel free to delete this formula, or change it later.<br>• $GENERATION{DATE} - this is the most recent date and time at which the form has been generated. This is used as the default form identifier, because it will always increase whenever a new version of the form is generated. However, you may choose to set your own form identifier, such as "VA 22-1995". |

Click Finish to complete the wizard, and your form will open for editing.

# Composer Form Revisions

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The Composer Form Revision functionality allows an organization to create and manipulate revisions of a form.

It offers the ability to:

- Activate any revision belonging to a form.
- Make a revision read only.
- View the XML of any revision thus eliminating the need to activate a revision temporarily to view it.
- Assign a name to a revision. This can be used for versioning revisions. The name assigned is also shown in the form list.
- Create a revision when the form is published.

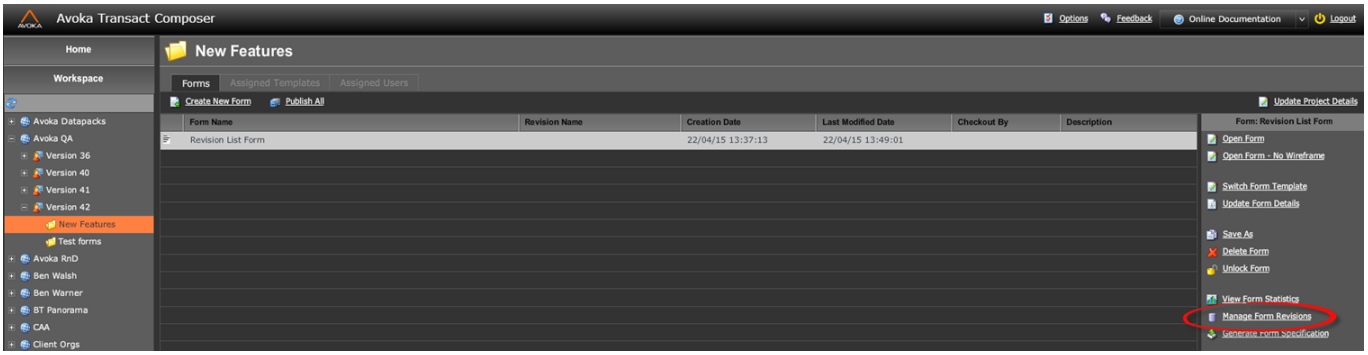
## Manage Revisions Functionality

### Accessing the Form Revision Dialog

The Manage Form Revision functionality is accessed from the form list screen by selecting a form in the list and choosing the option on the right hand menu.

#### Menu

The screenshot shows the "Revision List Form" with the "Manage Form Revisions" option circled.




*Screen 1- Form List Screen showing Form Menu items.*

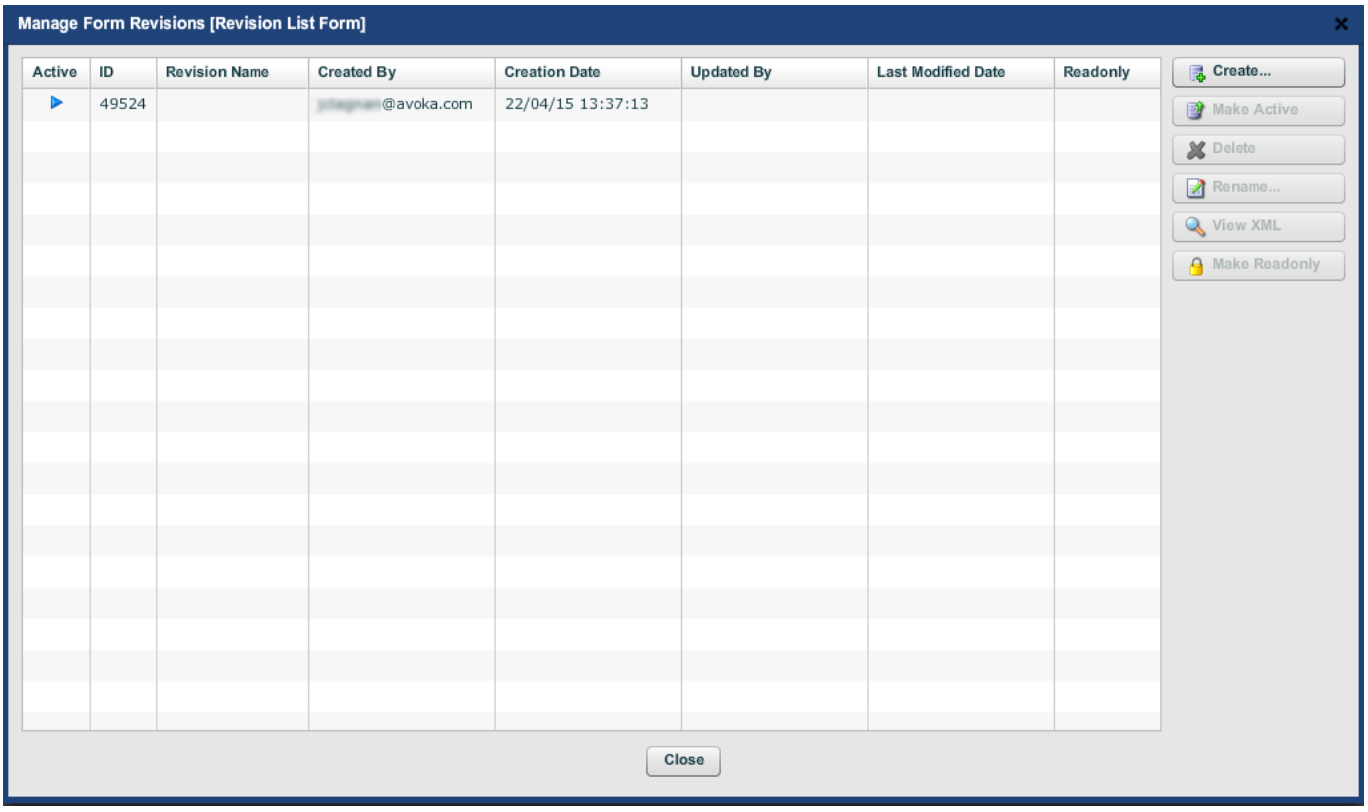
### Manage Form Revisions Dialog

A newly created form will only have one form revision, however a form can have multiple revisions. The Manage Revision dialog is shown in Screen 2

The dialog shows the following columns (all columns can be sorted):

- Active - The indicator will appear against the form revision that is currently active. When the form is opened it will be this revision that will be used.
- ID - The identification number of the form revision. This is system generated.
- Revision name - This is a freetext field, non-unique name that can be updated using the Rename Option on this screen.
- Created by: User id that created the form revision
- Creation Date: Date and time when revision was created
- Updated By: User id that updated the form revision
- Last Modified Date: Date/Time when form revision was last modified.
- Read Only: This column will show a lock symbol when the revision has been made read only. This means that if the form is made active it can not be modified.

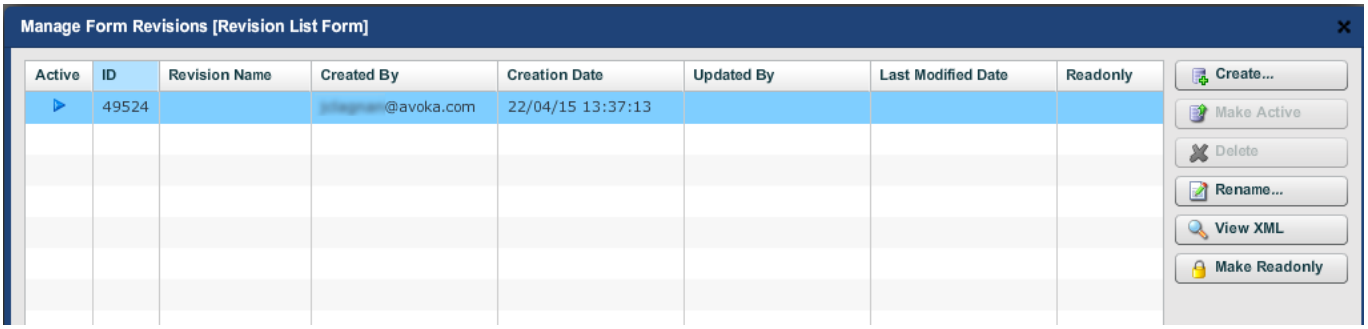
Sorting: All columns can be sorted in ascending or descending order.




*Screen 2 - Revision Dialog*

## Form Revision Options

When a revision is highlighted several options are available. Some options are disabled depending on the state of the particular revision.



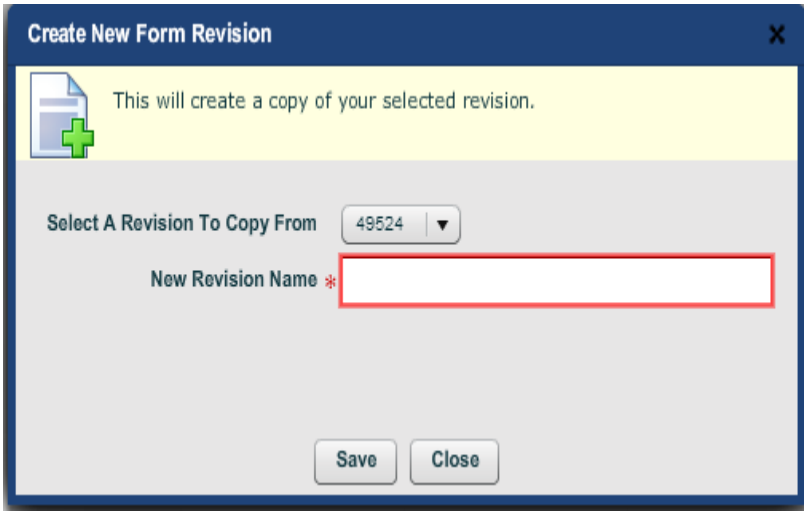

*Screen 3 - Revision Dialog: Options highlighted*

**Create**

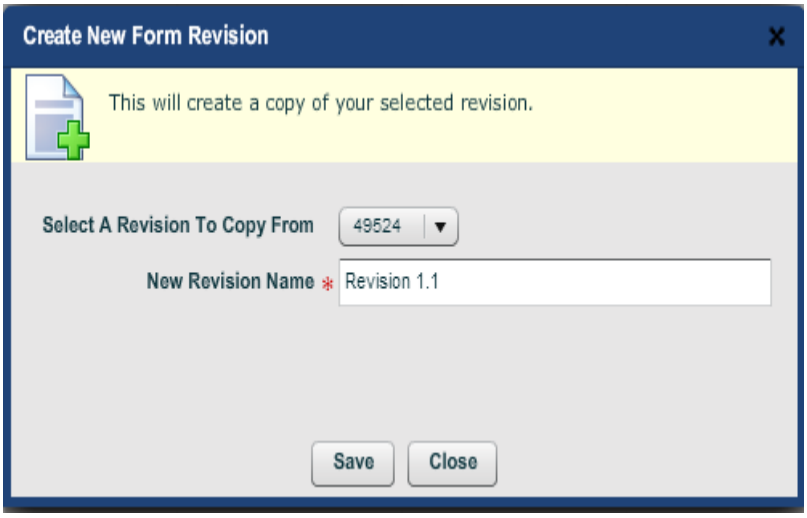
The create option allows a user to create a new form revision based on any of the form revisions in the list.

Option allows:

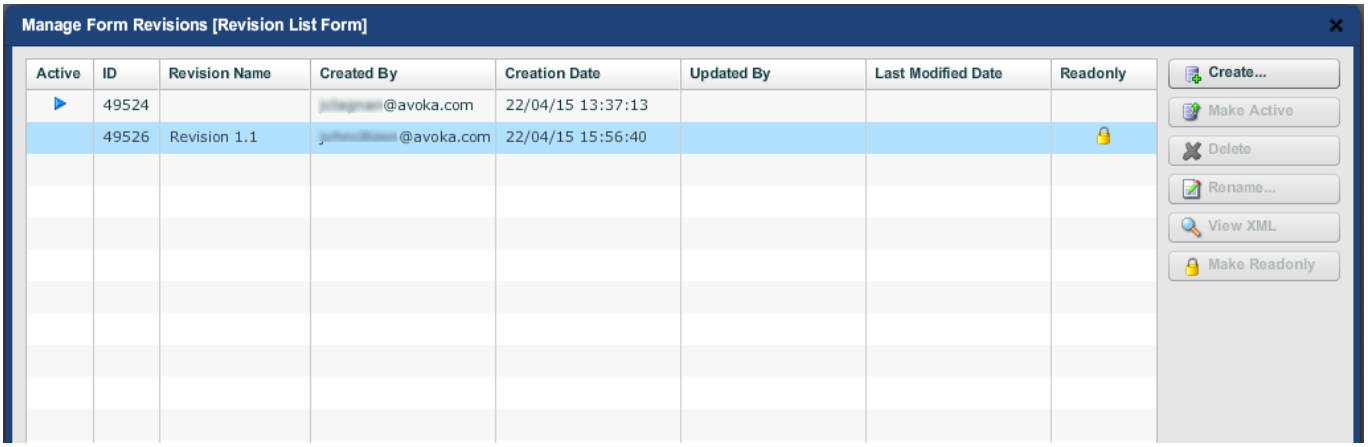
- a user to specify an existing revision ID to copy the newly created revision from. The dropdown list will show all available revision ids for the form.
- Enter a name for the revision. This is a mandatory freetext field that can be used for versioning or informational purposes.
- The newly created revision is:
  - automatically made read only
  - Is NOT made active. The activation of the the new copy is a separate manual step.



*Screen 4 - Create Revision Dialog*




*Screen 5 - Create Revision Dialog with revision name entered. It is copied from the current active version ID 49524*



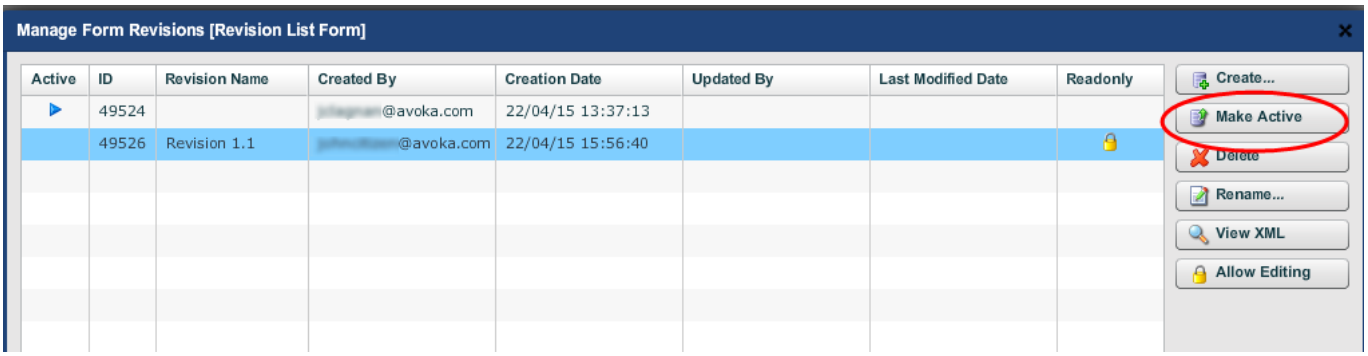

*Screen 6 - Revision Dialog with newly created revision name. The new revision is read-only and NOT active.*

**Make Active**

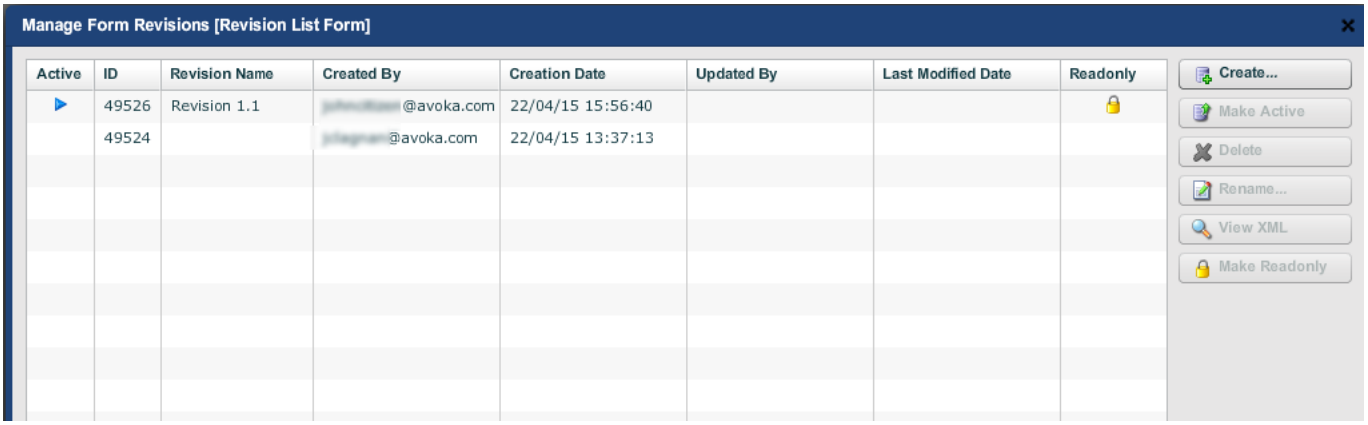
This allows a user to make a revision active. The definition of an active revision is the revision that is shown when the form is opened.

Option Summary:

- Only one revision can be active for any form.
- The active revision is highlighted by the blue indicator in the active column.
- The "Make Active" option is disabled when a revision is already active.




*Screen 7 - Revision Dialog showing make active option.*

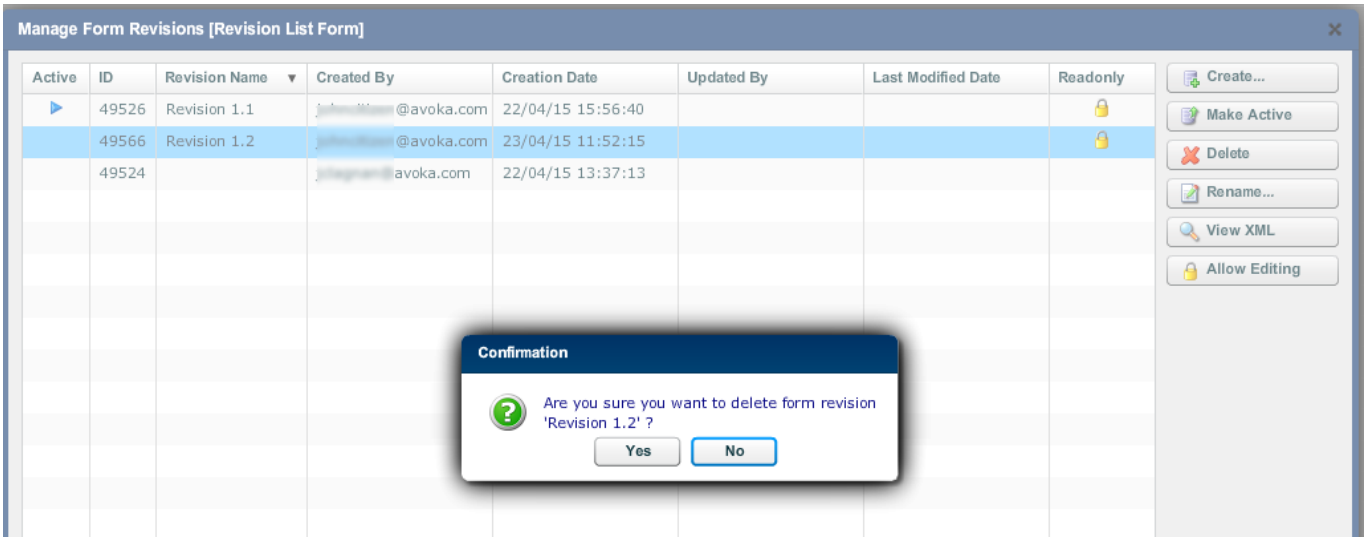



*Screen 8 - Revision ID 49526 has now been made active denoted by the blue indicator. The newly activated revision is now sorted to the top of the list.*

**Delete**

This option will delete a revision from the list.

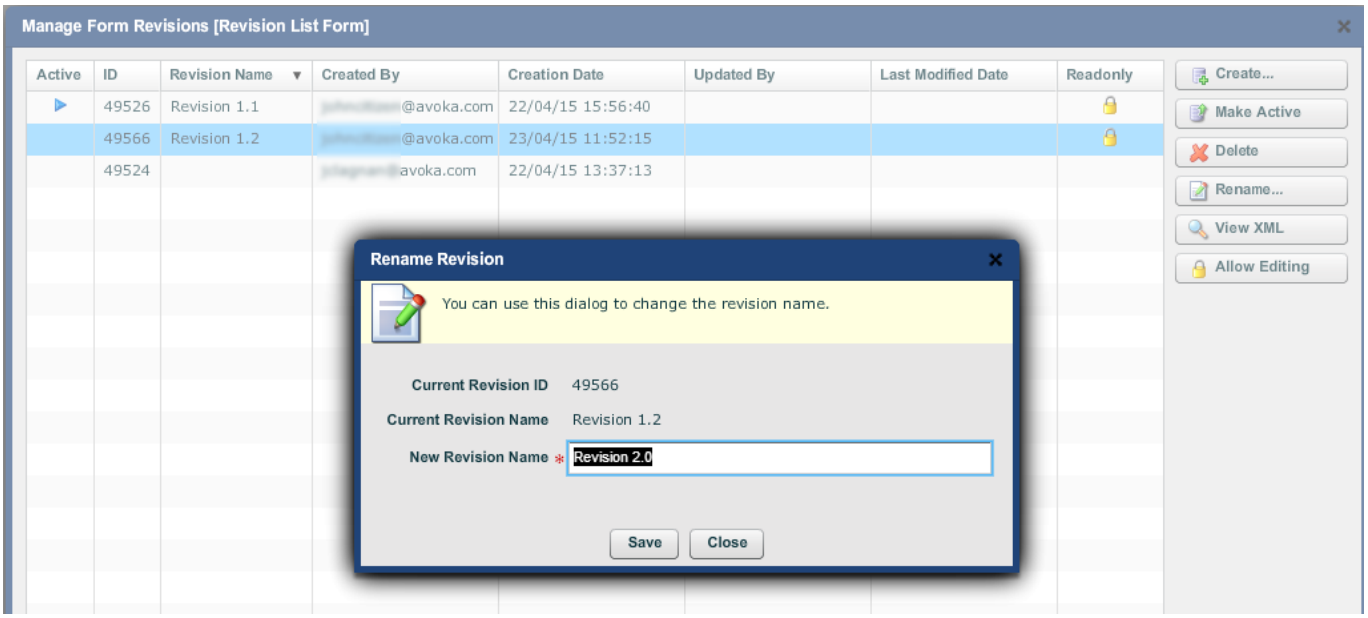
Active revisions can not be deleted. The delete button will be disabled.




*Screen 9 - This shows Revision 49566 being deleted. A confirmation is requested before the deletion takes place.*

**Rename**

This option allows you to modify the Revision Name text. The revision name is NOT unique and is simply free text.

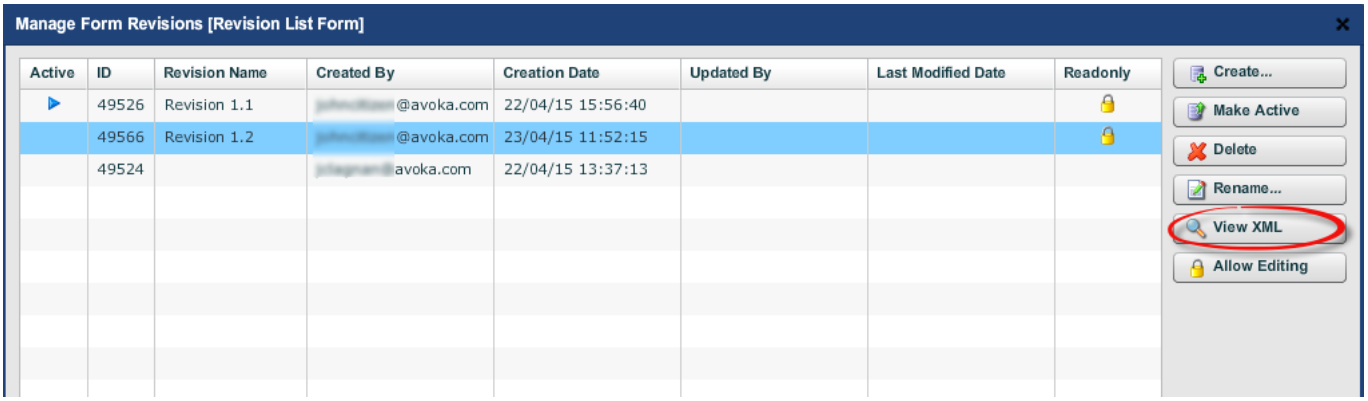



*Screen 10 - This shows Revision Name "Revision 12" renamed to "Revision 2.0".*

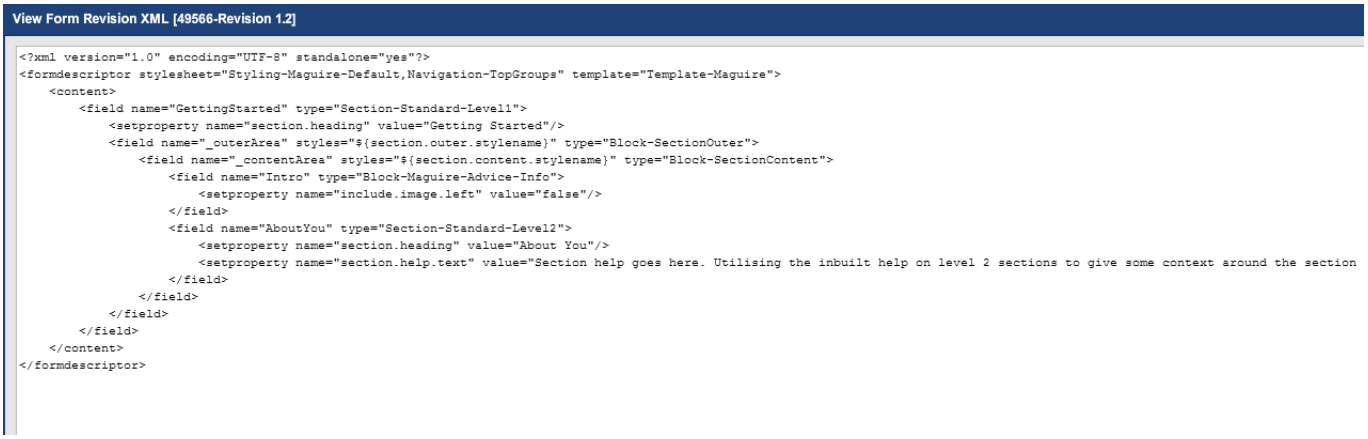
**View XML**

This option allows you to view the XML of the selected revision in the list. The revision does not have to be active. This eliminates the need to make the revision active and

then open the form in the form editor to view the xml.



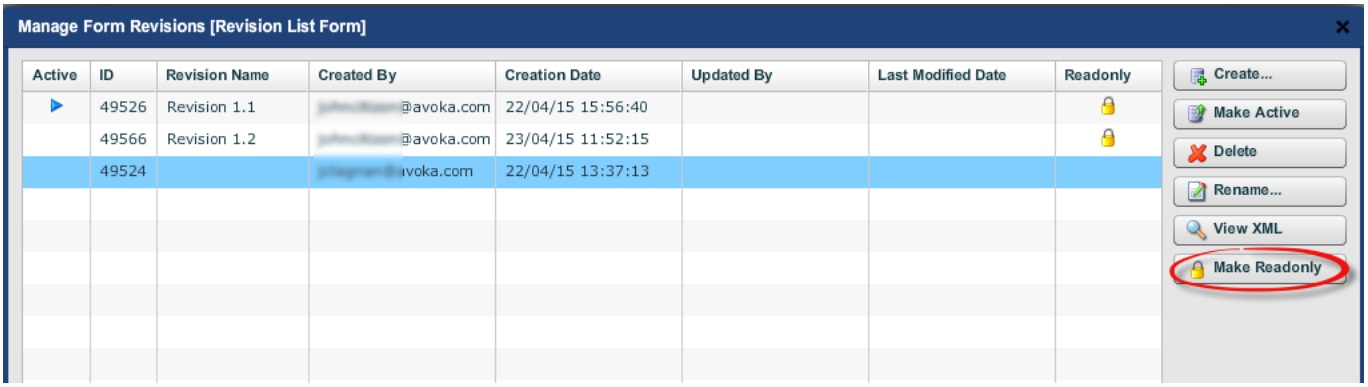

*Screen 11 - A non-active revision is selected to view its XML.*



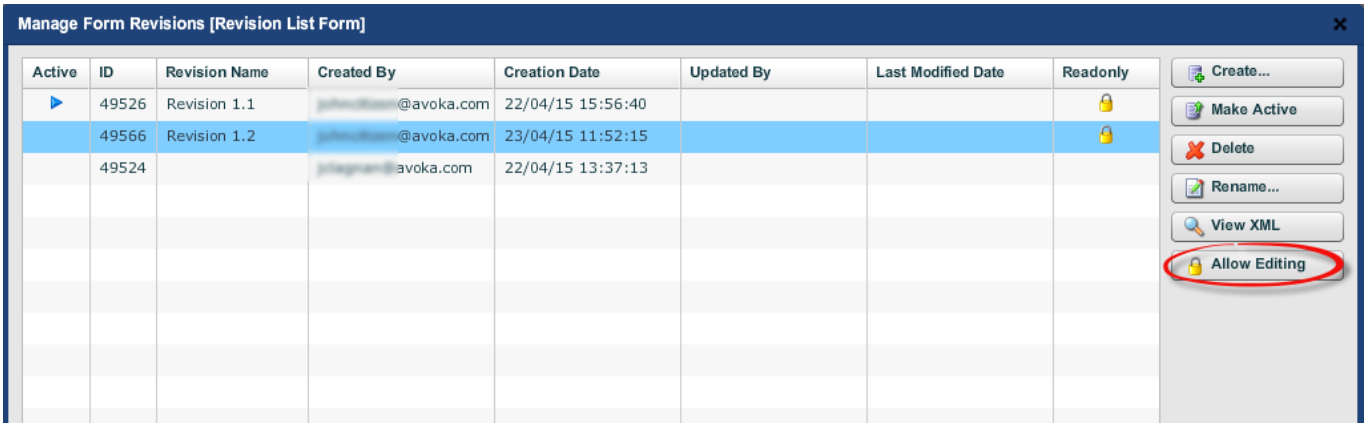

*Screen 12 - The XML is shown in a new window with the revision ID and name specified at the top.*

**Read-Only Option**

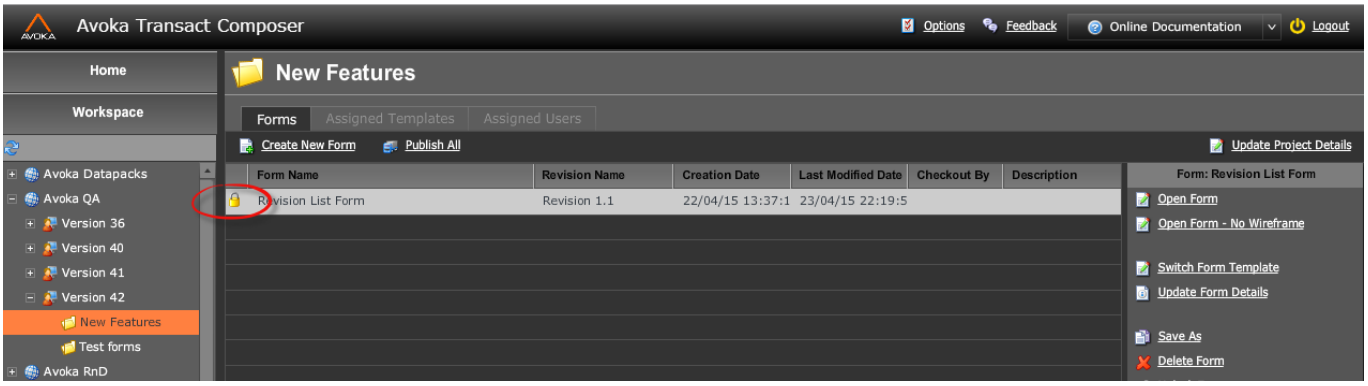
This option allows a user to toggle a revision's setting from read-only to editable. If a revision is set to "Read Only" and is the active revision, when the form is opened it can not be saved. This preserves the integrity of the revision. A read-only version is denoted by a lock in the read-only column.



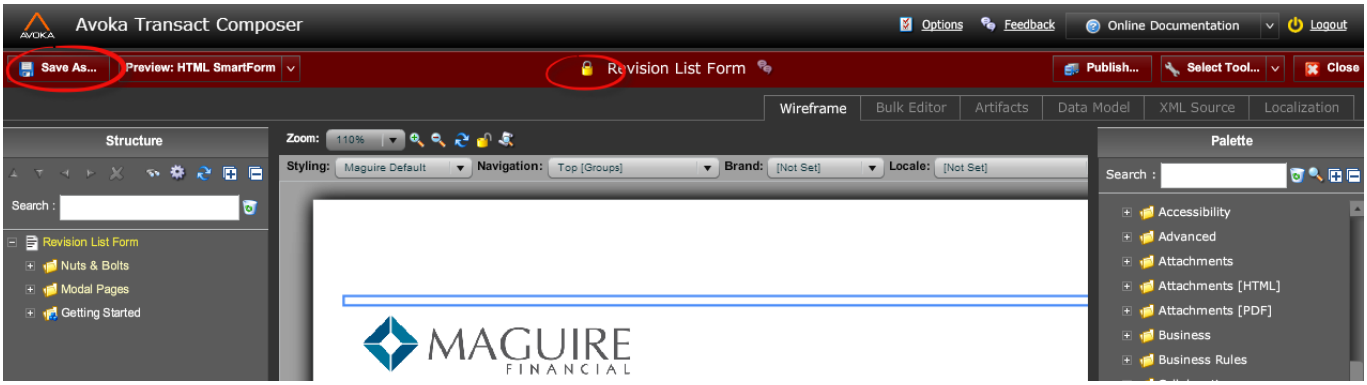

*Screen 13 - The selected revision ID can be made read-only by selecting the option.*




*Screen 14 - The selected revision ID is already read-only. The option has now change to "Allow Editing".*




*Screen 15 - The form list screen shows whether the form is read-only by a lock symbol next to the form.*



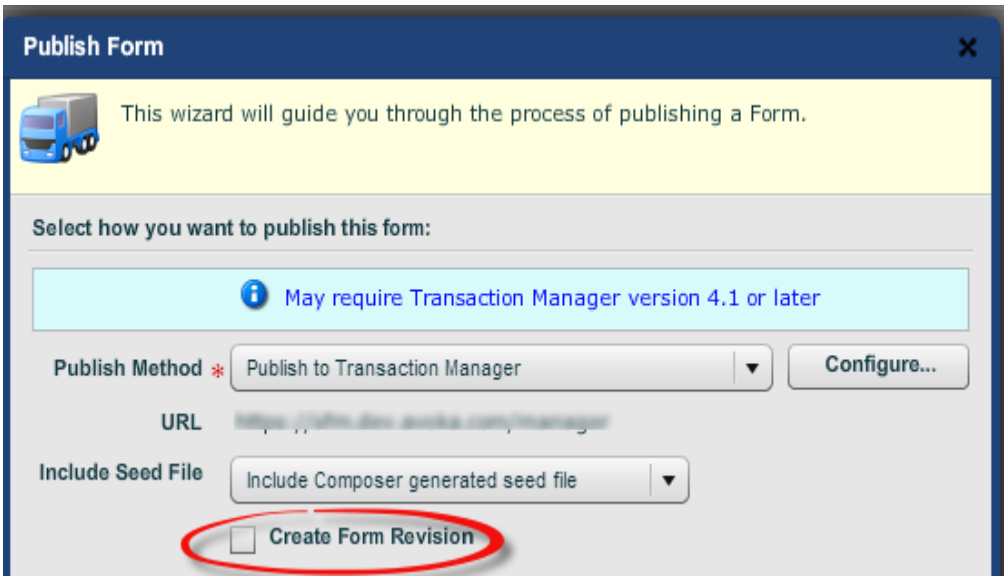

*Screen 16 - A Read-only form when opened has the "Save" Button removed, a lock symbol next to the form name and the Form editor header colored red.*

## Creating a Revision at Form Publish

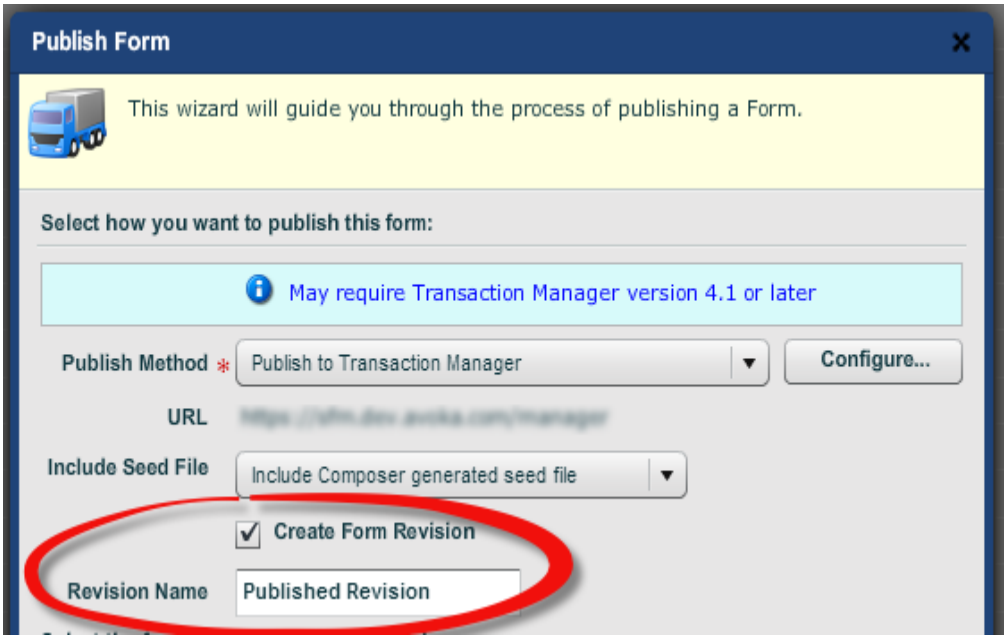
An option has been added to the publish dialog that will create a form revision at the time of publish.

Parameters:

- The option is defaulted to off and needs to be selected by the publisher.
- When selected the revision name field appears. The publisher can change the default value of "Published Revision".




*Screen 17- The publish screen showing the option to create a form revision. It is off by default.*

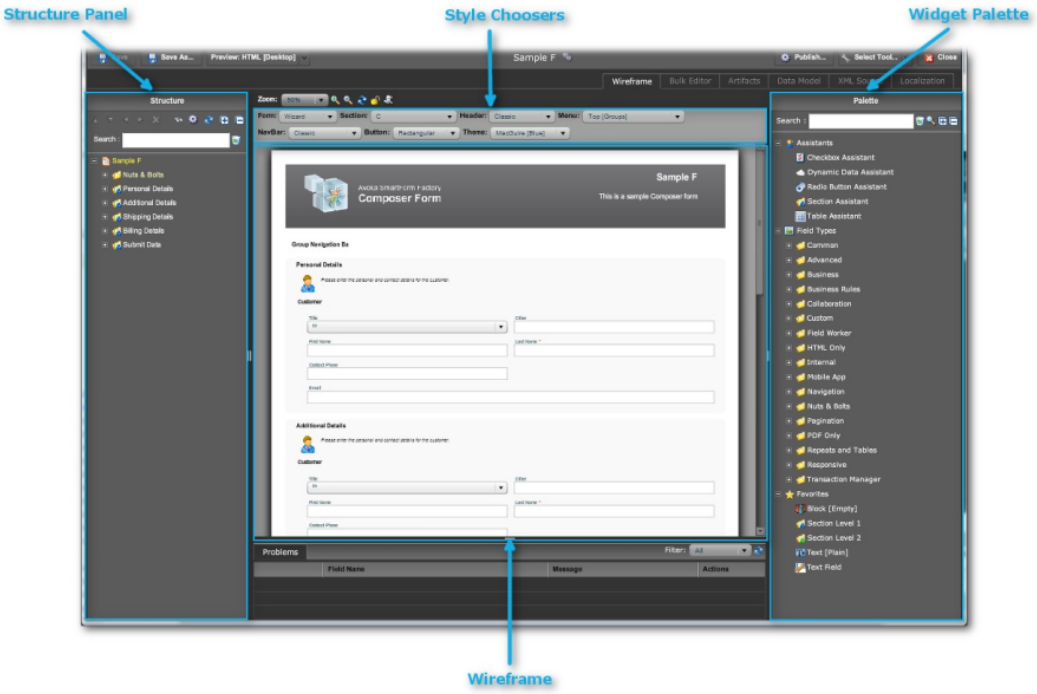



*Screen 18 - Showing screen showing the create form version option selected. The user can modify the default text of "Published Revision".*

# Form Designer

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## The Wireframe View




The Wireframe tab of Form Designer is the heart of Composer. Not only are forms built from elements from the Widget Palette, but the whole logical structure and interactions of the form are built up in the designer.
Composer functions as an agile and capable tool, where complex forms are built and deployed, on a range of devices, in a matter of days or weeks.
This user guide emphasizes the automated aspects of form construction in the early pages. Sections below the Advanced Topics section of the manual deal with more complex functionality. These come later in the guide to act as a reference and not to interrupt the narrative.

## Structure and Preview

Forms are represented in 2 ways in the designer: the StructurePanel and the Wireframe (in the central panel of the designer). The Structure Panel, a collapsible tree structure,

is the true representation of the form. The Wireframe is only a rough guide to how the form will look to the end user filling it in. (See Preview and Publishing on how to accurately view how the form looks.)

**Dragging and Dropping on the wireframe.**

The Wireframe is a representation of the visible elements. Because each element contains a structure, it is difficult to drop or move elements to the correct place on the element's structure tree. For this reason we recommend that **widgets are dropped ontothe Structure Panel**.

The other tabs ("Bulk Editor", etc.) are more technical, extremely powerful and not of immediate concern. See FormDesignerAdvancedFeatures.

# Widget Palette

## Overview of Widgets

The "widget" is the icon you drag from this palette onto the form's Structure Panel. (See below.)

The resultant object that appears on the form is called the "field". Other synonymous terms are: "node", "form element", "element" and even "widget". We may deplore the lack of common terminology, but in a technology that is rapidly evolving, regional and corporate difference in vocabulary are inevitable.

This has happened with browser and internet terminology in general: look at the various terms employed by different enterprises and teams for what should be standard topics like "query strings" (also incorrectly called "parameters"), "value pairs" (also called "tokens", "attribute-value pairs, "key-value pairs and so forth).

We will try to be consistent and use "widget" in the Palette and "field" on the form.

## Organization of the Palette

The palette has 3 major classifications:

### Assistants

Assists designers to build complex structures through wizard-style dialogs.

### Field Types

collections of widgets organized into convenient groupings

#### Favorites

which you, the designer, can populate with your own choice of widgets

The Field Types contain a mixture of simple widgets — like Text Fields — and of compound widgets, made up of a set of widgets organized into some sort of functional structure.

The classification scheme used in Field Types is arbitrary and subject to change. Please spend a few minutes to look through the these types to get a bit of a feeling as to what they contain. The "Search" field at the top of the palette assists you to locate a widget without having to hunt and peck through the Field Types. Suggestions will appear in the palette as you type in your search item.

## How to Use Widgets to Create Fields on Forms

You simply drag and drop a widget into the Structure Panel. You can also drop widgets into the Wireframe, but Avoka Technologies strongly recommends that you do not drop widgets onto the Wireframe. The reason for this is: the form's structure actually has many hidden fields and structural elements which can only be seen in the Structure Panel in its Advanced Mode.

Sometimes the new field will appear in the Wireframe; sometimes it completely disappears. And even when it does appear, all may not be well internally.

## Widget Types

There are, broadly speaking, 4 kinds of widgets. This section of the manual will only touch on these briefly. All the Field Types in the Palette mix the 4 types freely, so there is little point in covering the widget types in much detail. There is some value in mentioning these. In practice, though, you are will not concern yourself as to the type of widget you are about to drag and drop onto the form.

#### Simple Widgets

These create simple fields like a single checkbox, text field or a date field.

### Blocks

Block are containers of multiple fields. Blocks serve 2 main functions:
To group fields together visually in a colored panel, with a common label and so on To group fields together logically into functional units.
Containers can contain other containers in a hierarchical structure. There is no practical limit to the levels of nesting supported.
For your convenience, there are a number of PredefinedBlocks in the palette. They are invaluable for building complex functions on your forms with little more effort than drag and drop.

### Sections

All forms have at least one Section (which is named "Instructions" by default). The content area of the Structure Palette is organized into Sections. Wizard forms display their sections as separate pages. Use the Section widgets to be able to create up to 3 levels of sections.

## For More on Widgets

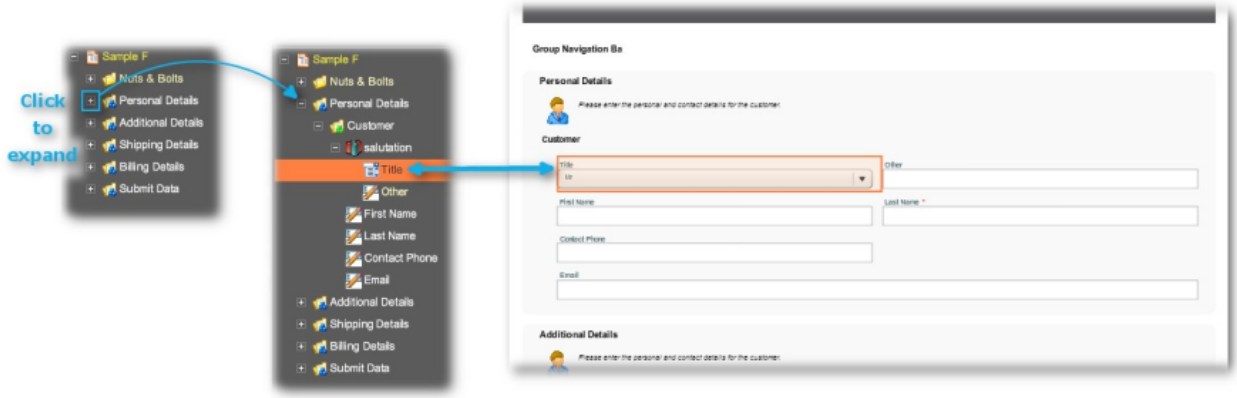
Please see:
FieldTypes
the technical reference to the many types of fields, Assistants
PredefinedBlocks

# Structure Panel

## Standard Mode

The default mode of the Structure Panel is called the "Standard Mode". This does not expose the full structure of the form, but does expose the visible elements and those

invisible elements most relevant for day-to-day work.




**Showing the relationship between the Structure Panel and the Wireframe**

The Standard Mode is particularly recommended for when you place new widgets onto the structure. This is because, in the Standard Mode, you can see enough of the underlying structure of the form to place the widget correctly — and not into some invisible and inaccessible part of the underlying structure — so that the new resulting field on the form works more or less correctly.

## Advanced Mode

### Standard Mode vs Advanced

The Advanced Structure exposes all the underlying structure of the form. (You can see this by comparison with the Advanced Mode panel with the XML code in the XMLSourceTab.) Such control is obviously useful to power users of Composer, but this level of control is beyond the scope of this section of the guide.

## Nuts & Bolts vs Content

The "Nuts & Bolts" part of the Structure has both read-only and editable items. Read-only items show the settings for the form made in Transaction Manager; in their EditProperties dialog, the Properties tab is blank. Usually the first level items of Nuts & Bolts are read only and their children are editable.
You alter the settings of the editable items through the EditProperties dialog. More Nuts & Bolts items are exposed in the AdvancedMode.

## Composer Framework (Advanced Mode Only)

This is a new section of the Composer 4 Structure Panel. This framework exposes the deepest workings of the form, such as the connection with the TransactField App or the HTML generation engine. You should leave this alone except in the rarest or rare circumstances

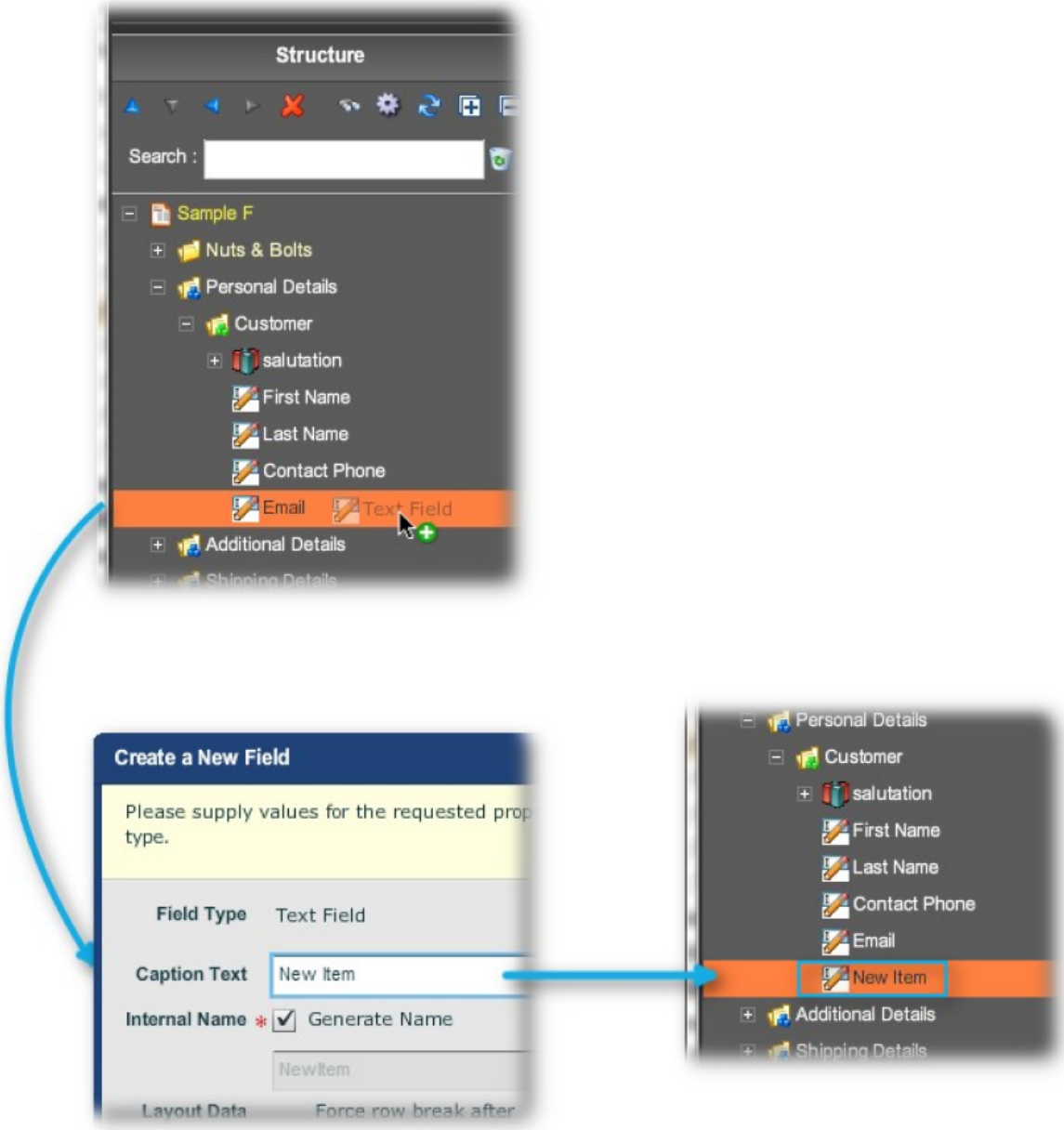
## How to Place a New Field into the Structure

### Drag and Drop

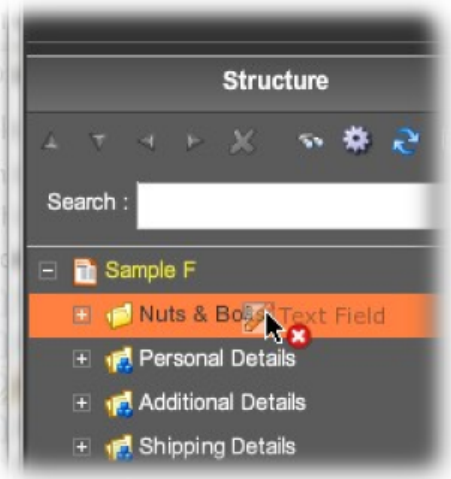
The method is to drag a widget over from the Palette (on the right) and drop it onto an object on the Panel (on the left). Either the widget will

1. drop into the object onto a container like a block or section and it takes up its position as the last item in the container

1 drop below the object onto a simple field (one that does not expand) and it goes below the field at the same level in the structure




1 or refuse to go into the structure when dropped onto an illegal position in the structure.




**Note:** you can force the widget to behave as item 2, by holding down the <ctrl> key as you move the widget into the structure.

### Shortcut for Power Users

Select a position in the Structure Panel and, while the position is still highlighted, double click on a widget in the Palette. The new item will go after the still-highlighted field in the structure.

## Menu Bar

The menu sits at the top of the Structure Panel. Its functions are (from left to right):
Blue arrows to move a highlighted item in the structure up or down or promote (left) or demote (right) Delete the item
Search for the item in the Search field below (the recycle bin clears the search field)
Standard vs Advanced Mode
Refresh the panel Expand all Collapse all

## Layout

So far, we have shown how to add fields to the structure, but said nothing on layout: where fields will sit in relation to each other, either vertically or horizontally, what will

be the distance between fields and how they position on the form.

This omission is deliberate. Layout is dealt with hereinthis guide and layout is automated in Composer as much as possible.

Why? Wouldn't forms look better if the designer sweats over positioning each element and nudging fields on the web page to get its position perfect? Well, the answer is that forms in a web-browser cannot have all their elements as tightly controlled as with traditional hard-copy forms, as the web page runs the gamut of the ranks of the many web browsers now in common use. Also, these forms will be viewed on different devices: on Android phones and tablets; on iPhones, iPads, iPod Touches, on Windows mobile devices and desktops, on

desktop monitors of a range of sizes, via mobile apps, via HTML and PDF.

In such a babble of viewing environments, what was painfully adjusted for one circumstance will look lousy in another. And you cannot dictate which modern browsers or devices you would prefer your customers not to use. Gone are the days of wagging the stern finger and stating "Best viewed in such and such an ancient browser and not the modern one you are using." If users have migrated over to modern browsers so as to be able to engage in social media, do not try to stem the tide with your web forms.

So, these considerations dictate that layout is held in reserve for later discussion. For the present, we encourage you to experiment with widgets in the Palette, and to see what happens when you drop these onto a form.

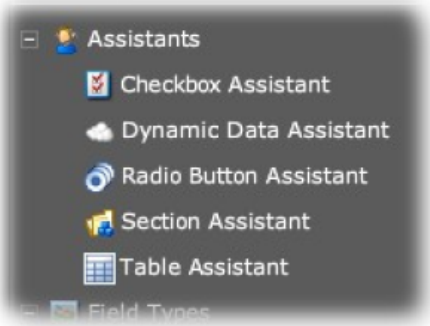
# Assistants

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Assistants are located at the top of the Widget Palette and this is the reason they are discussed first. The Field Types in the palette are a mixture of many different types, see Field Types, placing any of them on the form is the same process already covered above. This is also true of Assistants, and they make a good starting point as the resultant fields on the form are so useful, and even rewarding, for the beginner
Assistants are widgets that facilitate the creation of complex structures. Another important set of widgets, that also simplifies complex form structures, is PredefinedBlocks.
We will discuss individual widgets inmoredetaillaterinthis manual. But because Assistants and Predefined Blocks are so powerful, we will now be building examples using these two types. Designing complex forms using individual widgets is more the domain of Composer's power users.

## Adding Assistants to a Form

When assistants are first droppedintotheformstructure, they pop up a wizard to add multiple widgets to the form (radio buttons for example). Each of the Assistants features a table to add a component widget to the group, and Composer will both create the group and maintain the overall structure of the group.



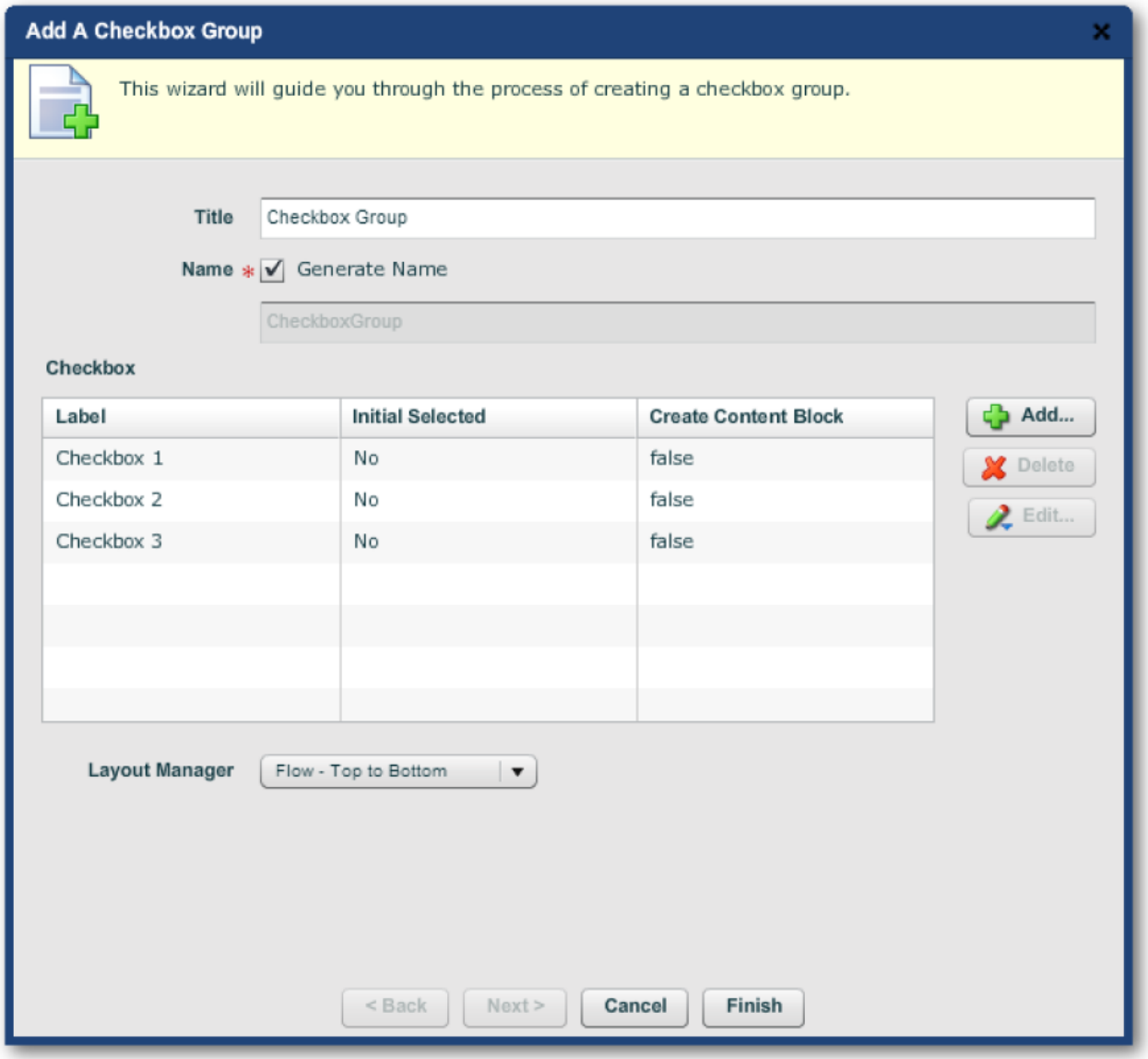

**Assistants**

## Checkboxes

A checkbox is the simplest selector: it can be either checked or unchecked. In a group of checkboxes, more than one can be selected.

### Using the Checkbox Assistant

The Checkbox assistant will create, in a single operation, a set of checkboxes and their title. If you're creating multiple checkboxes, it's generally a much quicker and easier way to create them than creating individual checkboxes.



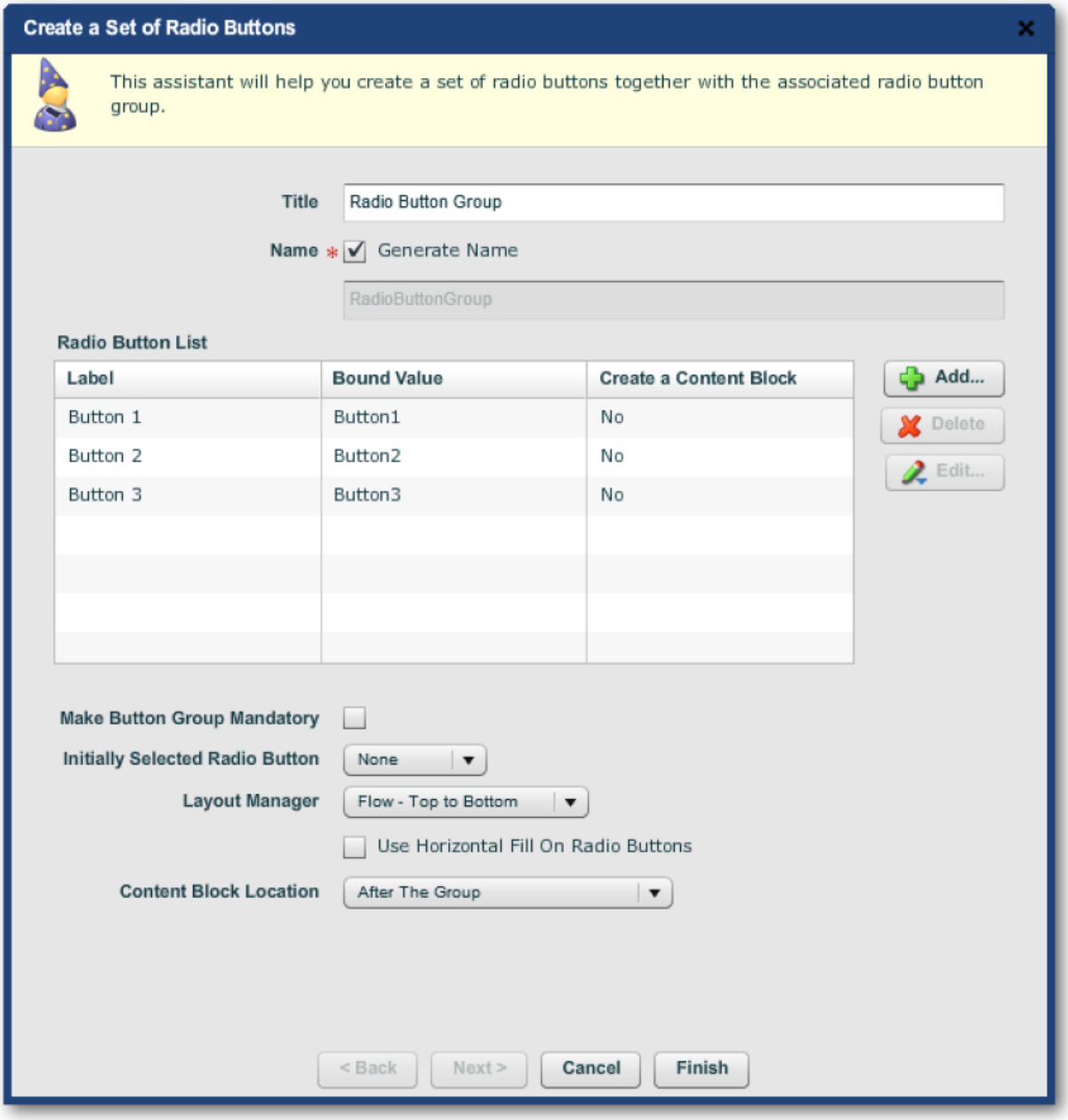
**The resultant struture**

See below for more on the Content Block.
In Composer, the underlying raw value of the checkbox can be set to any string values (see Edit Properties).
By default, the values are checked = "true", and unchecked = "false". However, you can set the checked and unchecked values to whatever you want, such as checked = "Y" and unchecked = "N". This can be useful when checkbox values get exported to legacy systems that do not suppport Boolean values ("true" or "false").
Layout Managers get their own topic below.
See belowforanexplanationoftheContentBlock.

## Radio Buttons

Radio buttons are similar to checkboxes, except that only one of them can be selected from a group.
For example, if we add a Radio Button Assistant to the form, the resulting popup wizard

dialog looks as follows:



**The "Add a Radio Button Group" wizard dialog**

The "Bound Value" for a radio button is the value returned by the form when that button is selected. In the
example above, the "Bound Value" is the same as the "Label"; you can change this to return a more convenient value, "1" instead of "Button 1" for example.
If you want to reference the value of the button group (i.e. which button was selected), point to the Button Group widget.
If you check "Make Button Group Mandatory", users must click on one of the radio buttons. Otherwise they will be prompted to do so. See Validation.
The "Initially Selected Radio Button" dropdown is for specifying which of the radio buttons is selected by default when the form is first loaded. Buttons need not be selected by default (though many useability experts advise against this). But once any of the buttons has been clicked on, the group cannot be returned to the unselected state. This is a property of HTML.
Layout Managers have their own topic here.
Filling in the wizard creates the following structure in the form:

**The structure the "Radio Button Assistant" adds to the form**

The buttons now render on the form (as seen in Preview) as graphics with a more contemporary look than the standard desktop browser widgets.

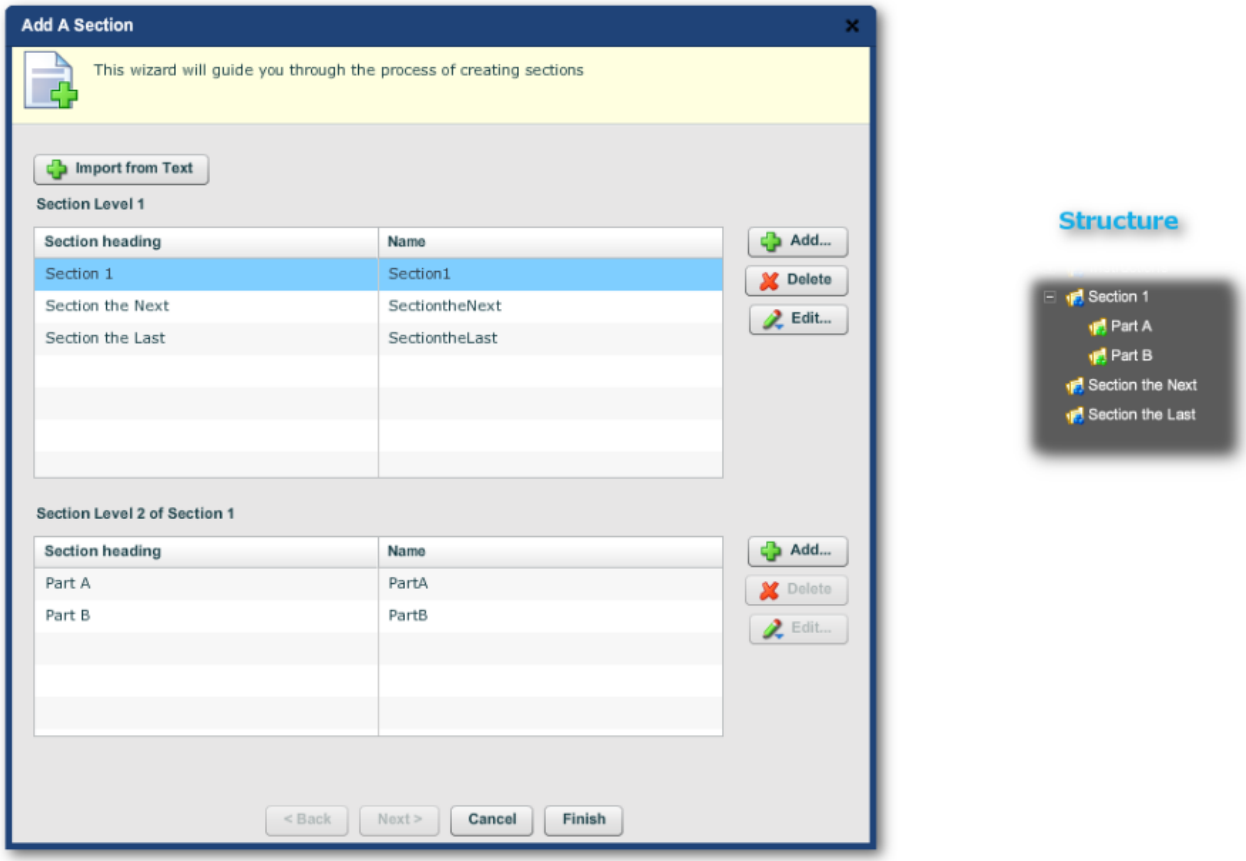
**Note:** the button group now appears in the structure below the buttons. This done to allow the inline validation message to appear correctly on the form.

## Dynamic Data

Dynamic Data means that the form's display can change before submission, without the form having to be reloaded. A common use case for dynamic data is to have suggestions appear to assist the user to supply data, an address for example.
Using the assistant is more or less a matter of filling out the wizard, but such a sophisticated concept is best deal with under its owntopic.

## Sections

Manually dropping the three levels of Section widgets onto a form is not difficult, but you should avail yourself of the convenience of panning all the sections of a form in the one wizard.

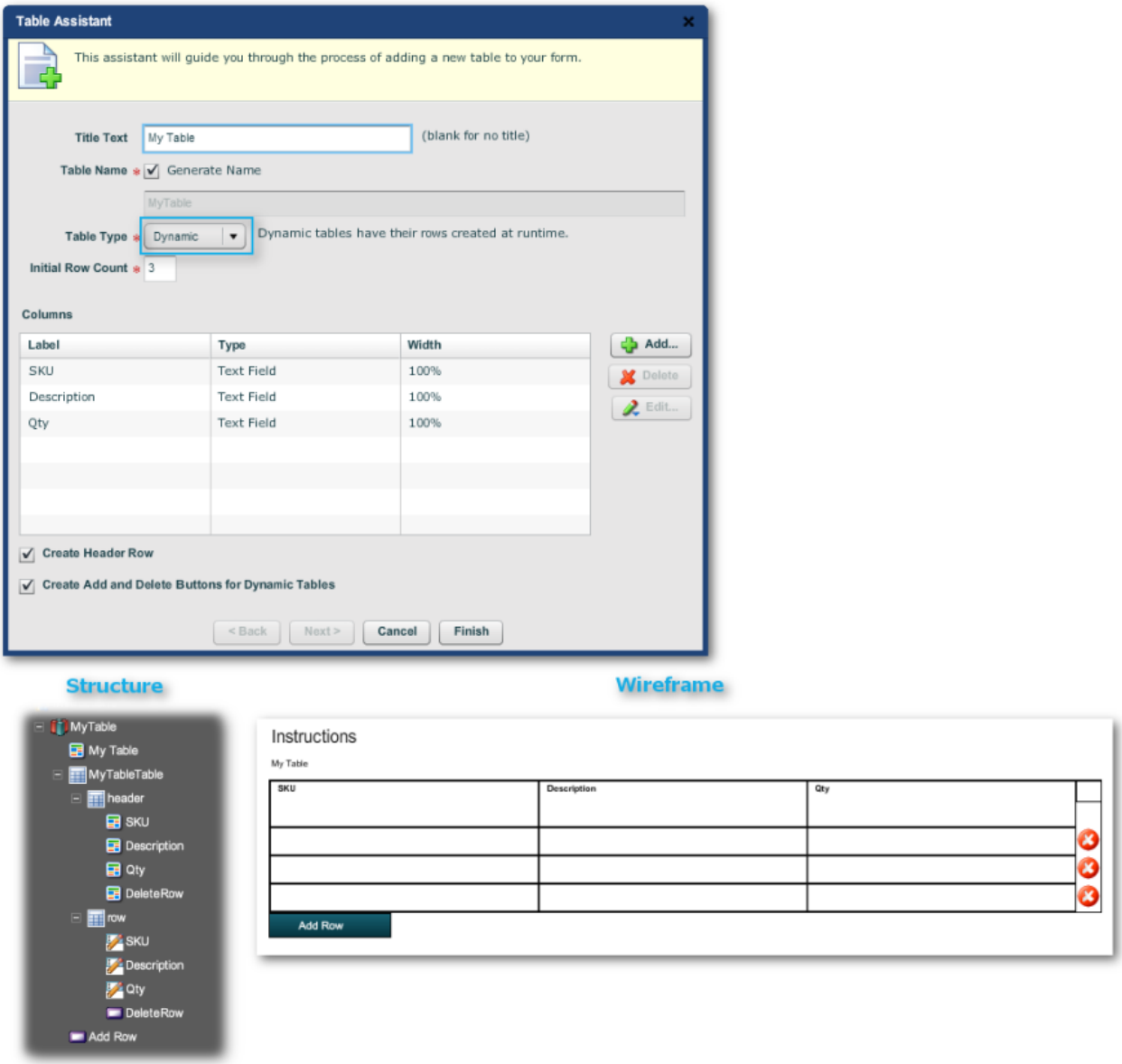


### The Section Assistant wizard

The wizard is easy enough to use, but Sections now have greater significance than just bold headings on the form: they now control the user's very navigation through the form, and the mobile slider menu in responsive layout.

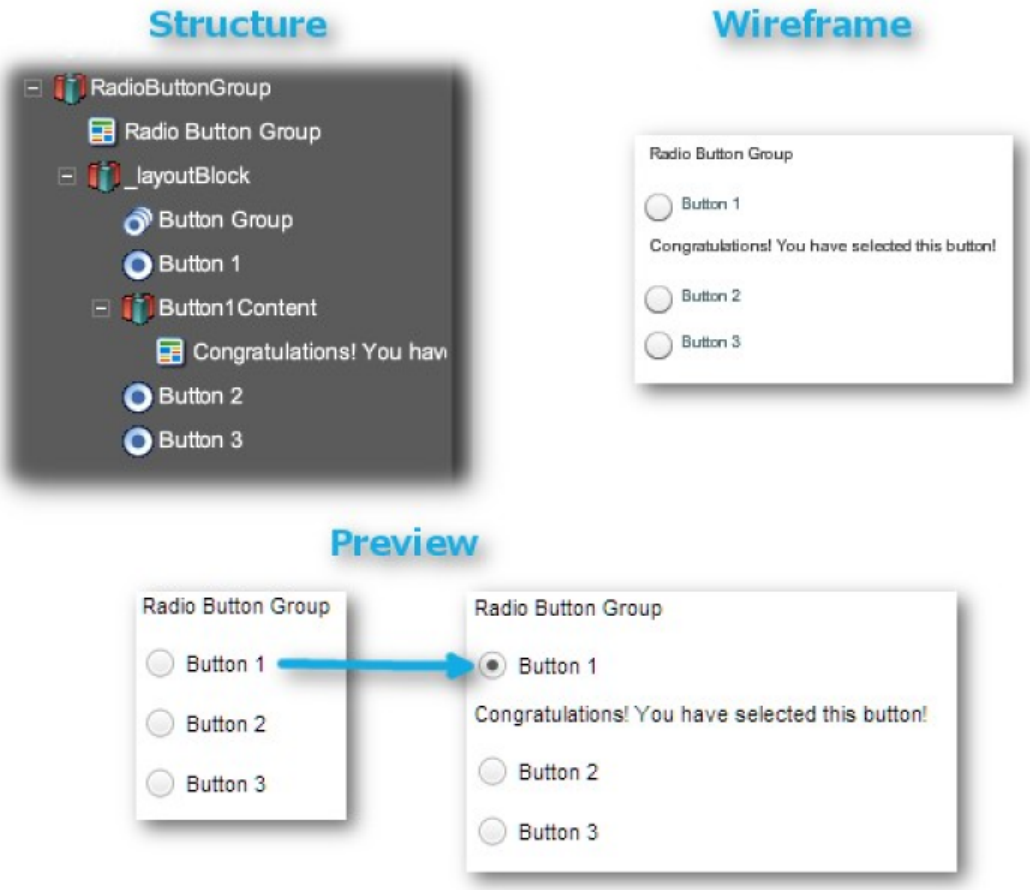
## Tables

In forms, tables are often dynamic structures where rows can be added or deleted by the end user; they are not, therefore, simple static HTML tables. In Composer 4, you can use the assistant to create either static or dynamic tables.



## Content Blocks

The following applies to the older style of forms.
As you add each element to the group through the "Add..." button in the wizard, the resulting dialog gives you the option of creating a content block for the element. You can drop widgets into this block, the Plain Text object for example. The block is normally invisible, unless that group element is activated, such as on the selection of the checkbox.




You can reverse this behavior by going to the Edit Properties dialog, "Rules -> Visibility Rule -> Edit" and changing the script from
return {Button1};
to
return !{Button1};

You can also manipulate other behaviors by editing widgets in the group, but take care: you do not want to break the structure.

**Note:** in Maguire template forms, content blocks now appear at the bottom of button groups, **not between buttons**.

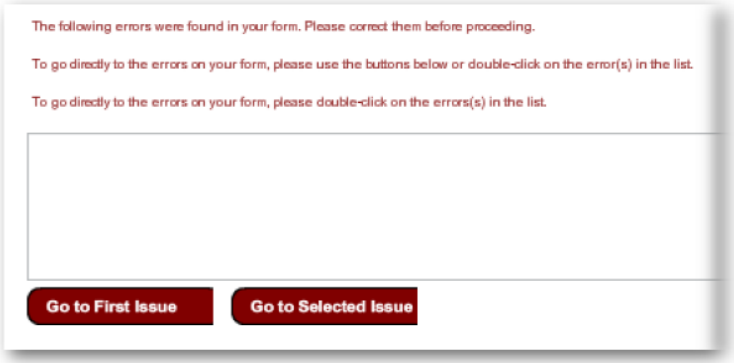
# Predefined Blocks

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Many of the standard Composer widgets are implemented as prefabricated blocks. You utilize them as you would assistants: drop one into the form's structure and take advantage of the resulting complex structure that adds functionality to your form. These include various Address blocks, a block to display errors, the standard form header, Sections, the Signature block, and various blocks for use in Transaction Manager.

You cannot modify the predefined blocks in the pallet, only the predefined blocks that you yourself created in the Pallet. But once a predifined block has been added to the form, you can modify that instance and that instance alone.

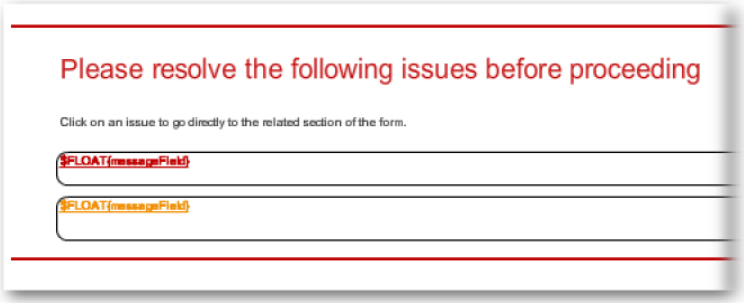
Here is the current range of predefined blocks generally made available for most organizations in the pallet. You



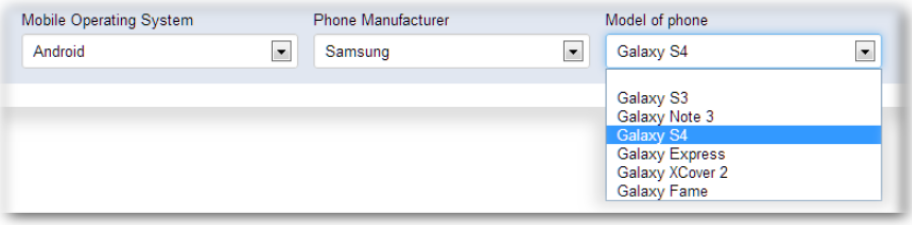
may not see all of these, due to the Composer configuration of your Organization.

| Predefined Block | Description and Wireframe |
|---|---|
| **Common field type** | |
| Fieldset | Used to improve accessibility for forms that have a number of scattered radio buttons, where these do not fall into one convenient block nor have the one controller. Poorly structured collections of radio buttons can confuse screen reading software, making these forms unuseable for end users reliant on readers.<br>See Useability andAccessability |
| Error List Block | In the event of an error, this block presents a multi-line message to end users (explaining what action they should be taking), a display area to list the errors and two action buttons. |
| Error Selection Block | Makes a complicated structure, with an Error List Block above an Error and Warning Block. |

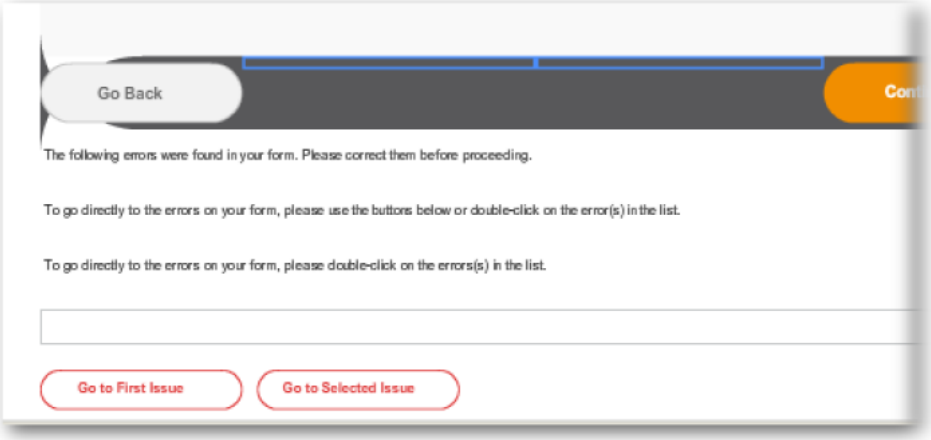
**Advanced field type**



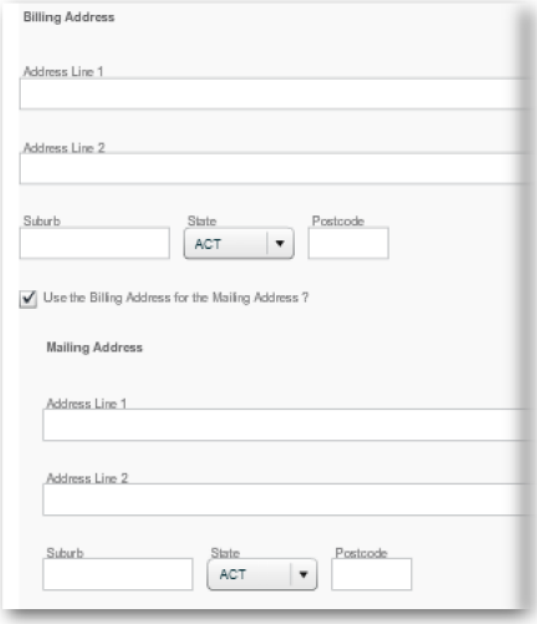
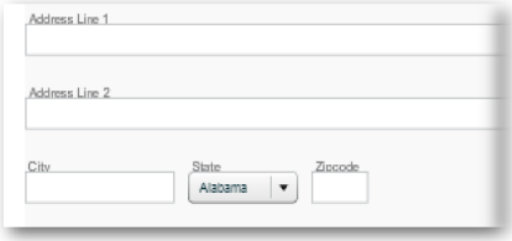

| Predefined Block | Description and Wireframe |
|---|---|
| Cascading Dropdown Manager | This block does not place visible objects on the form. You must put Cascading Dropdown List widgets on the form which point to the manager.<br>See Cascading Dropdowns. |




| | |
|---|---|
| Error and Warning Block | The user can scroll, via left and right navigation buttons, through the warnings and errors. |
| Form Header | Block containing the elements that make up the header of the form's template: the logo and the text of three levels of headings. (The visibility of of these headings and other elements depends on the template.)The block can be dropped into the structure. Normally there is no need to add an extra heading block to the structure, so this block is for specialized customization only.<br><br>In the Wizard, set the "Region" to "North" and the header will appear at the top of all navigation pages. |
| Predefined Block | Description and Wireframe |

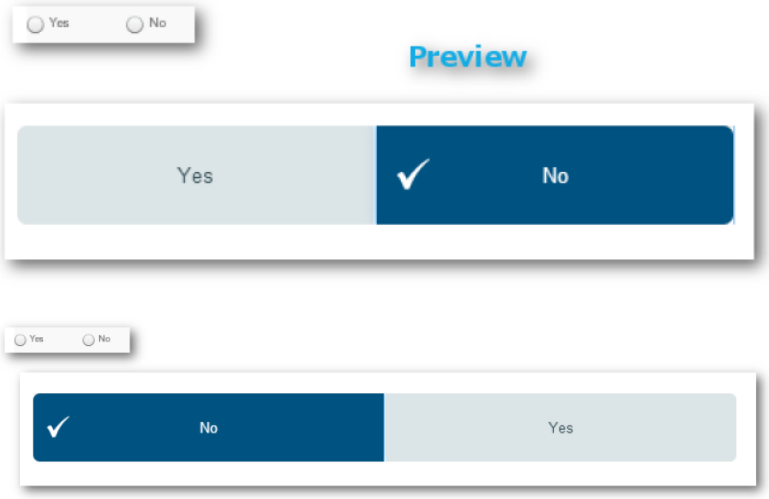
| | |
|---|---|
| Form Footer | Block with the footer elements of the form, in this case, an Error List Block.<br>  |

**Business field type**

| | |
|---|---|
| Address [Australia] | Produces a block with plain text fields "Address Line1", "Addresses Line 2", and an inline of "Suburb", a dropdown for"State" and 4-digit numeric for "Postcode".<br>  <br>  |

| | |
|---|---|
| Predefined Block | Description and Wireframe |

| | |
|---|---|
| Address [Billing & Mailing] | Creates an Address [Australia] block and a second block of identical format which becomes writable if the linking checkbox is made inactive. |
| Address [United States] | Same as the Address block above, except that the "State" dropdown is populated accordingly and the "ZipCode" numeric field accomodates more digits. |
| Radio Button Assistant Block | This structure is created by dropping this assistant block onto the form. Takes care of the manual configuration tasks of the whole structure, as explained here. |




| Predefined Block | Description and Wireframe |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| Radio Button List [Yes/No] | A block of two radio buttons, a "Yes" and a "No". |
| Radio But- | Button order reversed from the above. |

ton
[No/Yes]

Invokes a Transaction Manager service to provide the DocuSign signing workflow before delivering the submission to another TM service.

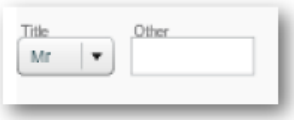
Signature [DocuSign]

Title Block

Produces an in-line dropdown ("Mr" "Mrs" "Miss" "Ms" "Other") and a text field to specify "Other".

Predefined Block

Description and Wireframe



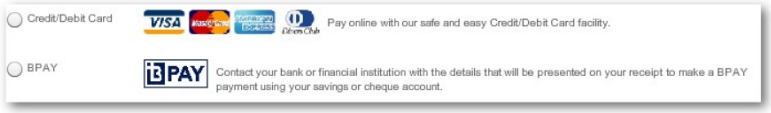

**Business Rulesfield type**

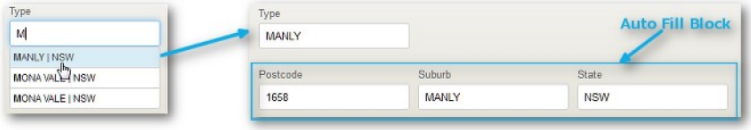
| | |
|---|---|
| Business Rule - Error | These are invisible on the form, but control the behaviour for the form. See the Business Rules section of this manual. These field types cover several widgets or widget groups, or even the whole form in some behaviours. Some aspects of these resemble the "Rules" tab of the "Edit Properties" dialog of individual widgets, but the rules tab applies only to the one widget. |
| Business Rule - General Purpose | |
| Business Rule - Warning | |
| Mandatory Block | |
| Mandatory Checkbox Block | |
| **Collaboration** | |
| Please see Collaboration . | |
| **Mobile App (Field Worker) fieldtype** | |
| Geolocation Block | Also works on the desktop. When the button is tapped or clicked, it loads two floating fields for latitude and longitude. |
| Barcode Block | Take a picture of a barcode with a mobile device's internal camera using the "Scan" button on the form. The barcode is decoded, and its value populates the field below the camerabutton. |
| **PDF field type** | |

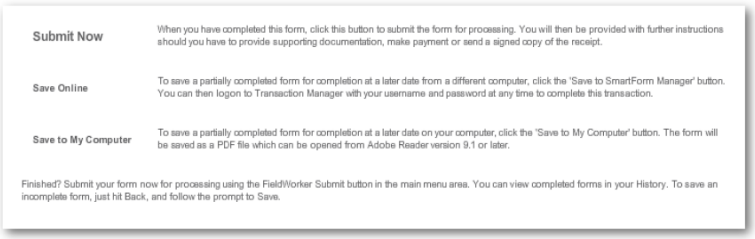
| | |
|---|---|
| Process Management Field Block | See the section on FieldTypes. |
| Smart Attachment Field Block | Adds a table to a PDF form for the user to upload an attachment. HTML forms handle attachments differently, see Submissions andAttachments. |

**Transaction Manager fieldtype**

| | |
|---|---|
| TM Payment Table | Creates a display table of payments, including GST (Australia's Goods & Services Tax) and Price. |



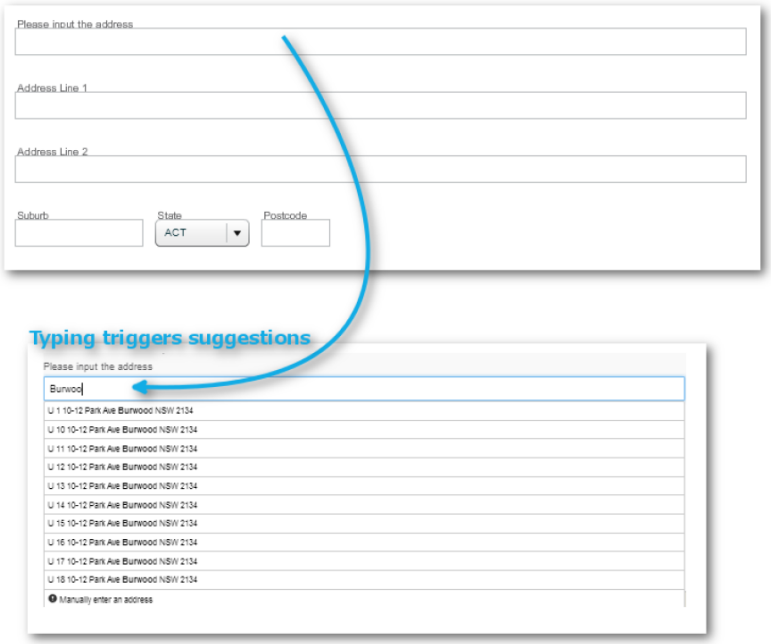




| Predefined Block | Description and Wireframe |
|---|---|
| TM Payment Type Selector | Creates two radio buttons and adds content and logos. (The choices are for Australian conditions,) |
| TM Reference Data Block | Creates an Auto-suggest field for some predefined list. |
| TM Submission Block | Creates three buttons and associated content for Submitting, saving to TM natively, or saving in PDF locally. |

| | |
|---|---|
| TM Submission Receipt | Creates a block of two text displays for the receipt and a receipt barcode graphic. |
| TM Veda Address Lookup Block [Australia] | Creates a predefined dynamic data block made up of a trigger field and an address block. See the VedaAutoSuggestpredefinedwidgetandservices section. |

Predefined Block Description and Wireframe



# Tables & Repeats

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Static vs Dynamic

When you include a table or repeating block into your form, you only design one row of structure, and specify as many rows as you want to display initially.
Tables usually have a heading row (or rows). Tables also can be static (i.e. a fixed array of fields for users to fill in) or dynamic, where users can add or delete rows as they go.
A repeat is similar to a table, but instead of being limited to the height of a row, you can make the repeating unit as large as you want, with no restrictions on how the fields lay out — unlike the single line limitation of a table.
Use the Table Assistant to create the table. Creating a static table with headings in each row on the LH side involves a few more steps. Use the Tables Assistant Wizard as follows:

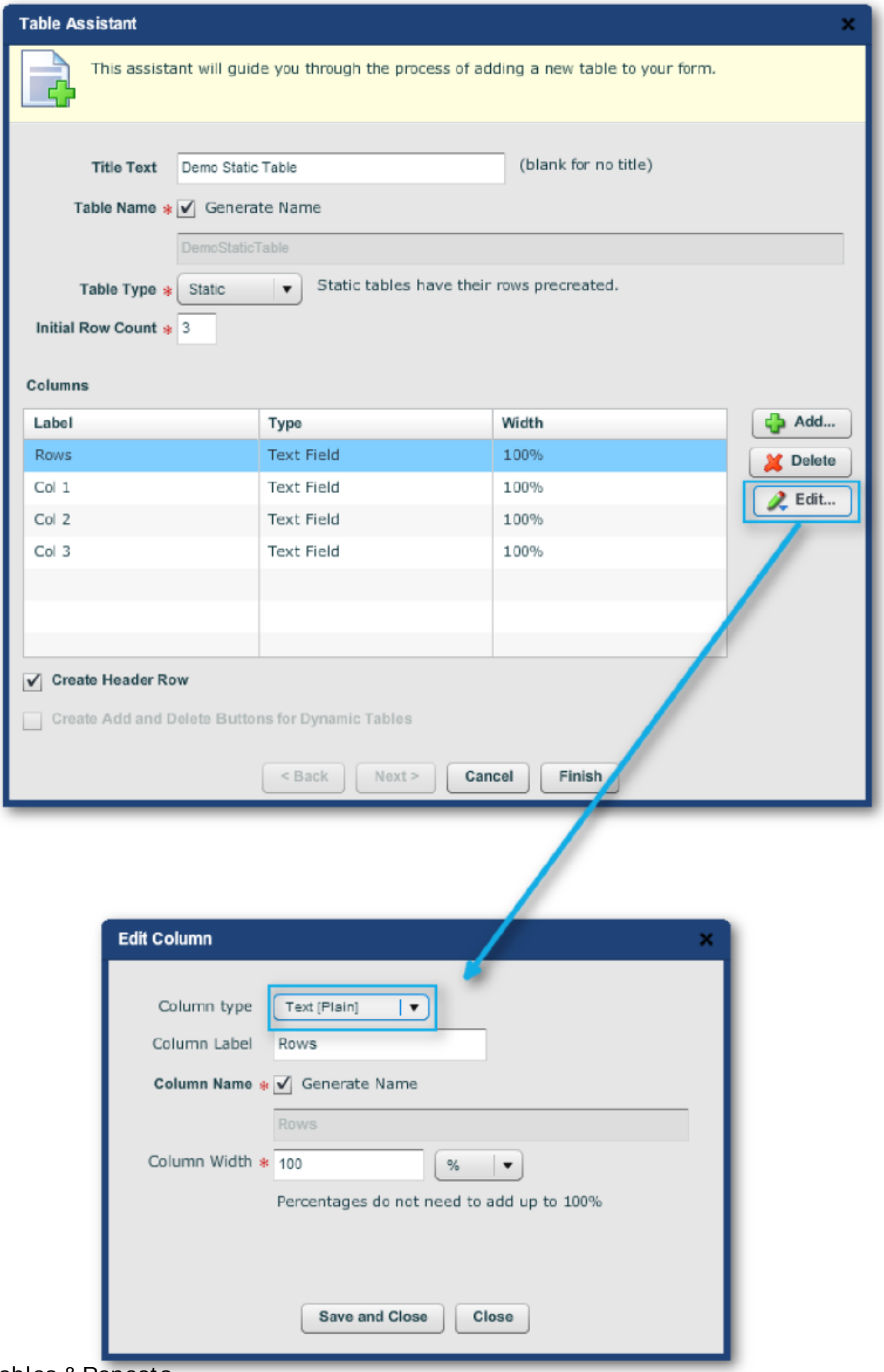
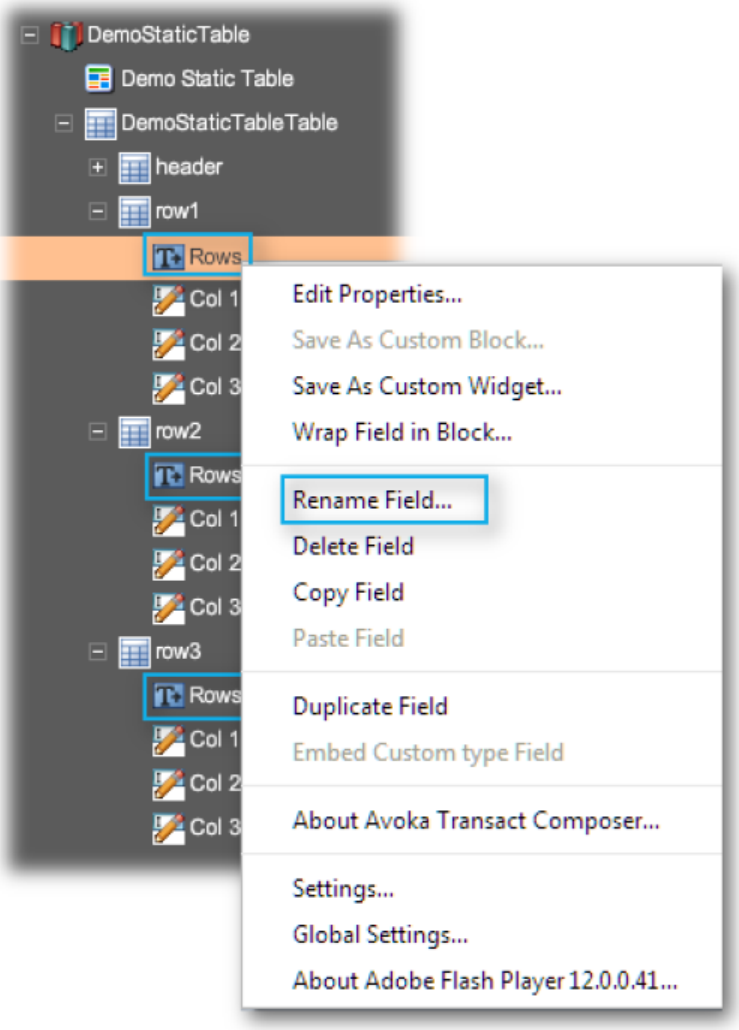


Table Assistant
This assistant will guide you through the process of adding a new table to your form.
Title Text
Demo Static Table
(blank for no title)
Table Name
Generate Name
DemoStaticTable
Table Type
Static
Static tables have their rows precreated.
Initial Row Count
3
Columns
Label
Type
Width
Rows
Text Field
100%
Col 1
Text Field
100%
Col 2
Text Field
100%
Col 3
Text Field
100%
Add...
Delete
Edit...
Create Header Row
Create Add and Delete Buttons for Dynamic Tables
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Finish
Edit Column
Column type
Text [Plain]
Column Label
Rows
Column Name
Generate Name
Rows
Column Width
100
%
Percentages do not need to add up to 100%
Save and Close
Close

The Table Assistant produces this form structure, although the LH captions for each row have to be altered — by right-clicking on each of the Plain Text fields in each of the static rows and selecting "Rename Field...".




After you have used the Table Assistant ti create a dynamic table, you cannot convert the table into a static one.

**Note**: Tables implicitly require a lot of screen space. In the case of the small screens of mobile devices, you take advantage of Composer's ResponsiveLayout feature which is on by default and requires no further work on your part.

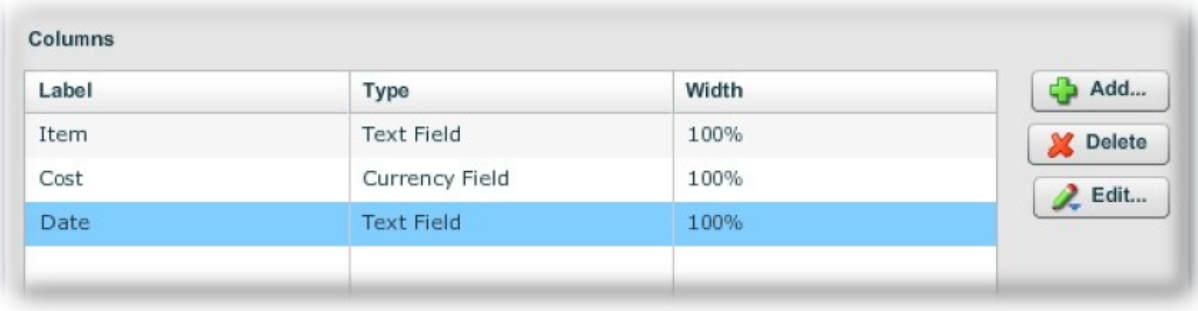
## Editing Table Structure

Adding and removing columns from a table requires making several manual changes to the Structure Panel.
You should alter the table element in the structure. This is the container that holds the Header and Row blocks (i.e. "DemoStaticTableTable" in the example immediately above). Double-click on the element and in Edit Properties, go to "Properties -> Layout -> Layout Manager" and alter the "Column Count" or "Initial Row Count" to your requirements.
The Structure Panel makes it easy to change the elements in a row. For example, in the above table created using the Table Assistant, all the row elements are Plain Text fields. Say we want to have the second column to be a currency field and the third into a date field. We just delete these elements from the Row element and drop a Currency Widget and a Date Widget into that Row icon in Structure Panel, name them accordingly (though they need not have the same names as the former elements) and move them into the correct positions

in the structure using the blue arrows at the top of the panel. The result looks as follows:
This flexibility extends across the entire table structure, though be careful to preserve the structural integrity of the table.

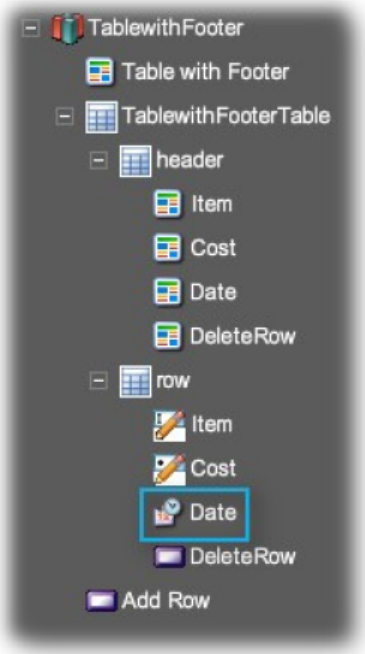
## Adding a Footer

You add footers to tables through the Structure Panel.
We can use the Table Assistant to create a 3-column table with Plain Text Column, a Currency column and a third column, which we will re-cofigure to hold a Date field.



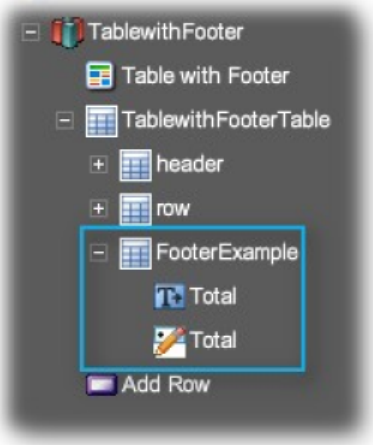

We then manipulate the Structure Panel to delete the text field (by right-clicking on it in the Structure) and drop in a Date widget into the Row container into the correct

position (using the <ctrl> key or by using the blue up/ downbuttons).



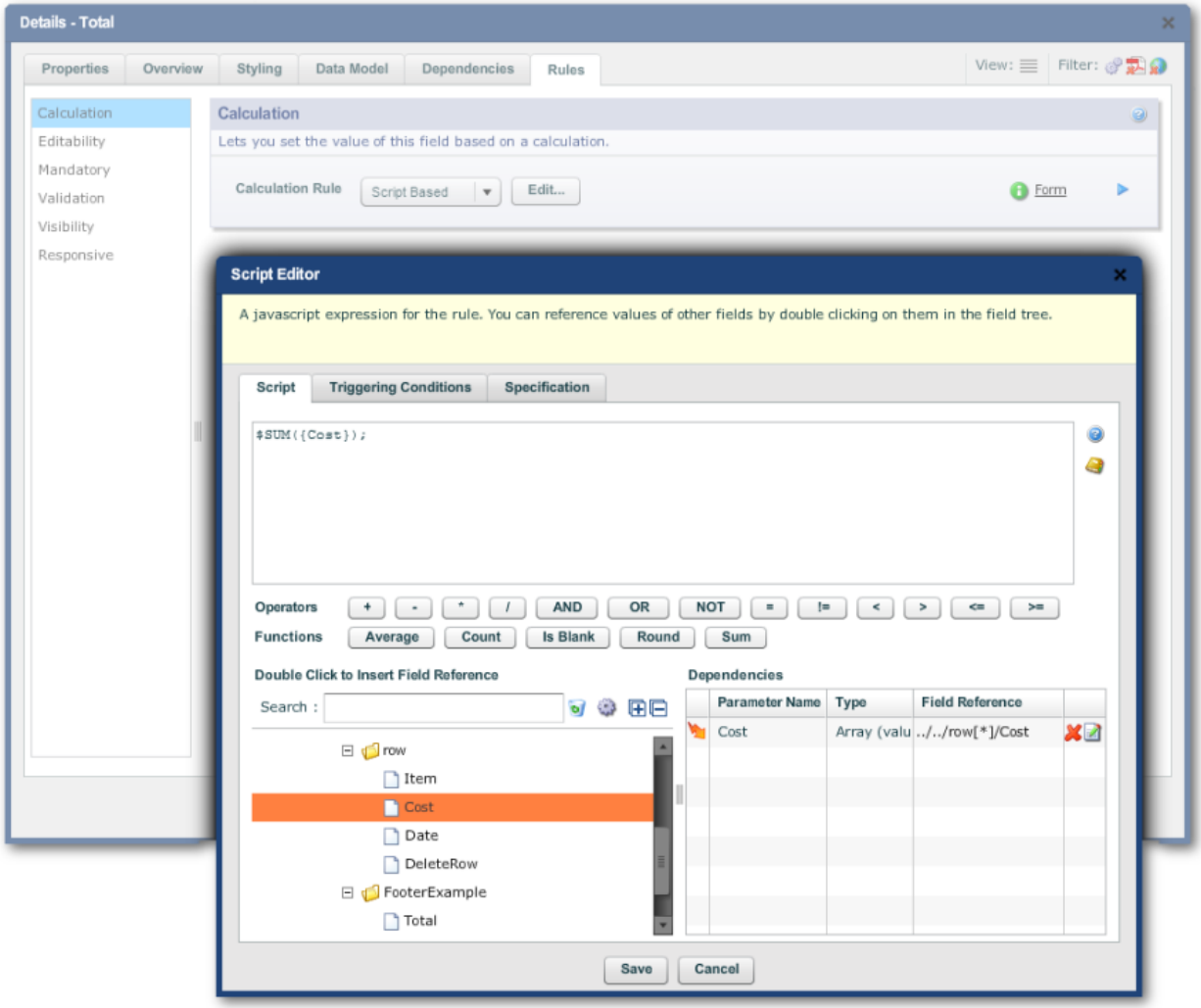

Drop a "Table Footer" widget from the palette onto the table field in the Structure Panel and add appropriate elements from the palette. Here we add only two elements: a Plain text and a Currency. Because the table has four columns per row, we adjust the column widths of these two for the sake of neatness: use "Edit Properties -> Properties -> Layout -> Layout Constraints -> Column Span". The "Second Column Total" has a column span of "1" and the "Total", "3".

The new structure looks like this:

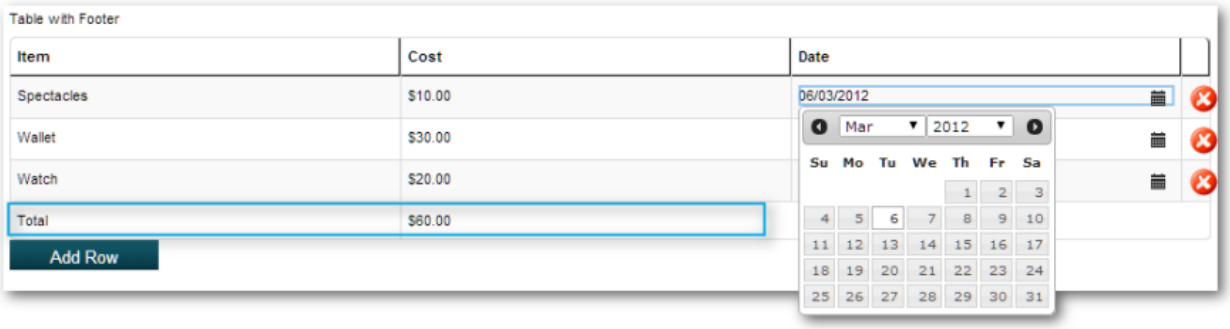



All that needs doing now, is getting "Second Column Total" to sum the second column.

See Scripting and Dependencies on how to do this; it is done simply enough by the Edit Properties dialog for the "Total" currency field. In "Edit Properties -> Rules -> Calculation -> Calculation Rule -> Script Based -> Edit" and fill in the following:




The resulting table as viewed in "Preview HTML", looks like this (with some test values added):




**Hint:** you should make the table cell total read-only ("Edit Properties -> Rules -> Editability -> Editability Rules -> Never Editiable").

## Repeats

There is no Assistant for repeats. This means that the you have to build up the structure in the Structure Panel yourself by dropping in the appropriate widgets and blocks and using the Edit Properties of the fields to script them. See Repeats in AdvancedTopics.

**Hint**: a good way to start building repeats is to mimic the structure of tables, with blocks for headers, for rows and footers.

## Radio Buttons

Composer supports copying and pasting groups of radio buttons from one part of a form into another without the need to alter the scripting of the groups or their component fields..

# Templates

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

We are all now familiar with the concept of templates, be it in word processing, corporate documents, branding or web blogging. In Transact Composer, the template concept goes much further, embodying the look and layout of the form.

- color schemes
- headers
- graphics
- typography and layout managers
- menus and form navigation
- The widgets are made available to form designers underlying scripts
- The data structure of the payload delivered to your business on form submission behavior of the form on mobile devices and in mobile apps ("responsive layout") design elements that accommodate
- accessibility
- privacy
- security
- usability
- hooks for supplementary data passed on to Transaction Manager for analytics:
    - geolocation data
    - form abandonment

Other chrome in Form Designer, such as the Style Choosers inherited elements in the form's structure panel
This is not a complete list.
If you or your organization are new to Avoka Transact, it would be a good idea to make use of Avoka's support teams to create templates suited to your corporate needs and branding. Composer itself has the tools for maintaining your templates and even for creating new templates (with different scripts and elements), but if your business needs go beyond the standard templates, samples and tutorials (given the name of "cook books"), as is so often the case in real-world business situations, you will save time and money by turning to Avoka's professional services to get at least a set of initial

templates to begin producing useable forms.
This guide's Advanced Topics tries to cover, as far as is practicable, the issues involved in template construction and tuning, in scripting, business rules and so forth. The perspective required to digest all this information, though, is best gained by using Composer to produce production forms, gaining real-world experience and seeing Composer add to your bottom line.

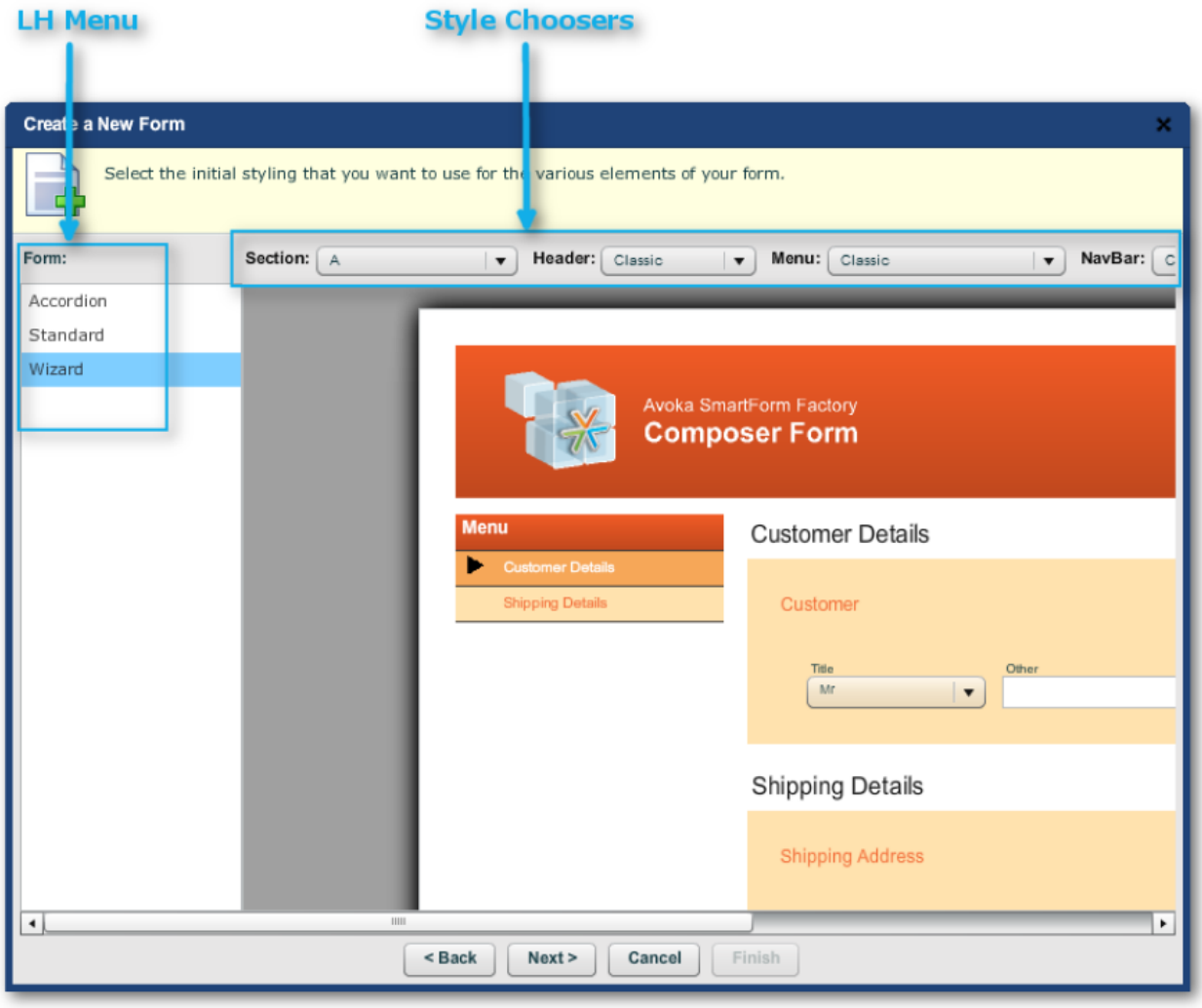
## Out of the Box

That said, at this stage of your experience with Transact Composer you will either have: The standard set of templates that come with the release (such as the Maguire templates) or a set of corporate templates conforming to your enterprise's branding and requirements.
So, the assumption is that you have templates to go on with for the time being. You can even begin to design forms that will end up in production, after changing the templates of the form to those suitable for publication on your portal. Composer accommodates this iterative approach. We also assume that you have an Organization and Project set up for you. You can work through the Hierarchy and create your own, providing that you have been assigned the rights to do so, but these Organizations and Projects may lack sufficient resources and templates, as configuration of these is complex for beginners and best avoided at this stage if you can.
So, let us begin at the beginning.

## Creating a New Form

At the ProjectLevel, click on "Create a new form..." and fill in the Wizard:
Give the new form a name, and an option description Pick a template from the drop-down list
(See here for a gallery of different templates to give just a taste of the variety of templates.)
The next several steps and their choices are determined by the template
o Could be choices about navigation types or styling
with possible style choosers such as: Sections, Headers, Color Themes, Menus, NavBar, Button, Color.
You can experiment with these choices, via the Wireframe preview under the Style

Choosers.




## Choosing and previewing templates in wireframes with-int the New Form wizard.

## Basic Navigation Types

Composer 4 introduces a number ways for users to navigate through forms, and now the one form can have several navigation modes on different mobile devices depending on the responsive layout settings of the form.
But for the moment, let us discuss basic navigation concepts, and leave the complications for later, after we have covered the other concepts needed to understand the rich navigation possibilities now afforded by Composer. The basic unit of navigation is the Section, and the 3 basic navigation types treat them differently.

## Standard Navigation

The whole form is on the one web page. Each section has its own heading, usually a colored bar that runs across the width of the page.
The user moves through the page by scrolling down by mouse, scroll wheel, finger swipe, two-finger trackpad gesture, and so forth.
There may be elements that stick to the viewing area, for example down the left side, but these do not change how the user moves through the form.

## Accordion Navigation

The form is the one web page, but sections collapse or expand as a convenience to the user. Navigation is essentially the same as Standard.

## Wizard Navigation

Here, each section gets a new page. The user moves through each page, usually one at a time via "Next" and "Previous" links.
Actually, the form designer can later incorporate a number of navigation choices into the form:

**strictly in sequence**

the only way to navigate is through "Next" and "Previous".

**LH Lists**

useful for showing users where they are now and how many wizard pages they have ahead of them. The items are not selectable

**menu selection**

where the L:H LIst is selectable. Users can select another page out of order.

**restricted menu selection**

where users must complete certain sections of the form before being allowed to select some of the menu items. For example, it is common that users be allowed to go back to any already-completed page via the LH Menu. but can only progress to new pages through "Next" and "Previous".
How you implement these are advanced topics.

## Combinations of the Above

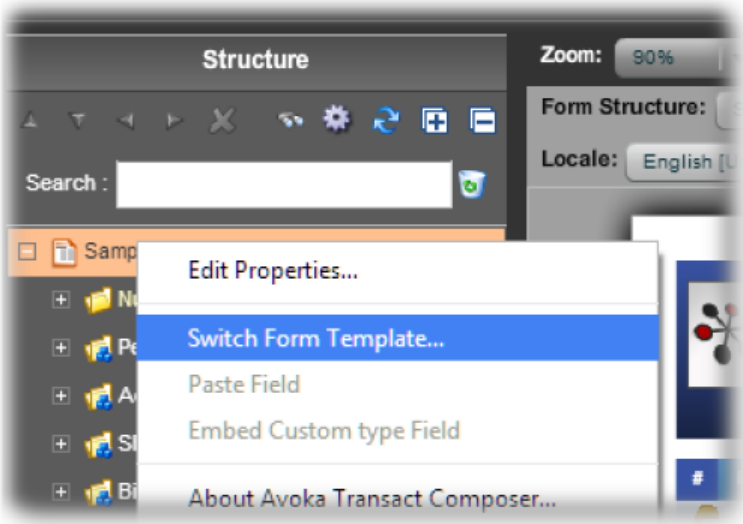
Composer 4 allows different parts of the form to make use of the different Basic Navigation Types. Now, some sections can have Wizard-style behavior while several other sections can be on one web page.

## Styling

Instead of a selection of navigation types for forms having a similar design look, the one template may offer forms that have quite different designs or styles.

## How to Change the Template

You can easily change the template of a form. Just right-click on the top element of the Structure Panel's tree and select "Switch from Template...." The only coices are templates that have been assigned to the organization (see LibraryAdvancedFeatures).
Be aware that some layout elements of the form may have to be altered as well, as required.

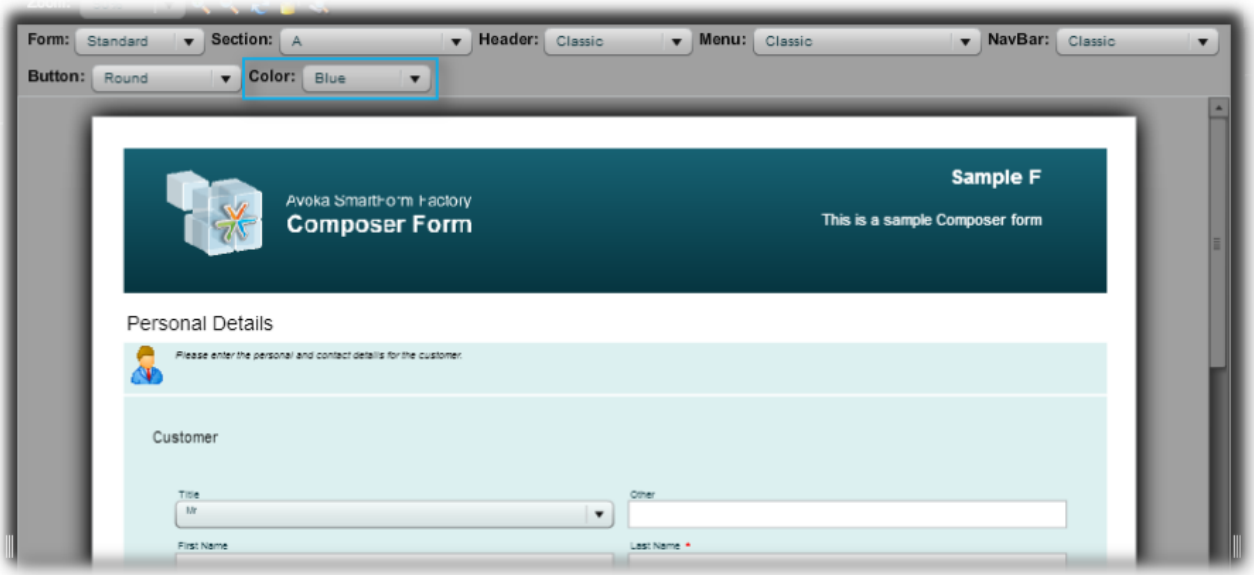



## Right-clicking on the top of the Structure Panel tree

## Samples of Templates and Styles

Here, we give a few examples of how templates and style choosers affect the one form's color or theme, its styling and its localization. The style choosers can also be

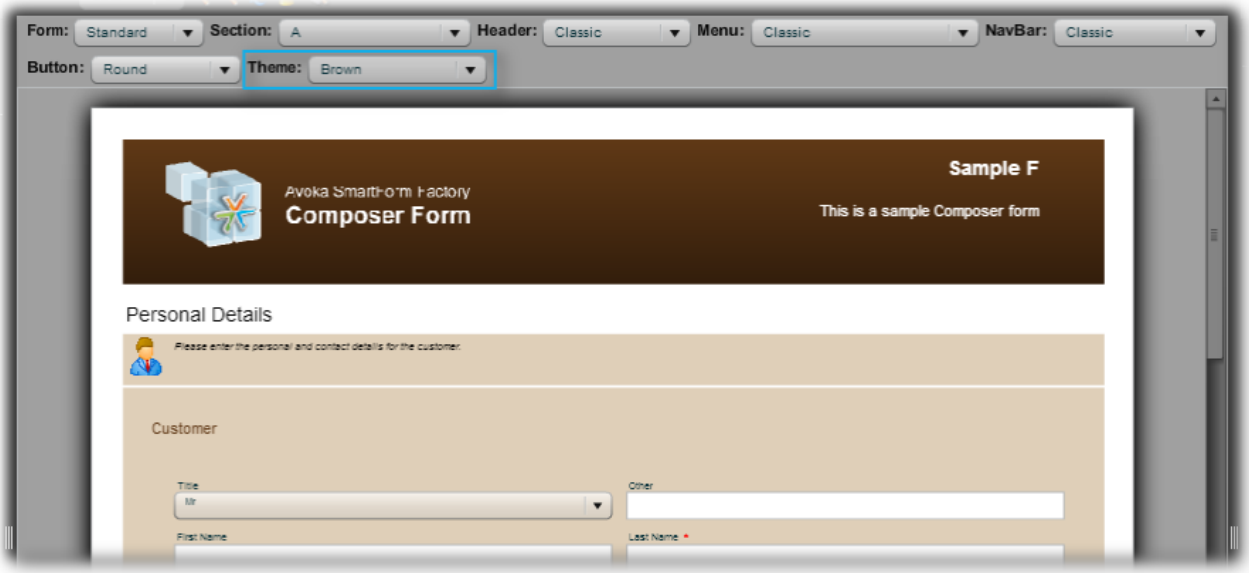
configured (see Templates in Library Advanced Features).
The form below is a simple one with four sections for entering addresses. Some simple choices on the look of sections, of the header block (the colored rectangle with the logo), the wizard form Menu, the NavBar (which holds "Next" and "Previous"), the style of buttons (rounded, square, and the like) and Color or Theme. In these basic templates, "Color" and "Theme" are interchangeable.
Experiment with the various combinations of Style Choosers.




**A basic template, and how choice of color or theme changes the appearance.**

For example, changing the color or theme alters the color scheme of the form, but

does not effect a radical change.




## Same form, different color scheme

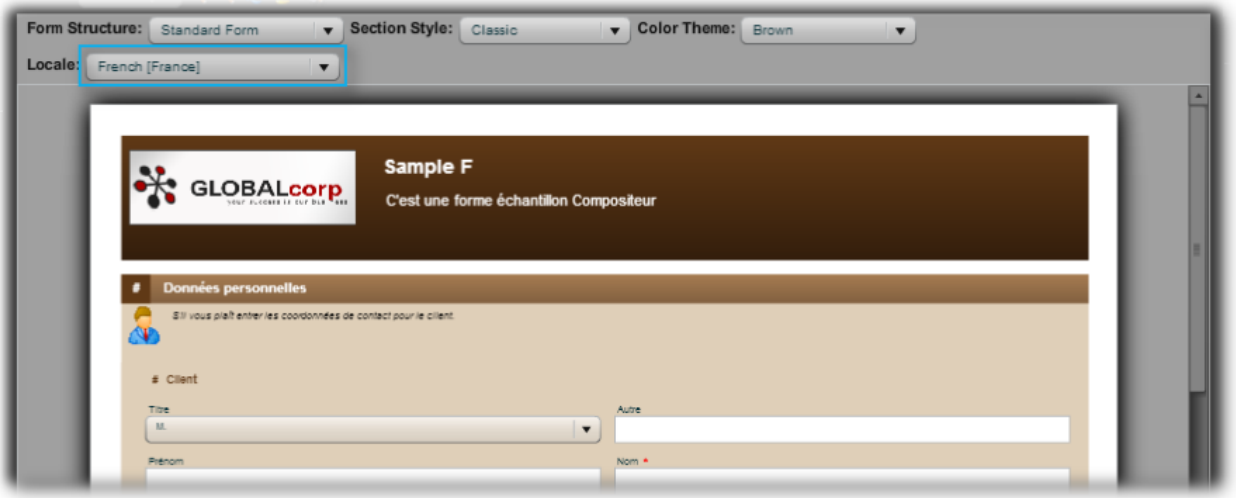
Some templates that go beyond the basics do produce radical changes to the form. Here is the same form with the "Maguire" template. The wireframe view here is only an approximation of how the form will appear to the user. Even basic navigation through the form has quite different features, such as the chevron-style menu at the top of the

form, and this is only visible in Preview, or a Mobileslidermenu.

**Same form, but with a more elaborate template. Note the Preview gives a more accurate reprentation of the form's appearance.**

Some templates support localization. See here on how to configure and tweak this feature for a range of Locales. Once done, changing the Locale for a form in Composer is a simple matter of using the selector. Note that the following examples were automatically generated using Composer's leveraging of Google Translate, and were not

checked by native speakers — usually a good idea in a production setting.



# Edit Properties

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The Edit Properties dialog is the control for every element and field in the form's structure. It has many parameters, which in turn are grouped into tabs, sub menus and even sub tabs.

Though the dialog is very powerful, but its settings do not need altering in most cases. That said, Composer's ability to do scripting and to fine tune the data model of the form through Edit Properties — and have these debugged and quickly up and running — is vital for successful form design. The improved layout of the Edit Properties dialog also facilitates making these adjustments to the form.

Composer Version 4's redesigned Edit Properties has a number of new features, including a layout tab for configuring the layout managers of a block, with a small wireframe for viewing the effects of changes on the block. Also, for the first time in Composer, you can view a field's dependencies and triggers.

## Invoking the Edit Properties Dialog

Double click on an item in the Structure Panel. The different types of structural elements have different items in their Edit Properties dialog. Broadly, here are the different types of elements:

The form itself (at the top of the Structure Panel tree)

Sections (a special kind of container that controls navigation through the form) Containers and blocks (which can be expanded by clicking on the "+")

Simple Widgets (which do not expand)

### Structure

Version 4's Edit Properties dialog has a new layout for better grouping of the many settings of the properties for fields and containers on the form. The dialog now features a row of tabs along its top. Which of these are visible depends on which of the various structural elements was chosen for the "Edit Properties" dialog.

Properties Overview Styling Data Model

Layout Assistant (for blocks and containers only) Dependencies

Rules

There are a few special tabs that appear for the Edit Properties dialog for the form

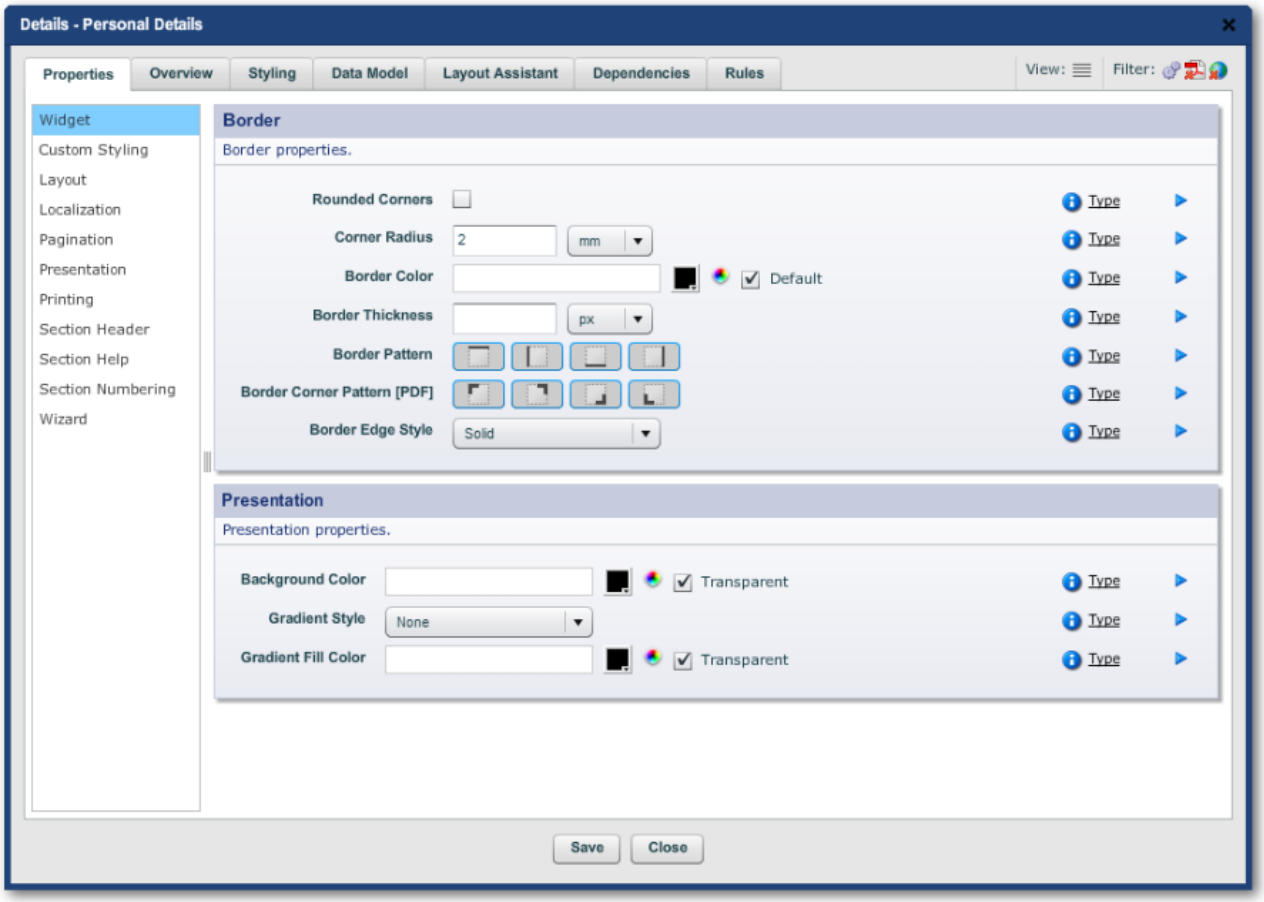
itself at the top of the Structural Panel tree:

Palette (for the form element only at the top of the Structure Panel) Theme (for the form element only)

Policies (for the form element only) Settings (for the form element only) Localization (for the form element only)

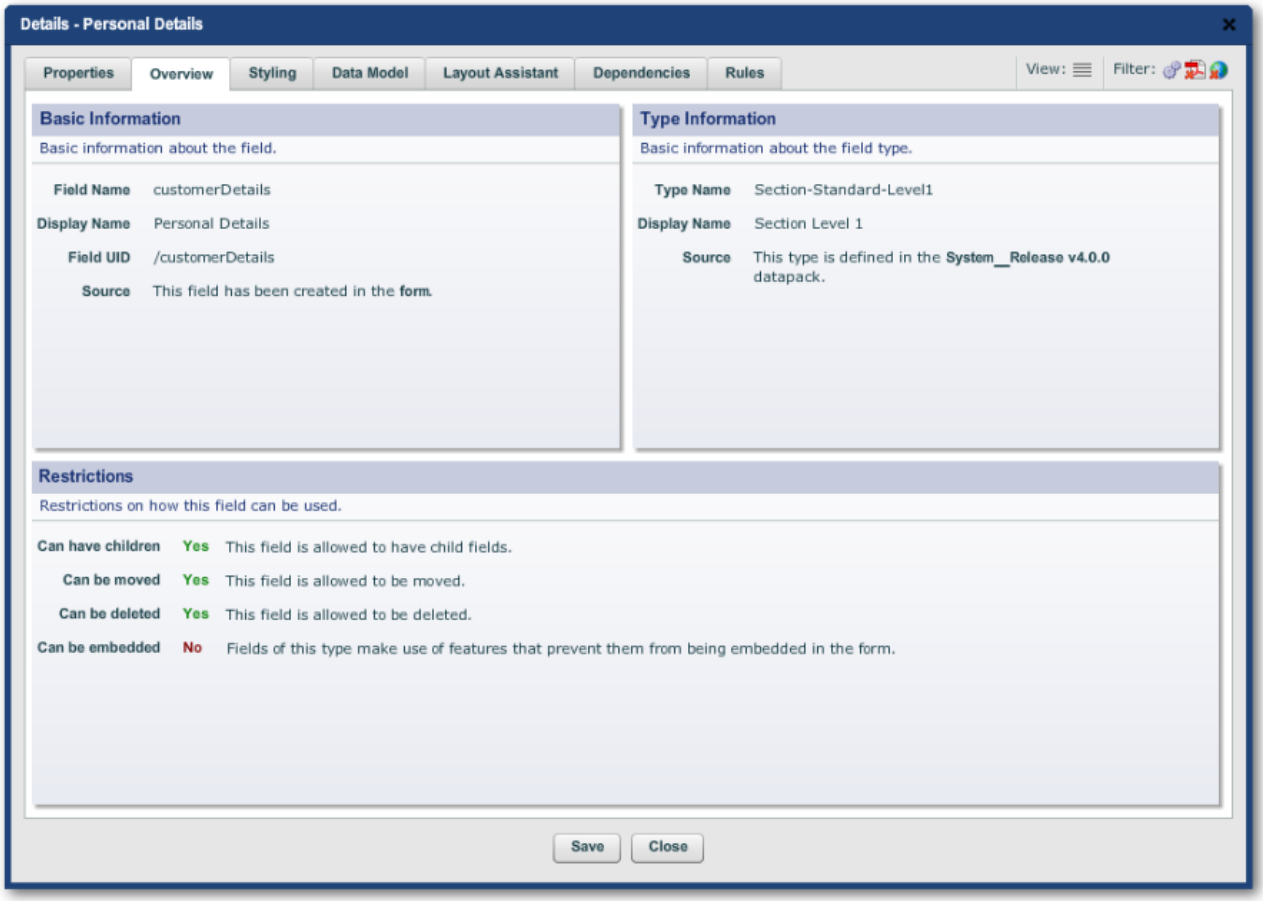
However the properties displayed in these special tabs can be accessed elsewhere in the tree, usually in the Nuts and Bolts. There, the properties appear under the "Properties" tab in the same panels that appear under these special tabs.

"Properties" and "Rules" have Left Hand menus. Each menu item displays a different set of panels to its right. Each of these panels contain their own set of editable properties.




**Edit Properties dialog for a tab with a Left Hand menu**

"Overview", "Styling", "Data Model" and "Dependencies" have just panels containing properties.




Most of these properties are read only. "Data Model" has editable properties. Two of the panels in the "Styling"
tab are editable: "Stylesets" (which gives access to stylesheet preset options) and "Named Styles" (where you can explicitly associate stylesheets with the object).
The "Layout Control" tab, which is visible for blocks and sections only, has its own unique layout, see Field Layout Control.
See Scripting and Dependencies on how to add scripts to the form — which is done through Edit Properties.

## Notation Convention Used

In the rest of this guide, we will use the following notation to show where a property, script or configuration is located in "Edit Properties":
*Tab -> LH Menu item -> Panel -> Property -> value*
So, in the Overview tab shown above, for example:
Overview -> Basic Information -> Field Name -> customerDetails

### The Filter and View Buttons

The "Edit Properties" dialog has a similar dualmodeastheStructurePanel: Standard and Advanced. The cog icon to switch between the two modes is in the top right-hand corner in the "Filter" mini panel. "Advanced" displays more properties, LH Menu items and tabs.

The other two icons toggle on or off the display of PDF-only or HTML-only properties.

The "Hamburger" View icon toggles between the normal Edit Properties view of tabs, menus and panels and the "Property Grid": a combined list of all properties listed in alphabetical order . Use the Property Grid to find a
property if you cannot locate it in any of the panels, or to inspect the raw and displayed values of properties.

## The Properties Tab

The Properties tab for any structural element usually has a LH Menu. The items displayed, though vary from element to element. The items will be listed and defined in the ReferenceSection near the end of this guide.

These LH Menu items are only groupings of property panels (see The New Dialog topic). The same property panels may also appear elsewhere in the same Edit Properties dialog for the same element, for example the panels in Properties -> Layout will also be found at Layout Assistant -> Properties in the same dialog.

So, the Properties tab's LH Menu usually has many possible entries. The following is intended to be a broad guide so that you can find your way around this tab — and, by implication, the rest of the Edit Properties structure.

Here, we exclude Nuts & Bolts. Indeed, some of the "Nuts & Bolts" items have Property tabs with empty LH Menus

The following table is a rule of thumb only, and we include it here for general guidance. Advanced Mode items are so marked.

| Structural Element Type | LH Menu Item | Panels (an indication only) |
|---|---|---|
| **Form** | Form | Form Panel (Holds the settings entered in theoriginalwizardwhentheform was created.) |
| **Section** | Widget (Advanced) | Border<br>Presentation (Borders, background colors and gradi- |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | ent) |
| | Custom Styling (Advanced) | HTML Custom Styling (HTML forms only. Background image, its repetition, custom HTML classes) |
| | Layout | Layout Manager Layout Constraints<br>Sizing (i.e. the layout fill: "Horizontal" or "None") |
| | Localizatio n (Advanced) | Localization Properties |
| | Pagination (Advanced) | Pagination control (PDF only) |
| | Presentatio n (Advanced) | Presentation (Alignment, Drop Shadow, etc.) |
| | Printing (Advanced) | Printing (PDF only. Printing properties) |
| | Section Header | Header |
| | Section Help | Help |
| | Section Num-ber | Numbering |
| | Wizard | Wizard (does this section belong to the form's wizard navigation scheme) |
| **Block** | General | General (Labels) |
| | Widget (Advanced) | Border<br>Presentation (Borders, background colors and gradi-ent) |
| | Custom | HTML Custom Styling (HTML forms only. Background image, its repetition, custom |
| Structural Element Type | LH Menu Item | Panels (an indication only) |
| | Styling (Advanced) | HTML classes) |
| | Layout | Layout Manager Layout Constraints<br>Sizing (i.e. the layout fill: "Horizontal" or "None") |
| | Localizatio n | Localization Properties |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | (Advanced) | |
| | Pagination (Advanced) | Pagination control (PDF only) |
| | Presentatio n (Advanced) | Presentation (Alignment, Drop Shadow, etc.) |
| | Printing (Advanced) | Printing (PDF only. Printing Properties) |
| **Simple Wid-get** | Caption | Caption Content Caption Presentation |
| | Field (Advanced) | Field Border<br>Field Presentation<br>(These give the border, background and so forth of the area into which users type their data) |
| | Widget (Advanced) | Widget Border Widget Presentation<br>(The border, background and so forth for the widget) |
| | Accessibilit y | Accessibility (Tool tip, custom screen reader text, pre-cedence and so forth) |
| | Custom Styl-ing (Advanced) | HTML Custom Styling (Custom HTML Classes and whether Boostrap styling applies) PDF Comb Styling |
| | Data | Data (various properties, many of them Advanced Mode only, including display format, etc.) |
| | Layout | Layout Constraints Sizing |
| | Localizatio n (Advanced) | Localization |
| | Printing (Advanced) | Printing (PDF only) |

## The Other Tabs

In TheProperties Tab, we gave 4 types of structural elements in the panel. There are actually 5 main types:
**The form itself** (at the top of the structural panel's tree)
**Read onlyelements** (mainly found in Nuts & Bolts elements)

## Sections Blocks

### Simple Widgets

The New Dialog lists the range of other tabs. The current topic briefly deals with two tabs associated with all the elements:

Overview

Styling

Neither has a LH Menu.

| Tab | Panels | Editable? | Properties |
|---|---|---|---|
| Overview | Basic Information | No | Field Name Display Name Field UID (the unique identifier of the element) Source (Whether created directly in the form or not) |
| | Type Information | No | Type Name Display Name Source |
| | Restrictions | No | Can have children? ("yes" or "no") Can be moved? Can be deleted? Can be embeded? |
| Styling (Not available in the form element at the top of the tree) (see Stylesheets) **Note**: None of these properties are covered in Properties -> Custom Styling (HTML only) | Stylesets (qv) | No | Lists any stylesets associated with the element |
| | Typed Styles | No | Lists stylesheets assigned to the element according to its type. |
| | Named Styles | Yes | Can explicitly add or remove stylesheets to the element and set the order of precedence. |

# Field Layout Control

This topic covers the mechanics of layout. See here, for a discussion on the aesthetics and design of form layout from. Also see another discussion on UsabilityandAccessibility.

## Problems with explicit position layouts

When designers build a form using simple tools, they tend to drag a widget into a specific position on the form
— known as absolute or x-y positioning — then re-position and re-size it using their mouse. This works for simple forms only, not when dealing with multiple device types, nor with maintaining existing forms. Explicit positioning:
Cannot ensure that forms flow correctly on different technologies, for example on the desktop, tablets or smartphones.
Cannot ensure all fields have the same styling and sizing. Cannot ensure that all fields line up nicely.
Cannot ensure proper placement on the high resolution devices. Doing this manually is very time consuming and the results are inconsistent.
Cannot save designers from filling in parameters manually into dialogs. For example, "all standard text fields are 15in wide, a caption of 12in, and placed 0.7in in from the left margin". The designer then needs to know these magic numbers, and apply them consistently and enter them for every single field on the form.
Makes a big job out of inserting a new field vertically between two existing fields.
Cannot automate changing all the fields on the form to have, for example, all the field captions left or top- aligned, or changing all the fonts or background colors.
Cannot automate changing the width of the form, or its margins and so forth. Instead, every field has to be repositioned.

## Layout Managers and Hints

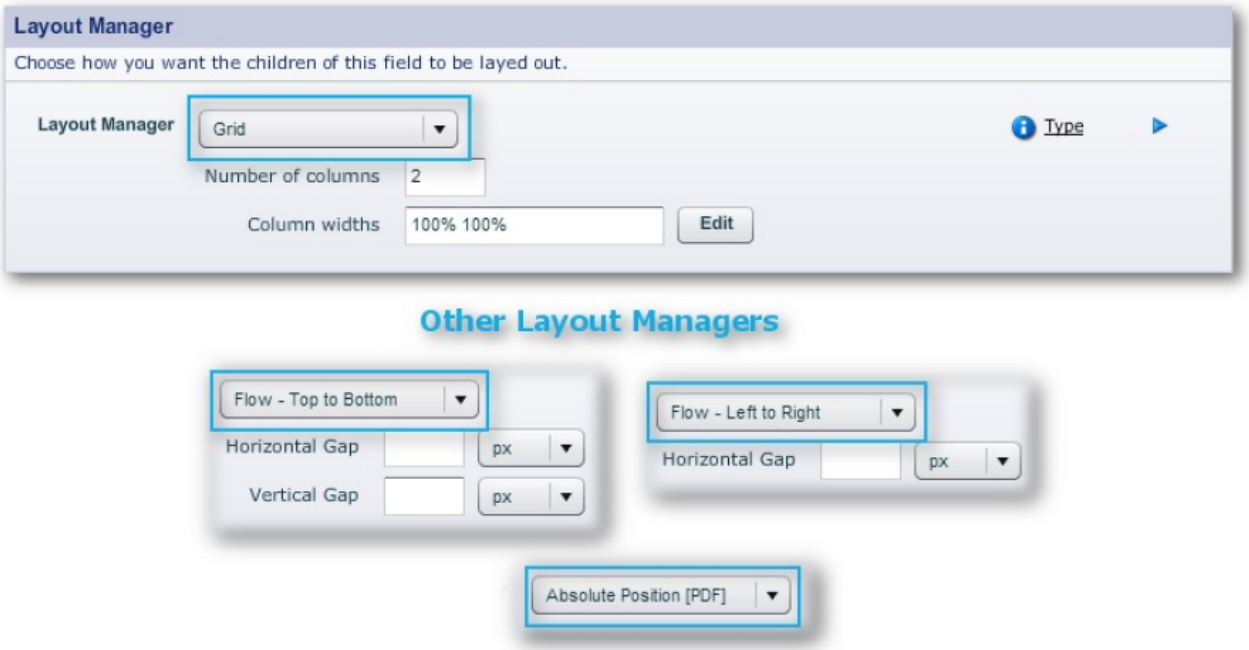
For these reasons, Composer automates the detailed layout of fields. All you do is specify the order of the fields and, optionally, a few extra "hints" and let Composer do the rest.
Hints may be such things as:
Keep this field on the same line as the previous one
Make this field as wide as possible (within the bounds of the space that it has available on the page) Spread these two fields across the page, in the ratio 40% to 60%.
Lay out these 12 fields equally spaced in a 4 column grid

## The Layout Panels

The default settings for the Composer layout managers are set in the template for the form. The following documents how to tweak the layout of elements on the form when the default positioning of an element needs it.

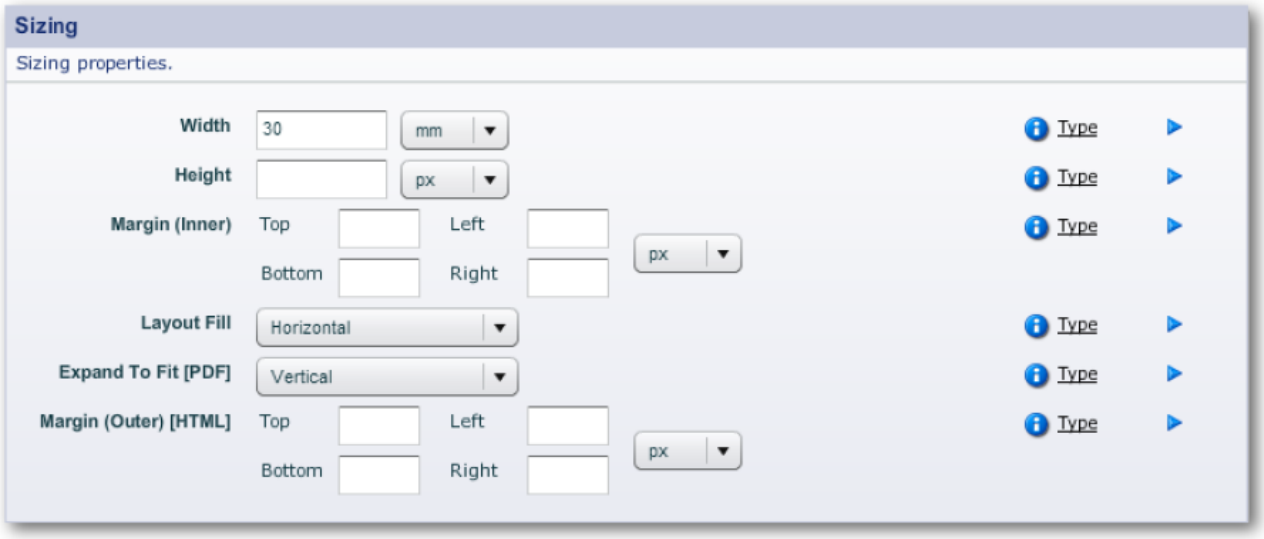
You make layout adjustment through 3 panels in Edit Properties. They are:

The **Layout Manager** panel

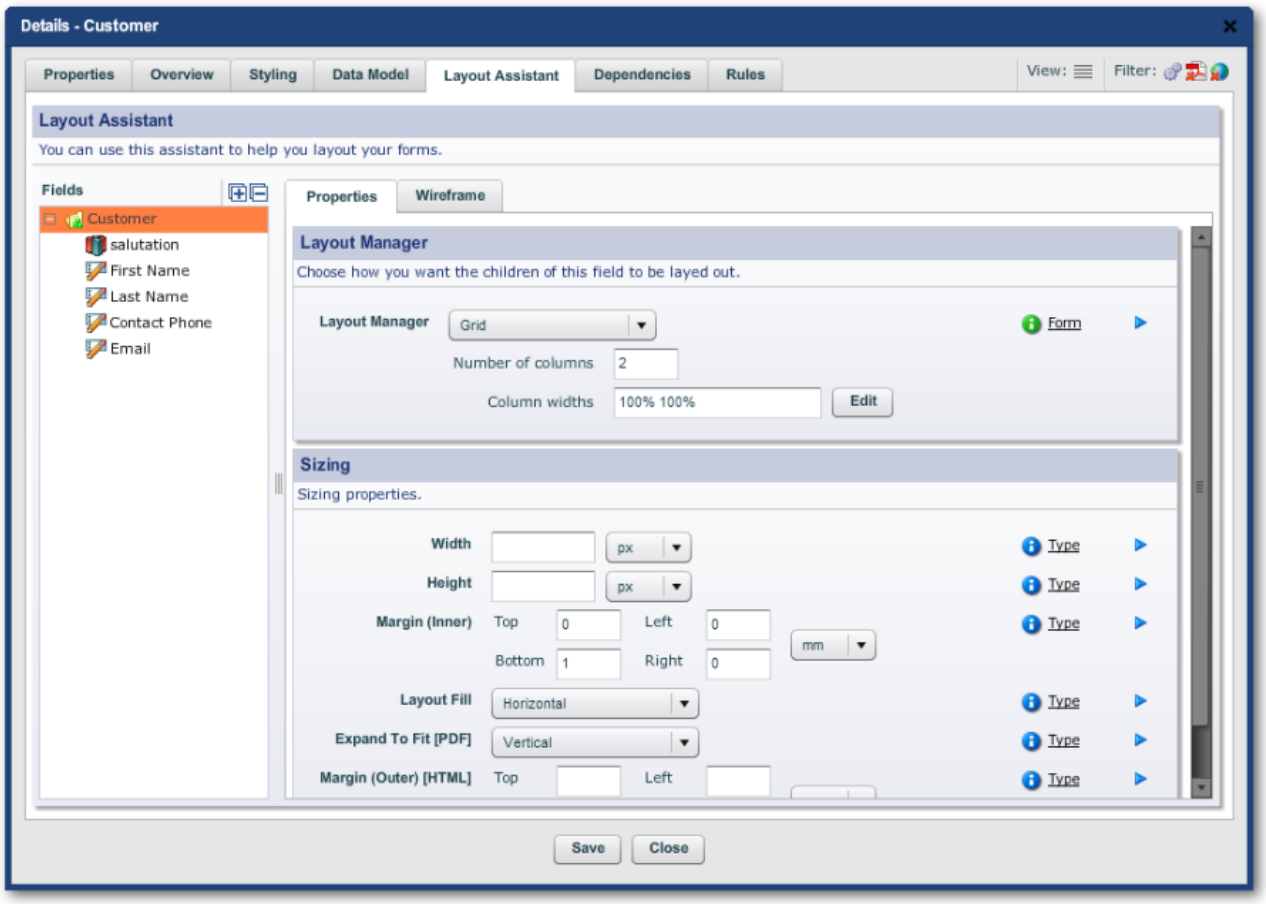



### Layout Constraints

### Sizing

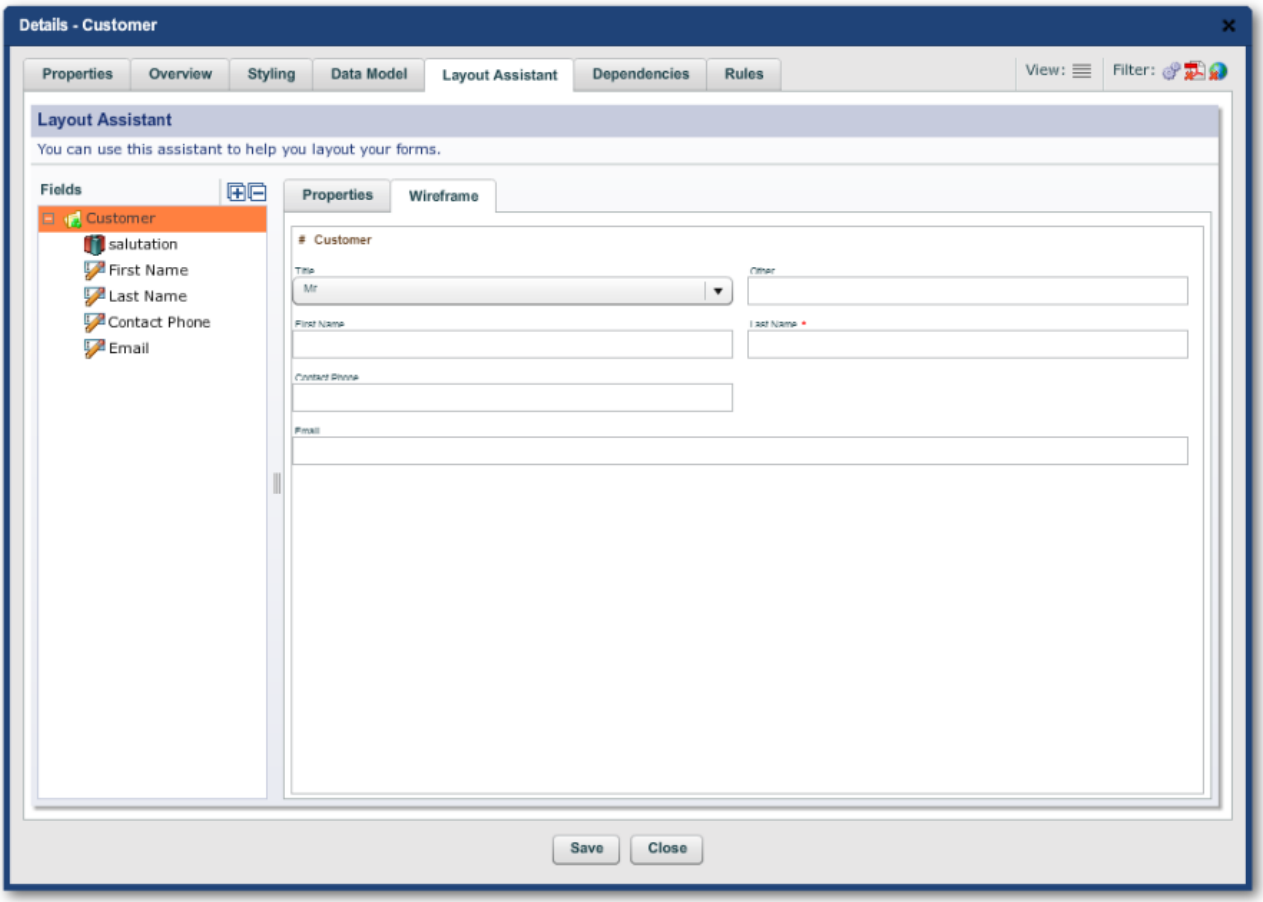



You access these panels in "Edit Properties" through "Properties -> Layout" or in the "Layout Assistant" tab. (That tab, though, does not contain the "Sizing" panel.)




Note the mini Structure Panel (marked "Fields") in the LH Menu of the tab. And, there is also a mini wireframe available on the RH side of the tab in which you can test the effect

of tweaking the values in the "Layout Manager" and "Sizing" panels.




## The Effect of the Different Layout Managers

### Flow — Top to Bottom

A lot of forms are very simple - they just contain a series of fields going down the page. This is also the best layout for the narrower screens on mobile devices.

To achieved this type of layout, you can use the Top to Bottom flow. Fields in a Vertical Flow simply go below each other down the page. The Vertical Flow is always the default manager on all sections and blocks.

There are a few options or "layout hints" that you can specify with the Vertical Flow layout manager to achieve higher levels of usability. These include:

| Property | Description |
|---|---|
| **Keep on Same Line** | If "Keep on Same Line" is checked, this field will be kept on the same line as the previous field. You can set this on as many fields as will fit on the line. |

| | |
|---|---|
| (Layout Constraints Panel) | This technique is mostly used to group related field together, such as First Name and Family Name, or State and Zip Code. |
| **Layout Fill** (Sizing Panel) | If Layout Fill is set to "Horizontal", then this particular field will expand to fit all the available space on the line. This can be used to give your users as much space as possible to fill out longer fields, without having to give your fields explicit widths. If you have multiple fields on the same line with Layout Fill set as "Horizontal", each of them will then share the extra available space equally. |

The Top to Bottom flow does not change the width of any of your fields (unless you select Layout Fill). Your field width will be:
The "natural" width of the field as defined in your organization stylesheet; or
The style-set that you associated with this field whenyoudraggeditintotheform. Typical style-sets include
widths like "Tiny", "Small", "Medium" and "Large", but this will vary depending on how your organization's stylesheets have been set up. If you want to change the style set after you've created the field, you can change it in "Styling -> Stylesets -> Field Size".
If you select Layout Fill, the layout manager will try to use as much of the line's space as possible and take into account the size of the screen or page, margins, borders and gutter areas, space allocated to menus, and the other fields on the same line.
**Note**: If you specify too many fields on the same line, this can create layout problems, particularly on smaller screens. The behavior of a line with too many fields will depend on the ResponsiveLayout rules.

**Flow — Left to Right**

The Top to Bottom Flow is suitable for many simple types of forms; you often need, however, more fine-grained control over how fields spread out across the page. This is where the Left to Right Flow layout manager, comes in.
Horizontal Layout allows you to lay out several fields across the page with very fine-grained control over the size of each field by specifying the percent width of each field.
**Note**: While we generally talk about percentages, those percentages need not to add up to 100: Composer will adjust accordingly.
The beauty of using percentages is: should you need to add another field onto the same line, move a field, re- size a field, or switch from portrait to landscape, all the other fields will automatically adjust to accommodate the changes. Form maintenance

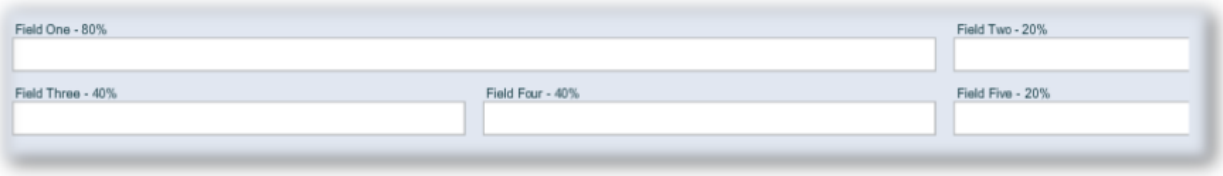
then becomes easy. The fields will also retain their proportions on the range of mobile devices.

Left to Right Flows are always used in conjunction with Top to Bottom. The Top to Bottom controls each line of fields; and Left to Right within each line.

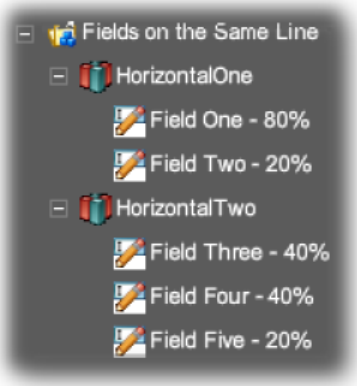
### Multiple fields per line

The simplest way to get multiple fields on the same line is to use a Top to Bottom Flow and the "Keep on Same Line" property ("Properties -> Layout -> Layout Constraints"). This, however, gives you little control over the sizing of the fields.

For more control, use a Left to Right flow inside a Top to Bottom to finely control the widths of each of the fields in the single line. Using even multiples of a base size will result in fields on subsequent lines being lined up to each other. This is shown in the screenshot below.




**Horizontal Layout**



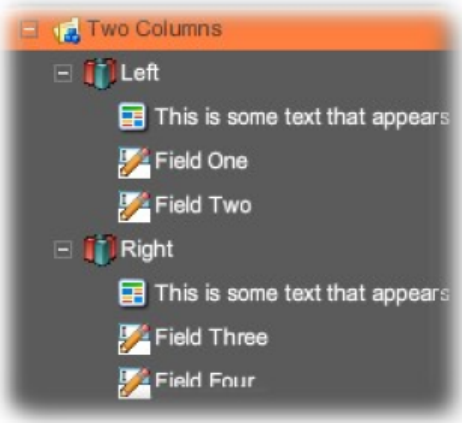

**Horizontal Layout in the Hierarchy**

### Two-column forms

You can create a two column layout by using two blocks laid out within a horizontal flow layout, with fields inside them laid out horizontally.

This is shown in the screen-shot below:

**Two Column Layout**



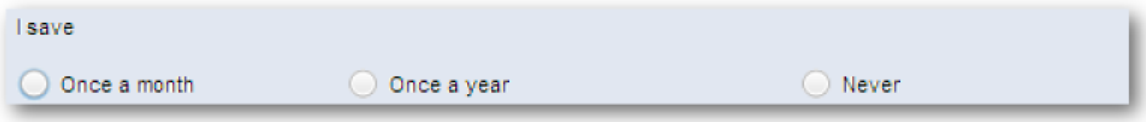

**Two Column Layout in the Hierarchy**

**Note**: You can use the Margin property to provide extra spacing between the two columns, or use another smaller block between the two.

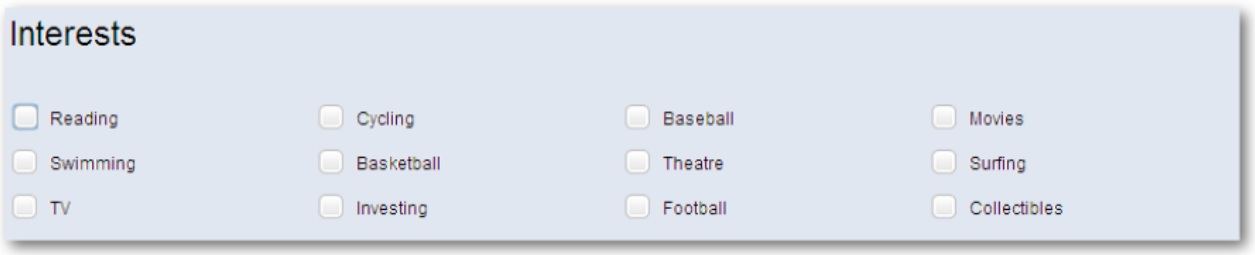
### Grid Layout

Often, you have to lay out a large number of fields and, for an elegant layout, all these have to align correctly. The Grid layout manager, which is specified on blocks or sections, can achieve this.

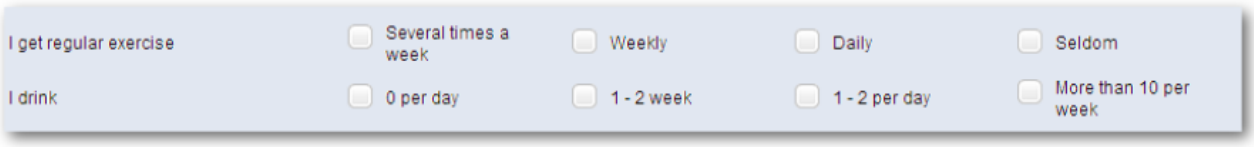
By default, each column in the grid has equal size, but you can also specify the width of each column by defining a percentage of the space available, or a fixed size in mm or inches. For example, in a 3 column grid, you may specify the column widths as "100% 60mm 100%". As in the example, these percentages need not add up to 100.



**Grid layout with 3 radio buttons respectively 100%, 60mm and 100%**




**Grid layout with 4 columnseach one set to 100%**

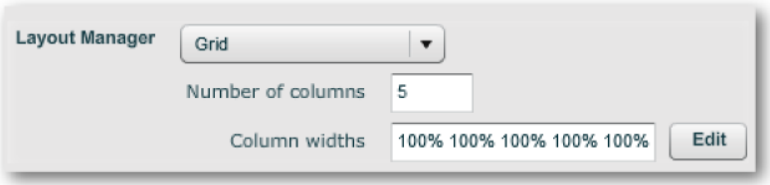



**Grid layout havinga text fieldset to 150%and each checkboxset to 100%**

Grids can also be used as part of a hybrid layout. For example, a grid could contain one or more blocks which in turn could contain widgets, or grids could be arranged within a vertical or horizontal flow layout.

Each of the objects added inside the grid can specify hints that provide additional control over how they are laid out.

Go to next line Span

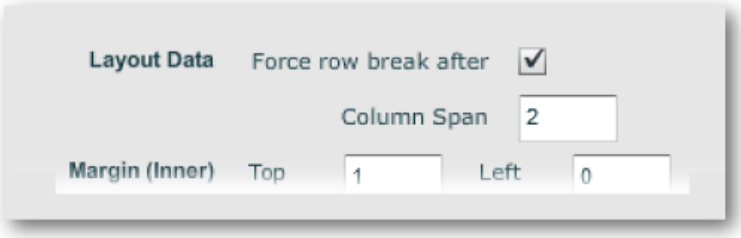



**Property editor for the parent block**

In the example below, I begin by using as I have 5 checkboxes.

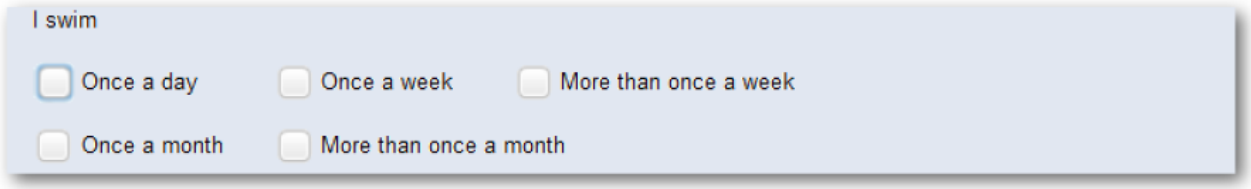
Because 'More than once a week' is such as long caption, I select the 'Force a row break

after' that checkbox and make it "span 2 columns".




**Tweaking the element with "Edit Properties -> Layout -> Layout Data"**

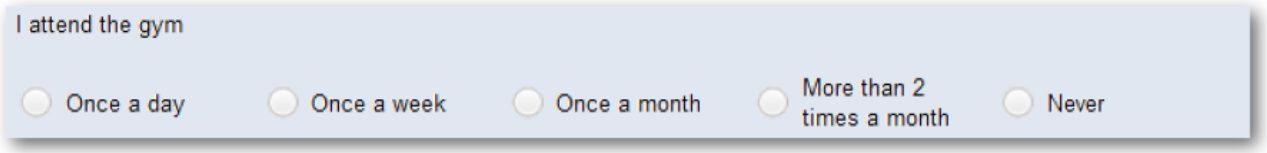
**Result:**



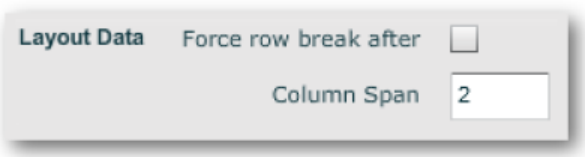

**Grid layout where 3rdcolumn spans 2columns and the4th column isforced onto thenext line**

**Tip**: Grid layout is particularly useful for laying out multiple checkboxes and radio buttons. Even if your radio buttons all appear on one line, it's still advisable to place them in a grid layout. Decide on a standard grid size for all radio buttons, and always use that grid size for all radio button groups, regardless of how many radio buttons you have. If you do this, all your radio buttons in your entire form will all line up nicely.

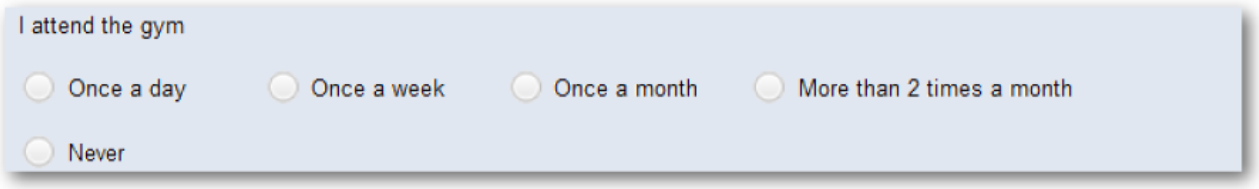
**Tip**: If you have a radio button with a longer than usual caption, simply set the span to 2 so that it uses up two grid cells.




**Grid layout where each of 5 columns set to 100% (Note: the caption on the 4th column)**




**Property editor for 'More than 2 timesa month'**




**Grid layout where4th column spans2 columns toprevent caption wrapping**

### Fillers, Springs and Page Breaks

There are a few special objects in Composer that deal specifically with laying forms out.

| Object | Description |
|---|---|
| Filler | A filler is a simple invisible object that simply takes up space, creating "white-space" in your form. White-space is generally considered a good thing by form designers, since it creates visual separation and grouping between objects, and makes a form easier to read and complete. You can use a filler to separate two other objects either vertically or horizontally. For example, you can put a filler after a heading to create some space between the heading and the first field. Fillers can sometimes be useful, but they are difficult to style - if you want to be able to control the look and feel of your form by changing the stylesheets, you're generally better off using properties on the individual objects that can be more easily styled, such as margins. |
| Spring | A spring is exactly what it sounds — it's an object that tries to expand as big as it can. For example, if you want a layout with one field on the left of the page, and another field on the right of the page, simply use two fields in a horizontal layout and place a spring between them. Under the covers, a spring is really just a simple invisible object with its width set to 100%. Springs only work with other objects on a single line. |
| Page Break | Page Breaks only apply to page-oriented formats such as PDF. By default, Composer builds forms that just flow down the page. Fields will automatically "roll over" to the next page when there is not enough room on the current page. Usually, this works fine, but occasionally, you may want to explicitly start on a new page. In order to do this, simply drag a Page Break object into the tree, and your form will immediately skip to the next page. |

There are three other properties in Composer that affect page breaks in PDF forms, in the "Properties -> Pagination -> Pagination Control" panel:

| Property | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Allow Page Breaks | Containers such as blocks and sections allow you to specify whether they should allow page breaks within themselves or not. If you turn "Allow Page Breaks" off, then the entire section will always stay on the same page - if even one field of the section would flow over to the next page, the entire section will be moved to the following page. If you turn "Allow Page Breaks" on, then if one of the fields in the section exceeds the current page, just that field and the ones that follow it will move to the next page.<br><br>Most stylesheets have Allow Page Breaks turned on for two reasons. Firstly, disallowing page breaks can create large blocks of white space at the end of pages, confusing the user. Secondly, in dynamic forms (forms that grow and shrink), making a very simple change on one page could cause a following section to exceed the current page, and when the entire section is moved to the next page, it will seem to "disappear". Users find this very confusing. You should also be very careful to ensure that any section that disallows page breaks is no bigger than a single page, otherwise Reader will not know how to lay it out. |
| Force Page Break | This property is associated with a block, and will force this section or block to start on a new page. This is equivalent to inserting an explicit Page Break object into your form. |
| Block Keep With Policy | Choice between: "None", "Previous" or "Next". In other words, do you want to keep this block on the same PDF with the next block or the previous block, or or you don't care either way. |

# Field Styling

The form's template sets the style defaults for its fields, and so any globalchangesshouldbemadetothe template itself. That is an advanced topic, not covered here.

Local changes can affect only a single field or whole containers or sections. There are 2 types of these changes:

Changes through stylesheets Manual overrides to stylesheets

Manual overrides are easy to understand but are time consuming and as clumsy as explicit position layouts.

## Using Stylesheets

In the WorkspaceHierarchy, Stylesheets live in Libraries. Libraries are associated with Projects or the higher levels of the hierarchy. See LibraryAdvancedFeatures.

You can also create *ad hoc* stylesheets (that is, those not contained in a library) at the Organizationlevel through the Stylesheet tab. See Stylesheets for more.

To do either, you need to have the necessary access levels.

Given that you now have suitably modified stylesheets, you can make use of these through the "Styling" tab of "Edit Properties" of the element. This tab is available for all elements except the form element at the top of the Structure Panel tree.

The tabs has 3 panels:

**Stylesets**

where designers can choose a style from a set of them as defined in the stylesheet, The most commonest example is "Field Size", which often appears in the wizard when a widget is dropped onto a form's Structure Panel.

**Typed Styles**

a read-only field that displays the style types associated with the field. These types are defined and assigned in the stylesheet. See Stylesheets.

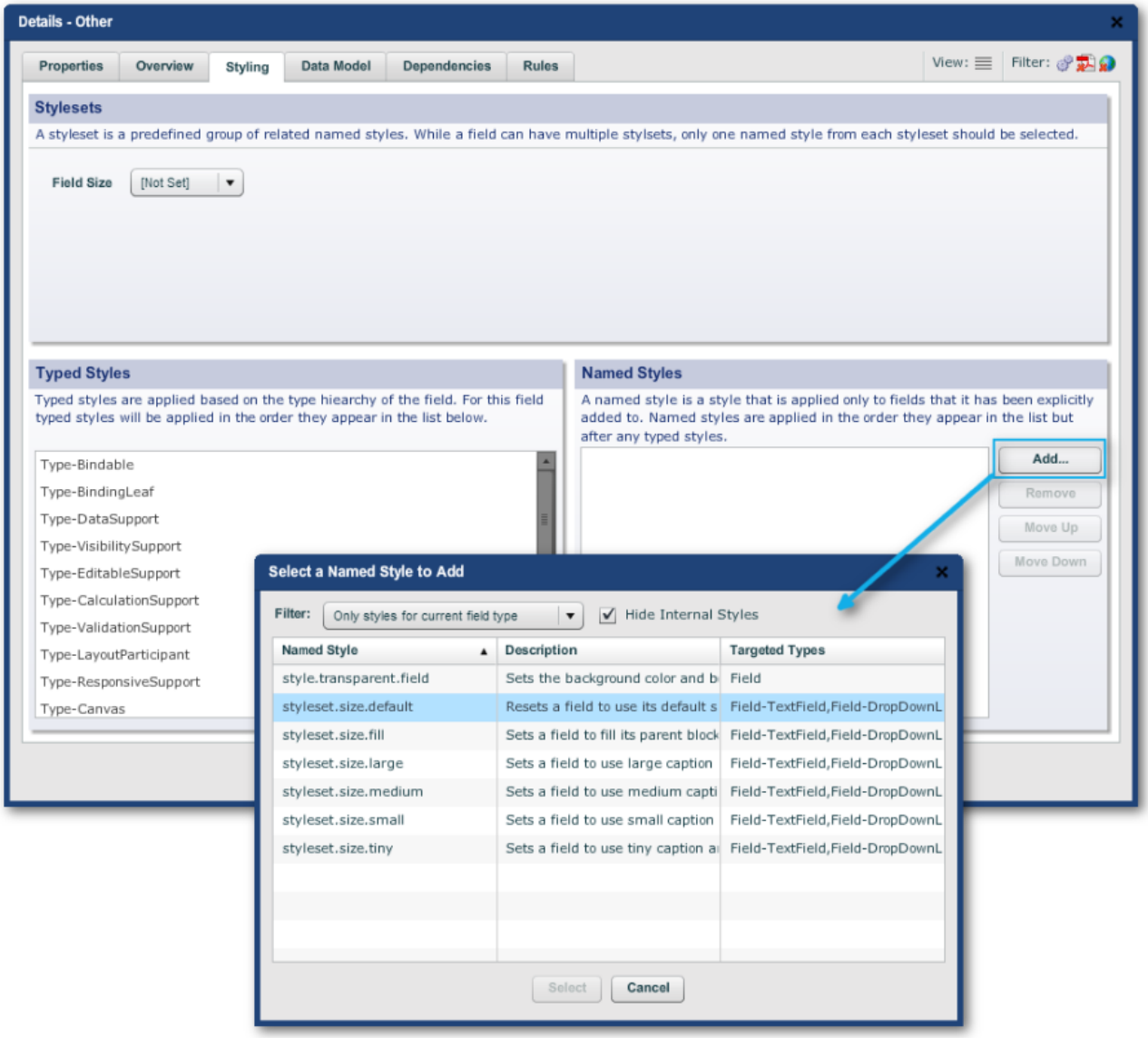
**Named Styles.**

These 2 kinds of styles are explained in detail later, For now, suffice it to say that:

typed styles are based on field hierarchy or field function, Their allocation is automatic and based on the field's place in the form's structure

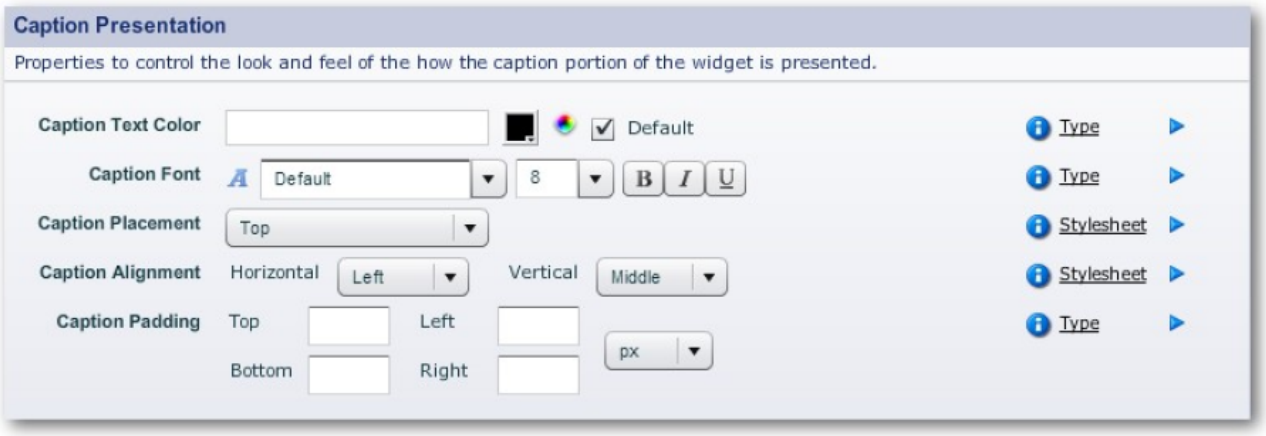
Named styles are allocated manually, and their functions are more local, such as for

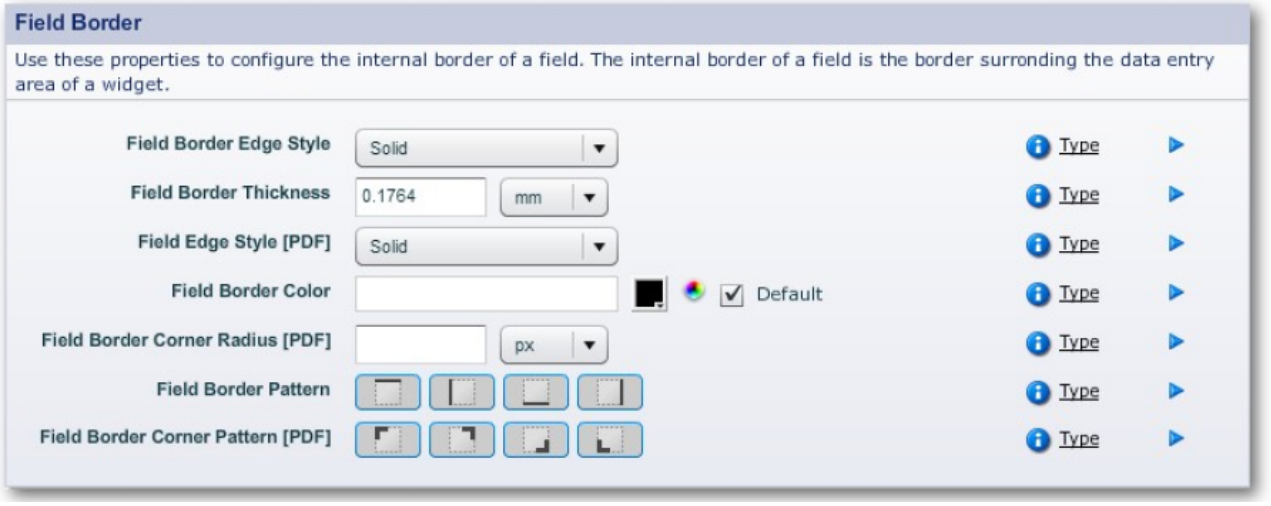
setting a background color or making a field transparent, and so on.

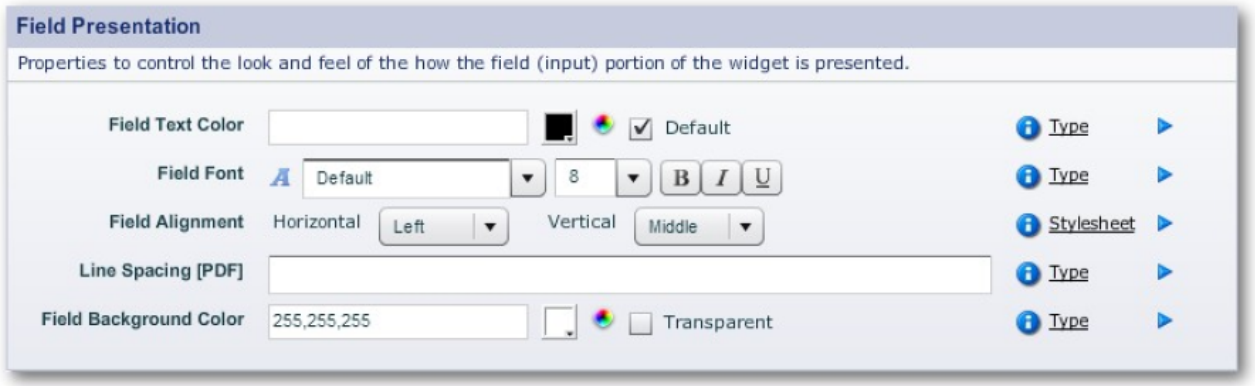


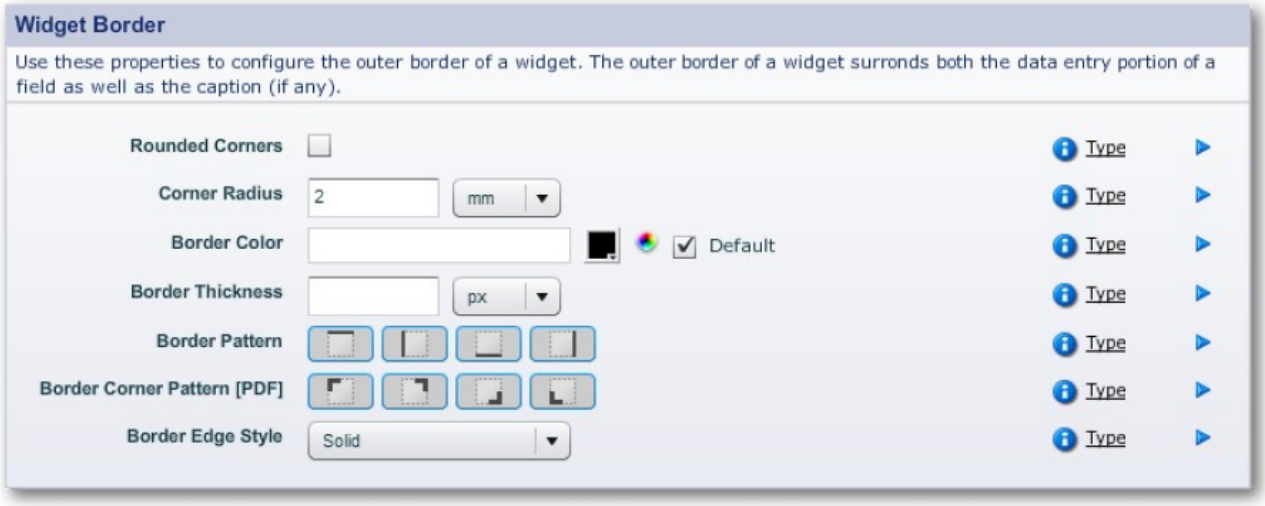

## Manual Overrides

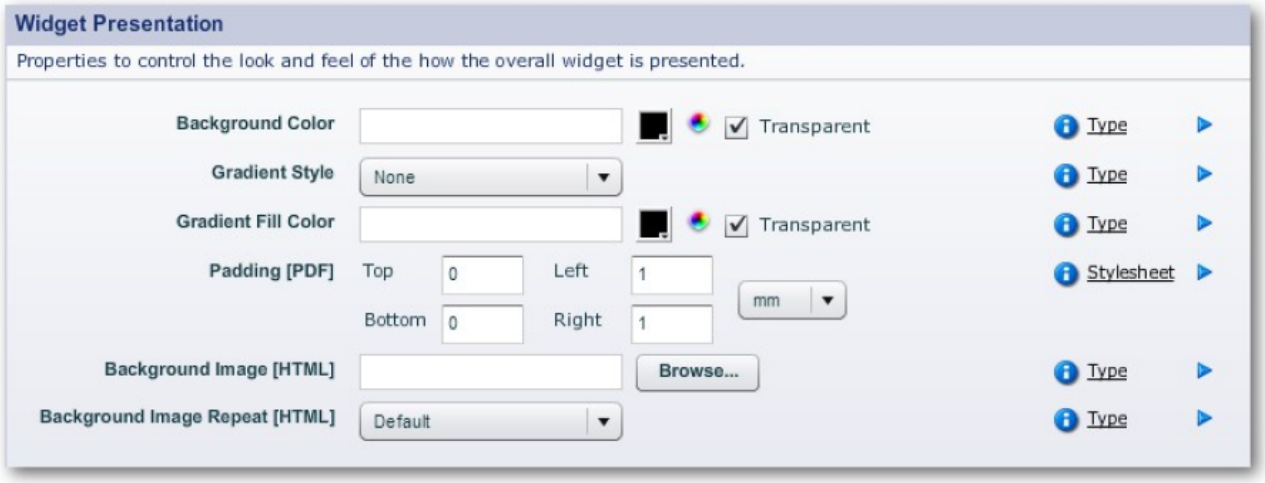
These should be one-off overrides. (If you find that you are continually applying manuals throughout the form, you should be changing the template instead.)
The relevant panels are the "Presentation" and "Border" panels:
"Properties -> Caption -> Caption Presentation" "Properties -> Field -> Field Border" "Properties -> Field -> Field Presentation" "Properties -> Widget -> Widget Border" "Properties -> Widget -> Widget Presentation"


Caption Presentation
Properties to control the look and feel of the how the caption portion of the widget is presented.
Caption Text Color
Default
Type
Caption Font
Default
8
B
I
U
Type
Caption Placement
Top
Stylesheet
Caption Alignment
Horizontal
Left
Vertical
Middle
Stylesheet
Caption Padding
Top
Left
Bottom
Right
px
Type


Field Border
Use these properties to configure the internal border of a field. The internal border of a field is the border surrounding the data entry area of a widget.
Field Border Edge Style
Solid
Type
Field Border Thickness
0.1764
mm
Type
Field Edge Style [PDF]
Solid
Type
Field Border Color
Default
Type
Field Border Corner Radius [PDF]
px
Type
Field Border Pattern
Type
Field Border Corner Pattern [PDF]
Type


Field Presentation
Properties to control the look and feel of the how the field (input) portion of the widget is presented.
Field Text Color
Default
Type
Field Font
Default
8
B
I
U
Type
Field Alignment
Horizontal
Left
Vertical
Middle
Stylesheet
Line Spacing [PDF]
Type
Field Background Color
255,255,255
Transparent
Type



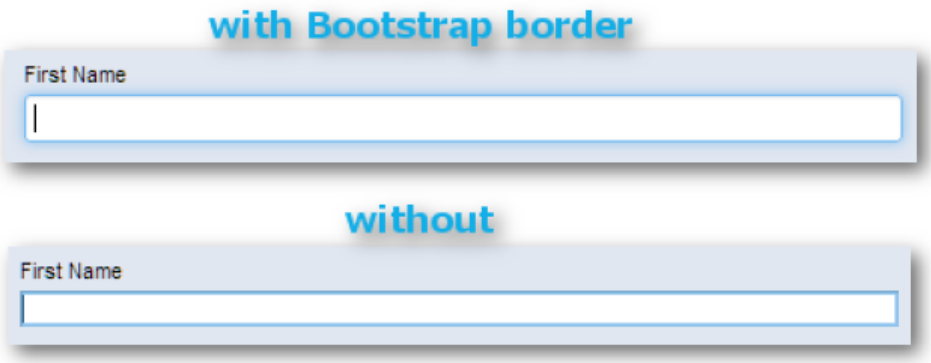

## Custom Styling

This technique stands apart from the other styling adjustments.There is a panel for HTML-only settings, and another for PDF-only comb-fields.

**2 sample "HTML Custom Styling" panels**

Custom Classes means CSS Classes from a CSS stylesheet (a quite different entity form a Composer stylesheet) that is not under Composer's environment or control. One scenario is: the Custom Classes belong to a corporate CSS stylesheet. If so, adding these CSS classes via this panel can result in issues at rendering time, and are not an ideal solution.

"Bootstrap border styling" refers to Twitter's Bootstrap, a popular framework for implementing responsive layout behavior. The effect of having this border styling turned on is rather subtle:




**A selected text field in preview**

The Background Image parameters use a bitmap image file, .png, .jpg and so on, as

"wallpaper" inside the object. The "Repeat" dropdown menu can be set to "Default", "Horizontal", "Vertical", "Both" or "None".

# Field Data

## Overview

A **writable** field's data is dealt with in 2 ways in Composer:

**Data properties**

which is about the data contents of the field, but considered in isolation from the rest of the form, with the exception of radio buttons that form part of the one group (as they are, after all, just the one data object with several form fields working together)

**Data Model**

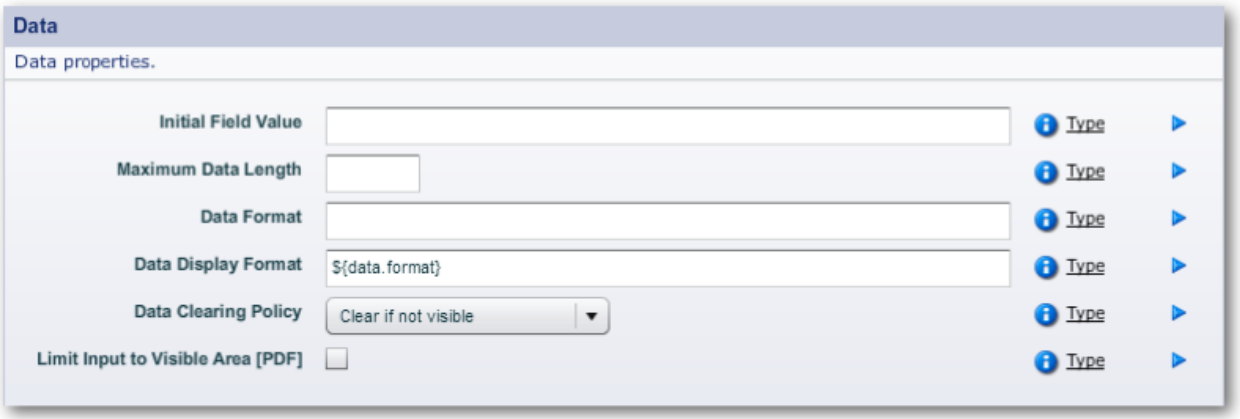
which is how the relationship of the field to the data structures of the form's outputs

## Data Properties

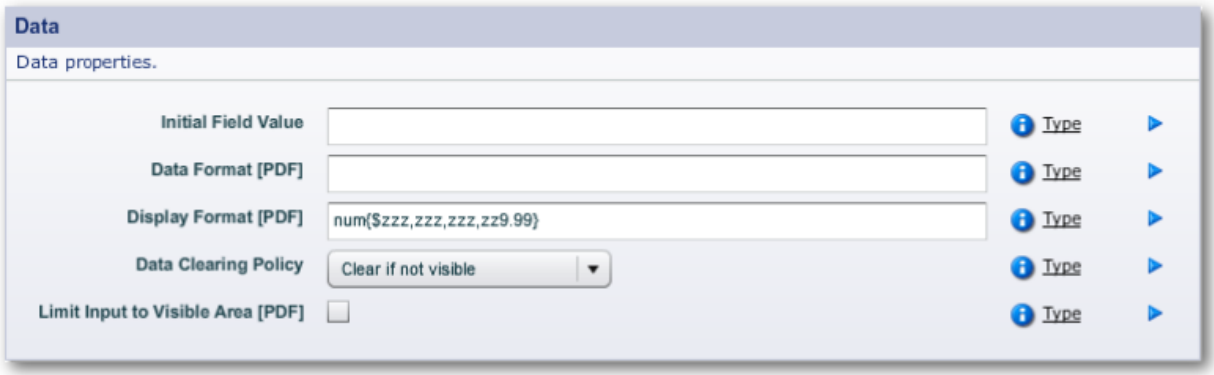
These are contained in "Edit Properties" in "Properties -> Data". There are a number of panels, depending on the type of field:
Data (always present in writable fields)
Dropdown Data (in addition to the above for a dropdown menu field) Decimal Options (when the field is a decimal number)

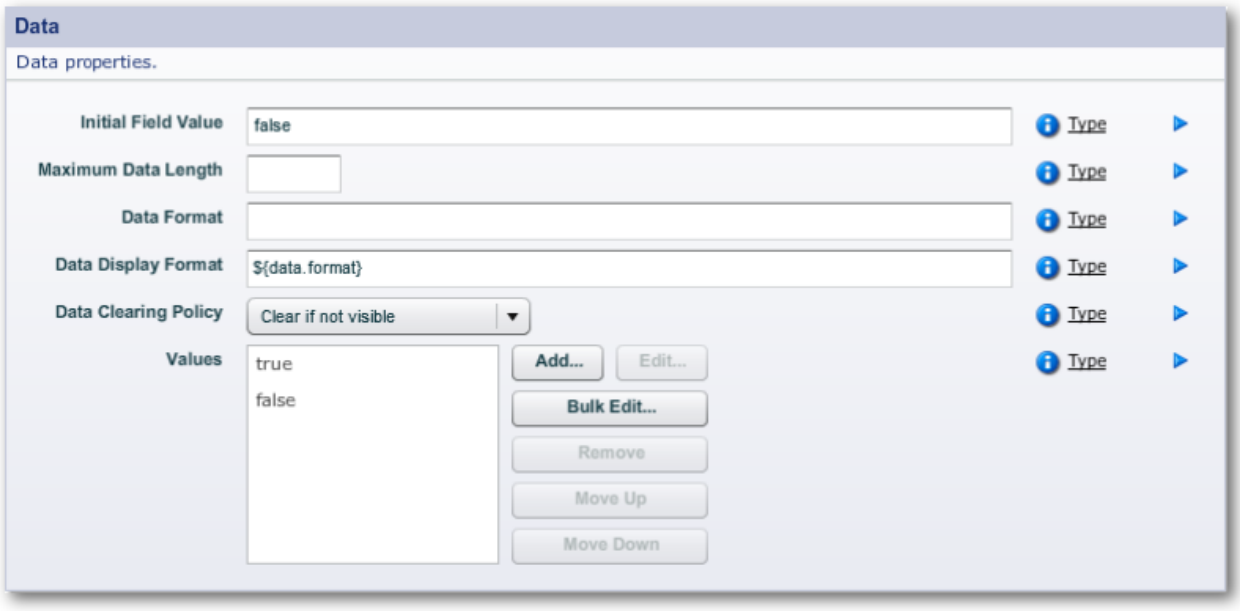
## Data Panel

The properties shown in both the Advanced and Standard Modes of the panel vary with the nature of the field. Here are some typical examples:


Data
Data properties.
Initial Field Value
Maximum Data Length
Data Format
Data Display Format
${data.format}
Data Clearing Policy
Clear if not visible
Limit Input to Visible Area [PDF]
Type

Data
Data properties.
Maximum Data Length
Data Format
Data Display Format
${data.format}
Linked Button Group
../buttonGroup
Browse
Clear
Form
Bound Value
$IF{$FIELD{RBTYPE,group},${name},true}
Type


Data
Data properties.
Initial Field Value
Data Format [PDF]
Display Format [PDF]
num{$zzz,zzz,zzz,zz9.99}
Data Clearing Policy
Clear if not visible
Limit Input to Visible Area [PDF]
Type


Data
Data properties.
Initial Field Value
false
Maximum Data Length
Data Format
Data Display Format
${data.format}
Data Clearing Policy
Clear if not visible
Values
true
false
Add...
Edit...
Bulk Edit...
Remove
Move Up
Move Down
Type

Some brief notes on the panel's fields (Advanced Mode):

**Initial Field Value**

Use this as an *ad hoc* way of repopulating the field. If you need to repopulate a number of fields from a database lookup or as a general configuration of the form, see hereforanexampleofhowthis is done. **Maximum Data Length**
This prevents the user from entering more characters into the field. If you want to do more than merely having the field stop working once the character limit is reached — such as warnings, in-line messages and other helpful cues to asssist users to get to submission — please see Validation.

**Data Format**

This is the **raw data** sent from the form and as stored in Transaction Manager. This property is often specified for PDF (in XFA data description specification).
The "${data.format}" is explained in ScriptingandDependencies.

**Data Display Format**

This can be different from the raw format, especially so with dates. See DataTypes.

**Data Clearing Policy**

An important factor in Privacy.

**Values**

Appears with fields that have several states, such as Boolean fields (see Field Types). These states can be named and given an order of precedence. The "Blulk Edit" button enables you to import a list of state names from a text file.

## Dropdown Data Panel

You use this panel to edit a dropdown menu field's values and displayed values. The displayed values appear in the menu on the form. For example, the form could, say, display "Northern Territories" in the dropdown; but when users select that value, the form passes the value "NT" to the TM server. The "${values}" entry means that all the values

equal the displayed values. See ScriptingandDependencies.

**Dropdown Data Panel (Advanced Mode)**

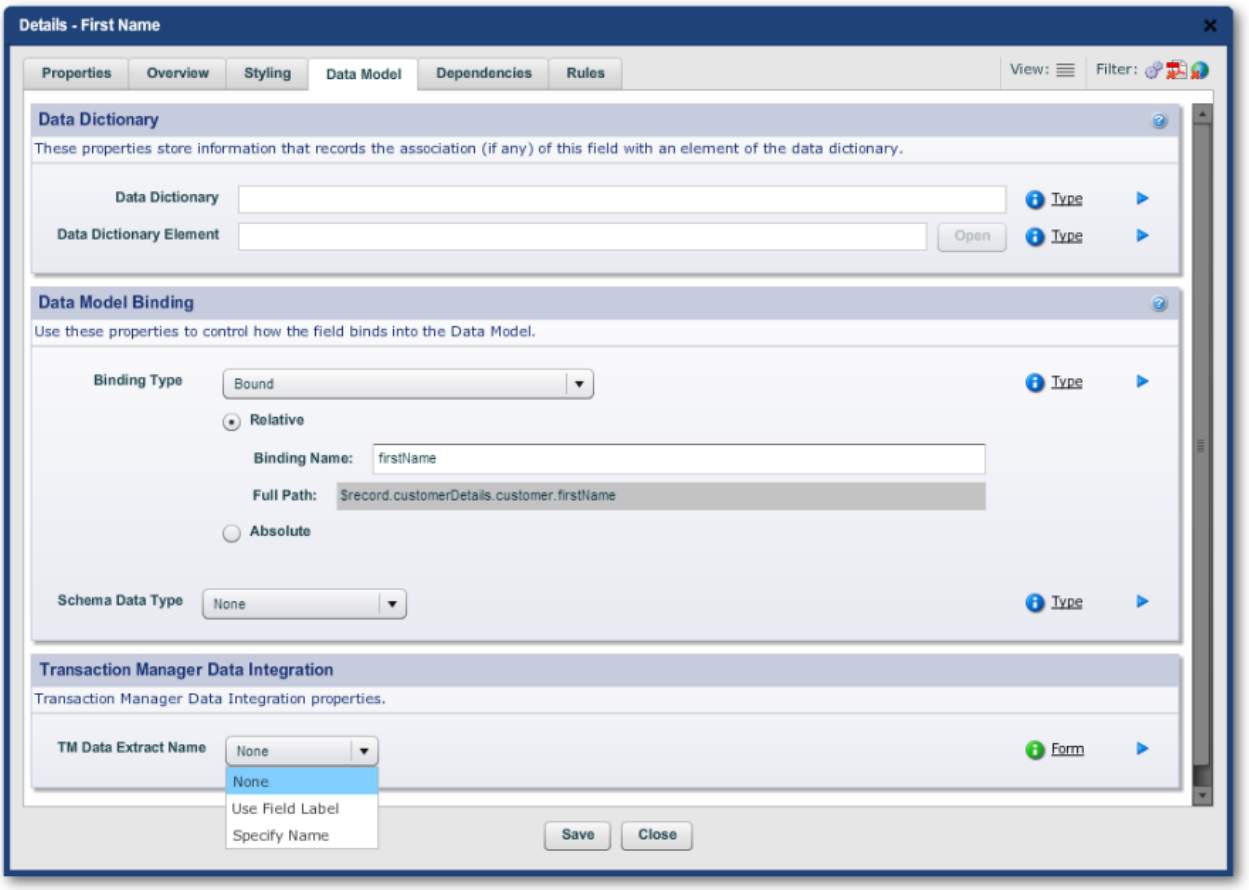
## Decimal Options Panel

This panel appears for writable numeric fields and are self-explanatory. In the example below, the field is a currency field and so the positive and negative prefixes have a dollar sign.

The two fields for leading and trailing digits have two properties each for HTML forms and unspecified form

types. The leading and trailing values should be the same for both form types.

## The Data Model Tab



# Scripting

## Overview of Scripting

A major advantage of using the Avoka Transact environment — rather than writing your forms from scratch in HTML, Javascript and other scripting languages and writing the server-side process — is that the bulk of the form's implementation is taken care of for you.

But this means that you still have enormous scope to specify how the form behaves and to inject scripts into the form. In this topic, we will discuss the general principals for scripting.

These are the ways to script in Composer:

- Where available there is a **Rule Editor**

This performs simple logic operations. This editor is rather limited.

- A point-and-click **ScriptEditor** window.

This is for Javascript scripts. The editor is far more capable, but requires a knowledge of Javascript.

- Writing a script yourself in a text editor

The covered in the advanced topic Scripting. These scripts can be complex.

## The Composer Scripting Language

In either case, the language used is JavaScript, but with slightly modified function calls, documentedhere.

### The Rules Tab

Scripts and Rules go in the Rules Tab. This has LH Menu items and depending, on the nature of the field, can have from none to 7. Here is an example of a Rules tab with a full LH Menu:

Within each panel there are several types of properties:
"Rule" properties "Policies" "Messages" "Actions"
and some checkboxes in, for example, "Mandatory" rules
and "Responsive Rulesets" which are exclusive to the Responsive Rules.

**"Rule" Properties**

This type of property has a dropdown menu:
Script Based (always available in all "Rules" properties) Rule Based (available in only some "Rules" properties
Always (available in "Editable Rules" and "Mandatory Rules") Never (available in "Editable Rules" and "Mandatory Rules") No Validation (only for "Validation Rules")
Regular Expression Pattern (only for "Validation Rules") for pasting in a regular expression for validation Fixed Length (only for "Validation Rules")
The "...based" items bring up an "Edit..." button, which takes you to the ruleseditor or script editor..

**"Policies"**

These are always dropdown menus and the choices are restricted to only those that appear in the menus.
The types of policy are:

**Editable Policy**

i.e. whether the field (or fields) and its children are writable or read-only
Determines what happens when the field is not editable according to the rule in the Edibility panel. Options:

- Disable and gray out text
- Disable

- Gray out

#### Editable Clearing Policy

for more, see Privacy.

#### Visibility Policy

- When hidden exclude from layout

(i.e. the hidden fields disappear entirely)

- When hidden don't exclude from layout (i.e. leave space for the hidden fields)
- When hidden gray out **Initial Visibility(Policy)**{}* seebelow.
- Visible
- Invisible

(i.e. the invisible fields are not excluded from the layout)

- Hidden

(i.e. the invisible fields do not appear and their allocated space in the form does not appear as a blank area)

#### Validation Policy

(see Validation as there is rather more to this than just the following 2 options)

- Show error dialog
- Not show error dialog

**Note:** The intent Initial Visibility settings is meant to speed up the initial rendering of the form. If the form is taking a long time to render, visibility rules and visibility policies may be the issues. You can sidestep these by setting the Initial Visibility policy for the relevant fields so that the form will render first up without having to test these rules and policies.

### Messages

These are text fields, whose contents are displayed when the rule type — usually "Mandatory" or "Validation"
— fails (though you also have the option of displaying the message if the rule passes instead).

### Actions

These are exclusive to "Click" LH Menu item. The Click panel only has the "Edit..." button for providing a script. The Rules editor is not available. The script will run only when the field (either a button or a link) is clicked on.

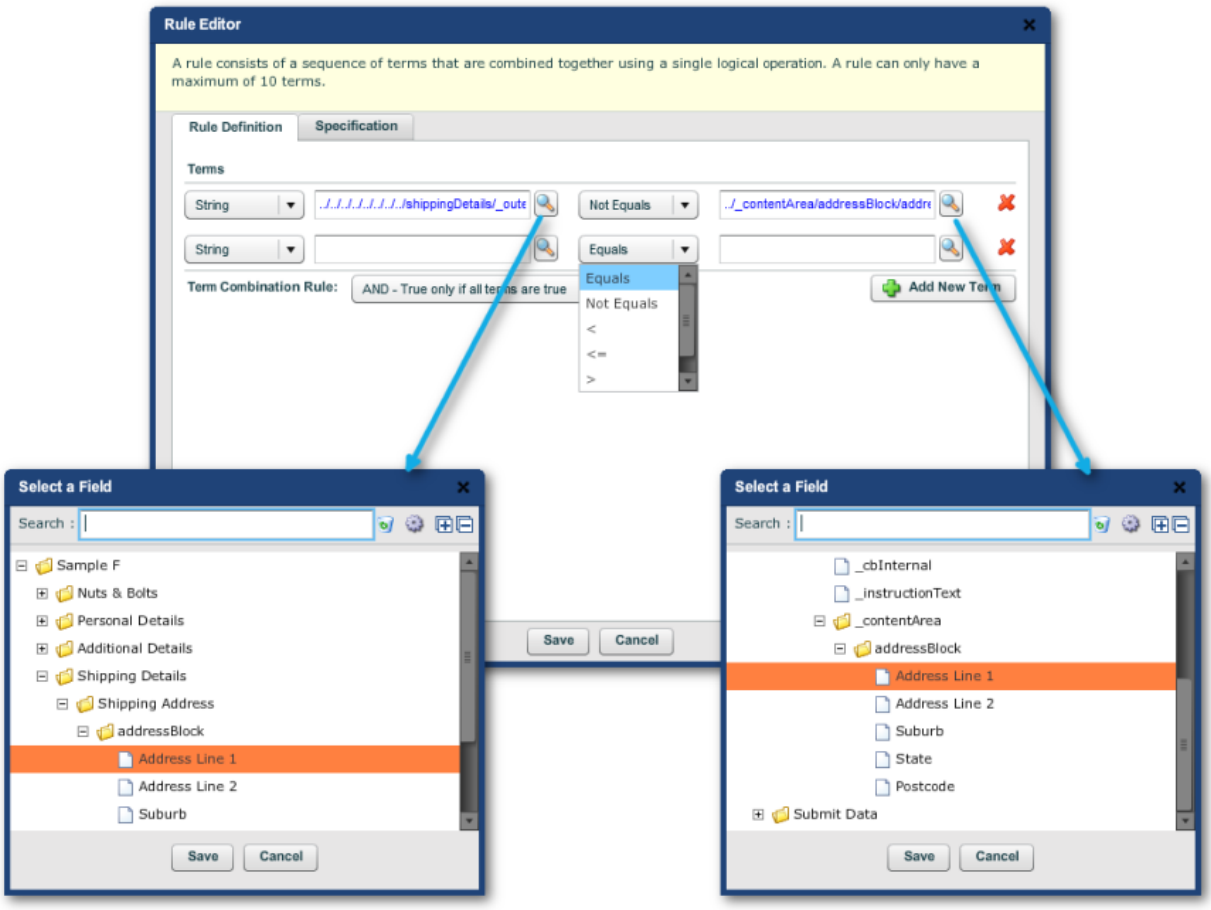
### Checkboxes

The checkboxes in the Rules tab panels are for simple either-or options, such as whether the mandatory asterisk will display for mandatory fields.

### Responsive Rulesets

These apply only to Responsive Layout settings for the field. See ResponsiveLayout for more on this.

## The Rule Editor




You build up a rule with the Rule Editor a "term" (or line in the editor) at a time with a maximum of 10 terms. Each term compares 2 fields on the form, which you select using

the two magnifying icons, each of which brings up a "Select a field" dialog containing a mini Structure Panel, as shown.

On the left-most column of each term, there is a dropdown in which you select whether the two fields in the term are strings, numerical or Boolean. Between the two fields is the relationship between the two: "Equals", "Not Equals", "<", "<=", ">" or ">=".

Add more terms as required and then select the relationship between all the terms. You can only nominate one relationship for all the terms. They are:

"AND", meaning that the rule is true only if all the terms are true "OR" where the rule is true only if all the terms are false.

The **Specification tab** is a text area where, if you

If you know something of Javascript, you can do far more with the Script Editor.

## The Script Editor

Using this editor requires some knowledge of JavaScript. In this section of the guide, we will only be using very simple sample scripts. The script editor facilitates integration of your JavaScript code with the fields on the form.

The script editor can accomplish much more than the Rule Editor;

Calculations such as summing the values of fields together, or multiplications, averages and so on Write more complex scripts involving "if" statements, loops and so on

In fact, virtually anything the JavaScript is capable of.

Just to be clear, though the scripting language of Composer is JavaScript with some minor differences. One of these allows Composer's JavaScript to use the fields in the form as variables. This makes Composer's scripting capabilities very powerful indeed.

More ground on this will be covered in Scripting in the Advanced Topics. For now, we will be content to just demonstrate how you use the editor to integrate a script into the form.

To make the editor work, you need some working knowledge of JavaScript. We have already given an example of a total in the footer of a table. That example is a sum of repeating elements. The following is a simple multiplication of two non-repeating fields, just to illustrate how scripting works in Composer on a simple level.

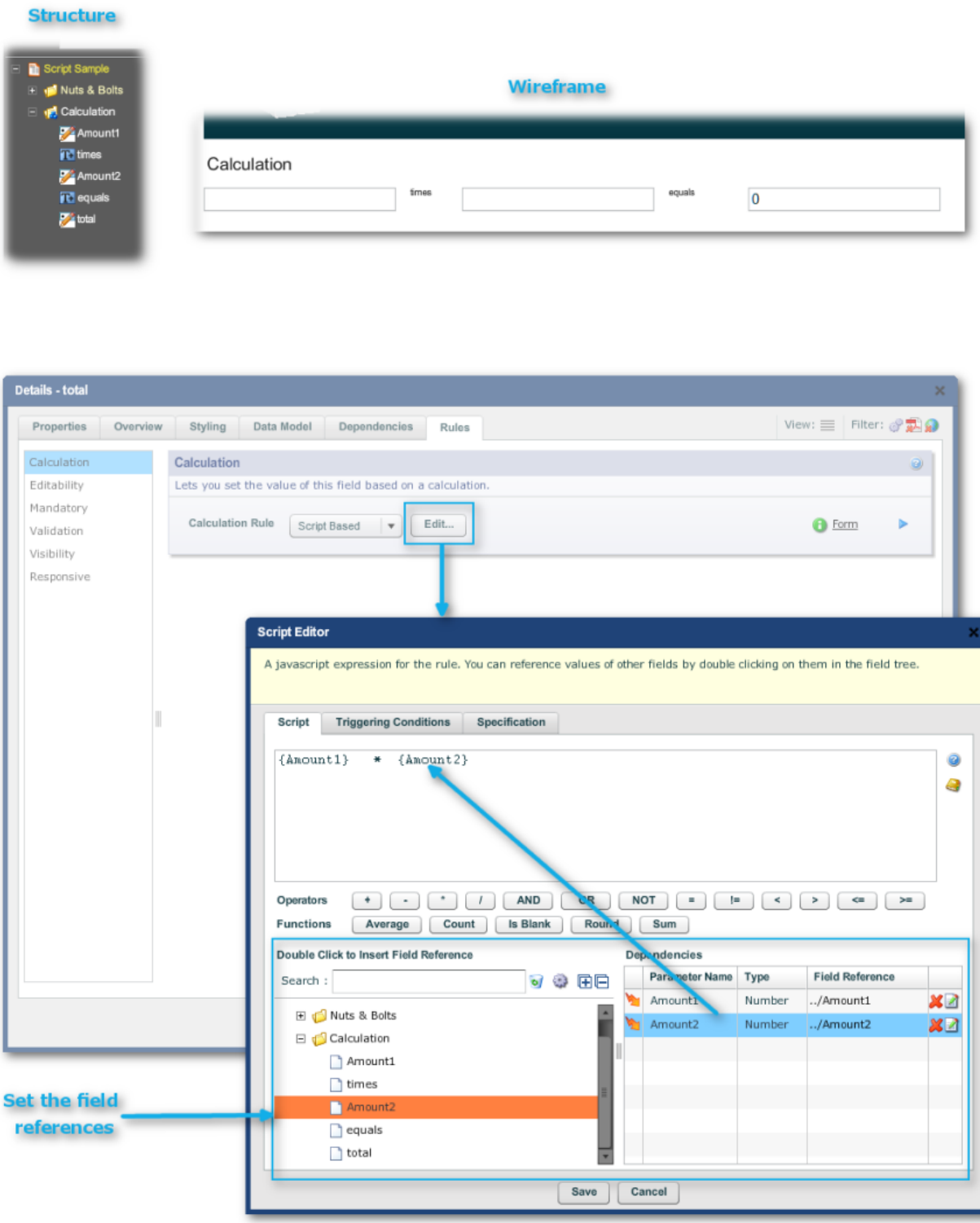
Here is a very simple form where we take the first writable field "Amount1" (a dollar value currency field) and multiply it by the second writeable field "Amount2" and display it in "total" a read-only currency field to the right.

We made a few tweaks to "Amount2" and "total" and the "times" and "equals" texts to get the layout as shown below in Edit Properties for each of these fields:

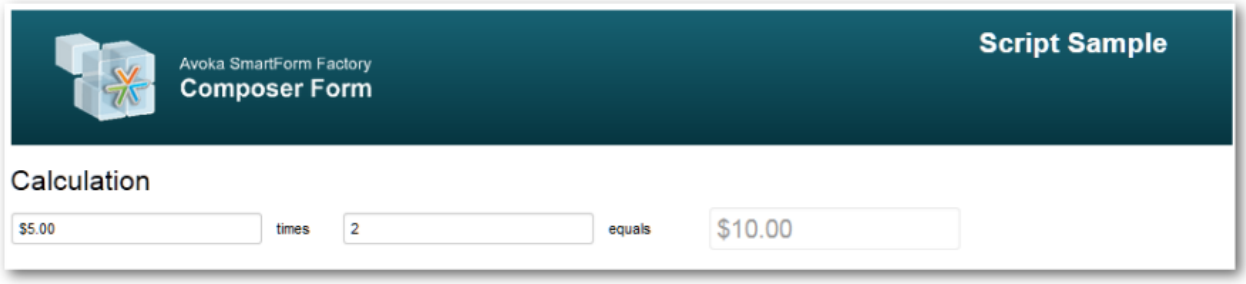
For all, "Properties -> Layout -> Layout Constraints -> Keep on same line (checked)"

For "total", we made it read-only by "Rules -> Editability -> Editablity Rule -> Never Editable"

We could have saved ourselves the trouble of changing each widget by creating a containing block of the 3 widgets and the plain text objects "times" and "equals" and then setting the Layout Constraints.



So, to see the calculation in action, we need to preview the form. Here is what it looks like after inputting a couple of arbitrary values into Amount1and Amount 2




The JavaScript in the example is only one line, which is the reason the line doesn't end in a semi-colon (";").

**The Specification Tab**

If want someone else on your team to do the scripting or work the Rules Editor, use the Specification tab to describe the behavior you require. That description will then attach to the field or block.

# Dependencies

## Overview

When a user loads a form, fills in its various sections, uploads any attachments and eventually submits it, the form has triggered many events, which Composer groups into "phases", covered in more detail in Business Rules and AdvancedScripting.

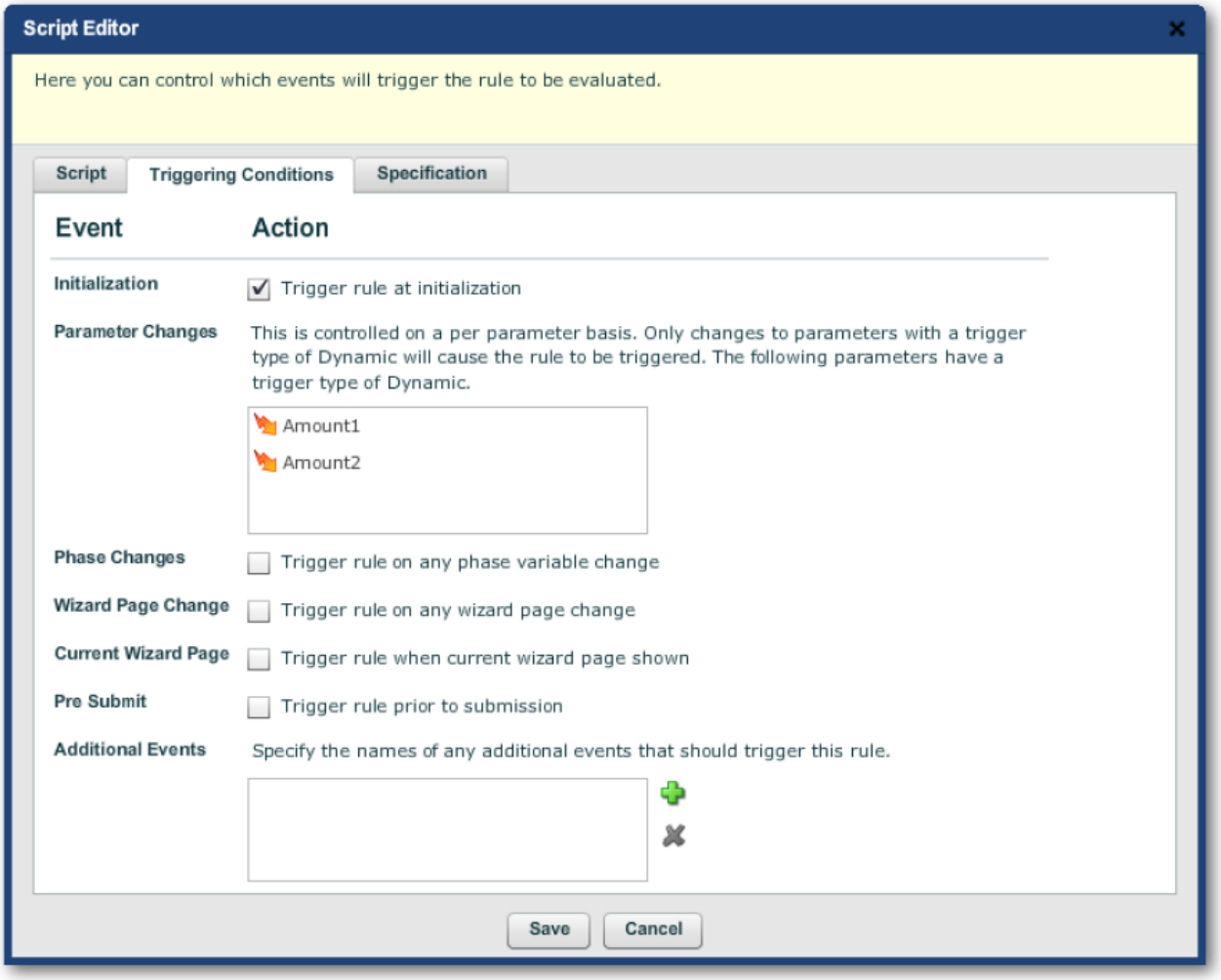
Some of these triggers are the dependencies between fields created by scripting. In the above simple example, the "total" field listens to "Amount1" and "Amount2" and when "total" sees that the other 2 now have values, it will calculate and display the value of the calculation. The user does not have to click on a special button to get the total, the form does not have to be reloaded, nor does the user's browser (in this case) have to send anything to the server in this phase. The calculation happens autonomously.

When a form is complex, though, having very many dependencies can create performance issues. Composer has many strategies to tune such forms. One of them is to tune the triggering in the form so that it does not grind to a halt every time the user changes a value in any of the fields. In Composer 4, for the first time, you can inspect triggers and dependencies on the form.

When you paste script into the text area of the Script Editor, remember that you still

have to associate the fields on the form, using the same point-and-click method shown above and setting the field references.

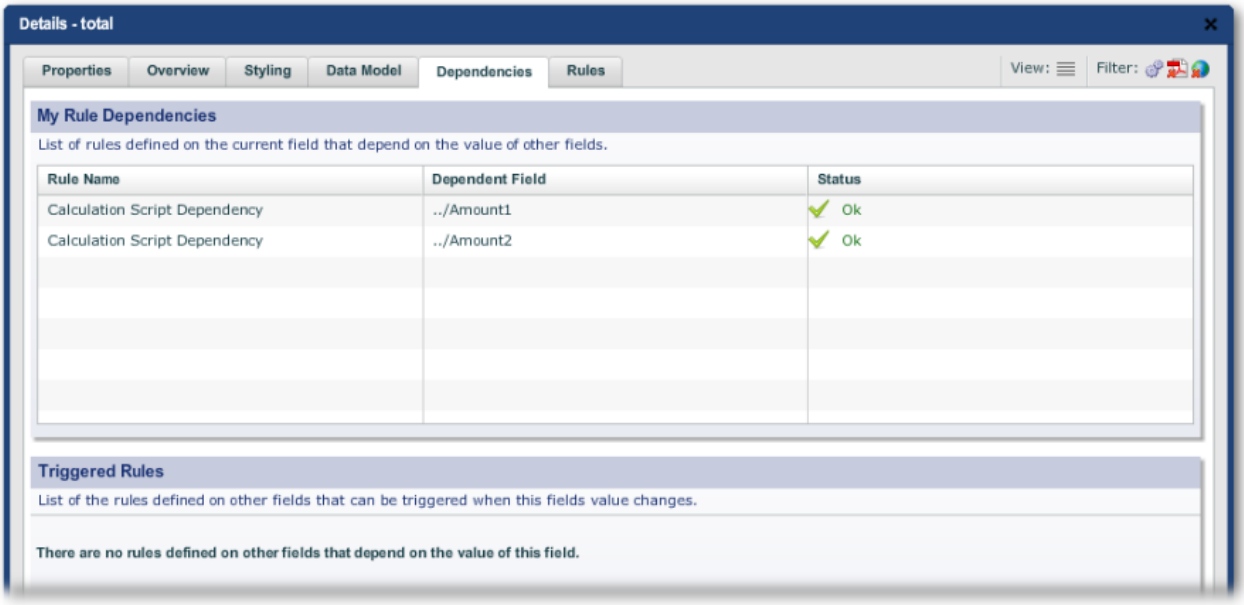
## Inspecting Triggers




The triggering conditions of the above simple demo script are listed in the "Triggering Conditions" tab of the Script Editor. We will discuss the advanced settings of the radio buttons in the lower half of the tab later in AdvancedScripting.

Additional events will be covered in the BusinessRules widget discussion.

## Inspecting Dependencies




Use "Edit Properties -> Dependencies" to inspect the **dependencies** feeding into the script (in the "My Rule Dependencies: panel) and the **outgoingtriggers** in the "Triggered Rules" panel.

# Preview & Publishing

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Already we have seen, with the simple examples above, that the wireframe's representation of the form does not image all the features of the form as it will appear to the end user, for example here,

So, while you are designing the form, you can do a preflight of it using Composer's Preview function.

And as with the appearance of the form, the Preview function does not fully reflect the behavior of the form in the real world with regards to attachments or in the Mobile App or in other parts of the form's workflow. To see these, you publish the form to Avoka Transaction Manager (or "TM").

## Renditions

In Composer you define a form — a data collection experience once, if you will — and have it rendered to look and function differently on different devices and environments.

Composer currently supports two core types of form technology (sometimes called "flavors"):

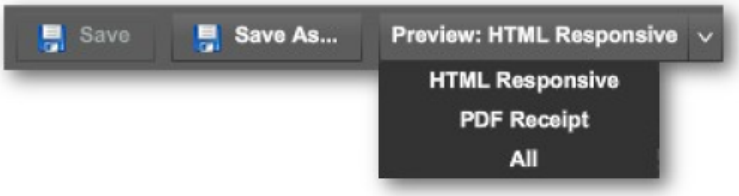
HTML forms using the HTML5 and CSS standards PDF forms using the Adobe XFA standard.

Thus the form often can be rendered in HTML5 and PDF. These days, the general practice is to have users fill out the form in HTML5 and, after submission, get a PDF rendering of the form in the email receipt. The Preview function in Composer has several rendition modes:

**HTML Responsive**. which uses HTML5 to render how the form will appear in the web browsers of mobile and desktop system.

**PDF Receipt,** uses the XFA standard and is non-interactive.

The Preview dropdown menu is at the top left of the FormDesigner.



(Some older templates give five choices, but now in Composer 4 all the HTML choices have responsive behavior. This is configurable on the form object in the structure panel, "Edit Properties -> Policies -> HTML Generation -> Responsive -> Form Generation (HTML)" dropdown.)

To preview in HTML5, just select **HTMLResponsive**. In modernbrowsers, the preview will render in a new tab. If the form does not render at all, you may have to change the your browser's opup behavior. For example, in Chrome, you can make the Composer hostname URL an exception to popups.

If you need to resize the preview to simulate mobile devices, just pull the tab out from the tab bar and, if necessary, take the resulting new window out of the full size mode. (Do this with the middle button on the top right of the frame in Windows; or with the green candy button on the top left of the Window in Mac OS X.) See the ResponsiveLayout section of this guide for more on mobile device simulation.

For PDF preview, you must set the browser's preferences to use Adobe Acrobat or its plugin. The reason for this is: all modern browsers have their own PDF renderers and these do not work with XFA.

## Publishing to TM

There are good reasons to publish your form to TM while the form is still in pre-production:

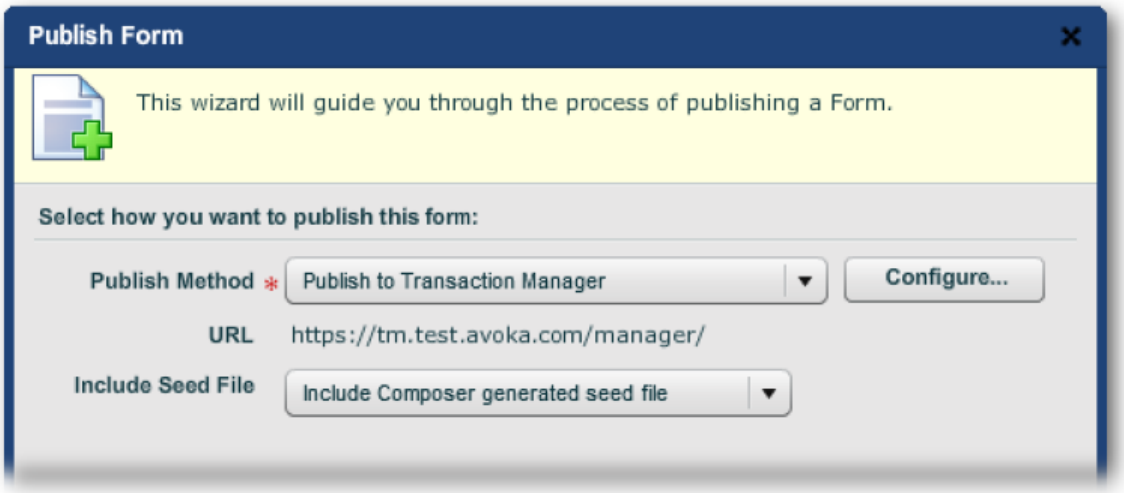
The behavior of the form in preview does not accommodate attachments Preview does not show the look of the form in the context of the portal Preview only simulates how the form will look on a mobile device

And the same applies for how the form will look in the MobileApp

You cannot test the behavior of Camera widgets and other use of the sensors of mobile devices

GPS locating is not available in Preview. GPS is available only in those mobile devices that support it. Without GPS, geolocation functions work only from IP address mapping, which is approximate only.

Publishing to TM is simple, and the wizard is accessed through the "Publish" button in the FormDesigner or at the Forms Level of theUI.




You have the choice of publishing the form directly to TM (via the URL shown below) or of generating a zip file and importing that manually to TM. Publishing directly is the more convenient.

The layout of a tablet form may also change based on the size of the tablet, and whether it's in landscape or portrait mode. This is not controlled directly by the skin, but is controlled within the form itself. Please see ResponsiveLayout.

Please consult the Transaction Manager Administration Guide on how to then publish the form to a web portal (or have a colleague with the required access do it for you). You then will be able to access the test form:

through a nominated portal, or

via the Mobile App, configured to point to a nominated mobile portal (see the Transact Mobile App Guide on how to point your instance of the Mobile App to that portal), or

through a URL created by TM in an approved mobile device web browser (see DeliverytoMobileDevices).

# Navigation

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The navigation methods to guide users through a form are of the utmost importance and deserve much thought when designing new business processes and the web forms that embody these.

In an ideal world, navigation through a form should be as convenient, intuitive and frictionless as possible. Achieving this is goal will always be a balance between the needs of the business and trying to provide the user as enjoyable an experience as possible.

So here, "Navigation" means more in interactive forms than providing "Previous" and "Next" buttons at the bottom of the page. It means more than providing menus and breadcrumbs. It means more than restricting the user's access to the form's pages to a fixed sequence. It means more than allowing the user to roam through the form at random. It means more than tailoring the form's layout to the range of devices that will be used to access it. It means more than providing menus, be they down the left hand side, along the top or, in a touch environment, brought up by swiping to the side.

Whatever the business function of a form, all forms ultimately must aim at having the user complete them through to submission. If the user abandons the form, that means a lost opportunity. And we can now see how many users access the form and how many of them advance to the submission stage and how many abandon the form (see Analytics).

## The Chrome of Navigation

" Chrome is the visual design elements that give users information about or commands to operate on the screen's content (as opposed to being part of that content). These design elements are provided by the underlying system — whether it be an operating system, a website, or an application — and surround the user's data."
— JakobNielsen

So, chrome informs users with clues about how to use the form. It is also not part of the form's data — the point of creating the form in the first place — and takes up valuable screen real estate. The smaller the screen, the greater the cost of chrome in terms of space.

But having only minimal chrome, adds friction to the form in that the user will have

fewer options to do such useful actions as going back several sections to correct some entry.

### The Simplest Chrome: None

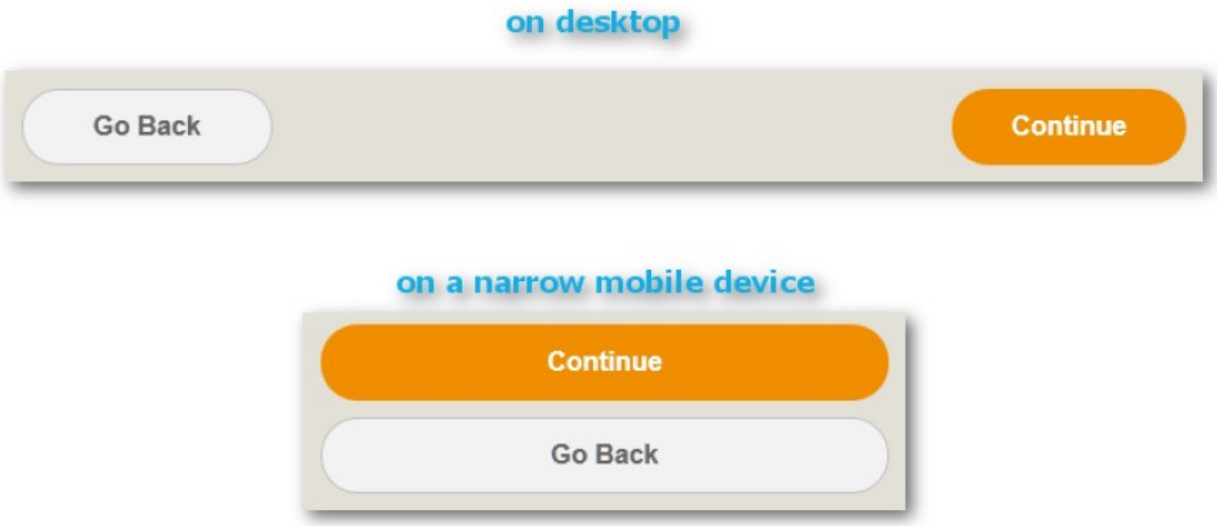
At least by this we mean that the form does not introduce its own chrome. However, the usual chrome that comes with the operating system and browser combination is present, and this chrome will not be perfect, even in such a mature use case as web browsing.

So, this means the designer is limited a single-page form, and the only way to navigate the form is to scroll the form in the browser's window. While that does not sound so bad at first, it is very limiting and, where there is a lot of information to be entered onto the form, leads to vertical clutter. It also leads to users getting confused if they have to make revisions. In order to find where to make the revision, users have to remember how far up or down they have to scroll to find the fields subject for change, or — even worse, use the browser's "Find" function. Thus, even with this, the simplest navigation scheme, there is friction, especially if the form is long and detailed.

And the designer cannot control how users move through the form. Some form elements, Sections for example, can collapse and expand. Other elements on the form can switch from being invisible to visible. But users can still skip to the end of the form, in anticipation of the "Submit" button being there, only to be disappointed when that button does not work because they have failed to fill in all the mandatory fields, or have entered invalid information somewhere up the form. See Validation for more.

### Button Navigation

This is slightly more helpful. But users can only step forward and back. This simple chrome uses up the bottom of the page (and may also be duplicated at the top, though many designers resist doing this). This does not amount to much space on the desktop, but in mobile — and especially on narrow smartphones in portrait orientation — that space becomes a large part of the available viewing area. And even more so, when the form is responsive and the two buttons spread out to accommodate the target areas needed for the touch interfaces.



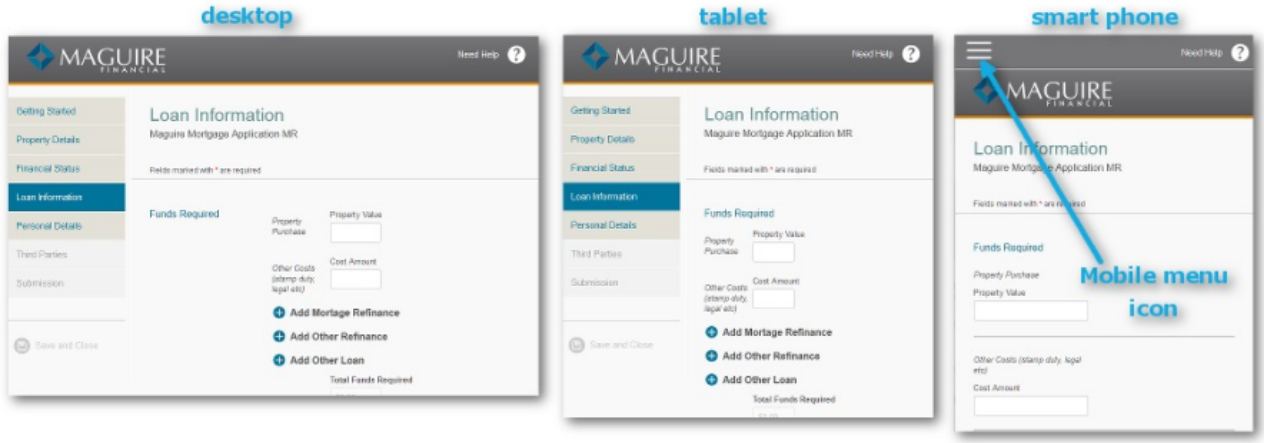

Such a simple concept, though, can suddenly become fraught. The above example has a simple color scheme: orange to move forward and white to go back. But what if users move back and then forget where they have been? Do we indicate whether users have viewed a page through a wider selection of colors? Probably not, because more than two colors have no intrinsic meaning. Users cannot experiment to discover the meanings assigned to colors (such as "already viewed", "yet to be viewed", "not allowed to view", "the last page" and "the first page") except by moving through the pages with the two buttons.

On the desktop, where the viewing area is the largest of any viewing environment. the vertical space occupied by the two buttons is small. But on a narrow mobile device (such as a smartphone in portrait mode), the responsive layout function of the form spreads the buttons out so that their tap area is large enough to be useful and stacks the 2 on top of each other. Both are done to minimize user frustration — a vital consideration in mobile.

**Note:** in the following examples, all mobile screen shots are either from Preview or in the mobiledevice's browser, not in the TransactFieldmobileapp.

## Left Hand Menus

These are a tried-and-true web design element.




The left hand menu shown above has 3 states (indicated by 3 combinations of text color and background color):

Current item, here "Loan Information" Other items, access allowed

Other items, access not yet allowed

The color coding scheme becomes obvious to users through their interactions with the menu. It does not need to be spelled out.

In terms of navigation and user experience, the left hand menu is a vast improvement on 2 button navigation:

Users get clues as to how much more work they have to do before they get to their goal: being able to submit the form.

They can see what is in store, from the labels of the menu items. They get to see where they have been.

If allowed (see NavigationChoices below), they can skip several pages.

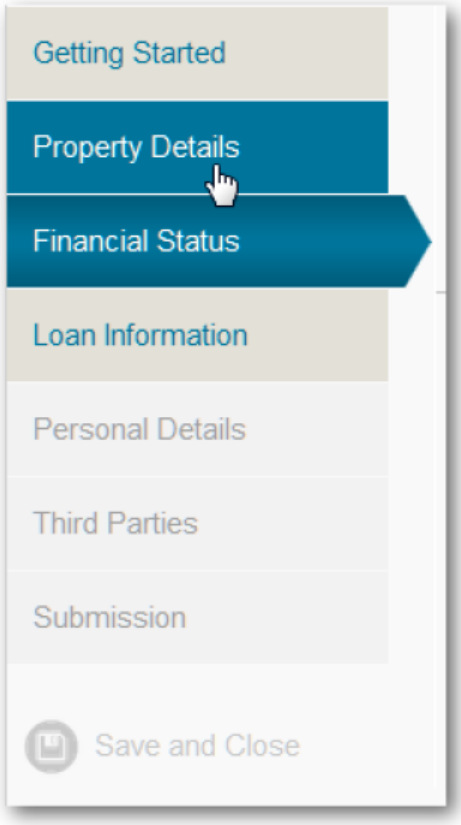
They can move several pages back in the form, without getting confused or forgetting where they were. So what are the down sides, given the menu's superiority over the 2 button scheme?

The space below the left hand menu is dead space. There are a few reasons why this dead space exists, mainly due to past limitations of HTML, and such reasons do not matter much any more. But the convention still exists and some usability gurus advocate it. The dead space is hardly an issue on the desktop. In fact, in the above example, the desktop has another level of deadspace (under the subheading "Funds Required"). The rendering on tablet-sized screens eliminates this second level of whitespace.

The menu buttons on mobile have to be large enough to prevent user frustration. But this makes the left hand menu unsuitable for very narrow devices such as smartphones

in portrait orientation. In the above example, the left hand menu disappears entirely, replaced by a typical mobile piece of chrome: the mobile menu icon, familiarly called "the hamburger icon".

Another variation on the left hand menu chrome:




This example has another state added to the 3 already encountered in the previous example: the hover state (as seen in "Property Details" where the user's mouse cursor is hovering over the menu item). Here, "hovering" means that users move their mouse cursor over an object but do not click on their mouse's button to select the object.

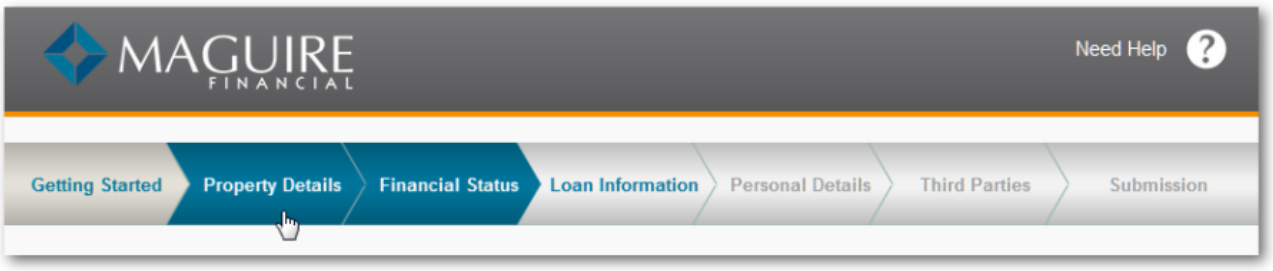
## LH Menu Variants (Unrecommended)

The left hand menu can have variants, but most of these have, in the light of experience, led down blind alleys.

Right-justified captions. Not recommended.

Fly out sub-menus. These have died a quiet death on the web as they demand too much manual dexterity from users.

## Top Menus




Top menus are now fashionable and with good reason. They work well on the desktop and with tablets and other wide mobile devices. They also eliminate the dead space of Left Hand menus. This example shows a 5- state top menu: note the differences backgrounds between "Getting Started" (i.e. already visited) and "Loan Information" (available but not yet visited). "Property Details" shows the hover state.

Hover does not exist in a mobile and touch environment. For mobile, hovering is no longer an option.

However, they do not work for narrow mobile devices. And you should keep the captions brief, as the captions begin to wrap for narrower screens. The solution is the same as the above example: the hamburger icon.

## 2- Level Menus

Avoka Technologies has given much thought to providing second-level menus to their forms. But we have rejected a large number of the existing solutions, MegaMenus, i.e. big 2-dimensional dropdown menus. These worked well on the desktop, but do not work in mobile due to their dependency on hovering (see TopMenus above).

Flyouts. Again, these are hover-dependent and therefore not an option for mobile.

The example above shows our current practise: "Shipping & Billing" has two subdivisions, shown in the chevrons below the main, topmost menu. Our tests show that these work well, both on the desktop and in mobile.

## Mobile Menu Chrome

This is the mobile solution to all the above navigation chrome, aside from the 2-button convention. The Mobile Menu Button is also known among developers as "the hamburger" icon.

Here on an iPhone 5s, the top menu appears in landscape; the Mobile Menu Button in portrait. Tapping on the Mobile Menu Icon causes the menu to slide out from the left. The menu has only 4 states because it lacks hover.

# Navigation Choices

Chrome is only part of the story. There are several more degrees of freedom to form navigation.

## Unconstrained vs Constrained

Unconstrained here means that users can select any item on the menu at their merest whim. This certainly removes friction but there is a possible down side: the lack of discipline imposed upon users could be a factor in their abandoning the form.

Constrained here means that users can only make a restricted set of menu choices at any one time in filling-in process. To encourage users to understand what is happening and where they stand in their data entry, the subtle coloring of the menu items is tacitly employed — without any tedious explanation. Users who "get it" will be happy; users who don't will also be happy in that they have not been burdened with the task of ploughing through some ma-rigmarole that is of absolutely no interest to them.

## Visible vs Hidden Navigation Choices

Hiding parts of the form is best done to convenience users, not to conceal aspects of the form because they are "unworthy" for whatever arbitrary reason.

So, you may have already noted that the headers of Sections in Composer forms have much that is hidden: the help text, for example. These hidden passages of the form are there to help users who may be struggling and need some assistance. Confident users do not want to see these, as wading through long, unneeded hand- holding text is off-putting and adds for them friction. But not having help for others will add friction for **them**.

Another use case of hiding parts of the form as with accordion wizards, where the sections of the form can expand or collapse (instead of being rendered as new pages). However, do bare in mind that users may not fill in some sections due to inattention — for example not realizing that they should expand some section.

Applying validation will catch this mistake, but you as a designer forfeit the trust of users for letting them down and leading their navigation through the form astray.

Hiding some parts of the form as a result of users choosing some option or another could also be something that eliminates friction for some users and therefore be a good thing.

### Validation, Errors and Navigation

There are good reasons for having validation and not allowing users to submit until one or more criteria are met. There are also good reasons why users get fed up with it. Remember: the more users successfully submit a form, the better. In that respect, the web is a popularity contest. The tension between creating friction or gaining the trust of users is not a paradox (a problem to be solved); it is a type of dilemma, where there several options, all correct in themselves, but where you as a designer have to decide what solution to adopt as a judgment call.

Error blocks and validation messages are good to have, but remember the friction they create and that they will win you no popularity.

## Abandonment

Abandoned forms are a fact of life in online interactions. We have done our best to give you the tools to achieve reasonable user navigation and hopefully to reduce the percentage of abandoned forms.

To that end, we have introduced to Composer 4 templates capable of detecting where abandonment occurs in the form filling process. This data is then accessed through TM. Note though that there are privacy implications.

## Portal Chrome

Avoka Technologies strongly recommends that forms do not appear embedded in the portal page of your enterprise. One common problem is that the portal itself is not responsive and thus the form contained within it will not display properly on a mobile device. Instead, we recommend that:

the form take up the whole browser window (similar in effect to the a href tag's parameter

target="_parent" in html)

is not be rendered in a separate window or tab (as seen, for example, with target="_blank")

so, as a corollary, there should not be breadcrumbs on the form, especially those that lead back to the portal's home landi

# Sections

## Introduction

In previous versions of Composer, navigation was implemented in forms through the wizard settings of the form and the section fields in the Structure Panel. Sections could be organized into three levels. Each section had an elaborate header which included collapsible Help, and various other user aids; sections also had footers.
The content was between the two.

So, using Sections to divide the form brings the following advantages:
Sections have chrome associated with them, such as headers, footers, collapsible help and inclusion in the navigation menus.
So, all this associated chrome will be consistent throughout the form. Changes to the chrome can also be (if desired) applied globally
Constrained and Unconstrained menu navigation is controlled through Sections
Section styling is professionally designed, including margins, fonts, and colors, to provide an attractive form Section styling is controlled via stylesheets. Change the stylesheet to subtly or radically change the look of your form.

In Composer 4, the navigation menus (shown above) are more powerful than in older version. To accomodate the new menu functions, there is a break from the older way of setting section levels (as embodied in the Section Assistant shown below) and the new way. Also, now there are many more "Edit Properties" settings for sections that control these new menus. The older section levels and the older style of menus are still present in the product to retain compatibility with legacy designs.
So, we will first discuss the older navigation functions through Wizard settings. Then, we will move on to the new ways of configuring navigation.
The headersandfooters of sections contain many important elements of sections, such as the numbering of sections, the help and more.

## Maguire Template

Some of the section navigation behaviors are embodied in the template. This advanced topic is covered in Templates below.
The mobile menu is a feature of MaGuire (see Templates for an example of this template).

## Adding a Section

The following applies equally to all templates, including Maguire.
A Section is really a specialized type of block, which uses features of blocks, including having children and hiding sub-blocks within it.
A convenient way of creating sections is to use the Section Assistant and its wizard.

**The Section Assistant wizard.**

### Section Levels

In the older versions of Composer, there are three levels of sections provided in the Palette: Levels 1, 2 and 3. This scheme is retained in Composer 4 for compatibility, but we will discuss below the newer way of organising Sections.
The style of each level can be controlled independently.
These older style of Sections Levels must always be correctly nested within each other — Level 1at the top, with Level 2 indented one level below, and Level 3 indented inside Level 2. If you nest your sections incorrectly, then your form may look strange. If this happens, simply nest the sections correctly. There is no requirement to use Sections or all the available section levels, although most forms use at least one Section Level 1.
In previous versions of Composer, Level 1sections are the main wizard pages. This has changed with Composer 4.

## Maguire's Use of Sections

Instead of using Section Levels, Composer 4 now uses Section Groups to organize the menu items into a 2- level navigation scheme.

## Maguire Template use of Level 2 Sections

We recommend that each Level 1section in the Maguire template have **at least 1** Level 2 section. This is **not** for inclusion in the navigation menu; the Maguire template makes use of Level 2 sections for optimum layout. The content of each Level 1section should be distributed among several Level 2 sections. T

### Wizards

In older Composer versions, the whole form was set to be a Wizard, a Wizard with a menu, or not a Wizard at

all,

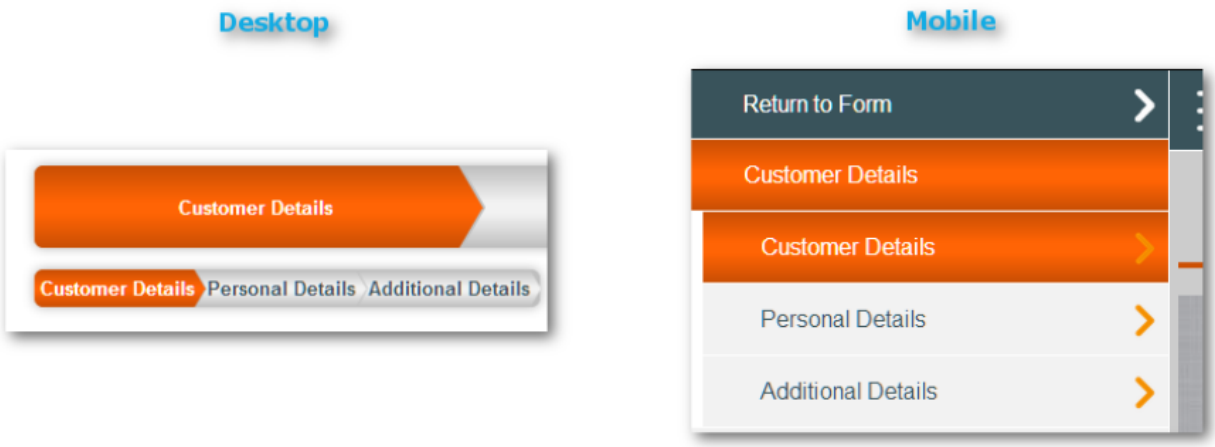
Now, individual sections can set to act as Wizard pages in the Wizard Panel. And, independently, a section can also be set to become a menu item or not.

"Edit Properties -> Properties -> Wizard -> Wizard -> Act as wizard page (checkbox)"

"Edit Properties -> Properties -> Wizard -> Wizard -> Create Wizard Menu Entry (checkbox)" "Properties -> Wizard -> Wizard -> Add to Navigation Menu (checkbox)"

So, if you opt for having a page not act as a wizard page, it will be appended under the previous page; if you still make it create a wizard entry and add to the navigation menu, the section will still appear in the menu, despite not being a separate page.

**2-Level Navigation**



#### MaGuire template top 2-level menu

Now, all Sections in the form menu are Section Level 1(see Adding a Sectiom), irrespective of whether they are top level items or second level items in the navigation menu. A section's menu level is now determined by the property
"Properties -> Wizard -> Wizard -> Section Group Name"
**Top Level menuitems** now belong to their default group (i.e. "${section.heading}")
**Second Level Items** now are grouped according to their top level menu item's name.
With the menu shown above:
"Customer Details" belongs to the section group "${section.heading}"
"Personal Details" & "Additional Details" both are made to belong to section group "Customer Details".
Also, they are both have the setting "Properties -> Wizard -> Wizard -> Add to Navigation Menu (checkbox)" as checked.
**Note:** Though 2-level navigation is not exclusive to Maguire, the Chevron format of the top menu (shown immediately above) and the slider ,mobile menu are Maguire features.

## The Navigation Menu in Composer

#### Features common to all templates

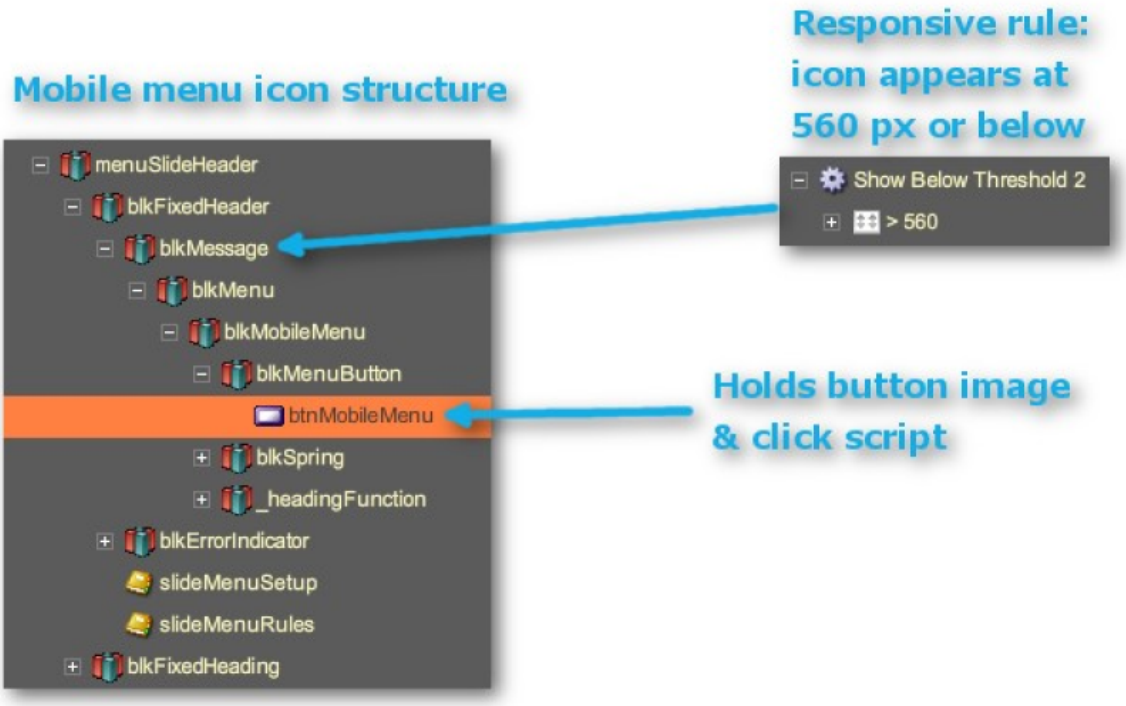
Properties to configure the appearance of navigation menu states (discussed in LHMenus above)
On the form object at the top of the structure panel tree, "Edit Properties -> Theme -> Menu ->" and then these panels:

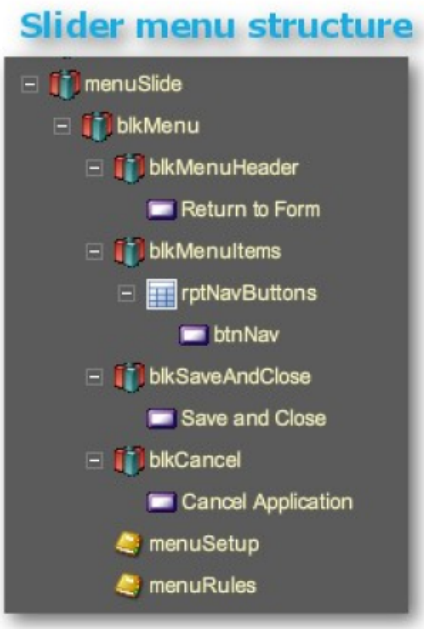
- "Menu Entry"
- "Menu Entry - Active"
- "Menu Entry - Disabled"
- "Menu Entry - Enabled"
- "Menu Entry - Hover"
- "Menu Entry - Visited"

**Maguire Exclusive Features**

Mobile menu navigation for narrow mobile devices

Illustration of the structure behind themobilemenuseeninNavigation.




The Maguire navigation menu does not render in wireframe

To view it, you must preview the form, where you can also see the different

responsivelayouts of the menu.

# Headers and Footers

## The Simple Approach

Composer 4, and the older versions of Composer, use the "Edit Properties" of the section objects in the structure panel to configure the sections. This approach is useful for prototyping and proof and concept. It will even work for mobile devices, despite its limitations.

You use 4 panels to control the section objects with the simple approach:

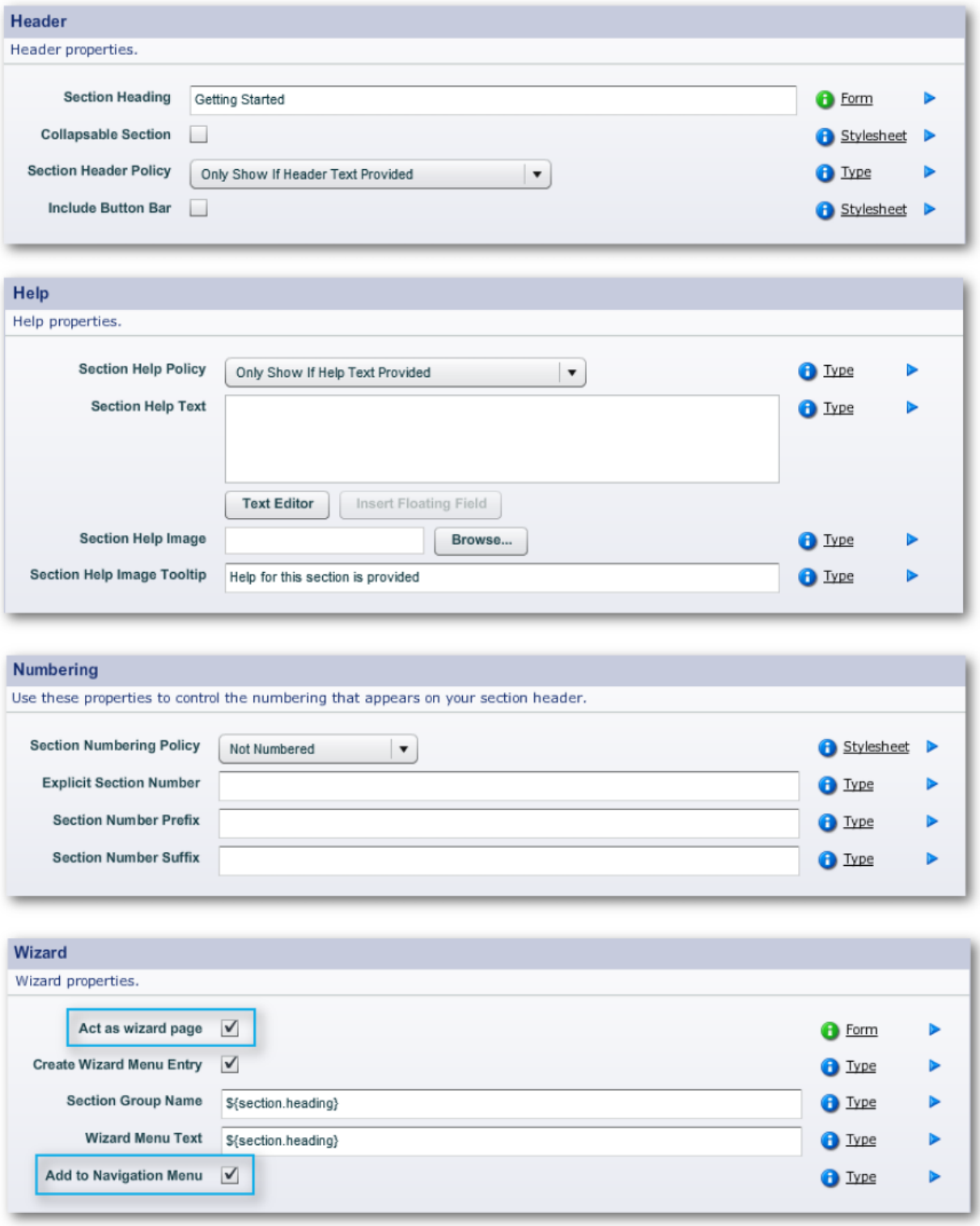
Properties -> Section Header -> Header Properties -> Section Help -> Help

Properties -> Section Numbering -> Numbering

**Note:** these numbers only appear in form menus controlled by the Wizard panel. They do not appear in Maguire-style navigation menus.

Properties -> Wizard -> Wizard

**Note:** this panel controls whether the section appears in the (Maguire-style) navigation menu and whether it behaves as a wizard page. In Composer 4, forms can now have some Level 1sections behaving as wizard pages, while other Level 1sections may not. In earlier versions of Composer, the whole form either was a wizard or not.



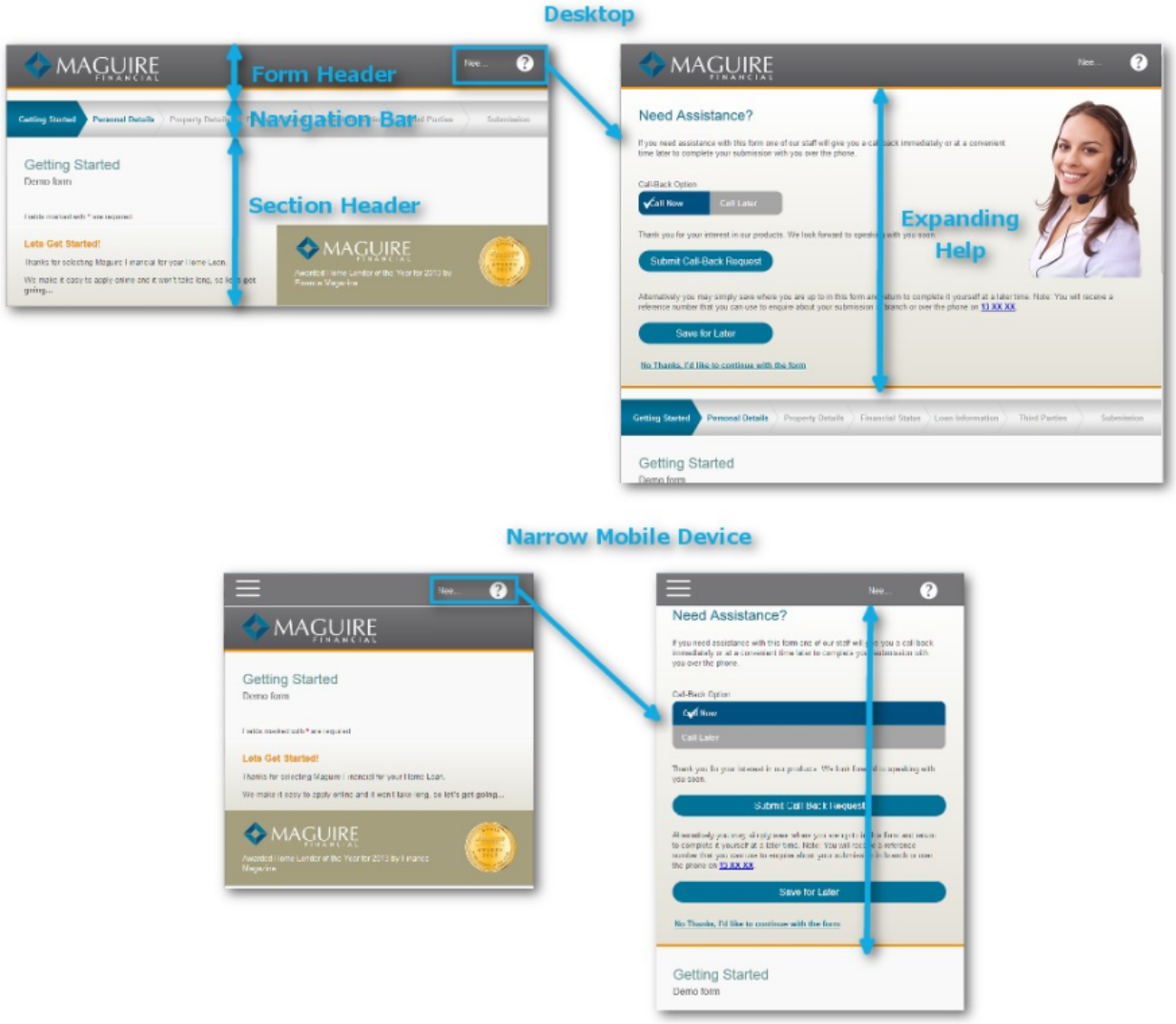

The 2 properties highlighted in the above image of the Wizard Panel support the Maguire-style Navigation. Make sure they are checked when you create a new section in a Maguire-style template.

## The Modern Approach

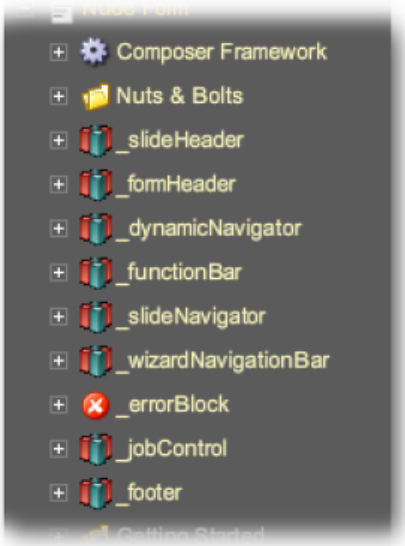
### Maguire-style Navigation

The whole approach in Composer 4 and the Maguire style of template is diffewrent from that of the earlier versions of Composer.

The earlier approach was to have the help passages of the form associated with each section of the form. Now, the Maguire style has an overall form header with global help content across the whole form, as part of Composer's responsive layout navigation strategy.




All these features are controlled in the Structure Panel through the following blocks and their contained objects, most of which are visible only in the Advanced Mode of the Structure Panel..




These blocks expand into a large number of contained elements and it is beyond the scope of the this guide to document every aspect of this structure. By all means, explore these blocks to see how the Maguire navigation structure is built up and edited.

## Footers

Here, we mention footers only in passing. In the Structure of the form, footer blocks come under the Advanced Mode. There is a global footer block for the form, which is defined in the block's "Edit Properties -> Layout -> Layout Constraints -> Layout Data -> South". Also, each Section has a footer block defined in the Advanced Mode Structure as *Some Section* -> Outer Area -> Footer Area.
In the abovescreengrab, the global footer of the Maguire-style sample is "Transact Footer".

## Recolor and Hide on Print

Re-color is a separate facility to the concept of a separate Receipt renditions (see PreviewandPublishing) for printing. In general, we recommend the use of Receipt renditions rather than Re-color on Print.

Most of Avoka's standard Section styles make use of colored backgrounds, with fields having white backgrounds. Studies show that this is best practice in terms of look and usability. (It is also possible to create style-sheets with a more "plain" appearance - please contact Avoka if you would like to explore this option for your organization's forms.)

However; many organizations and individuals still utilize black and white printers, or wish to conserve the amount of ink used for printing forms. Large "swashes" of color do not satisfy this goal, and also do not fax very well. Therefore, most of our sections have the ability to "Re-color on Print", found in "Edit Properties -> Properties -> Printing".

"Re-color on Print" means that when the user clicks the print button in Adobe Reader, the form will "morph" to a more printer-friendly black-on-white look, and then morph back again once printing is complete. This behavior can be controlled via a property on the sections. Note that some widgets (such as Images) will not observe re- color on print, and will print in color if available.

Re-color on print only applies to PDF forms and PDF receipts.

A related property allows particular objects to be hidden when the form is printed, "Edit Properties ->:Properties

-> Printing -> Visibility on Print [PDF]". You can explicitly set this property on blocks if you want their contents to be hidden on print.

# Layout

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Just as the concept of form navigation has changed now that users will be interacting with your forms on a variety of devices, where formerly you could have been certain that they would only be using a desktop computer or laptop. Indeed, we now group laptops with desk-bound computers and call them collectively "the desktop". The important distinction is that "the desktop" is now characterized by a large monitor and a pointing device (either a mouse or a trackpad).

Mobile devices have restricted screen space and the user interacts with them through a touch interface. See Devices vs Desktop for more.

As a result, LegacyLayouts now are a thing of the past. What worked in hard copy will probably no longer work on a smartphone.

This early parts of this section of the Composer 4 Guide explores these issues a little. The section ends with ResponsiveLayout.

Also, forms these days will be consumed more in HTML rather than as PDF. User expect this. In fact waiting for a PDF form to load, which often take much longer than the HTML version of a form, is more unwanted friction for the user.

## Legacy Layouts

### Overview

There are several different factors to consider when laying out a form. We encourage you to think carefully about your goals, rather than trying to lay out a form to match an existing paper form.

| Goal | Suggestions |
| --- | --- |
| Correct form layout on multiple devices, with differing widths and screen real estate, or switching from portrait to landscape mode. | Keep your layout as simple as possible. Avoid fixed width fields<br>Use vertical layout managers. Use Layout-Fill.<br>Avoid fixed width fields. |
| Useability, as much as possible, with grouping of related fields together. | Use vertical layout managers, with keep-on-same-line to keep related fields on the same line. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | For more control, use horizontal layout managers for each line, within an overall vertical layout. |
| Both PDF and HTML. | In general, design first for HTML, and then preview in PDF and adjust as necessary. |
| | Composer is not designed to make use of every bit of whitespace. |
| | Usability studies show that whitespace in a form greatly improves readablity and usability. |
| | Disable all interactive features, including hide/show logic. Expand multi-line text fields, |
| Fitting the form onto a single page (no matter how big the form is). | section help, expandable tables and repeats. |
| | There is no cost for an electronic forms to have multiple pages. In fact, multiple pages save money by increasing usability. |
| | If a form is ultimately going to press, consider having two different form designs: one optimized for interactivity, the other for receipt or print. |
| | Use horizontal layouts, grid layouts, and fixed width fields as necessary. Use caption left where necessary. |
| | Make the desktop HTML a fixed page width. |
| Mimicking an existing paper form. | (This is the default for desktop HTML.) |
| | Don't try to make your form identical to the paper form. Remember, you want a better user experience for your users, and that means having design changes. |

| **Goal** | **Suggestions** |
|---|---|
| Replicating an existing paper form as a "pixel perfect" copy. | You cannot create pixel-perfect copies of existing forms with Composer. If you require pixel-perfect forms, you should consider creating a separate receipt form.<br>o |

**Note:** Transaction Manager can be configured to support a separate form for the receipt and for the interactive form.

**Keep it simple**

Keep your layout as simple as possible. More complex layouts become extremely challenging. Keep it simple, unless you have very specific requirements.

**Let Composer do the work**

Composer's Layout Managers do the fields alignment and uniform sizing, based on your organizational template and style-sheets. Better to let Composer do the work, rather than struggling with Composer for the sake of a particular look.

## Use Percentages, not Fixed Width layouts

You don't know how big your user's screen will be. Try not to make too many assumptions about widths, and let Composer do the work of layout out your form.

## Use Field Styling

You can use Advanced mode in the property editor to explicitly set field widths in pixels, mm, or inches, known as "magic numbers". Sometimes this may be necessary, but this introduces two problems:

Every form designer needs to remember these "magic numbers" to achieve consistency.

If you need to change some aspect of the layout, you need to modify each field independently.

Composer allows you to define standard fixed width field sizes such as Small, Medium and Large in your stylesheets (see FieldStyling). The advantage of these named sizes is that there is nothing to remember, and if you need to change them, you can simply adjust the style-sheet. A good rule of thumb is that these sizes should all be multiples of each other so that combinations of smaller and larger fields all line up.

## Checkboxes and Radio Buttons

It can be very useful to use a Grid Layout for groups of checkboxes and radio buttons. Use the same number of grid cells for every set of radio buttons or checkboxes on your form, so that they all line up correctly. Use spans for captions that are very long. We recommend 4 to simplify responsive layout, although this is your preference. Please see

the Grid Layout topic on this for details.
Please note that the grid layout is not ideal if you want your form to lay out correctly on narrow screens like smartphones.

## Units and usage tips

Sometimes it is necessary to put units or other tips on a form. For example "miles" for a measurement of distance, or "MM/DD/YY" as a tip for the format for a date field. You can use a Plain Text or Rich Text field for this purpose, but often its difficult to get the text to line up correctly with the field itself, particularly with Caption Top fields.
Composer has a special Label Field that always ensures that the label is aligned with the Text Field that can be used for this purpose.

## Caption Top or Caption Left

We generally recommend Caption Top, for a number of reasons. This is summarized here: {+}http://+www.avoka.com/composerblog/2011/10/form-design-tip-caption-top/

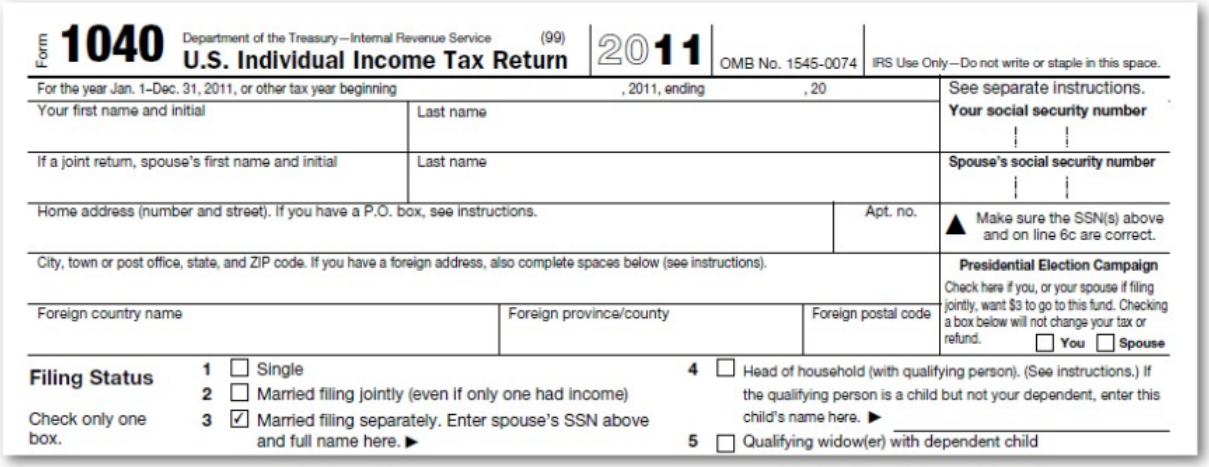
## Mixing Checkboxes or Radio Buttons with Textfields on a line

If you mix Text Fields with Radio Buttons or Checkboxes on the same line, you often get results where the resulting layout looks bad. This is because Radio Buttons and Checkboxes, by default, have their caption on the same line, while Text Fields (for most Composer stylesheets) have Caption Top.

There are a number of simple ways of solving this problem.
Remove the caption by clearing the Label value, or by checking the advanced property Properties -> Caption
-> Caption Content -> Never Show Caption. This effectively associates the caption on the Other radio button as the implicit caption for the text field.
Set the "Properties -> Caption -> Caption Presentation -> Caption Placement" on the Text Field to "Left". Place the Other Text Field on the next line.

## Boxy Layout

Many paper forms designed for the US Government use a style known as "Boxy". Here is an example of this style:



Form **1040** Department of the Treasury—Internal Revenue Service (99) **U.S. Individual Income Tax Return** 2011 OMB No. 1545-0074 IRS Use Only—Do not write or staple in this space.

For the year Jan. 1–Dec. 31, 2011, or other tax year beginning , 2011, ending , 20 — See separate instructions.

Your first name and initial | Last name | Your social security number

If a joint return, spouse's first name and initial | Last name | Spouse's social security number

Home address (number and street). If you have a P.O. box, see instructions. | Apt. no. | ▲ Make sure the SSN(s) above and on line 6c are correct.

City, town or post office, state, and ZIP code. If you have a foreign address, also complete spaces below (see instructions). | **Presidential Election Campaign** Check here if you, or your spouse if filing jointly, want $3 to go to this fund. Checking a box below will not change your tax or refund. ☐ You ☐ Spouse

Foreign country name | Foreign province/county | Foreign postal code

**Filing Status** Check only one box.

1 ☐ Single
2 ☐ Married filing jointly (even if only one had income)
3 ☑ Married filing separately. Enter spouse's SSN above and full name here. ▶
4 ☐ Head of household (with qualifying person). (See instructions.) If the qualifying person is a child but not your dependent, enter this child's name here. ▶
5 ☐ Qualifying widow(er) with dependent child

**An example of a Boxy layout**

This layout was designed around half a century ago, when it had some advantages for form-designers who created these forms using simple typographic tools, and the printers who printed them. It has serious disadvantages in the modern world, which include:

The layout is often very cramped, and is designed to cram as many fields on the form as possible to reduce printing and handling costs. There is no need for electronic forms to have this restriction, and the value of white space within a form to aid in usability are well documented. Usability studies have shown that this approach creates a large number of problems, including customers having difficulty understanding the form, missing data, and difficulty for those reviewing the form to find the information they need.

Inline help needs to be very concise, and so help is often either terse and difficult to understand, or provided in a separate document. Electronic forms do not suffer from this restriction.

The layout is extremely difficult to maintain. The addition of a single field or changing of even a single word on the form can result in large portions of the form needing to be re-designed and re-positioned.

The fields themselves are difficult to locate on the form, as they don't really stand out from the surrounding text.

Even for handwritten forms, the caption text gets in the way of the area for writing, and

often leads to cramped writing which is more difficult to read.

There is no possibility of using hide/show logic or repeating sections in the form, because the entire form is so tightly structured. The 1040 form only allows for four dependents, and has special instructions for applicants with more than four dependents.

Getting fields to line up correctly can be very challenging, particularly in the presence of column-spans and row-spans.

This format is often unsuitable for capturing electronically and feeding into backend systems, because often multiple logical fields are compressed into a single line. For example, in the above example the "city, town or post office, state and zip code" are all combined into a single field. This is easy for a human to read, but quite difficult to split into separate fields to upload into a back-end database.

This style is particularly unsuitable for re-flowing onto different screen sizes, because the fields have very fixed widths and positions, and any attempt to reflow them causes the entire form to loose its visual integrity.

There is generally little consistency within these forms, because they are completely hand created, and often tweaked many times over a long period. The sample above uses text of various different fonts, different techniques for displaying help text, and different styles of heading.

The result of trying to maintain electronic forms in the Boxy style is:

Confused and unhappy users due to low usability

Unsatisfactory forms on tablets or smartphones

Frustrated form developers and high maintenance costs.

It is possible to create Boxy style forms in Composer by creating fields with outer borders, and ensuring that at least one field on each line is set to Horizontal Fill (or other techniques), but, this is a challenge. We generally recommend that it be avoided.

We suggest the following approach:

Use one of Composer's existing stylesheets as the basis for your own organizational stylesheet. This ensures that your forms look and function well on all types of devices including tablets, and on multiple screen sizes, as well as allowing you to make use of advanced features such as hide/show logic, repeating sections, and intuitively laid out forms.

If there is a need to produce a printed or electronic form that is exactly the same as an existing paper form, import the existing form into LiveCycle Designer as artwork, add overlay fields, and use this form as the receipt in Transaction Manager. You will need to bind the fields in the artwork form to the same XML Schema that is used and produced

by Composer, and then all the fields will simply flow across from the interactive form to the receipt. The artwork form is generally quite easy and quick to implement, because the layout already exists, and there is no need to add any interactive features since it will only be used for output. You may need to make certain restrictions in your interactive form such as limiting the number of rows in certain cases.

# Layout Issues

## Measurements

There are several different ways to specify measurements in Composer. There is also some "tension" between the different ways to specify measurements:

PDF is primarily a physical page-oriented technology, and the most natural way to specify measurements is in physical units, such as inches or mm.

HTML is primarily a screen-oriented technology, and the most natural way to specify measurements is in screen units, such as pixels for desktop devices.

Mobile devices (particularly iOS) prefer to measure in points (pt).

In responsive layout, theunit ofmeasurement isthepx, but this no longer means "pixels" as it did on the desktop.

Composer's Desktop style HTML rendering does attempt to mimic the page-oriented layout of PDF, whereas tablet and mobile rendering largely dispense with the page-orientation.

Composer allows you to enter measurements in any one of these units, and will convert these units on your behalf. Conversion from screen units to page units assumes a particular DPI, and mixing these units may result in slight discrepancies.

Measurements can be changed within a form for field widths and for margins. Most other measurements should be left alone, as they are balanced for use within the stylesheet.

Composer also allows you to specify measurements in percentages or weights if a layout manager is being used — in this case, the actual measurement will be calculated by Composer based on the relative sizes of several different components.

Images height and width are usually specified in pixels, based on the actual pixel size of the image. If you resize an image, best results are often obtained by using integral fractions of the original image size.

### Recommendations

In general, you should avoid using explicit widths as far as possible. The main reasons for this are:

Often you don't know what size screen your users are going to be viewing your form on, and you should let Composer take care of sizing your fields to fit the screen. Use a layout manager rather than explicit widths. Widths should be specified in the stylesheet, not in the form. This way, if you need to change anything, you can do it in a single place (the stylesheet) rather than having to do it in every single field.

If you do use explicit widths, we recommend:

Most of Composer's in-built stylesheets use page units in mm. Unless you have a specific reason to do otherwise, it's generally recommended to use mm.

If you are building forms primarily for HTML, and require very explicit control over sizes, specify pixels (px). Note that the meaning of "px" has changed with the advent of high resolution mobile devices. See the relevant passage in ResponsiveLayout.

If you do need to apply particular sizes (e.g. widths) to your fields, consider using a named style-sheet entry, or a layout manager — this is more maintainable and flexible.

## Devices vs Desktop

The parameters that define mobile, touch and desktop are changing rapidly as the computing environment is in a state of flux. Time was when "mobile" was synonymous with "touch". Then Apple introduced "Multi-touch" trackpads to its full range of laptops, with the result that classic touch gestures, such as spreading two fingers to zoom in, moved to the desktop. Next, Windows 8 came along and laptops began to have touch screens for an even more direct experience of manipulating objects with the fingers. It is now commonplace for users to interact with commerce sites with their fingers on tablets.

Though we have already (in Navigation) made the point that mobile devices have different requirements from the desktop, those distinctions are becoming more of a spectrum rather than discrete steps.

For that reason, we would like to show you following video presentation. It lasts about an hour, and is worth your time.

http://vimeo.com/64202295

Video from Luke Wrobelewski http://www.lukew.com/presos/preso.asp?31

# Delivery to Mobile Devices

## Two Modes of Delivery

### Mode 1: The Web Browser

As we have already said, the computing environment is now in a state of flux. In the past, when all web browsing took place on the desktop, there was a period — rightly or wrongly referred to as "browser wars" — when web design was complicated by the different and undocumented ways that the various browser of the time would render the same web page in quite drastically different ways. This came at the worst possible time for the web, when HTML standards were also in transition to the adoption of Cascading Stylesheets (CSS), an attempt to separate style from content.

The end result was the concept of the so-called "modern browser", which means one that supports the latest iterations of the CSS standard.

However a new skirmish has broken out, now on mobile. The current state of play is that there are 3 broad types of operating systems in play:

Apple's iOS operating system, which runs iPhones, iPad and iPod touches,

iOS usually updates annually and, because there is little friction impeding this, most iOS devices rapidly upgrade to the latest version of the operating system

Android, originally developed by Android Inc, which was bought out by Google.

There are a number of manufacturers who produce Android phones, most notably Samsung.

Generally, few Android phones update after purchase to the latest Android release, the reasons for which are many and too complex to discuss here.

Also there are a number of manufacturers in China who have "forked" Android and whose devices run no longer on a Google-sanctioned version of Android.

Microsoft's Windows Phone operating system.

This operates on mobile-devices only. It does not have the market share of the above two. Microsoft's Windows 8.

Microsoft has been pursuing a "Windows everywhere" policy and has, with its latest iteration of Windows, intended that Windows 8 runs on both the desktop and on larger mobile devices such as tablets.

To further complicate this, there are two flavors of Windows 8 on Microsoft's own brand of tablets: the Surface. One runs on Intel central processors; the other (the

Surface RT) runs on completely different central processors. The two flavors are not compatible or interchangeable and the Surface RT requires a different version of Windows.

And if that were not enough, every copy of Windows 8 ships with two different browsers: Internet Explorer for the familiar user interface of Windows and Internet Explorer running on theModernuserinterface.

This is only the beginning. The different mobile operating systems also have different browsers, usually a default browser that ships with the phone and others that on some or all of the phone models and manufacturers running that operating system

| Operating System | Common versions | Default Browser | Other Browsers |
|---|---|---|---|
| iOS | 7, 6 | Safari | Firefox, Chrome |
| Android | 4.4 (KitKat) | Chrome | Firefox |
| | 4.1to 4,3 (Jelly Bean) | "Android Stock Browser" | Firefox, Chrome |

| Operating System | Common versions<br>Previous versions | Default Browser | Other Browsers |
|---|---|---|---|
| Windows Phone | 8, 7 | Internet Explorer Mobile | ? |
| Windows 8 | 8.0, and soon to be released 8.1(64- and 32- bit versions) | IE and Modern Interface IE | Firefox, Chrome on the standard Windows desktop.<br>IE only on the Modern desktop |
| Windows 8 RT | 8.0 (32-bit) | IE for RT and Modern Interface IE for RT | IE only for the two types of desktop. |

It is no surprise that all of these have their quirks and incompatibilities. And, the mobile hardware has also evolved rapidly, so that web pages that failed on many of the older mobiles in the past now run quite comfortably on the newer.

**Mode 2: Via Native App**

As mobile users know all too well, the other means of delivery is through mobile apps, as these generally offer speed and stability in a given mobile operating system. At least, that is the theory.

Avoka offers the TransactFieldApp, where you can publish your forms to the mobile app without having to redesign the form to run in the app. There are even some widgets that work solely in the app and not the browser.

This mobile app is available for iOS, Android and Windows Mobile Phone.

### Which Mode is Superior?

The answer is: it depends. If you need to make use of an app-only function, the choice is obvious. If users are coming to the form from a website, the choice is equally obvious.

Just remember, too, that installing an app (which is usually done through an online store, for instance the Apple Store) is a further source of friction for users.

## Responsive Layout

**Note**: Internet Explorer 8 **doesnot supportresponsive behavior** because IE 8 does not support modern CSS frameworks. Responsive Design as a practice only began in 2010.

### Introduction

**Responsive Web Design** is a technique for web pages to render properly both on the desktop and mobile devices. A responsive page can be served to desktop browsers or to mobile device browsers, such as smart phones or tablets, and will render optimally on all of them without the need to detect ("sniff") on what device the form is being rendered, nor the need to serve different versions of the page.

It follows that all forms should now incorporate responsive elements and you should now assume that many users will be accessing all forms from mobile devices.

As we have already said, there are 2 modes of delivery tomobile.

The responsive behavior of a form is controlled by the template associated with the page. There are a number of settings in Nuts & Bolts under "Nuts & Bolts -> Responsive Rules" and these are tuned to the Maguire-style of template.

The Maguire Responsive Behavior depends on 3 thresholds values of the width of the device measured in "px".

This no longer means a number of physical pixels on the device's screen, because many modern devices now have higher resolutions than the monitors of the previous century,

yet the expectation is that pages should
display the same way as they did before. Also there are devices that have high resolution models, "Retinadisplays" and the like. Again, the expectation is that objects should be rendered the same size on these different device models. Objects cannot be rendered smaller on the higher resolution models because of the touch-based interaction with the user: smaller objects frustrate users as they attempt to accurately hit touch targets.

So the portrait mode width of an iPad (for both Retina and standard resolution models) has been standardized as 768 px and an iPhone as 400 px.

An Operator in a Ruleset determines when the responsive rule set kicks in. The determining factor is the width of the device's browser, measured in "px" (also called "css px" in other documentation), which no longer means a number of physical pixels on the device's screen, because a number of modern devices now have higher resolutions than the monitors of the previous century, yet the expectation is that pages should display the same way as they did before. Also there are devices that have high resolution models, "Retina displays" and the like. Again, the expectation is that objects should be rendered the same size on these different device models. Objects cannot be rendered smaller on the higher resolution models because of the touch-based interaction with the user: smaller objects present difficulties for the fingers of users to accurately hit touch targets.

So, the value of the width of any device in px is the value that the device itself reports back to the engine handling CSS rendering in its browser and in apps running on the device.

So, here, for comparison, are the widths that apply to Apple mobile devices:

| Device | Portrait width in px | Landscape width in px |
|---|---|---|
| **iPhone 4, 4s** | 320 | 480 |
| **iPhone 5, 5c, 5s, late model iPod Touches** | 320 | 568 |
| **iPads(both Retina and non- retinadisplays)** | 768 | 1024 |

## Composer use of Thresholds

To manage the complex sets of responsive behaviors shown in Navigation above, Composer 4 and the Maguire- style of template have 3 levels of thresholds, set in "Form

Options -> Generation Options -> Edit Properties -> Properties -> HTML Generation" in the Responsive panel. The default values are:

| Threshold Level | Triggering width (in px) |
|---|---|
| 1 | 768 |
| 2 | 560 |
| 3 | 400 |

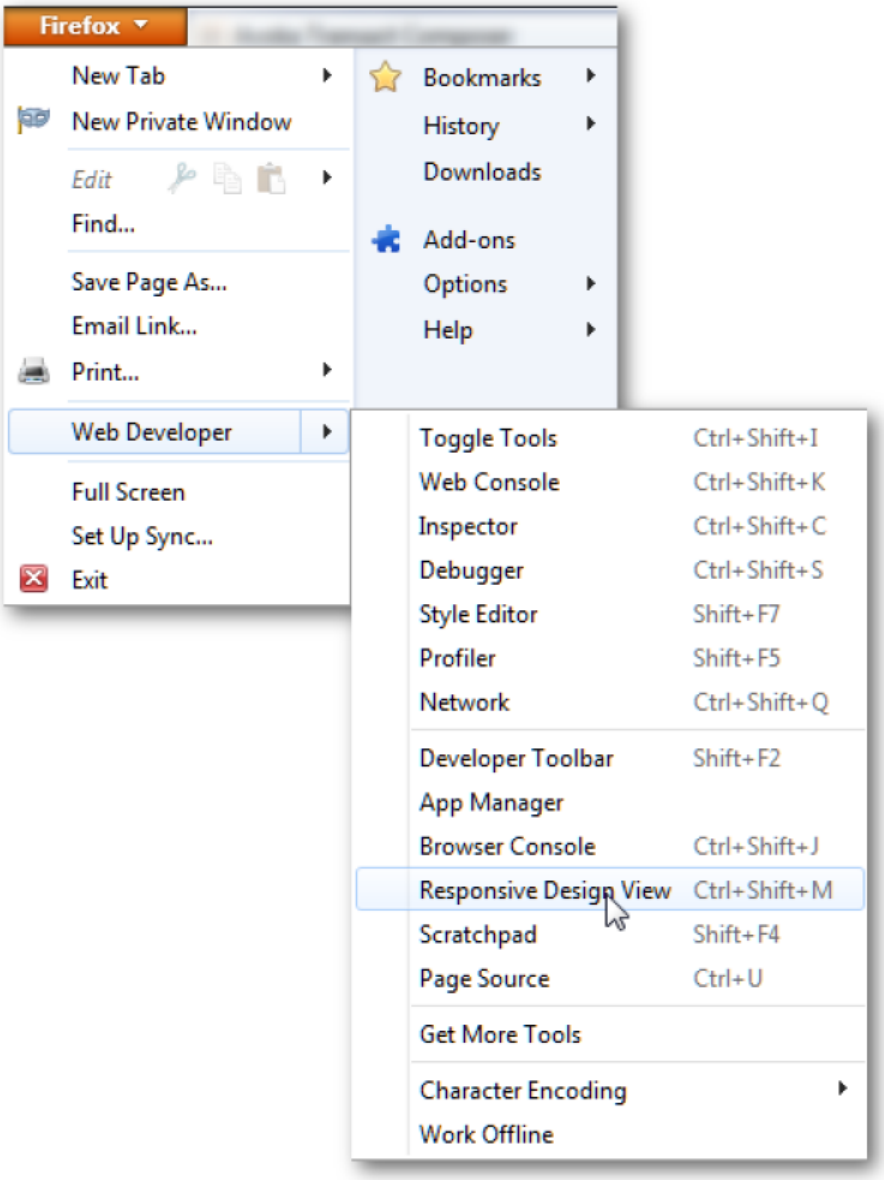
## Previewing Responsive Behavior

This explained in Renditions. The default setting for Composer is to have only 2 preview settings, "HTML [Responsive]" and "PDF". If you want, you can separate out the HTML preview modes into Desktop and Responsive through "Form Options -> Generation Options -> Edit Properties -> Properties -> HTML Generation -> Responsive -> Responsive Mode [HTML]". There is really no need to do this in Composer 4; better adjust the width of the browser windowing displaying the HTML Preview and watch the effects as you move through the thresholds.

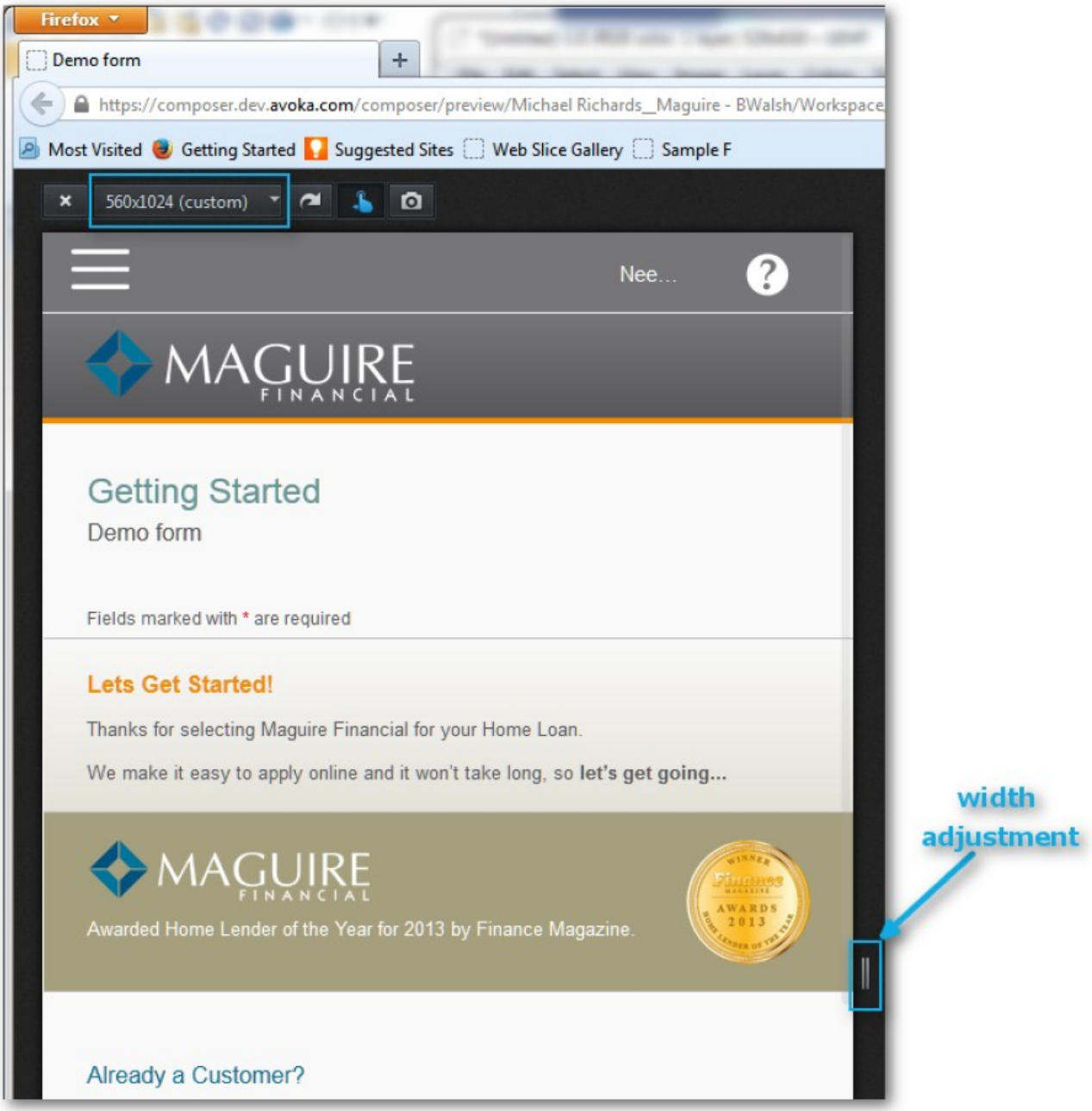
To test responsive behavior, select HTML preview in the dropdown menu, top left of the Form Designer:

The preview will usually show in a new tab on your browser. To test responsive behavior, pull the tab out of its containing browser window, and make the new window resizable (done using the window control icons on the top right of the window in Microsoft Windows, or the top left candy-colored icons in OS X). As you narrow the window, you pass through the thresholds and doing so triggers the next stage of responsive layout where the layout of the form changes accordingly. The changes are quite dramatic:

**Hint:** Firefox has a convenient feature for viewing responsive behaviors. Other browsers do not have such a ready-made facility. You access it in **Windows** from the orange dropdown menu on the top left of the browser window. in **OS X** from "Tools -> Web Developer -> Responsive Design View" in the top menu.




This results in a read-out of the width of the rendered page:




## Grid Layout Caveats

Many grid layouts do work in Responsive forms, but not all.

Grids with more than 4 columns may look unsatisfactory above threshold 3. You must preview your form above and below the various threshold widths.

All grid layouts are fine below threshold 3.

Adjust the "Size" settings or the number of columns in the grid for a workable solution.

## Actions

In Composer, the Nuts & Bolts Responsive Rules (which, unlike previous versions of Composer, now depend on the threshold levels) are now read only. You cannot alter the Responsive Rules in the Structure Panel.
You can, though, point various elements in your form to whichever of these rules is appropriate for that form element (through the "Edit Properties -> Rules -> Responsive -> Responsive Ruleset [HTML]" dropdown menu).

### Wrap

The "wrap" action takes inline fields and, when responsive behavior kicks in, places each of these on separate lines.

### Wrap and fill

Inline fields are placed on separate lines and all fields stretch across the width of the display.
**Note:** tables **must** be set to "wrap and fill" or they will not lay out properly in the narrower thresholds.

### Fill

The "fill" action should only be used in Wizards with left-hand menus. For the effect, see the iPad rendering oftheexampleWizard above. Otherwise, the "fill" action only has meaning for responsive behavior for objects that require special scripting.

### Hide

Some elements should not be shown on mobile devices as their presence is inappropriate for the layout on that device.

### Hide (no media support)

Some elements should not be shown on mobile devices, due to their fixed space requirements or their relevancy.

### Show

The opposite of "hide". In other words, the visibility of the form objects allocated to the show responsive rulesets is determined by the device's position among the 3 thresholds.

## In Line Validation Methods

See Validation. "In-line validation" means that users receive messages as they proceed filling out the form, rather than receiving a message when they reach the end of the page or form. In-line validation is of the utmost importance on mobile devices, as they reduce user friction if their entry in a field does not pass validation. The last thing they would want is to be told at the end of filling in a multipage form that they have to reverse back through the form, especially in a touch environment where doing so can be difficult and frustrating.

## Tool tips

Touch interfaces have a few differences with the desktop mouse-dependent user environment. In touch there is no concept for hovering over an object or text. Instead, users can hold their fingers over some text or object, and other functions of the user interface come into play, such as the "magnifying glass" cursor control for moving through text, or activating the copy and paste controls. Tool tips have no meaning at all in the touch- driven world of mobile. You must therefore not rely on tool tips to guide users through the filling process.

# Submissions & Attachments

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

So far, we have discussed how to use the Form Designer, Navigation, and Layout, all of which are meant to lead to submission. When users fail to complete submission of the form, the form is said to be abandoned. This is a most unwanted result and a waste of time for everyone.

Users are often asked to upload files, called attachments, as supporting documentation. Most attachments are generated outside of the form, and can be scans, Word documents, PDFs, JPEGs, PNGs and so forth.

However, there are form elements capable of generating attachments from within the form, for example: scribble pads for users to make their signature

camera widgets for uses to take pictures with a mobile device's in-built camera bar-code-reading widgets for use with a device's camera.

Defining attachments (i.e. files uploaded with the form) used to done exclusively in Transaction Manager. Now these can also be defined in Composer.

The Preview function of Composer does not include user interactions when they upload attachments; for that, you will have to publishtoTransactionManager.

## File Uploading

### Defining Attachments in Composer

There are two attachment widget types. You add all of these to the one section on the form, here called "Attachments". It makes sense to have these in the last section of the form which usually contains the "Submit" button.

#### TM Attachment Table

Add one only of these, and its rows will automatically be populated with the details of the attachments.

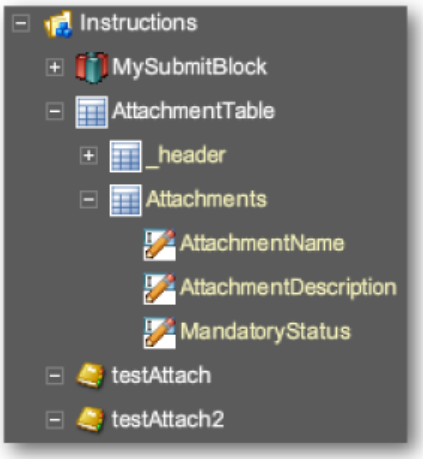
#### TM Attachment Rule

Add one of these per attachment at the same structural level as the TM Attachment Table. Use the "Create a New Field" wizard, which pops up on adding the rule to the

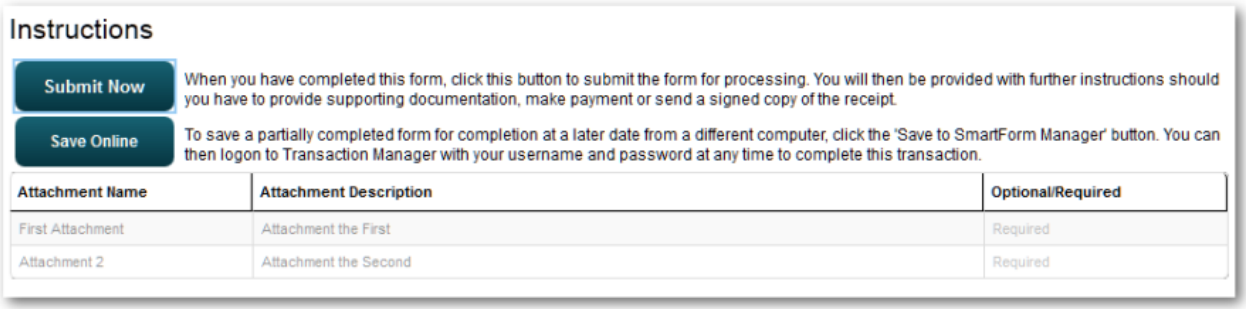
form, to give it an "Internal Name". You can also further specify each attachment's properties in the rule's "Edit Properties" dialog.

**TM Submission Block**

You also need submit buttons, so we have added a TM Submssion Block (as "MySubmitBlock") to the section. This block adds several submission buttons to the form, which give users the options to "Submit Now", "Save Online" or "Save to My Computer:" Here is the resulting structure of adding a "TM Attachment Table" and two "TM Attachment Rule" widgets to a section containing a "TM Submission Block".



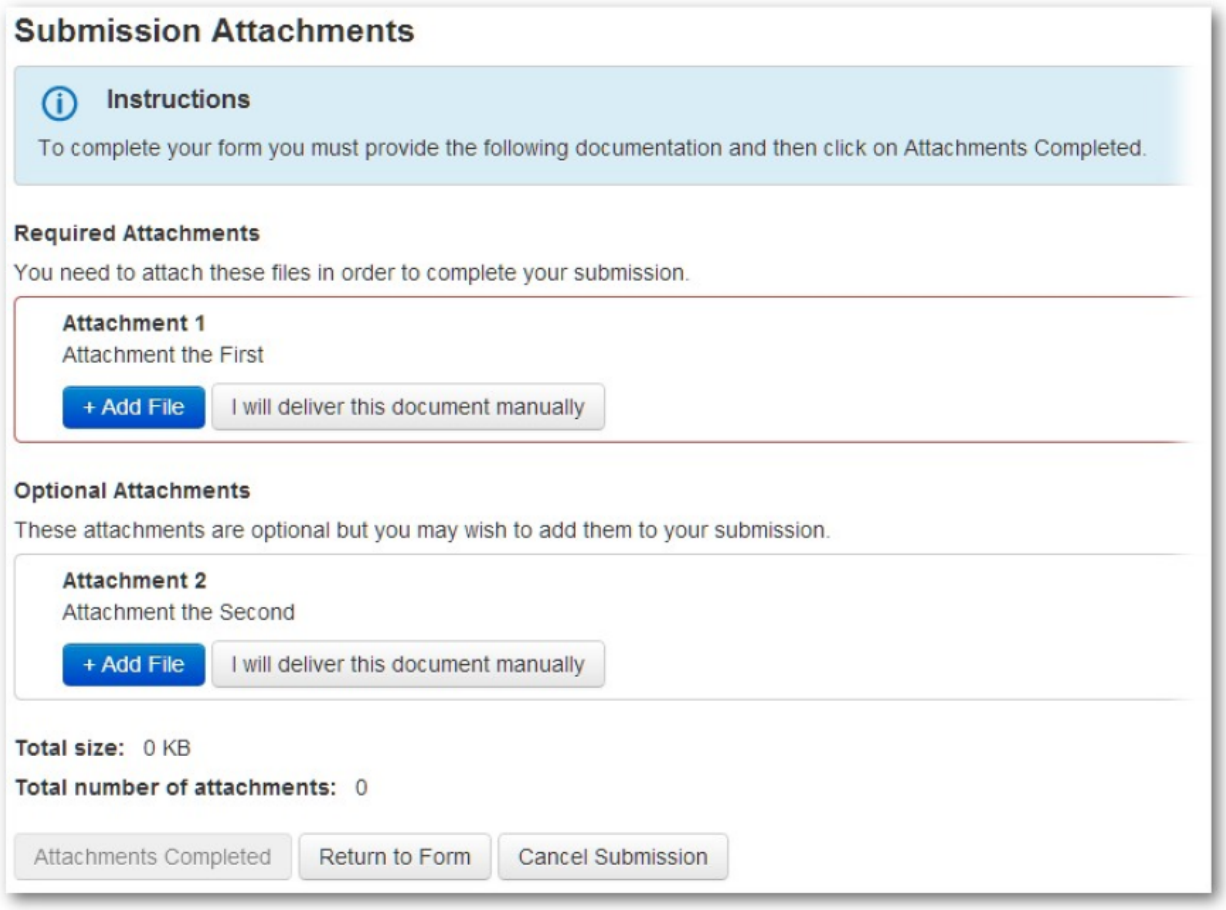

You can then preview the rendition of the form, where the Attachment Table gets populated according the the Attachment Rules:




**How this structure renders in preview.**

The table informs users that they will be requested to supply these attachment after clicking on the "Submit" button. This behaviour cannot be previewed in Composer: to see this, the form must be published to Transaction Manager. In our example, the form was published without further modification in Composer; all that was done in TM was

to assign the form to a portal and to turn off its "Test" mode. The resulting screen after the "Submit" is:




**Resuling "Submission Attachments" page.**

### Delivery of Attachments

The "I will deliver this document manually" buttons appear on the "Submission Attachments" by default for each attachment. To remove them, set in Composer the "Edit Properties -> Data -> Submit Method" for each rule to "Electronic".

## Email Acknowledgements

If you require an email to be sent to the user as an acknowledgment, receipt or any other business reason, this must be set-up in Transaction Manager.
There is currently no way to specify emails through Composer. Transaction Manager,

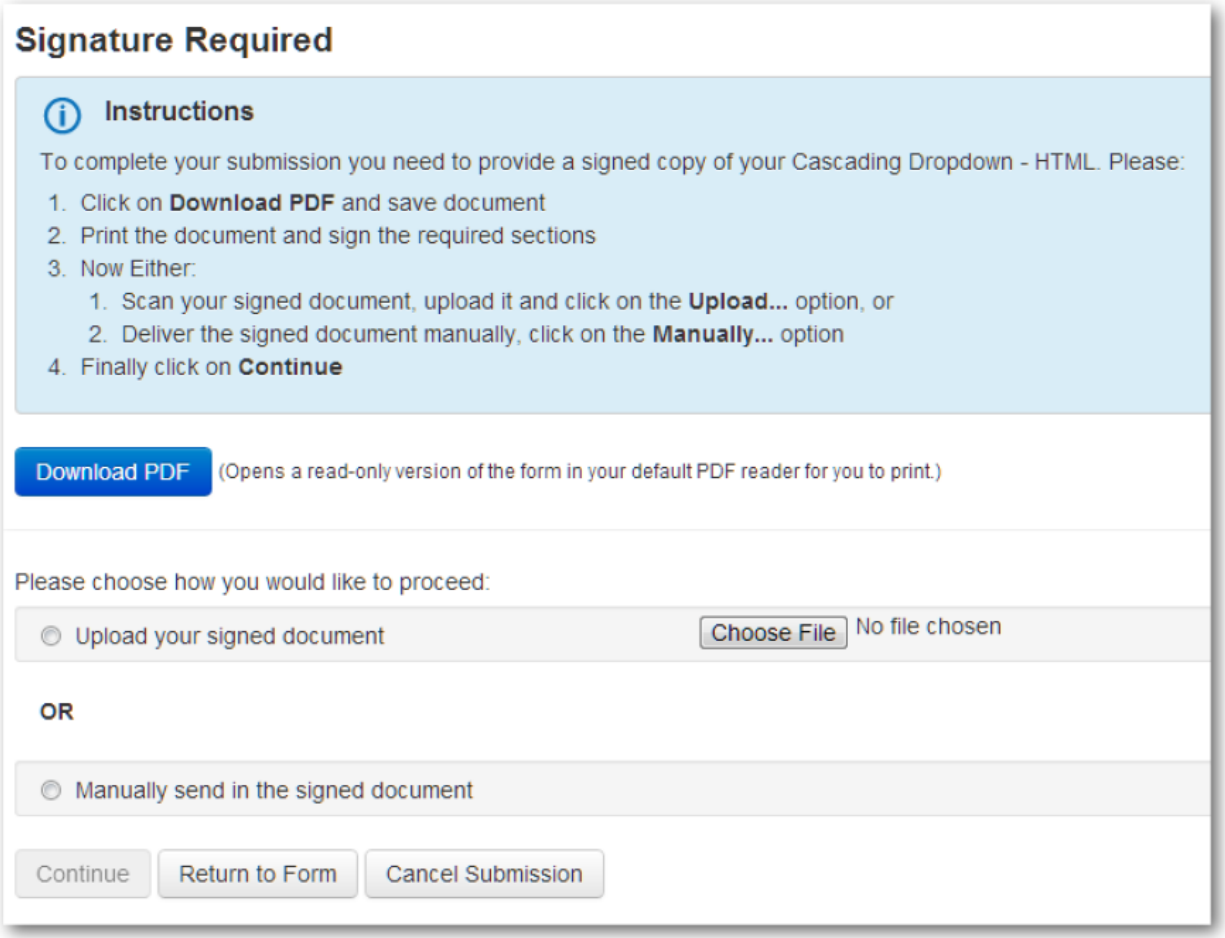
though, has a great deal of functionality and control of email messages, Please refer to the Transaction Manager Administration Guide.

## Signatures

There is a range of signature widgets:
**Signature [Wet]** and TM Signature [Wet]
Dropping these on to the form has the same effect. Pre-submission, the form presents the user the message, contained in "Edit Properties -> General -> Instruction Set". The default is:

**"Signatures are not required at this time. After you have submitted this form, print the receipt, sign it and send it in."**

After users have clicked "Submit" they are presented with:



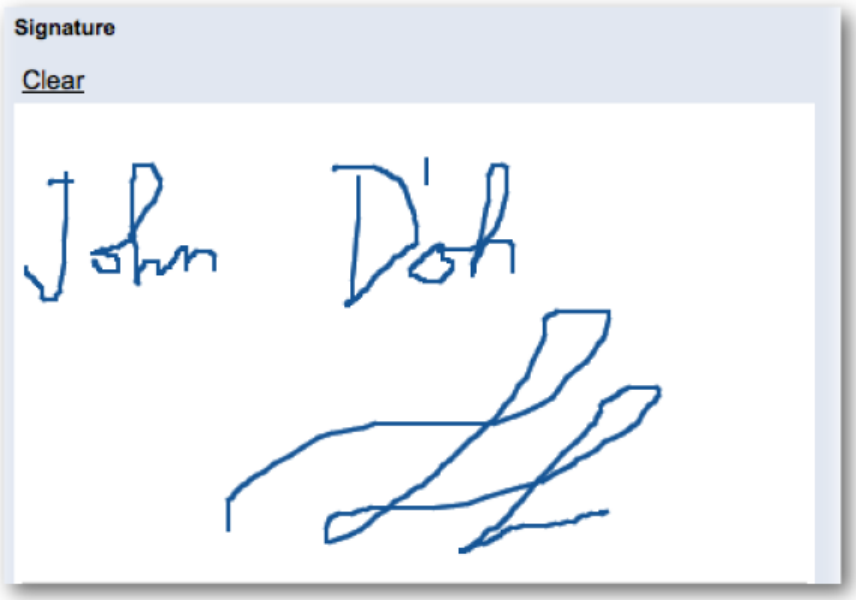
## Wet signature form after submission.

**DocuSign Signature**

Creates a block to handle the DocuSign eSignature process. The users fill in their names and email addresses and DocuSign verifies the users via a two-step process. **Note:** use of the service incurs a service charge.

## Signature Pad Widget [HTML]

The widget's "Edit Properties -> Properties -> General -> General -> Signature Type" can be set to "Draw It", "Type It", and "Choose at Runtime". "Draw It" gives users a signature canvas to sign with their finger or mouse (see below). "Type It" presents users with a text field.




## The signature canvas.

**Signature Pad Popup [HTML]**

Similar to the signature pad above, except that the pad appears in a separate lightbox superimposed over the form. On "Save", the lightbox vanishes and the signature shows as a thumbnail.

## Notes

Use a true Digital Signature if users have a certificate or smartcard available.
Allow the end-user to click a "Sign" button, and specify their username (and the date) if they don't have a digital signature.
In HTML, just use their username and the date.
If in Adobe Reader, and the form is not "reader extended", just use their username and date.
The name and date from a true digital signature will also populate the form's username and date, so in HTML even if users re-use the form, we still have a record of the signer.
When either the true Digital Signature or the Signature field is signed, an invisible check-box is checked. This will allow standard editability rules to be defined so that the form can be locked down after signing.

# Dynamic Data

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

In Composer, Dynamic Data has two meanings:
Dynamically changing the information displayed on a form without reloading the page

Accessing a third party web service for data for this dynamic display

### What is Dynamic Data?

Dynamic Data is an Avoka Transact capability that allows a form to communicate back to the Transaction Manager Server while the form is still being filled in and even display new data on the fly, without the page being reloaded or the form being submitted. This allows an additional level of functionality to be built into forms.
Dynamic Data is a general purpose communication mechanism and can be used for many reasons. Common use cases are:
Sending some data from the form to the server (such as a user id) and retrieving some information to populate fields in the form (such as their address).
Sending some data from the form to the server (such as a user id) and retrieving some information to populate a pick-list in the form (such as a list of the subjects that the user is enrolled in). The pick-list can be in the form of a drop-down list, table, or other visual element.
Sending some data from the form to the server to perform a server-side calculation.
Sending some data from the form to the server to perform a server-side validation.
Dynamic Data requires collaboration between the form developer, and a server-side developer who defines a Dynamic Data service in Transaction Manager. Please refer to the Transaction Manager document for more information on this.
Composer provides a number of different facilities for using Dynamic Data:
Widgets that have pre-built Dynamic Data support, such as the "Lookup" Button. An assistant that builds lookup-style Dynamic Data capabilities.

### Dynamic Data in Action

We recommended you initiate Dynamic Data invocations by a direct user actions, like a button click, not from implicit actions, such as exiting a field. Direct actions set user

expectations that "something time-consuming should now happen, and may even fail." Internet performance and reliability is beyond our control, so using a button sets end user expectations that some action is about to occur.

However, it is also possible to use Dynamic Data to perform "predictive" lookups, such as the list of completion hints seen while typing in a Google search . The AutoSuggest example below shows these predictive lookups using the Veda Geolocation service.

# The Dynamic Data Assistant

By dropping the Dyanmic Data Assistant onto the form, and filling in a few details, you can populate your form with a dynamic data fields in a few steps by merely filling in the "Add A Dynamic Data" dialog.

In this example, the Transaction Manager service definition is "ACMEPOST", which in real life would access some webservice from a third party provider. Here, there is only one input field, "Suburb" and the TM service returns multiple sets of 3 fields each.

The "Result Block Type" selector toward the bottom of the dialog gives 3 options:

### Standard Block

which will display only one set of returned data

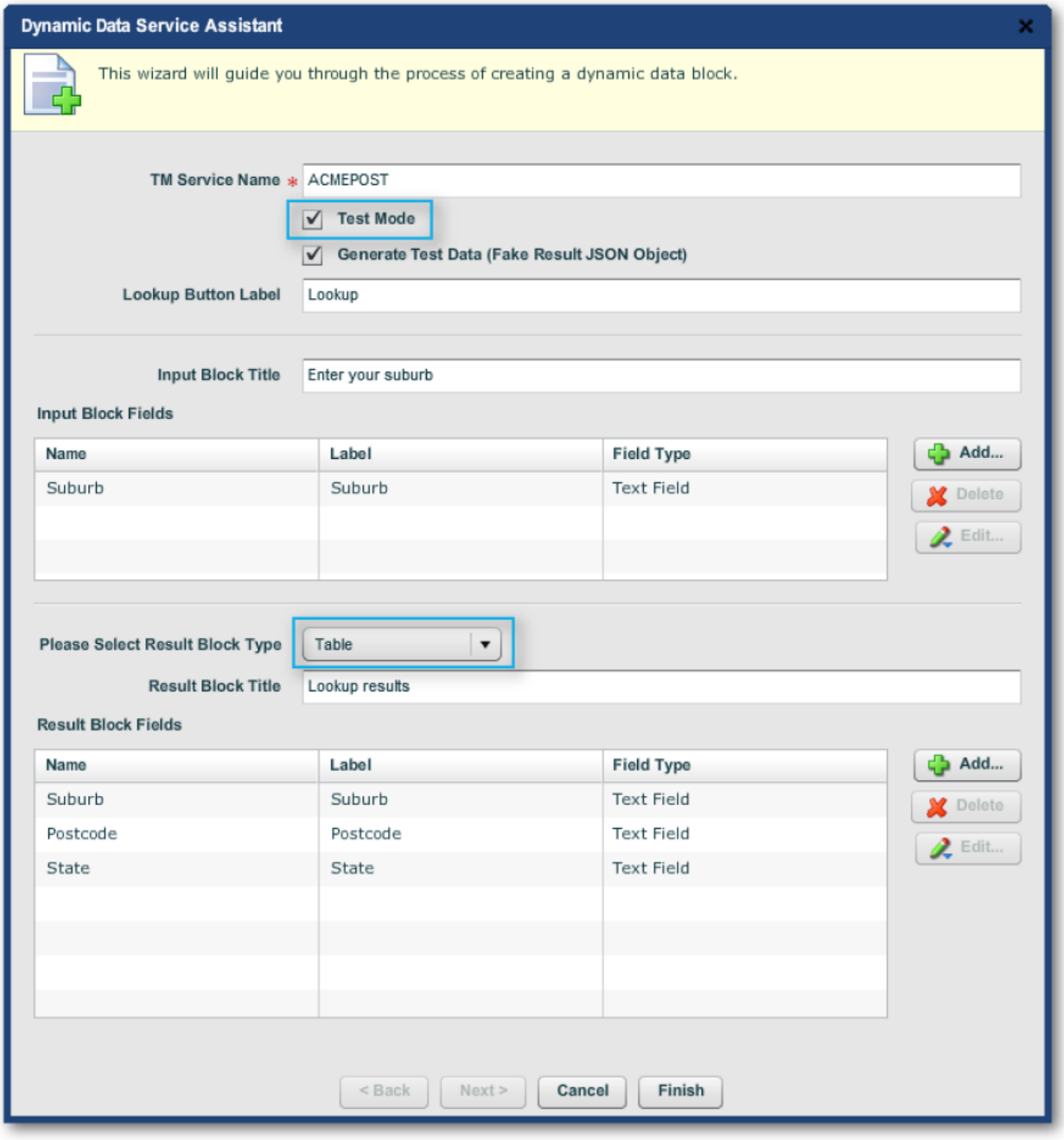
### Repeatable Block

which will display multiple sets of data in the more flexible format than a table structure

### Table

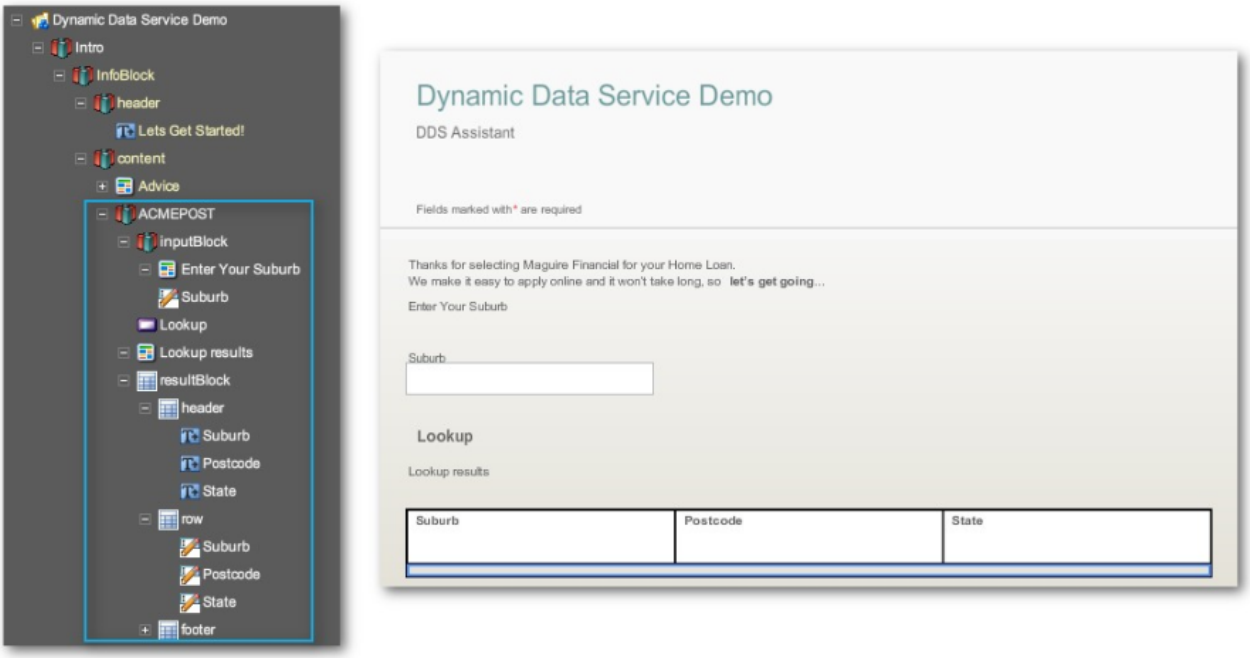
as selected in this example. Each set of returned data will populate a row of the table. We have also activated the "Test Mode" checkbox. The assistant will then provide a set of fake data automatically. You can also provide your own fake data, as explained below. Of course, for the form to work from real data, the service must already be

defined in TM.




**The Dynamic Data Assistant wizard dialog.**

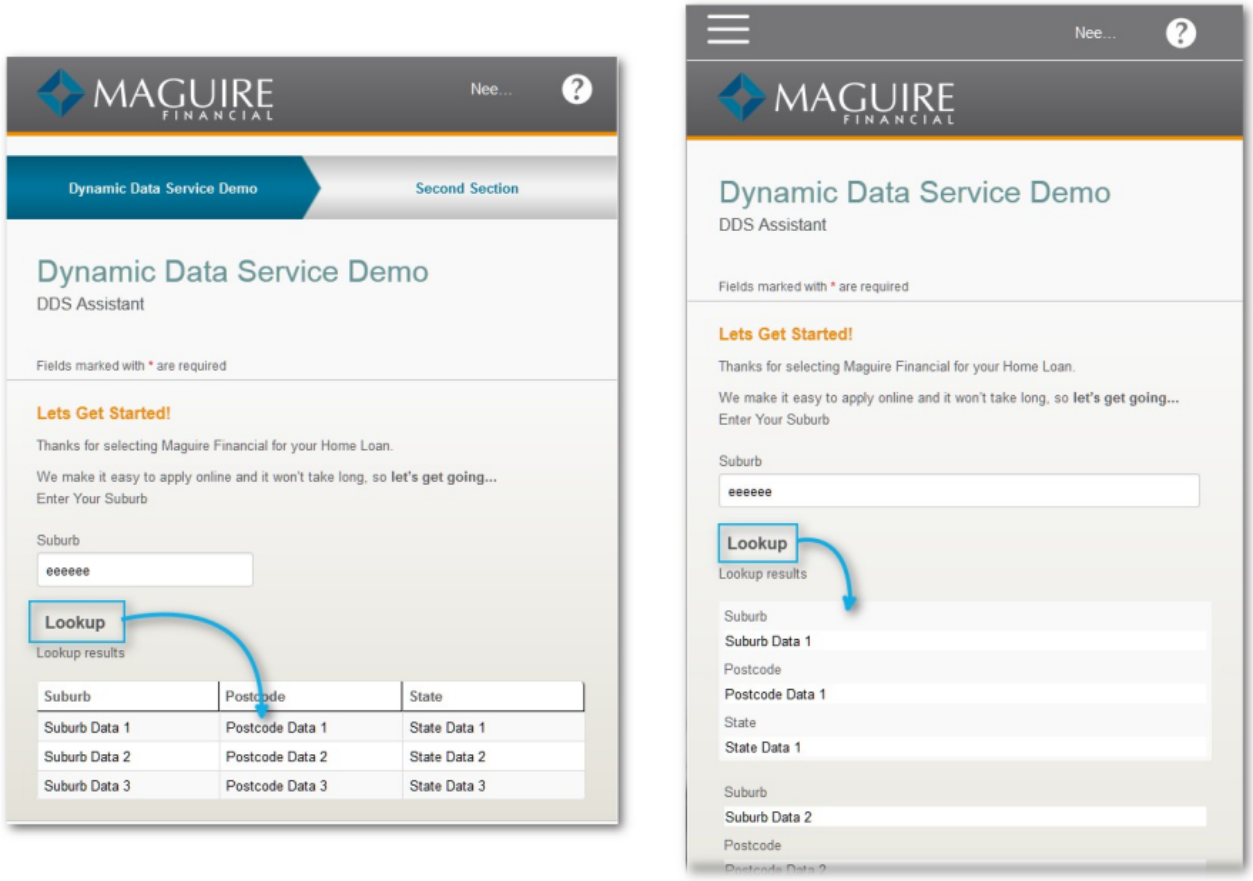
This dialog results in this wireframe and structure:




**Dynamic Data Assistant creates the following strutcure and wireframe.**

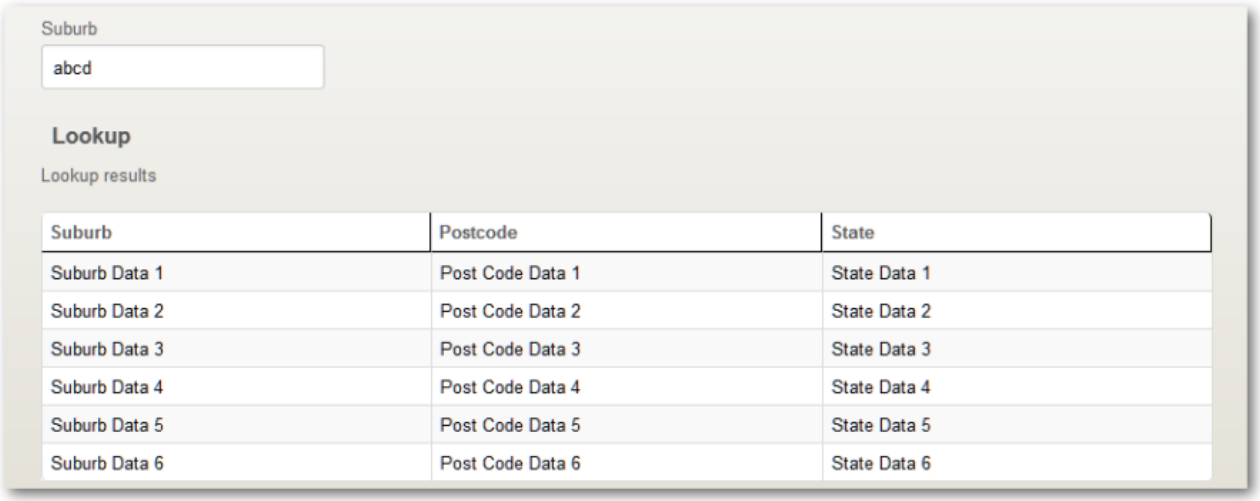
Previewing the form in HTML and clicking on the "Lookup" button results in the fol-

lowing display of the default fake data generated by the assistant.




**Preview of the form with fake data generated by the Dynamic Data Assistant, desktop vs narrow mobile**

The fake data belongs to the structure's button, here called "Lookup". Going to the button's "Edit Properties -> Properties -> Data -> Dynamic Data Testing" exposes a text field called "Test Data (Fake Result JSON Object)". If you wish, paste your own JSON data here. If the "Result Block Type" is either "Repeatable Block" or "Table", all the JSON fake data will display; if not, only the first set of the fake data will display.



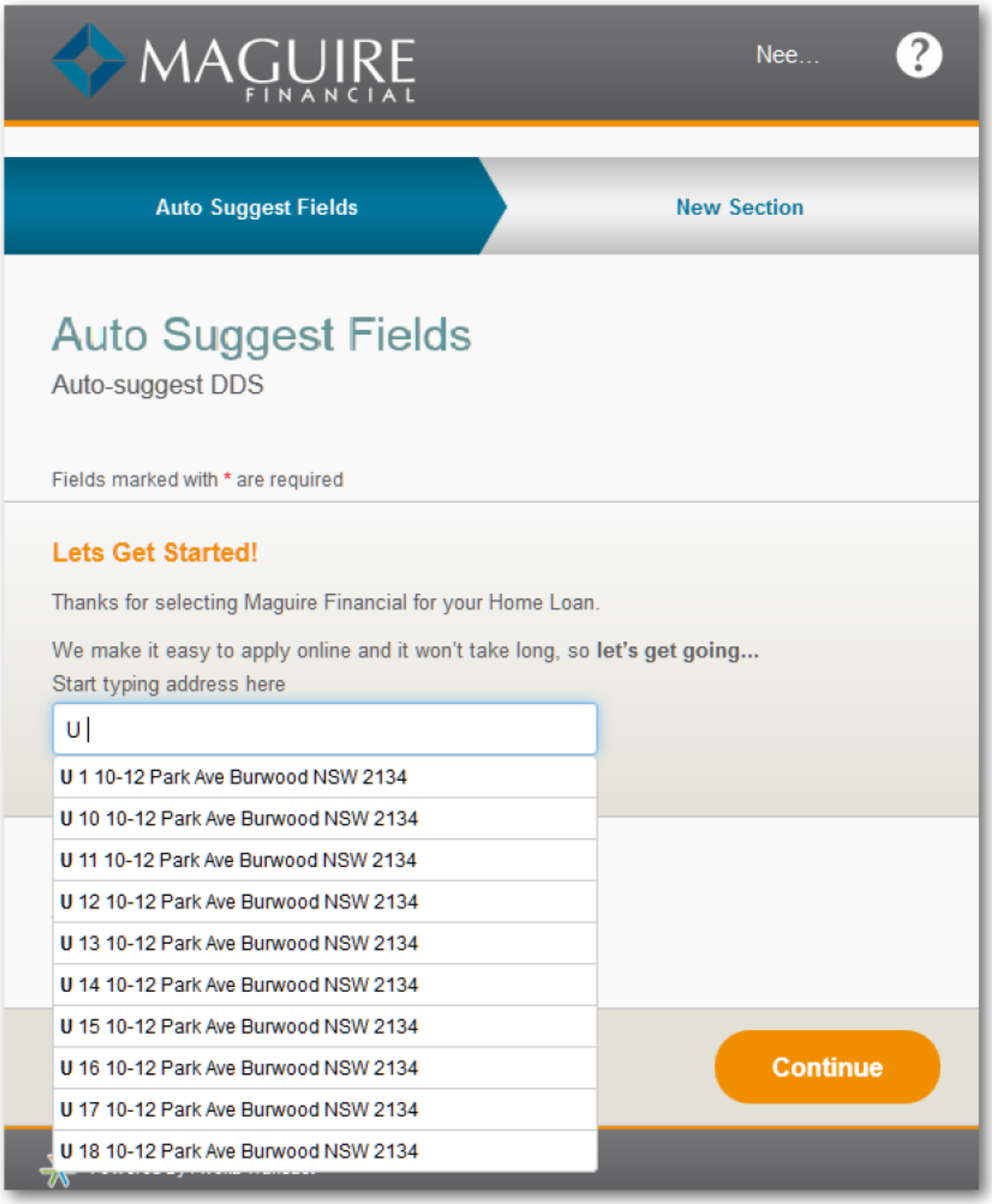

When the service is returning an unmanageable number of hits, consider using pagination.

# AutoSuggest

## Overview

An auto-suggest field is a text field (and its associated control widget) where the rest of contents of the field are suggested to the user in a popup below the field, and the user selects the correct information. The suggestions are obtained from a dynamic data service (DDS). A common use case for auto-suggest is entering a household address with suggestions coming from a geodata DDS.

Here is how the field looks and behaves:




For the autoSuggest widget to work, the widget configuration has to correspond to the Groovy scripts of the service in the "Service Definitions" page of Avoka Transaction Manager. In other words, unlike most widgets in Composer, the necessary service creation and scripting must already exist in Transaction Manager before the widget can be

added to the form.

The following discusses:

Building an autoSuggest form element from scratch, with a service we have defined as ACME POST in Transaction Manager

Using predefined widgets and scripts that ship with both Composer and Transaction Manager for the VEDA

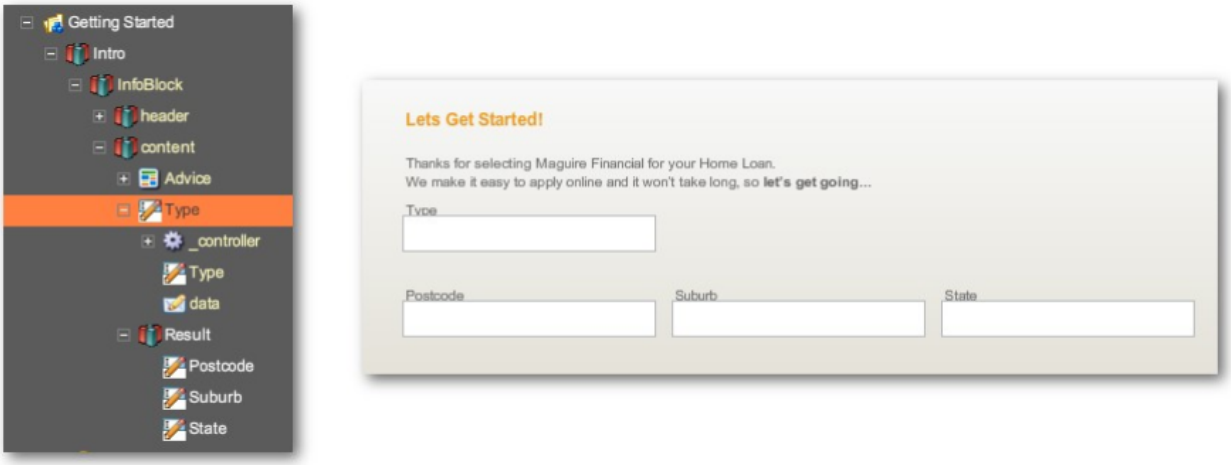
GeoCoder webservice

For further detail on the configuration parameters, refer to thenotesbelow.

## Reference Data Lookup Block

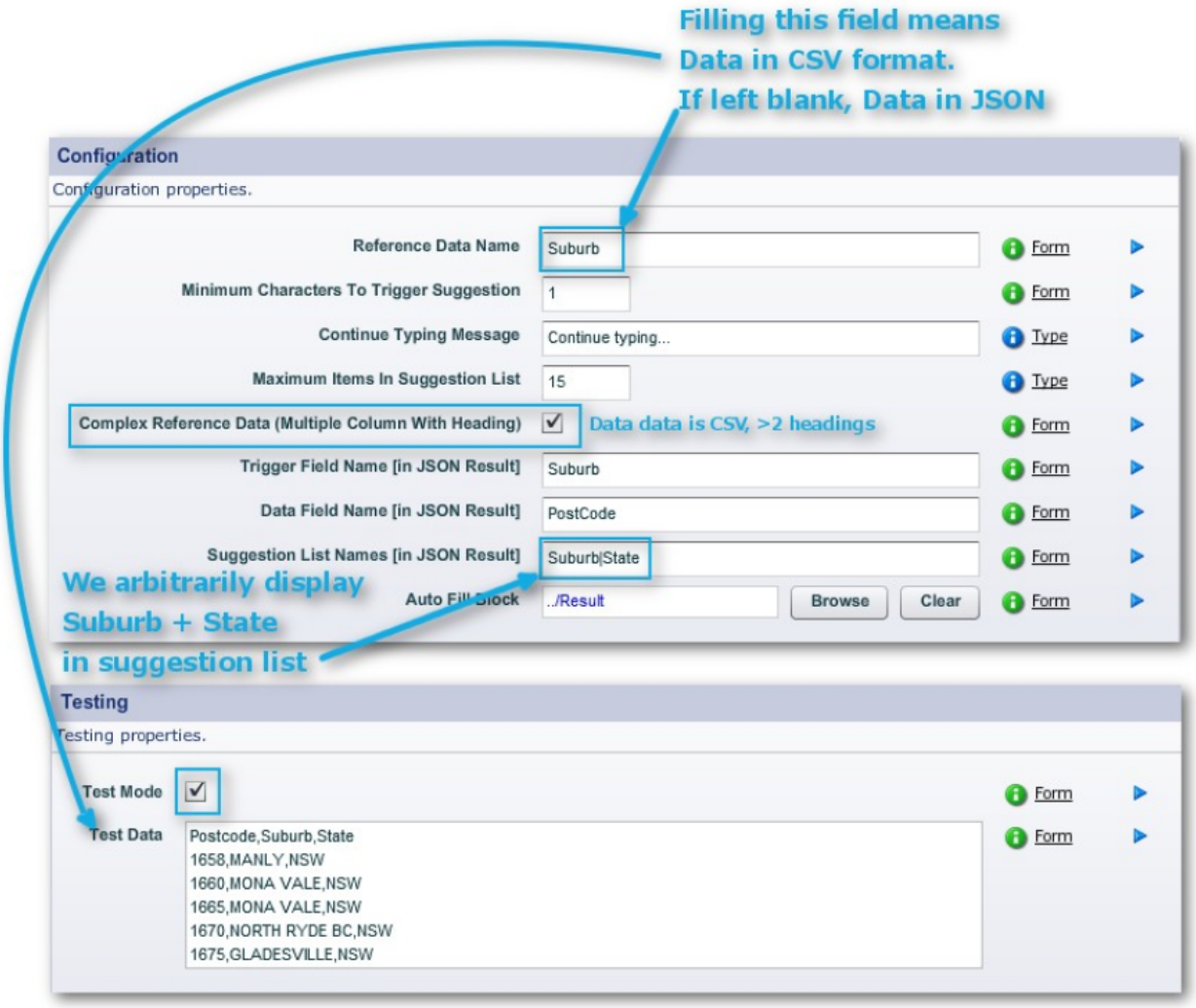
### CSV Data With Headings

Another widget, the TM Reference Data Lookup Block, also provides lookup data. The aim of this widget is to give a convenient way to provide an auto suggest function with no programming. The reference data can be an Avoka Transact dynamic data service defined in TM (see the Transaction Manager Administration Guide), or from pre-populated data (see hereforanexampleofhowyouintroduceprepopulateddataontoaform using a Data Field widget). In this example, we use test data.



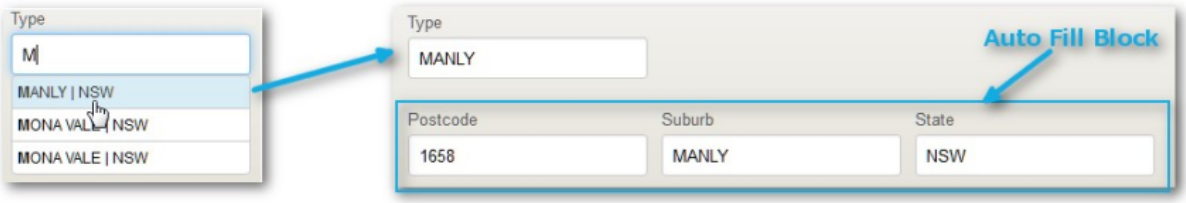

The only change we made to the structure built from the block was to build the "Result" block (3 in-line text fields named according to the table headings of the CVS test data) and point to it in the "Configuration" panel. Note the "Complex Reference Data"

checkbox: it is activated because the data is a table with more than 2 column headings.




**Panels in "Properties -> Data" for the "Type" node (a TM Reference Data Lookup block)**

Which results in the following behavior:



**CSV Data Without Headings**

You can have only two columns of data, that is only one pair of data points per row separated by a single comma. Make sure the Complex Reference Data checkbox is unchecked.

So, as there are now no headings, the convention is that the left data point or column is refered to as "display". The right data point or column is called "data". The default parameters of the Configuration Panel is to have the left column, "display", as the "Trigger Field Name"; the right is the "Data Field Name".

**Notes on Auto Suggestion _controller Data Configuration Parameters**

The following tables describes some of the "TM Auto Suggestion Controller" parameters and gives the default abstracted values provided off-the-shelf in the "TM Veda Address Lookup Block [Australia] -> _controller". If you want to change these values, you should do this in the TM Veda Address Lookup Block [Australia], not in its children. **Note:** you still nominate to use test data in the "TM Veda Address Lookup [Australia] -> _controller -> Data -> Test Mode" checkbox.

| AutoSuggest _controller -> Properties -> Data -> various panels | Parameter Description | VEDA Controller Abstracted Value |
|---|---|---|
| Dynamic Data Service Name | Points to the DDS | $../{dds.service.name |
| Minimum Characters to trigger auto suggest | The number of keystrokes before the auto-suggest popup appears | $../{dds.min.chars} |
| Continue Typing Message | A message displayed in grey in the trigger field while the user has still not made a selection from the suggestions presented | $../{continue.message} |
| Not in List Message | Displayed at the bottom of the suggestions if the typed input in the trigger field is not an exact match to one of the suggestions presented. The user clicks | $../{notInList.message} |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | on the message to leave the trigger field. What then happens is determined by the "Clear Trigger Field When Not Matched" checkbox | |
| DDS Fail Message | Displayed if the service times out. This is usually left blank. | [blank] |
| Clear Trigger Field When Not Matched checkbox | If the user leaves the trigger field, and the entry does not match any of the suggestions, the field becomes empty. Otherwise, the un-matching entry will remain. The "Not in List Message" will be displayed. | [checked] |
| Second DDS Service Name | Enables another layer of dependent data to be accessed from a DDS service and receive more auto suggestions in a secondary field. It follows that there are secondary input fields, and that test data can also be pasted into another Test Data field. | $../{dds.-detail.name} |
| Timeout | specifies number of milliseconds before the DDS access fails. This value is usually left as "0". | 0 |
| Delay of Triggering DDS (in milliseconds) | sets the delay before the user input triggers a query on the DDS. If this is set too short, there will be usability issues. | 200 |

**"Hide Standard Address Block" in VEDA Block Widget**

This is a special checkbox in "TM Veda Address Lookup Block [Australia] -> Properties -> Data -> Veda Configuration": the "Hide Standard Address Block". Its behavior is as follows:

When **checked:**

- Initally only the trigger field is visible and the address block invisible,
- If the user selects one of the suggestions, the filled-in trigger field only is visible
- If the user selects "My address is not listed", the address block becomes visible and the focus moves to "Address Line 1".

When **not checked**:

- Initially, both the trigger field and the address block are visible
- Initially only the trigger field is writable
- If the user selects "My address is not listed", the address block becomes writable and the focus moves to "Address Line 1".

In **both cases**:

- The trigger field will be cleared, regardless of the setting "_controller -> Clear Trigger Field When Not Matched".

**Sequence Numbers**

Sequence numbers are enabled by these lines at the end of the service definition Groovy script in Transaction Manager:

```
// See if there is a queryString holding a sequence number def value = request.-
getParameter("seq")
 if (value == null || "".equals(value)) {
// The request parameter 'seq' was not present in the query stringOR
// The request parameter 'seq' was present in the query string but has no value return
result
 } else {
// add the sequence number back on theresult
 result += new JSONSerializer().toJSON("{'seq' : '" + value + "'}") return result
 }
```

If there have been a number of requests made on the DDS, the responses may not be returned in the same order as the requests. If sequence numbers are being emitted in response, the value of seq is incremented with each response, allowing TM to tell if responses came back out of sequence. TM will then only act on the most recent response, that with highest seq number.

**Internet Explorer 8 Issue**

End users on IE8 can receive multiple alert dialogs. The workaround for this is setting the "TM Auto Suggestion Controller -> Edit Properties -> Rules -> Click -> Failure Notification" and choose "Do Nothing".

# Pagination

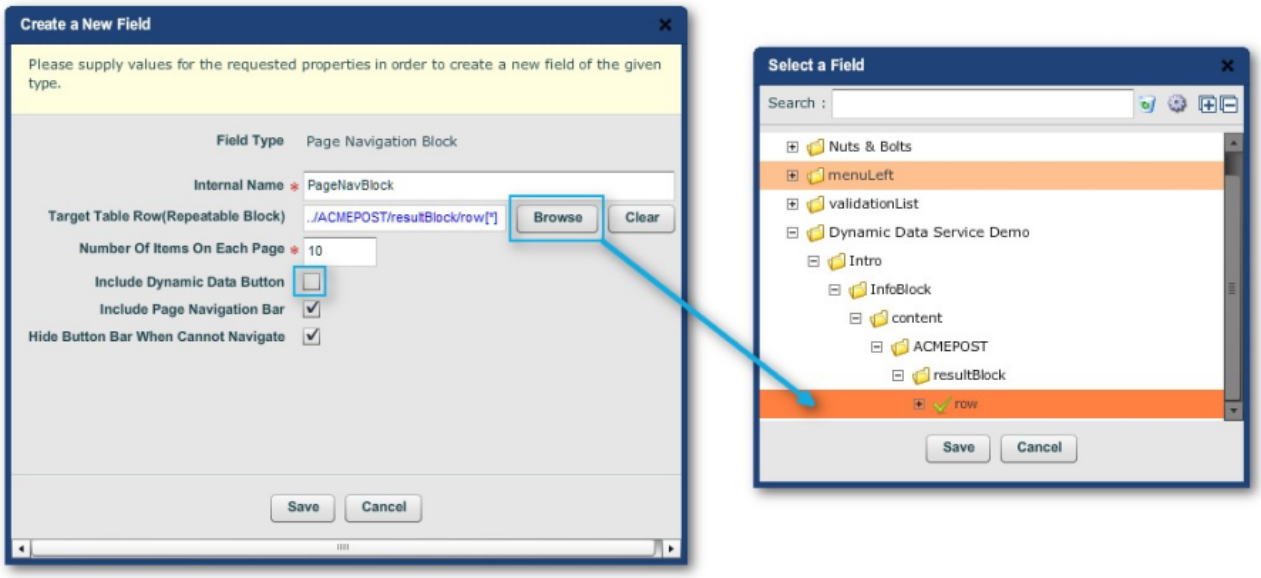
Composer now has a "Pagination Block" widget (currently specifically for Dynamic Data using a "Lookup" button). It is very simple to add to a form using a Dynamic Data Service with a table in the result bock:

just drop in a "Pagination Block" onto the form

point the lookup button of the input block of the dynamic data service to the page controller of the Pagination block

point the page controller of the Pagination block to the lookup button of the input block We illustrate this by adding pagination to the ACMEPOSTexample.

Add from the Palette, a "Field Types -> Pagination -> Page Pagination Block" element. Fill in the resulting dialog:



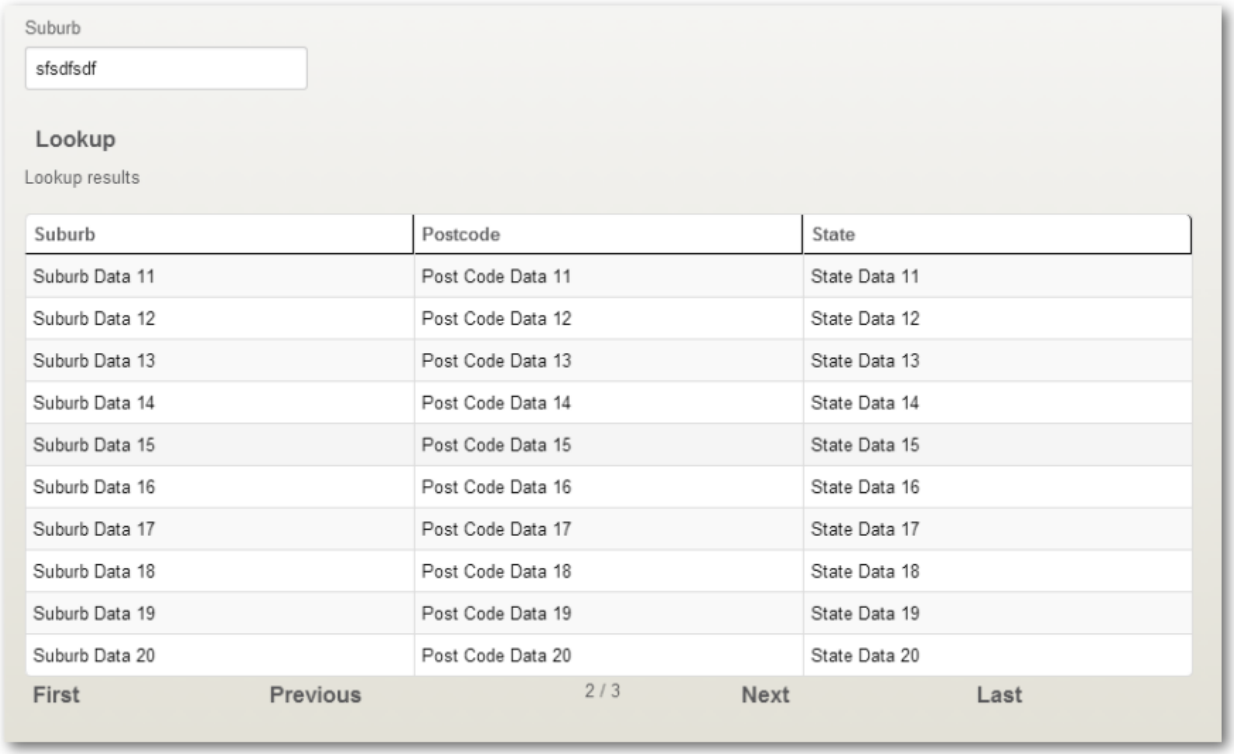

## Adding a Page Navigation Block

**Note**: the "Include Dynamic Data Button" in the Page Navigation Block is not activated in this example: there is already a button in the ACMEPOST Dynamic Data block.

And. *vice versa*, you point the Dynamic Data Service back to the page navigation structure, via the ACMEPOST Lookup button's "Edit Properties -> Properties -> Data -> Data -> Page Navigation Controller".

There must be enough rows of fake data in the result table to activate the pagination

functionality. If so, the preview looks like this:




**2nd page of the page navigation output (using fake data).**

Please refer to the Responsive Layout section about viewing the result table on mobile devices. You should give some thought on how you want the table to appear [intheresponsivelayout thresholds](), where each table cell gets its own line instead of being laid out in rows.

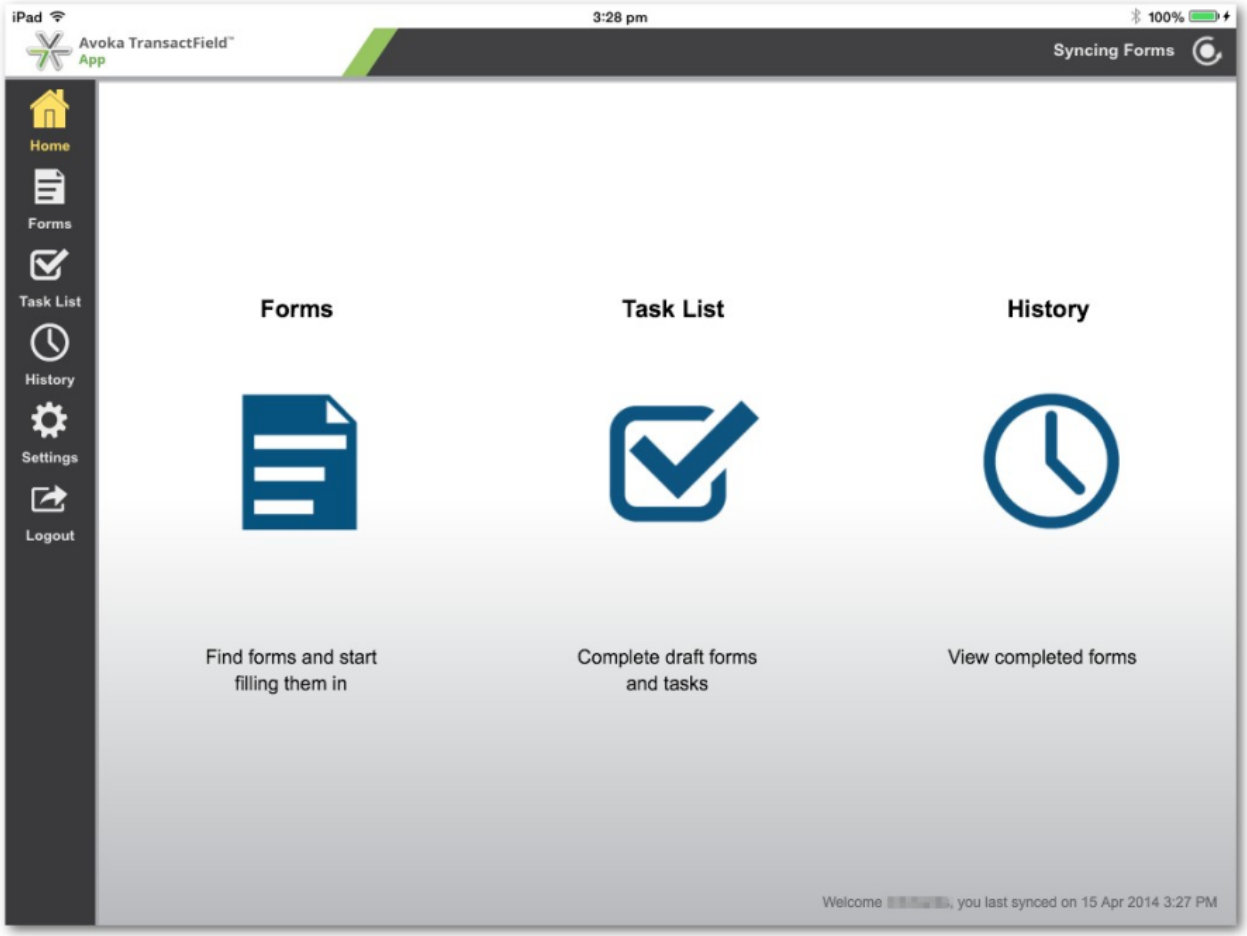
# TransactField App

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Temenos offer a couple of ways for users to access your forms on mobile devices:

- Through the device's web browser, with Responsive Layout technology
- Via a native TransactField App.

The TransactField App runs on iPads, iPhones, Android tablets and phones, and Microsoft Windows devices.




The TransactField App delivers to these devices intuitive mobile data-capture applications that are built using the Temenos Journey Manager platform. The TransactField App client affords the following capabilities to mobile workers:

- Allows field workers to take their forms with them out in the field
- Gives field workers a task list of forms to complete or approve and a timeframe in which to do these. Synchronizes forms automatically to the device so that they can be filled out online or offline
- Holds submitted forms temporarily on the device, completing the submissions when reconnected Enables forms to make use of device capabilities, including camera, GPS, and sign-on-glass Enforces security, including password protection and encrypted data on the device and over the wire Provides full control over which forms go to which field workers through permissions and roles Synchronizes to all apps when a new form or an updated form is deployed.

here is very little to do in Composer to utilize these: they are taken care of by TM and by Composer's scripting.

## How to Publish a Form to the TransactField App

Use the following steps:

1. Save the form and publish it toManager
2. Log in to Manager
3. Save or import the form
4. Select Forms -> Form -> Details, uncheck "Test Mode
5. Select Forms -> Form -> Portal Access, make sure "Mobile App" is one of the "Assigned Portals"

Now, when you open the mobile app on a device (making sure that you are connected to the correct instance of TM) you should — after the synching process is completed — see the form by tapping on the "Forms" icon and be able to select it in the forms list.

## Mobile Camera Support

Mobile devices came with in-built cameras, and so users want to be able to integrate this picture-taking capability into forms. Users tap on a form's "Take Picture" button widget and generate an image attachment. This gets uploaded when the form is submitted.

Though the attachment generated by the button is like other attachments, the Button [Take Picture] widget is unique in that:

It only works in the TransactField App
It is not supported on the desktop or in a mobile device's web browsers

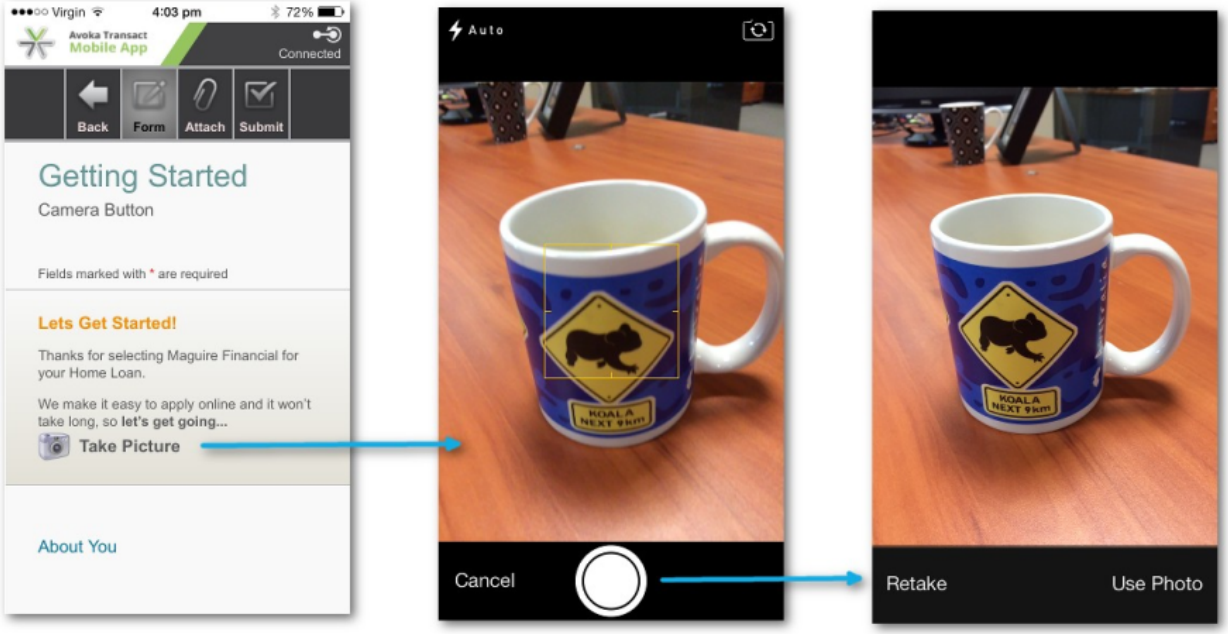
# The Standard "Take Picture" Button

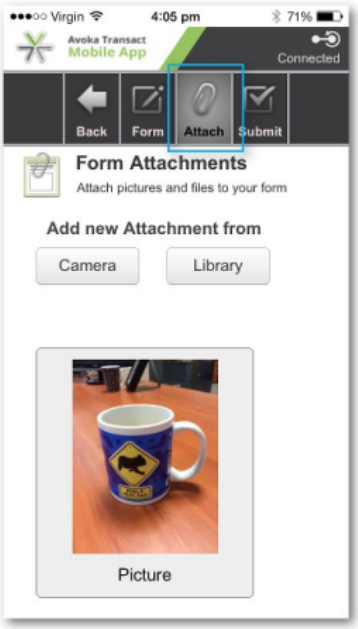
## Very simple form with a camera button

The "Button [Take Picture]" widget works only in the Mobile App. Tapping on it takes mobile device users to the in-built camera app. The user gets to take the picture and choose either to retake or use the photo. It is not saved to the device's camera roll. For the sake of appearance, we have set "Take Picture -> Edit Properties -> Styling -> Style Sets -> Button Type -> Push button".

The form also needs a TM Attachment Rule widget to activate the Attach tab in the Mobile App; we have named this element "Picture" in the structure. Without it, no attachment file will be uploaded to Transaction Manager.

The resulting form behaves as follows in the Mobile App (on a smartphone):




**The form in the Mobile App, and the effect of the "Take Picture" buitton**

For simple forms like this example, and the user has taken only one photo, the user can go straight to the "Submit" tab and submit.

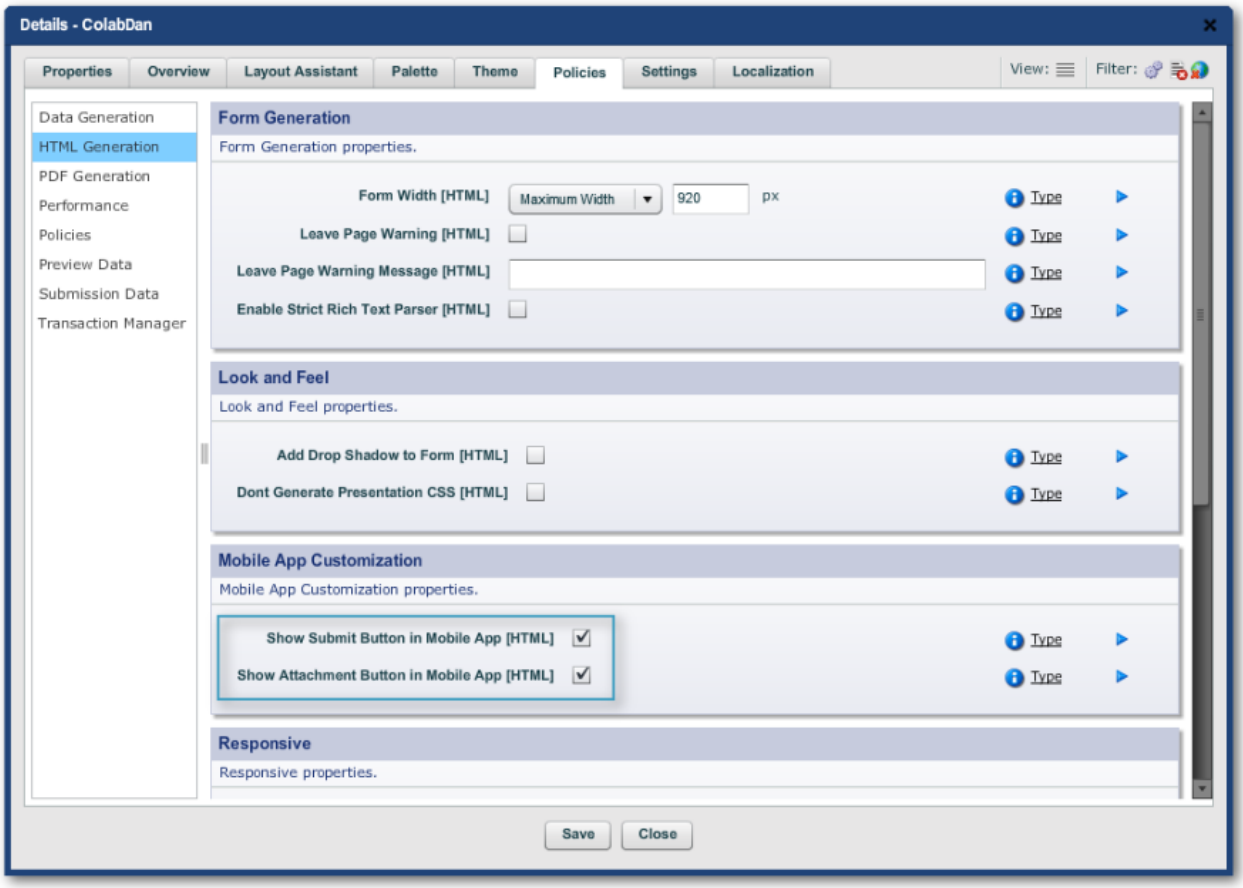
If the users have opted to "Use Photo" more than once, they have to go to the "Attach" tab and choose which image gets attached.

## Suppressing the Attach and Submit Tabs

There are use cases where you will want to have attachments controlled on the form in the TransactField App, rather than in the app's tabs.

You can suppress either tab (or both) in Composer's Structure Tree: "<Form> -> Edit Properties -> Policies tab

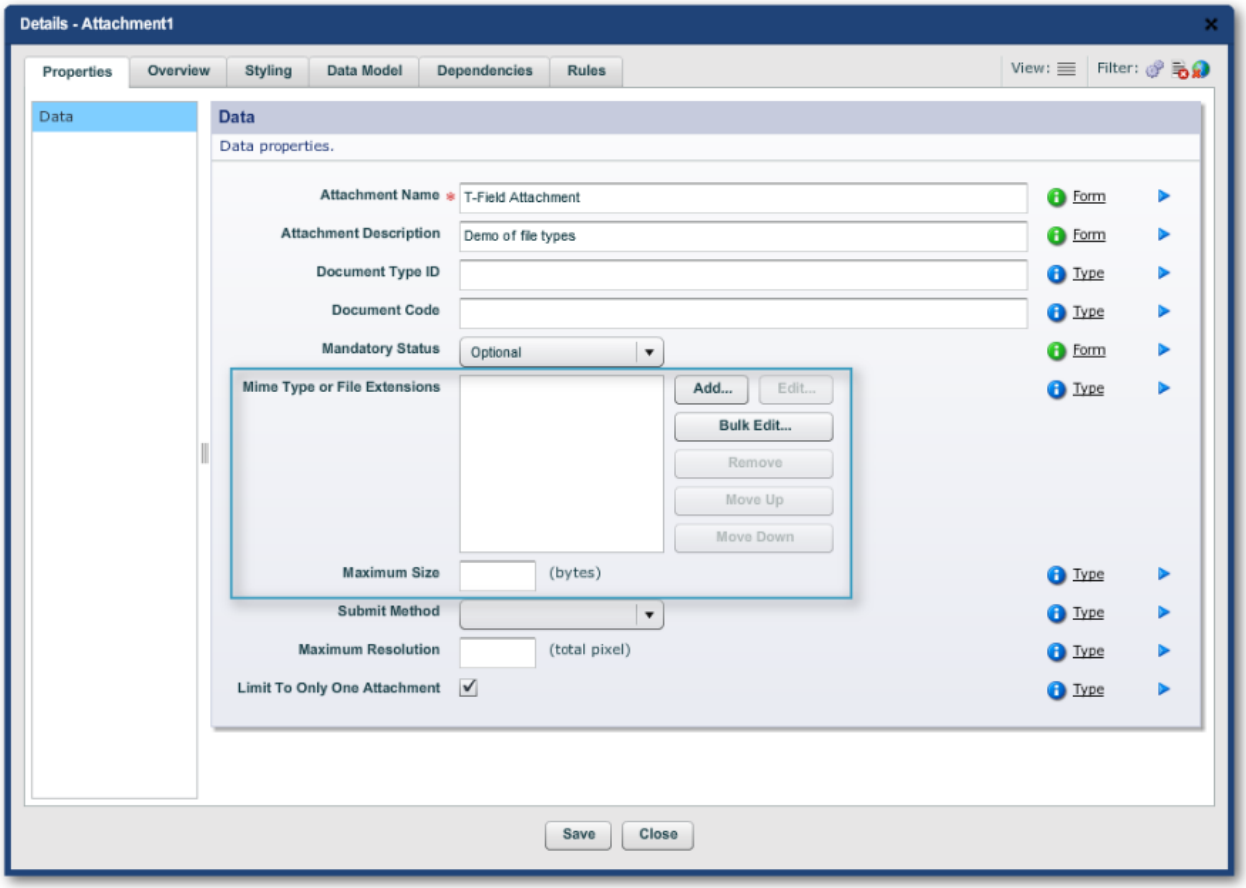
-> HTML Generation -> Mobile App Customization panel".




Here is an example of the Attach tab being hidden in the TransactField Mobile app:

## Restricting Attachment File Types in the App

You now can control the file formats that the TransactField App can accept for an attachment or attachment. Place a TM Attchament Rule widget on the form and fill out the dialog:




Saving an attachment of the wrong type in the App results in a popup:

4:25 pm
This attachment only accepts files with these types:
png, .gif,.txt. Actual type is jpg
OK
ttach pictures and files to your form
ttachment Details

# Multi-channel

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

The Avoka Transact gives you the tools to publish all your forms on desktop and on mobile devices, and yet be useable on all these different form factors. This is more than a convenience — it has become a cost of doing business.

It follows that users will want to move freely between their devices, without needing to complete a complex form on one device in the one session. Users now expect that not only can they resume a form later, but that they can do so on a different device or platform.

The Avoka TransactWeb Multi-Channel Tracking Technology enables end-users to start, pause, continue and complete their applications across channels – from their mobile device to their desktop, the call center, and the branches.

Here is a video of a presentation Avoka made at a finance industry forum. It illustrates the device agnosticism users will appreciate.

{+}http://youtu.be/nNY8MdPw1Qc+

## Authenticated Users

### With the Maguire Template

The Maguire template already has this technology embedded as a "Save and Close" button. On the desktop it is at the form header. On narrow mobile devices, it becomes an option in the slidermenu.

You can configure TM to prompt users to opt if they want to receive an email (to an address they nominate) when they "Save and Close". They are immediately sent an email giving a link to the portal and their unfinished form. Users click on the link, log into the portal (if required) and continues to fill in the form, which is prepopulated with their data.

### With Other Templates

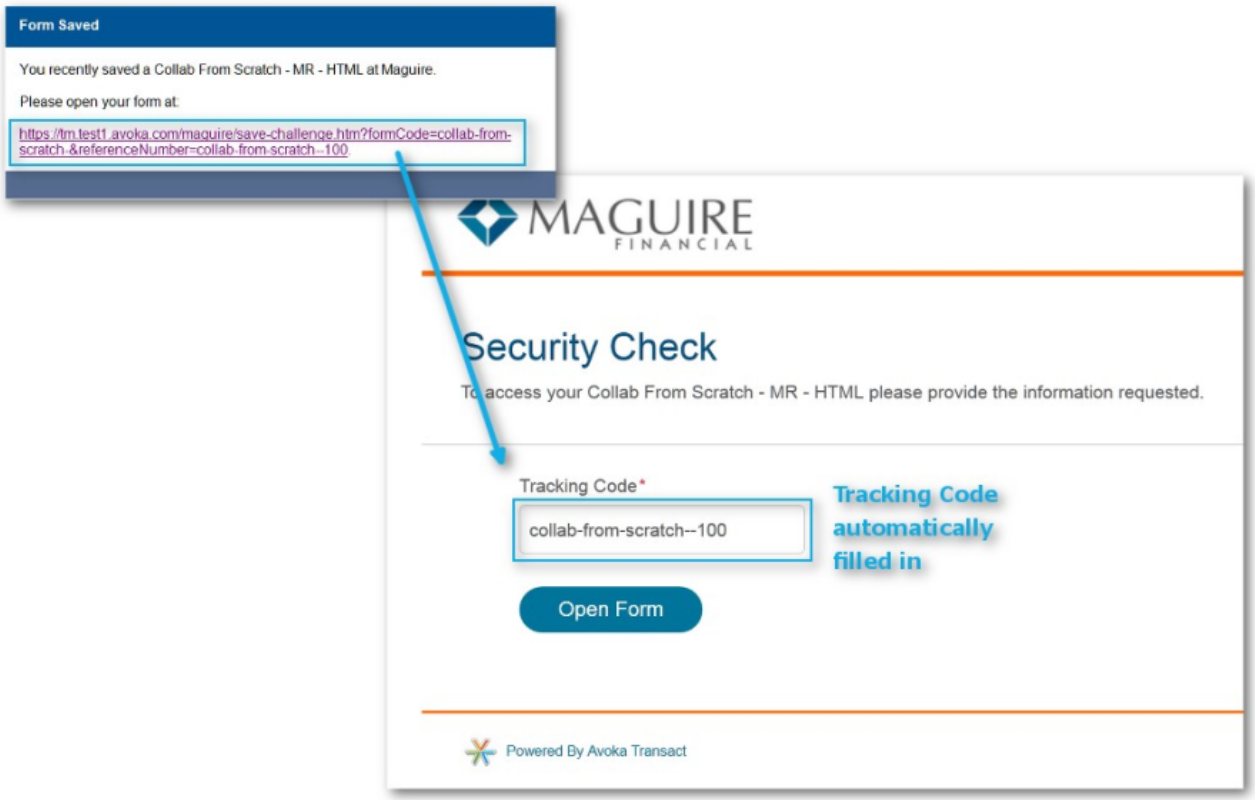
To get enable multi-channel, drop the TM Submission Block onto the form. You can reword the text fields in the block to suit. You can even remove the "Save to my

Computer" and text, as saving the form as a PDF is not useful in the context of multi-channel delivery.

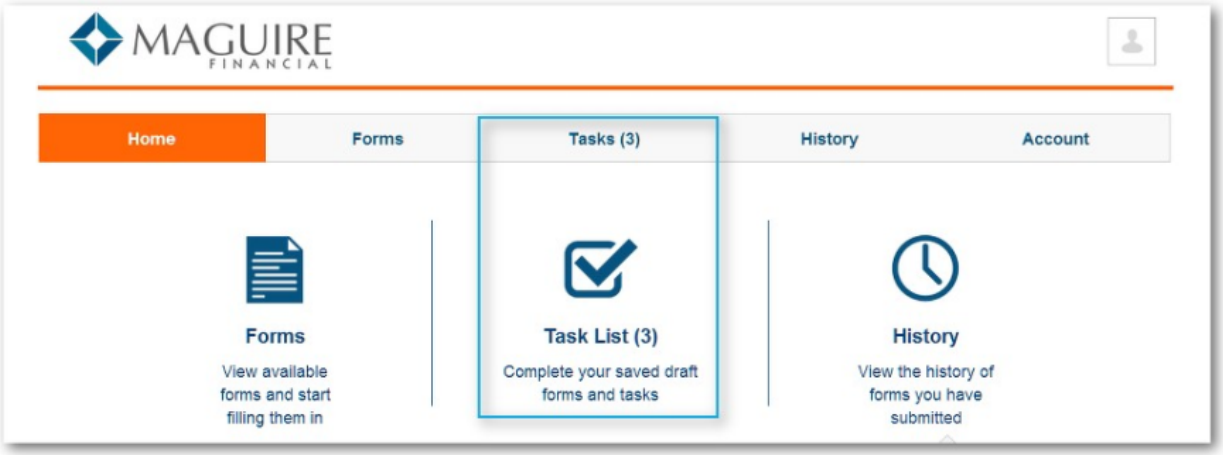
## The Task List

So, users can resume their forms either by

Clicking on the link in the email. This takes users directly to the form, after first being challenged to supply ID and Password, and not to the portal's authenticated landing page.




Going to the portal's authenticated landing page and accessing the prepopulated form through the Task List.




### TransactField App

These Save buttons in both the Maguire template and in the TM Submission Block, have special scripts so that they will work in the TransactField App. Putting the Save and Close buttons on the form will alter the App's Submit tab to accommodate the multi-channel save; the action will no longer be activated by the button on the form.

Of course, the button will appear on the form when the form is rendered on the device's browser (Safari in iOS and Chrome in both Android or iOS). On narrow devices, such as smartphones in portrait orientation, the Save and Close button will be in the Maguire slider menu.

## Anonymous Users

Actually, Avoka Transact supports anonymous users, both for multi-channel and for collaboration.

The reasons you would want to do this are:

To reduce user friction

Some users, while happy to provide some personal details in order to request some service or good, are reluctant to create yet another transient user identity that will probably get used only the once

It is a necessary condition for Form Sharing, where several people have to fill in the one form, such as a pair of partners or another party is required to provide some documentation or statement before the form in question can be submitted.

Support for anonymous users is a configuration performed in TM. Please see Form

Sharing.

# Form Sharing

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

Just as a form can be shared between the devices of a single user, see the Multi-channel topic above, so too can a form be shared between a number of different parties before it gets submitted.

The kinds of business cases this function supports are:

Sharing the form between applicants and their lawyers Between applicants and their partners

Between various parties filling in the same form where they are not in physical contact.

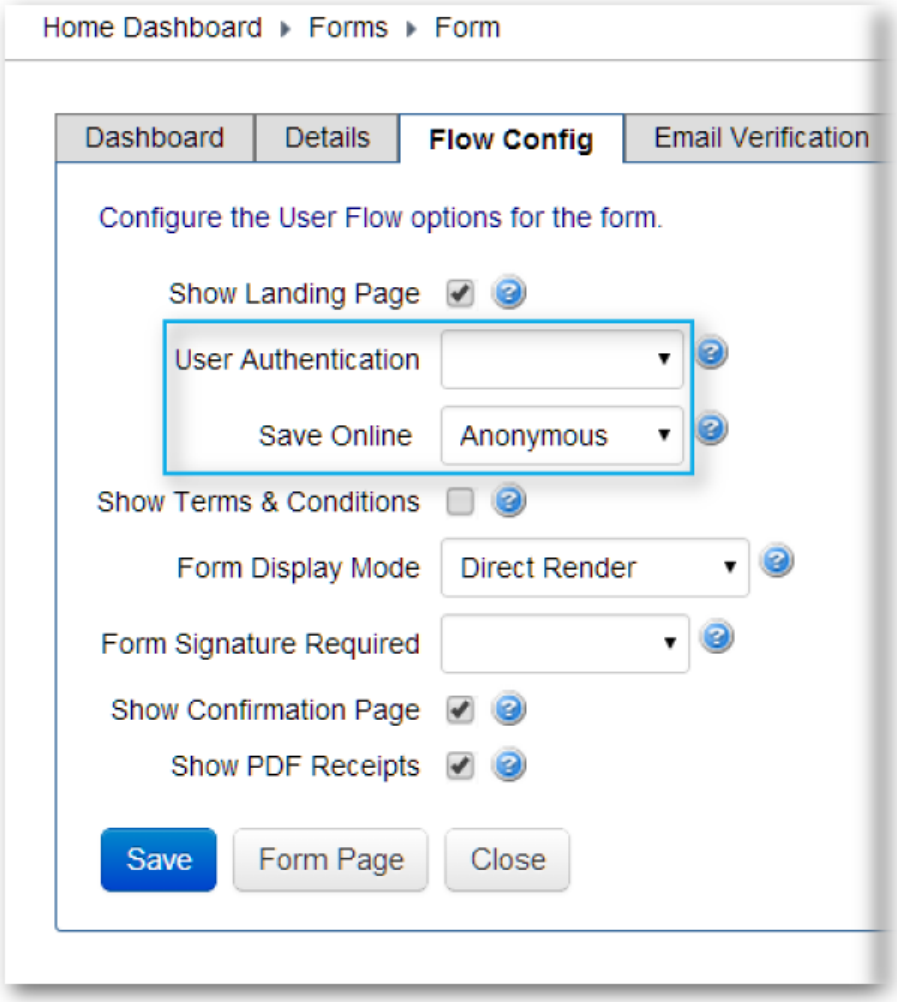
The sharing involves giving the name, email of the nominated other party, and a text area for notes to the other party; then the user, instead of submitting the form (as would be done of the form were complete), clicks on a dedicated button with some appropriate caption like "Activate Sharing". TM generates an email containing a link. The other party clicks on the link and is taken to the form (prefilled with the other user's data) which can then be edited, files attached and so forth.

The following notes on enabling form sharing assume that you are using the standard form sharing widgets that ship with Composer. We do not discuss configuring the form's behavior for, say, edibility or visibility of its fields. We also are using the default submit button, which — without any extra scripting — allows any of the parties to submit the form. After submission, the form sharing ends.

# Minimum Prerequisites for Form Sharing

## User Authentication Settings

The form's Authentication settings are made in Transaction Manager.

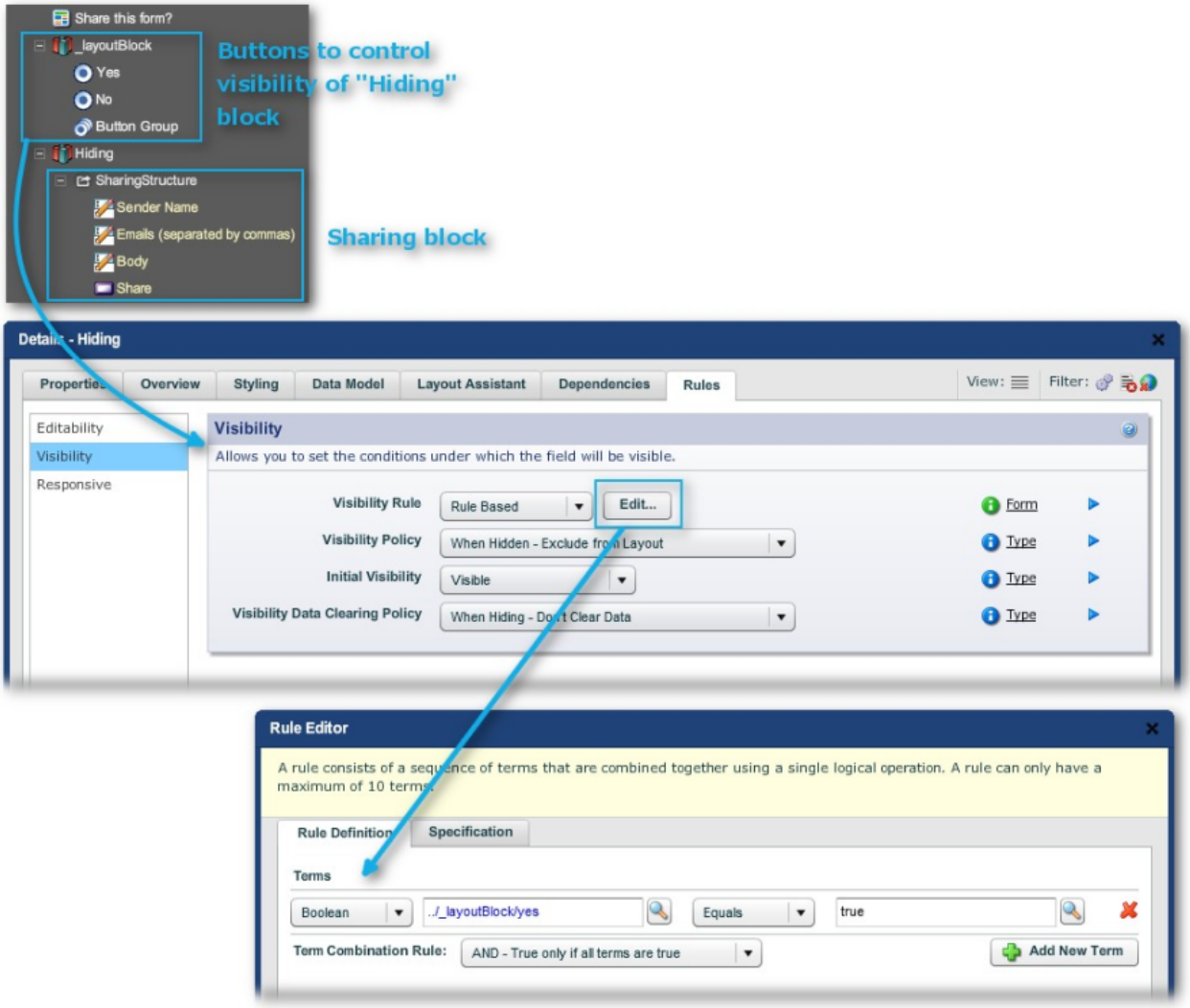



User Authentication has to be Anonymous (or unspecified at the very least). If not, the prefabricated TM Sharing block has scripts that make it invisible to authenticated users.

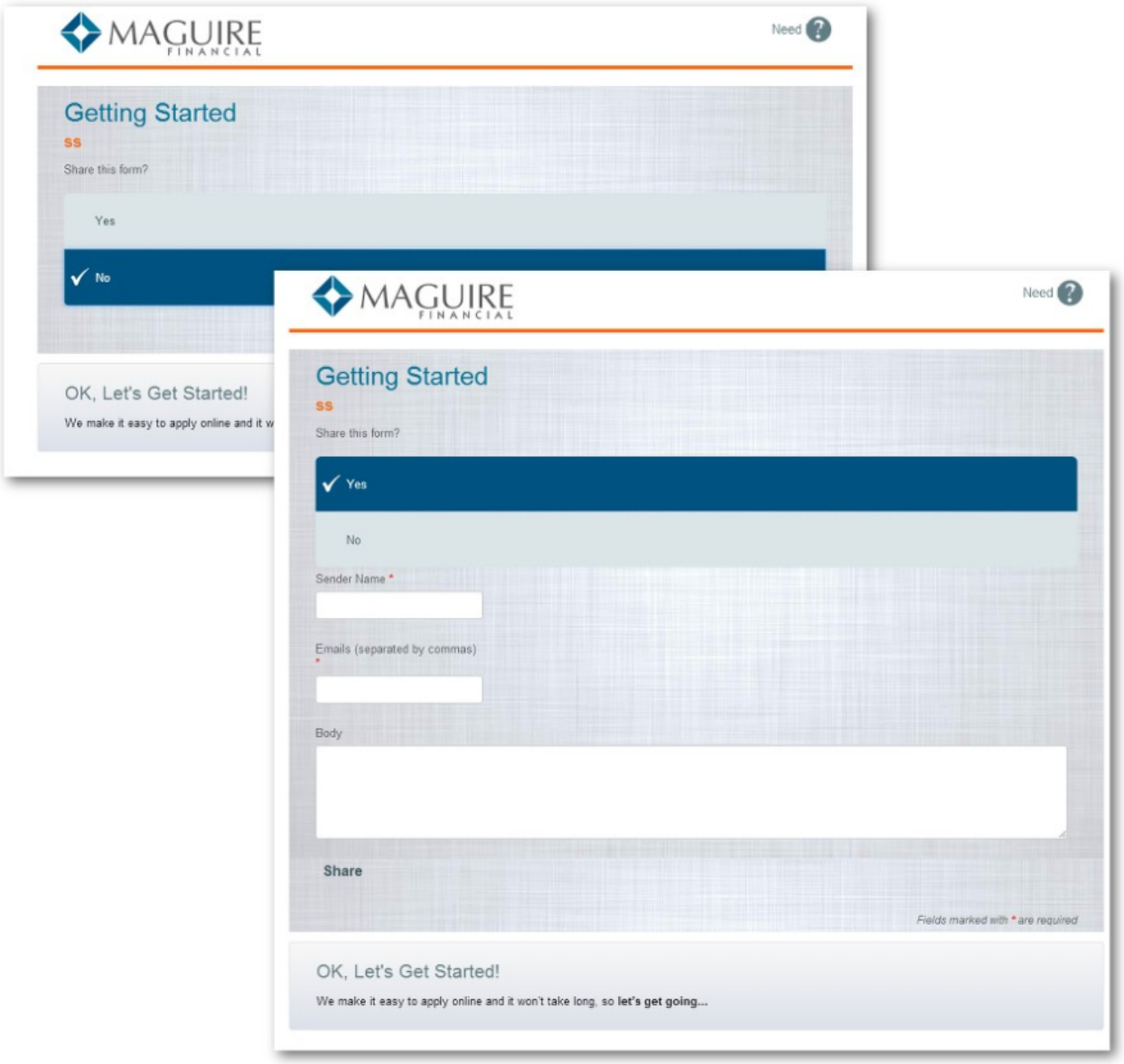
Form saving must also be anonymous so that the other parties can also save the form when they activate the share button.

There must be mandatory fields to capture the contact details of the original form user, otherwise there will be no connection to that person.

# Simple Case using Prefabricated Blocks




Which results in the following behavior.

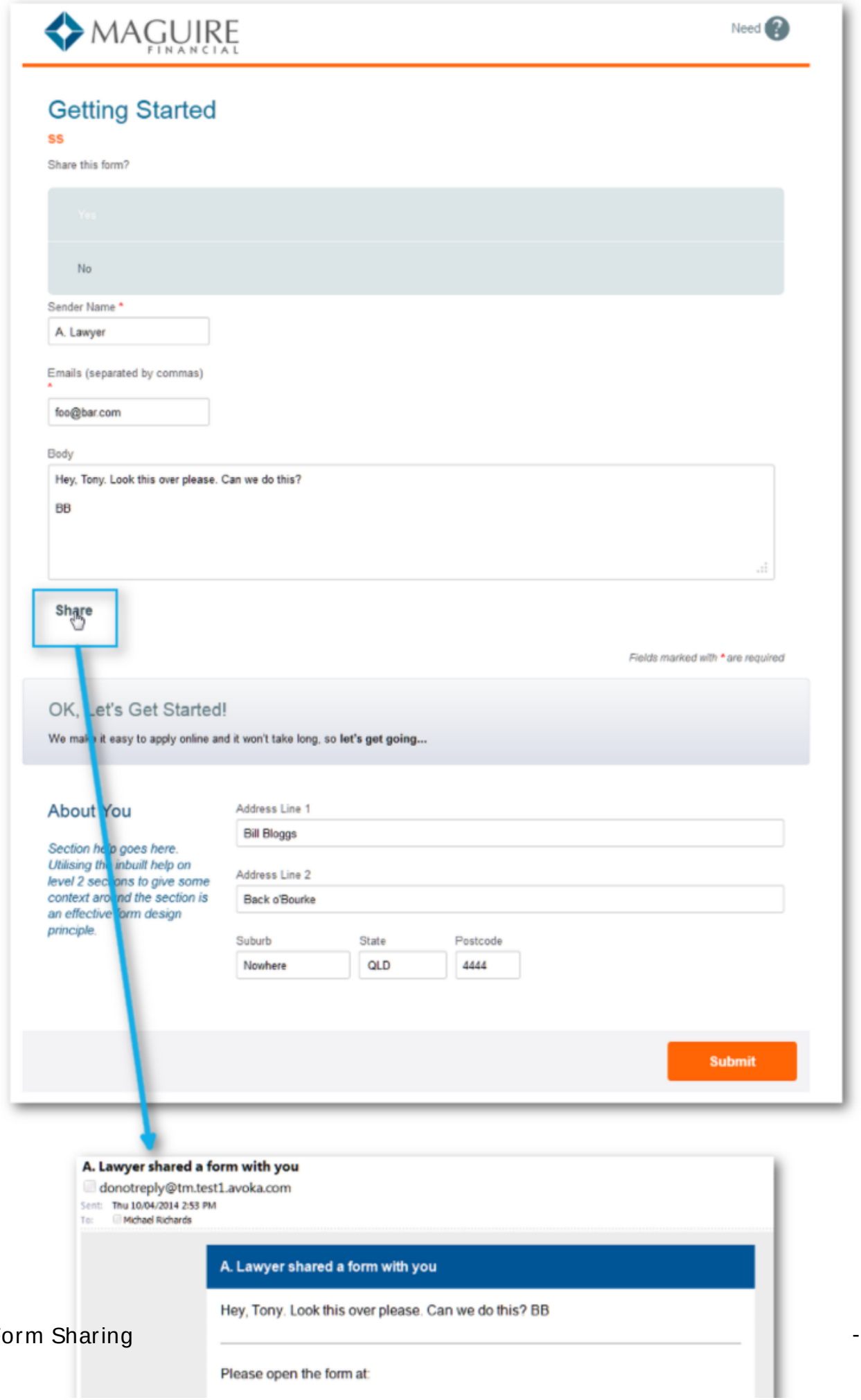



The first party opens the form anonymously (using, in TM terminology, the "form friendly URL"). The user is given 3 choices:

Open New Form Open Saved Form Login and Open Form

For this example, we are going to select the first option.

© 2015 Avoka Technologies Pty Ltd 142


MAGUIRE
FINANCIAL
Need
Getting Started
SS
Share this form?
Yes
No
Sender Name *
A. Lawyer
Emails (separated by commas)
*
foo@bar.com
Body
Hey, Tony. Look this over please. Can we do this?
BB
Share
Fields marked with * are required
OK, Let's Get Started!
We make it easy to apply online and it won't take long, so let's get going...
About You
Section help goes here. Utilising the inbuilt help on level 2 sections to give some context around the section is an effective form design principle.
Address Line 1
Bill Bloggs
Address Line 2
Back o'Bourke
Suburb
Nowhere
State
QLD
Postcode
4444
Submit
A. Lawyer shared a form with you
donotreply@tm.test1.avoka.com
Sent: Thu 10/04/2014 2:53 PM
To: Michael Richards
A. Lawyer shared a form with you
Hey, Tony. Look this over please. Can we do this? BB
Please open the form at:

The second party can then open the form and share it back or submit it.
In TM, you can view the history of the form (when opened, when shared and when submitted) and the contents of the form (in XML).
**Note:** when you are testing form sharing (using a form served by Transaction Manager, not using Composer's Preview), all of the users cannot be logged into any of the portals. To test form sharing, you may have to initiate a new browser session, one in which you have not logged onto a portal. You can get round this be starting another browser altogether; you can already be logged into the portal in Chrome and test form sharing in a fresh session of Firefox.

## Why Hide the Sharing Block?

This prefabricated block is mandatory. The form will not submit if the block is visible, unless the user enters some random data into the fields displaying in-line validation messages.

## Sharing in Collaborations

This is possible to do. However, the user authentication of the first step needs to be anonymous. Also the link back to this user is through email alone and the service definition object will need to be modified. See Collaboration on how this feature works in general. Currently the documentation does not include what to do to be able to share the form before the first submission.

# Composer Form Parts

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Form Parts projects introduce a special type of form known as a part-form. Within a part-form, one or more parts can be created. Inside the part, a form developer can create any content, including entire section level 1's. The parts can then be exported from within the part-form to the organization.

## Overview

In projects where there are many forms and/or larger and more complex forms, two problems can arise:

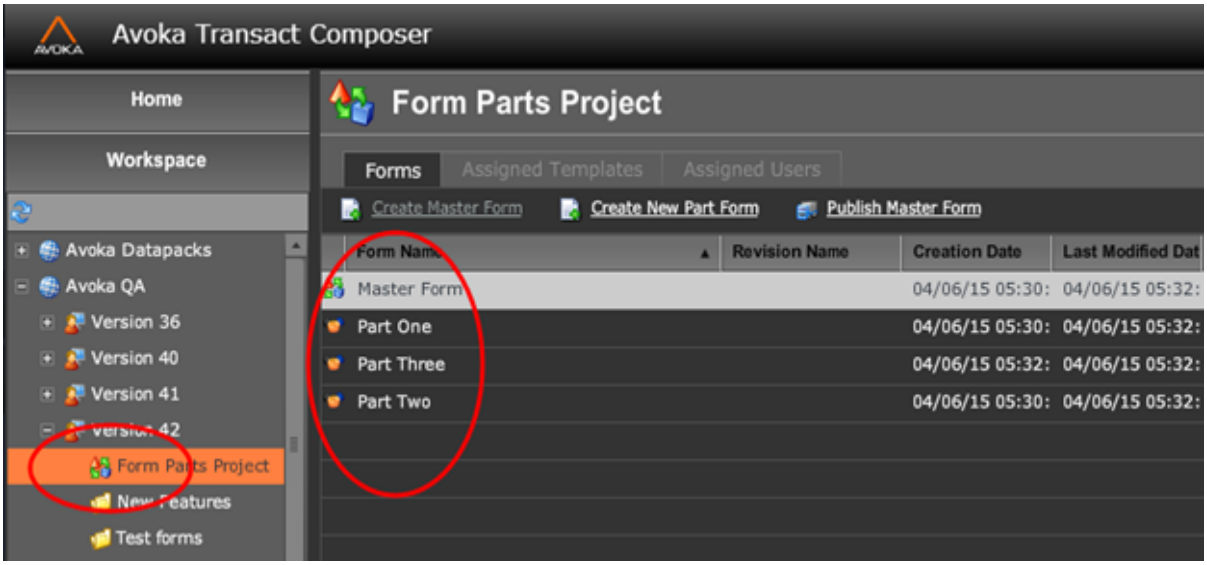
- Composer does not allow two users to work on the same form at the same time.
- Often forms contain large re-usable sections, such as a "Personal Details" section. Blocks can be used to create these sections, however blocks are generally designed for smaller entities, such as an address block. Composer isn't optimized for creating larger blocks, especially those containing sections. The block editor is an advanced tool which is intended for power users, and isn't suitable for editing these types of larger blocks. Instead, it would be preferable to use the regular Composer editing environment for creating these larger blocks.

Form Parts solves both of these problems.

Form Parts projects introduce a special type of form known as a part-form. Within a part-form, one or more parts can be created. Inside the part, a form developer can create any content, including entire section level 1's. The parts can then be exported from within the part-form to the organization.

Another special type of form unique to Form Parts Projects is known as a master form. It is used to include any of the exported parts that have been created in the part-forms. A master form can override properties from the parts if necessary. Business rules can be created either within each part, or in the master form spanning multiple parts.

These new form types are shown below:

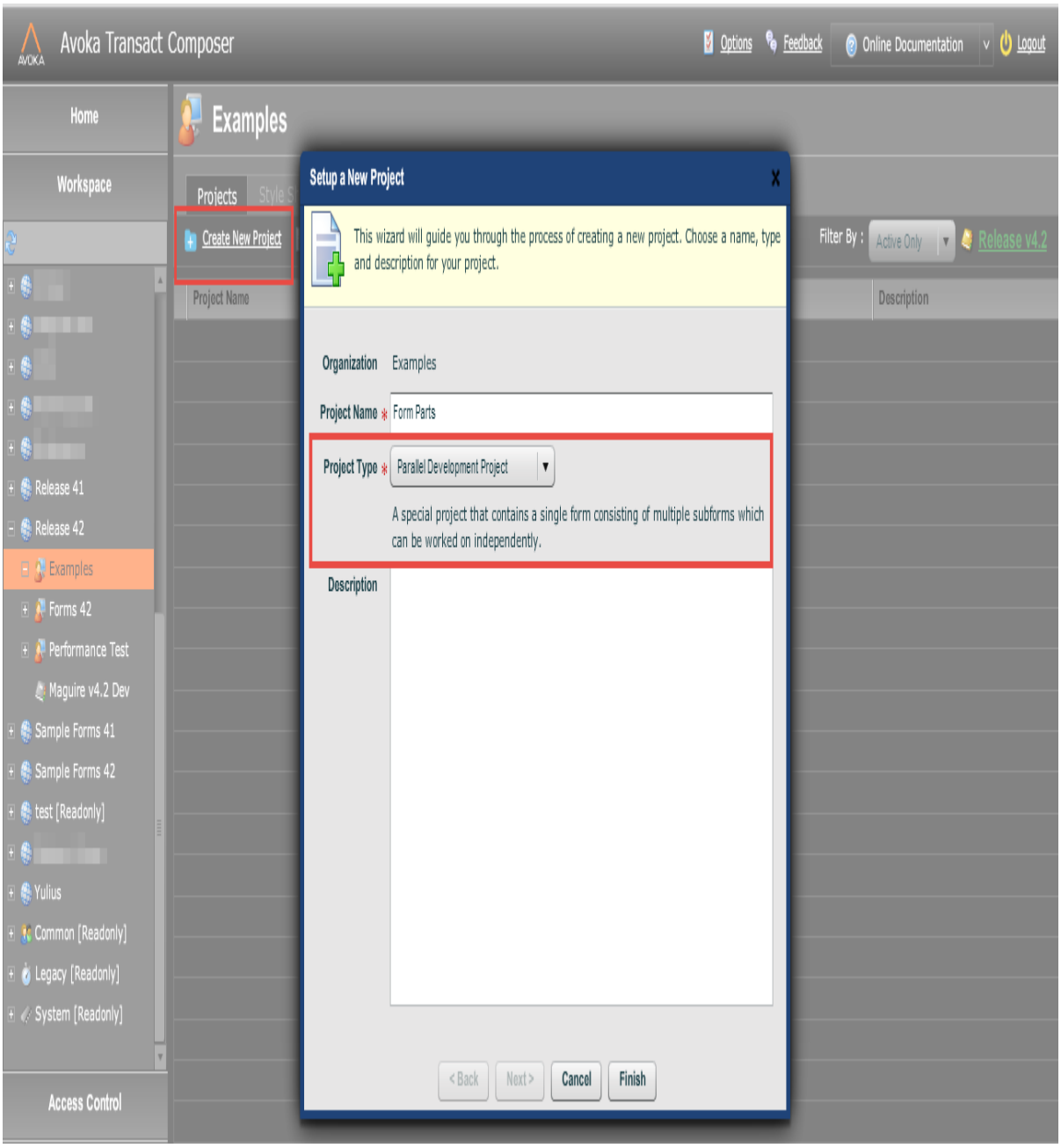



This allows multiple developers to work on different parts of a single form in a controlled and convenient way. It also allows re-usable parts to be created that can be used in multiple master forms.

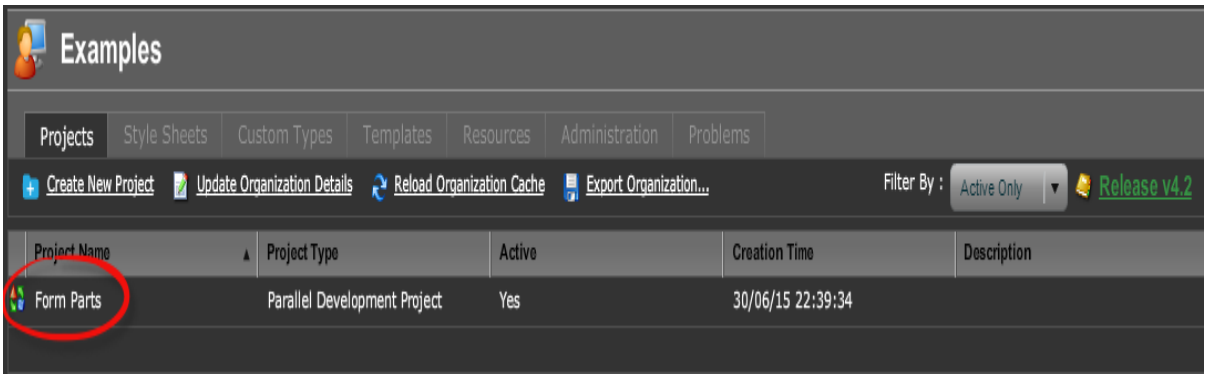
## Setting Up a Form Parts Project

Form Parts projects (also known as Parallel Development projects) behave differently to normal Composer projects. For this reason they are distinguished from normal projects with different icons.

Creation of a Form Parts Project is done at the Organization Level by selecting "Create New Project". In this dialog the Project Type dropdown "Parallel Development Project" must be selected.



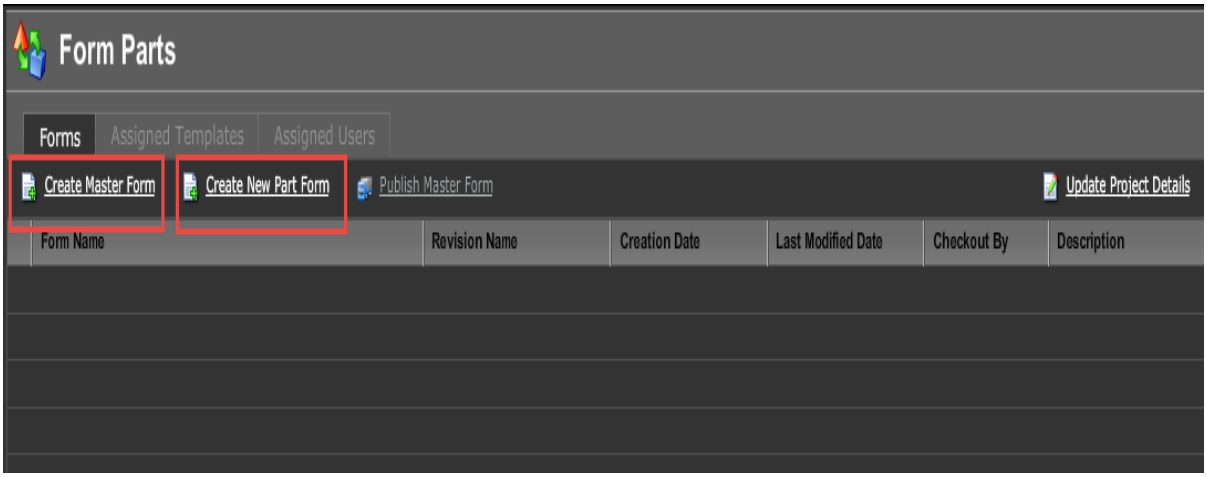

This creates a Form Parts project



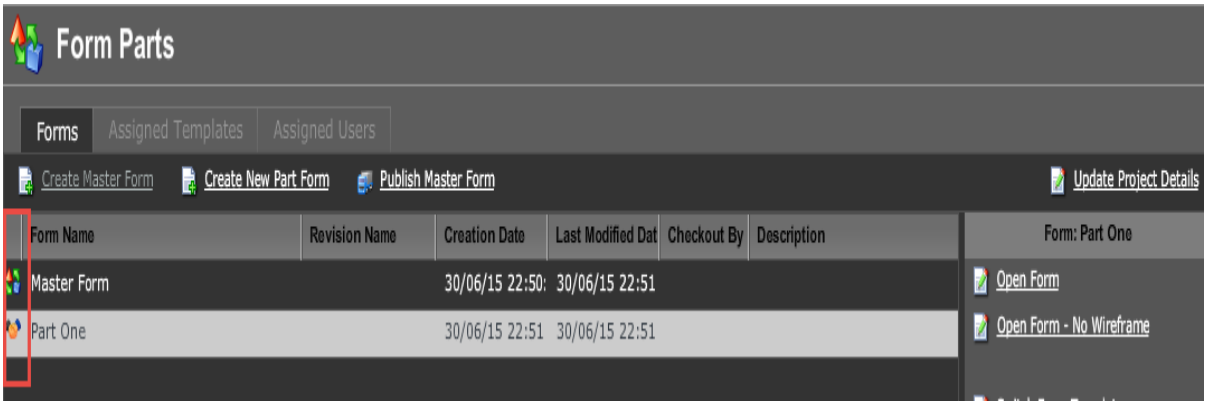
# Creating Master Forms and Part- Forms

At the project level you can create the part-forms and master forms by selecting the options.This process is much the same as creating an ordinary Composer form.

Only one master form can exist in a form part project. Multiple part forms are permitted.

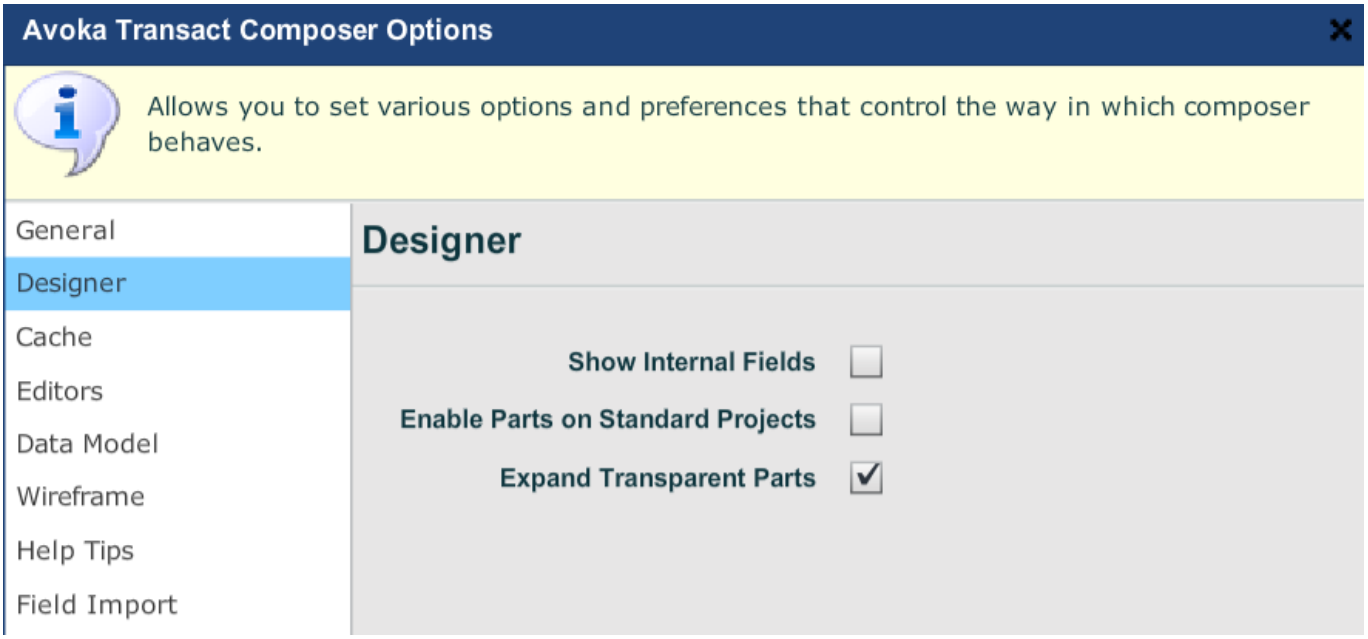



The different form types are distinguished by their icons. The Create Master Form option is now disabled in the screenshot below.




There is nothing special about a Parallel Development project, or the master form or the part forms. These are really just regular project/form, which are tagged in a special way to give them different icons in the Composer user interface. They also enable some special toolbar icons in the project menu, such as Create Master Form and Create New Part Form. You can convert freely between a Parallel Development project and the Standard type of project. You can promote a regular form to a Master form using the right hand icon menu at the project level (but you can only have one master form per Parallel Development project).

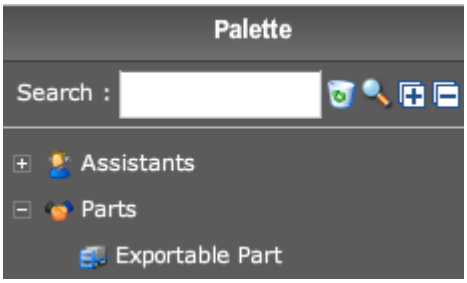
If you wish to use the special parts menu options in a regular project, then you may do so by checking "Enable Parts on Standard Projects" in the Composer Options dialog.




Generally the master form and the parts will all be in a single project. However, a master form in project B can also use parts that are defined in project A. This approach might be useful for the case where multiple forms utilize the same set of common sections, and these sections are defined in a separate common project.

## Creating Parts within the Part Forms

The part forms act as containers for the parts. In order to create a part, drag a Exportable Part from the Parts folder in the palette into the top level of your form.

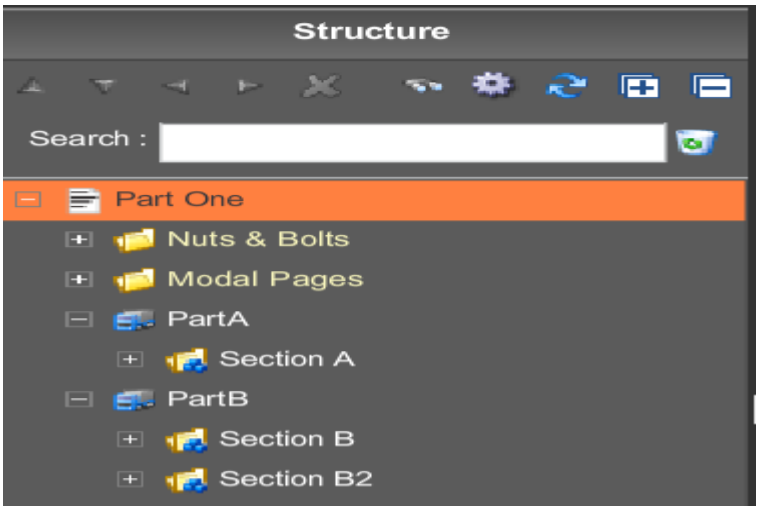



You can have as many parts as you want within each part form.

Parts can be either transparent or opaque. This will be covered later.

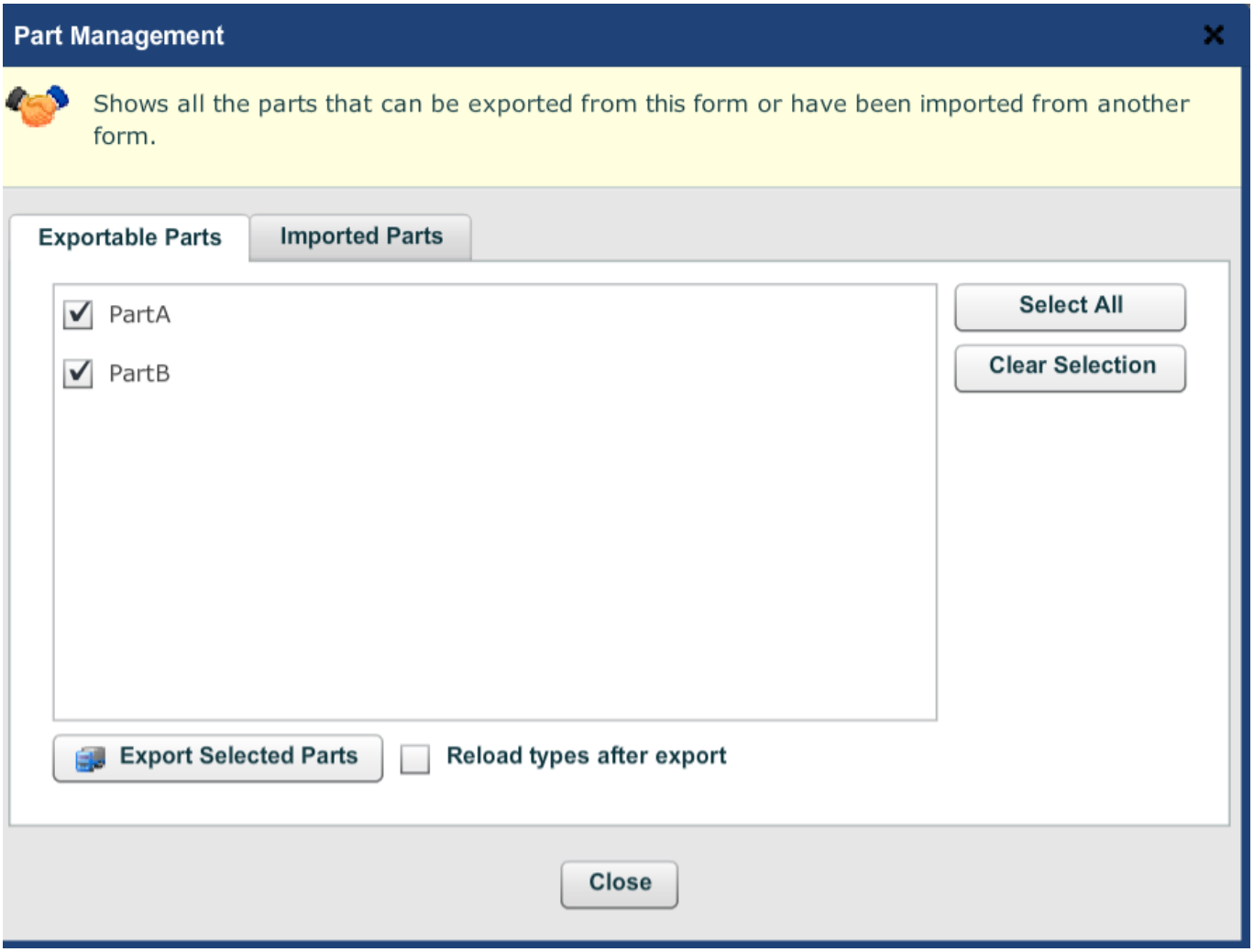
You can then add any content you wish into your Part. In most cases, you will drag a Section Level 1

The example below shows a Part One form that contains two parts, Part A and Part B. Usually a part form will only contain one part, and a each part will contain one section, but this example illustrates that a part form can contain multiple parts, and a part can contain multiple sections if desired. The sections can contain arbitrary content, including fields, blocks and business rules. However, if your form contains multiple parts, you must not create any dependencies or business rules between the parts. Each of the parts can be developed, and tested in isolation, as it it was a normal form.




In general, it is recommended that each part form contain only one part, and that each part contains only one section. It's also usually a good idea to name parts and part forms (and even the sections they contain) using a consistent naming scheme, so that the parts and sections can easily be located.

In order to use these parts within a master form, they must first be exported from the part form. In order to export one or more parts, click on the Parts... icon which is visible in the toolbar of all part forms. This will bring up the Part Management dialog shown below.




Your parts are not available to be used in a master form until they have been exported. Click Export Selected Parts in order to export the selected parts. It is not usually necessary to select "Reload types after export" - use this checkbox if you want to verify that the parts have been exported by viewing them in the component palette.

After exporting, the selected parts will appear on the component palette on the right under the Parts node, with a sub-node which is the name of the project, as shown below:

If you use parts extensively, this can result in many projects and parts under the Parts node, which can become confusing. This can also result in slower time to load the types for the organization. If you use a large numberof parts, you should either use a project and part form naming convention that allows you to easily identify the various parts, or you should create multiple organizations to group the various parts and the forms that use them.

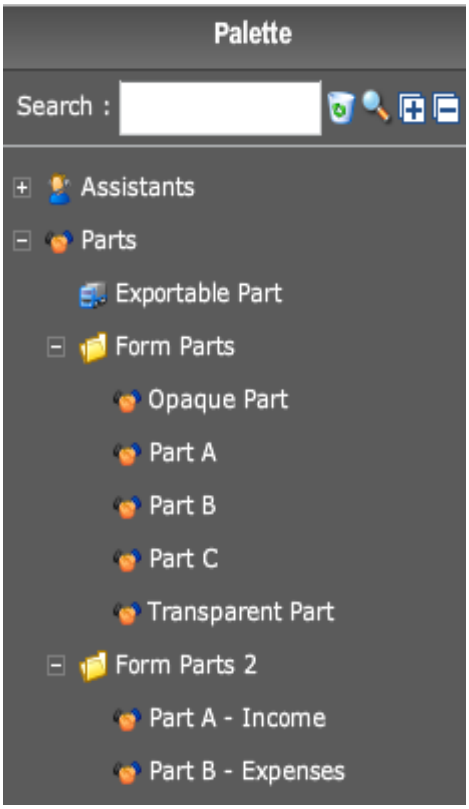
An exported part is actually just a special type of block, similar to a block created using "Save as Custom Block" or the block editor. It is really just the way that the block is created, edited and exported that is different.

Saving the form does not automatically export the parts. And exporting the parts does not automatically save the form. This is important so that you can control when and how you update your exported parts. Each of these operations must be performed separately. This is useful because it allows you to finely control when you make your part available to others. For example, you wouldn't want to export your part if it has a bug, or if you're not finished developing it.

Be careful of renaming a part - the part will be exported under the new name, but the original part will be retained - this may cause confusion. You can manage the parts as in the Custom Types tab at the organization level.

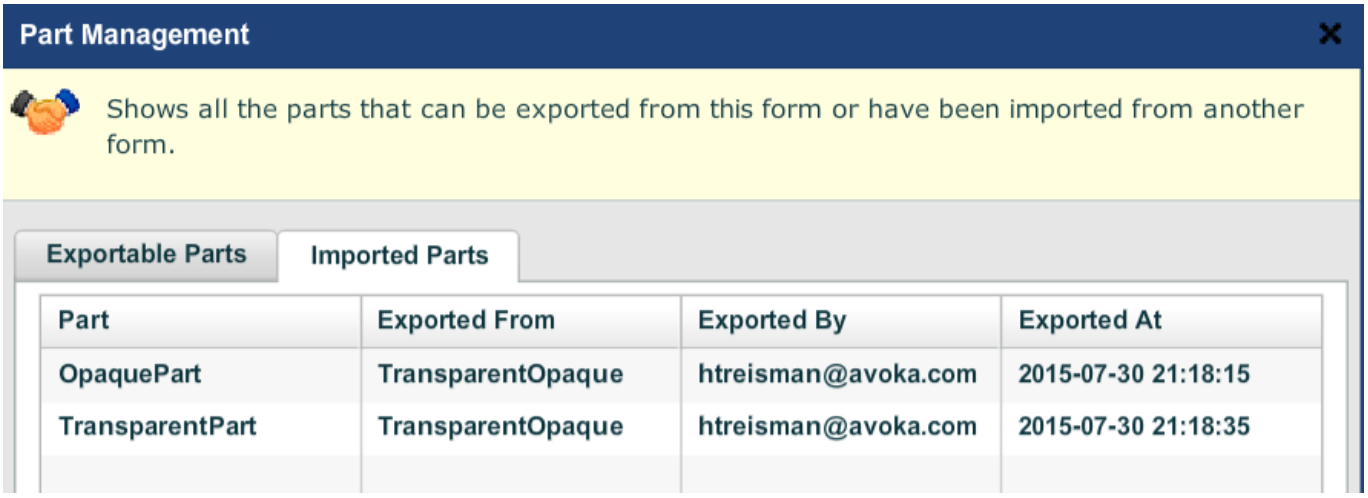
## Combining the Parts to Create a Master Form

In the master form, simply drag and drop the various parts that you require from the Parts folder in the palette into your master form. Because parts are generally section level 1's, you should drag the parts into the top level of the form. For parts that contain other types of content, drag them into the appropriate locations.




Parts are grouped by the name of the Project in which they are defined. You can drag as many parts as you want into your master form.

Once you have imported parts into the master form, you may view a summary of what parts have been included by clicking on the Parts,, button and selecting the Imported Parts tab. This tells you not only what parts are being used, but also which part form they are defined in, and when/who exported them.



Important: it will be important later on when we discuss cross-part business rules that all parts have the same name everywhere. The easiest way to ensure this is to accept the default name for each part when you add it to the master form.

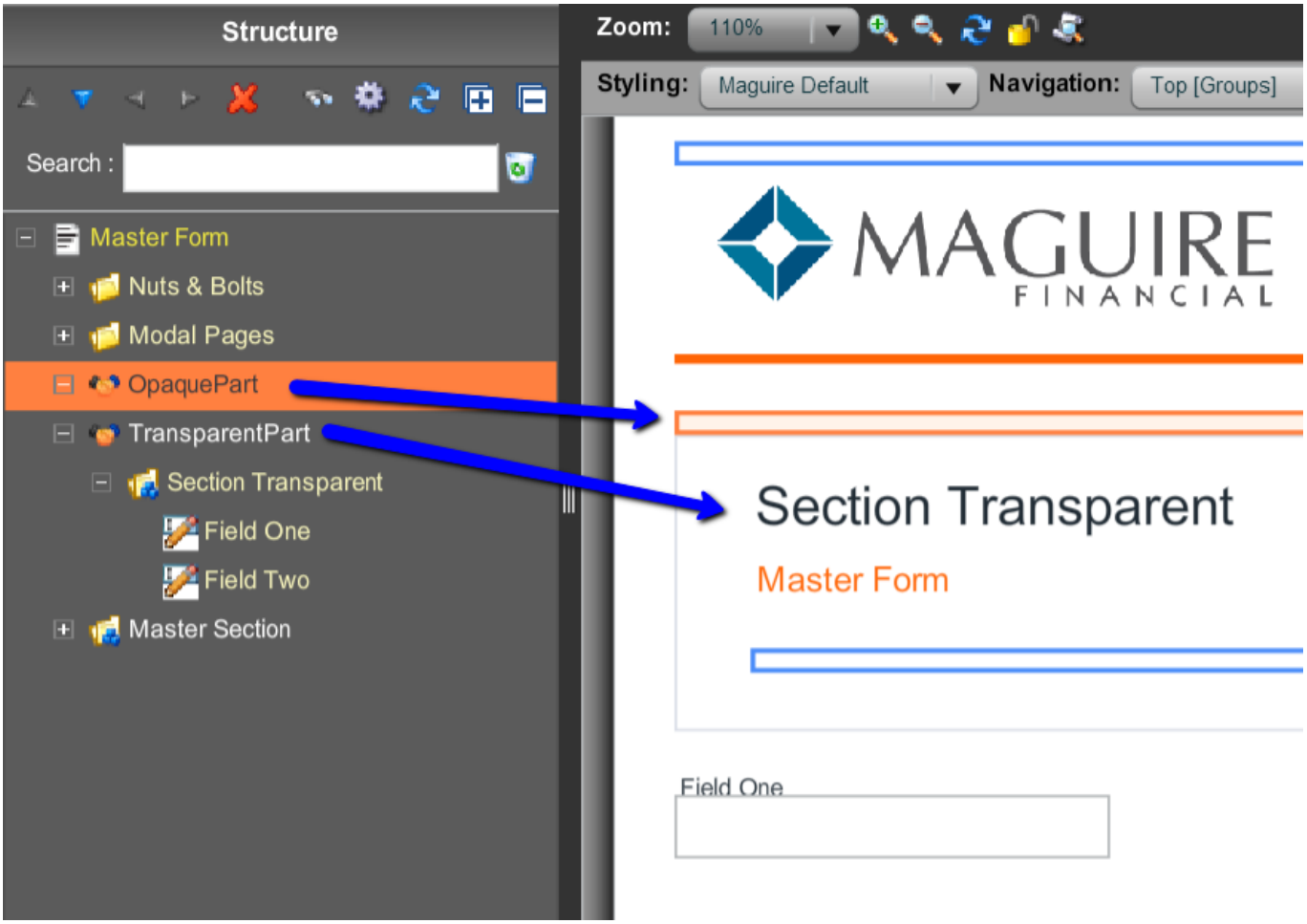
## Opaque and Transparent Parts

A transparent part is the default type of part. When imported into a master form, it looks just like a normal section of the form.

An opaque part is treated as a "black box", and is not actually loaded into the Composer designer. An opaque part's contents will not appear within the structure tree or in the wireframe. However, the contents of an opaque part will appear in the form itself, when previewed or published.

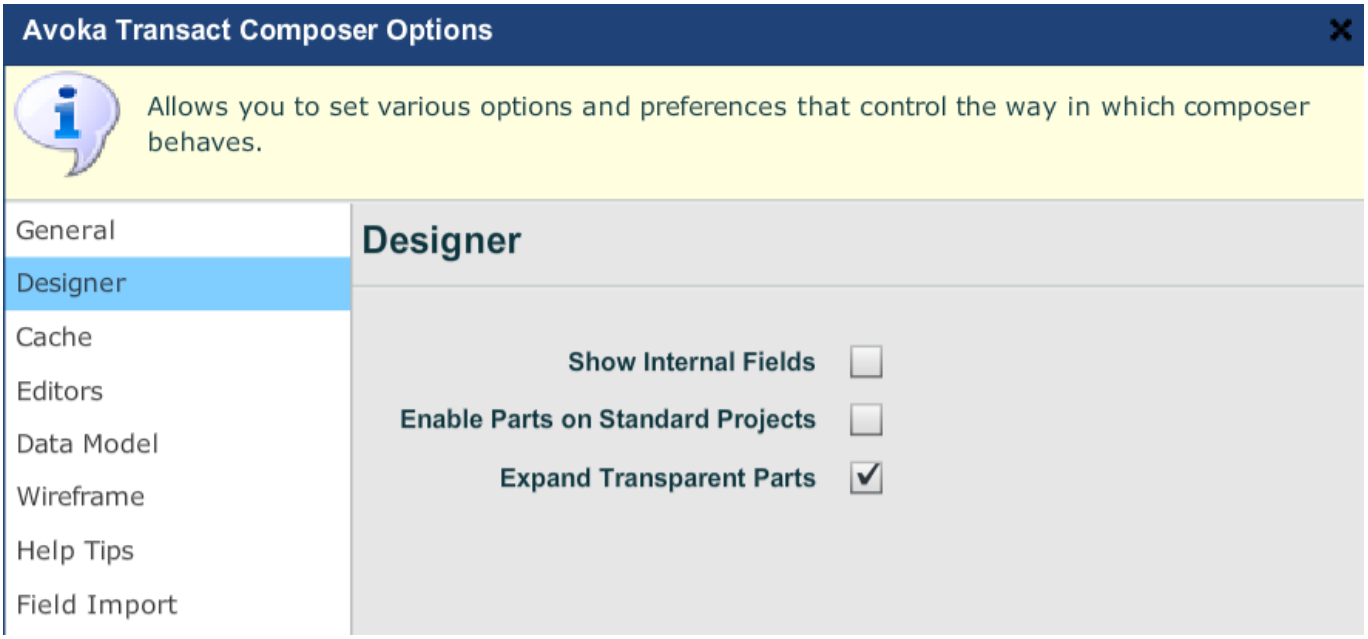
There is no real difference internally between a transparent and opaque part - it is only the Composer editor that treats them differently from a visibility perspective. You can modify whether a part is transparent or opaque in its property dialog.

The difference between an opaque and transparent part when imported into a master form is shown in the picture below.




You can mark your parts as opaque in order to indicate your intention that your part should be used "as-is", and not modified. An opaque part will also mean that the form using the opaque part will load quicker.

By default, transparent parts will not have their contents displayed in the structure tree. This serves as a reminder that the contents of the part are not intended to be modified. In order to see the contents of transparent parts in the structure tree, you need to select "Expand Transparent Parts" in the Composer Options dialog.

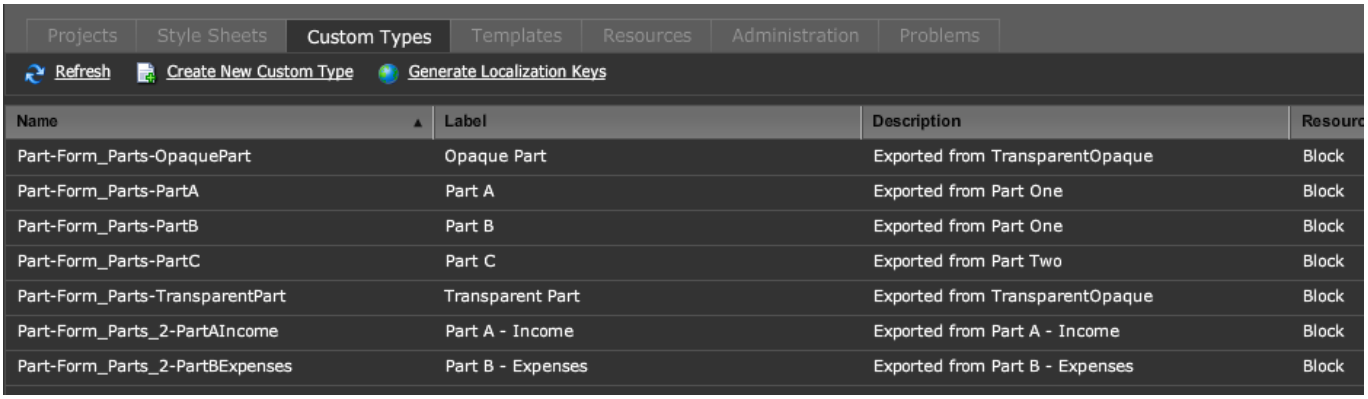



Even if the "Expand Transparent Parts" option is unchecked, the fields in a Transparent part are always available in the rules editor, and so may be used within rules.

## Parts and Versioning

Part Forms (the forms that contain the parts) are like any other type of form, and benefit from the usual Composer form versioning capabilities. However, the parts themselves, which are exported from these part forms, and which exist within the component palette, only have a single version - this being the latest version that was exported.

Under the covers, parts are exported as regular Composer blocks, and can be viewed within the Custom Types tab at the Organization level.




| Name | Label | Description | Resourc |
|---|---|---|---|
| Part-Form_Parts-OpaquePart | Opaque Part | Exported from TransparentOpaque | Block |
| Part-Form_Parts-PartA | Part A | Exported from Part One | Block |
| Part-Form_Parts-PartB | Part B | Exported from Part One | Block |
| Part-Form_Parts-PartC | Part C | Exported from Part Two | Block |
| Part-Form_Parts-TransparentPart | Transparent Part | Exported from TransparentOpaque | Block |
| Part-Form_Parts_2-PartAIncome | Part A - Income | Exported from Part A - Income | Block |
| Part-Form_Parts_2-PartBExpenses | Part B - Expenses | Exported from Part B - Expenses | Block |

If you wish to revert to a previous version of a part, you must open the version of the part form that contains it, and re-export.

# Cross-part rules

When business rules exist entirely within a part, then they are very easy to set up - simply define the rules within each part as normal, and the rules will be imported along with the part into the master form. However, when it is necessary to define rules at the master form level that span multiple parts, then things can get a little more complicated.

There are several different approaches to dealing with cross-part rules. The approach you choose will depend on the sophistication of the form and the business rules, as well as the sophistication of your development team. Three different approaches are discussed below. There are probably other approaches that can be used too, but these are the recommended approaches.

All of these approaches require the development teams to use discipline in the way that they use the parts capabilities. It is possible for a single project to mix and match the various techniques listed below - but this can become confusing, and it recommended that the form developers on a project consciously select a particular approach and stick to it.

**Simple - All Cross-part Rules in the Master Form**

All the cross-part rules are defined in the master form, as if it were just a single large form. Rules can be set up that include fields in any of the parts, and/or any of the fields that are explicitly placed in the master form. This has the advantage that it is very simple to use and understand.

However, it suffers from some disadvantages:

- All the responsibilities and dependencies are on the master form developer. If there are a large number of cross-part rules, this limits the ability for multiple developers to be able to work independently on these rules.
- When any of the parts are changed, the master form developer needs to fix everything in the master form. In some cases, it might be preferable for each part developer to manage their own cross-part rules.

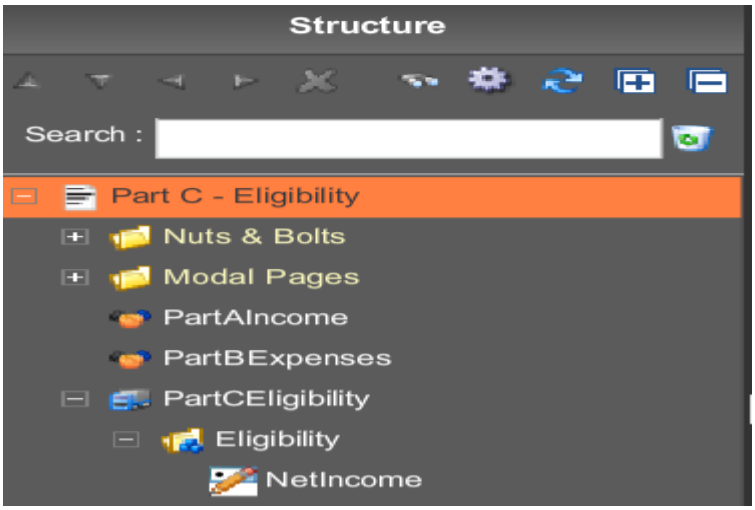
**Normal - Each Part References Other Parts it Requires.**

This is a slightly more sophisticated approach, and encourages each part developer to define and maintain the rules in their own parts independently.

Let's consider the following example:

- Part A - Income Section. This section has a numeric field named TotalIncome.
- Part B - Expenses Section. This section has a numeric field named TotalExpenses.
- Part C - Eligibility Section. This section contains a calculation for a field NetIncome = TotalIncome- TotalExpenses, which is in turn used to determine whether a customer is eligible for a loan.

The developers of Parts A and B develop their parts as usual. The developer of Part C, because there is a dependency on fields outside of his part, will add these parts into the part form. The Structure tree for Part C is shown below:




Note that:

- The above diagram is the structure for Part C, NOT for the master form. The master form will include parts A, B and C, but will not directly contain any business rules.
- Part C is defined and modified within this part form. But parts A and B are defined elsewhere, and simply imported so that they can be referenced.

The developer of Part C will include the calculation rule into Part C. When Part C is exported, it will contain a business rule that references Parts A and B.

When Parts A, B and C (and any other additional parts) are included in the master form, the business rule that exists in part C will reference fields in other parts. However, since these parts also exist within the master form (as imported parts), the references will be correctly resolved, and the business rule will work correctly. (This is why it was stated earlier that each part should always be given the same name wherever it it used.)

Tips:

- Within the Part C form, only add cross-part business rules to Part C (not Parts A or B). Because we are only exporting Part C, any business rules you add to parts A or B will never be exported.
- When editing a part form, use Transparent parts, but uncheck "Expand Transparent Parts" in the Composer Options screen. This will display the imported parts without any contents, as shown above. This will serve as a reminder to not add any business rules to these parts. The business rule editors will still allow you to create rules in Part C that include field from Parts A and B.
- You can preview and test your form as if it were a complete form.
- You can set the wireframe to only display Part C, using the Wireframe Options button. That way your form will load faster, and also you won't be tempted to accidentally add rules to parts that aren't defined in this form.
- If one of the other editors makes a change to part A or B, you may need to adjust rule business rules. However, you can usually detect this using the Problems pane.
- When working in a single form, Composer will automatically refactor your business rules if you move or rename a dependent field. However, this will not be done when the dependent field is modified in a different part. It is therefore advisable to either limit the number of changes made, or to communicate well between developers when these changes are made. The Problems pane will notify you of any errors.
- Generally when using this approach, the master form just contains a series of parts, and has no content or business rules of its own. It is possible to mix the approaches, but this is not recommended, as it can get very confusing.

This approach does have a number of disadvantages in certain situations:

- Part C has a dependency on Parts A and B. It will fail if used in a form that does not have Parts A and B, and cannot be used independently of them.
- This approach may not work very well when a particular form has business rules that reference a large number of different parts - you may be better off using the Simple approach in this case.

Despite these minor disadvantages, this is the approach that is generally recommended.

**Advanced - Model/View/Controller**

This is an advanced approach to cross-part rules, using a well-known pattern from software engineering, the Model/View/Controller pattern. In this approach, rather than

defining business rules directly between the fields of one part and those of another, an intermediate data model is constructed, which serves as the communication mechanism between the parts. In summary:

- Model = a special "data model" part containing only data fields. (A data field is a special invisible field available in the palette.)
- View = the regular parts containing sections.
- Controller = the cross-part business rules (these can be defined in a number of places, as described below).

This approach is a little more complicated than the preceding ones, and requires some discipline and rigor in the development process. However, it has the advantages of:

- An explicit definition of what data is shared between the parts.
- A software "contract" about how this data is shared and used.
- There are no direct dependencies between any part and any other part - there is only a dependency between each part and the shared data model. This means that each of the part forms only need to include the model part, and nothing else.

When creating the model, there are some interesting choices about what data elements to create in the model, and where to place the rules (or controller). For example, if we had a simple calculation of "C = A + B", where A, B and C are each in a different part, then we could have any of the following:

- A and B in the model. C exists only as a real field, and contains the calculation.
- A, B and C in the model. The business rule exists on data element C within the model. The real field C has a calculation equaling the data field C.
- Other choices are possible.

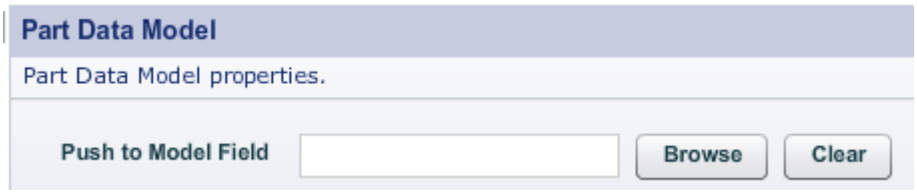
One simple approach is to only include in the model those fields that are needed for business rules in other parts, and only to include business rules in the parts. However, your project team may choose a different approach.

Once the model has been created, it is imported into each of the part forms, and then two steps need to be performed:

1. Create any business rules that are dependent on data fields in the model.
2. "Push" the values of any fields that need to update the values in the model. (It is up to the developers to ensure that each field in the model is only updated by a single real field.)

Note that while it is theoretically possible for the model to "pull" the values it needs from the various parts, this breaks one of the fundamental principles of model/view/controller, in that the model has no dependencies on any of the views. Views can reference the model, but the model should not reference the views.

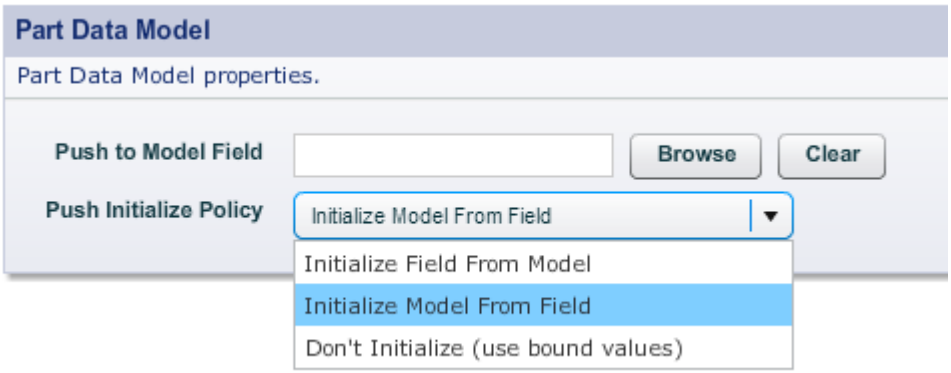
In order to do this, you can use the "Push to Model Field" property of the Part Data Model section on the Properties/Data tab of the properties dialog.




Another interesting decision occurs because you now have two fields (a data field in the model, and a real field in the view), both of which represent the same physical data element. The question becomes: How do we bind these two fields to the XML, and initialize each of the values? Remember that when a Composer form loads, each field will first have its value initialized from the XML data it is bound to, and then any business rules will be fired. The choices are as follows:

1. Bind the real field to initialize it. Initialize the model field from the real field.
2. Bind the model field to initialize it. Initialize the real field from the model field.
3. Bind both fields. No additional initialization is necessary, because they are both bound, and will both be set from the binding values in the XML. This can be a little dangerous, because you are responsible for ensuring that the XML contains the same value in both locations, which in turn ensures that both fields are initialized to the same value. If the XML is inconsistent, you will get strange behavior, with rules not appearing to reflect the data shown. Alternately, you could selected either "Initialize Field from Model" or "Initialize Model from Field", and even though both are bound, as soon as the form loads, the second field will be set to the value of the first one.

You can control which of these approaches using the "Push Initialize Policy" property, as shown below.




The decision outlined above actually occurs any time that you have two different fields that represent the same piece of data, not just in this approach to cross-part rules. The same reasoning, and the same solutions, can be used in these cases also.

When using this approach, it is recommended that you make each of the view parts opaque, and the model part transparent.

# Usability & Accessibility

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## General Statement

The W3C defines Accessibility as "Web accessibility means that people with disabilities can use the Web. More specifically, Web accessibility means that people with disabilities can perceive, understand, navigate, and interact with the Web... ". For more information, see http://www.w3.org/WAI/intro/accessibility.php/

Accessibility is challenging. Users with vision impairment, who depend on Screen Reader applications that read aloud the contents of a web page, have to be accommodated. Forms also must cater for partial visual impairment (such as color blindness or poor acuity), cognitive impairment, motor and auditory disabilities.

Composer does a number of things to assist compliance:

- Composer generates many of the HTML tags that are required for correct accessibility. For example, all images are generated with an ALT tag so that blind users can have the image read out to them.
- Composer test forms are verified by a number of accessibility test tools to ensure that the HTML Composer generates passes these tools' criteria.
- Composer's use of stylesheets means that if your first form is accessible, then all subsequent forms are much more likely to be accessible.

However, while Composer tries to do as much as possible, it cannot absolutely verify that your forms are accessible. For example, while Composer will generate an ALT tag for your images, it cannot verify that the tag's text is actually a good description of the image.

Composer will apply consistent colors and styles, but it cannot verify the the contrast of your foreground text against your background color meets the criteria W3C criteria. For more information, see the full WCAG guidelines at http://www.w3.org/TR/WCAG/

To summarize, the accessibility of your forms is ultimately your responsibility.

Our latest portals are largely WCAG compliant, but be aware that individual forms may not be. Some customizations can defeat WCAG compliance.

There is a misconception that the use of JavaScript in a web page makes the page inaccessible. This is completely incorrect. This comes from a perception many years ago, that certain operations in JavaScript confuse screen readers. However, modern screen readers handle JavaScript well, and in fact some JavaScript can make your forms easier for all users, including the disabled. The appropriate use of JavaScript is more of a positive for the disabled users — for example, hiding a section that isn't relevant means that the unsighted user will not have to tab through many irrelevant fields.

Temenos will aim to achieve 100% WCAG v2 AA compliance in TotalValidator, and 100% compliance in SiteMorse.
While we do pass automated tests, we also understand that there is a difference between passing tests and being truly accessible. Any additional or specific Accessibility requirements are not necessarily in scope but will be dealt with on a case by case basis.

# FAQs

### Question:

Are we confident to state that they will be WCAG v2 AA compliant for forms created in Composer?

### Short Answer:

No. We will never be able to certify that. But we can make it as easy as possible to achieve AA.

### Long answer:

Passing automated tests doesn't guarantee compliance (although it's a good start). Automated tests tell you when you've done something wrong, but they don't tell you when you've failed to do something right. We are in the process of doing further human expert tests on sample forms to improve our compliance.
Ask two different "experts" to certify a form, you can very often get two different answers – there is a level of subjectivity in interpreting WCAG. It also depends on the browser, and the screen reader.

Composer is just a tool. It helps you to build forms that work well, but it also allows you to do what you want. You could easily do things in your form, either intentionally or unintentionally, because of the way you build it, or the JavaScript you hand-craft, that breaks accessibility. We can NEVER certify that your forms will be accessible just

because our tool starts from a good place. For example, you may put light grey text on a dark grey background and fail contrast requirements. Or name an image inappropriately. It's a bit like asking Microsoft to certify that all documents you produce will be spelled correctly just because Word has a spell checker.

Ultimately, meeting the needs of people with disabilities is about trying to do the right thing. Organizations will be attacked if they appear not to care. Being concerned, but making some mistakes, and learning from them is defensible. Picking the right tool is a good start. Doing some accessibility testing as part of your development process would further support your good intentions.

Ultimately, the only way you can be 100% sure that the forms you build are accessible is to get an accessibility expert to test them.

## Tab Order

Tab Order is the order in which your cursor will navigate from one field to another when you press the Tab key. This is particularly important for users who touch-type, who want to avoid taking their hands off the keyboard and onto the mouse in order to move to the next field; and also for visually or physically impaired users, who favor the keyboard over the mouse.

In Composer, you don't have to set the tab order - Composer sets the tab order for you. There is nothing for you to do, and nothing for you to maintain. If you insert a new field, it will simply be added in the correct tab order relative to the fields around it.

If you need to explicitly control the order of tabbing, you can achieve some control by wrapping your fields in blocks. Tabbing will always occur from field to field within a block before moving to fields in subsequent blocks.

# Privacy

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## General Overview

Privacy of information has, for us, 3 major concerns:

1. That only appropriate information is temporarily retained and then submitted
2. That the submission is sent securely to the server
3. That submitted information is retained securely

Only the first of these is the concern of form designers using Composer.

## Privacy Concerns with Hidden Fields

Many organizations have strict data privacy policies. A common policy is that the organization should never collect data that the end-user is not aware of. This can be an issue in the following example:

The end user indicates that they would like to include insurance for a spouse by clicking the "Insure my spouse" checkbox.

The form displays an optional section, where the spouse's details are collected.

The end-user later decides not to insure their spouse, and unchecks the "Insure my spouse" checkbox. The Spouse section is hidden.

The end user is now submitting private information about their spouse, that is not required, but has been captured in fields that are no longer visible. This can be viewed as a privacy breach.

Here are two ways of solving this problem:

## Clear Hidden Data on Submit

The standard Composer Submit button has a property named "Clear Hidden Data on Submit". This is checked by default. If this property is selected, the form will automatically clear the values of any fields that are hidden when the form is submitted.

**Note**: The Submit button also has a property named "Clear Non-editable Data on Submit". This is rarely turned on, but is available if required.

### Overriding

Sometimes it is necessary to preserve the data in an invisible field even though the user can't see it. For example, there may be a calculated field that is used purely for internal purposes, or there may be fields that are used to communicate information between the form the Transaction Manager.

You may override the usual Clear Hidden Data on Submit behavior on the Submit button by selecting the Preserve If Not Visible option in the Data Clearing Policy property on the Data tab.

**Note**: There is a special Composer field named "Data Field". This is just a regular Text Field, but is invisible by default, and has Data Clearing Policy set to Preserve. It is intended to store (and submit) internal data rather than user-visible data.

## Clear Data when Hidden

Another option it to clear the data as soon as the field is made invisible. This is controlled by an advanced policy property in the Rules area. In most cases this is set to false. The same policy also exists for Read-only fields, although the need for this is rare.

There are pros and cons to this approach:

Pro: It is quite obvious to the end-user that their hidden data is cleared, because if they re-show the data, it will be cleared.



Con: If the user accidentally hides a field or section they have already entered information into, that information will be lost, to their annoyance.

**Note**: If a field is hidden implicitly (for example, because it is on a wizard page that is currently hidden), the data will not be cleared.

## When to Clear Data

The decision whether to clear data from fields on their first hiding or on submission of the form, is a policy decision for each organization.

In both cases, privacy is maintained.

Clear-on-submit generally provides a better user experience.

Clear-on-hide provides a more obvious demonstration to the end-user that their private data will be removed.

Composer's defaults focus on user experience, and so hidden fields clear on submit by

default. You may change these defaults in your organization or in a particular form if desired. Please contact Avoka for details on how to set this up in your style-sheets.

# Validation

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

A validation rule verifies the data entered into a form. The simplest and most common type of validations are single field validations, which validate the data in a single field. More complex validations use the values of several different fields.
**Note**: Validation rules fire only once the user has entered data into the field. You may want to combine a Validation Rule with a Mandatory Rule to ensure that the user enters valid data.
Composer provides several types of standard validation types:

## Fixed Length

The fixed length rule ensures that the length of the data (ie the number of characters typed) is exactly the value specified. This is usually useful for a customer identification number or similar that is a fixed length.

## Regular Expression

A regular expression is a sophisticated, industry-standard way of specifying a validation pattern. An explanation of regular expressions is beyond the scope of this document, but there are numerous books and web sites that you can refer to. You can also use search engines to find standard regular expressions for common types of data. An example of some regular expressions are:
^[a-zA-Z0-9_-\.]@[a-zA-Z0-9_-\.]\.[a-zA-Z]{2,4}$ - email address
^http\://[a-zA-Z0-9-\.]+\.[a-zA-Z]{2,3}(/\S*)?$ - URL A good resource for regular expressions is: {+}http://regexlib.com/+.
Online regular expression editor and evaluator can be found at: {+}http://g-skinner.com/RegExr/+ and {+}http://+ www.debuggex.com/.
The download from following site can also be helpful: {+}http://www.weitz.de/regex-coach/+.

# Validation Script

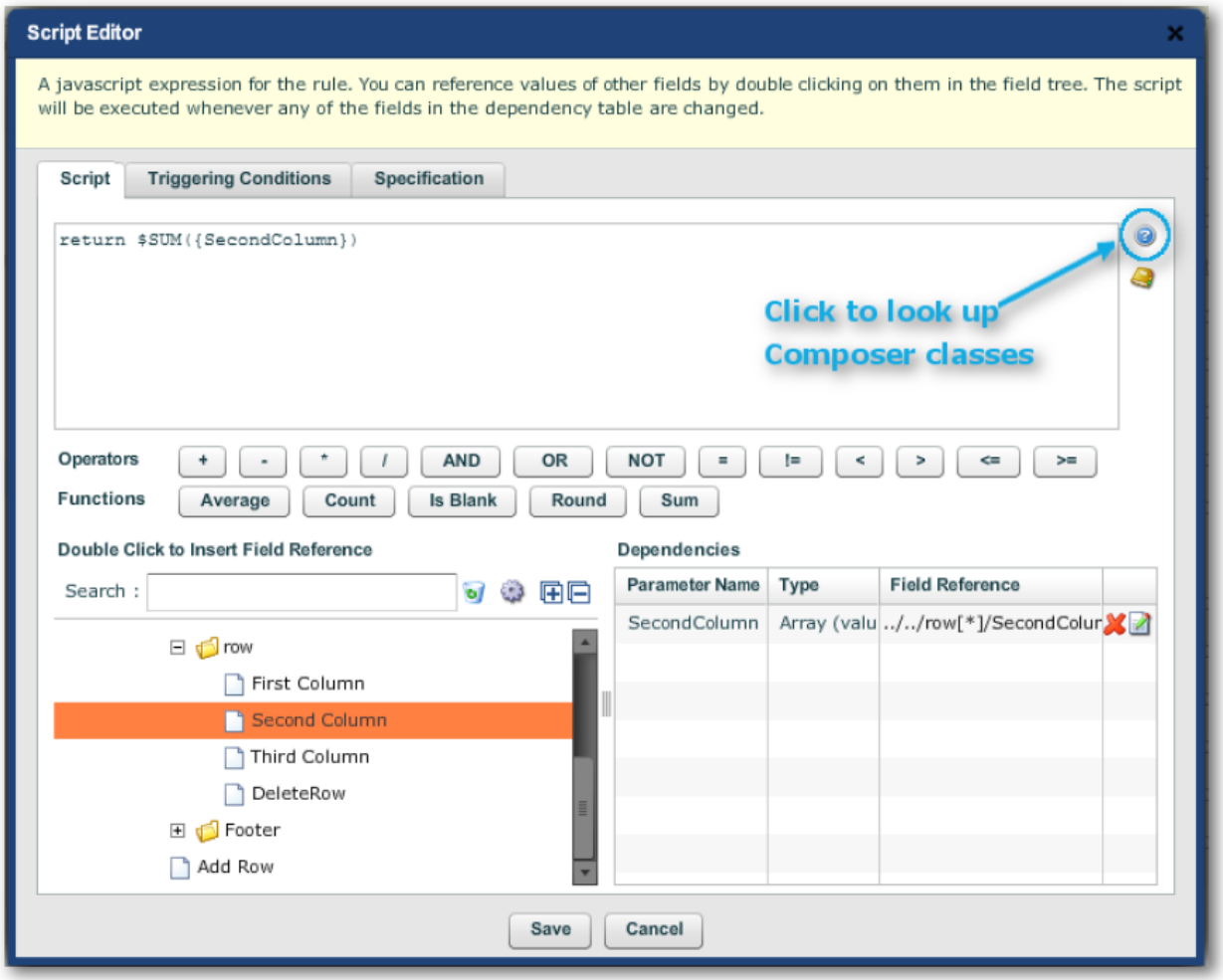
You can write a JavaScript function of arbitrary complexity to evaluate the value entered into any field. In order to write a validation script, you will need to have some minimal JavaScript knowledge. If you return false, the validation will fail.

Here is a sample validation script:

var myvalue = sfc.convertToString(sfc.getRawValue(me)); //1if (myvalue.length < 3) return false; //2

if (myvalue.match("[0-9]")) return false; //3 return true; //4

Line 1: This is the usual way to obtain the value of the current field. The "sfc" functions are standard functions that are provided within the Composer libraries. For a full listing, click the "?" icon in the Script editor.



### Icon in Script Editor to access Composer classes listing

Line 2: This line uses the JavaScript built-in length operator to test whether the field contains at least 2 characters. Returning false causes the validation to fail

Line 3: This line uses a regular expression to test whether there are any numeric characters in the field. If there are any numeric values, the script returns false.

Line 4: If none of the preceding lines return a false, then return true. This will mean that the validation rule passes.

## Validation and Hidden fields

Validation rules are always fired, even if the field is invisible, or is hidden because of some other business rule. This is to enable "hidden" validation rules that aren't represented as a widget in the form.

If you have a field that may become hidden, and you want to ensure that the validation rule on the field doesn't fire when the field is hidden, one way to ensure this is to set the "When Hiding - Clear Data" policy. Validation rules don't fire on empty fields.

**Note**: This is different to the behavior of mandatory fields. Mandatory fields become non-mandatory when hidden.

## Validation Messages

There are 3 types of validation messages:

In the ErrorBlock of the form. Error blocks do not display on mobile devices.

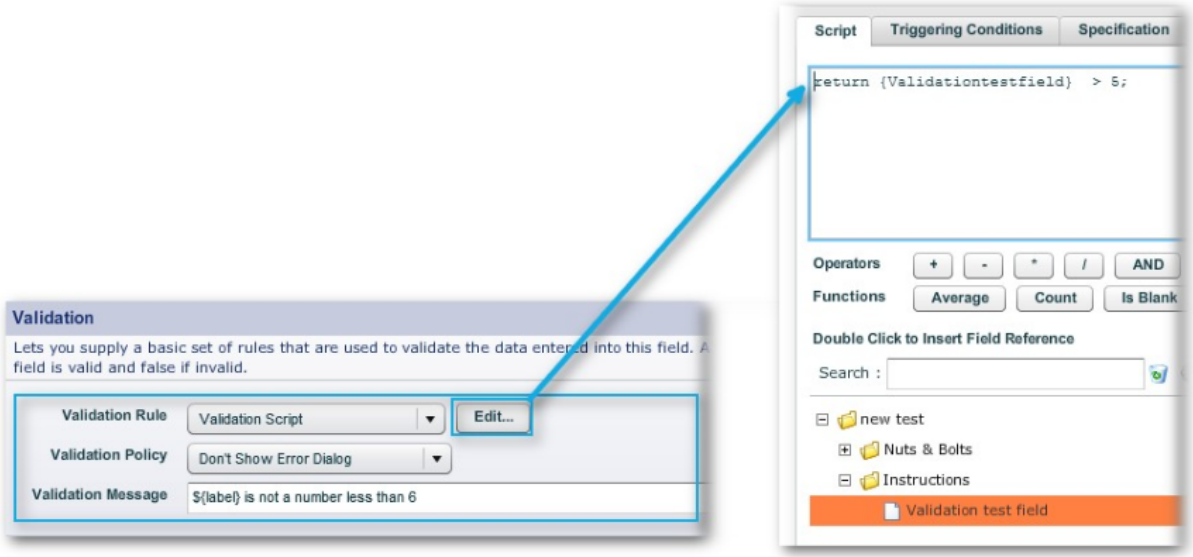
As a dialog, which displays on the failure of the element's validation. Users have to "OK" to continue and so

these are rather annoying and intrusive. Inline validation which is the most convenient of the 3.

All 3 are turned on by default.

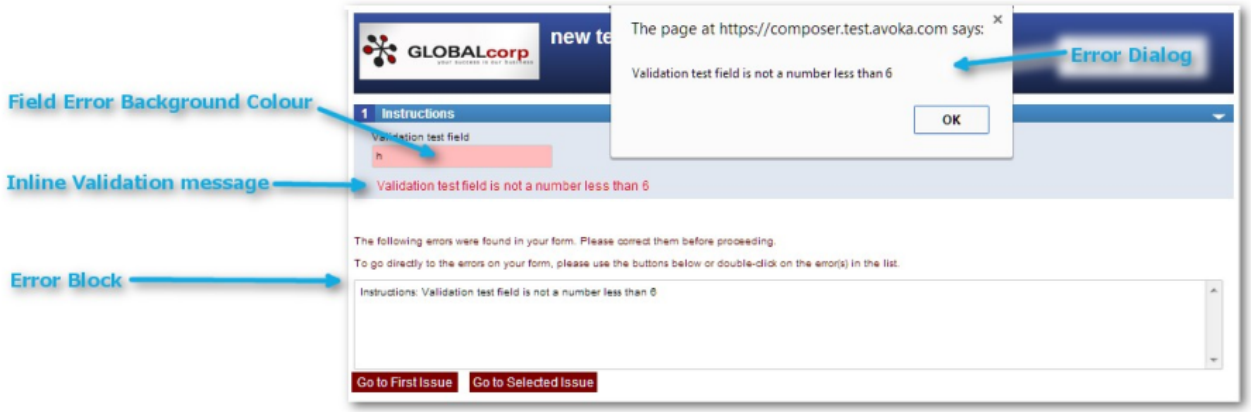
Here is a test field set up to have a trivial validation test. The Error Dialog is left on. The

Inline Validation is left on the default setting for the form.




## Validation settings for a text field

In the Desktop Preview, the form behaves as follows:




## Resultant Validation messages on the Desktop

The Error Dialog is intrusive, requiring users to click on the "OK" button. You can turn it off, but only for each widget individually, by "Edit Properties -> Rules -> Validation -> Validation -> Validation Policy -> Don't Show Error Dialog".

The Error Block does not appear on mobile devices.

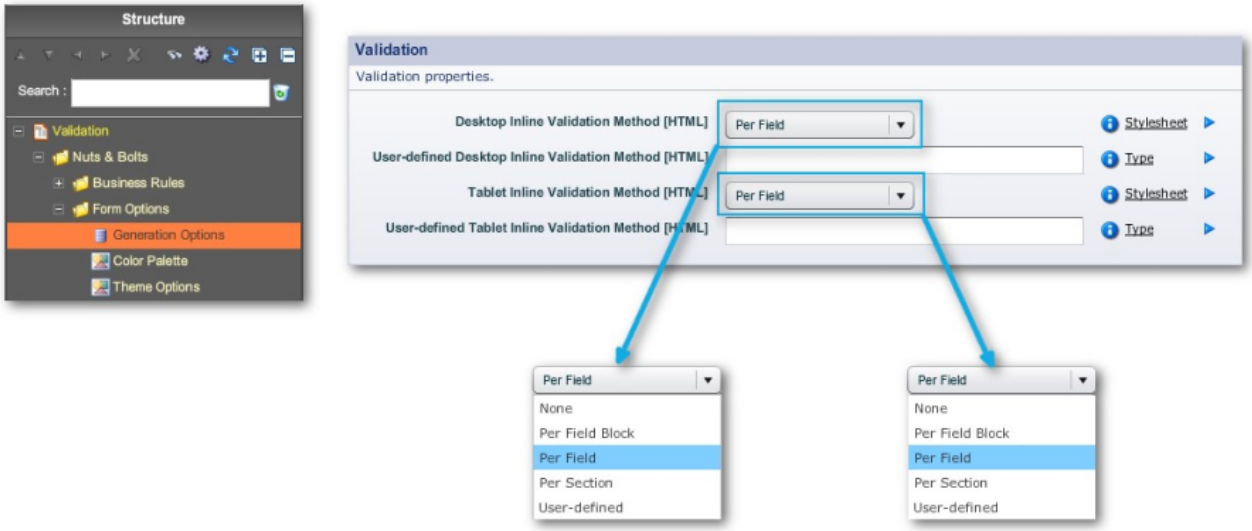
# In Line Validation

Inline Validation is really another instance of Dynamic Data, that is: if a field's validation test fails, and inline validation is turned on, the message to the user is displayed without the form page reloading.

The following examples have the Error Dialog turned off for each widget. The Error Block remains on, though will only be visible for the desktop previews.

## Inline Validation Settings

These are found in "Nuts & Bolts -> Form Options -> Generation Options -> Edit Properties -> Properties -> HTML Generation -> Validation", as shown below:




**Some of the important form-wide HTML Inline Validation options**

## Inline Validation Example

The form used here, though very simple, embodies the various inline validation behaviors for the desktop and on mobile devices. Its salient features are:

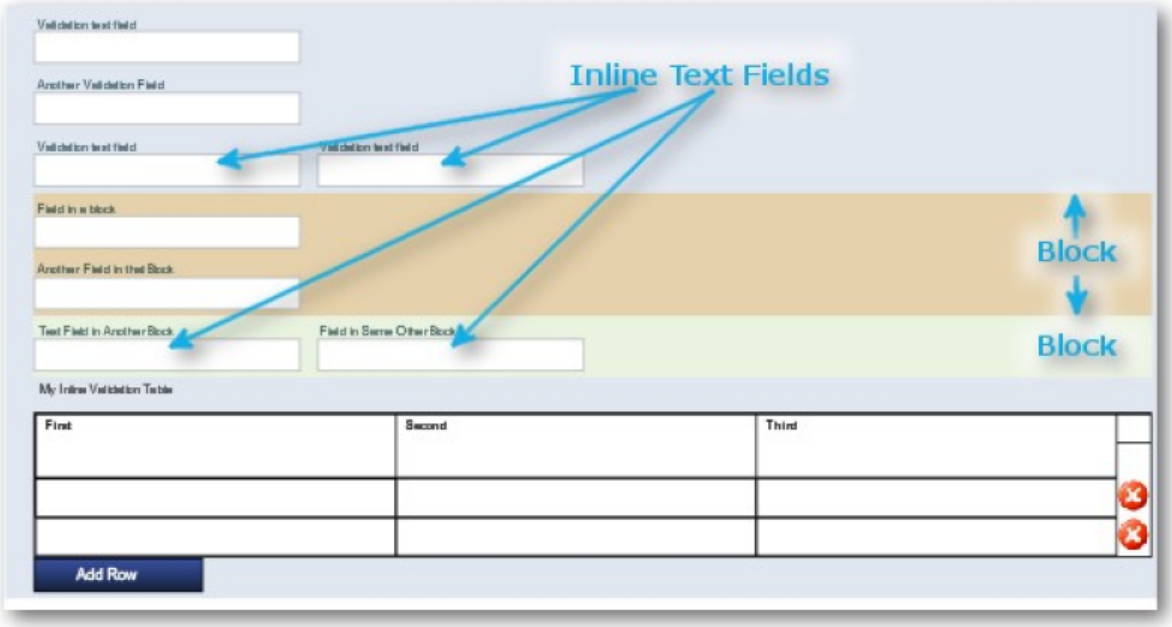
2 blocks in the first section (delineated by background colors)

Text fields on separate lines or inline (as inline validation behaves differently for these)

A simple table (to show how inline validation methods behave on the desktop and in the various modes of mobile devices).

The Responsive Rules are the defaults, so that on an iPad, Landscape is below

Threshold 2; portrait, below Threshold 3.



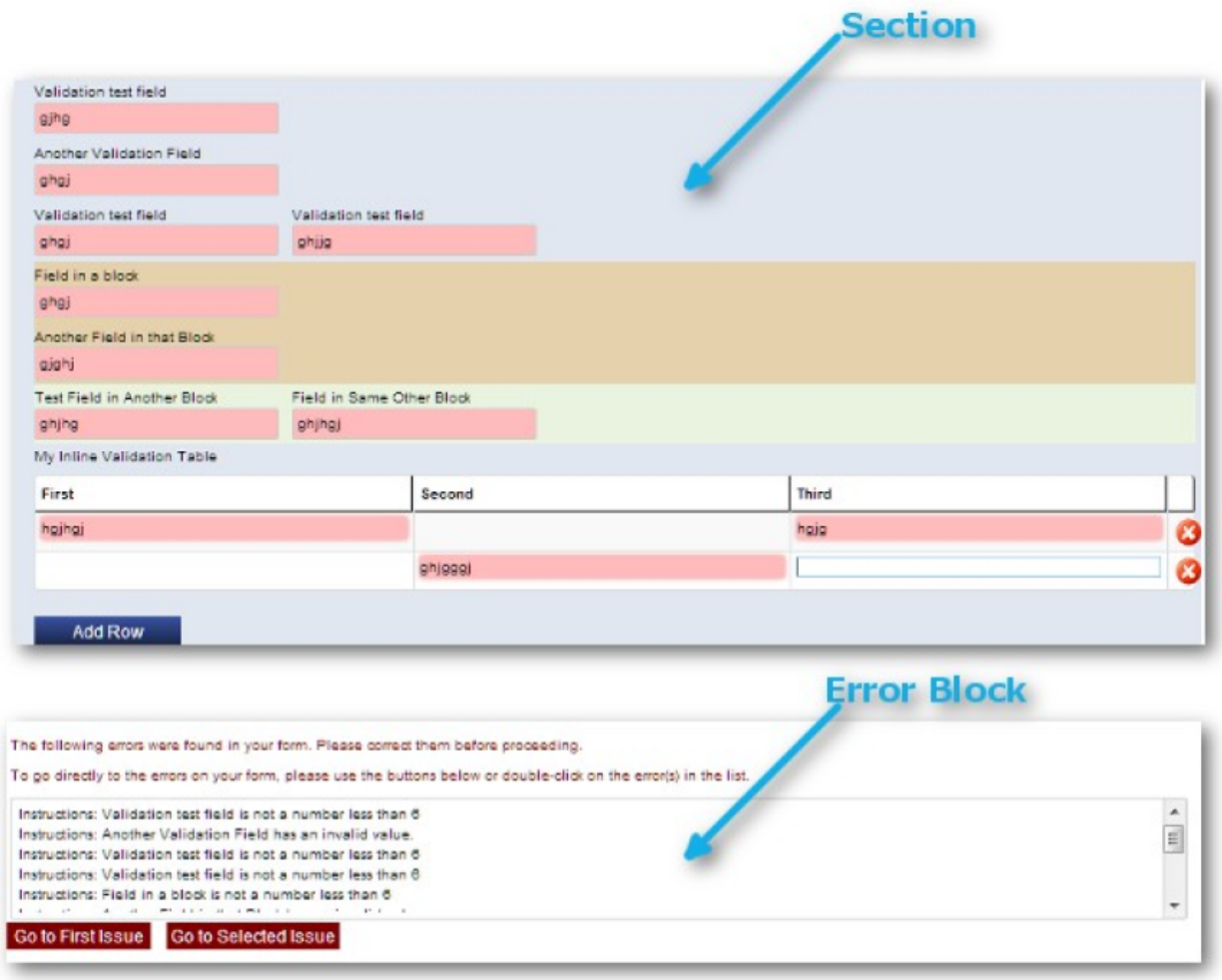

**Wireframe of form used to demonstrate Inline Validation**

# Desktop Inline Validation Method [HTML]

In all cases, we have turned off the Error Dialog for convenience for each element at "Edit Properties -> Rules -
> Validation -> Validation -> Validation Rule -> Don't Show Error Message".
All the fields with data entry are set to fail validation in this demo. The text of the Inline validation methods are set in each widget at "Edit Properties -> Rules -> Validation -> Validation Message".
Here are the Preview results for each desktop setting.

## None, Desktop

The only messages the user gets is the Error Dialog when turned on at the widget-level, or the clickable Error Block list.




**Inline Validation: Desktop, None**

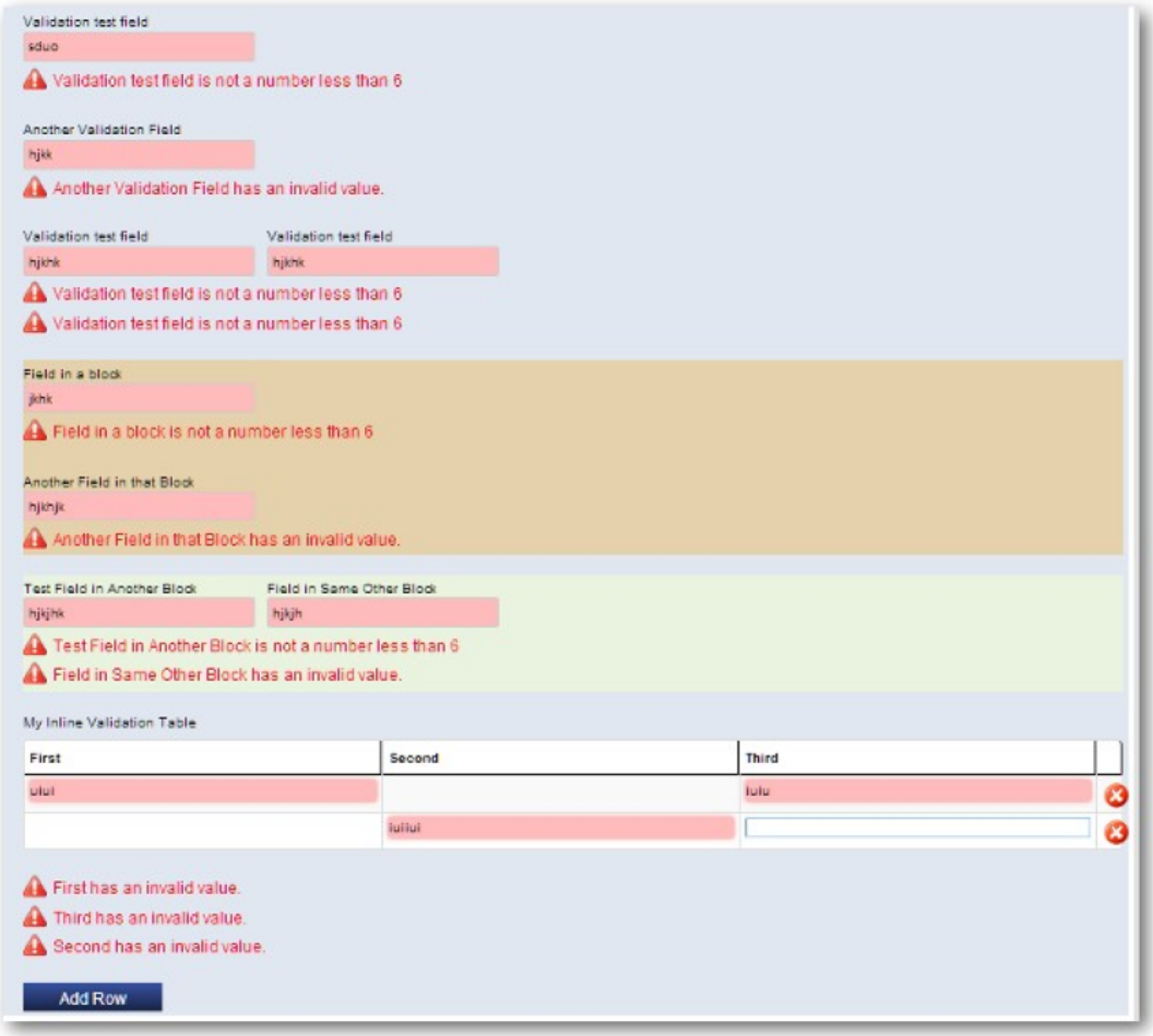
## Per Field Block, Desktop

Inline Messages are under each field or line of fields

The same behaviour for fields within blocks (see the two blocks marked out with background colours in the example below)

Inline messages for elements in tables get listed in a group below the table but above

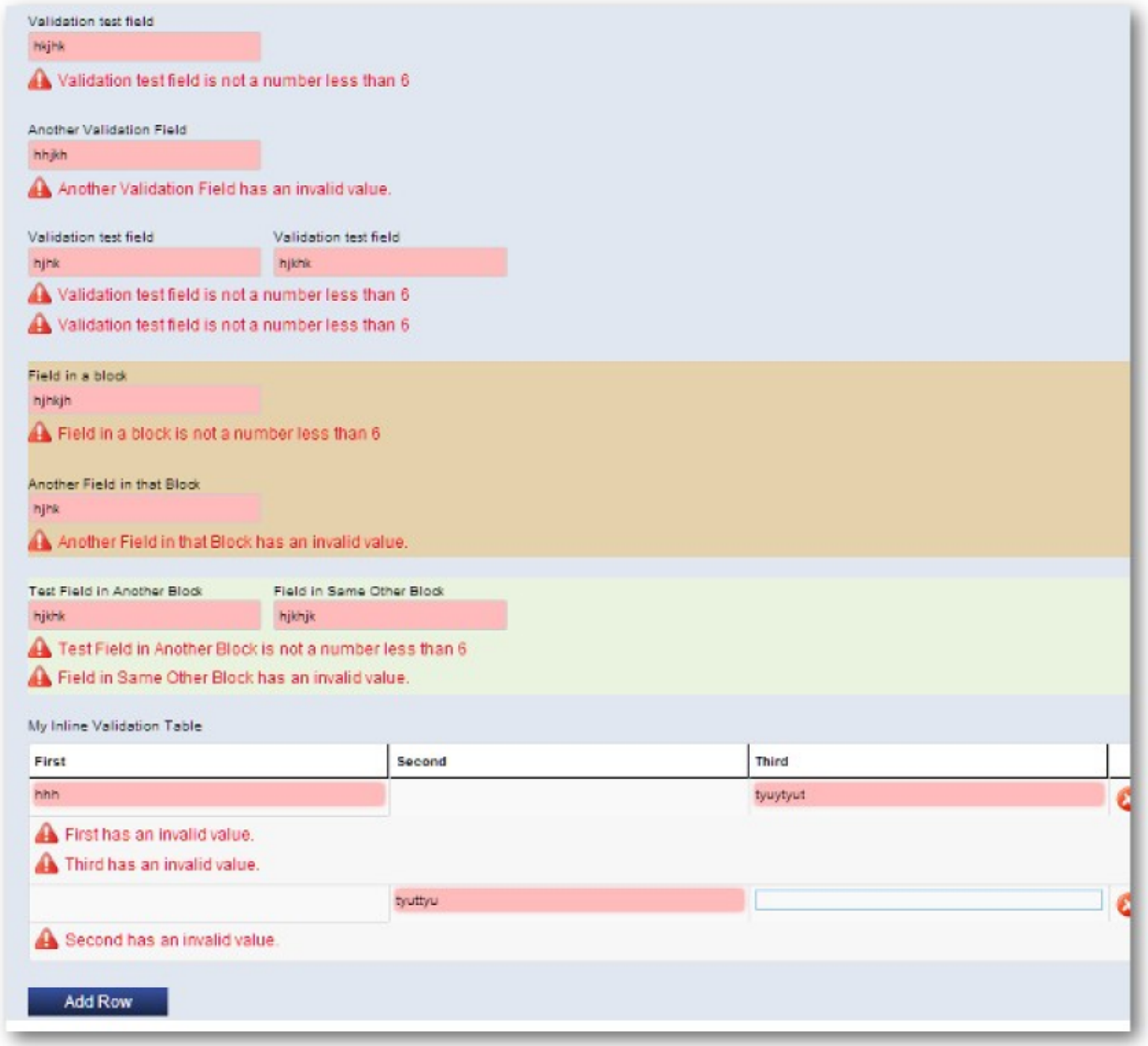
the standard "Add" button.

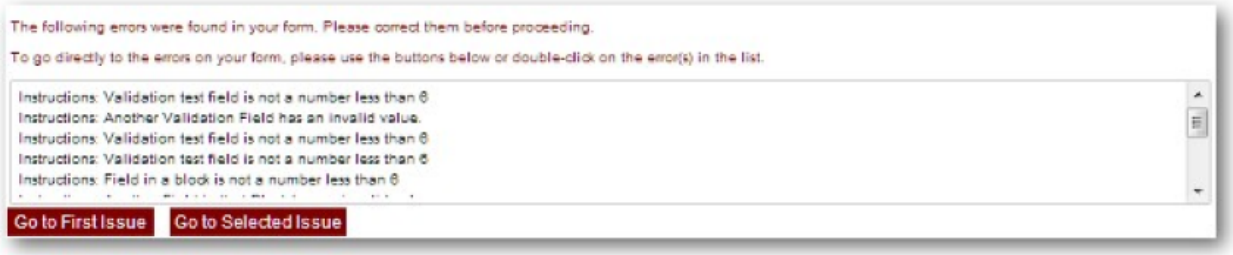


**Inline Validation: Desktop, Per Field Block**

## Per Field, Desktop

The same beaviour as the "Per Field" setting, except for
Tables, where the messages for each row come in a group under that row.

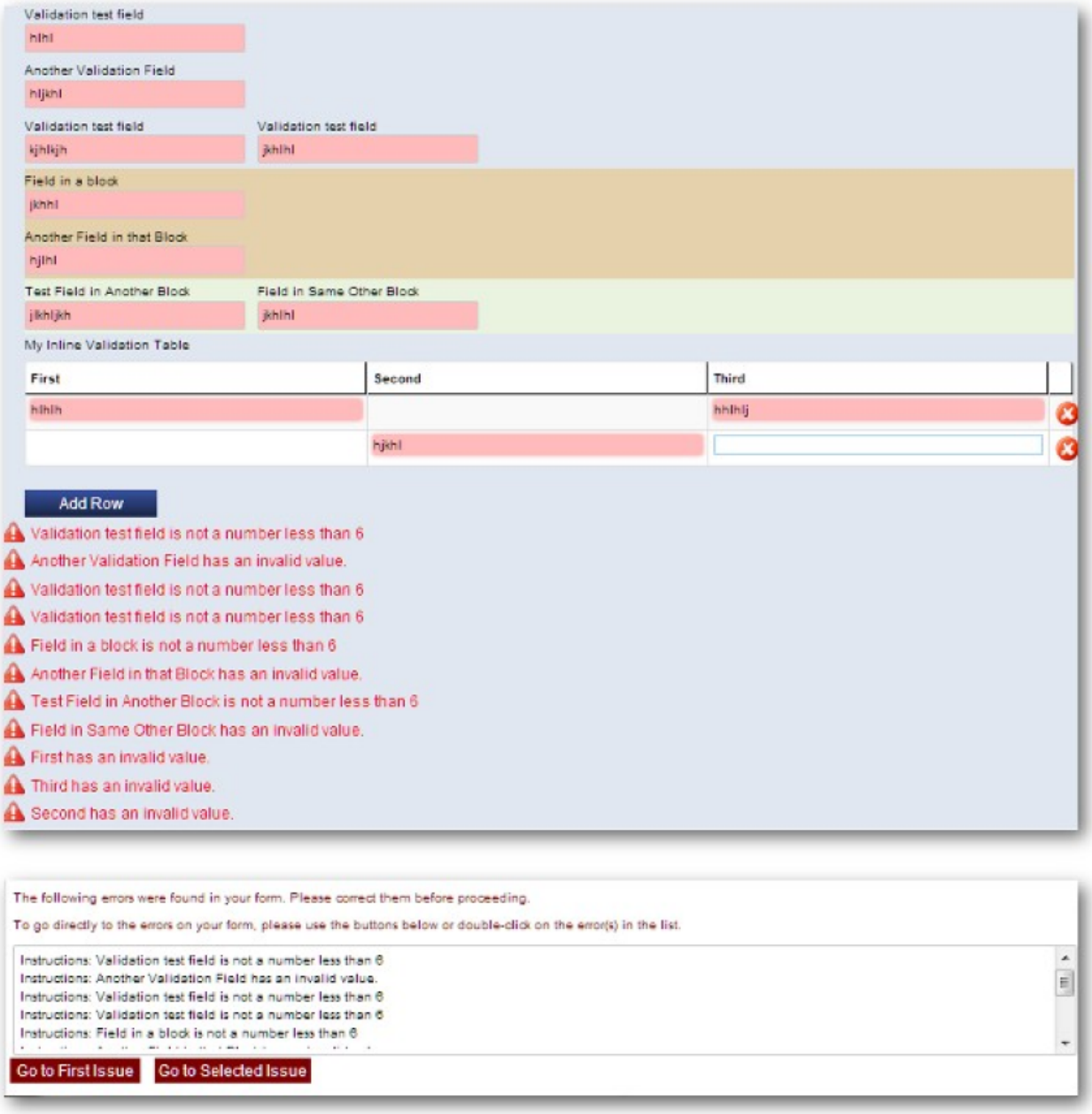



**Inline Validation: Desktop, Per Field**

### Per Section, Desktop

All the Inline Messages in a section come in a group at the end of each section.



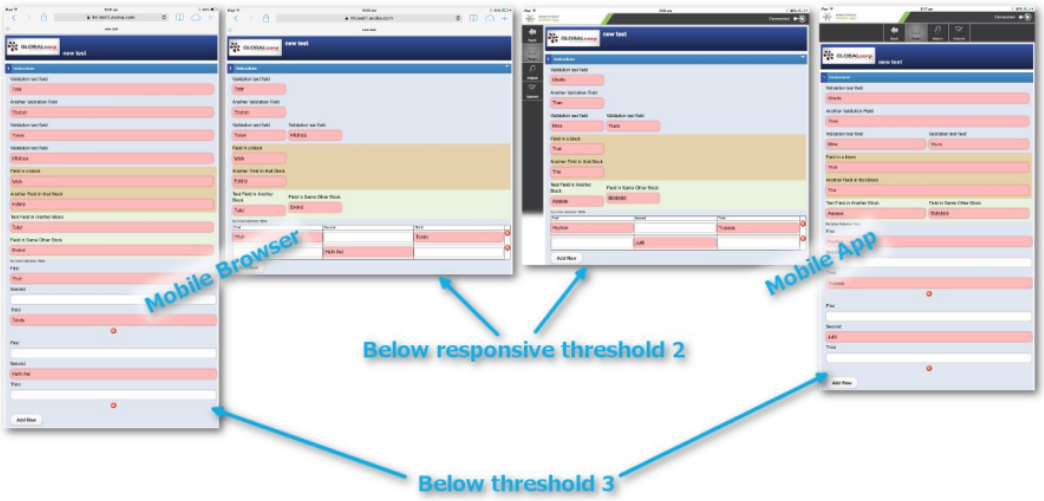




**Inline Validation: Desktop, Per Section**

## Mobile Inline Validation Method [HTML]

The mobile settings are independent of the desktop settings, and apply equally to forms accessed through viewing the form either in a mobile browser or in [thetheMobileApp](#).




**None, Mobile**

**Mobile: Inline Validation method = None**

## Per Field Block, Mobile

**Mobile: Inline Validation method = per FieldBlock**

**Per Field, Mobile**

**Mobile: Inline Validation = per Field**

## Per Section, Mobile

**Mobile: Inline Validation method = perSection**

*Transact Composer User Guide and ReferenceAdvanced Topics*

# Analytics

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

Transaction Manager, the backend of the platforms forms, will obviously log information on form submissions:
Data on the original form request:
o The user's IP address
o the agent string of the browser, from which holds information on the Operating System (Windows, OS X, iOS, Android)
The version number of the system
the device (for example, Windows desktop, iPad, and so on)
the browser brand (i.e. Chrome, Firefox, Safari, Internet Explorer) and version number

- The referring page (i.e. the page containing the link the user activated to reach the form) and portal
- The time stamp of the original request
- Data and keys on the session, cookies and other technical information Whether the form was saved or abandoned, including
- When the form was submitted (if ever)

The form's rendering time (vital information for optimizing formperformance)
Manager stores the data on each form request and also consolidates these data and renders them in various graphs and dashboards in Manager.

## Composer's Role in Analytics

### Background Saving

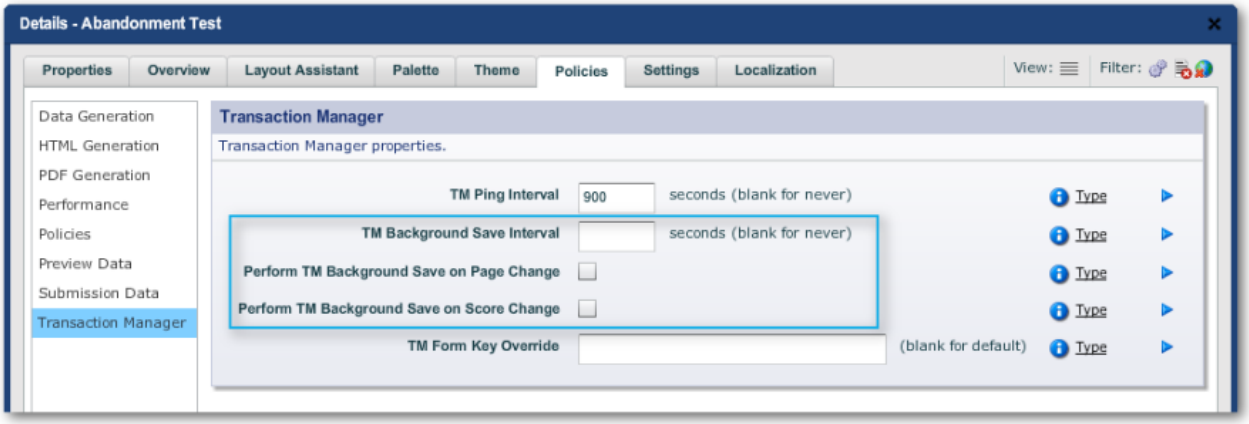
Time was when the data entered onto a form was not saved back to the server until the end user submitted the form. Now, Composer has tools to:
Configure background saving
where data is sent dynamically back to Transaction Manager before the form is submitted.
The data can be either the values entered onto the form or an arbitrary numerical score where you ascribe various numerical values to some or all of the fields on the

form

Background saving can be set to take place at regular time intervals, or when the user navigates to another wizard-style page, or when the numerical score changes value

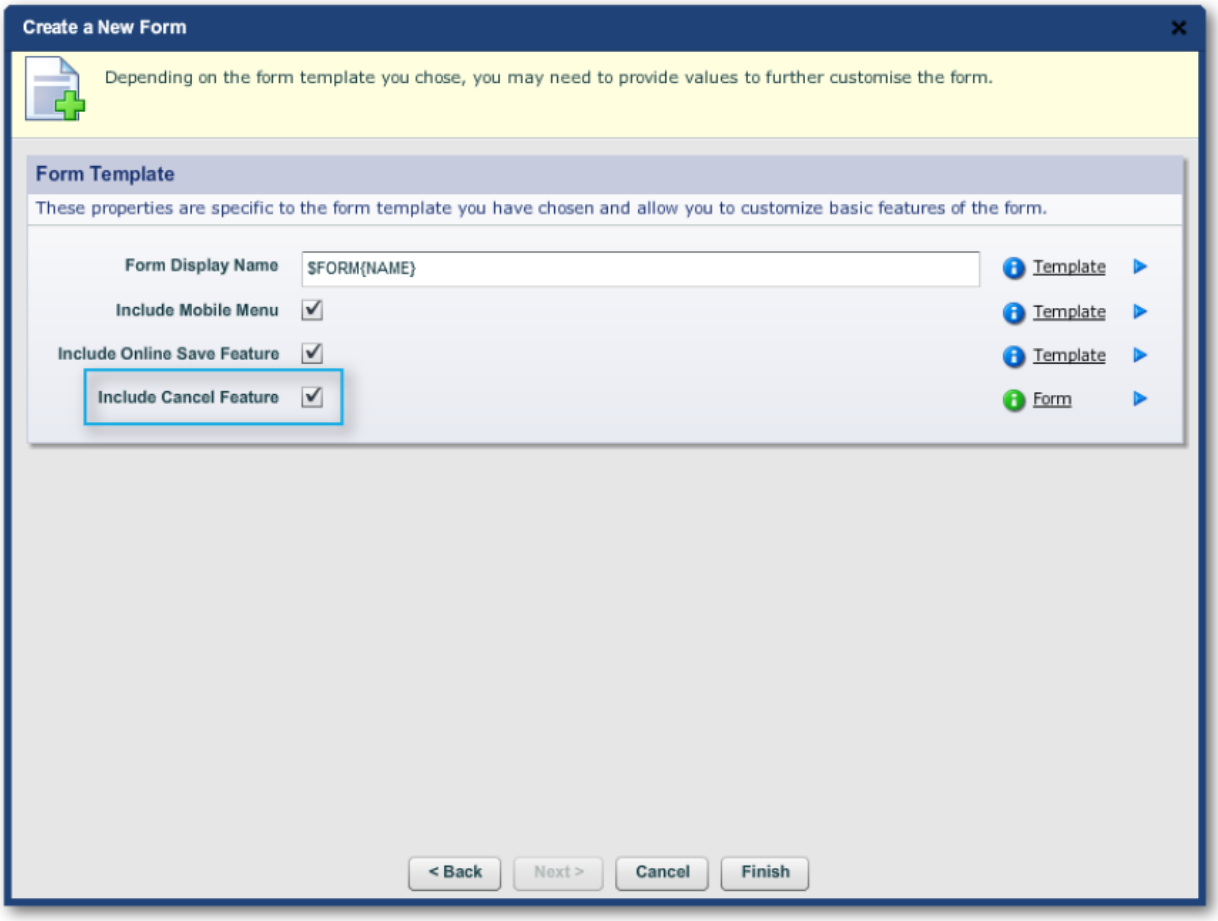
You may not want, for privacy reasons, to retain the actual data entered on the form by an end user who has not yet submitted this data, but still want to have data on where the user reached in the form before abandoning it so that you can modify the form so more users successfully get to the submit stage of entry. This substantially increases the value of the form to your business. Without such a feedback mechanism, you will not be able to make as many meaningful improvements to the form.

You activate background saving through "Structure -> <Top item of the structure tree> Edit Properties -> Policies tab -> Transaction Manager menu item -> Transaction Manager panel:

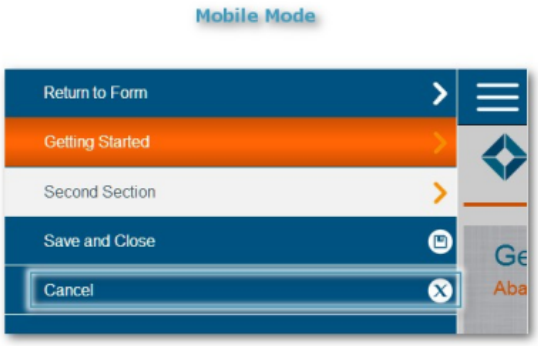



### The Cancel Button in Maguire Forms

The Maguire template forms have a Cancel facility. This must either be activated when the new form is created, the Maguire template chosen in the "Create a New Form" Wizard and the "Include Cancel Feature" checked in the last page of the wizard dialog.




The resulting feature is a "Cancel" button. Currently this is **not** visible in the Wireframe, only in the Preview (here in both desktop mode and in triggered mobile responsive view):

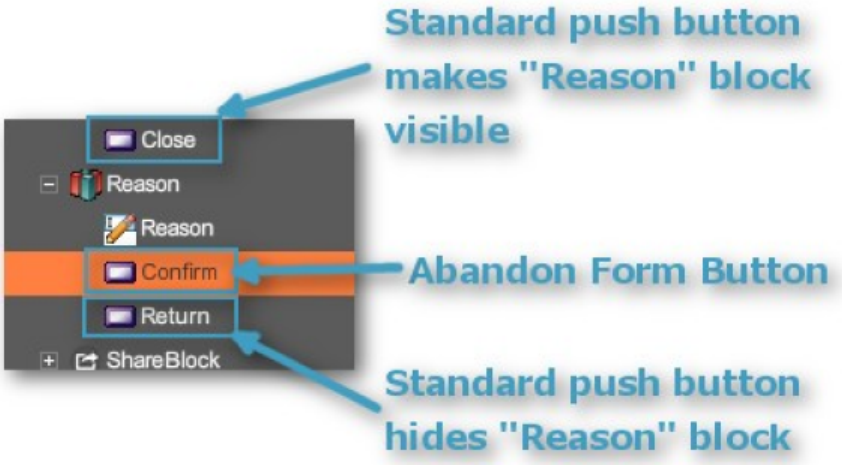



Clicking on "Cancel" results in the form's data being saved to Manager and the form's data and analytics being displayed in Manager under "Home Dashboard -> Abandoned Transactions".

### The Abandon Widget in non-Maguire Forms

The same function is available in non-Maguire templated forms. Place the "Palette -> Field Types -> Abandon Form Button" on your form. Probably the best places are in the Header and Footers (which are exposed in the Advanced Mode of the Structure Palette as the "Form Header" and "Form Footer" blocks below the Nuts & Bolts block.

You can even add a "Reason" text block for users to give the reasons for abandoning the form. We recommend the following technique to make the text block hidden and then become visible when users click on a "Close" button.

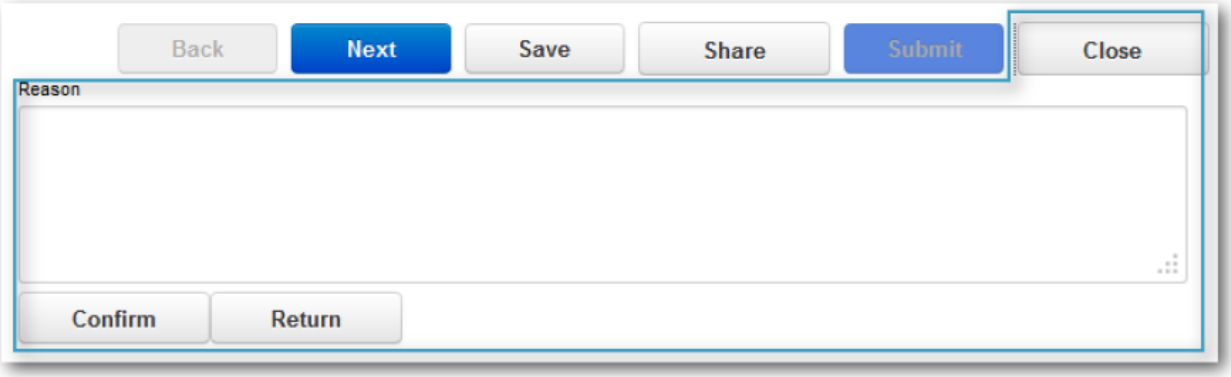



Use Click Action scripts to control the show/hide behavior of the "Close" and "Return" standard buttons. The most basic Click Action scripts to accomplish this (with no refinements whatsoever) are:

For the "Close" button: sfc.updateVisibility({Reason}, true, "exclude"); And the "Return":

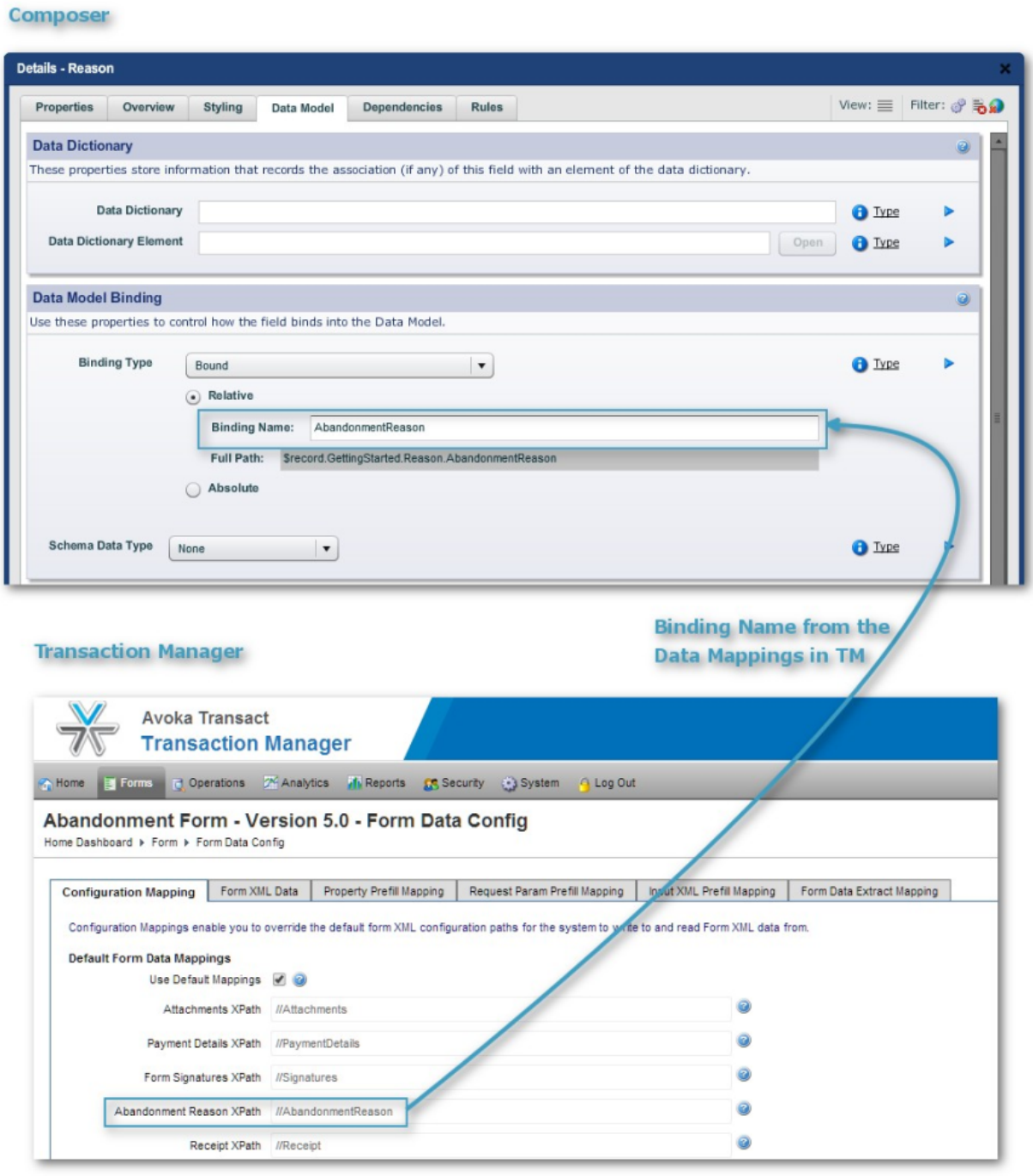
sfc.updateVisibility({Reason}, false, "exclude");

On the form, the fields look as follows (when placed into the "Form Footer" block"):




By careful configuration of the "Reason" text area, you can make the contents of this

field be listed in the TM "Home -> Operations -> Abandoned Transactions" page in the Abandon Reason column. Use the Data Model Binding panel ("Edit Properties -> Data Model tab -> Data Model Binding panel").



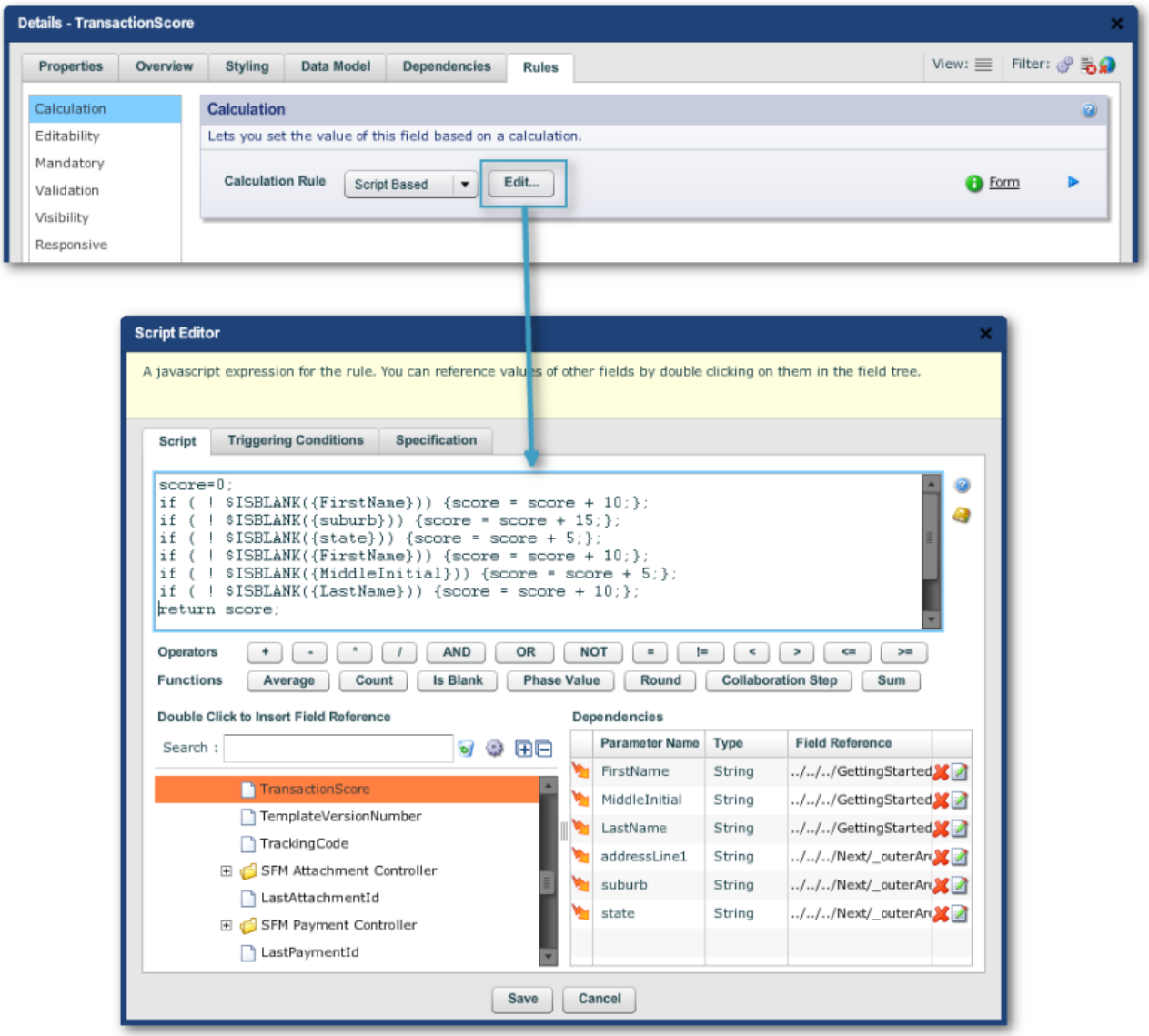

The Binding Name used is one of the Default Form Data Mappings in TM. The double slash "//" just means a wildcard: in other words, the field mapped to AbandonmentReason can be anywhere in the form's structure. If there are more than one such field, TM will use the first it encounters in the tree. You should be setting the

mapping unique for best results.

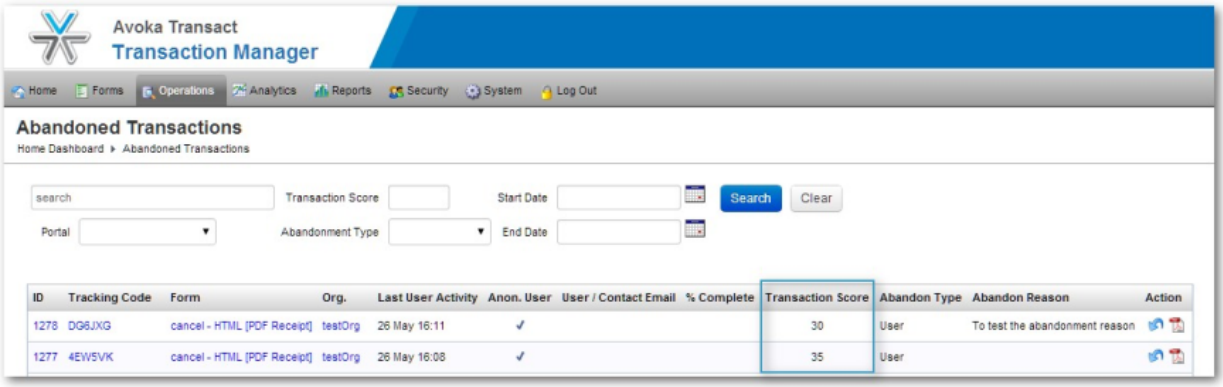
## Scoring

We have seen how you can retain data from an abandoned form. However, due to privacy concerns, may not actually want to retain this data, and yet still get some metrics on the abandonded form so as to identify usability issues which could have contributed to its being abandoned in the first place. One way is to score the form to see how far the user managed to get to before abandoning or canceling. Scoring could also be useful in your analysis, even when you retain the incomplete data.

All you need do to set up scoring in Composer is add some simple scripting to "Structure Panel -> <form name> -> Nuts & Bolts -> Transaction Manager Support -> TransactionScore -> Edit Properties -> Rules tab -> Calculation panel":




The above script is a very simple and unsophisticated example. Whatever the script used. it must return an integer, which will, after you have exported the form, then be displayed in Transaction Manager under "Operations -> Abandoned Transactions":


Avoka Transact
Transaction Manager
Home
Forms
Operations
Analytics
Reports
Security
System
Log Out
Abandoned Transactions
Home Dashboard ▸ Abandoned Transactions
search
Transaction Score
Start Date
Search
Clear
Portal
Abandonment Type
End Date
ID
Tracking Code
Form
Org.
Last User Activity
Anon. User
User / Contact Email
% Complete
Transaction Score
Abandon Type
Abandon Reason
Action
1278
DG6JXG
cancel - HTML [PDF Receipt]
testOrg
26 May 16:11
✓
30
User
To test the abandonment reason
1277
4EW5VK
cancel - HTML [PDF Receipt]
testOrg
26 May 16:08
✓
35
User

# Field Types

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

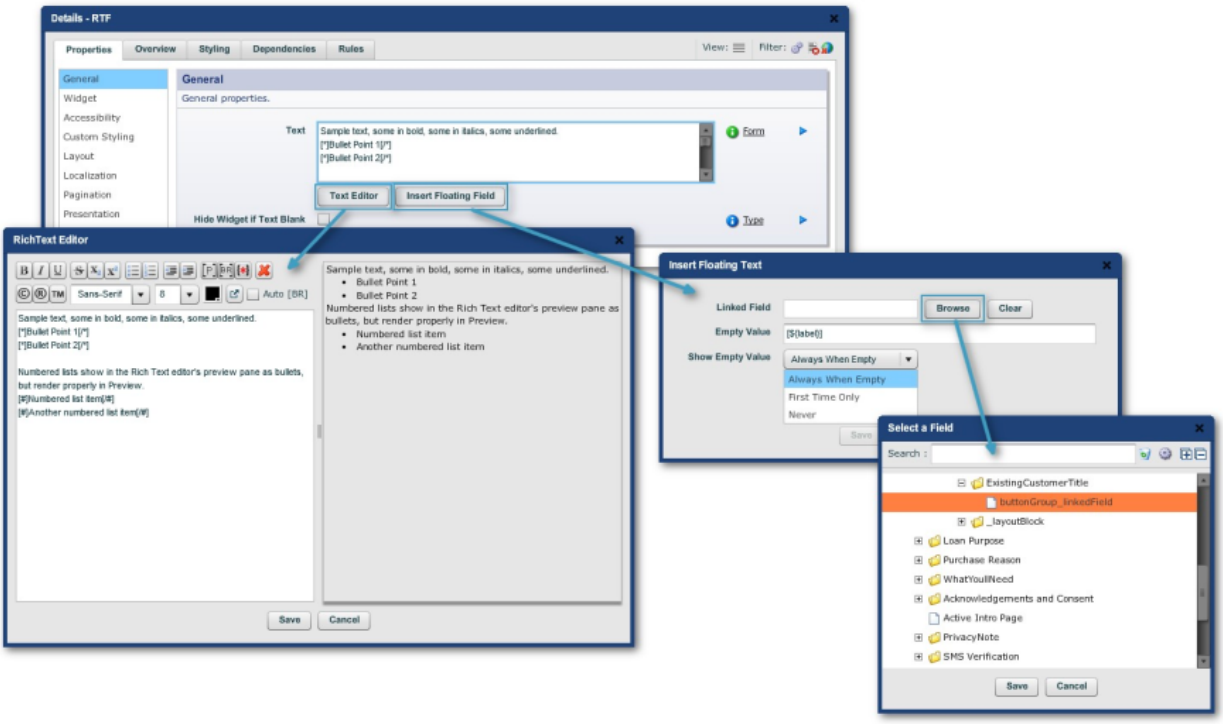
There are a few field types (or "widgets") that require further documentation in this manual. They are:
Rich Test Fields Cascading Dropdowns Prepoplated Dropdowns

## Rich Text Fields

A Rich Text is a read-only widget that has styling, such as bolding, italics, fonts, and colors, embeded into the text. Rich Text is often used for explanatory or legal text in forms; many other fields also support Rich Text, such as the Labels for all fields and Section Help Text.
You can embed the values of other fields within a Rich Text Field. **This replaces theleg-acy widget "FloatingField"** which no longer ships in the Palette.
You control the format of the text by embedding "tags" or "markup" into the text. We will list these below. Tags must be properly opened and closed as a pair. If the pair is incorrect, the text will not display correctly. Rich Text may render slightly differently in the wireframe, PDF and HTML. This is because the underlying implementations on each platform are not the same. Composer attempts to make the text appear as close as possible on all platforms — if you discover discrepancies, please notify us with a sample.

### Rich Text Editor

The Rich Text Editor ("Text [Rich}" widget, "Edit Properties -> Properties tab -> General -> General panel -> provides simple ways of embedding rich text tags into your text.




Consider the famous quotation:

*Ask not what your country can do for you; ask what you can do for yourcountry.*

Instead, use a Country Dropdown List at the top of the form asking for which country. And then depending on the country choosem, the quotation reads:

*Ask not what America can do for you, ask what you can do forAmerica.*

or

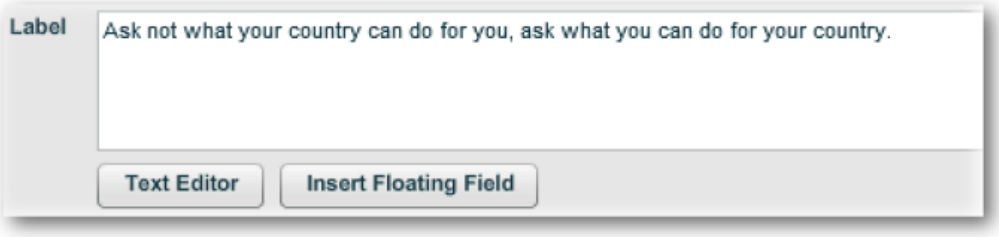
*Ask not what Canada can do for you, ask what you can do forCanada.*

And so on.

This is quite straight forward to do.

Create the Country Dropdown (or any other field whose value you want to appear in the text.) This field can appear anywhere in the form.

Create a Rich Text field as shown below:



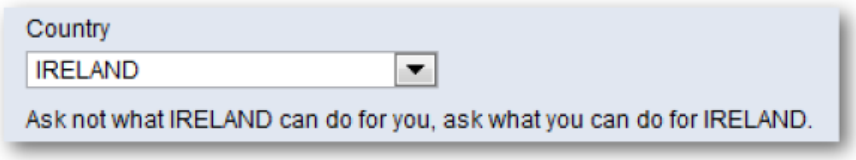
Click on the "Insert Floating Field" button, and point at the Country Dropdown created earlier.

You may also want to update the other two values in the dialog - these control what is displayed in the Floating Field if the Country Dropdown has a blank value.

Copy and paste the floating field reference into the two locations, so that it looks like this:

*Ask not what$FLOAT{Country_linkedField} can do foryou, ask what you can do for $FLOAT{Country_linkedField}.*

Test your form. You should get something that looks like this:




Note that Composer has created a hidden Floating field underneath the Rich Text field. Do not delete this field, as it temporarily stores the value to be injected into the Rich Text, and is linked to the real value. You can modify the formatted value of this field if desired.The Rich Text toolbar icons can be used in two ways:

To apply a tag to an existing piece of text, select the text, and then click the icon.

If you click the icon when no text is selected, the matching tags will be placed into your text, with the cursor positioned for you to start typing.

The Auto [BR] checkbox, if selected, will automatically add a "[BR/]" tag into your text

every time you press the Enter key.
**Tip**: It is strongly recommended not to specify custom fonts, as these may not render correctly on different systems.

## Tag Reference

There are two types of tags, those that affect individual characters within the text, and those that turn whole paragraphs into list items (either bullets or numbered items).

### Character tags

| Tag | Formatting | Sample | Result |
|---|---|---|---|
| [i]..[/i] | Italics | Hello [i]World[/i] | Hello World |
| [b]..[/b] | Bold | Hello [b]World[/b] | Hello **World** |
| [u]..[/u] | Underline | Hello [u]World[/u] | Hello World |
| [x]..[/x] | Strike Thru | Hello [x]World[/x] | Hello ~~World~~ |
| [sub][/sub] | Subscript | Hello [sub]World [/sub] | Hello world |
| [sup][/sup] | Superscript | Hello [sup]World [/sup] | Hello world |
| [colour:#00FF99] [/colour] | Color | [colour:#ff0000]Red [/ colour] and [color:rgb(0,0,255)]blue [/ color] | Red and blue |
| [font:Arial][/font] | Font type | My font is [font:Myriad Pro]Myriad Pro [/font] | Fonts available depend on the fonts available in your destination system, and vary between PDF and HTML. See separate topic on Fonts. |
| [fontsize:9pt] [/fontsize] | Font size | My font is so [font-size:16pt]big[/ font-size] | My font is so big. |
| [link:][/link] | Link | [link:[http:// www.avoka.com]Avoka[/ link] | Avoka (Links work in HTML and more recent releases of Adobe Reader.) |
| [copy] [reg] [trade] | Symbol | Copyright [copy] 2010 Avoka Tech- | Copyright © 2010 Avoka Tech- nologies. |

nologies.

| Tag | Formatting | Sample | Result |
|---|---|---|---|
| ${options:policy.mandatory .marker} | Mandatory marker. This is used to insert the mandatory marker (usually a red asterisk, but controlled via your stylesheet) into your help text. | All fields marked with ${options:policy.mandatory .marker} are mandatory. | All fields marked with * are mandatory. |

***Bullets, Lists and ParagraphTags***

Bullets and Lists affect an entire paragraph of text. The bullet character or numbering style is controlled via the properties and the stylesheet for your form. Extra levels of indent are controlled via a leading dot.

| Example | Sample |
|---|---|
| []**USA[/**] [.**]CA[/**] [..**]San Francisco[/**] [.**]NY[/**] [..**]New York[/**] []**Australia[/**] [.**]NSW[/**] [..**]Sydney[/**] | USA<br>• CA<br>San Francisco<br>• NY<br>New York Australia<br>• NSW<br>Sydney |
| [#]USA[/#] [.#]CA[/#] [..#]San Francisco[/#] [.#]NY[/#] [..#]New York[/#] [#]Australia[/#] | 1 USA<br>1 CA<br>1 San Francisco<br>2. NY |

| | |
|---|---|
| [.#]NSW[/#]<br>[..#]Sydney[/#] | 1. New York<br>2. Australia<br>    1. NSW<br>        1. Sydney |
| [#reset] | Use this tag to reset the numbering list back to 1 The reset take will take effect in the next rich text field. |
| [p]Use the paragraph tags to wrap around multiple paragraphs of text. Each paragraph will be spaced from the each other.[/p]<br>[p]This is another paragraph[/p] | Use the paragraph tags to wrap around multiple paragraphs of text. Each paragraph will be spaced from the each other. This is another paragraph |
| [.p]A paragraph. Notice the spacing[/p]<br>[..p]One level of indent[/p]<br>[...p]Two levels of indent[/p] | A paragraph. Notice the spacing One level of indent<br>Two levels of indent |
| You can break [br/] text onto [br/]multiple lines without any spacing | You can break text onto<br>multiple lines without any spacing |

Auto-numbering is controlled by Sequences in Nuts & Bolts. This is an advanced topic, and usually configured for you in your style-sheet.

Paragraphs are optional, but are useful for longer blocks of rich text.

## Radio Buttons

Radio buttons in Composer required a lot of documentation. No longer: Composer 4 now handles them gracefully.

### Creating Radio Button Groups Manually

The Widget Palette now contains a "Smart" family of radio button elements:
Smart Radio Button
Smart Radio Button Group
To create a functioning set of radio buttons, you need the Group widget and a smart button widget for each of the buttons to be selected. For each smart button you place on the form, in the wizard dialog, use the Browse button to point to the Linked Button Group. (If you neglect to do this in the wizard dialog, you can point to the group in "Edit Properties -> Properties tab -> Data -> Data panel".)
If you want to pick up the selected value of the button group in, say, an inserted floating field in a Rich Text Field, always point to the button group.
Now you can take a whole button set, place them into a simple block and copy that block to another part of the form. This now works without any fuss.

#### Mandatory Radio Buttons

It doesn't really make sense to make an individual Radio Button mandatory. As you can see above, you can make the Button Group mandatory - this means that the user will have to select one of the buttons in the group. See MandatoryBlock.

### Calculating or Using the value of a Radio Button Group

If you need to calculate the value of a Radio Button Group, you need to place the calculation on the Button Group, rather than individual buttons. Please refer to ScriptingandDependencies.
If you need to use the value of a Radio Button in another rule, you can either treat individual buttons similarly to a checkbox (and use Is-Selected in the parameter) or you can refer to the value of the Radio Button Group.

## Dropdown Menus

Use the "DropDown List" widget from the Palette.
A Dropdown List has two sets of values in the "Data" tab of the advanced properties dialog of the widget:

### Display Values

This is a list of values that are displayed in the user interface.

## Values

This is a list of underlying raw values the field will pass on to TM when a user selects a display value.

Display Values has a default value of ${values}. This means that by default, the set of Display Values is identical to the Values. This simplifies using Dropdown Lists, because you only need one set of lists.

However, sometimes it's useful to have a different display value versus the underlying value. For example, you may want to display countries in the Dropdown list using their full names such as Australia, United Kingdom and France, but store their underlying values using the two letter country abbreviations such as AU, UK, and FR. In this case, you can simply modify the values of Display Values.

Note:

The number of Display Values and Values must be identical.

You must delete the ${values} formula if you're going to add explicit Display Values.

If you use Composer's translation feature, only the Display Values will be translated. This means that any code that uses the Values will continue to work without modification.

Internally, the Values and Display Values properties are stored using a pipe character "|" as a separator. This means that you cannot use pipe characters in your Values or Display Values.

To access the Display Value in a calculate event, use the following script:

sfc.getFormattedValue(noderef)

In PDF, a Dropdown list can have a blank value even if "blank" is not one of the allowed values. (When a Dropdown list is first displayed, it's value is always blank unless initialized.) In HTML, a Dropdown List is only allowed to have a blank value if blank is one of the values in the Values list. In order to achieve compatibility between the two implementations of Dropdown List, Composer provides a "Automatically Add

Blank Value [HTML]" property which is checked by default. This has the added benefit of making the concept of a Mandatory Dropdown List meaningful.

Composer also provides a number of prepopulated dropdown lists. See PredefinedBlocks. These include: Dropdown List [Countries]: A list of countries from around the world.

Dropdown List [Genders]: Contains 'Male' and 'Female'.

Dropdown List [States+Codes,United States]: A list of states found in the United States is displayed in the dropdown list, e.g. Alabama. This is what the form filler sees. However a corresponding two letter country code e.g. AL is stored in the underlying data.

Dropdown List [States,Australia]: A list of Australian states.

Dropdown List [States,United States]: A list of states found in the United States. In this dropdown list, the displayed value and 'stored' value are identical.
Dropdown List [Yes/No]: Contains 'Yes' and 'No' values.

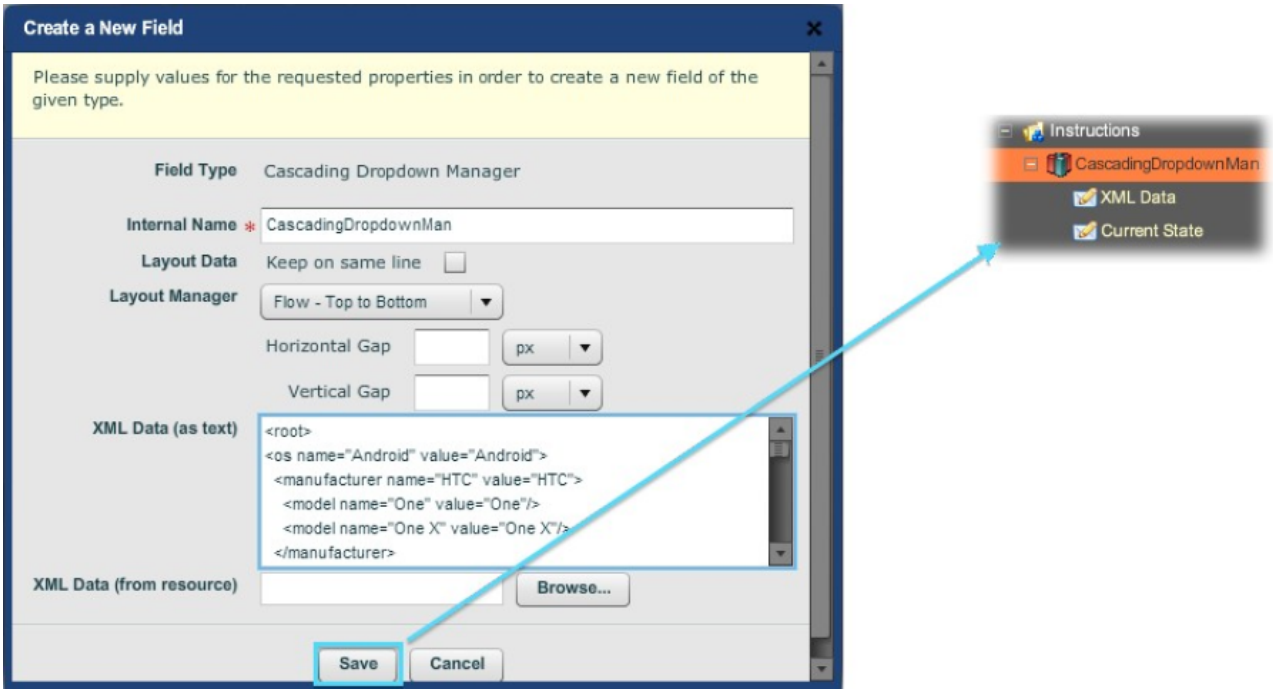
## Cascading Dropdowns

The first step is to define the behaviour of the set of cascading dropdowns with XML. Here is an example of three orders of cascading dropdowns: os -> manufacturer -> model.

```
<root>
<os name="Android" value="Android">
<manufacturer name="HTC" value="HTC">
<model name="One" value="One"/>
<model name="One X" value="One X"/>
</manufacturer>
<manufacturer name="Samsung" value="Samsung">
<model name="Galaxy S3" value="Galaxy S3"/>
<model name="Galaxy Note 3" value="Galaxy Note 3"/>
<model name="Galaxy S4" value="Galaxy S4"/>
<model name="Galaxy Express" value="Galaxy Express"/>
<model name="Galaxy XCover 2" value="Galaxy XCover 2"/>
<model name="Galaxy Fame" value="Galaxy Fame"/>
</manufacturer>
</os>
<os name="Windows Phone 7" value="Windows Phone 7">
<manufacturer name="Nokia" value="Nokia">
<model name="Lumia" value="Lumia" />
<model name="Lumia 625" value="Lumia 625" />
</manufacturer>
<manufacturer name="Samsung" value="Samsung">
<model name="OMNIA 7" value="OMNIA 7" />
</manufacturer>
</os>
<os name="iOS" value="iOS">
<manufacturer name="Apple" value="Apple">
<model name="iPhone 5" value="iPhone 5"/>
<model name="iPhone 5S" value="iPhone 5S"/>
<model name="iPhone 5C Green" value="iPhone 5C Green"/>
<model name="iPhone 5C Blue" value="iPhone 5C Blue"/>
<model name="iPhone 5C Yellow" value="iPhone 5C Yellow"/>
<model name="iPhone 5C Pink" value="iPhone 5C Pink"/>
```

<model name="iPhone 5C White" value="iPhone 5C White"/>
</manufacturer>
</os>
</root>

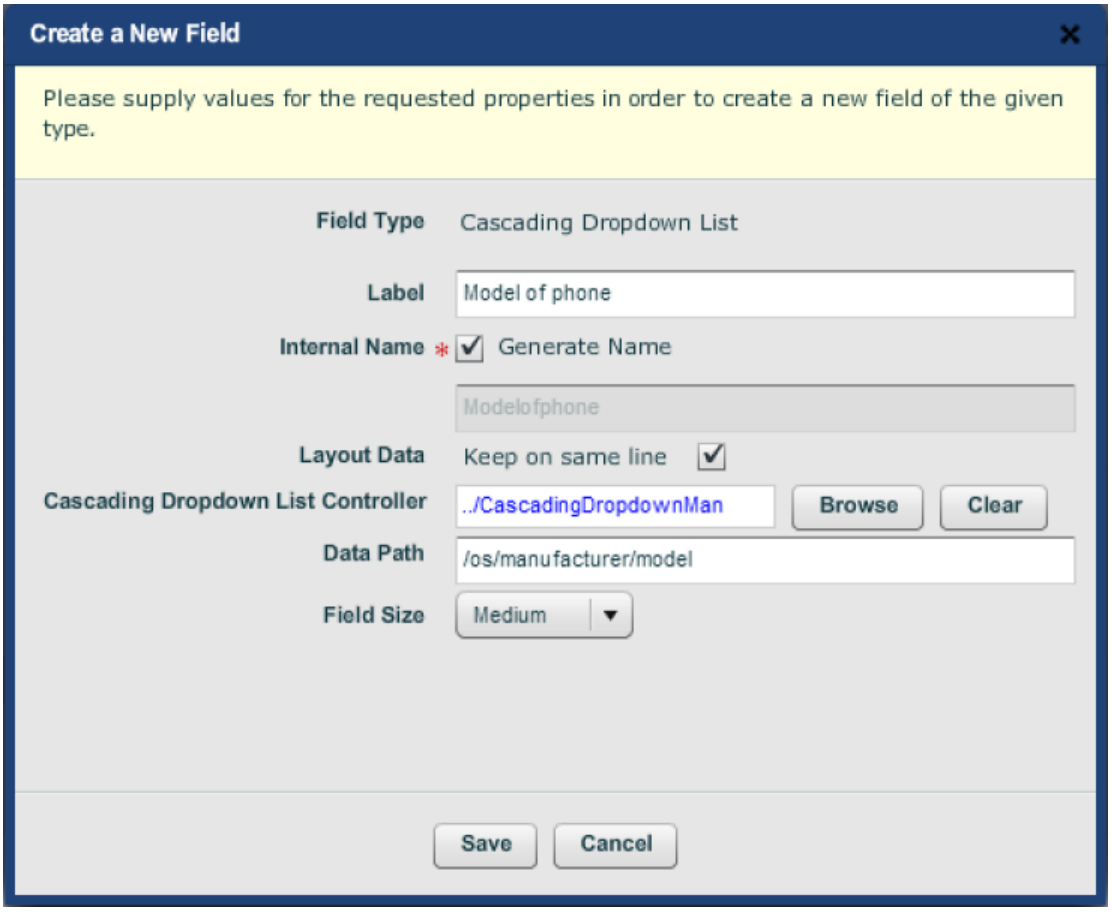
Drop a Cascading Dropdown Manager widget onto a section (here, the default "Instructions") in the Structure pane. Paste the XML definition into the XML Data test field.




**The Cascading Dropdown Manager predefined block dialog, with the XML pasted into the data textbox. "Save" creates the structure shown.**

Drop three "Cascading Dropdown List" widgets into the structure, Here we have put the three widgets onto the section level of the form. Fill in their dialogs, giving the name (as it will appear on the form), point to the "Cascading Dropdown Manager Controller" and give the data path from the root as defined by the XML. Here is the dialog for the

last of these lists:

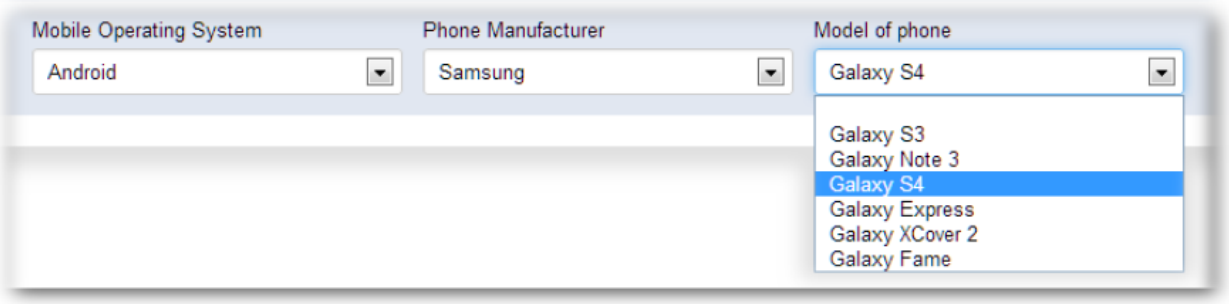



**The dialog for creating the "model" level cascading dropdown list.**

For convenience we have kept the lower two list widgets on the same line as the "os" top order. The final structure looks as follows:

**The final structure on the form.**

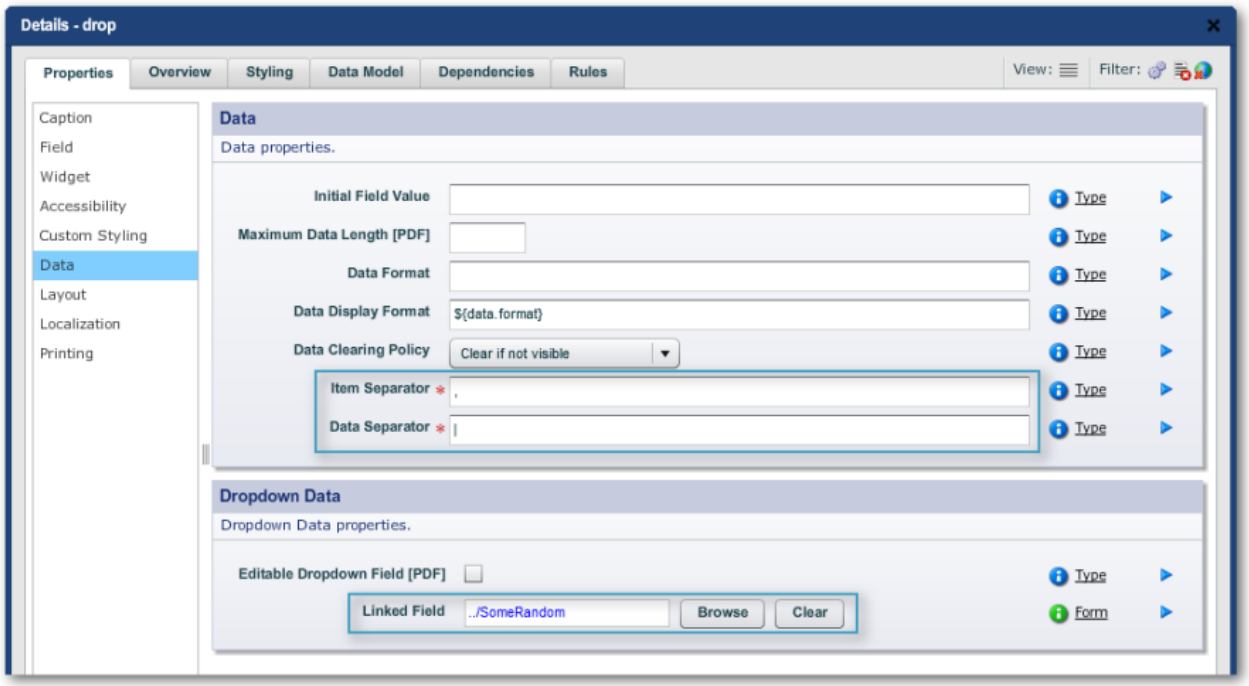
And here is the preview rendition:




**Preview of the cascading dropdowns.**

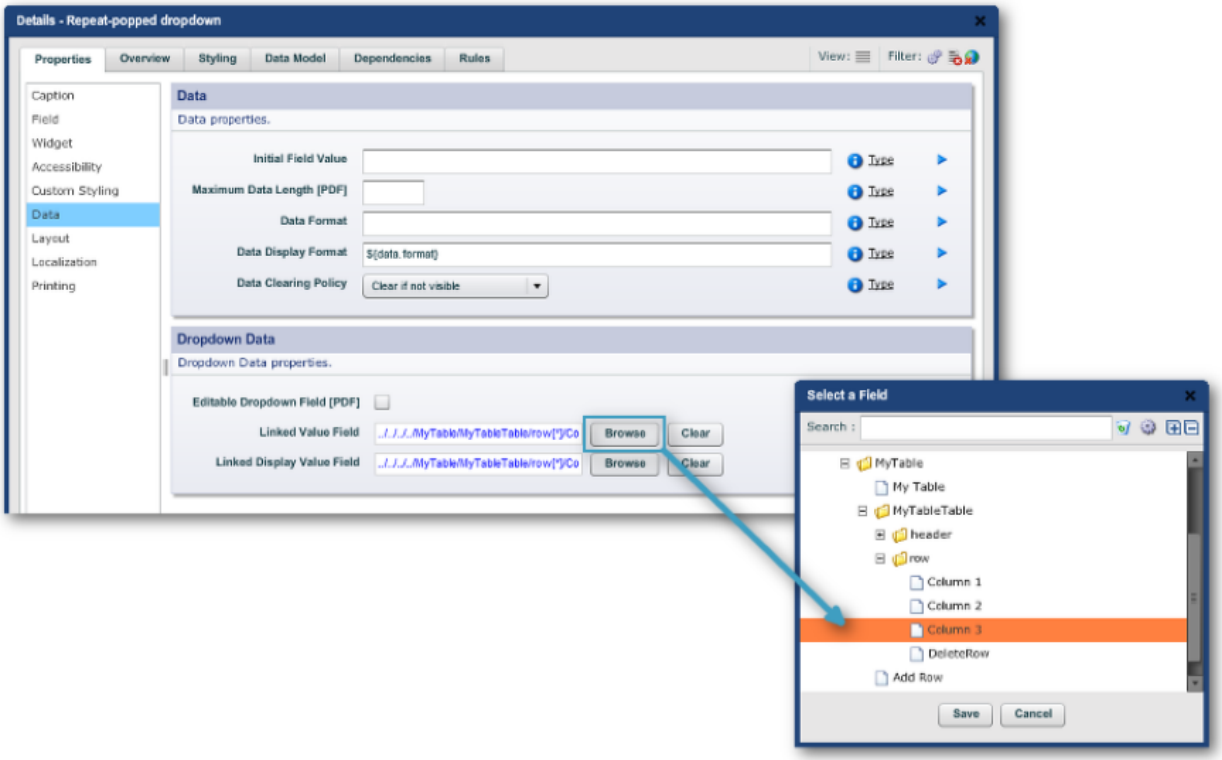
## Prefilled Dropdown Lists

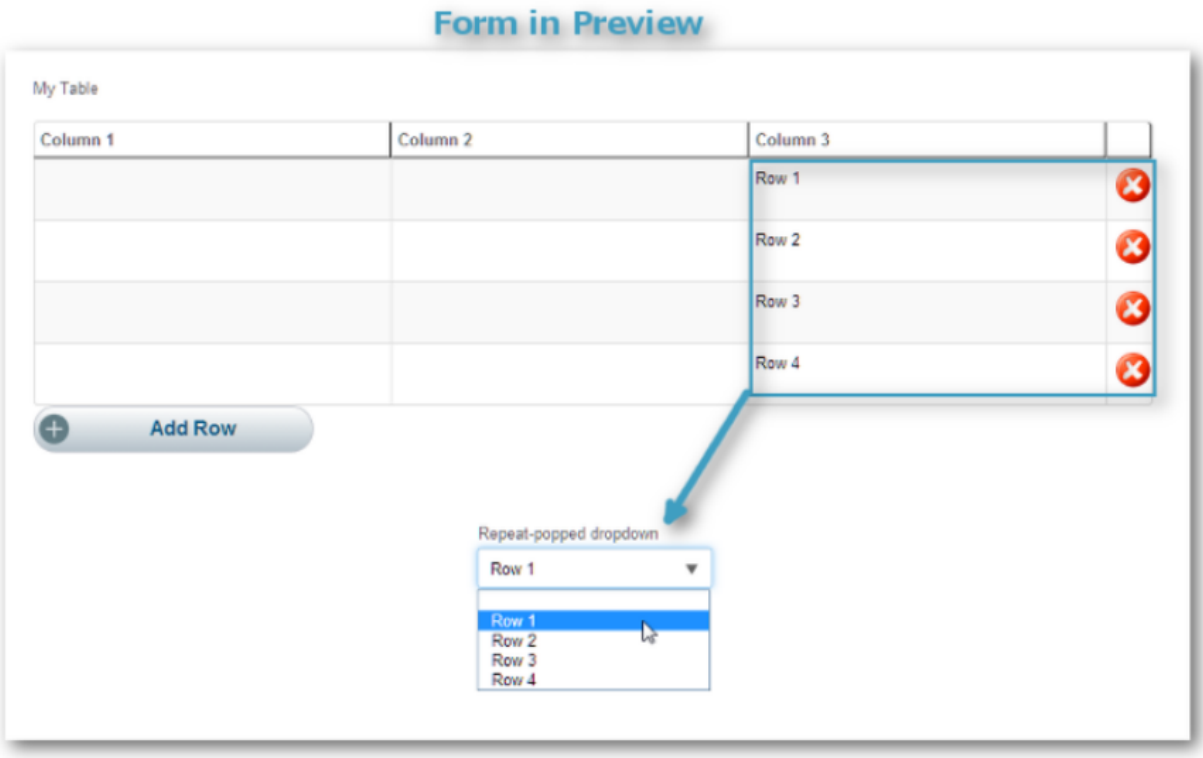
The Populating Dropdown List widget allows a Dropdown Field to be linked (via the Linked Field property) to a data field (created by dropping "Widget Palette -> Internal -> DataField" onto the form's structure. TM is then configured (in TM, "Home Dashboard -> Form -> Form Data Config link -> Property Prefilled Mapping tab -> Edit button") to prepopulate the data field with values. The default is for TM to give the data as a string using the default separators in the Data Field's Edit Properties:



## Prefilled Dropdown Lists from Repeatable Areas

The Prepopulating Dropdown List from Repeat widget creates a dropdown menu where the items are taken from a nominated column of a table or a repeat.



# Repeats

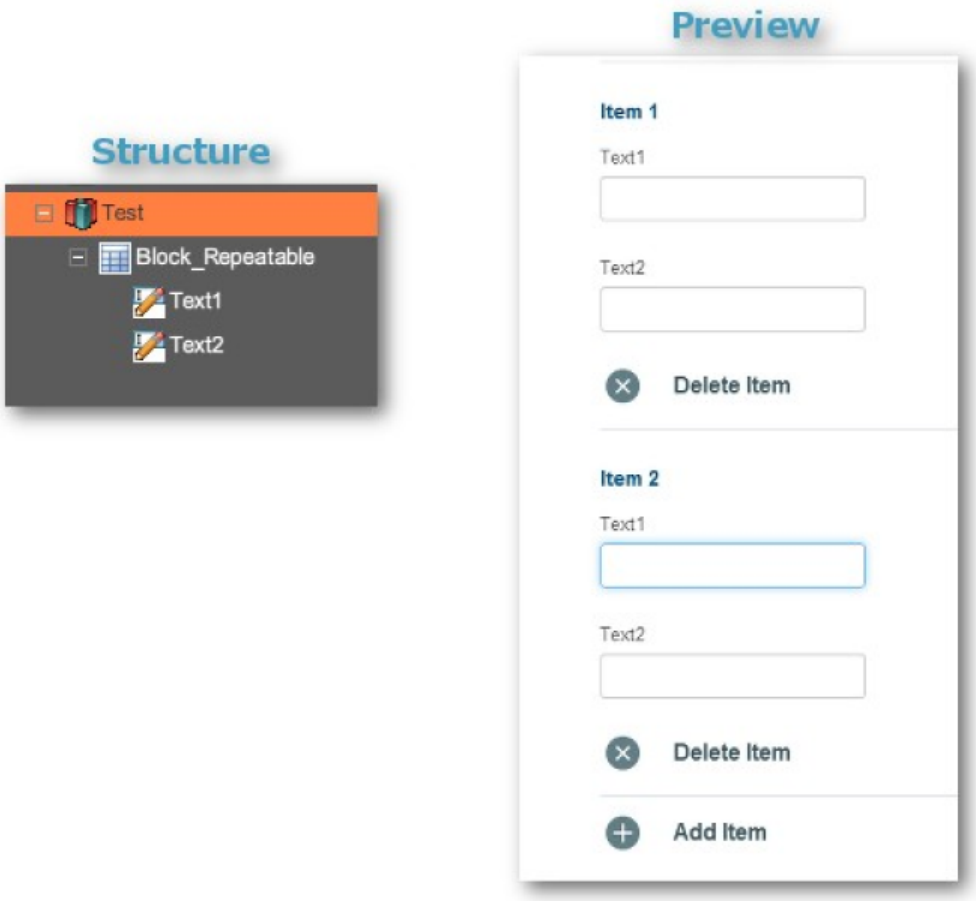
Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

Repeats in earlier versions of Composer used to be complex. You could not copy a a whole repeat structure block to another location on the form without generating error messages and time was you had to use many workarounds to get the new structure work. All these had to be documented for many pages. No longer, with Composer Version 4.

Repeats, then, are a more flexible repeating structure than Tables. Each "Row" in a repeat can be a layout block of fields. That means the row is not confined to a rigid grid-like structure, as with tables.

Otherwise, repeats are easy to construct. The simplest way is to use the predefined block "Repeating Block Template". Into it, insert a "Block [Repeatable]" and populate it with the fields you want repeated. The template gives you Add and Delete buttons for users to dynamically add or delete blocks. You can also use Edit Properties on the block template to change layout and the wording of the buttons.




We encourage you to experiment with the widgets in Repeats and Tables and discover how powerful is this approach.

# Advanced Scripting

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## JavaScript in Composer

Composer uses JavaScript as its scripting language. The only differences are some Composer-related libraries which contain Composer classes to, for example, reference fields in a Composer form or for other Composer integrations.

This section of the Guide focuses on form input scripting. Elsewhere we will cover the XML code used to tweak the format the form's output for some special purpose (such as to accommodate some integration point with the Enterprise's backend).

### Syntax

The syntax for Composer's scripts is that of JavaScript. JavaScript is maintained by the Mozilla Foundation. Here are the canonical references:
{+}https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Guide+
{+}https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference+

Other authoritative references are:
{+}http://www.w3schools.com/js/js_syntax.asp+{+}http://www.w3schools.-com/jsref/default.asp+{+}http://www.tutorialspoint.com/javascript/javascript_syntax.htm+{+}http://javascript.info+{+}http://www.java.com/en/download/faq/java_javascript.xml+

### "Me" Instead of "This"

In JavaScript, the "this" object generally refers to the current object receiving the event. Never use the "this" object in Composer scripts.

All Composer JavaScript (for rules, click action scripts, etc.) are embedded in a function, rather than being coded directly under an event. (The reasons for this are beyond this document's scope.) The commonly used "this" object, which refers to the current object, is not available in functions. Instead, Composer provides a "me" object. The me object refers to the object where the business rule is located.

If you have some existing JavaScript code that works correctly in either PDF or HTML, you can generally simply replace every occurrence of "this" with "me" for the same code to work in Composer.

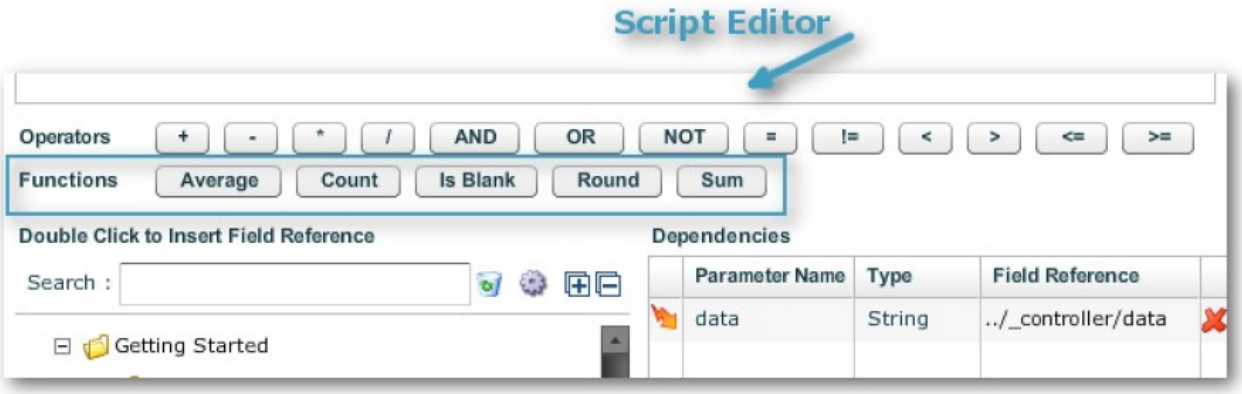
### Other Departures from Standard JavaScript

If you want to reuse a legacy script in Composer and want it to work correctly across platforms, you must modify it to use the technology-independent Composer Framework JavaScript library instead of the native libraries. For example, use sfc.getRawValue (me) rather than me.rawValue. See the Avoka Composer Framework link on Composer's Welcomepage.

Here, in the context of Composer, "across platforms" specificity means that the sfc calls work for both PDF and HTML.

## Classes and Functions

Many of the Composer functions, which are defined in sfcFunctions.js library, have been designed for your convenience — to accomplish a lot with little code. Many of these are embodied in the function buttons in the ScriptEditor.




The function buttons insert the corresponding function code into the Script tab's text window. That code ("$SUM(...)" for example) gets expanded further at runtime (to "sfcFunction.sum(...)" for example

We will also use the terminology "sfc classes" interchangeably with "Composer functions". We will mention here a few of these sfc classes created for you convenience:

sfc.copyValues (srcBlockNodeRef, targetBlockNodeRef);

though note that this does not work recursively, i.e. to blocks within blocks.

Composer also uses conveniently has a number of scripting conventions, such as parameters, which reduce the amounts of code needed to refer to form elements and their values. For more, see the Composer Framework.

### Syntax Checking

There are a number of JavaScript tools on the web for checking syntax:

{+}http://www.javascriptlint.com/online_lint.php+

A simple webpage, where you paste your JavaScript fragment into a textarea field and you get back a report of any simple syntax errors. Note that this tool is somewhat limited in scope, but this makes it very useful for quick checks.

Most modern browsers have JavaScript tools {+}https://developers.google.com/chrome-developer-tools/docs/javascript-debugging+ documentation for Chrome's inbuilt checker {+}https://developer.mozilla.org/en-US/docs/Tools/Debugger+{+}https://developer.mozilla.org/en/docs/Debugging_JavaScript+ These document Firefox's inbuilt Web Console tool {+}https://developer.apple.com/library/mac/documentation/AppleApplications/Conceptual/+Safari_Developer_Guide/Debugger/Debugger.html

The documentation for Apple's Safari on OS X

# Composer Framework

## The JavaScript Libraries

Composer has several JavaScript libraries. These are exposed in the Advanced Mode of the Structure Panel ("<Form> -> Composer Framework ->")

formBridge.js (included in PDF forms) htmlFormBridge.js

sfmSupport.js which supports

o sfc.js

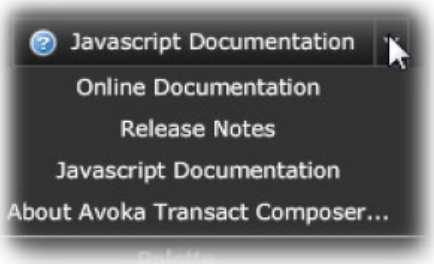
This defines the methods in the Composer public API. json.js

for JSON support.

## The Public API

### Documentation

You can access the API documentation at anytime in Composer, through the Online Documentation dropdown at the top right-hand corner of the Composer User Interface.




Select the "Javascript Documentation" option.
This opens a webpage in a new tab in your browser, listing the methods in the public API. (Avoka does have a set of internal APIs, but these are subject to frequent change. We strongly recommend not using these.)

**Calls**

The sfc calls are designed to work both for HTML and PDF. This is the reason sfc framework originally came into being.
Most of the sfc methods are static: you just call the method, specify the parameters and the method returns some value. Some typical examples:
sfc.getDaysDifference(startDate, endDate) sfc.convertToString(value) sfc.formatDate (dateObject, dateFormat) sfc.getRawValue(noderef)
Others are dynamic, such as the sfcInstanceManager which operates on a delegate (i.e. an event that is being listened to). You also can make use of Composer's BusinessRules widgets to listen to events.
However, Composer provides "parameters" which are convenient constructs to refer to form objects with a minimum of coding.

**Using JavaScript's Built-in Functions**

You can use the standard JavaScript functions, though you should make preferentially use of any sfc method instead of the standard JavaScript method as a general rule. But there are far more JavaScript functions for you to draw on.
There are many references for these:
https://developer.mozilla.org/en/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objectshttp://www.w3schools.com/jsref/jsref_obj_global.asphttp://www.-tutorialspoint.com/javascript/javascript_builtin_functions.htm
For example:
var n = 12345;
var x = n.toExponential(); // x will be 12345e+4

## Parameters

### In the Script Editor

The above examples of sfc static methods calls have a number of parameters, such as "startDate", "endDate" and so forth. Composer' Script Editor can conveniently refer to fields on the form for these calls.

Refereing to form elements becomes a simple matter of point-and-shoot to elements in the Structure Panel on the bottom-left of the Script Editor. The field is referenced in the JavaScript in the scripting text field by its field name in curly brackets. The Dependencies panel in the dialog gives the Parameter Name (the name within the curly brackets), the data type (about which, more later) and the Field Reference (which is the field's position in the structure, relative to the field for which the script is being created).

So, we could use an sfc call on such a parameter:

sfc.convertToString({Amount1})

You should not merely type the parameter name into some curly brackets in the script: the editor works best if you insert your cursor into the point of the JavaScript and double-click on the parameter listed in "Dependencies".

A useful byproduct of using these Script Editor parameters is that Composer is able to keep track of form elements when they are moved within the form, so that you do not have to re-point to these elements in their new locations.

### Edit Parameter Data

Clicking on the Edit icon in the right-hand column of the Dependencies panel (see immediately above) brings up the Edit Parameter Data dialog where you can:

edit the parameter name (i.e. the name that goes into the curly brackets Choose the parametertype via a dropdown:

o string

- Boolean

o number

- Is Selected

o node

o raw value o UID Trigger Type o Static

- Dynamic

We will discuss the Trigger Type further in OptimizingPerformance.

**Parameter Types**

| Parameter Type | Explanation |
|---|---|
| RawValue | Always returns a String representing the "raw" value of an object. Does no conversion, so it returns dates, booleans and other values as the underlying string that the value is stored as. Uninitialized values may return a null. |
| String | Always returns a string. Nulls will be converted to empty strings. (This gives you one less thing to "worry" about in your calculations - you don't have to test for both null and empty string.) |
| Number | Always returns a number. It will do its best to convert any parameter to a number. If it cannot convert it, it will return zero. |
| Boolean | Takes anything that resembles a true value, and return the boolean value "true". This includes "1", "T", "true", "Y", "yes", "on", and is case insensitive. Otherwise it returns the boolean value "false". Blank or Null is false. |
| IsSelected | Only used for checkboxes and radio buttons. Returns Boolean true if the checkbox/radio-button is selected. |
| Node | Returns the internal node object that represents an object. If you point at anything in a repeat from outside the repeat, this returns null (because it's really multiple nodes). If you refer to any object inside a repeat from within the same repeat, it returns the node. Nodes can be passed to internal SFC functions to perform operations on the object itself. |
| UID | Provides a reference to a node. Similar to a node, but can be used to reference an object in a particular row within a repeat. |

### Node Reference

There are three ways to refer to a node (or "form element", the terminology we have been using consistently so far):
The Script Editor parameter
the relative path (as seen in the "Field Reference" column value in the Dependencies panel) the Full Path (or "Absolute Path" from the form's root, usually by default "$record")
The field's UID (Unique Identifier)

#### Obtaining the Fullpath

If you do not avail yourself of the convenience of this point-and-shoot construct, you will have to refer to the form
field using the Data Model tab by double-clicking on the field in either the left- or right-hand panels and copying the "Fullpath" from the Data Model Binding panel in the properties dialog.
For example
$record.GettingStarted.FirstName.data

#### Obtaining the UID

You could get this from "Edit Properties -> Overview tab -> Basic Information panel -> field UID"
For example:
/GettingStarted/_outerArea/_contentArea/FirstName/data
Or you can use the sfc call: sfc.convertToUid(noderef)

## Data Types

### Overview

Data Typing is used throughout Information Technology. In Composer, there are two sets of data types:
Composer's own typing, as embodied in [parameterdatatypes]

- which are used by Composer internally. Some of these are exclusive to Composer:
  - Node
  - UID
  - Is Selected [JavaScript'styping]

- not to be confused with the Composer types, though some do resemble Composer's

The Composer types, as you would expect, were designed to handle data for both HTML and PDF forms.
JavaScript is looser in its data typing, which means that you usually do not explicitly specify some data's type. Circumstances, however, may require you to type data in order to get desired results.

## JavaScript Types

JavaScript has less types than Composer. For example, there is no such thing as a Date type. All JavaScript has are:

**String**

which is a sequence of characters, usually delimmited by straight quote marks for example: "To be or not to be"

**Number**

and there is no distinction made between inegers or decimals for example: 2, 3.142, 123e5 (scientific notation for 12300000)

**Boolean**

that is: true or false **JavaScript arrays JavaScriptObjects**
for example: JSON objects

**Undefined**

A variable with no value

**Null**

An empty variable
**Note:** undefined is not the same type as null. This is a subtle distinction, but it does have relevance to Composer scripting, as in the a scripting example given in VisibilityinCollaboration.

## Raw Data

This is a Composer internal data type. All data is held internally in Composer as a string of characters, be it a number, date, string and so on. This can be tricky: for example there is a difference between the integer 2, the floating point value 2 and the string "2". JavaScript handles the calculation of adding an integer to a floating point gracefully, but can mishandle adding an integer to a string.
Dates are a potential source of problems. Please refer to the Dates topic.

## Conversions

Because of JavaScript's loose typing, the need to convert form values hardly ever arises for Script Editor parameters. Composer looks after this for you.
However, if you are writing your own field references manually, you may have to convert the field's value from its native raw data value. The Public API has a number of methods to do this:
sfc.convertToBoolean(value) sfc.convertToFloat(value) sfc.convertToInteger(value) sfc.convertToString(value)
Converts a number value (or Boolean?) into a Composer string data type. sfc.-formatDate(dateObject, dateFormat)
see Dates sfc.getFormattedValue(noderef)
returns the value of the node according to its Composer data type sfc.getRawValue (noderef)
the opposite of the formatted value: retaurns the raw value, irrespective of the Composer data type.

### Explicit Conversions

You can convert String values using the public API's functions (listedabove). For example:
var myvalue = sfc.convertToNumber(sfc.getRawValue(me));
This code will convert the raw value of the current field ("me") to a Number.

### Implicit Conversion

JavaScript is a loosely typed language, and will attempt to convert data for you. The rules are a little complicated, which is why we suggest that you always try to convert to the appropriate type before you use them.

One simple example is a way to convert any data type into a string - simply concatenate an empty string to it. For example:

var var1= 18; // var1is a number

var var2 = var1+""; var2 is a string, because we concatenated "" to it.

## Comparisons

Be careful when making comparisons between different data types. JavaScript will attempt to convert them for you, but the results may not always be the expected.

In JavaScript, the "this" object generally refers to the current object receiving the event. Never use the "this" object in Composerscripts.

All Composer JavaScripts are embedded in a function (see Advanced Scripting), rather than being coded directly under an event. (The reasons for this are out-of-scope.) The commonly used "this" object to refer to the current object, is not available in functions. Instead, Composer provides a "me" object. The "me" object refers to the object where the Composer script is located, i.e. the form element whose Edit Properties dialog holds

the script.

If you have some existing JavaScript code that works correctly in either PDF or HTML, you can generally simply replace every occurrence of "this" with "me" for the same code to work in Composer.

**Note**: If you want the script to work correctly across different technologies, you must also rewrite it to use Composer's technology independent JavaScript library rather than the native libraries. for example, use sfc.getRawValue(me) rather than me.rawValue. See the Avoka Composer Framework.

# Dates

## Date Formats and Patterns

There are a number of different ways in which data is stored, displayed, edited and validated in Composer forms. These are mostly useful for dates and numeric values, which can be represented in different ways. When you are using Composer, you can specify these different formats by using data patterns, such as DD/ MM/ YYYY or $#,###.##.
The different formats are:

| Format | Description |
|---|---|
| Edit Format | This is the format that is used when the user types into the field. For example, 3/27/2012, or 49.99. It is possible to have multiple alternate edit formats - for example, allowing either 2 or 4 digit years. |
| Display Format | This is the format that is displayed when the user exits the field. It can be more readable than the edit format, and clarifies the interpretation. For example, 27th March 2012 or $49.99 |
| Raw Format | This is the value that is actually stored within the form at runtime. It's the value you get from calling the getRawValue(). This is standardized to make programming easier<br>• it doesn't matter what your formats are used for the form users, you always get a consistent value in any code you write. For dates, this is ISO format, such as 2012- 03- 27. |
| XML Format | This is the format that is used to actually store the data in the XML file. Composer will use this format for pre- population data, and will convert to this format on submission. |
| Validation Pattern | PDF forms allow a separate validation pattern that is used to ensure that the data is valid. In Composer, the Validation Pattern is always identical to the Edit Pattern. |

Usually, you don't need to be aware of these patterns because they are specified in your organizational stylesheets. However, you may need to occasionally override these patterns for particular fields.
In most cases, users will enter dates using pop- up date editors, and so date edit format

patterns are not so important. However, some users, especially "power" users and visually impaired users may prefer to enter dates using the keyboard.

### Recommendation for Dates

For dates, we recommend that the most useful Data Format is:
North America: date{M/D/YYYY}|date{M/D/YY}
Elsewhere: date{D/M/YYYY}|date{D/M/YY}
These format will:
accept single digit days and months with or without a leading zero (flexible)
accept 2 digit or 4 digit years (flexible)
for editing, will always display days and years without leading zeros (simpler)
for editing, will always display years including the century (no ambiguity) Working with Dates
Composer uses theJavalibrarymoment.js (freely distributable under the terms of the MIT license) to handle dates.
The date clases in the AvokaComposerFramework are:
sfc.formatDate(dateObject, dateFormat)
where "dateObject" is is the raw value of the form element, sfc.getRawValue (someFormElement)
sfc.getDaysDifference(startDate, endDate) Where the startDate and endDate are raw values.
sfc.getTodaysDate()
Returns today's date as YYYY-MM-DD
This is not the generation date of the form (which you access in scripts with the property formula
$GENERATION{DATE} instead)
This call returns only the calendar date. To get the time of day and timezone as well, use this native JavaScript call instead, where "x" will be your date object.
var x = new Date();
sfc.isLeapYear(year)
Where "year" is a 4-digit value. Returns true or false.
sfc.isPastDate(date)
Where "date" is the raw value. Returns true or false
sfc.isToday(date)
Where "date" is the raw value.
sfc.parseDate(dateString, dateFormat)

Parses a date according to the given date format. Both parameters are strings. Returns a raw value.

## Advanced Date Output Formats

The sfc methods for date handling depend on the Moment.js library. This JavaScript library can output dates in various formats, as specified by this table:

| Input | Output |
|---|---|
| M, MM | Month Number (1- 12) |
| MMM, MMMM | Month Name |
| Q | Quarter (1- 4) – sets the month to the first month in that quarter |
| D, DD | Day of month |
| Do | Ordinal day of month (from 2.6.0) |
| DDD, DDDD | Day of year |
| d, dd, ddd, dddd | Day of week (NOTE: these formats only make sense when combined with "ww") |
| e | Day of week (locale) (NOTE: these formats only make sense when combined with "ww") |
| E | Day of week (ISO) (NOTE: this format only make sense when combined with "WW") |

| Input | Output |
|---|---|
| w, ww | Week of the year (NOTE: combine this format with "gg" or "gggg" instead of "YY" or "YYYY") |
| W, WW | Week of the year (NOTE: combine this format with "GG" or "GGGG" instead of "YY" or "YYYY") |
| YY | 2 digit year (see below) |
| YYYY | 4 digit year |
| gg | 2 digit week year (if greater than 68 will return 1900's, otherwise 2000's) |
| gggg | 4 digit week year |
| GG | 2 digit week year (ISO) (if greater than 68 will return 1900's, otherwise 2000's) |

| | |
|---|---|
| GGGG | 4 digit week year (ISO) |
| a, A | AM/PM |
| H, HH | 24 hour time |
| h, hh | 12 hour time (use in conjunction with a or A) |
| m, mm | Minutes |
| s, ss | Seconds |
| S | Deciseconds (1/10th of a second) |
| SS | Centiseconds (1/100th of a second) |
| SSS | Milliseconds (1/1000th of a second) |
| Z, ZZ | Timezone offset as +07:00 or +0700 |
| X | Unix timestamp |
| LT, L, LL, LLL, LLLL | Locale dependent date and time representation |

You parse an input date with sfc.parseDate (dateString, dateFormat), using the formats in the Input column of the table immediately below. The output of this call gives you a properly formatted raw date format.

You can use these to build the full input format specification, using other characters as punctuation. For example: YYYY-MM-DD or YYYY/MM/DD or DD/MM/YYYY or MM/DD/YYYY. Internally, Composer's raw date format is YYYY-MM-DD, or for more precision to include time of day, timezones along with the date, it uses the ISO DateFormat.

You also can control how a date object displays using sfc.formatDate(dateObject, dateFormat), using the formats displayed in the right-hand "Output" column. As with inputs, you can concatenate these together using characters as punctuation. For example: "MMMM Do, YYYY, HH:mm a, timezone Z" formats as "May 19th, 2014, 13:27 pm, timezone +10:00", where the Z specifies the timezone as the timezone offset from GMT.

To return the precise time and timezone, use

var x= new Date;

and get the formatted time with our sample format with the call

sfc.formatDate(x, "MMMM Do, YYYY, HH:mm a, timezone Z")

# Regular Expressions

## Overview

A regular expression is a sophisticated, industry-standard way of specifying a validation pattern. An explanation of regular expressions is beyond the scope of this document, but there are numerous books and web sites that you can refer to. You can also use search engines to find standard regular expressions for common types of data. An example of some regular expression patterns are:
^[a-zA-Z0-9_-\.]@[a-zA-Z0-9_-\.]\.[a-zA-Z]{2,4}$ the pattern for email addresses
^http\://[a-zA-Z0-9-\.]+\.[a-zA-Z]{2,3}(/\S*)?$
the pattern for HTTP:// URLs

## RegEx References

https://developer.mozilla.org/en/docs/Web/JavaScript/Guide/Regular_Expressionshttps://developer.mozilla.org/en/docs/Web/JavaScript/Reference/Global_Objects/RegExphttp://www.regular-expressions.info/javascript.html
http://regex101comhttp://regexpal.com
A good resource for regular expressions is: http://regexlib.com/.

Online regular expression editor and evaluator can be found at: http://g-skinner.com/RegExr/ and http://www.debuggex.com/.

## How to Use Regular Expressions

There are two ways to use patterns in JavaScript:
var patt = new RegExp(pattern,modifiers); or more simply:
var patt = /pattern/modifiers;
The modifiers (also called "flags" in the documentation) are:

**g**

global match

**i**

ignore case

**m**

multiline; treat beginning and end characters (^ and $) as working over multiple lines (i.e., match the beginning or end of each line (delimited by \n or \r), not only the very beginning or end of the whole input string)

y

sticky; matches only from the index indicated by the lastIndex property of this regular expression in the target string (and does not attempt to match from any later indexes). This allows the match-only-at-start capabilities of the character "^" to effectively be used at any location in a string by changing the value of the lastIndex property.

In other words, in most cases where you are not using a modifier, just use the pattern as follows:

/^[a-zA-Z0-9_-\.]@[a-zA-Z0-9_-\.]\.[a-zA-Z]{2,4}$/

in your JavaScript code.

# Using Property Formulae

## Overview

The following scripting constructs, the property formulae, only apply while the form is being generated. When generation is complete, the fom is then delivered to the user, either as HTML the browser or as XFA to Acrobat reader (or some other reader) or to a pdf browser internal module or plugin.

These property formulae allow you to query the build environment, to inspect a form field, to find a field in the form hierarchy, perform some string manipulations, and other useful functions.

They do not trigger anything while the form is running and only affect the time it takes to serve a form.

### $BUILD

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $BUILD(ENVIRONMENT) | Returns the values of the called arguments: ENVIRONMENT VERSION REVISION |
| $BUILD(VERSION) | |
| $BUILD(REVISION) | |

## $CHAR

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $CHAR{COMMA} | Returns a comma character ',' |
| $CHAR{DOT} | Returns a dot character '.' |
| $CHAR{SLASH} | Returns a slash character '/' |

$CHAR is a convenience to specify characters, in a text field for example, that would normally are parsed in JavaScript.

## $DATA

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $DATA(ROOT) | Returns the root element of the form:<br>E.g. "/AvokaSmartForm" |

## $ENCODE

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $ENCODE{SCRIPT,value} | Encodes the value so it can placed in a javascript string literal |
| $ENCODE{RICHTEXT,value} | Replaces richtext markup with its form specific implementation |
| $ENCODE{URL,value} | URL encodes the supplied value |
| $ENCODE{XML,value} | Encodes the value with XML markup entities |
| $ENCODE{STRIP,value} | Removes richtext markup |
| $ENCODE{TRIM, | Removes cr, lf characters, leading and trailing spaces |

| | |
|---|---|
| value} | |
| $ENCODE{UPPER,value} | Converts the value to uppercase |
| $ENCODE{LOWER,value} | Converts the value to lowercase |
| $ENCODE{FNNAME,value} | Converts the value to a valid javascript function name by replacing invalid chars with _ |

Note: $ENCODE is unique among the property formulae, in that you can specify multiple values, pipe- delimited. For example: "$ENCODE{TRIM|UPPER,value}", will first trim the string (i.e. remove any leading or trailing space characters) offered as the "value" and then convert the characters to upper case. The order of these pipe-separated arguments is important, as changing the order of them my affect the output. Note that these are executed from left to right.

### $FIELD

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $FIELD{TYPE} | returns the type of the current field |

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| | if any |
| $FIELD{TYPE,relativeUid} | returns the type of the field at the relative uid |
| $FIELD{TYPE,relativeUid,type Name} | returns 'true' if the type of the field at the relative uid is an instance of the supplied type name |
| $FIELD{VALUE} | returns the value of the current property of the current field |
| $FIELD{VALUE,-typeName} | returns the value of the current property as defined in the specified type |
| $FIELD{RBTYPE} | For radio buttons only, indicates whether the buttons value is controlled by the group or by the button |

| | |
|---|---|
| | returns 'group' for group controlled buttons (case 1&2) returns 'button' for button controlled buttons (case 3) |
| $FIELD{RBTYPE,buttonType} | For radio buttons only<br>returns true if the button type (as deternmined by $FIELD{RBTYPE}) matches the supplied type. |
| $FIELD{INSTANCEMANAGER} | returns the relative uid of the closest parent instance manager or blank if not found |
| $FIELD{NESTLEVEL} | returns the number of repeat instances this field is nested inside of |
| $FIELD{INDEX} | returns the index of the field as a child of its parent |
| $FIELD{REVERSEINDEX} | returns the reverse index of the field wrt its parent |
| $FIELD{ISFIRST} | returns true if this field is the first child of its parent |
| $FIELD{ISLAST} | returns true if this field is the last child of its parent |
| $FIELD{CHILDCOUNT} | returns the number of child fields |
| $FIELD{HASCHILDREN} | returns true if the field has at least 1child |
| $FIELD{RESOURCE,resName} | returns the contents of the given resource applying formula substitutions with the context of the current field. |

## $FIND

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $FIND{propertyname} | Searches from the current context up the hierachy for a property with the given name |

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| | and returns the value of the first one found. If a property isn't found then a blank string is returned. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | E.g. $FIND{section.name} returns the section name from within any child field of the section |
| $FIND{path,-propertyname} | Sames as $FIND{propertyname} but the upwards search begins from the field found at the relative path provided. If no field can be found at the supplied path then a blank string is returned.<br><br>e.g. $FIND{../../someField,label} |

## $FLOAT

TBA

## $FORM

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $FORM(NAME) | Returns the form's values of the called argument |
| $FORM(DESCRIPTION) | |
| $FORM(RELEASE) | |
| $FORM(TEMPLATE) | |

## $GENERATION

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $GENERATION(TECHNOLOGY) | |
| $GENERATION(FLAVOUR) | |
| $GENERATION(FLAVOR) | |
| $GENERATION(TARGET) | |
| $GENERATION(VARIANT) | |
| $GENERATION(UUID) | |
| $GENERATION(TIMESTAMP) | |
| $GENERATION(DATE) | |
| $GENERATION(DEBUG) | |
| $GENERATION(DEBUGSCRIPT) | |

### $IF

TBA

### $INFO

| Call | Result |
| --- | --- |
| $INFO(USER) | Returns the form's info values of the called arguments |
| $INFO(ACCOUNT) | |
| $INFO(CLIENT) | |
| $INFO(ORGANISATION) | |
| $INFO(ORGANIZATION) | |

| Call | Result |
| --- | --- |
| $INFO(PROJECT) | |
| $INFO(SERVER) | |
| $INFO(ENVIRONMENT) | |

### $LIST

| Call | Returns |
| --- | --- |
| $LIST{CONTAINS,list,value,separator} | Returns true if the list contains the value |
| $LIST{INDEXOF,list,value,separator} | Returns the 0 based index of the value within the list |
| $LIST{ITEMAT,list,index,separator} | Returns the item at 0 based index position within the list |
| $LIST{SIZE,list,separator} | Returns the size of the list |

### $LOCALE

| Call | Result |
| --- | --- |

$LOCALE(LANGUAGE) Returns the form's locale values of the called arguments
$INFO(COUNTRY)
$INFO(CODE)

### $LOOKUP

TBA

### $MATH

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $MATH{PX,value} | Converts the value to pixels and strips the units |
| $MATH{IN,value} | Converts the value to inches and strips the units |
| $MATH{MM,value} | Converts the value to millimetres and strips the units |
| $MATH{MAX,-value,...} | Returns the largest value - if the first value has units then the result is returned in those units |
| $MATH{MIN,-value,...} | Returns the smallest value - if the first value has units then the result is returned in those units |
| $MATH{SUM,-value,...} | Returns the sum of the supplied values - if the first value has units then the result is returned in those units |
| $MATH{PRODUCT,-value,...} | Returns the product of the supplied values (multiplies them together) - if the first value has units then the result is returned in those units |
| $MATH{HALF,-value} | Returns half of the supplied value - if the value has units then the result is returned in those units |
| $MATH{TWICE,-value} | Returns twice of the supplied value - if the value has units then |

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| | the result is returned in those units |
| $MATH{MARGIN,-value} | Converts a composer margin to a technology supported margin |

## $RULE

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $RULE{TRIGGER,rulename) | Returns the trigger width in pixels for the given rule |

## $SEQUENCE

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $SEQUENCE{Sequence argument, Sequence argument1, ....., RESET) | Resets the named sequences. |

## $STRING

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $STRING{CONTAINS,-value,patt ern} | Returns true if the value contains the pattern as a sub-string |
| $STRING{INDEXOF,-value,patter n} | Returns the 0 based index of the pattern within the value or -1if not found. |

## $TEST

| Call | Result |
|---|---|
| $TEST{BLANK,value} | Returns true if the supplied value is blank |
| $TEST{NOTBLANK,value} | Returns true if the supplied value is not blank |
| $TEST{EQUALS,-value1,value2} | Returns true if value1and value2 are the same |
| $TEST{NOTEQUALS,-value1,valu e2} | Returns true if the value1and value2 are not the same |
| $TEST{NOT,value} | Returns true if value is the literal false otherwise returns false |
| $TEST{AND,value1,value2} | Returns true if value1and value2 are both the literal true |
| $TEST{OR,value1,value2} | Returns true if value1or value2 are the literal true |
| $TEST{LESSTHAN,-value1,value 2} | Returns true if value1as a number is less than value 2 as a number |

| | |
|---|---|
| $TEST{GREATERTHAN,-value1,value2} | Returns true if value1 as a number is greater than value 2 as a number |

# Optimizing Performance

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

Forms in Composer are smart: they are dynamic and user actions in filling out the forms trigger events and change the form on-the-fly as users enter data. For example, a user can click on a checkbox and a number of fields become visible as a result. Or users fill in numerical values in a table column and a total is displayed in a field at the foot of the table.

Many forms in the real world elicit a great amount of information from the end users, with the consequence that a number of events ripple through the form as users complete entry into individual fields.

Why are there so many events on these smart forms? They are there to:

ensure that, as a default, all the data and all the dependencies on the form operate with complete integrity all of the time

ensure that all validation rules and scripts have occurred

ensure that any changes made at any time during the filling out process to any fields in the form affect all objects on the form

This design approach means that calculations, scripts and dependencies produce predictable and consistent results and that the data presented to end users is accurate and up-to-date. These take place without the form's designer doing any further work.

But, as is often the case with a "one size fits all" approach, there are trade offs in large, complex forms:

an increase in generation time for very large forms an increase in the rendering time of the form

increased lag for the user to move from one field to another in such forms

increased lag when some action takes place, such as navigating through the form, submitting, saving it.

## Form Generation

A full discussion of this topic is beyond the scope of this guide. The form's HTML is not statically stored in Transaction Manager and just downloaded to the end user. Instead, a number of processes take place:

the form's dependencies are inspected, resulting in a hierarchy of triggering and firing

the form is prepopulated with data while being served
server-side processes to track the form from its being served to its outcome (submission, saving, abandonment, anonymous sharing or progression through a collaboration)
and even all the web server processes to deliver all the assets of the form to the user's device

## Form Rendering

This is the time it takes for the device to render the form in either the browser or in the Mobile App. The form is served to either as HTML5 code interspersed with JavaScript. The JavaScript code is not merely the scripts you have placed into some of the form's fields through the Script Editor: there is also much code to integrate the form and your scripts together, as well as the functioning of the other form widgets. All these scripts and HTML have to load and initiate on the device. Most mobile devices are slower than desktop devices — although they are getting faster.

Be aware that the whole form downloads to the device, not just the visible or editable parts of the form. The same is true for all the prepolutation data, all of the form's auto-suggest data (as distinct from such data provided by an external dynamic data service) and even mobile device responsive elements normally not visible on the desktop. All of these affect the rendering times, but the good news is that the increase in processing speeds of devices, and the huge performance increases in modern browsers, rendering times are no longer the problem they once were.

In the end, you must always take the user experience into account, and this may lead you to simplify your forms as a general rule.

## Speeding up Generation and Rendering

It follows that these two, generation and rendering, depend mostly on the complexity of the form itself. A couple of settings in Composer have a minor influence on form generation (as we will see below). The form rendering times for the most part on the amount of HTML and JavaScript code to be processed. Optimization of rendering really means simplification of the form — just as with any other web page.

# Optimization Strategies

Composer now has tools to improve the performance of forms while they are in use. Most forms of medium to low complexity require no optimization at all and run fast enough for users to have no issues. This may not be the case with very complex forms with a great deal of dependencies.

There are a number of possible strategies for tuning complex forms to run faster:

Tuning the dependencies

Tuning the triggers that make scripts fire Tuning the events that make scripts fire

Tuning the observers watching form objects and events Use of the Business Rules widgets on the form

## Tuning Dependencies

### Inspecting Dependencies

The Edit Properties dialog now allows you to inspect a form element's dependencies through "Edit Properties -

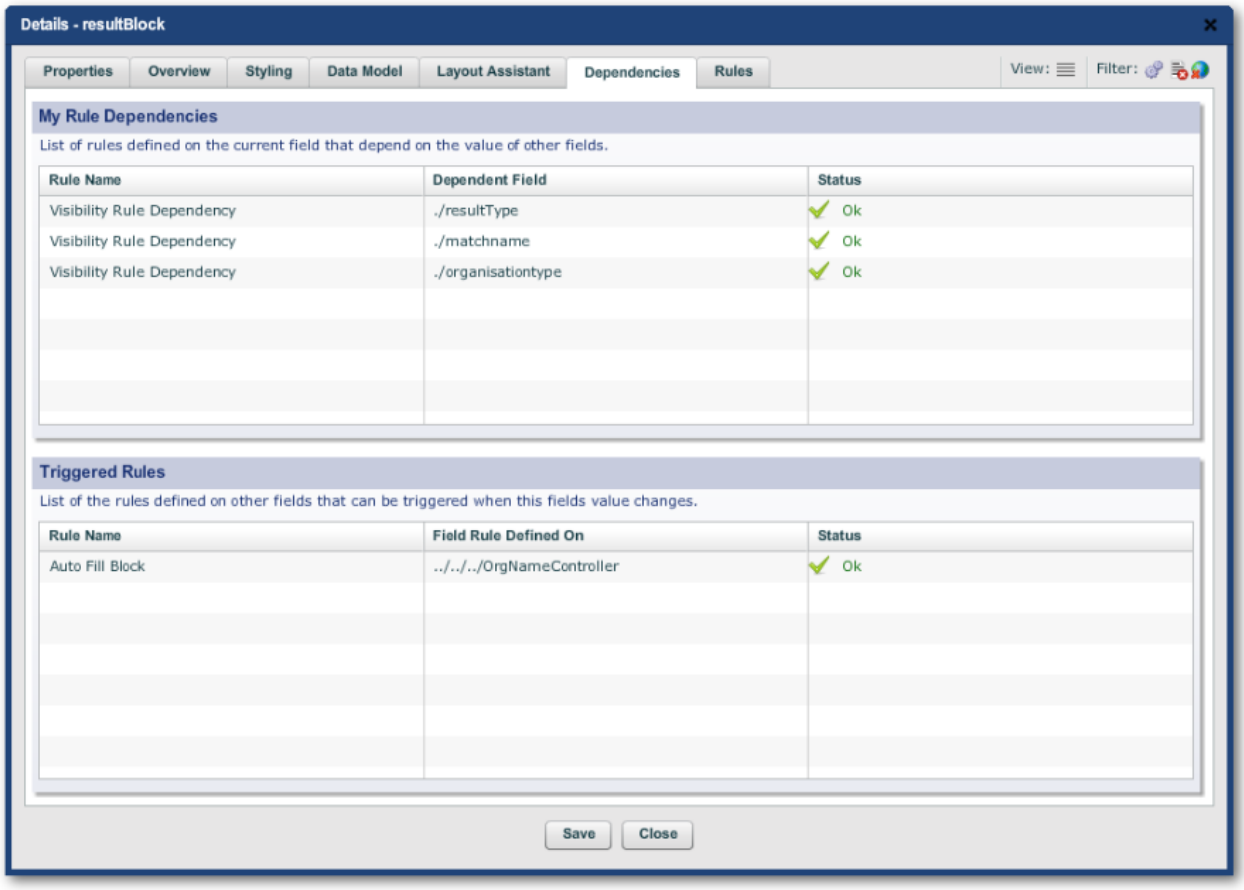
> Dependencies tab". The tab has 2 panels:

#### My Rule Dependencies

which lists the form elements on which depend this element's the Rules or Scripts. In other words, this panel shows the rules, scripts that fire and affect this element's value upon the change of any of the elements listed.

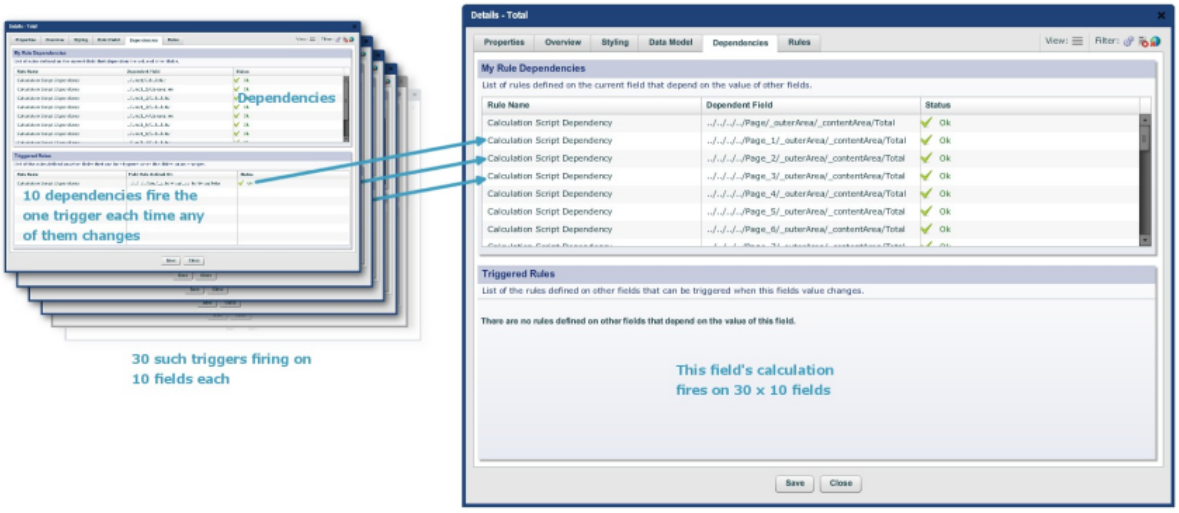
**Triggered Rules**

which lists the rules or scripts which fire upon this element's change.




Here is an extreme case, where we have deliberately created so many dependencies on the form that moving from field to field takes more than 10 seconds each time. The form has 30 wizard-style pages. Each page has a static tables of 10 rows, 3 columns each. Each row has a calculation, in the 3rd column, of column 1multiplied by column 2. At the bottom of each page is a subtotal of all 10 calculation fields. The last page of the form is a total of all 30 subtotals.

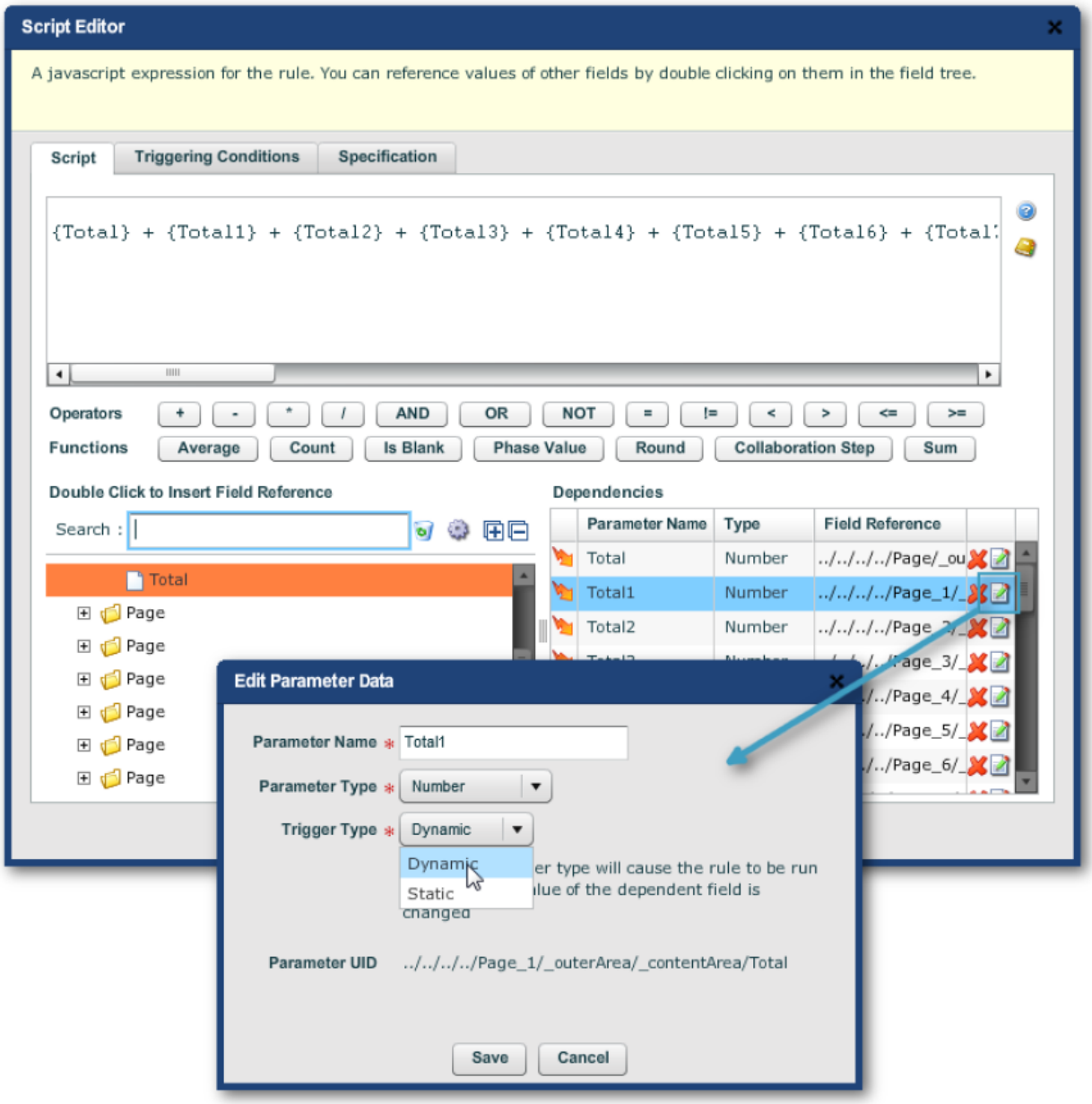
This means that the total on the last page is triggered by any changes in some 91times 30 fields, i.e. the field is triggered by changes to any one of 2,730 fields. Let us focus on just the subtotals triggering the total:



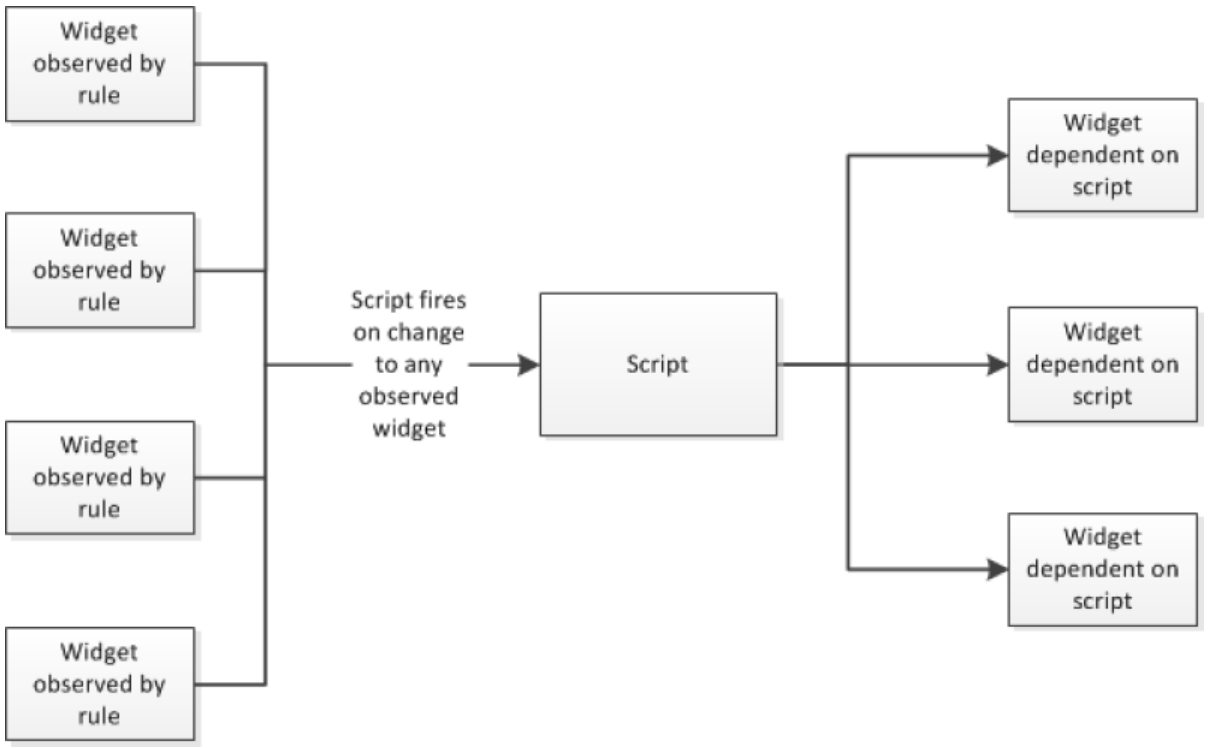

### Dynamic vs Static Dependencies

When you write a script in the script editor of the Edit Properties dialog, you reference a form object using a Parameter. This creates a dependency, which duly appears in the My Rule Dependencies panel of the Dependencies tab.

The default setting for these is to have a Dynamic trigger type, as indicated by the presence of the lightning arrow in the left-hand column of the Dependencies table of the Script Editor:

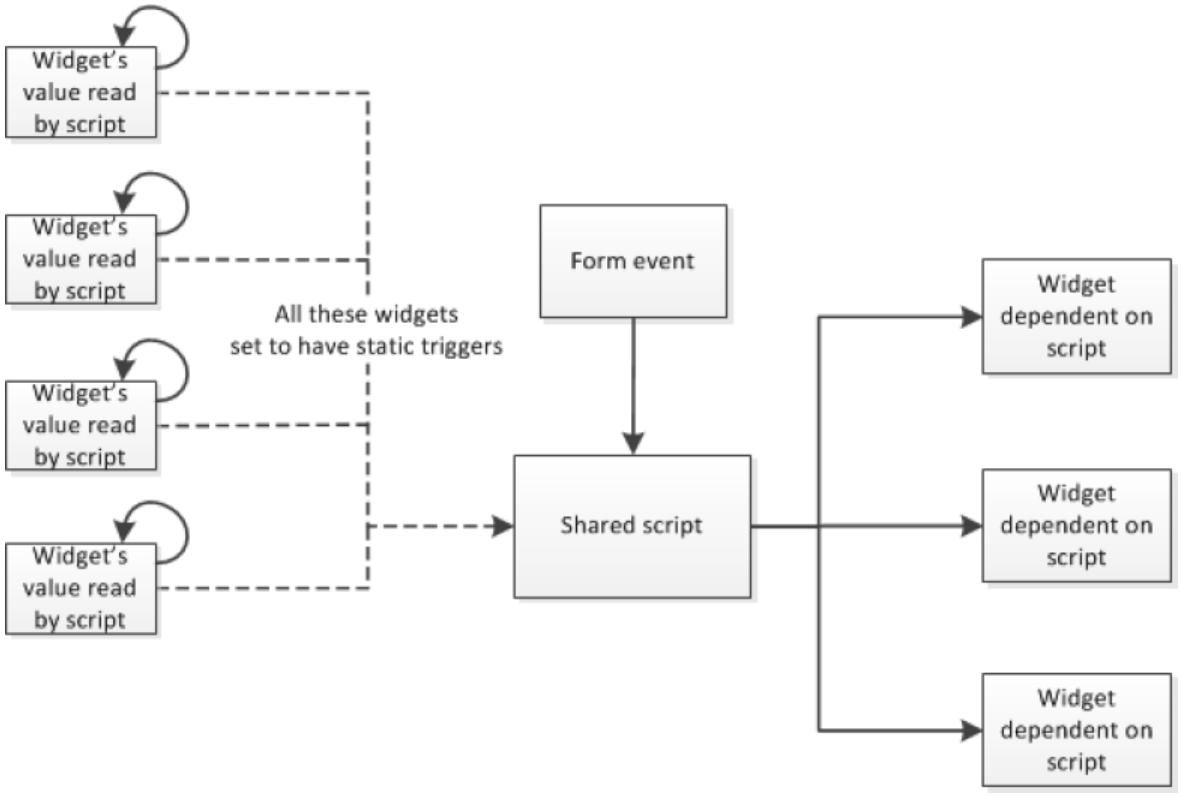



A dynamic trigger type means that the script will fire whenever the field referenced changes. That means the field is always watched and the trigger will always fire on any change to the field.

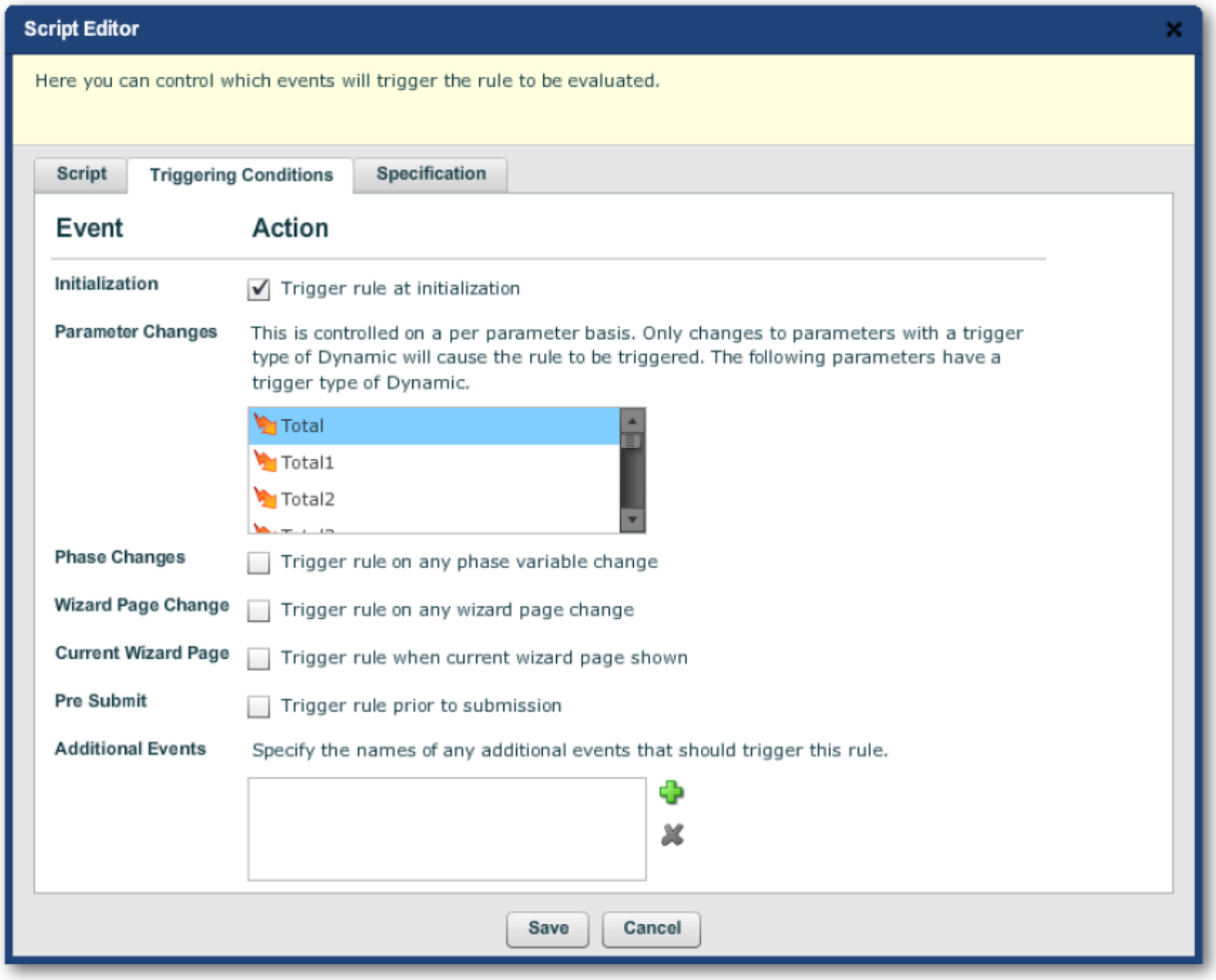



Changing the trigger type to Static means that the widget will no longer be observed. So, if we change all the dependencies in the above example to the Static trigger type, the rule will not fire. That we do want the rule to fire sometimes goes without saying, because we want the total to be the correct value. Which brings us to the Trigger Conditions tab in the Script Editor.

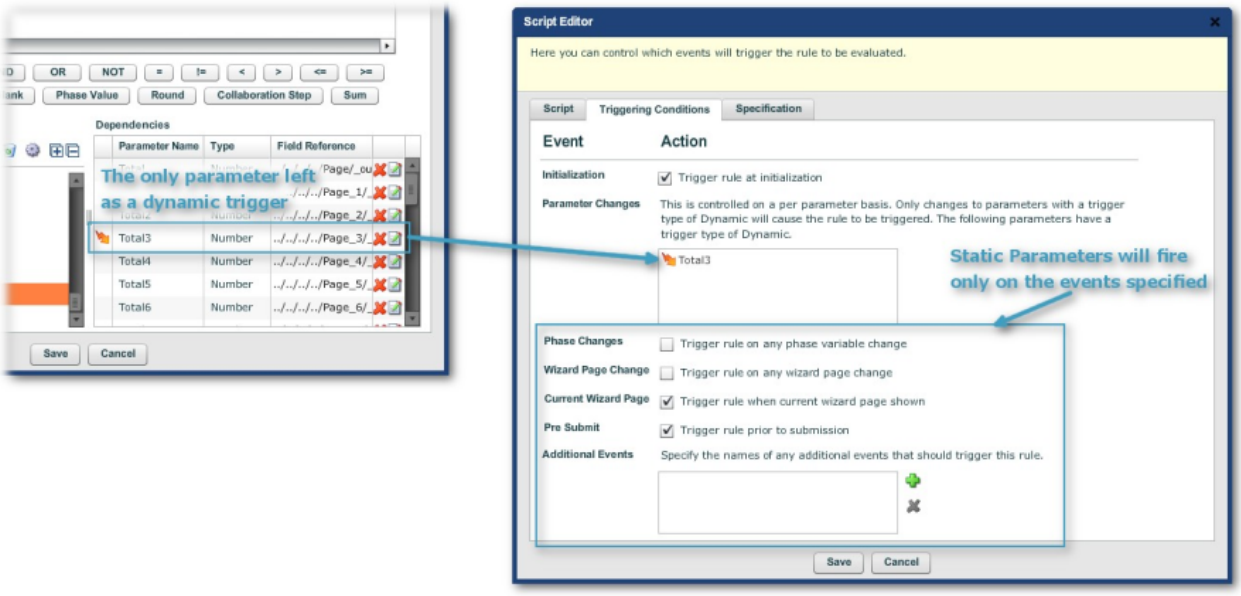
**Trigger Conditions**




Here, the widgets are only read when particular form events occur. We can specify the events in the Triggering Conditions tab of the Script Editor:




But the problem here is that all the parameters listed in the Parameter Changes list have dynamic triggers. That means the settings below the list will are not reduce the firing events by very much: the rule will fire on the Parameter Changes listed. So, as a demo, we have changed all the parameters but one to static, and set them to fire only when the user moves to the wizard page with the field containing the script or just prior to submission. Of course, in practice, you would most likely, in this case, turn all the trigger types to static to give you complete control over the script firing by eliminating the dynamic triggers.




And, the reverse also applies: you can then set the triggers from the form element with the script to the widgets dependent on the script (the widgets on the right hand side of the diagram with the form event) to also be static through the Script Editor of each of these widgets.

You can see that we can now, by going through the triggering conditions throughout the form, reduce the triggers from the original 2,730 fields to a much smaller number and substantially improve the performance on this form.

You might want to leave a parameter or two still with dynamic triggers: these could be a checkbox or button, whose action is to fire the script. In earlier releases of Composer, there were some work arounds to control the firing of scripts. These included having hidden a checkboxes (to act as a Boolean to make the script fire) or using blocks as a parameter reference (in the absence of static triggering). These are now deprecated.

**Trigger at Initialization**

You can turn off this option and the form will render in the browser. This would only make rendering perceptively faster if the script is compute intensive. It is not worth doing for the majority of scripts. But note that the setting is not global: it applies only to this script. Also, make sure that you are not creating issues that by not running this script.

**Phase Changes**

The events listed in the Triggering Conditions tab are self-explanatory. Phase Changes may not be.

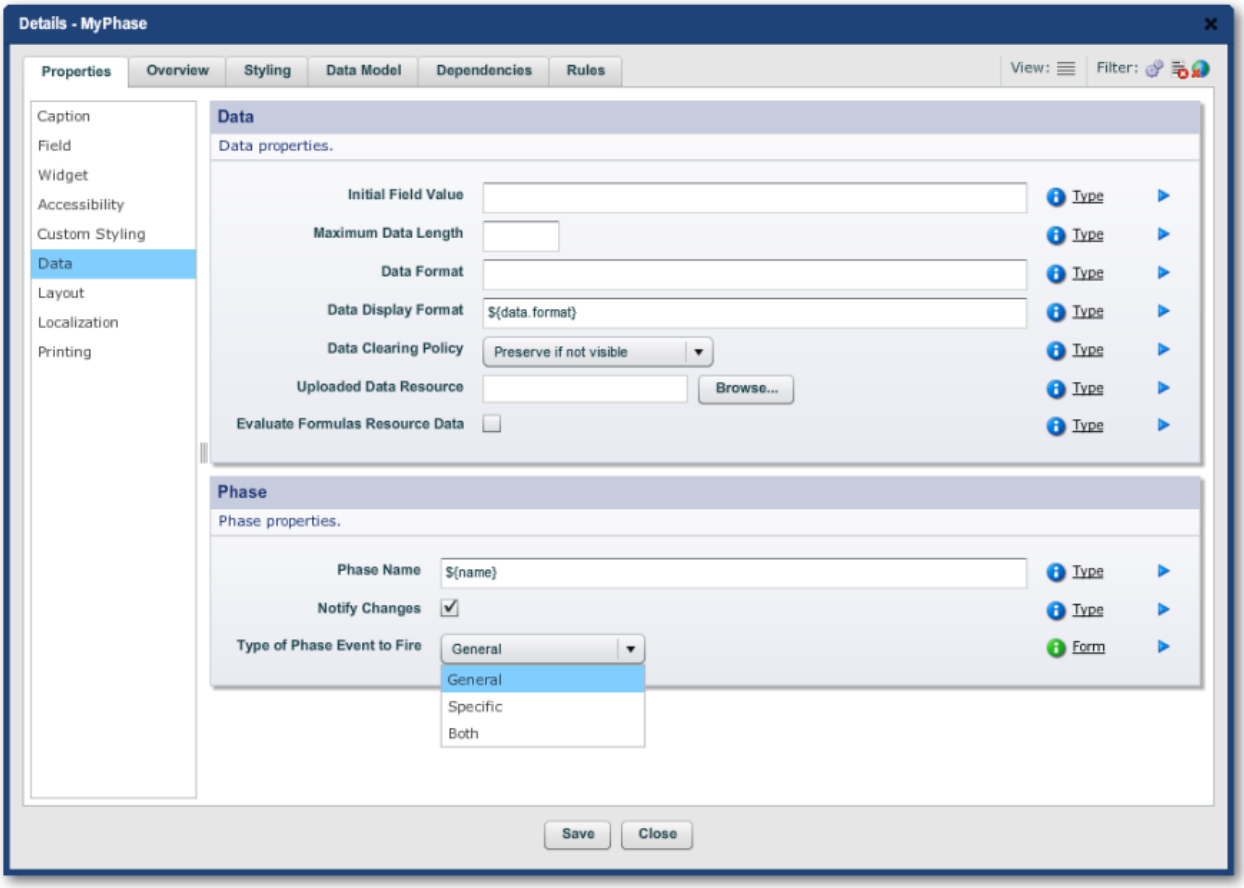
A phase is a non-localized variable that holds some value and which can be observed

for whatever purpose. It is non-localized because you need not reference it through either a relative or absolute path.

Here follow some brief notes on creating a phase.

Pick up a "Phase" Widget from the palette (use Search to find it) and drop it onto "Nuts & Bolts -> Phases" in the Structure Panel. In the resulting wizard, it is usual to check the "Exclude from Layout Manager" as the widget normally does not appear on the form.

The Phase is configured in the Data tab.




Put any scripts required in the Rules tab, as per usual. In other scripts, you can reference the phase by

pointing to the structure widget as a Parameter or by src.getPhaseValue("phase name") as before.

Make sure you check the Phase Change checkbox in the Triggering Conditions tab of the scripts you want to fire on phase changes.

## Additional Events

You can also type in the names of other events. The standardeventsarelistedhereinthisguide.

## Caveats

As you can see, these tools are powerful and require no programming as such. However, as we have mentioned above, after optimization, you must test the form to see if the scripts yield the correct answers now that changes to field values no longer ripple through the entire form automatically. There are also other undesired effects that you must guard against, such as preventing validation rules from firing and therefore letting invalid data through to submission.

# Business Rules

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The Rules Properties section of this manual describes how you add scripting and logic to individual widgets. Though some widgets, like blocks, can pass on their rules to their children, this methodology does not allow rules to be assigned to several widgets, especially those not related or which do not share inheritances. What if the widgets are scattered throughout the form and cannot easily be wrapped by some block in the structure panel without including other widgets that you do not want to similarly inherit properties? This problem cannot be solved through "Edit Properties" individually for all the widgets concerned.

The "Business Rule" and "Mandatory" field types solve this problem by being central containers for rules and scripts. Other widgets can now share, for example, a script, by pointing to a business rule widget in the their "Edit Properties" dialog.

There are three types of Business Rule field types:

## GeneralPurpose

These contain the logic that control visibility, editability, data clearing, event firing, triggers and event listening.

## Error

These generate messages and also prevent submission of the form

## Warnings

These also generate messages but do not prevent form submission.

1. Mandatory CheckboxBlock

Allows you to enforce the activation of at least one checkbox in the block: leaving all of the boxes unchecked will prevent submission of the form.

1. MandatoryBlock

You use this to enforce that **at leastone** of the contained form elements are given values.

These rules widgets are intended for advanced users only, though many of their

features are no harder to implement than editing some of the properties in the "Rules" tab for each widget. They are a powerful tool for optimizing response times of complex forms

# General Purpose

## Configuration Settings

The General Purpose Business Rule widget's Rule tab holds the following:

**Visibility Rule**

Note the difference between **AlwaysVisible**, **NeverVisible** and **Script** or **Rule Based**. That is: the value of an invisible field being observed by the Business Rule could be affecting the outcome of the rule because the field has not been cleared.
See also ClearingPolicies.

**Visibility Policy**

**Initial Visibility**
**Visibility Data Clearing Policy**
**Business Rule**
Either "None" or "Script Based"

**Additional Event LIsteners**

See here

**Business Rule Trigger**

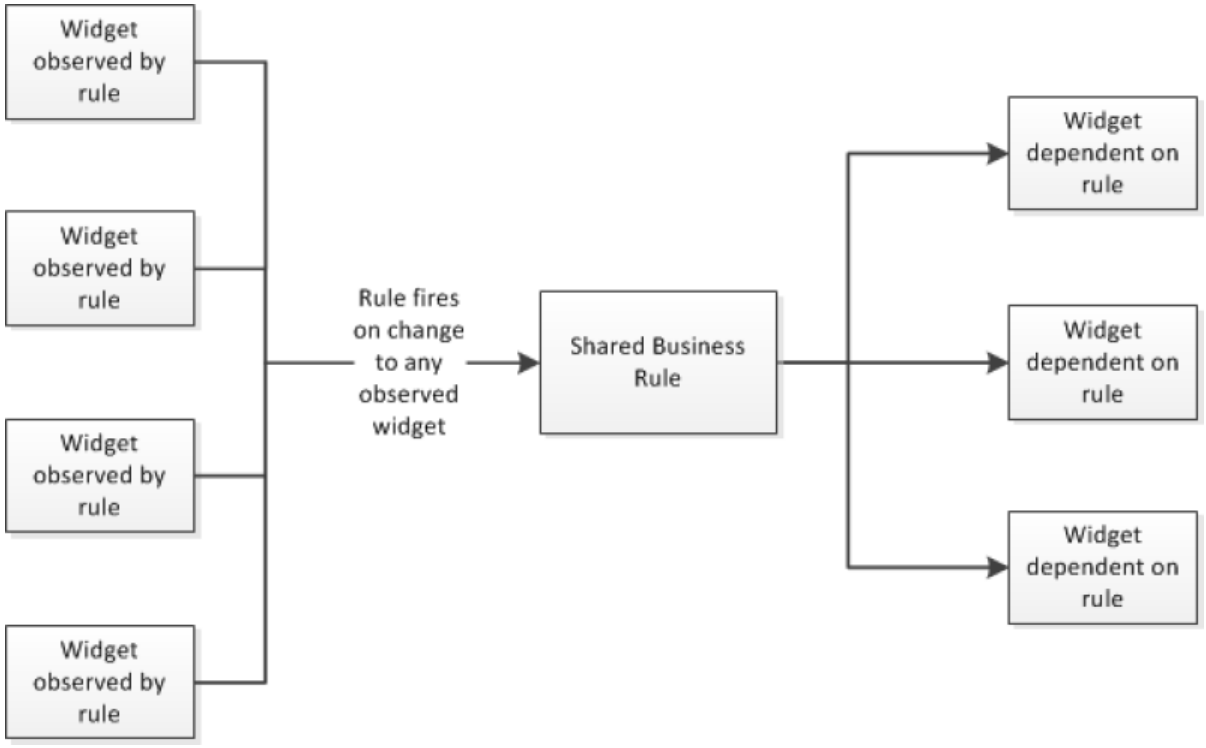
Run Always | Run only when visible.

## The Relationship Between Nominated Widgets and the Rule

There are two broad ways for a General Purpose Business Rule widget to fire:

**The default**

where the rule fires every time one of the nominated widgets changes. In other words, the rule's listener is forever observing these widgets for change and will fire every time one of these changes. This can slow the form down if the scale of all these observed widgets is large enough.

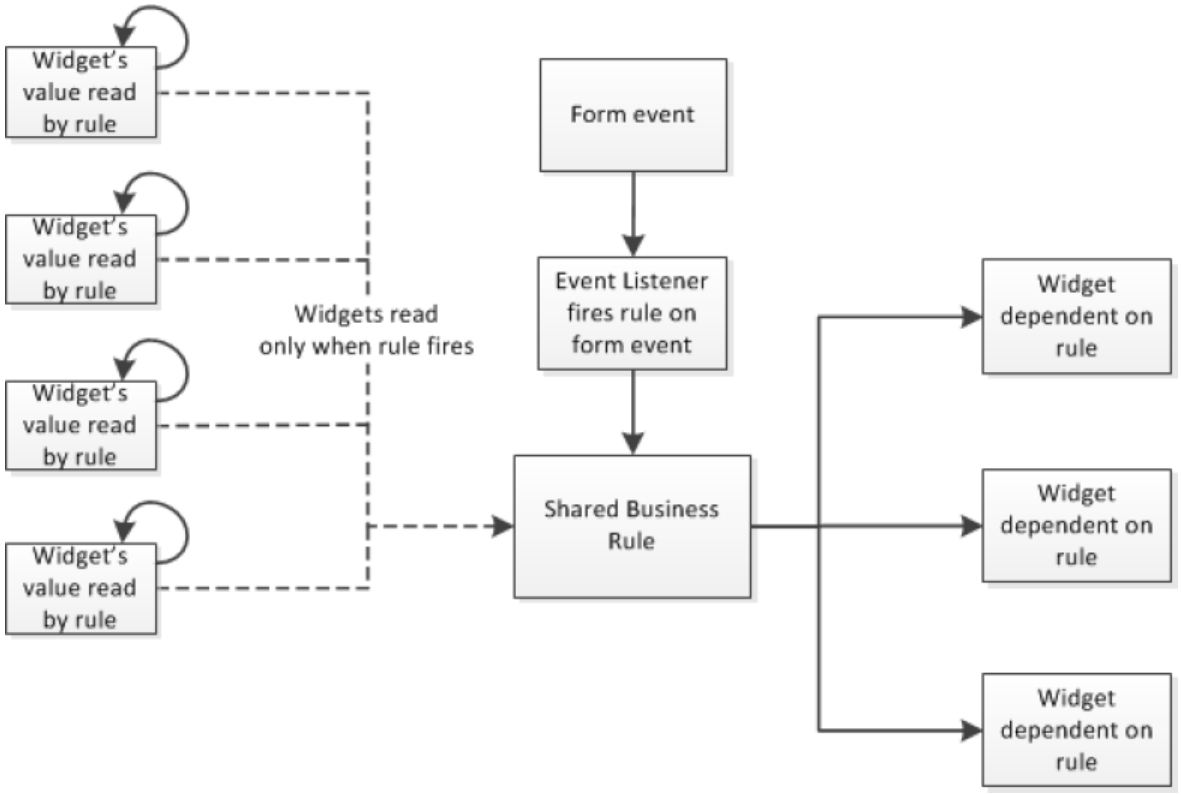



**Rule fires on change of any observed widget; as a result, the rule could fire many times and make the form laggy**

1 Additional Event Listeners

Here, the widgets linked to the rule can asynchronously change, but the rule will only fire when a form-level event is detected by the listener. The form events are listed, comma separated in the "Additional Event Listeners" field in the "Data" tab of the Busi-

ness Rule widget.




**Rule fires less and only on a nominated form event or events; results in a more responsive form.**

The above second case results in the Rule widget firing less frequently than for the first case: every change to any of the observed widgets no longer results in the rule firing every time.

## Standard Composer Events

| Event | Description |
|---|---|
| **init** | The first event to which a widget can listen when the form starts. This event sets the initial data-based state. |
| **postInit** | Runs immediately after init. Used to run code when everything is in the initialized state. |
| **change** | The only event that does not call everything listening to it. It will look at the source node and look up the list of fields with a dependency on that field. |
| **phase** | Will fire when any phase value changes. evt.evtData is the name of the changed phase. Its new value is fetched with sfc.getPhaseValue |

| | |
|---|---|
| | ("<phaseName>"), where <phaseName> is the name of the affected phase. |
| **evtValidationView** | This event is fired once all current validation updates have been completed and it is ready to update the error lists, etc. |
| **preSubmit** | this event fires immediately before the form is submitted (although there is an issue that preSubmit is not currently fired when using a form in Mobile App but this should be resolved in a future release). |

# Error

Error Business Rules will, on error, prevent the user from submitting the form.
The rule has more settings than the General Purpose business rule properties. The visibility rules in particular can cause confusion if not properly understood.

## Focus Field Target

The rule fires when the user focus becomes the nominated field and whenever the value of the field changes. The rule can be set to "Run Only When Visible" (which is the default setting) or "Run Always". The nominated field will display the warning background colour while the rule is in error.

## Clearing Policies

See Privacy on the privacy considerations that dictate data clearing policies. Note the distinction between "ClearHiddenDataonSubmit" and "ClearDataWhenHidden".
The distinction may seem trivial if we consider only the form's data at the point of user submission. However, when one of form's Business Error Rules is dependent on a field that happens to be hidden, and that field is causing the rule to be in error, that hidden field would prevent the user from submitting the form, even though all the visible data is suitable for submission.
So, this is the reason for the distinction between "Visibility Data Clearing Policy" and "Editable Clearing Policy" in the rule's properties.

## Displaying Errors

The default display of form errors is the standard footer of the typical template. The same structure is also available with the Error List Predefined Block. The errors are

listed in a clickable list; double-clicking on a list item takes users to the form element needing recitification. You also can write the explanatory text displayed as well as the error messages themselves. You therefore have the tools to assist users though the process and, therefore, minimise the rate of form completion failures.

The Form can display both errors and warnings through the ErrorandWarningPredefinedBlock. Users can scroll through wither the errors or the warnings using next and previous links.

The ErrorSelectionBlock displays both of these blocks, one on top of the other.

The Edit Properties -> Rules tab of the Error Business Rule can also be set to displaying an error dialog: a popup with the text of the Warning Message of the Rules tab. The same also can be set for warnings.

The use of these various blocks gives you some flexibility in how you want problems with the form data to be explained to users and what to do to remedy these issues.

## Warning

These rules behave the same as the Error Business Rules, except that warnings do not prevent the user from submitting the form. We have already discussed the display of warnings above.

## Mandatory Checkbox Block

This mandatory block enforces the rule that its containing checkboxes must have at least one member selected before the form can successfully be submitted.

## Mandatory Block

This mandatory block enforces the rule that its containing members and groups must have at least one member selected before the form can successfully be submitted.

There are, however, a subtle differences between using this widget or using the button assistant and checking the"Mandatory"box in the creation wizard for the assistant:

The Mandatory Block by default leaves all its contained buttons or checkboxes unchecked or without value. If end users try to submit the form with all these boxes unselected or unfilled, the error message for the block is displayed and all the contained elements get red outlines.

Checking the "Mandatory" box of the button assistant wizard means that at least one of the buttons (the first by default) is selected at form initialization and there is no way to go to an all-unselected condition.

Several checkbox or buttons blocks can be contained in the mandatory block, all of

them unchecked at initialization, and yet only one button of one group must be selected before submission and all the other buttons in the other groups can remain unchecked.

# Library Advanced Features

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

As we have already seen above in TheHierarchyandEnvironment, an Account has Libraries and Organizations under it. Also, there are also special libraries called "Releases" and "Service Packs" which we will call here "Compatibility Settings"; but these are assigned to Organizations. Also, the Organization itself has its own library elements attached to itself. Here are the different Libraries and their locations:

| Library Type | | Location or Association |
|---|---|---|
| Compatibility Settings | Releases | Live above the Workplace structure. Each Organization is associated with a particular release. |
| | Service Packs | Live above the Workplace structure. Each Organization may be associated with particular service packs. A Service Pack is also relevant to a particular release. Any Library that is neither a Release or Service Pack is termed an "ordinary" Library. |
| Ordinary Libraries | Native Libraries and Style Packs | Style Packs are Libraries packaged by Avoka Technologies. Otherwise, they are ordinary Libraries. "Native" here means that the Libraries live in the Account, and are therefore already shared with the Account |
| | Shared Libraries and Shared Style Packs | These are ordinary Libraries that live in other Accounts and which have been explicitly shared with this Account. |
| The Organization's Internal Library | | Lives inside the Organization, not — unlike the other Libraries in the Account — as a separate Library entity under the Account. The elements in the Organization's Internal Library affect all Projects in the Organization regardless of other settings. |

# Composer Account Administration

If you wish to carry out work on Libraries, you should consult the "Transact Composer Account Administration Guide". This is a handy reference on where to go in the Composer user interface in order to carry out such important Library-related tasks as:
Allocating users at the Organization and Project levels Creating and importing libraries
Inspecting which libraries are available to Organizations Assigning Libraries from other Accounts to an Organization
Maintaining Libraries and their contents (style sheets, templates, custom types and property sets) Ongoing maintenance
Maintaining compatibility through revision maintenance of Organizations
The Administration Guide gives a number of tasks to be completed in order to make Libraries and particular Templates available to Project users. The rest of this topic below discusses the theory on how the stack of inheritance works and what its effects are. The administration tasks and the theory work together and both need to be understood.

# How Libraries Relate to Organizations and Projects

There are 2 properties in the behavior of libraries that need to be understood here: **Visibility** and

### Inheritance

Visibility is the easier to understand. Inheritance then is a consequence of visibility.
Inheritance is extremely important. It determines what templates are available at the form level and the style of each template at the Project level. Please refer to Inheritance Within Forms. especially the diagram showing how the inheritence of library components then affect the behavior of the form's elements.

# Visibility

### Ordinary Libraries at the Account Level

Ordinary Libraries — those not part of the Compatibility libraries — are visible at the Account Level. The rules for visibility for ordinary Libraries operate at the Account level and are:
Libraries that are live in an Account are visible to all Organizations in the Account. This

includes Libraries imported into an Account via a package. ("Workspace -> <Account> -> Import Library or Organization link") The Libraries of an Account can be explicitly shared (or not shared) with other Accounts. (Go to "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Library> -> Administration tab -> Library Share sub tab".)

Visibility means that the components of the Library, **withthe exception oftemplates**, are shared by all Organizations and their children in the Account. Here, we do not include Administration (the configuration settings for visibility for users and Organizations) and Problems (a log of error messages for the Library).

### Compatibility Libraries

Compatibility Libraries contain Releases and Service Packs; these are visible at the Organization Level. They are allocated at the Organization level in the wizard when a new Organization is created ("Workspace -> Create New Organization link"). Compatibility can be changed later (via "Workspace -> Organization -> Change Release action button"), meaning that the Organization will point to a different set of compatibility Libraries.

So, the consequence is that different Organizations in the same Account can be compatible with different Composer versions and service packs.

### The Organization's Internal Library

In terms of its type of contents, the internal Library is pretty much an Ordinary Library. But in terms of its effect, it is the most powerful of all the Libraries because it lies above the Search Path settings of the Organization.

### Search Path Inclusion at Organization Level

When an Account is visible to an Account, either by virtue of belonging to the Account or by being shared, the contents of the Library still doesn't affect the Organization until it has been included in the Organization's Share Path. You specify the share path in "Workspace -> <Organization> -> Update Organization Details action button -> second screen of the resultant wizard".

**Note:** the choice of Libraries for search path inclusion is only between Libraries native to, or shared with, the Account.

### Templates

Template availability operates at the Project level. Only Templates from visible, search path-included Libraries can marked "Available" to a Project.

## Visibility Summary

**Note:** Visibility has to cascade down from the Account Level. Thus, for a Template to be allowed for a project, its Library has to be shared at the Account Level and put into the Search Path at the Organization Level.

| Level | Object | Location | Method |
|---|---|---|---|
| Account | Ordinary Library (Templates, Stylesheets, Custom Types, Resources) | Within Account | Always Visible |
| | | In another Account | Shared with other accounts: "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Library> -> Administration tab -> Library Share sub tab" |
| Organization | Compatibility Libraries (Releases and Service Packs) | Assigned to Organization through "Release Settings" | In wizard when creating account "Workspace -> <Account> -> Create New Organization link" or when updating Organization "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization -> Change Release action button" |
| | Ordinary Library (Templates, Stylesheets, | Anywhere in the environment. | In wizard when creating account |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Custom Types, Resources) | Must be shared with the Account and included in the Search Path | "Workspace -> <Account> -> Create New Organization link" and 2nd screen of the resulting wizard or when updating Organization "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization -> Update Organization Details action button", 2nd screen of the resulting wizard. |
| | Internal Library | Is automatically allocated to every Project in the Organization. Affects all Projects in the Organization and its settings overide all other settings. | Examine and populate this library through "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> the tabs Stylesheets to Resources" |
| Project | Templates | Anywhere in the environment. Containing Library must be shared with the Organization | Allow or Block the template from being used in new forms in the project. "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> <Project> -> Block or Allow this template to be used in new forms in this Project action button". |

# Inheritance

## The Cascade

Stylesheets and Custom Objects now live in the Libraries, not in Templates. All Organizations now inherit all the Stylesheets, Custom Objects and Resources contained in the Compatibility Libraries.

This means that all users have access to all the objects in a release and that all the release's widgets will appear in the Form Editor's palette. (In fact, if you have the access, you can open a release and you will find that the widgets in the "Custom Types" tab, though you must check "Include non-editable types" to see them.)

So, there is a cascade of inheritance at the Project Level. which is where the Library visibility settings matter. Forms within the project inherit the Library visibility of their Project. The form inherits all the Stylesheets, Custom Objects and Resource, plus all of the allowed Templates, of all the visible Libraries.

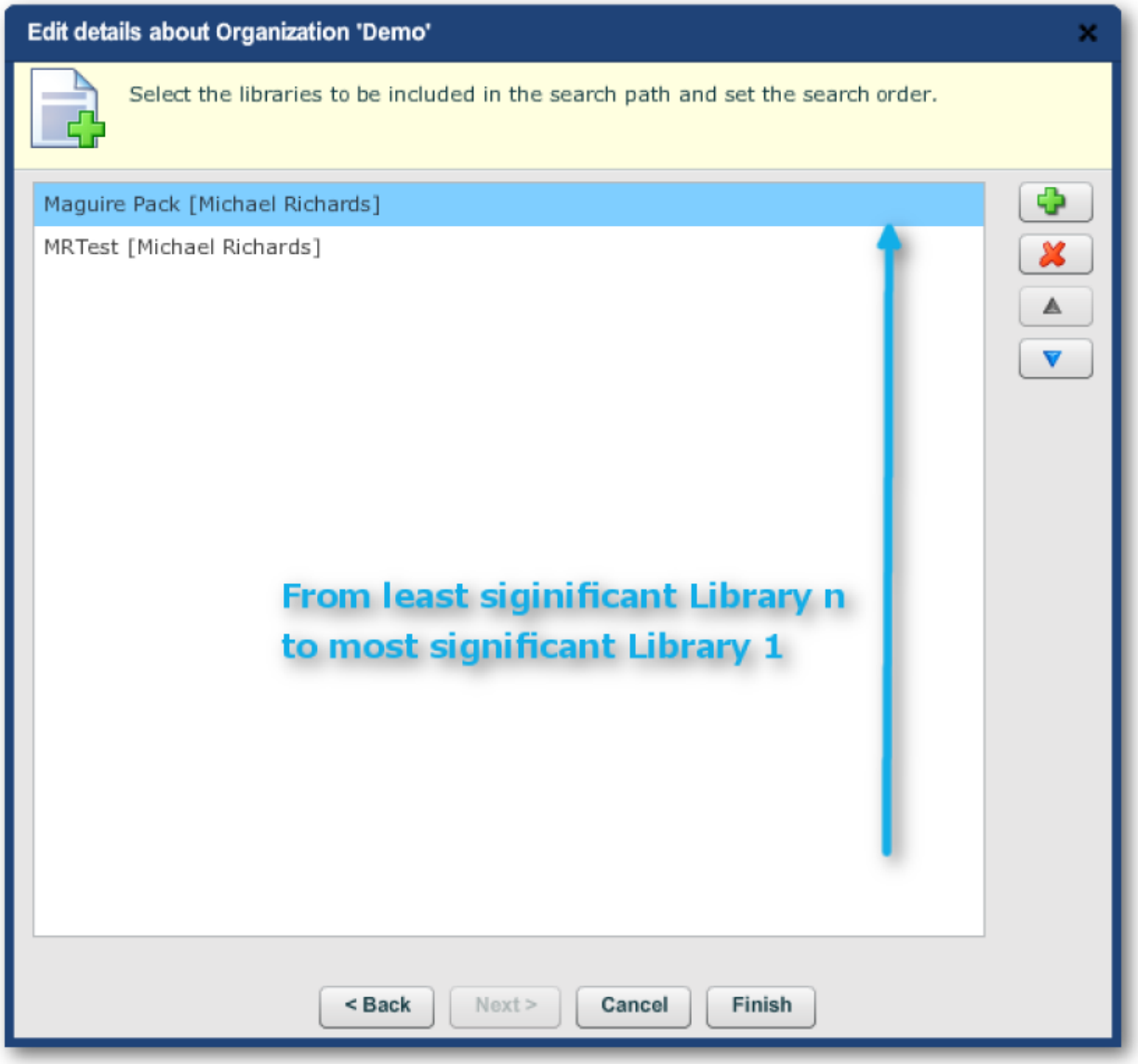
## Search Path Order

So, what happens when there is a conflict, for example stylesheets in different libraries with the same name? This is resolved as follows, moving through the stack of libraries from the least significant to number 1in the Search Order and then to the Internal Library:

Compatibility Library -> Search Order Library n -> ..... -> Search Order Library 1-> Organization's Internal Library

The Internal Library, therefore, lies at the top of the stack.

You set the Search Order in "Workspace -> <Organization> -> Update Organization Details action button -> second screen of the resultant wizard":




Do note that where n > 2, the search order for the other lesser significance libraries may still matter because the element at the top of the stack may not specify every parameter and those that are not specified will be populated according to the order of values encountered in the stack.

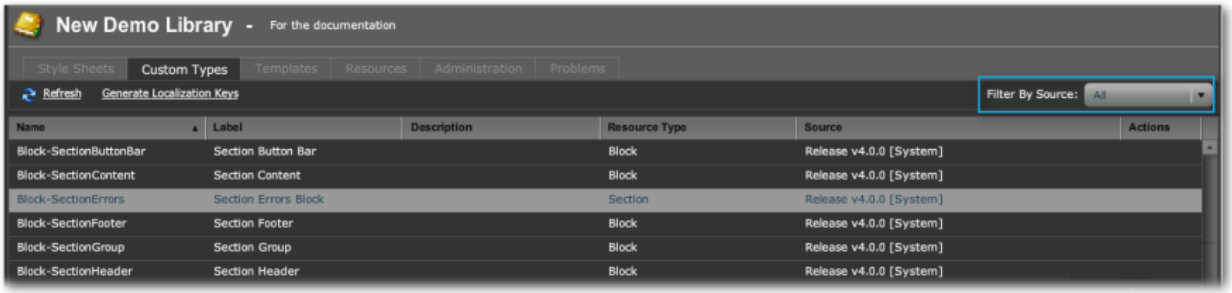
# Custom Types

**Location:** Workspace -> <Organization> -> Custom Types tab or
**Location:** Workspace -> <Library> -> Custom Types tab
Custom Types refers to all the members of the Widget Palette of the Form Designer. There are 2 types of Custom Types:
Non-editable Custom Types
the standard members of the Widget Palette.
**Editable** Custom Types which are your saved types.

## Localization Keys

used for the Internationalization of forms. We will discuss this elsewhere in this guide.

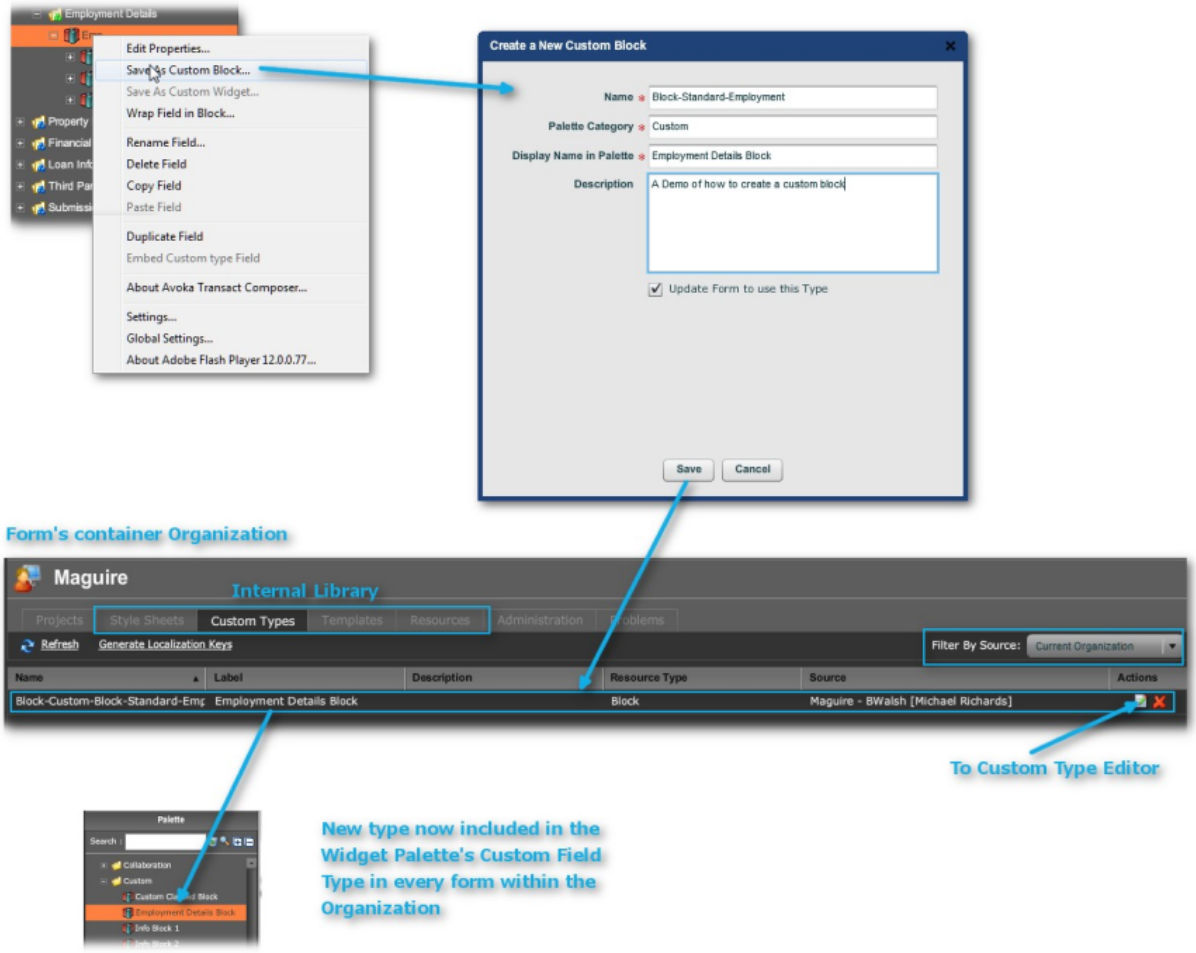
## Non-editable




To list the non-editable Custom Types visible for a Library (either Ordinary or internal to an Organization), go to the Custom Types tab of the Library or Organization. Set the "Filter By Source" to "All".
There are no Action items.
All the non-editable Custom Types have been inherited from the stack, so the bulk of them come from the Release and Service Pack.

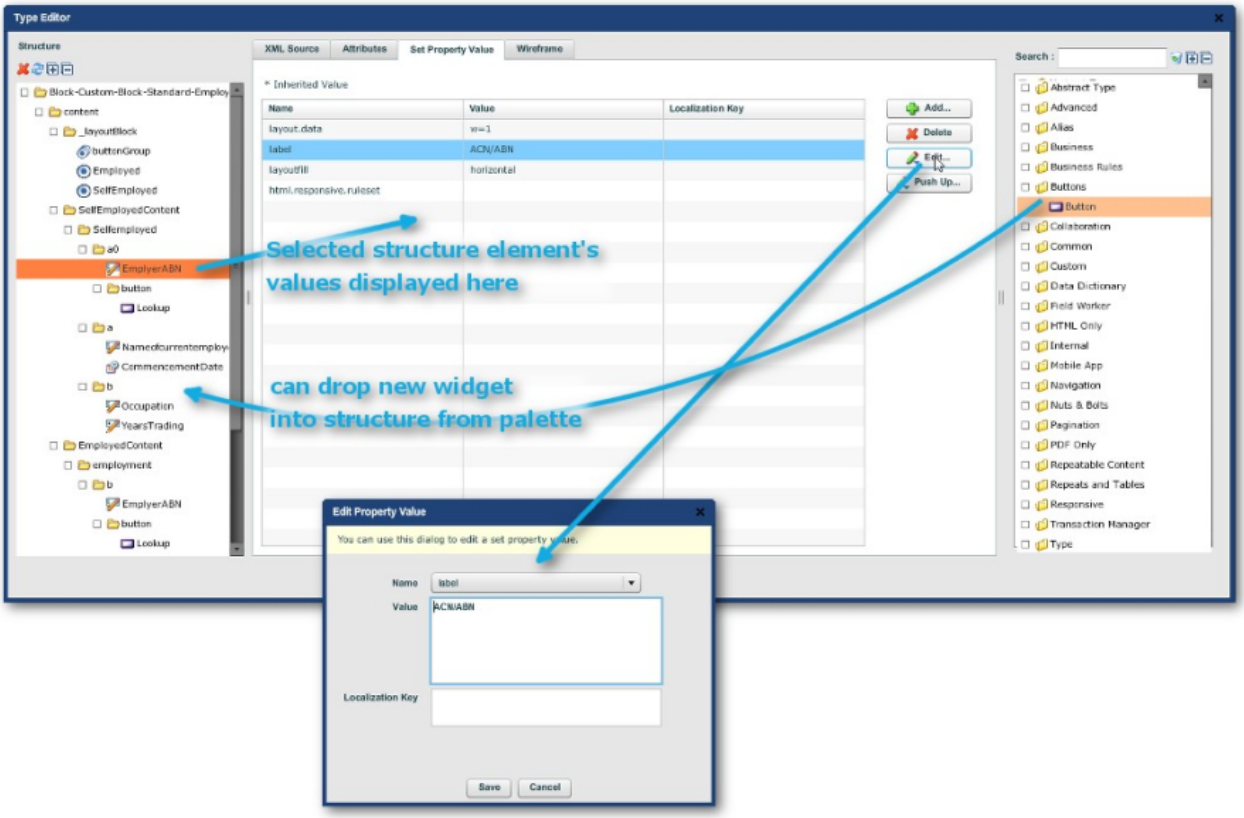
## Editable

There is only one way to create a Custom Type: by using "Save As Custom Type/Block" from a form's Structure Panel. The newly-saved type will then appear in the Internal Library of the form's containing Organization. It is not possible, using the User Interface of the Form Designer, to create a Custom Type in one of the Account's Ordinary Libraries.

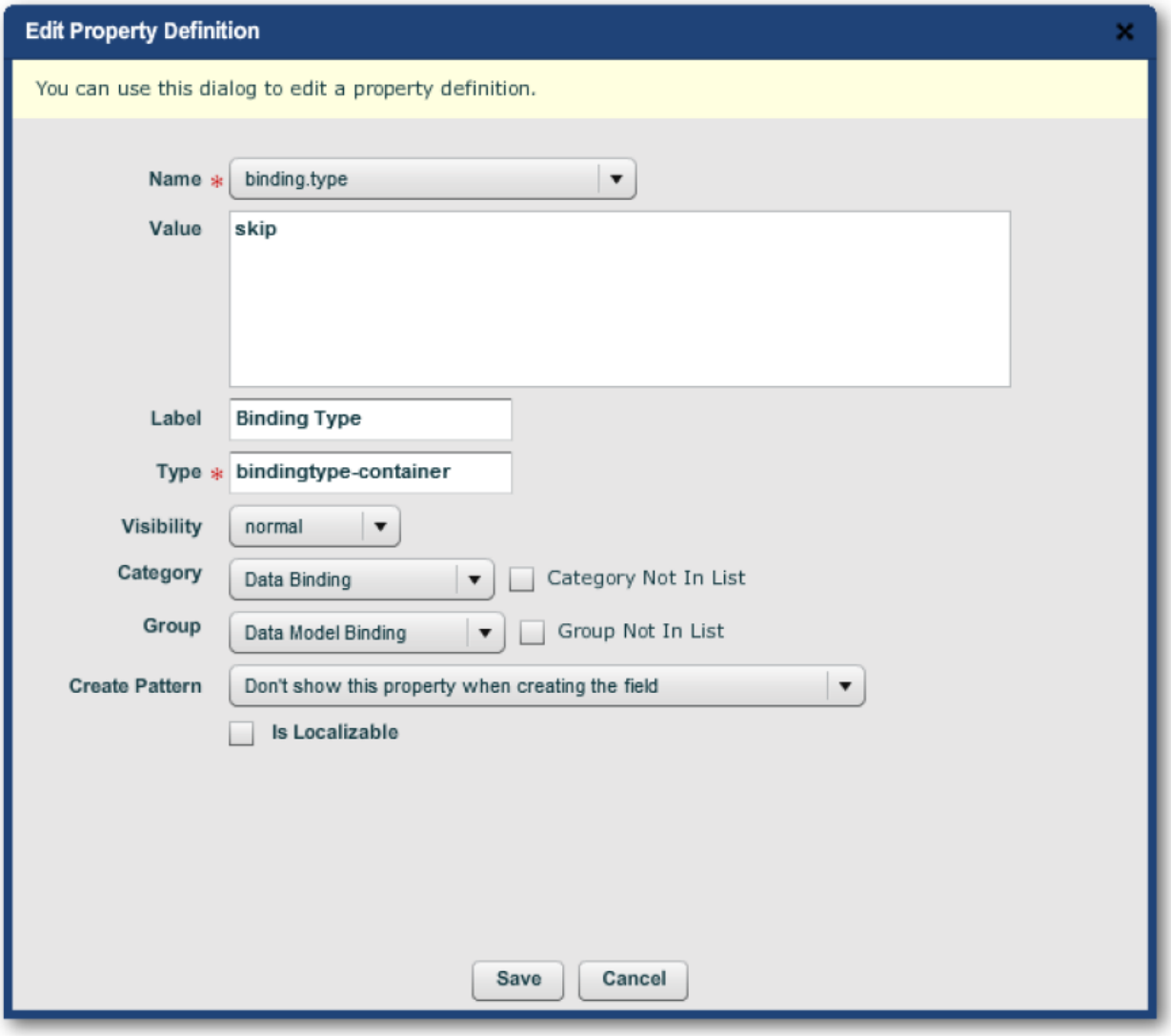



Because of the position of the Organization's Internal Library in the inheritance stack, your Custom Types will be available to all Projects in the Organization. However, you are not able to export these to other Organizations in the Account or to other Accounts. You can, though, export the whole Organization as a package and import it into another Account and the Custom Types in the imported Organization's Internal Library will also come across.

You can open the editor on editable types:




In the Set Property Values tab, you can edit the values of all the structure elements contained in the Custom Type. Inherited values from the stack are marked with an asterisk ("*").




The **Create Pattern** dropdown menu in the Edit Property Definition dialog defines whether:

The property appears or does not appear in the wizard when the custom Type is dropped onto the structure panel of forms

and if it does appear in the wizard. whether the property is marked mandatory or not.]

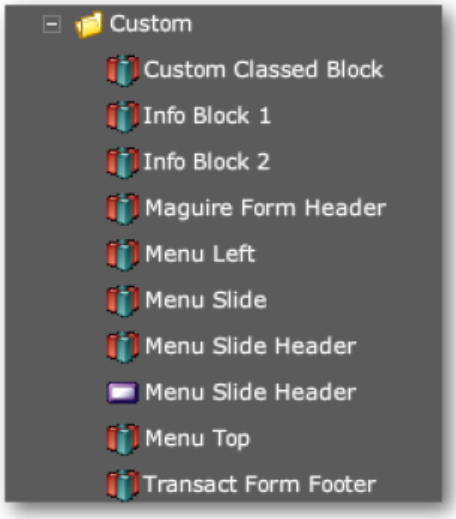
Here are examples of the other tabs in the editor:

Note that the XML Source updates on-the-fly as you add or subtract new objects into the structure or edit attributes and property definitions.

## Style Packs

Custom Types play a major role in Style Packs. The Custom Field Type, for Organizations where a Style Pack is part of the stack, will have a rich selection of prebuilt widgets.

The Maguire Style Pack is a good example of this. It has a number of form structures not covered by the usual Nuts & Bolts settings.



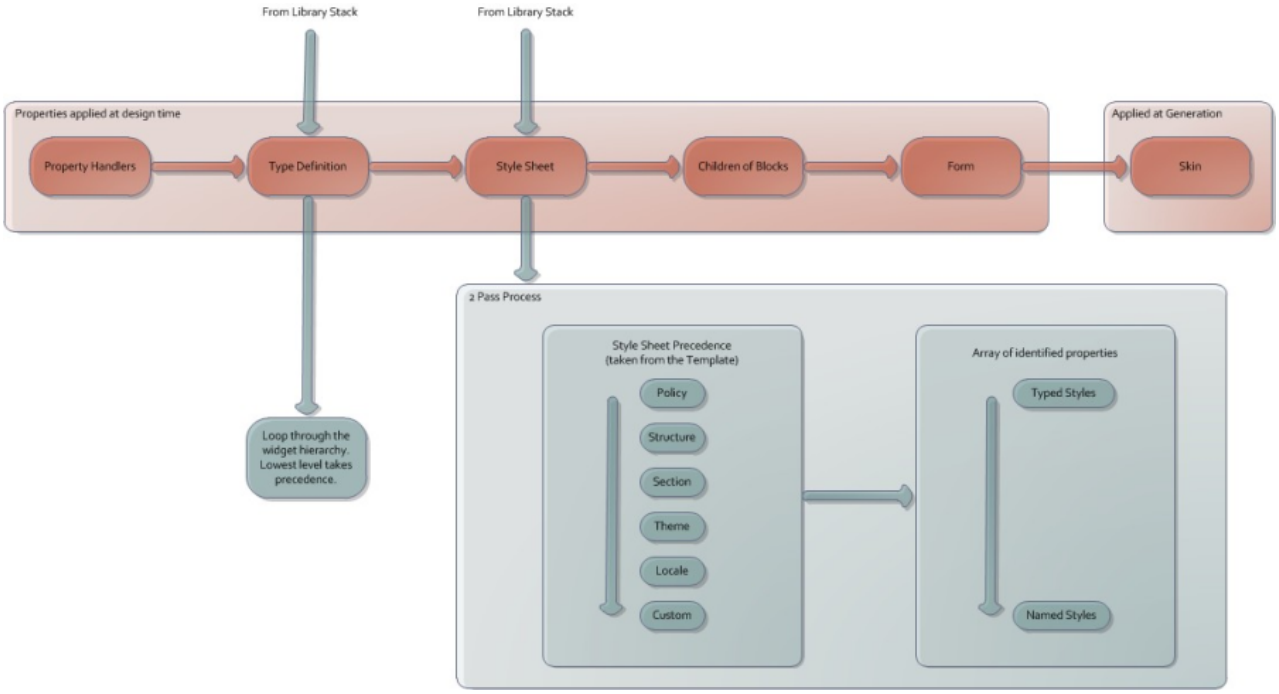

Besides these custom widgets in the Form Designer's Palette, such a style pack also has its own set of Stylesheets, Templates and Resources to supplement the Release. Typically, a release has a very large number of Stylesheets because the set has to cover practically every time of form element, while a Style Pack's set is very much smaller and far less general in scope.

# Inheritance Within Forms

## Overview

As above, forms inherit their Library elements (Stylesheets, Custom Types, Templates, Resources) through the stack. So, the library elements available to the form has already been established. This includes stylesheets that you have modified to change color-schemes and other components of the general look of your forms.

But then, inheritance now occurs through the form's structure:
The settings of the various Style Choosers
Settings of parent form elements and their children (blocks and their contents, for example) The use of Named Styles (or even manual over-rides




### Widget Hierarchy

As we have already seen in CustomTypes, some widgets are blocks of widgets and and children blocks. The properties of the simplest elements of these compounds are the ones to take effect. See the next topic immediately below.

## Inheritance in blocks

Inheritance in blocks is similar to inheritance for individual widgets, but it is complicated by the fact that blocks contain content. When you drop a block onto a form, its content is also inherited, and can also be overridden, just like regular inherited objects.

So you can simply double click on any of the child objects contained in a block, and modify their properties.

However, there are some important differences between inherited children and regular children. For example:

You cannot delete an inherited child (although you can change its visiblity to "Never visible", which achieves a similar result)

You cannot re-order inherited children

You cannot insert another object between two inherited children (although you can append an object at the end of the inherited children)

In order to differentiate between inherited children and regular children in the tree, inherited children are shown in yellow. This helps you to identify why certain operations (such as right click->Delete) are disabled for some objects.

If you make a change to a property of an inherited child object, only that particular property change is stored in your form (or overridden); all other property changes are obtained from the shared block. So if the definition of the block is changed, your form will automatically inherit all of the changes, except the specific properties that you've overridden. This makes maintenance of your form library very simple - you can change blocks in one place, and have the changes automatically reflected in all your forms.

### Starter Content

Sometimes when you drag certain types of objects such as sections, tables or even complete forms, you will see a checkbox called "Include Starter Content". Starter Content appears similar to inherited content, but there are some important differences.

Starter Content is not really part of the block itself - it's just additional children that are optionally added to make your life easier and quicker. This is partly to save you time, and partly to show what type of content is appropriate for this type of object. There is no difference between the starter content, and content that you may have manually added yourself.

Therefore, you can modify, delete or move starter content just like you can any other object - none of the restrictions of inherited content apply.

## Resources

The Resources tab in a Library is where you store uploaded files. In theory you can upload any kind of file. But, the User Interface of Composer really only allows you to utilize only graphics files in a form.

Other file types commonly found in library resources are JavaScript (.js) and Cascading

Stylesheets (.css). Please refer to LibraryAdvancedFeatures on how to utilize these in forms.

Other file types stored in the Resources tab are XML (for data definitions), XFA files, .zip files, backups and others. These are currently beyond the scope of this guide.

## Custom CSS

Composer uses an abstracted stylesheet mechanism in order to allow styling of both HTML and PDF forms. For HTML forms, you can implement additional styling by directly specifying the CSS in the form definition to achieve effects not possible in Composer alone.

**Note**: CSS is rarely developed in isolation. It is usually specifically designed to add styling to a set of web pages that are structured in a particular way. This has two implications:

1. In order to use CSS effectively, you must understand the way that Composer generates HTML forms. The easiest way to do this is generally to open a Composer generated form in a browser that enables you to explore the HTML and CSS, such as Firebug (in Firefox), in Google Chrome or Web Inspector in Safari.

1. It is unlikely that importing an existing CSS file from, for example, your corporate web site, will have much value to be used directly in Composer forms (except in the most trivial of cases). It is more likely that you will extract certain elements from your existing CSS, restructure or refactor them, and then import the modified CSS into Composer.

**Note**: If you are going to be directly implementing CSS, you must not only understand CSS in general, but also be careful to test your CSS on multiple browsers and devices. The advantage of sticking with regular Composer styles is that we have done all the testing to ensure that changes work correctly in all browsers.

## Custom JavaScript Libraries

Sometimes you may need to add custom JavaScript libraries to your project. This is an advanced topic, and we generally recommended that you add custom libraries with the help of Avoka professional services.

You can do this as follows:

Write your JavaScript functions using a text editor, and save as a .js file, such as

mycode.js.
Drag the JavaScript Library widget from the palette to the Nuts and Bolts/JavaScript Libraries node. Specify a name.
Click the browse button to upload and select your mycode.js file to be associated with this library.

You may now invoke functions in mycode.js using the following syntax:
library_name.function(a, b);
If you want two different versions of the library for PDF and HTML:
Create two versions of the .js file. Ensure that each library has the same functions, with the same signatures, but with appropriate implementations.
Create a JavaScript Library object for each .js file, but check the checkbox to specify it's used for only HTML or only PDF respectively.
Override the Library Name property (which defaults to the Field Name by default) so that both Libraries have the same Library Name.
This way you will be able to use the same syntax to call functions, and it will automatically have the right version of the library in either the HTML or PDF forms.

# Templates

## Overview

We have already seen ademonstrationofthepoweroftemplatesinComposer. Composer 4.0 has an editor for creating new templates which now gives you control over some of the template properties.
which Style Choosers will be visible
what options each of these choosers has custom choosers
which form types will be available Custom form types
Layout of form headers and footers
However, the bulk of the work of creating a template involves editing
stylesheets
Using the Template Editor in conjunction with editing the XML source of the template uploading the appropriate resourcefiles to be referenced in the XML source
There are about 120 stylesheets and over 300 Custom Types in the latest release, not to mention those in future service packs. Such a workload is the reason we recommend that Avoka Professional Services be engaged to create templates for you, if what you require is an extensive departure from the templates that ship with the product.
But, it is also true that no one would in reality contemplate a complete re-invention of

the wheel: i.e. an overhaul of every stylesheet, property and parameter of the shipping libraries.
That being so, here follows some notes on the creation of template based on moderate intervention into the stylesheets

## Stylesheet Modification

### Location of the Stylesheet Modifications

The location of these revised stylesheets depends on where you want these modifications to sit in theLibrary stack.
Will these modifications be made available to A few Projects in an Organization
Or to all projects within one Organization.
To several Projects in more than one Organization, all in the same Account
Or to all Projects in several Organizations, still all in the same Account Or across several Accounts
Ultimately the choice is to have your new stylesheets either in an internal Library for one Organization or to be in a separate library in the Account and make sure that any form you intend to use the template has the necessary visibility of the library elements.

### Scope of Stylesheet Modifications

Just be aware that changing stylesheets will also affect the standard-issue templates. If you want the templates shipped with a release to still look and work the same as when they were installed, you should reserve, or create afresh, an Organization to hold the unedited stylesheets that accompanied these standard templates.

### Editing the Elected Stylesheets

We have already described how to do this. If you want your new stylesheet to replace the standard issue stylesheet in the stack, you must give it the same name as the original. After you have saved the new version, you should be able to see it in the "Stylesheet" tab of the Library or Organization you have chosen to contain the modified version. Note the values in the "Source" column for stylesheets with the same name to check that you new version exists. Use the template editor to view if the change is expressing itself in the template and that it is having the intended effect.

## Template Editor

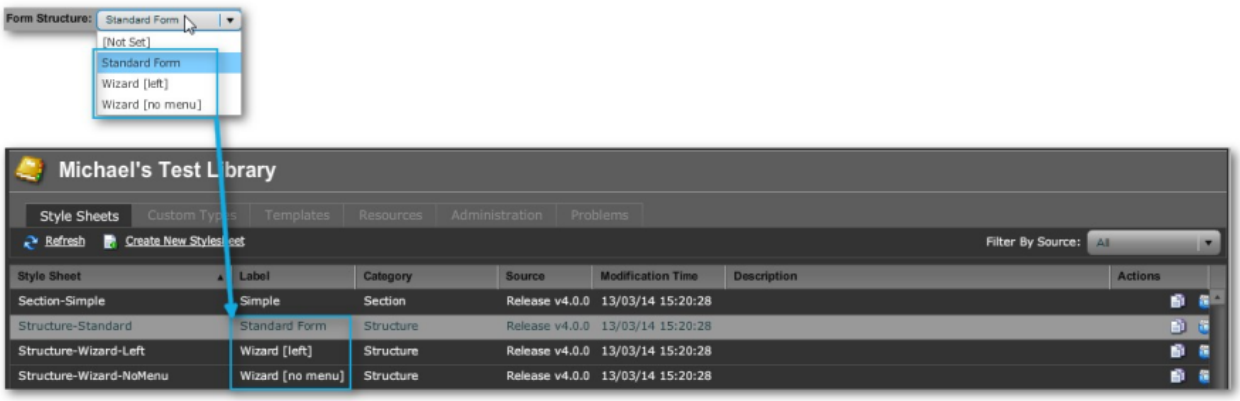
You access the Template editor through "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> or <Library> -> Templates tab -> Edit Template action button". The editor itself has 4

tabs, 3 of which we show immediately below:

### Style Options tab

The Style Categories panel of this tab allows for configuration of the Style Chooser dropdowns at the top of the Form Designer's wireframe.

The Categories are, as expected the stylesheet categories and the dropdowns are populated by each stylesheet in the given category.



For the Details panel of a Stylesheet Category, the settings are:

| Detail | Explanation |
|---|---|
| Category Name | Cannot be edited. Derived from the Stylesheet category chosen for a Stylesheet Chooser dropdown |
| UI Label | The caption appearing next to the stylesheet chooser. For example, we here have "Form Structure" for the Structure category. |
| Locked (checkbox) | If unchecked, the category's chooser appears in the form wireframes. If checked, the category gets no visible chooser in the wireframe. |
| Default Stylesheet | The name of the default stylesheet in the chooser menu. Here "Structure-Standard", giving "Standard Form" as the default in the dropdown. |
| Restrict Stylesheets (checkbox) | If checked the chooser is populated by only a few of the available stylesheets in the category. A textarea appears, in which you list the stylesheets used in the restricted menu.. |

#### Editing the XML Source of the Template

Currently, though the set of stylesheets inherited to the template from the stack determine the layout and look of the template's content, the actual content of the form is dictated by the form's XML Source. This you can view and edit in the XML Source tab.

Editing this is a job only for the technically competent in this area, otherwise you could do a lot of damage. However, for those who feel up to attempting this, we have included the TemplateSchema at the back of this guide.

# Localization

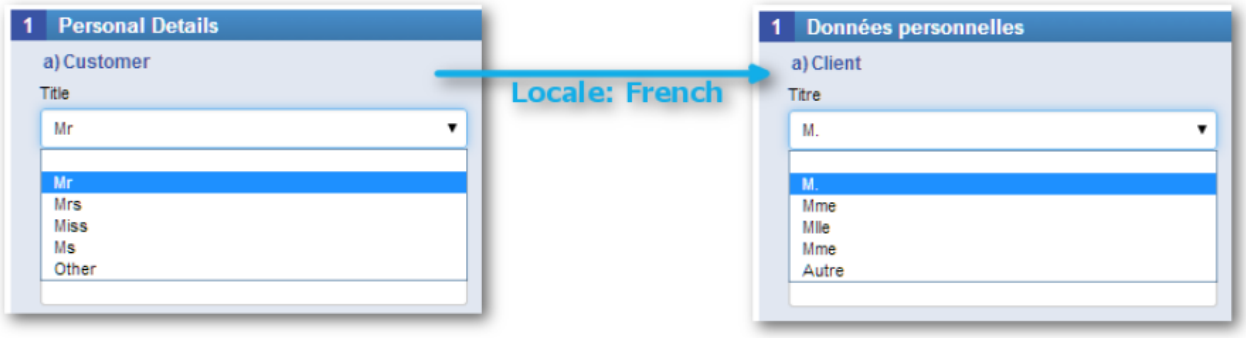
## Overview

Composer's Localization feature allows you to provide your forms in multiple languages. Earlier in this guide, you would have seen amodestdemooflocalizationinaction.

For localization to be successful, you must have a native-speaker to edit the localization resources. For a rough draft you can use Composer's auto-translation feature (which uses the Google Translate engine), but if you have ever used Translate to render a foreign language web page, you would know that the results are less than convincing.

But once you have obtained a decent translation of a form, you will have no need to lay

out the form anew for new supported languages (or "locales"). Even dropdown menus, and other widgets involving choices, will reconfigure to reflect the language change:

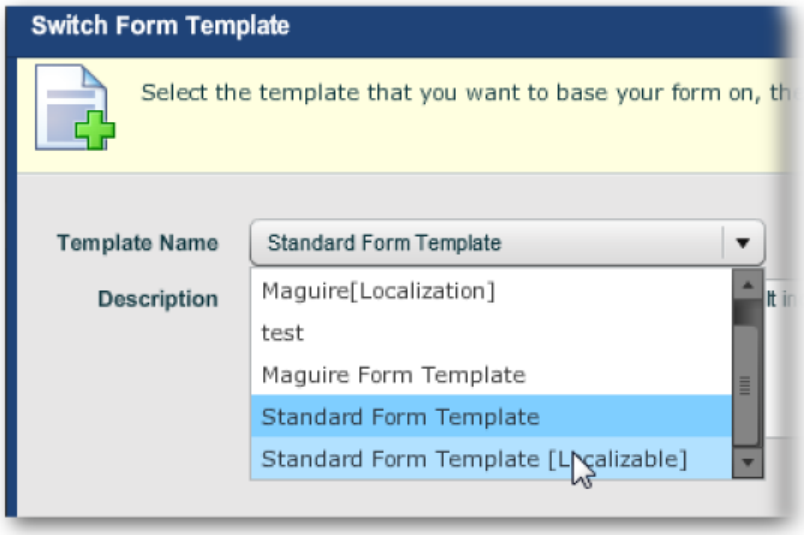



## Activating Localization

The template used for a form must support localization. So, either you switch the form's template to one that does support localization, or you activate localization support in the template.

### Switching Template

Done in "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> <Project> Forms tab -> <Form> -> Switch Form Template button". Usually templates with localization activated indicate this in their title in square brackets.




You then can move to the next step: SettingTarget Locales

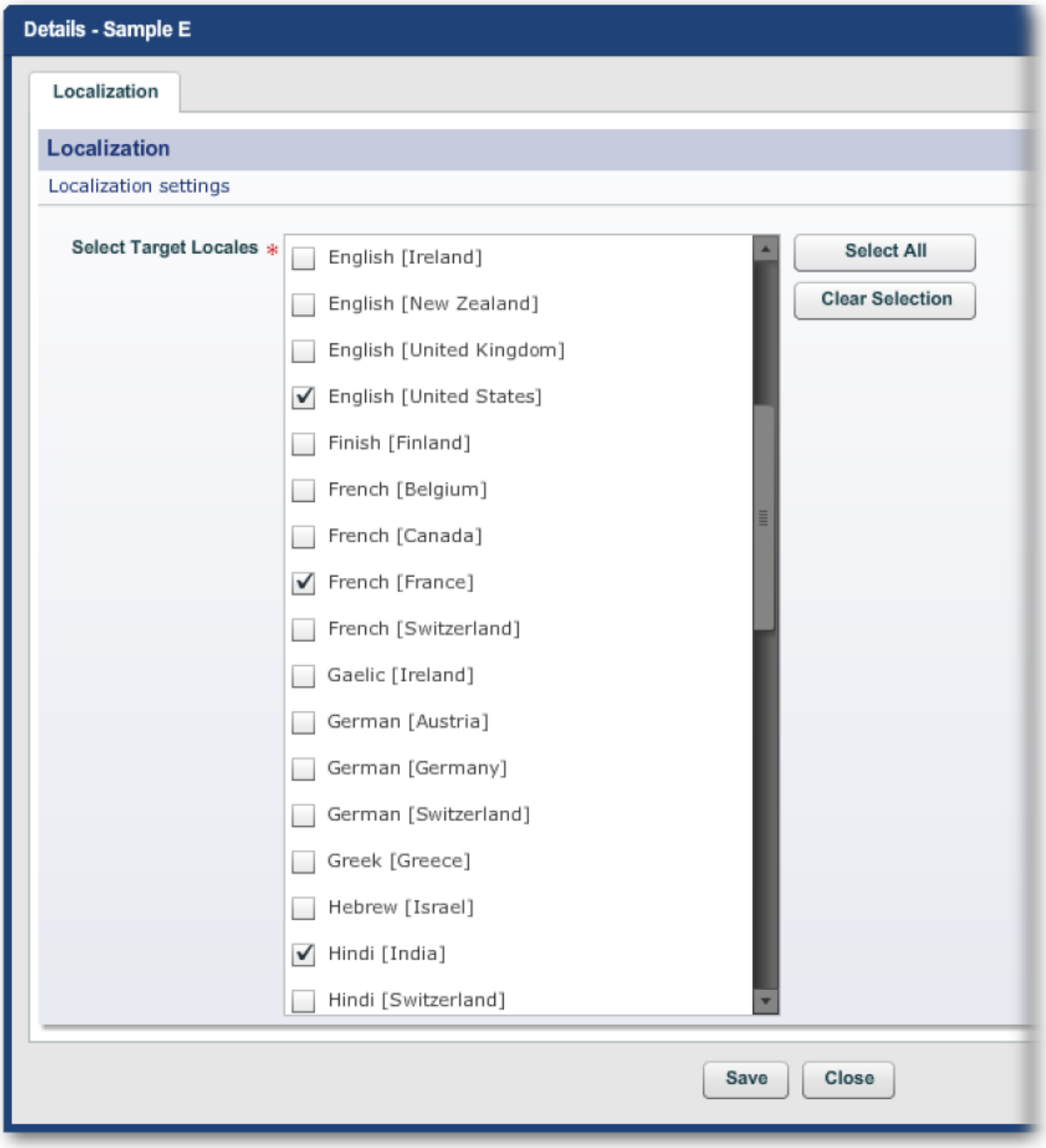
### Activating a Template

You can also activate Localization in an existing template. Go to "Workspace -> <Account> -> <Library> or
<Organization> -> <Templates> tab -> <template> -> Edit Template action button" which brings up the Templateeditor.
In the editor, "Style Options tab -> Quick Style Changes Options panel -> Enable Localization Support button".

## Setting Target Locales

You have to configure Localization for each form.
Open the form in the Form Designer and go to the Localization tab ("Workspace -> <Account> ->
<Organization> -> <Project> -> <Form> -> Localization tab").

Click on the "Set Target Locales" link. This brings up a dialog for selecting locales.

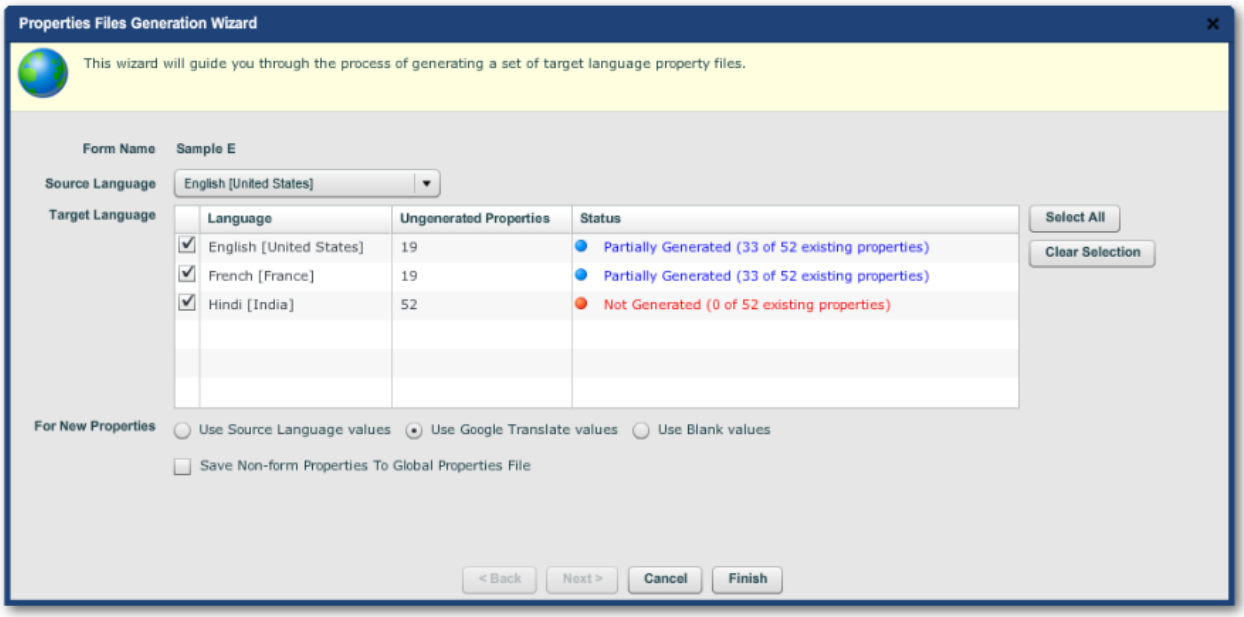



## Generating Keys

You then have to generate keys for the form's elements. This is simply done by clicking on Generate Keys link in the form's Localization tab and completing the brief wizard. You can then move on the next step.

## Generating the Properties File

Click on the Generate Properties File link in the form's Localization tab.




The "For New Properties" radio buttons and checkbox:

### Use Source Language Values

create the new files, but leave the values the same as the original locale and let the (human) translator change the values to the new locale

### Use Google Translate Values

and use these values as a rough draft for the translator

### Use Blank Values

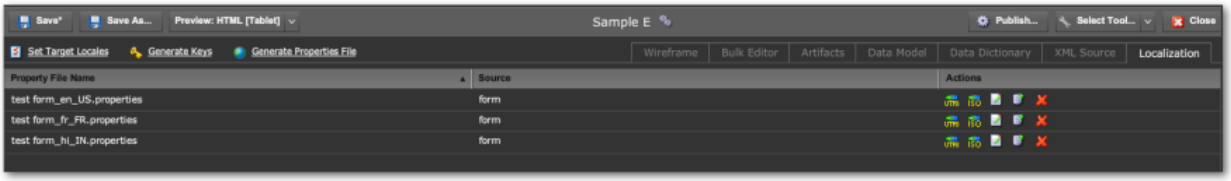
let the translator fill in the blank values. This means the translator will have to have access to the Properties file of the original locale of the form.

### Save Non-form Properties to Global Properties File

This means that a global properties file is created for each locale at the Organization's internal library resources level. It lists only the template's common properties (such as "Type- Section.section.help.image.tooltip" or "Button-SectionCollapse.tooltip" and so on).

Form properties are the content of the individual form, such as "form.-customer.section.heading" or "form.firstName.label". Form properties are objects that begin with "form.".

These property files for form properties will appear in the Localization tab of the form:




Their contents look as follows:

The translators then can edit the translation of the properties. Be careful, though, that the diacritics and glyphs of any script (here Devanagari for the Hindi locale) are handled properly by the text editor used by the translators.

## Deployment Options

The Localizations of the form can be deployed to different instances of the parent form in Transaction Manager, or for that matter to different portals.

# Stylesheets

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

Stylesheets are the building blocks to any template. This also means that there are a great number of these and they have many categories. You are even free to add to the list of categories (which you do in the "Save Stylesheet as..." dilaog shown below).
Stylesheets can be simple where they specify a few properties for a single element type on a form, for example a "rounded button".
They also can be compounded, built out of a set of simple stylesheets.
In Composer, all styles. whether simple or compound, are defined by a stylesheet. These are sometimes called "styles".

## Typed Styles

A typed style is a style that applies to all objects of a particular type. For example, by default, all Buttons in your form have the same background color because there is a Typed Style for Button that defines the foreground and background colors for all Buttons. The same applies to all object types.
**Note**: Composer uses a fully object-oriented type hierarchy. Some styles apply to "base" objects in the type hierarchy. For example, a Text Field is a sub-class of Field. Properties can be styled at either the base-class level (in which case it applies to all objects of that base-type) or at the sub-class level (in which case it applies only to objects of that sub-class). This is the reason for the chains of names separate by dots. Even if you do not grasp this concept, you will still find styles useful.
Normally, every object you may use in your forms will already have a typed style associated with it, which was created by the person who designed your organizational stylesheet.
There are many typed styles needed for any template, be it designed by Avoka Technologies for your organization or for one of the standard libraries that ship with the product. In either case, a full set of typed styles becomes available to an Organization after a library is assigned to the organization. These are read- only.

## Named Styles

In most cases you want all fields of a particular type to always look the same on all forms. (And that is why we set up typed styles for each field type.) But occasionally, you will want to override some of the styling for a particular type of field. For example, there are two ways to represent a Button on a form — either as a traditional push-button, or as a flat mobile-friendly style of a text-only button. Though they are just two slightly different styles of buttons they have different foreground and background colors, fonts and so on.

You select these named styles for a form object by "Edit Properties -> Styling -> Style sets". The available stylesets and their choices (for example, "Button Sizes", "Button Shapes" and so forth) are determined by the Named Styles associated with the Typed Style of the object.

**Tip:** It's generally a much better idea to define and use a named style, rather than explicitly setting "magic values" that you have to remember, such as sizes, colors and other properties. Not only does this mean you don't need to remember the values, but also, if you ever want to change the values, you can do so in one place.

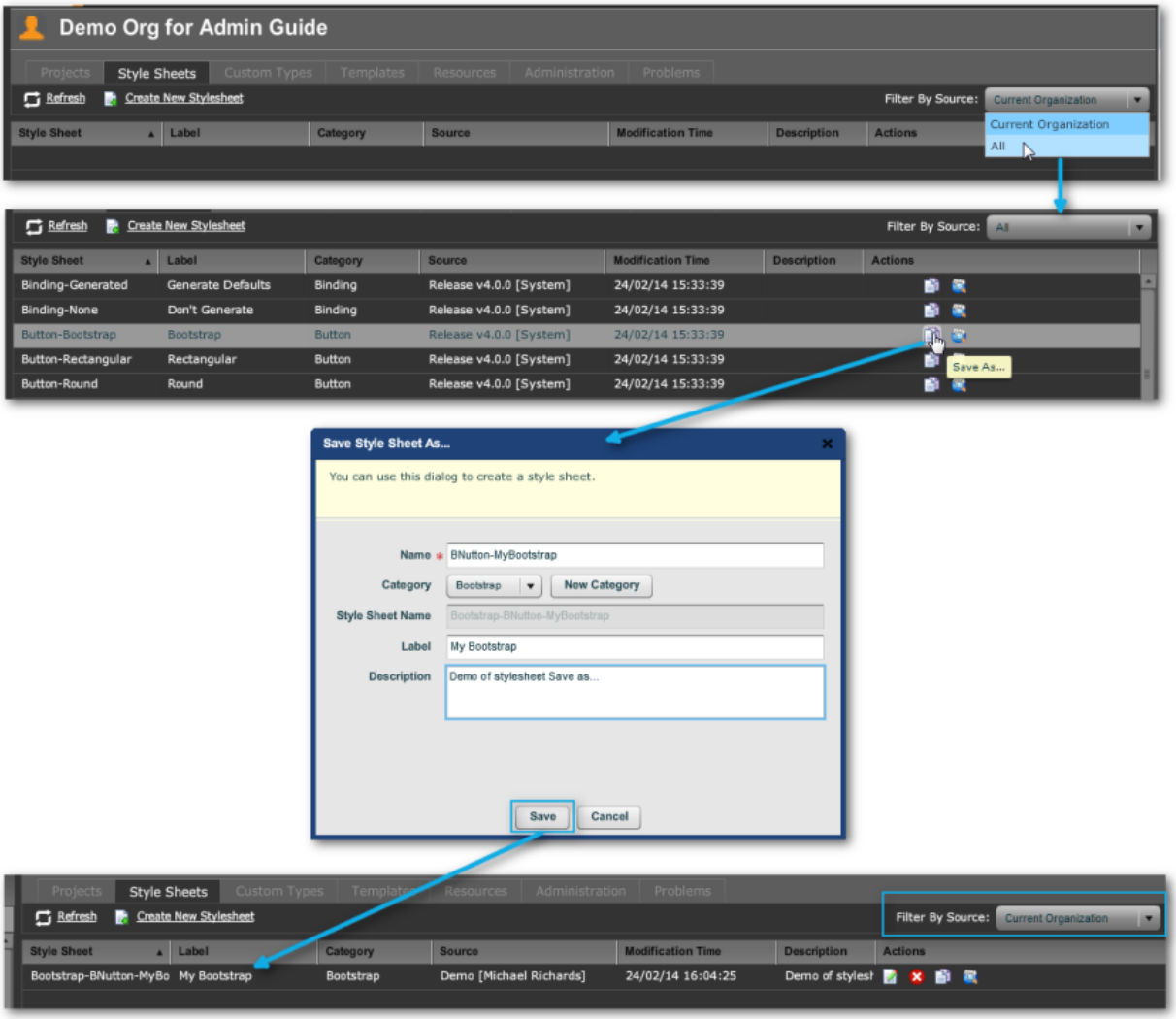
Another example of using named styles is sizing of fields. Rather than explicitly setting widths in inches or mm, you can create named styles such as "large", "medium", and "small".

## Stylesheet Categories

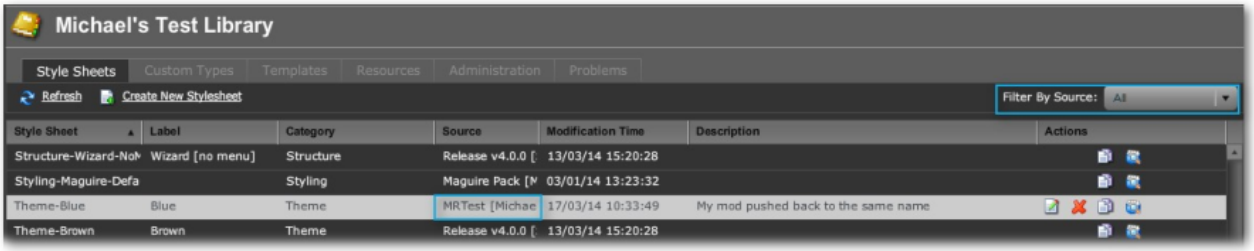
Stylesheets can now be categorized (either for convenience or for template choices, as we will see). You can use the already-existing categories or create your own.
Under the covers, you can define any number of stylesheet categories, and apply them in any order. Each category can define any number of styles sheets, each of which will appear in the drop down lists. Avoka has defined a standard set of stylesheet categories that work for many customers. you can define your own using the "Save Stylesheet as...." dialog shownbelow,
The standard stylesheet categories that Avoka has defined go from the most general (overall form structure) to the most specific (colours and locale). However, it possible to define other stylesheet categorization schemes for organizations based on their needs. For example, it is possible to define an organization's template with no stylesheet categories at all – all forms would look exactly the same. Or perhaps with a choice of only two stylesheets in a single category. Or on the other extreme, you could potentially define a different stylesheet category for each different type of component. The standard stylesheets provided by Avoka in the default templates are more to show the capabilities of the system – most organizations will only define a very small number of stylesheet combinations that represent the styles of forms in their organizations. On the other hand, some organizations, particularly those that "white label" their forms, may define a very large number of different stylesheets for each of the sub-organizations that they represent.
You then can, if you want, associate these categories with the StyleChoosersofthetemplate.

## Editing Stylesheets

**Location:** Worksheet -> <Organization> -> Stylesheets tab or
**Location:** Worksheet -> <Library> Stylesheets tab
By default, an Organization can access the Account's stylesheets. These are all read-only. You can perform a "Save as..." on each of these so in that you can edit the new versions and also assign them to nominated libraries.

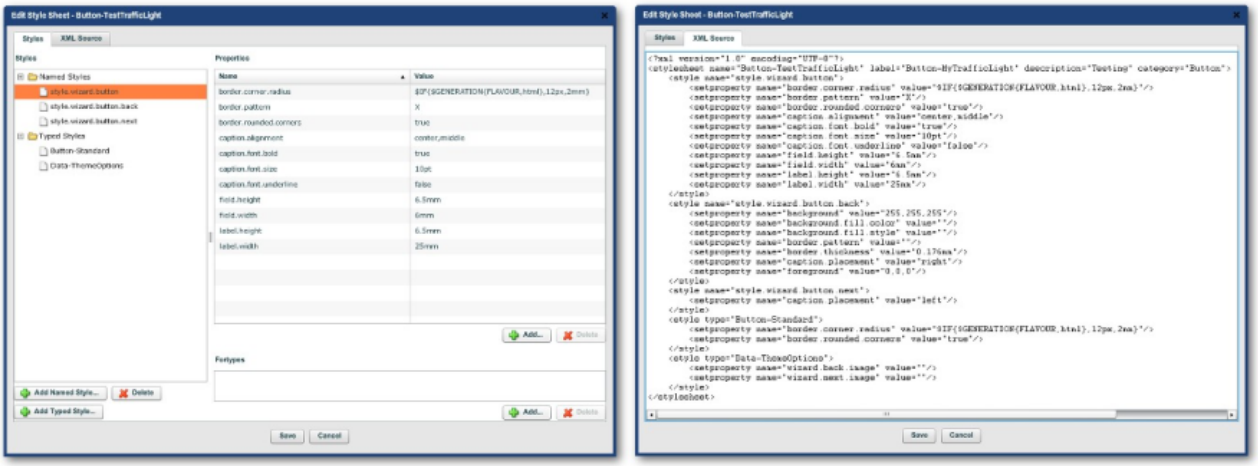



This is the way to populate both Libraries and Organizations with bespoke stylesheets. So, you can replace a standard-issue stylesheet (from the release, say) with your own in the library by saving the stylesheet with the same name. For example, if I edit "Theme-Blue" and give it the name "Blue" and keep the category "Theme", my modifications are saved as Theme-Blue (but **only** in this particular library) and will affect all form elements that use the "Theme-Blue" stylesheet from this library in the stack. The entry in the Stylesheet tab for the Library shows the source of the style:




Once you have saved a stylesheet, you can edit its properties (double-click on item in

the list or use the edit Action):



All of the values of the Properties of the Named Styles and Typed Styles are clickable and editable. You can also add and delete styles and properties and even edit the XML (though do not attempt to do so unless you know what you are doing). The Edit Stylesheet function is therefore very powerful.

## Customizing Stylesheets

The ability to customize stylesheets is one of the most powerful features in Composer, for several reasons:
You can make global changes to your forms in a single place, and this will be automatically applied to all the forms that use that stylesheet.
You can control the scope of the changes by being careful about which library's stylesheets you change. For example, changes to the internal library of the Organization will affect the whole Organization. You can alter the scope of changes to other libraries by altering the Search Path and the Search Order for Organizations.
Even so, the scope Stylesheet changes seem to naturally affect Organizations. Trying to have Projects in the one Organization pick up different stylesheet versions is complicated and difficult.
Stylesheets hide (or encapsulate) a lot of the advanced properties associated with individual widgets. These advanced properties don't even appear in the Composer by default (you can turn on Advanced Properties in the Property Dialog), which means that you don't have to worry about them. You just get on with the job of designing your form.
The stylesheet embodies your organizational style guide, ensuring all your forms conform to the style guide. Just use the standard stylesheet, and let Composer do the rest.
If you organizational style changes, simply change the stylesheet, regenerate all your

forms, and you're done.

**Tip**: While stylesheets and their close relative, Templates, are very important, they are also moderately complex. We strongly suggest that you contact Avoka if you require either a custom stylesheet, or a modification to one of the standard stylesheets. We can either develop the stylesheet for you, or provide some customized training to enable you to make your own stylesheet changes.

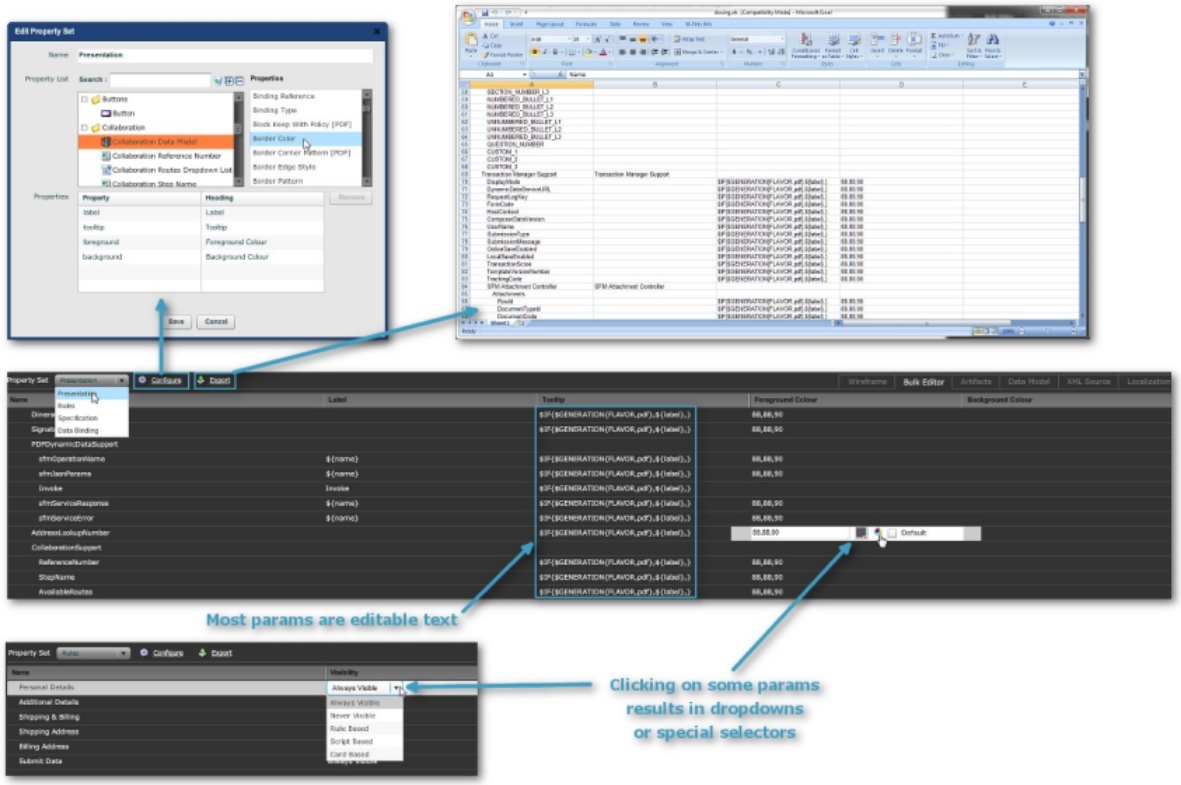
# Form Designer Advanced Features

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Overview

Besides the Wireframe tab of the Form Designer, there are:
The Bulk Editor tab The Artifacts tab The Data Model tab The XML Source tab The Localization tab
These do not provide further functionality than that already given in the Edit Properties dialogs and panels, but instead organize the parameter and settings of the form into tables. Some of these allow parameter settings to be changed and can be more convenient than going in and out of numerous Edit Properties dialogs for the fields and nodes on the form. The tabs provide an alternative and more comprehensive view of the parameter settings of the form than the atomic and fragmented glimpses afforded by going through the properties of a large number of individual form widgets.
There are at present some limitations: you cannot now alter the settings for the same type of parameter on a number of form elements. But, the ability to be able to survey the setting on, for example, all the Composer scripts within the form is a vary valuable facility.

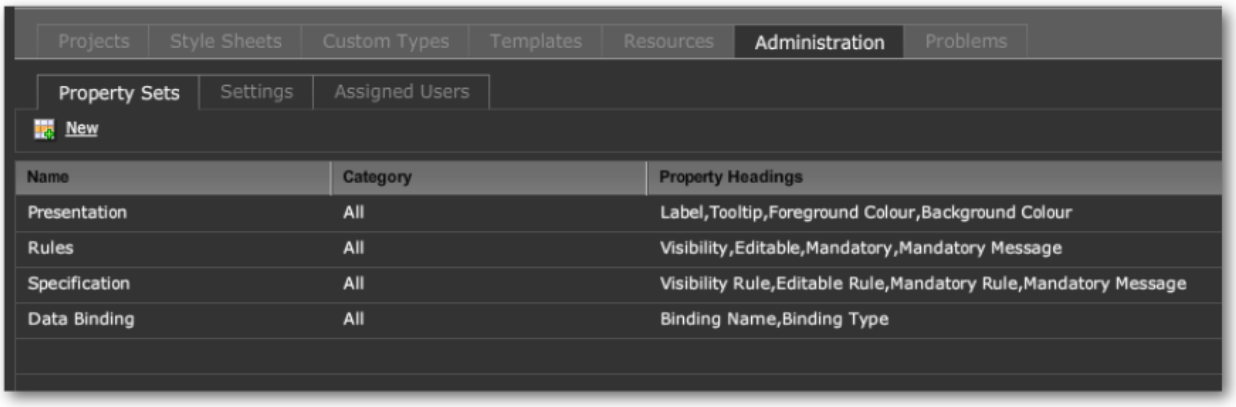
# Bulk Editor




In the Rules Property Set listing, you can select "Script Based" under Visibility, Edibility and so on, and then use the "Edit" button that appears in the row to bring up the "Script Editor", a very convenient way to access this dialog.

# Property Sets

The form's parameters are arranged in Property Sets, which belong to the Organization. You edit, and create
new, property sets in "Workspace -> <Organization> -> Administration tab -> Property Set tab".




This the only place in the UI that you can create a new set. However, you cannot at present configure the new set. You must configure it in the Bulk Editor of one of the forms in the Organization, using the Edit Property Set dialog from the "Configure" link at the top of the Bulk Editor page. Here you select a property from the Property List (which just like Widget Palette in the Form Editor) and then double-click on the Property you want in the Property Set. The property then appears in Property list in the lower half of the Edit Properties Set dialog. You can change the wording of the heading of the resulting Property Set column in the Bulk Editor

## Artifacts Tab

This lists, and allows you to download, files associated with the form. Here is a partial list of the files:

<form name>.xls

A spreadsheet of all the form elements and their properties, including the Nuts & Botls

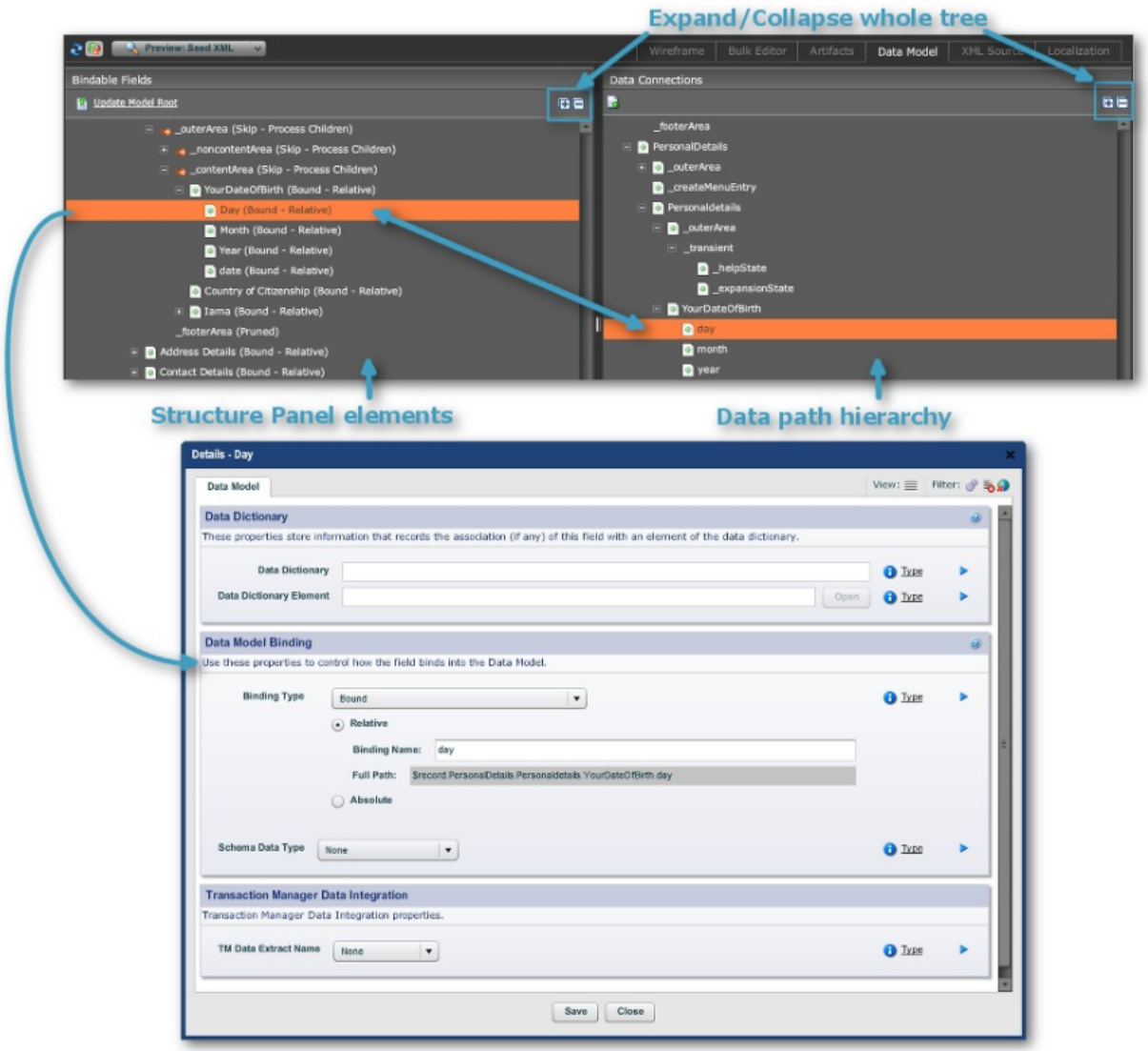
<form name>.xml

The form definition in XML.

<form name>_info.properties

A text file giving listing the creation date, time and time zone, and the previewtechnology.

# Data Model Tab




The left-hand panel gives the various bindings (bound, unbound, relative, absolute) of the fields in the structure; the right shows the field's position in the data hierarchy. Select a field in one of these two panels and it will be selected in the other panel.

Double-clicking on a field in the left-hand panel will also bring up a dialog with the Data-related panels to be found in the "Edit Properties" dialog, though conveniently grouped into a "Data Model tab" created for this part of the User Interface.

The hierarchy depicted in the right-hand panel is the data hierarchy. In Composer, the data hierarchy is for the most part a reflection of the form's structure. This means that the data structure of the field bindings within a block is, for better or for worse, similar to the way the fields relate according to layout and block groupings. It is beyond the

scope of this document to show how to change these relationships without altering the layout structure of the form itself.

## XML Source Tab

This tab is an editable display of the XML definition file of the form. You can (provided you the rights to do so) save you changes, or you can rollback the last edits you have made to the code. Only do this if you are sure of what you doing; otherwise you can do serious damage to the form.

The XML frquently has Character Data ("CDATA") blocks, which are code that is passed straight through the

XML parser without it reading the block (which it would not understand in any case). CDATA here is used, in the main, to pass JavaScript fragments.

## Localization Tab

This is explained elsewhere in theguide.

*Transact Composer User Guide and ReferenceAccess & Security*

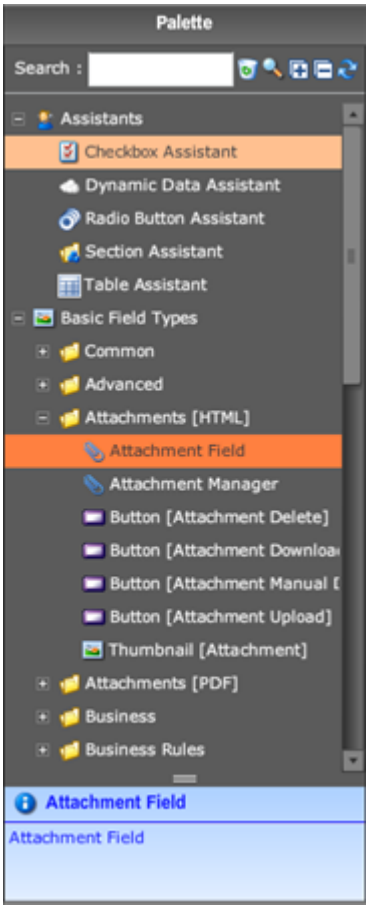
# Attachment Fields Overview

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Prior to Avoka Transact Version 4.1, capturing attachments was only facilitated by the Self-Service Portal once data entry was complete and the 'Submit' button had been clicked in the form. With this approach attachment capture is an Independent step in the transaction process, completely separate to the form, and this sometimes makes the transaction a little disjointed. While this flow is still supported in 4.1, an alternative has been introduced to enable form designers to include file capture inside the form at the time that it is relevant. This is facilitated by a new Composer widget called the Attachment Field.

## Finding the Attachment Field in the Palette

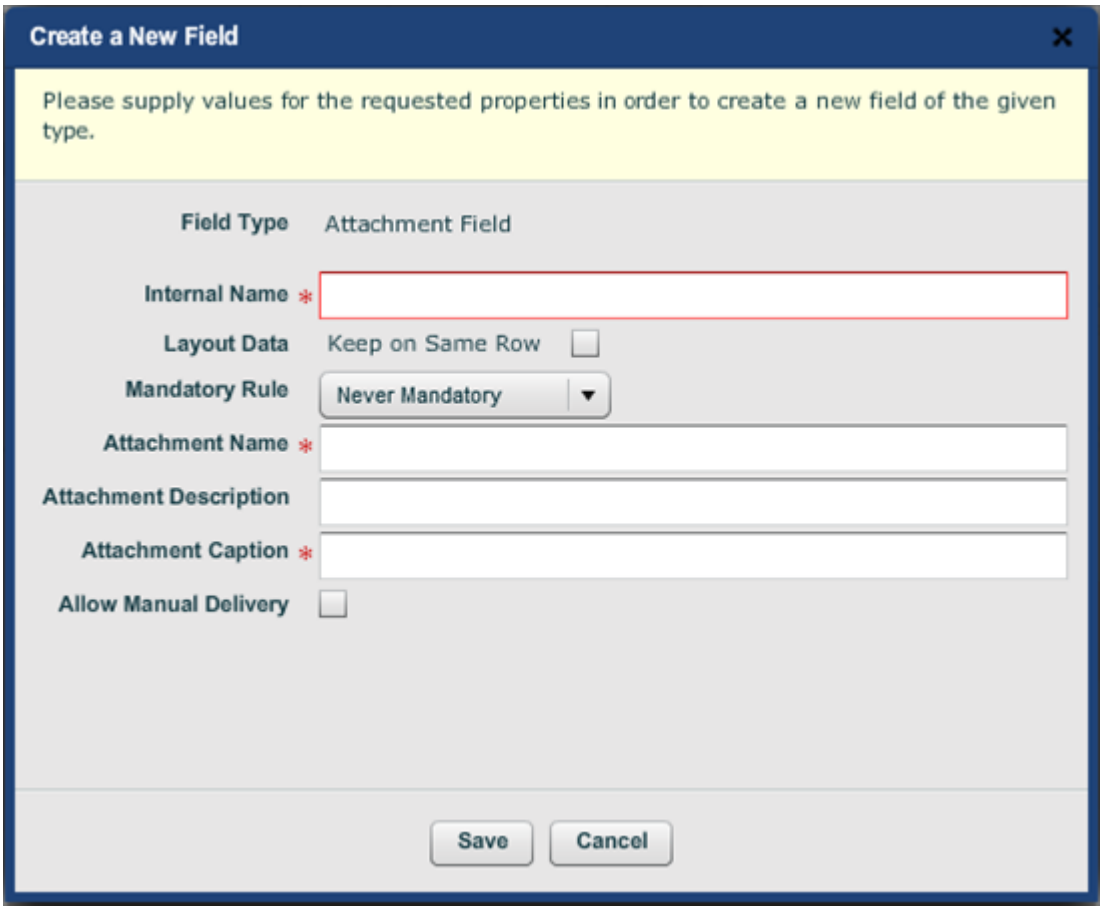
You can find the "Attachment Field" under the "Attachments" category.



# Configuring the Attachment Field

## Initial Config Options

After you drop the field in a form you will get the following initial options, three of these are mandatory (with the red asterisk).

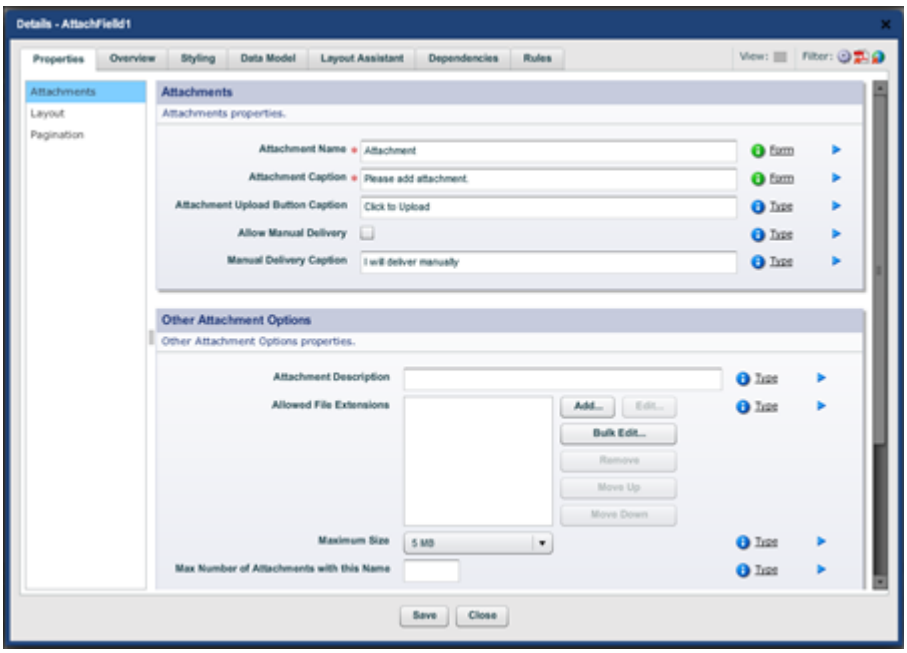



## Basic Mode Config Options

Within the field properties tab there is an "Attachments" category which contains the following basic mode options:

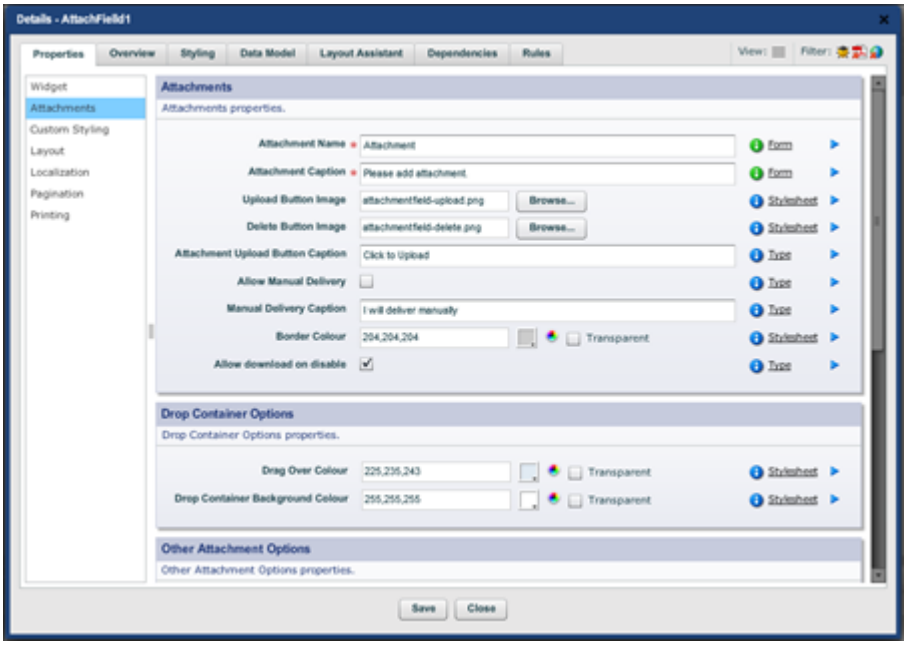
| Name | Description | Image |
|---|---|---|
| Attachment Name | This is the attachment name that will be sent to TM. | |
| Attachment Caption | This is the caption text that will display at the top of the field. | |
| Attachment Upload Button Caption | This is the caption text that will display in the upload button. | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Allow Manual Delivery | If set to true, a link button will appear below the upload button which allows the user to delivery the attachment manually. | See images for "Manual Delivery Caption" |
| Manual Delivery Caption | This is the caption text that will show in the manual delivery link button. | |
| Attachment Description | This is the attachment description that will be sent to TM. | |
| Allowed File Extensions | This is where you can set the allowed file extensions. If set, an error message will return if the user uploads a file with an extension not in the list. | ^ Will only allow .png files. |
| Maximum Size | This property allows you to set the maximum file size allowed. Ranging from 0.5MB to 25MB.<br>An error message will return if the user uploads a file with a size beyond the limit set. | |
| The Max Number of Attachments with this Name and use Default Progress Indicator | These properties should be left as default for the 4.1release. | |



## Advanced Mode Config Options

| Name | Description | Image |
|---|---|---|
| Upload Button Image | Allows the user to change the upload image which is shown in the initial field state | |
| Delete Button Image | Allows the user to change the delete image which is shown in the completed field state | |
| Border Colour | Allows the user to change the border colour for the attachment container, this can be done in a style sheet using the fields type style. | |
| Allow download on disable | Set to true by default, this allows the attachment download button to still be active when the field is in read-only mode. | |
| Drag Over Colour | Allows the user to change the colour used when a file is dragged over the container , this can be done in a style sheet using the fields type style. | |
| Drop Container Background Colour | Allows the user to change the Drop Container background Colour , this can be done in a style sheet using the fields type style. | |




## Testing in Preview Mode

Only zip files are allowed in preview mode.

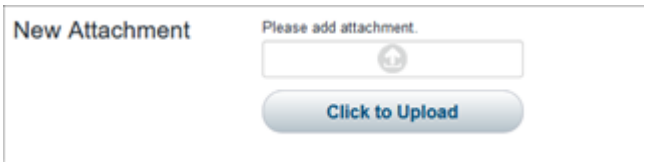
# The User Experience

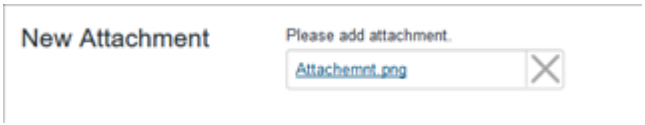
## Interacting with the Attachment Field

To capture an attachment, add the Attachment Field to the form in the location that you wish to capture the attachments. Attachment fields support visibility, editability and mandatory rules like standard fields.

In its empty state, the attachment field shows the 'Click to Upload' button which launches the standard browser file dialog. When an attachment that complies is provided the upload button disappears and the file name is populated into the field as a clickable link that will trigger a download if clicked.

This link will be active, even if the field itself is disabled. The form can be cleared again by clicking the delete ('X') button.



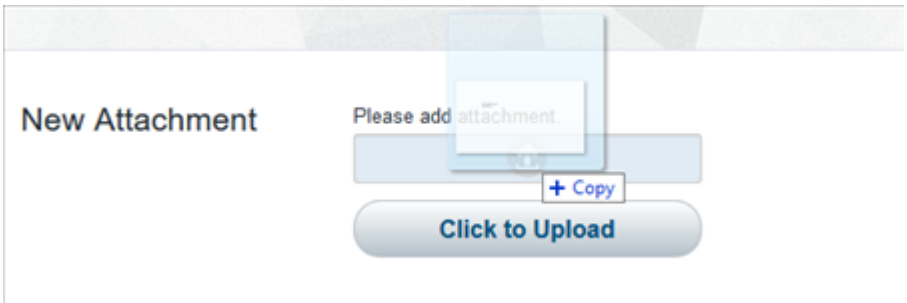




Form designers can configure the attachment field to support the manual delivery option where users indicate they will provide the attachment by conventional means.

> **NOTE**: As of version 4.1, the attachment field is not yet supported in TransactField although it is intended that this capability will be included in a later release.

## Drag and drop support

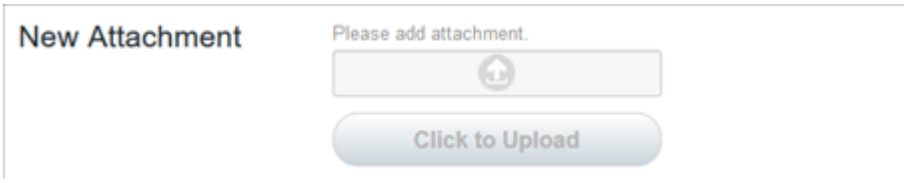
Drag and drop is supported in most browsers (IE8 and IE9 are not supported)



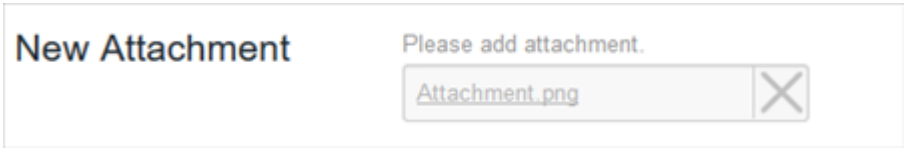
### Read- Only Behavior

In read-only mode when the property "Allow download on disable" is set to true (it is true by default) the delete button is hidden and the download attachment button is clickable.

**"Allow download on disable" set to true**




**"Allow download on disable" set to false**




## Exposing Attachments in Review & Approval Style Collaboration Jobs

Collaboration Jobs runs over a number of steps. The step name is passed by Transaction Manager to the form. Editability rules can be applied to attachment fields based upon the step name.

The initial applicant filling out a blank form usually wants full write access to an attachment field (upload / download / delete). However a reviewer checking the form may be required to view the attachment but not edit it. By configuring the editability rule to only disallow edits in subsequent steps, this scenario can be easily accommodated.

NOTE

Your Attachment Field must have "Allow download on disable" enabled (default).

## Support Notes

In TransactField, the attachment field displays as in receipt mode. In the future, the attachment field will include the capability to upload attachments within TransactField.

# Obtain Form Details

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

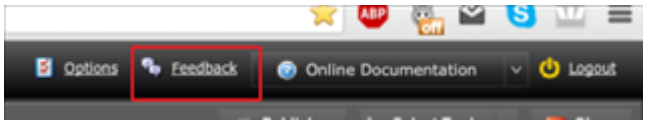
Once your system is in place, there will come a time when you would like to update forms, or request some mentoring or support on a form design. Throughout the life cycle of composer environment, you may rearrange folders or projects, take copies and backups of forms or change form names, it is really important to ensure that you are aware of which form is the current production form, and subsequently, communicate this to your developers or support team when requesting assistance.

If you need to restore or just clean up your environment, see restore the environment.

This short guide will show you how to get the details of the form you wish to request support or development on.

To obtain your form details for developers or support purposes:

1. Before you begin, ensure you have identified for yourself the current production form in the Composer environment. If you have followed the instructions in the linked article above, then you may have written in the description of the form "Current PROD form".
2. Open the required form in Composer
3. Click Feedback in the top right of the Composer environment.




4. Check your form details.

The idea behind this screen is to enable you to collect information about the form, the organisation and the composer environment you are using, to make it clear and simple for your development or support teams to identify which form you need assistance on.

5. Click Copy Details to Clipboard and then paste the clipboard into an email, or into your support ticket, To communicate these details. The sample of the details is shown below.

```
-- Form Details --
Account: Test Forms
Organization: Test Forms
Project: April 2014
Form: TestForm
Template Name: Template-Maguire

-- Build Details --
Version: 4.3.2
Build Date: 3 June 2016
Build Number: 47396
Build Type: cloud

-- Search Path Details --
Release Path: Release v4.0.0
Service Pack path: v4.0 Service Pack 2
Custom Path: Free Trial Forms__Updated Maguire Pack 4 Current

-- Browser Details --
Chrome/51.0.2704.103
```

6. Click Close.

# Restore the Environment

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

we actively encourage all customers to put controls around development and promotion of forms to a live environment, through the use of multiple development, testing and staging (as well as the production) servers. Having separate environments means you can adequately test your work, and promote to live without affecting other services. Unfortunately, this doesn't always happen, and below is an example of a situation where we have assisted in solving a confusing and non structured UAT and Production environment mess.

Imagine this situation, you've just purchased our Temenos Journey Manager platform and have built some forms. You didn't worry about purchasing a non production environment just now, because you don't have anything live, so you want to just go live with the whole system and your new forms.

We recommend purchasing your test and production systems together, so that a clean go-live can occur, however in this scenario, we were not able to take advantage of a test server.

Later, you decide it would be good practice to get a UAT machine and start developing forms and services on that. More developers come in, publishing forms to UAT from composer, creating copies of forms, publishing more things to UAT. Before you know it, your forms list looks like this:

- "Credit Card Application"
- "Credit Card Application (form)"
- "Credit Card Application 2"
- "Credit Card Application test"
- "Home Loan Application"
- "Home Loan Application (UAT)"
- "HL Application"

So, which one is the UAT proper version that you should export to production when you are ready? What if you have 100s of forms and it looks like this?

Don't let it get to this!

Firstly, don't let it get to this stage. We can do this by:

1. In Composer, Implementing a naming or versioning standard
    - I.E – all revisions of forms that are the current working copy should be denoted using "Current Version" for the Revision Name
    - Use the versioning tool within Composer and create your own processes to identify forms
2. Set up your composer security correctly
    - Developer
    - Account Administrator – able to unlock forms and add users/change passwords.
3. Setting up the composer development environment
    - Have one folder per developer to be used as a sandbox area
    - Create a "Backup" folder – This folder will contain a list of forms, denoted by the production form name, with the date appended that it was moved to the backups folder
    - Production – production forms only
    - Process for transferring forms:
    - If changes are required, copy the current production form to the relevant sandbox project
    - Make form changes
    - Test changes
    - Backup the production form to Backup project using the "Save As" functionality within Composer
    - Then update the "Production" project with the newly updated form
4. Publish to Manager.
5. Ensuring that no one can publish directly to the Production TM environment from the Composer environment.
6. In Manager, Implementing a Form Code standard. For example, for a credit card application you may use the syntax – <BRAND CODE><FORMCODE> which could look like MAGCCA (where the brand is Maguire, and the form code for credit card application is CCA). Each form should follow this standard and this standard will depend on the makeup of your business. You may have geographical jurisdictions instead of brands so your code may be <GEOGRAPHY><FORMCODE> for example, AUSCCA (Australia), or UKCCA (United Kingdom).
7. Ensuring any debug or sandbox forms in UAT have the "Test Mode" flag set.

8. Lock your permissions so only those people who need to publish forms to UAT or Prod have the access to (Avoka have a set of recommendations on this).

To correct this issue:

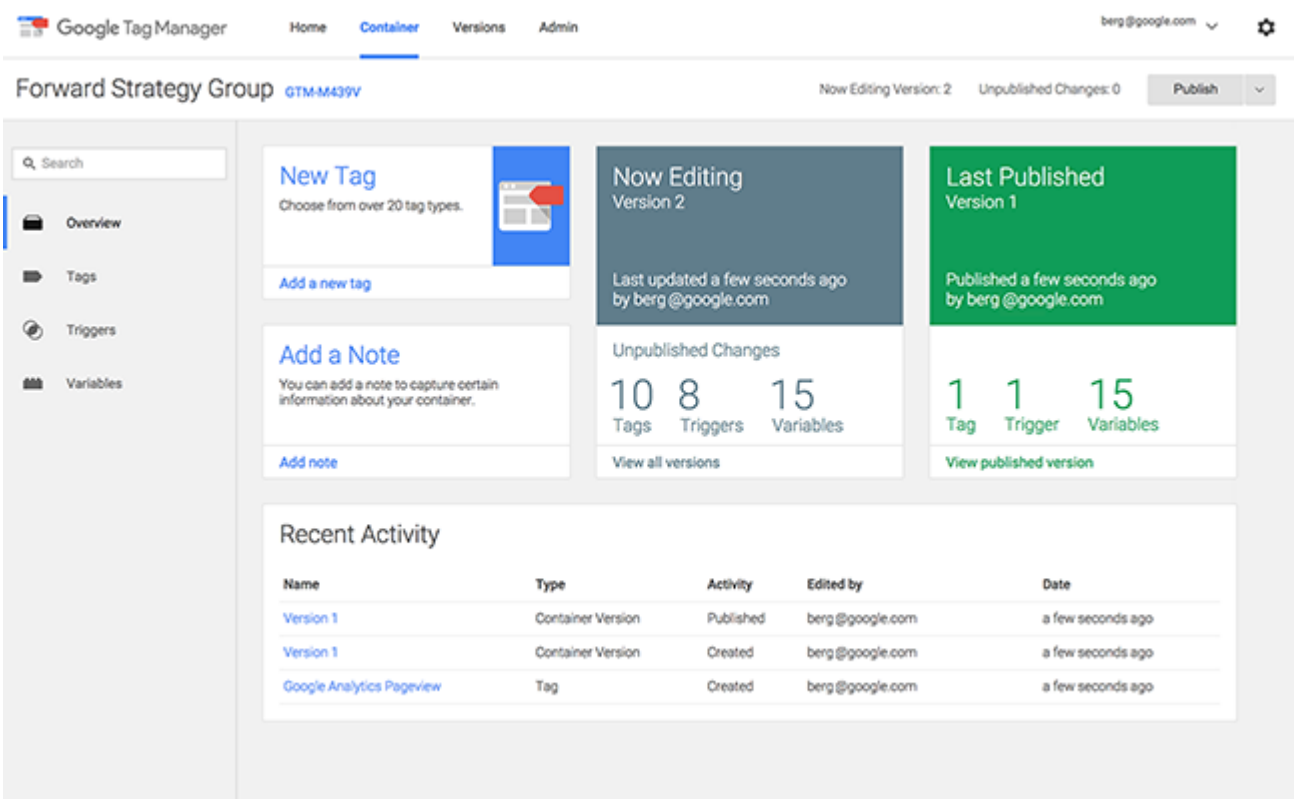
1. You will need to set up some type of matrix using a spreadsheet in order to take note of the form name and code, and the corresponding MD5 value, and which server this exists on.
2. Remove connectivity between Composer and the Production Environment to ensure no forms can be publish to production directly from Composer.
3. Match the Form Archive MD5 value of Prod forms to UAT forms (these forms are evidence that forms have been correctly exported from UAT, and imported to production
4. Go to the Transaction Manager Administration Console
5. Go to Forms, Forms, and find the form in question
6. Click on “Properties” for the form version in the form dashboard
7. Choose the “Form Archive Info” tab
8. Take a note of the “Form Archive MD5” Value
9. Match this value to the suspected corresponding form in production
10. Where forms are in UAT and also appear to be in Prod, but the Forms Archive MD5 does not match, this is evidence that the form has been published directly to production.
11. An option in this case is to export the form from production, and import it into UAT. Then you can publish from Composer to that form in UAT
12. Once satisfied that the forms in prod are correctly reflected in UAT and Composer, forms in UAT can be made “inactive”. Likewise superfluous forms in Prod can be made inactive
13. After a period of time, forms in prod that are inactive can be deleted.

If these steps do not work for your particular problem, contact our support and ask for assistance.

# Add Google Tag Manager to a Composer Form

Journey Manager (JM) The transaction engine for the platform. | Form Builder System Manager / DevOps | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

Google Tag Manager (GTM) lets you launch new tags with just a few clicks, so you get better control over your digital marketing and analytics software faster. The typical GTM dashboard is shown below:




In combination with manage, GTM will allow you to collect analytics information by adding tags to any field, or action in your form without having to make any code changes. This how-to article describes how to add GTM in Transaction Manager and how to add tags to your form. We also have added a number of best practices as well as possible mistakes that you'd like to avoid when using GTM.

Online web forms created with Composer have a single-page architecture, whereby all of the content exists in a single rendered html page, but the user navigation flow is controlled through hide/show logic of different sections (or logical form pages). Whilst

providing a better user experience, this means any standard Google Tag Manager (GTM) configurations that utilise page views to track web-site traffic will stop tracking the user movement once the form is opened - none of the in-form navigation will be tracked.

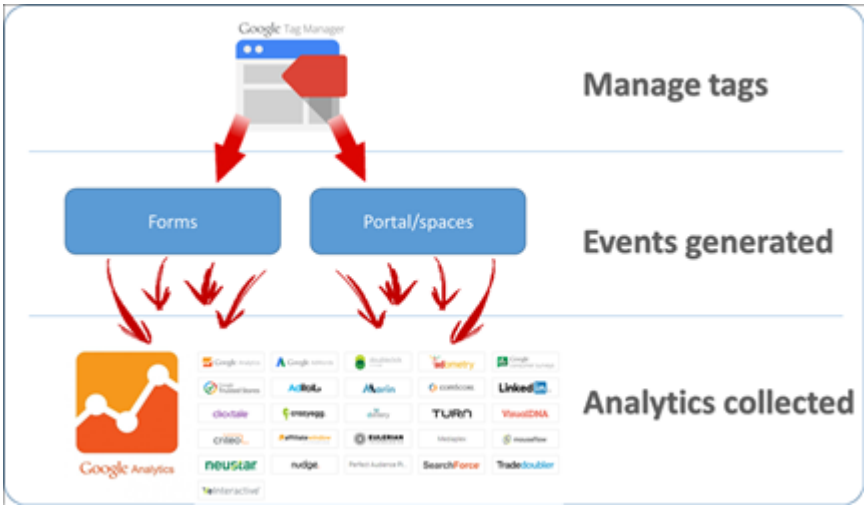
The Google Tag Manager (GTM) container discussed here provides a configurable user interface to enable web-site analytics for these forms - tracking user movement through the different sections of a form, as well as improved tracking for the separate pages that a user will be directed to after completion of the form.

This implementation includes Tags for the Google Analytics framework, however tags could be adapted or created to support any analytics engine.

The GTM container is a fully functional entity that can be applied to any Transact Composer environment. Installation and configuration can be summarised as a series of steps:

1. Import the container into a Google Tag Manager account
2. Configure Transaction Manager to enable Analytics with this Tag Manager Account

This how-to guide assume that you already have a GTM account with the "manage" permission. You will also have to download the Temenos GTM container.




These steps only need to be performed once for a Transaction Manager installation, but note that there is additional configuration required for each form that is to be added to the GTM implementation. This extra configuration will be covered below.

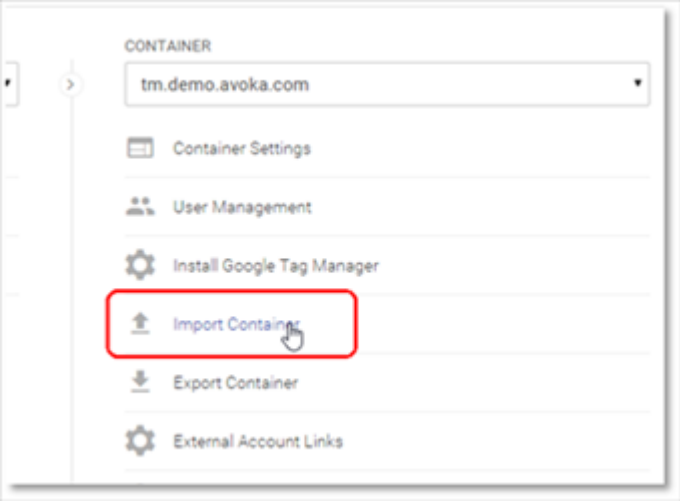
# Import the Container into Google Tag Manager

The Temenos Journey Manager GTM Container is designed to run in isolation - the tags pre-configured within it will only produce page views for Temenos forms and their related pages. For this reason it is safe to use either option for importing the container into GTM - either merge it into an existing container, or create a new one.

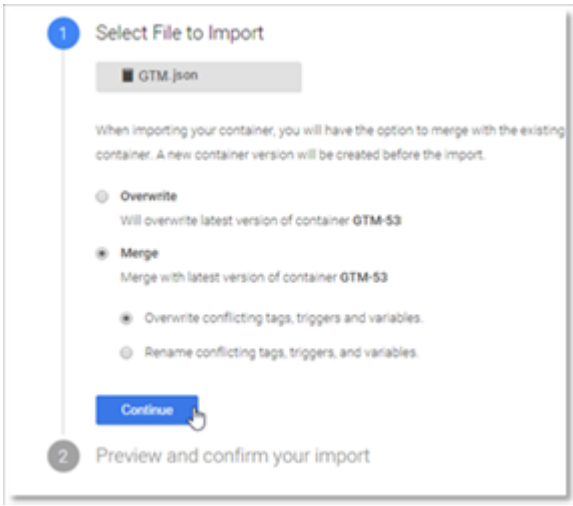
It should be noted however that if choosing to merge it into an existing container, care should be taken that pre-existing tags and triggers do not adversely affect the pages. Additionally, if new tags are being created for forms, correct use of triggers should be maintained to ensure that the tags only fire in the correct places - and not in other pages that may be connecting to the same GTM container.

Steps for importing the container:

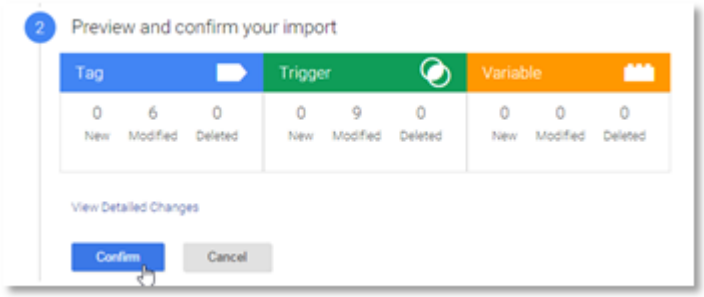
1. Login to Google Tag Manager and select the correct container to import into (Navigate to the Accounts tab and select the relevant container - or create a new container if required)
2. Navigate to the Admin tab and select Import Container from the Container menu.



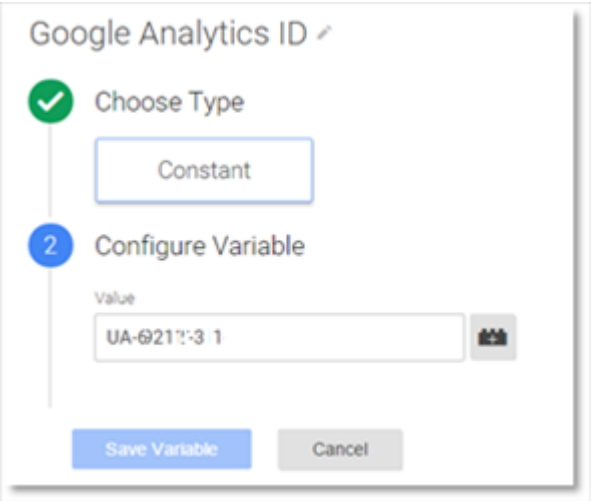

3. Under Select File to Import navigate to the container file on the file system
4. Select to either overwrite the existing container (for new containers only) or merge and press the Continue button.




5. After viewing the Preview hit Confirm to import the container.




6. Navigate to Container > Variables and select the Google Analytics Id variable
7. Inside this variable, enter your Google Analytics Tracking Id. This is important to ensure that page views are being sent to the correct Google Analytics account.



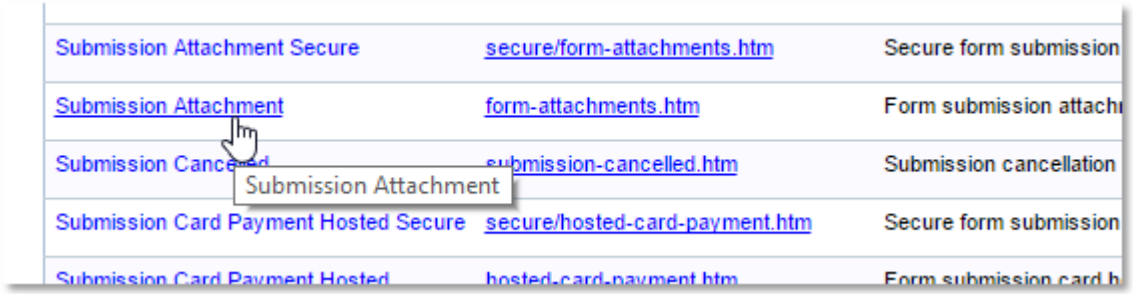
## Configure Manager to Enable Analytics

As stated, a Composer form is built using a single-page architecture, where all of the content added to the form in the Composer tool is rendered in a single HTML page, and hidden or shown as appropriate via browser scripting. However, the actual form content only forms part of the user-experience picture.

Landing pages, Save and Resume pages, Attachments pages and Submission Complete pages that may be presented to the user before or after they have filled in the form. These pages are also critical to deriving useful data from an analytics engine, and therefore need to be included in the GTM implementation.

Manager maintains global versions of these pages that are used by all forms by default, so it becomes important to be able to identify which form the page has been opened for. For the most part this can be achieved by using the formCode URL request parameter that is required to open the form, however for some of the post-form pages (Submission Complete, Attachments, Save Confirmation) this parameter is not provided. In these cases GTM has been setup to look for a form code within the HTML of the page that's been rendered, by finding a hidden element with the id of submission_formCode. The pages do not automatically include this hidden element, but any Manager user with the Portal Edit permission can add it with a few simple steps:

1. After logging into Manager, navigate to System > Form Spaces
2. Find the space that contains the form you would like to add GTM capability to, and click on the name of the space.
3. Find the page to be edited, and click on the name entry.




4. Navigate to the Pages tab.
5. Place the following HTML inside the page content. The location is not critical, but ensure it is not inside any conditional logic (with markup such as `#if ($session.emailed)`:

```
<input type="hidden" name="formCode" id="submission_formCode" value-
e="$form.formCode"/>
```

6. Save your changes (the button at the bottom of the page). These changes will need to be applied to the all pages that you would like to track even ts on.

## Enable Analytics for each Form

Part of the configuration exercise is to enable the creation of analytics data on a per-form basis. This allows greater control over which forms are tracked (and when) as well as tailoring the exact look of the page views that are generated. Enabling analytics for a form involves steps in both Manager and GTM.

If any of these steps are not performed, no analytics data will be received for the particular form - even if it's published to an environment that already has other forms sending analytics data.

Having said that, it only needs to be done once for each form - thereafter, if changes to the form are made in Composer, and published to the Manager environment, this setup does **not** need to be repeated.

To add the GTM container script to the form:

1. Select Forms -> Forms and locate a form you want to track.
2. Click Edit and select the Page Tracking tab to enable page tracking.
3. Select the Use Form Page Tracking checkbox.
4. Select the Inside HEAD in the Page Script Include Position dropdown list. Keep the Tracking Script Template blank.
5. Paste the GTM script in the Form Page Tracking Script text field to enable tracking of the form.

   NOTE

   You can find the GTM script from your Google Tag Manager account by selecting Admin > Install Google Tag Manager.

6. Click Save to update the changes.

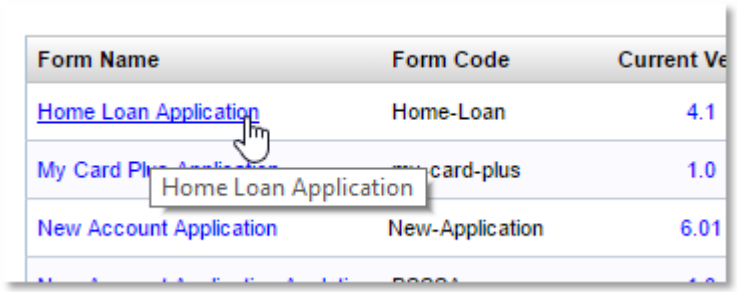
# Additional Forms Pages

Manager has the ability for a form to maintain its own version of these pages - so that different content may be displayed to the user for a particular form. However, this setup is optional, and if not configured, the default pages referred to in section 2.2 are used.

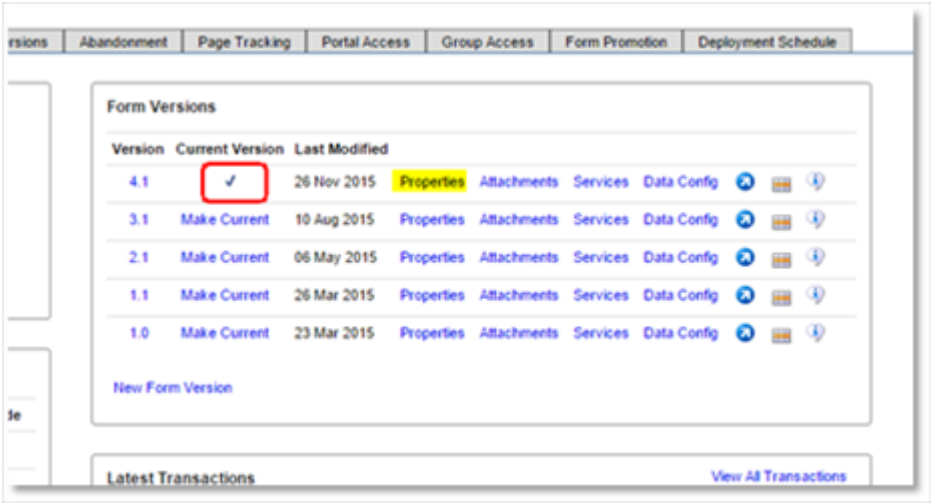
If configured, then these custom pages also require the same changes that were applied in section 2.2 - to include a hidden field with the form code that GTM can use.

Every time a form is being enabled for GTM it is therefore necessary to check whether any custom pages have been configured, and to edit these.

1. Navigate to Forms -> Forms
2. Locate the relevant form and click on the name entry



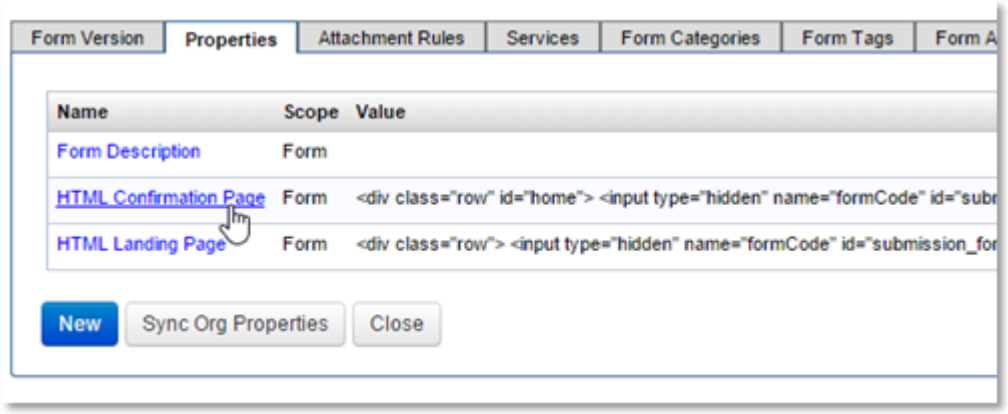

3. In the Form Versions box, locate the version that is ticked as the default, and click on the Properties link for that version




4. In the list of properties, if you see an entry for any of the relevant pages, they will need to be edited. The list of possible entries that will require editing are:

- HTML Confirmation Page
- HTML Saved Page

5. If present, click on the name of the relevant property



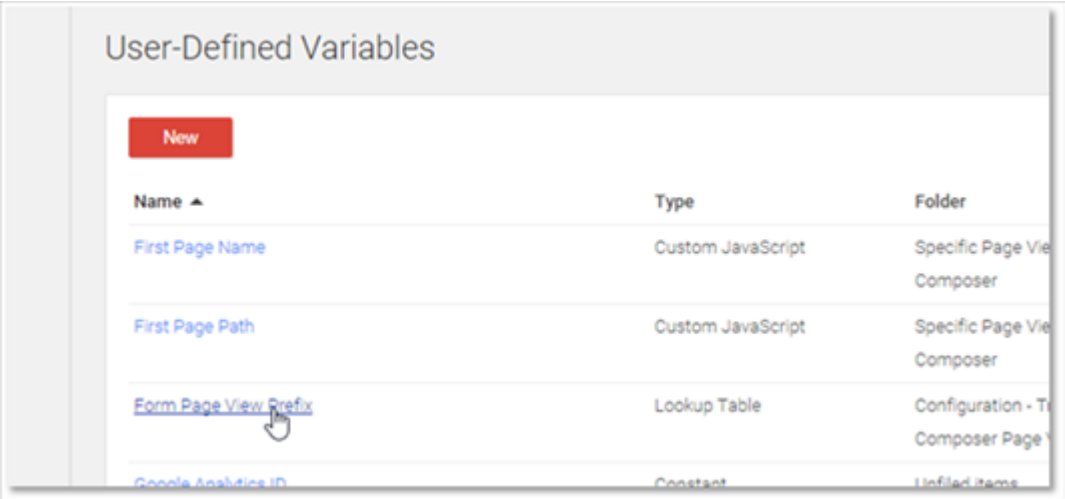

6. Place the following html inside the page content. The location is not critical, but ensure it is not inside any conditional logic (with markup such as `#if ($session.emailed)`:

```
<input type="hidden" name="formCode" id="submission_formCode" value-
e="$form.formCode"/>
```

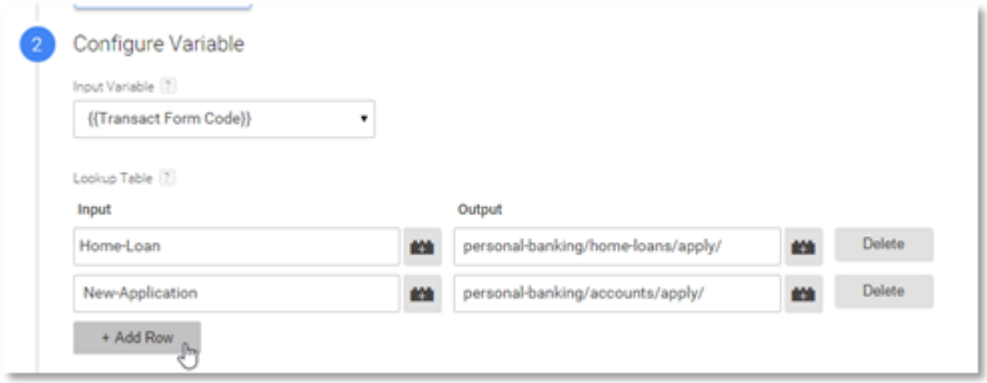
7. Save your changes (the button at the bottom of the page)

## Configure Google Tag Manager

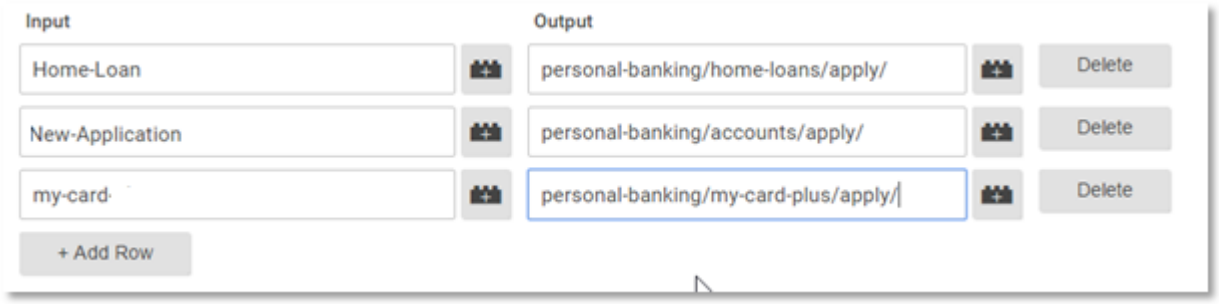
Navigate to Container -> Variables -> Form Page View Prefix.



Click inside the Configure Variable section to allow editing, and add a row to the Lookup Table.

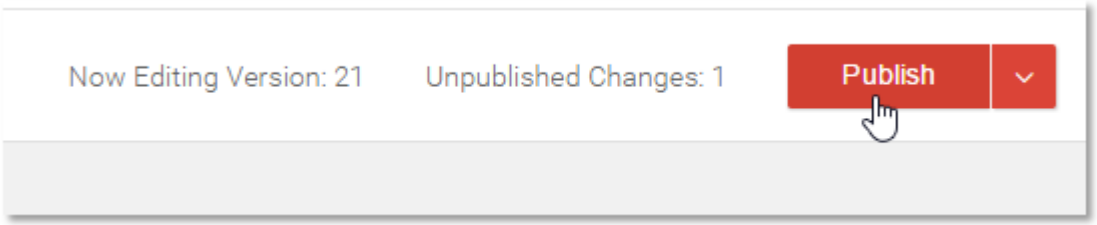



In the Input field, type the Manager Form Code and in the Output field enter the Page View prefix that will be used for this form. This prefix will be used for all Page Views generated by this form, and is a unique path that will identify the form in the Analytics engine

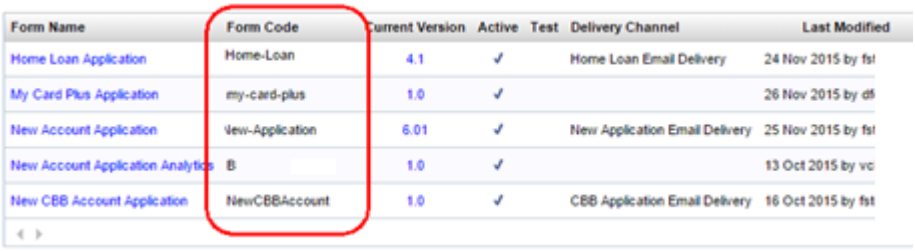



Save the Variable

Once all changes have been made, it is important to publish the changes using the Publish button in the top right corner of the GTM page. Once published, traffic on that form will generate the new page views which will be sent to Google Analytics




To find the Manager Form Code, open Manager, and navigate to Forms -> Forms. The resulting list will show the form codes for all published forms in that environment:



| Form Name | Form Code | Current Version | Active | Test | Delivery Channel | Last Modified |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Home Loan Application | Home-Loan | 4.1 | ✓ | | Home Loan Email Delivery | 24 Nov 2015 by fs |
| My Card Plus Application | my-card-plus | 1.0 | ✓ | | | 26 Nov 2015 by df |
| New Account Application | iew-Application | 6.01 | ✓ | | New Application Email Delivery | 25 Nov 2015 by fs |
| New Account Application Analytics | B | 1.0 | ✓ | | | 13 Oct 2015 by vc |
| New CBB Account Application | NewCBBAccount | 1.0 | ✓ | | CBB Application Email Delivery | 16 Oct 2015 by fs |

# Further Information

The following sections include some useful information for GTM administrators that may be wishing to maintain the container, or make changes going forward.

## Navigate and Locate Items in GTM

A folder structure has been setup inside the container to group relevant items together. By navigating to the Folders section (in the left-hand menu structure) items can be located a little more easily. The folder structure consists of the following folders:

- Configuration - Transact Composer Page Views - contains variables that relate to the changeable configuration. In particular, the Form Page View Prefix variable that an administrator needs to edit to add or change a form's analytics settings is located here.
- General In-form Navigation Page Views - Transact Composer - contains Variables, Triggers and Tags that are involved in generating the page views for in-form navigation - such as registering to receive custom events when a user changes sections, as well as the variables that resolve the section name from the custom event, to be used in the page view Tag.
- Specific Page Views - Transact Composer - contains Variables, Triggers and Tags for the page views that are to be generated for all pages outside of the actual Composer form - such as confirmation pages, attachments pages and landing pages.

## General Functional Overview

### In-form Page Views

To enable page views to be generated as a user navigates through the Composer form, a few key GTM elements have been configured.

- Register Page Change Form Events (Tag)
  - Custom HTML tag type
  - Injects some javascript that utilises the Composer libraries to detect when a user has changed pages, and sends a custom event to GTM - the custom event contains information relating to which section has been opened.
  - Fires on Document Ready, but only in the SmartForm.html page, and if the form being viewed has been configured with a page view prefix (see the Document Ready with Section Level Analytics Trigger)
- Section Level Page View (Tag)
  - Google Analytics (Universal) tag type
  - Actually creates the Google Analytics page view with the relevant prefix and section information
  - Fires on the custom page.change event that is generated by the user action

The other elements in this In-form Navigation folder in GTM are triggers and variables that support these two tags - mainly for extracting details from the generated custom event, as well as ensuring the page views only fire in relevant Composer form pages.

**Other Page Views**

For all other page views, a fairly simple paradigm has been followed of a single Trigger and single Tag. It should be noted though that these items also rely on other existing Variables, but going forward it is unlikely that these supporting variables would need to change.

As an example, the Submission Complete page views are configured as follows (and the other pages follow the same

- Submission Complete Page Opened (Trigger)
  - Page View Trigger
  - Fires on DOM Ready
  - Checks that the Page URL contains confirmation.htm and that a form prefix has been configured for this form - which automatically ensures the page is a form confirmation page, and that the form has been set to use Google Analytics
- Submission Complete Page View (Tag)
  - Google Analytics (Universal) tag type
  - Uses the configured form prefix with a hard-coded page name - i.e. {{Form Page View Prefix}}submission
  - Fires on the Submission Complete Page Opened trigger

Next, learn about the form dashboard.

# Composer Account Administration

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The Composer Administration Guide steps an administrator through features of Composer that manage and maintain their organizational hierarchy as well administration of users in their Accounts.

## Aim of this Guide

Composer has a set of administration tools, which allow for fine-grained control over Composer's configuration. There are also a number of maintenance tasks that you regularly should perform, so that your users can get the most out of Composer.

**Notation**

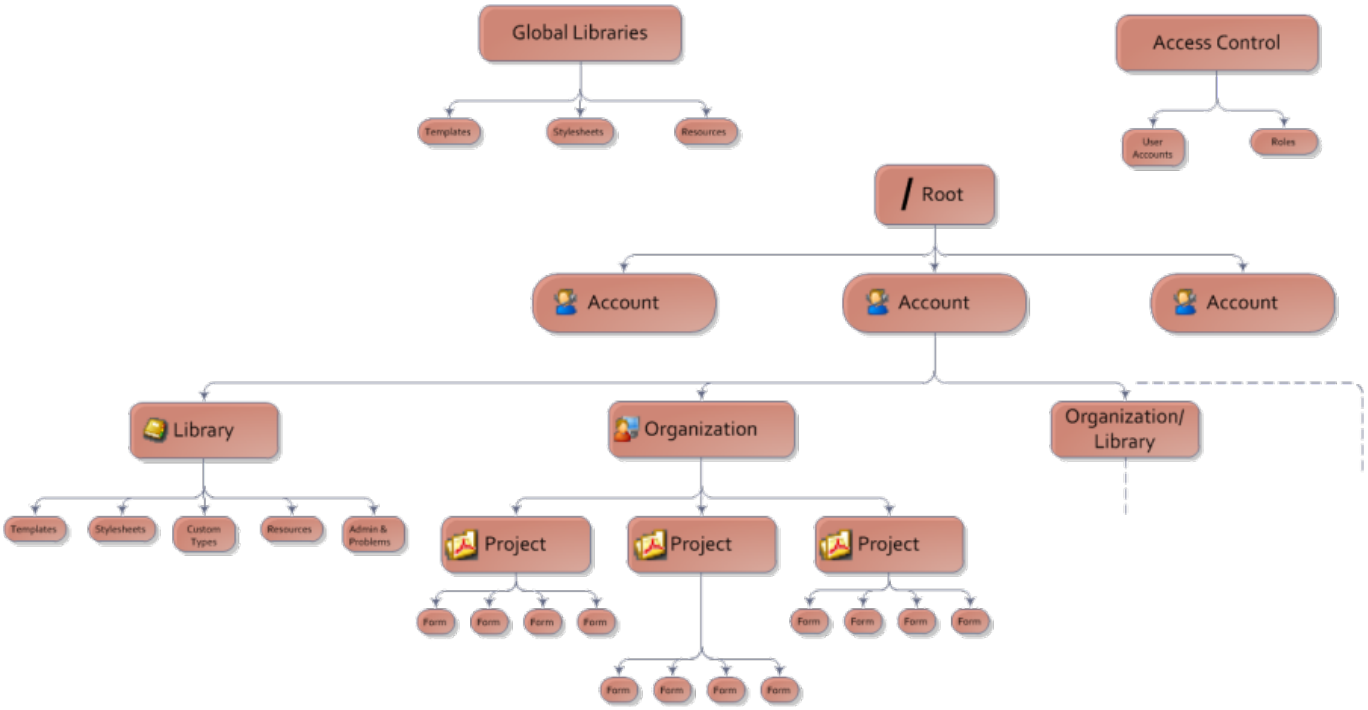
Throughout this administration guide, we use the notation "->" to indicate a location in the interface to carry out a task.; for example: "Access Control -> Users -> New System User"

Angle brackets ("< >") indicate the general name, for example "<Account>" for "Foobar Account" or "My Account" or whatever.

# The Workspace

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

### Workspace Hierarchy




The Root level is the top of the Composer environment; this is at the server level. You access Composer through a recommended browser and assigned URL If you have opted to host Composer yourself and not in the community cloud some of the issues of hosting your own environment may not be covered in this document.

The Composer workspace is organized into a number of Accounts. Above these lies the Avoka-administred Root level. You will have been assigned to one or more of these Accounts, which will be the areas you will be administering. The Account level usually corresponds to the Enterprise level in the real world. An Account can have many Organizations, usually corresponding to the department level in the enterprise.

Floating above the Root are the Global Libraries and Access Control. Global Libraries are, as it were, dynamic super libraries, in the sense that changes to these will ripple through the entire system of account-level libraries. More on libraries will follow.
We have placed, somewhat arbitrarily, Access Control outside of the Workspace, mainly because it lies outside of the Workspace structure (though not entirely, as we

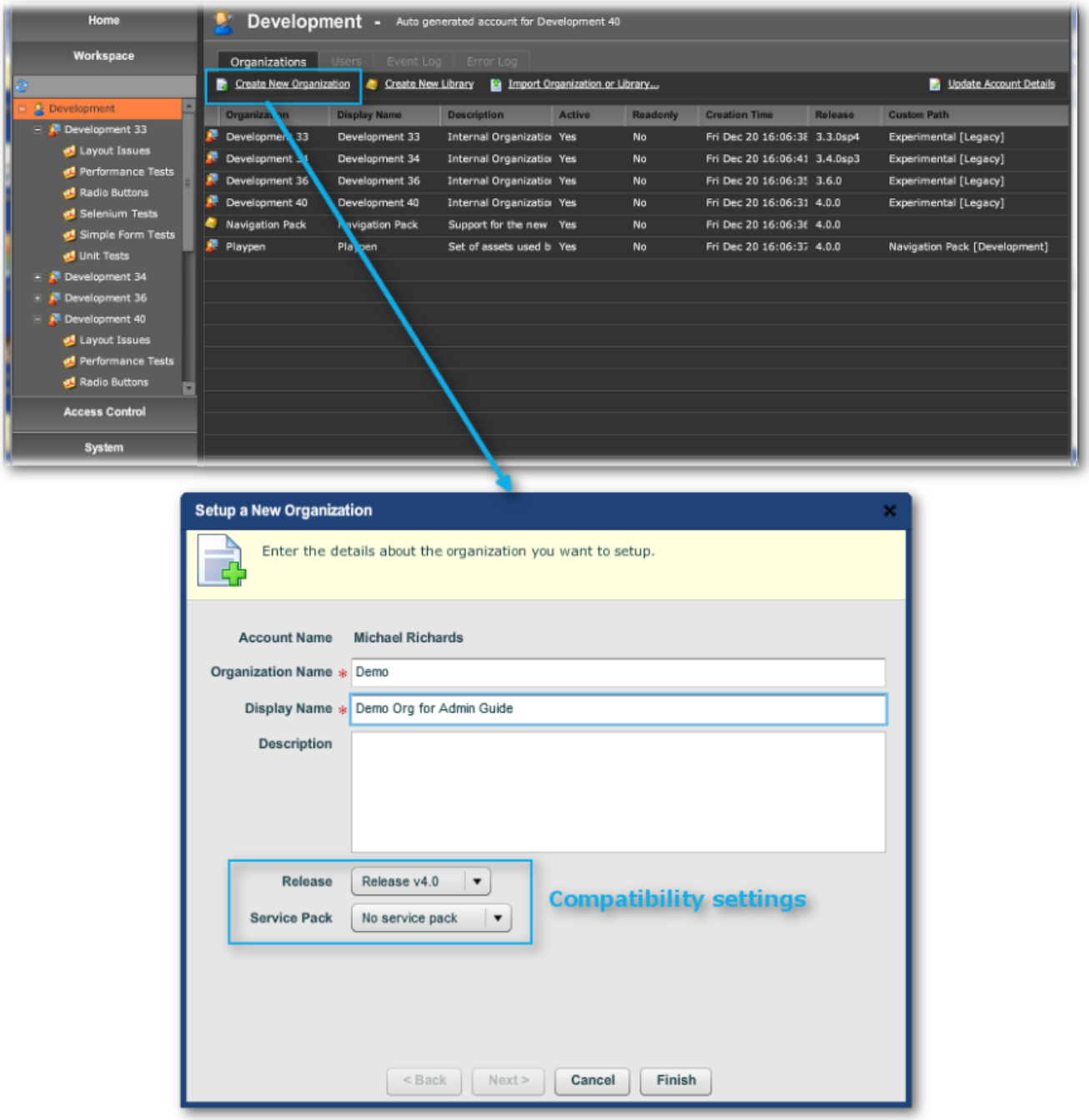
will see). Also, although you can create roles and assign users, all your access control settings are not held under the account level like, say, libraries.

In most usual account configurations, the end users are normally granted rights to set up Projects and create forms under them. The Project level is often used by designers as their personal space. However, you decide whether you will adhere to this scheme.

# Creating New Organizations

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

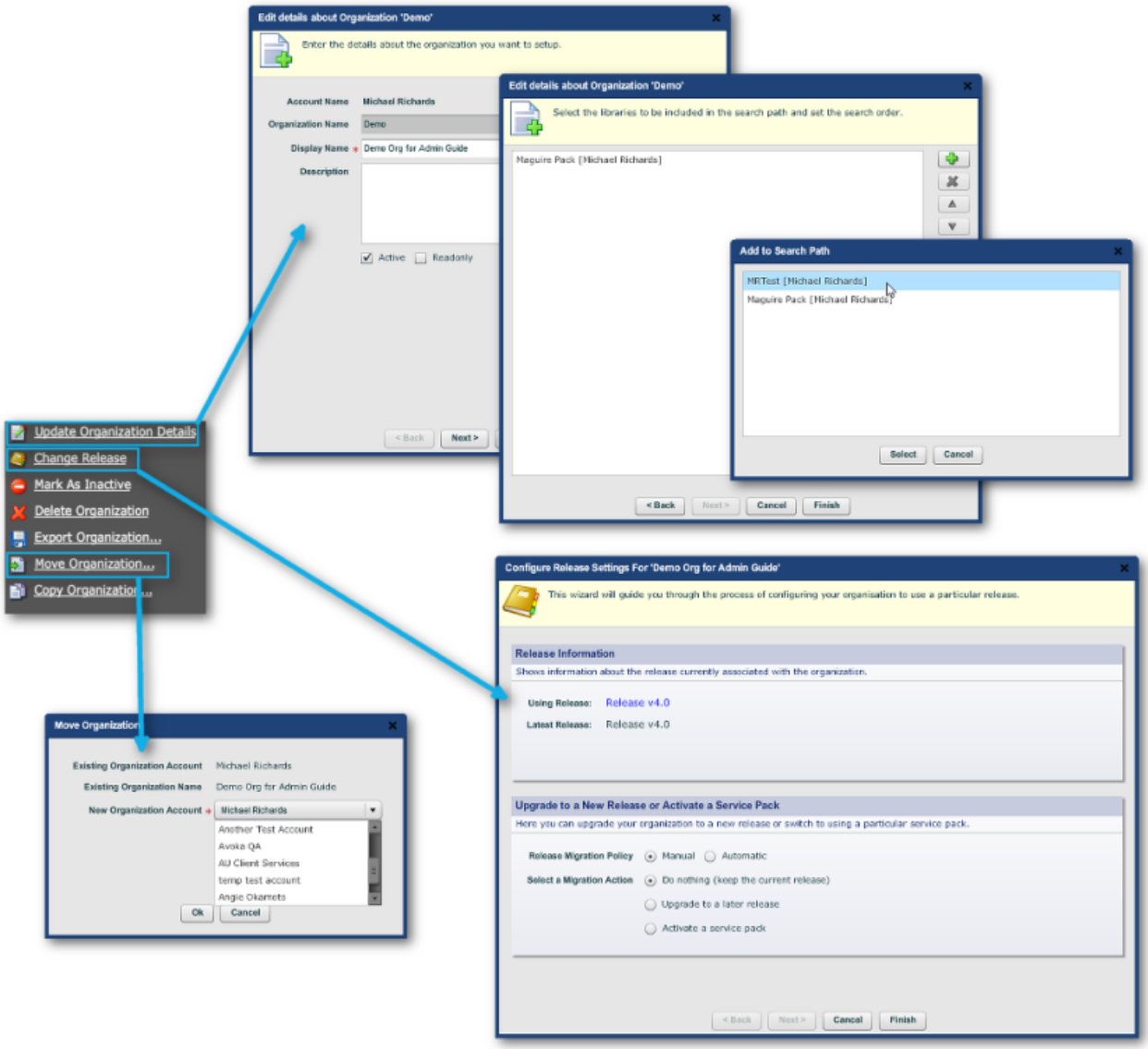
**Creating New Organizations**
**Location:** Workspace -> <Account>
**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN, ORGANIZATION_EXPORT, ORGANIZATION_IMPORT
**Roles:**System Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Account Administrator, Avoka Partner




**You can also create Organizations at the Location: System -> Organization Management.**

We strongly recommend that you set the release compatibility to the latest version and service pack; however, you have the option of going with earlier versions.

The Organization needs to be configured, carried out at the Account Level of the UI:


Edit details about Organization 'Demo'
Enter the details about the organization you want to setup.
Account Name
Michael Richards
Organization Name
Demo
Display Name
Demo Org for Admin Guide
Description
Active
Readonly
< Back
Next >
Edit details about Organization 'Demo'
Select the libraries to be included in the search path and set the search order.
Maguire Pack [Michael Richards]
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Finish
Add to Search Path
MRTest [Michael Richards]
Maguire Pack [Michael Richards]
Select
Cancel
Update Organization Details
Change Release
Mark As Inactive
Delete Organization
Export Organization...
Move Organization...
Copy Organization...
Move Organization
Existing Organization Account
Michael Richards
Existing Organization Name
Demo Org for Admin Guide
New Organization Account
Michael Richards
Another Test Account
Avoka QA
AU Client Services
temp test account
Angie Okamoto
Ok
Cancel
Configure Release Settings For 'Demo Org for Admin Guide'
This wizard will guide you through the process of configuring your organisation to use a particular release.
Release Information
Shows information about the release currently associated with the organization.
Using Release:
Release v4.0
Latest Release:
Release v4.0
Upgrade to a New Release or Activate a Service Pack
Here you can upgrade your organization to a new release or switch to using a particular service pack.
Release Migration Policy
Manual
Automatic
Select a Migration Action
Do nothing (keep the current release)
Upgrade to a later release
Activate a service pack
< Back
Next >
Cancel
Finish

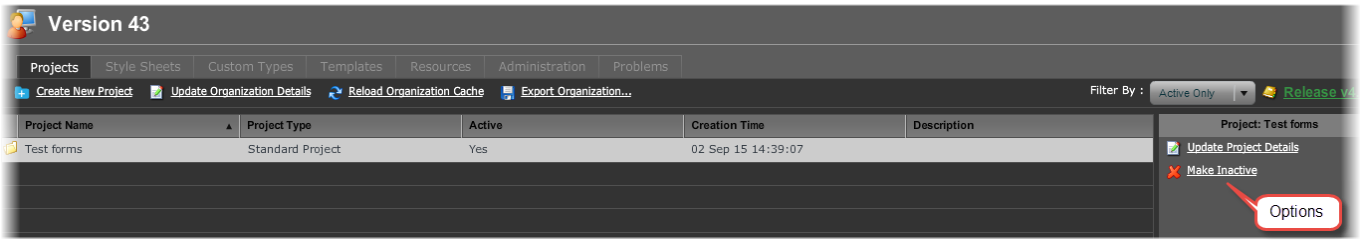
# Creating New Projects

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account>
**Required Permissions:**PROJECT_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator, Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer

You create new Projects at the Location "Workspace -> Account -> Organization" of the UI and at that level only.

The Project Options from the Organization level look like this:




You also have some editing actions:

- Update the Project's details
- Make the Project inactive (which is tantamount to deleting the Project)

The Project level of the UI looks like this:

There are 2 further tabs at this Project level. These are inspectors where you can view the allocation of templates and users to the Project,

- Assigned Templates: you can filter templates by Current Organization or for all templates in the environment.
- Assigned Users: you can block individual users so that they will not be assigned to new forms

# Creating & Importing Libraries

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

An account can have many Libraries. Each of these is a collection of assets, i.e. templates and so forth.

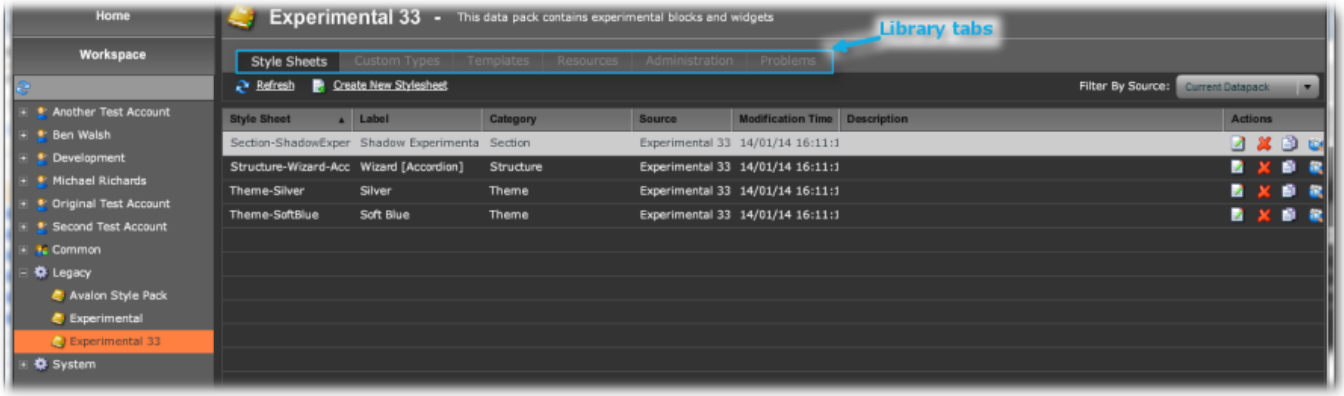
A Library or Libraries can be assigned to Organizations.

So, it becomes possible that different Organizations (or even Projects) in the one Account can have different designs to the their forms through the use of different Libraries.

This flexibility was not easily configurable in earlier versions of Composer.

The various releases and libraries in Composer form a stack. We strongly recommend that you read "Library Advanced Features" in the Composer Guide.

**Library Level of the UI**



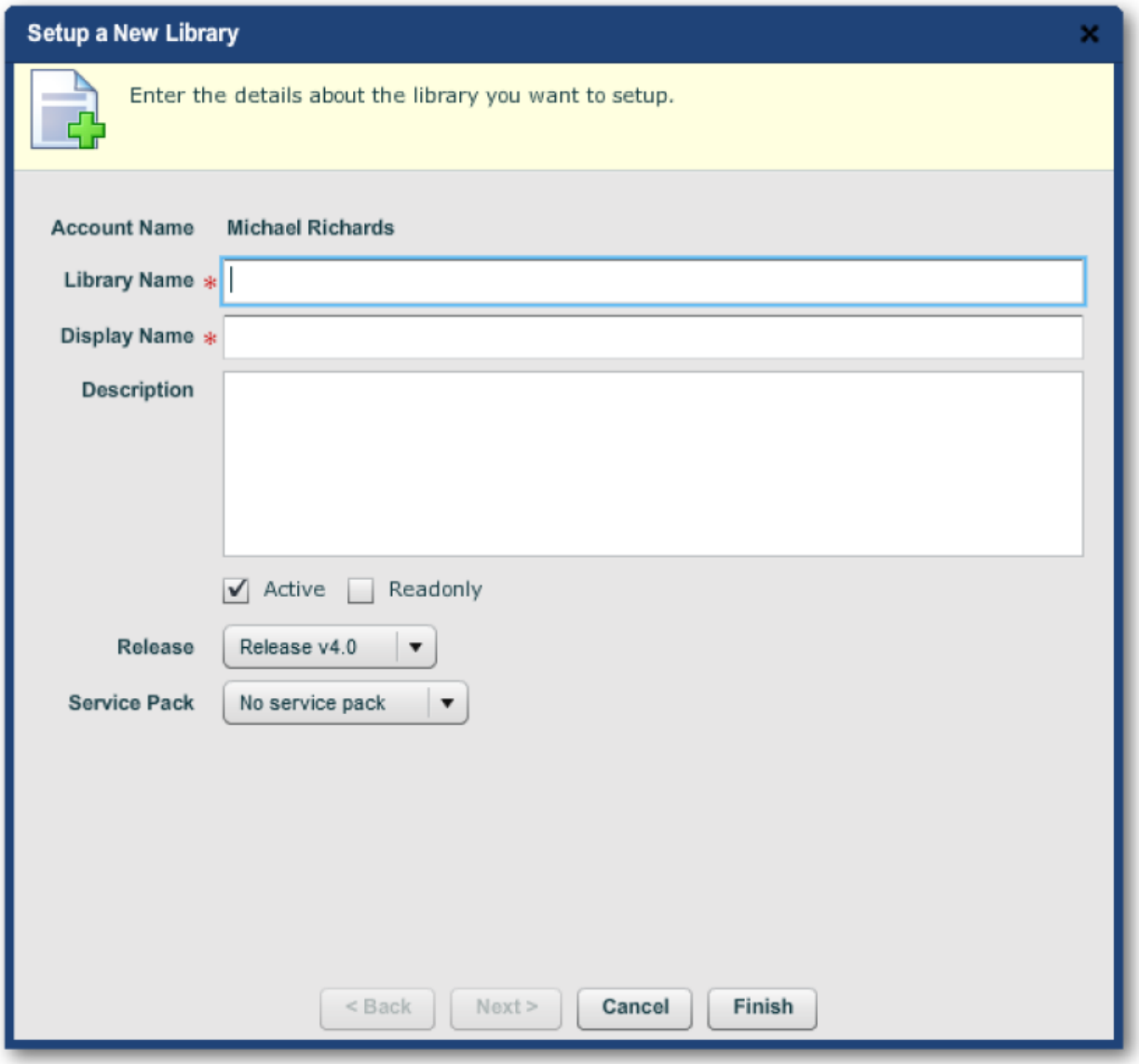

The Library level has a number of powerful features accessed through the Library tabs and the

whole structure of library elements are accessible to users given the necessary rights (see Allocating Users).

**Creating a New Library**

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> Create New Library link
**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN, LIBRARY_EXPORT, LIBRARY_IMPORT

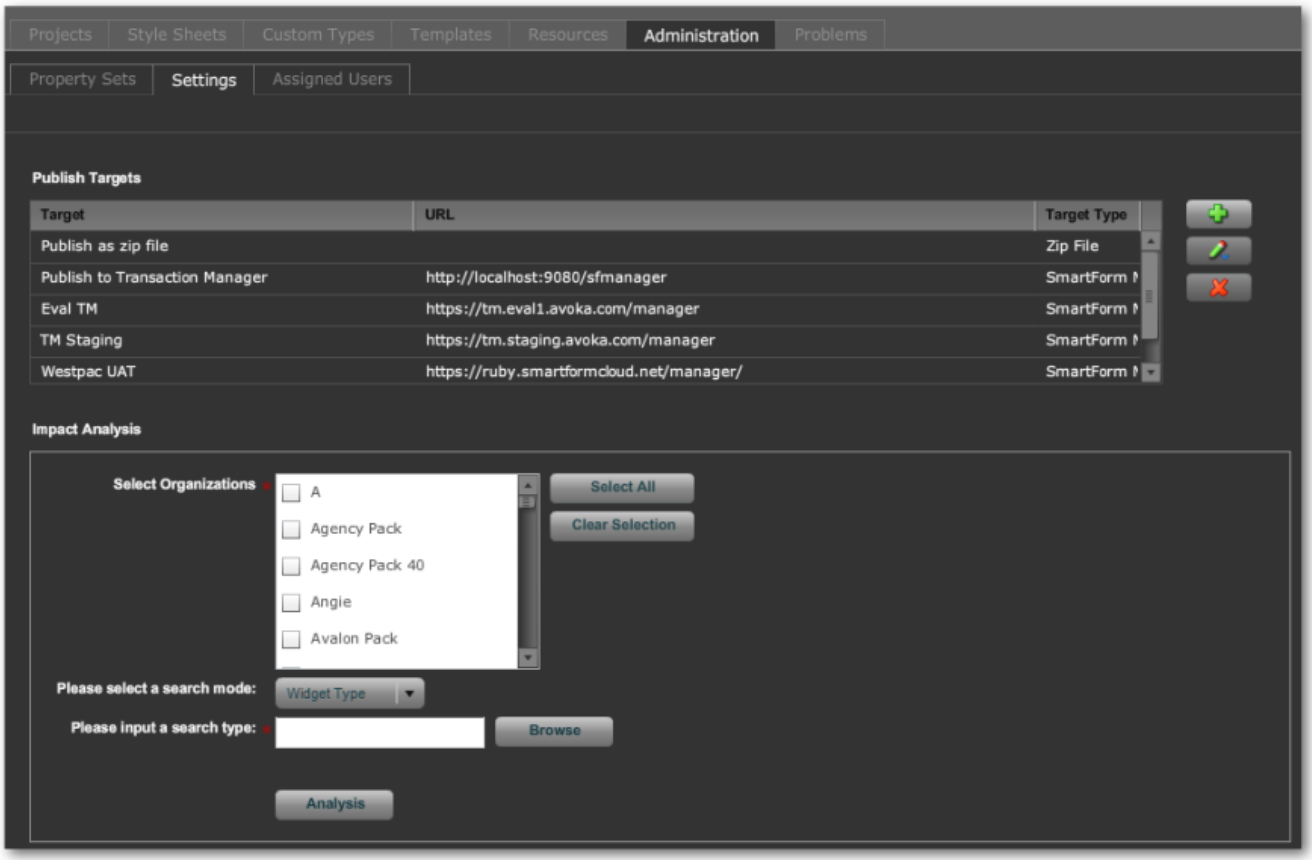
**Roles:**System Administrator, Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner



# Export Options

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** System -> Data Management
**Roles:** System Administrator
**Location:** Workspace -> <Organization> -> Administration tab -> Settings tab
**Required Permissions:**DATAPACK_EXPORT
**Roles:**Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner




You can configure how your users export forms to Transaction Manager by using the "Publish Targets" parameters. You can add or delete targets and edit them.

The content, on clicking on the "Export" button and select one of the two options configured above, is either downloaded to your browser as a .zip file or sent to the Transaction Manager instance at the https URL.

The "Impact Analysis" produces a report on which Projects in the selected organizations (and you can select multiple organizations) for the following search modes:

- Widget Types
- Templates
- Style Sheets

Then, you must select to search for particular items in these modes: i.e. for a particular widget or widgets, for a particular template or a particular style sheet

This results in a report dialog that gives the project and forms that use these items.

## Inspecting an Organization's Libraries

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization>
**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator, Account Administration, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner

At the Organization level of the UI, the Organization's Projects are selectable in the default tab and perform actions on them.

But from the point of view of administrating the Organization, the tabs other than Projects are useful for inspecting the library elements assigned to the Organization, using:

- Style Sheets tab
- Custom Types tab
- Template tab
- Resources tab

Each of these tabs have, top right, a dropdown filter selector to view these by the Current Organization or by All Organizations (in the current environment).
Use the Administration tab to configure and allocate Property Sets.

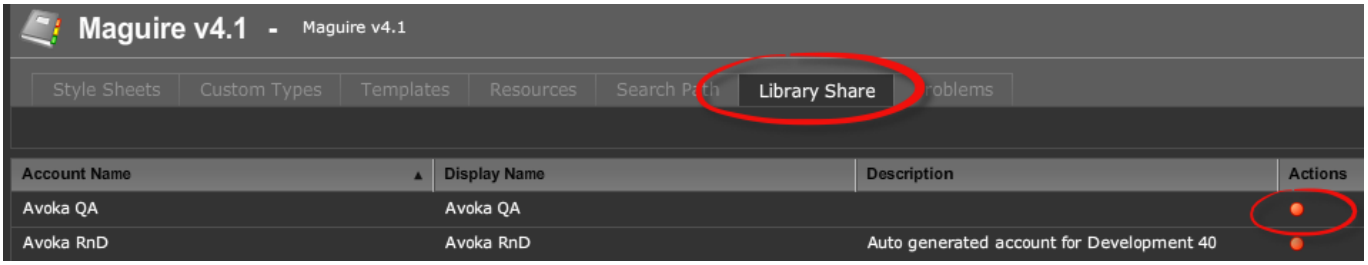
# Maintaining Libraries

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Sharing Libraries with Accounts**

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Library> -> Administration tab -> Library Share tab

**Required Permissions:**LIBRARY_SHARE
**Roles:**Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner




The library share tab lists all the Accounts in the Environment. The Action button can be used to associate the library to Account or alternatively block the Library.

Note that the library is not visible in the Account's organizations until the library is shared with the account.

**Assigning Libraries to organizations from the Workspace**

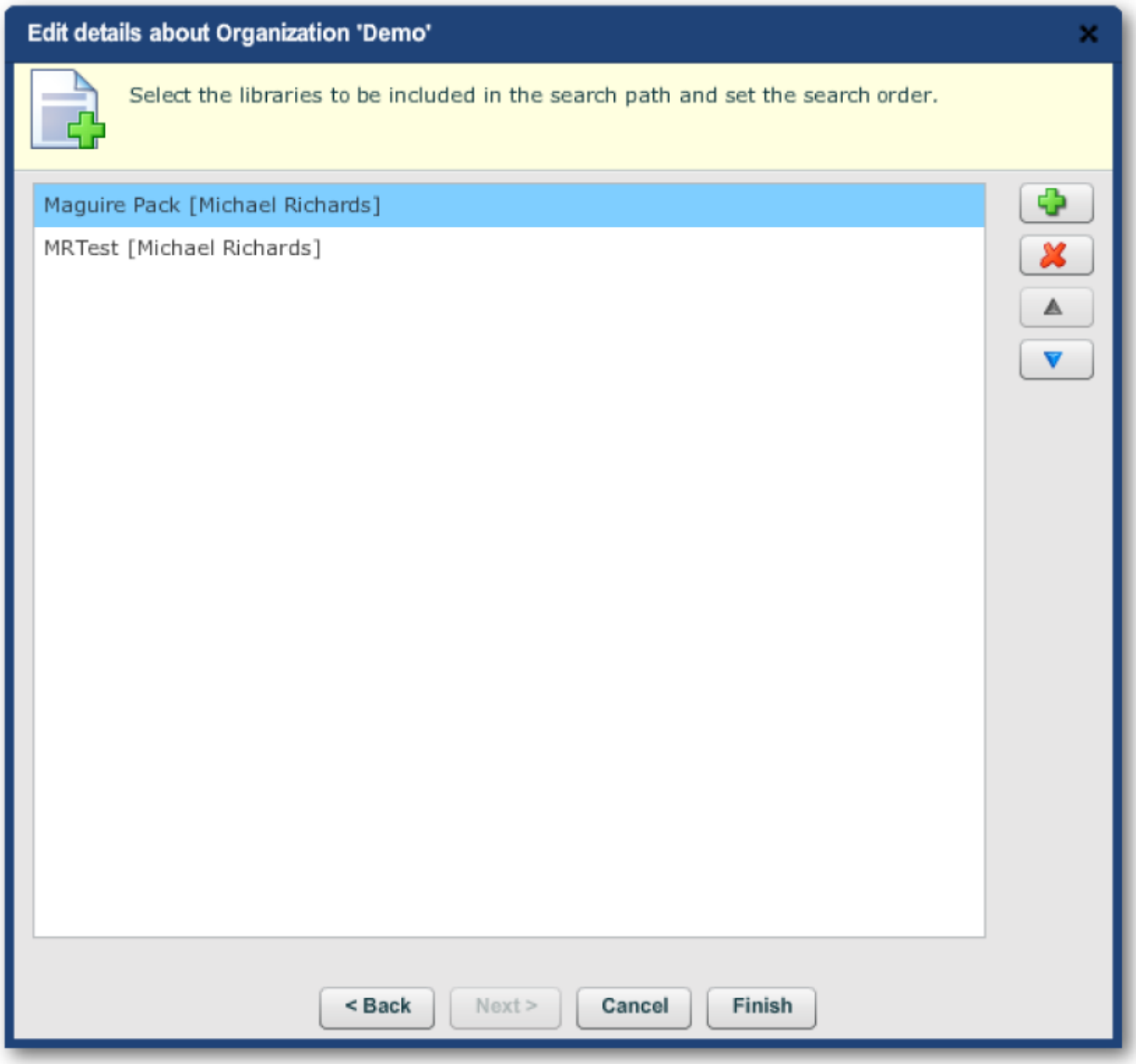
To assign the library to an organization, either:

- go to Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> and click on the Action "Update Organization Details" or
- at the Workspace -> <Account> -> <Library> click on "Update Library Details".

**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN, LIBRARY_SHARE
**Roles:**Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner

In both cases, go through the first stage of the Wizard, and click on "Next", where you can assign Libraries to your Organization or Library. The dialog where you do this looks

like this:




Libraries also can come with Service Packs (see Change Release) and are then termed "Data Packs". But despite the different name, they are libraries and can be configured the same ways.

## Assigning and Maintaining Stylesheets

**Overview**

Stylesheets are the building blocks to any template.

This also means that there are a great number of these and they have many categories.

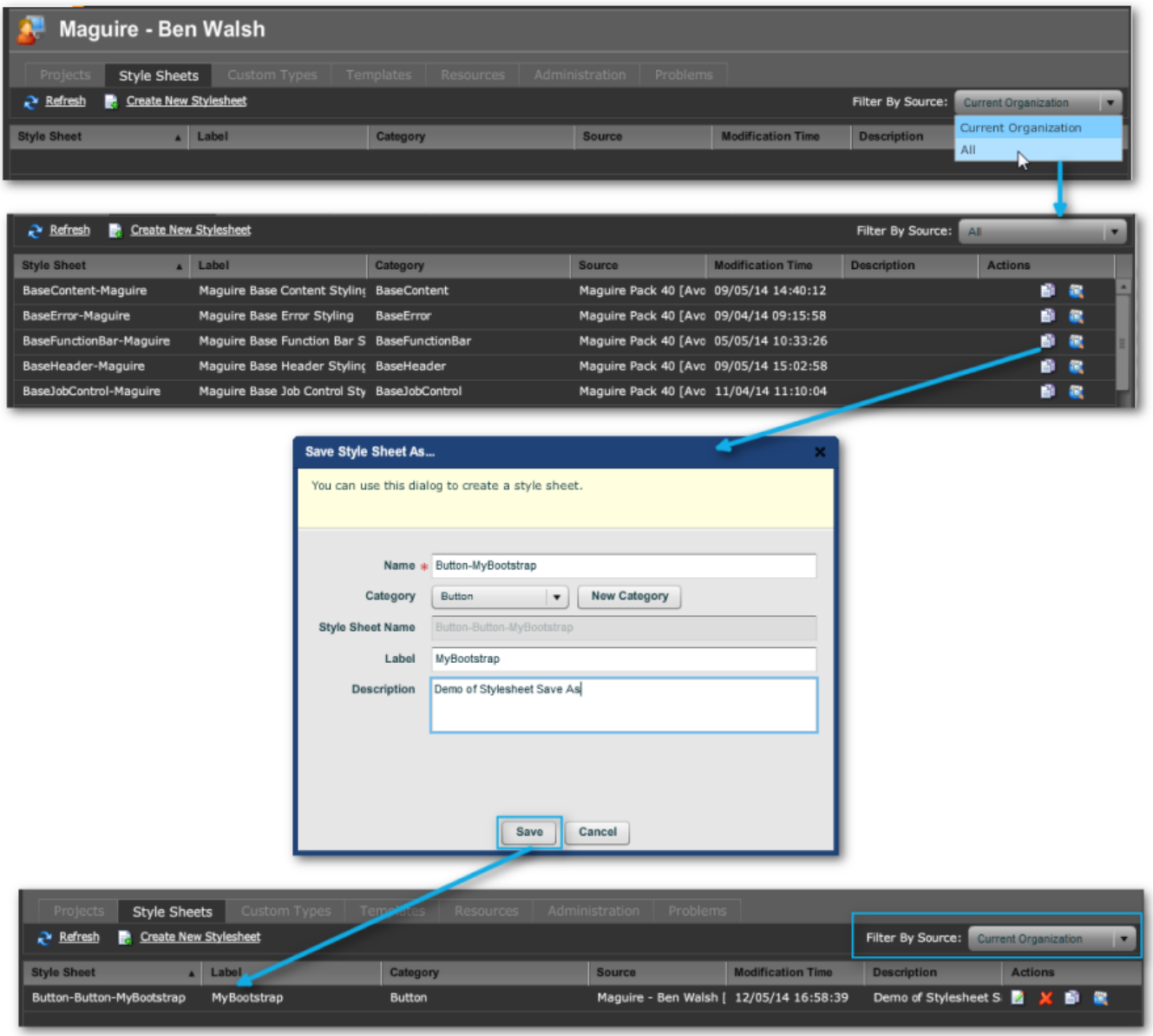
You are even free to add to the list of categories (which you do in the "Save Style Sheet as..." dilaog shown below).

Generally, you will be assigning Stylesheets at Workspace -> <Account> -> <Library>. Freshly-created Organizations do not have their own stylesheets, but can access the libraries assigned to them.

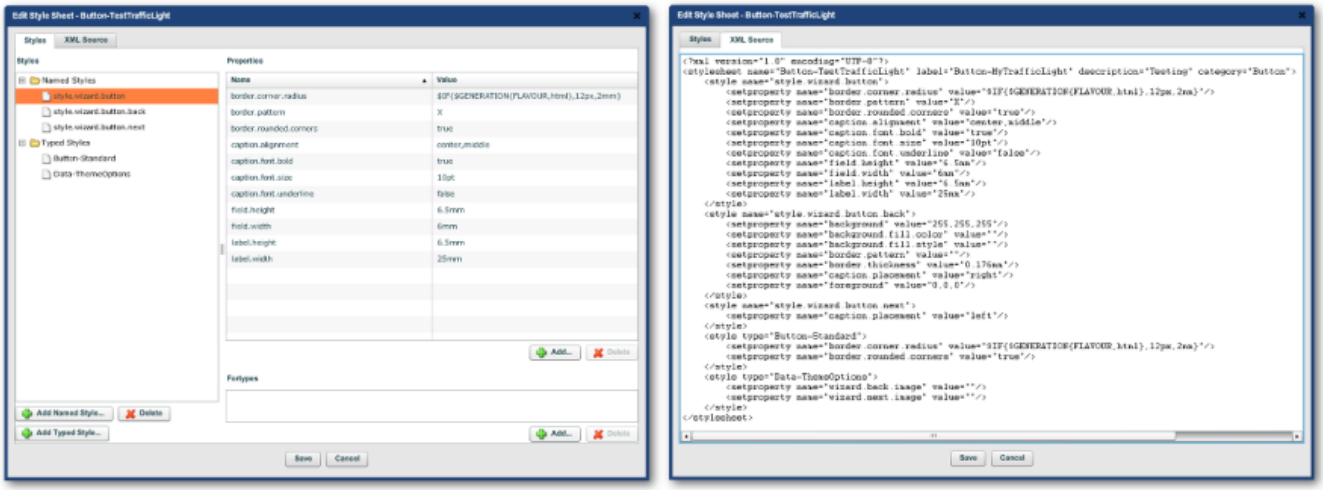
**Editing Stylesheets**
**Location:** Worksheet -> <Organization> -> Style Sheets tab
or
**Location:** Worksheet -> <Library> Style Sheets tab
**Required Permissions:**STYLESHEET_MGMT
**Roles:**System Administrator, Account Management, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner, Developer

By default, an Organization can access the Account's stylesheets. These are all read-only.

You can perform a "Save as..." on each of these so in that you can edit the new versions and also assign them to nominated libraries.




This is the way to populate both Libraries and Organizations with bespoke stylesheets. Once you have saved a stylesheet, you can edit its properties (double-click on item in the list or use the edit Action):



All of the values of the Properties of the Named Styles and Typed Styles are clickable and editable. You can also add and delete styles and properties and even edit the XML (though do not attempt to do so unless you know what you are doing). The Edit Style Sheet function is very powerful.

# Maintaining Custom Types

### Custom Types

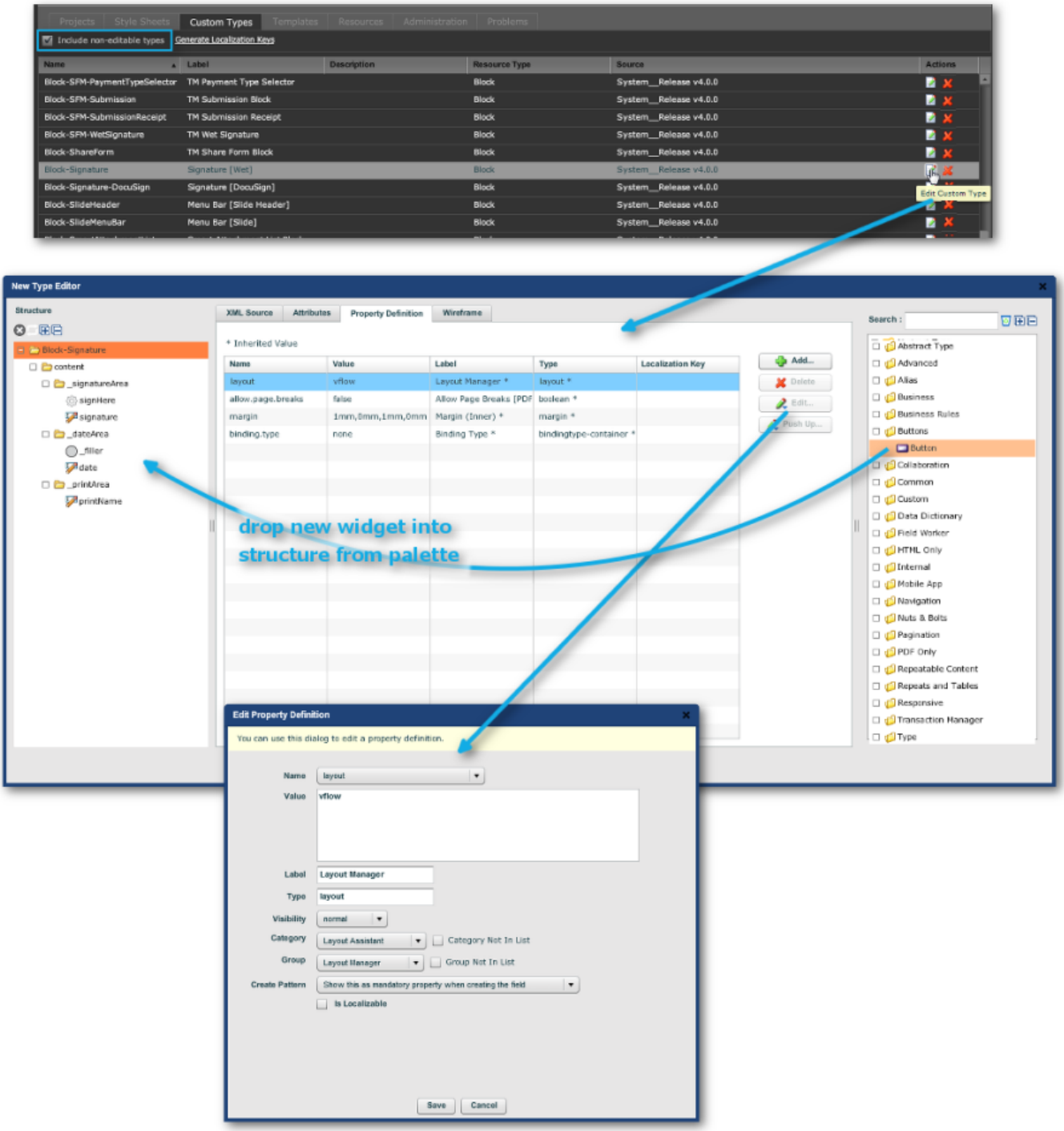
**Location:** Workspace -> <Organization> -> Custom Types tab
or
**Location:** Workspace -> <Library> -> Custom Types tab
**Required Permissions:**MODULE_MGMT
**Roles:**Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner, Developer.

Custom Types, in the context of Library administration, refers to the members of the Widget Palette of the Form Designer (see the Transact Composer 4.0 Guide). There are 2 types of Custom Types:

- **Non-editable** Custom Typesthe standard members of the Widget Palette. You cannot access the type editor for these types.
- **Editable** Custom Typeswhich are your saved types. These will only be saved to the internal library of the organization with an additional type not relevant here:

- **Localization Keys** used for the Internationalization of forms. This is not really an administration task, and so is covered in the Composer Online Documentation.

When you are allowed to edit a custom type, you will be able to access the "Type Editor,




The **Create Pattern** dropdown menu in the Edit Property Definition dialog defines whether:

- The property appears or does not appear in the wizard when the custom Type is dropped onto the structure panel of forms
- and if it does appear in the wizard. whether the property is marked mandatory or not.

Here are the other tabs in the editor:

Note that the XML Source updates on-the-fly
For most Custom Types, you will only be able to view the XML source in a read-only window.

# Maintaining Templates

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> | <Library> -> Templates tab
**Required Permisions:**TEMPLATE_MGMT
**Roles:**System Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner

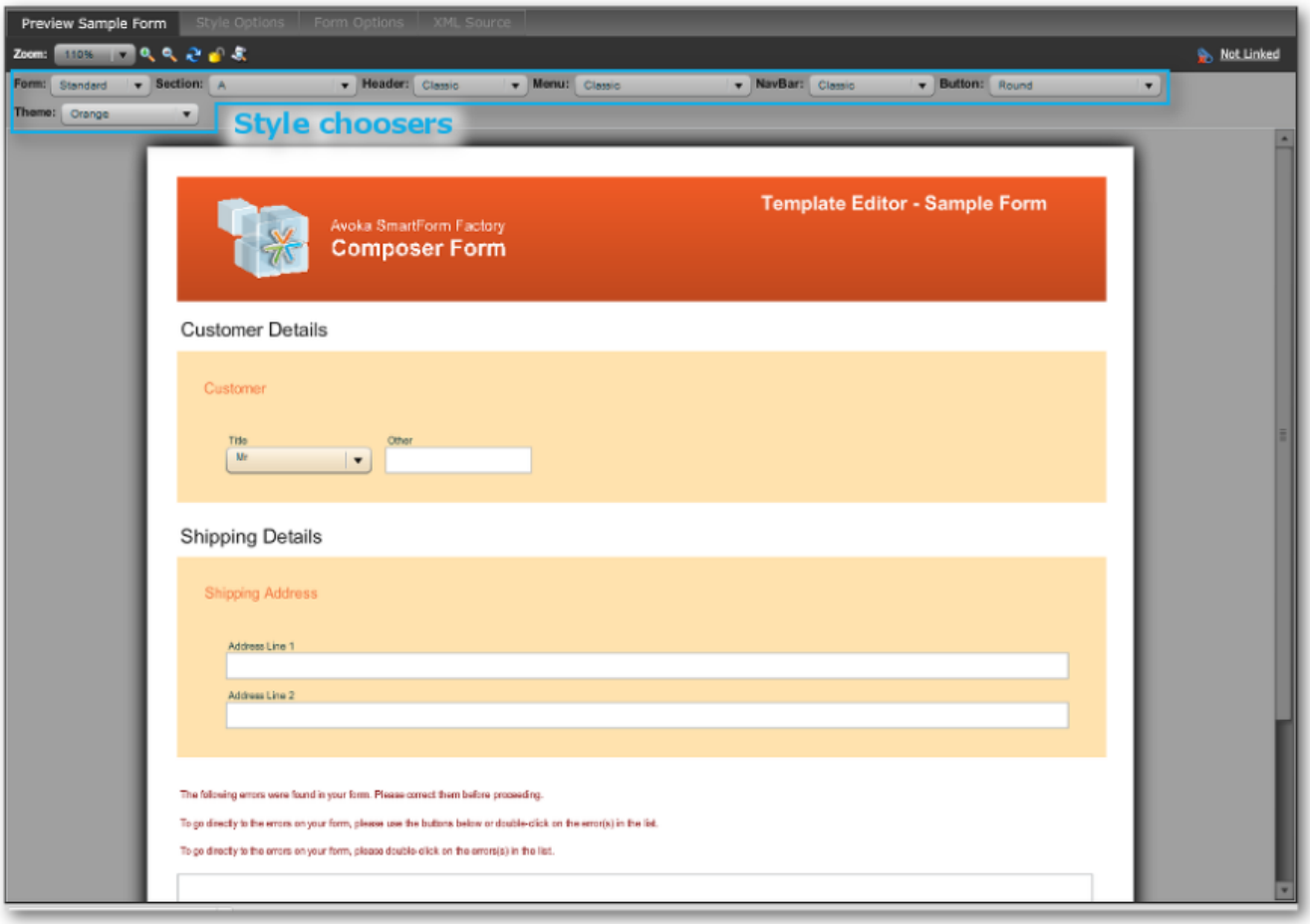
You need to create a new template in the Template tab in order to edit it, just as with stylesheets.

The wizard to do so has you base the new template on an already existing one.

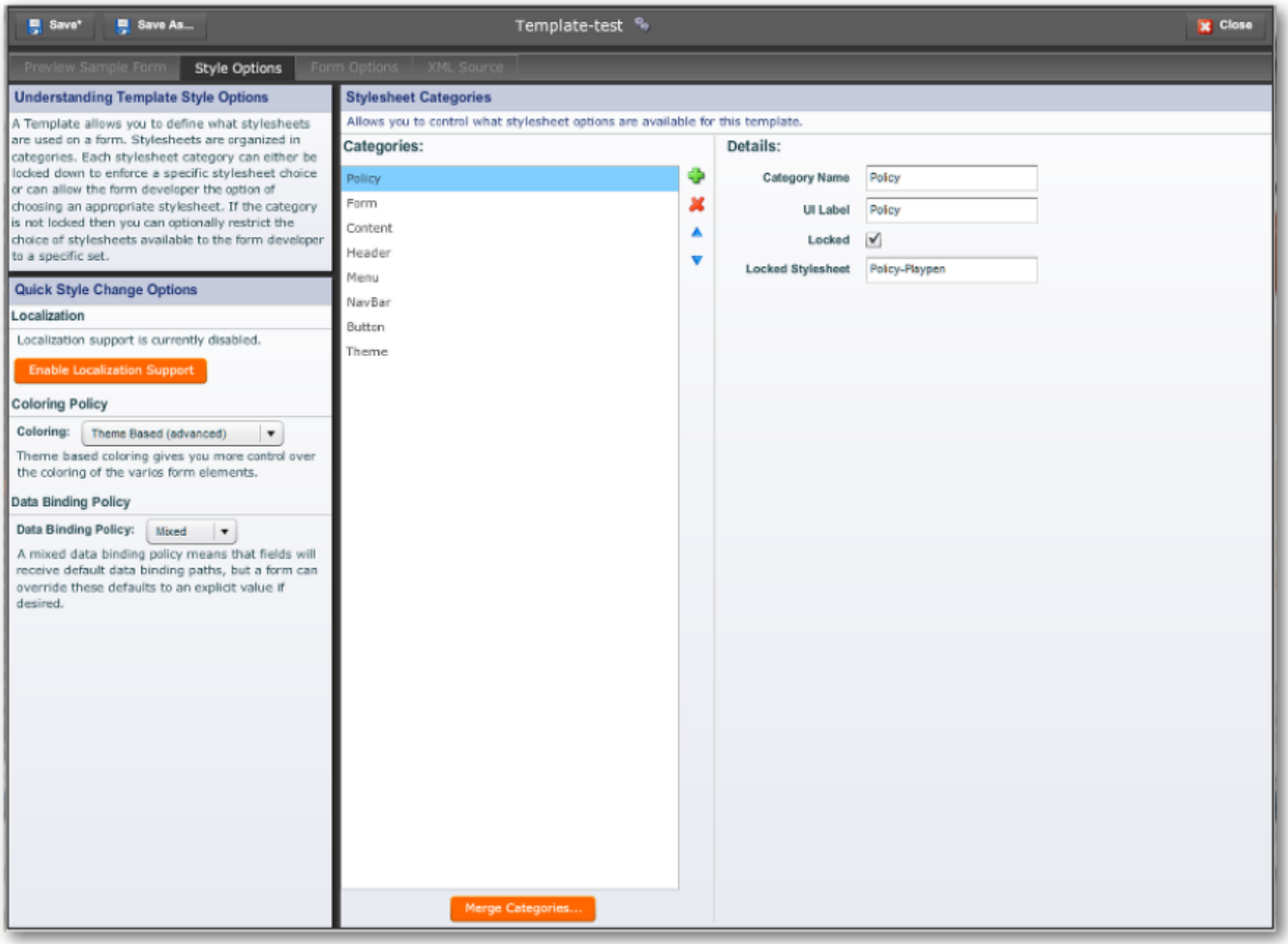
Your choice of base template is restricted to the templates already assigned to the Organization. With the new template saved, you can then invoke the "Edit" action. The template designer has 4 tabs:

1Preview Sample Form
2.Style Options
3.XML Source

### *Preview Sample Form*




### *Style Options*




This part of the system is where you can attach or delete whole stylesheet categories (see Custom Types) to the template.

The Quick Style Change Options panel allows three simple settings:

- Turning Localization on or off (see Custom Types below).
- Setting the Coloring Policy to

o Palette Based (simple)where there is a "Color" dropdown in the Style Choosers marked "Color" and the end user chooses "Blue", "Green", "Gray", and so forth.

o Theme Based (advanced)where there is now a "Theme" dropdown and the changes to the appearance of the template are more extensive

o Custom (do it yourself)where policy is defined in the XML. Only for the experienced.

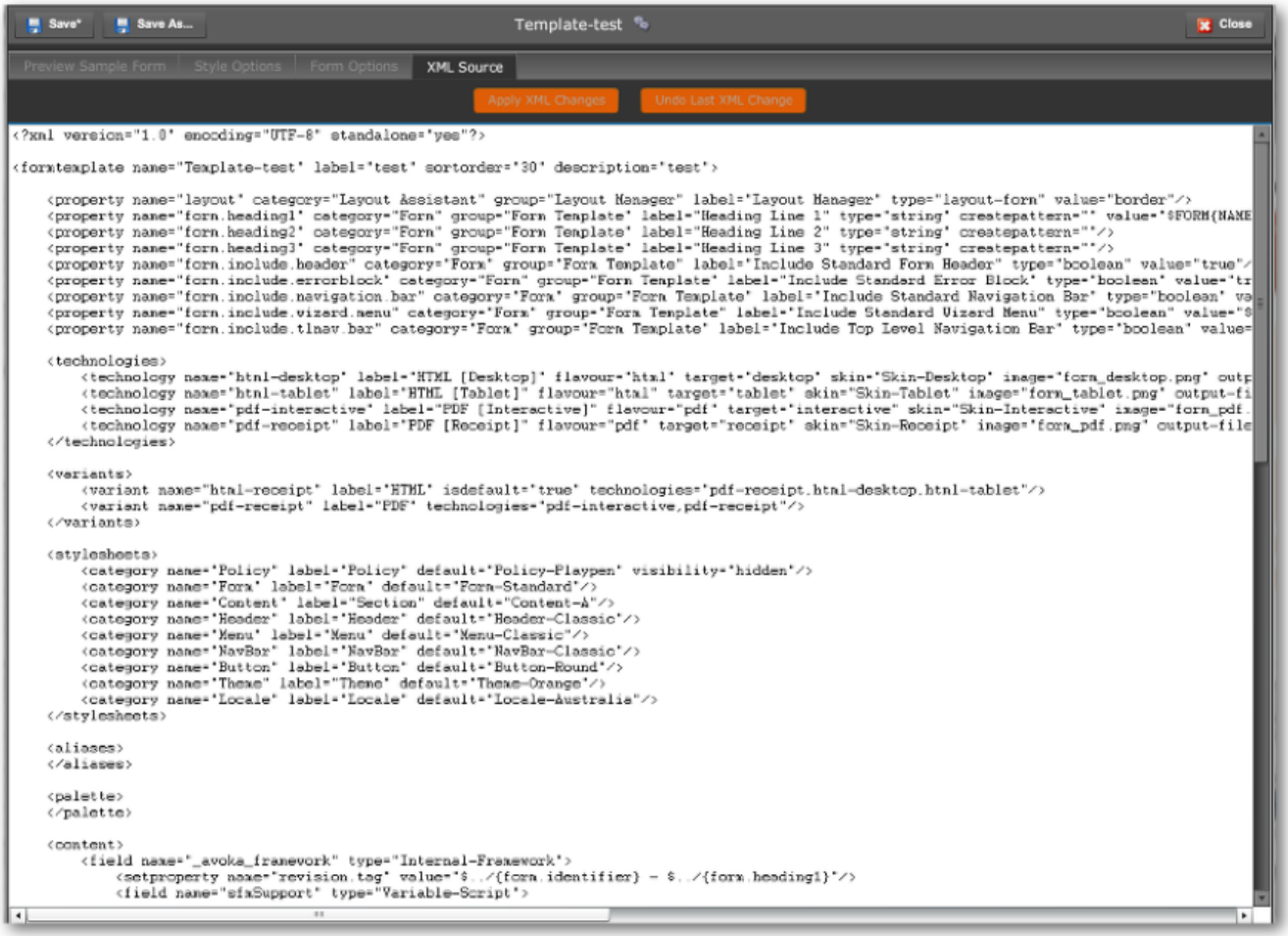
The Data Binding Policy has 2 settings:

- Mixed where designers have the option of altering the data binding of elements in the Structure Panel of Form Designer.

- Explicit where designers cannot alter data binding for any element.

The Stylesheet Categories panel is currently read-only,

***XML Source***

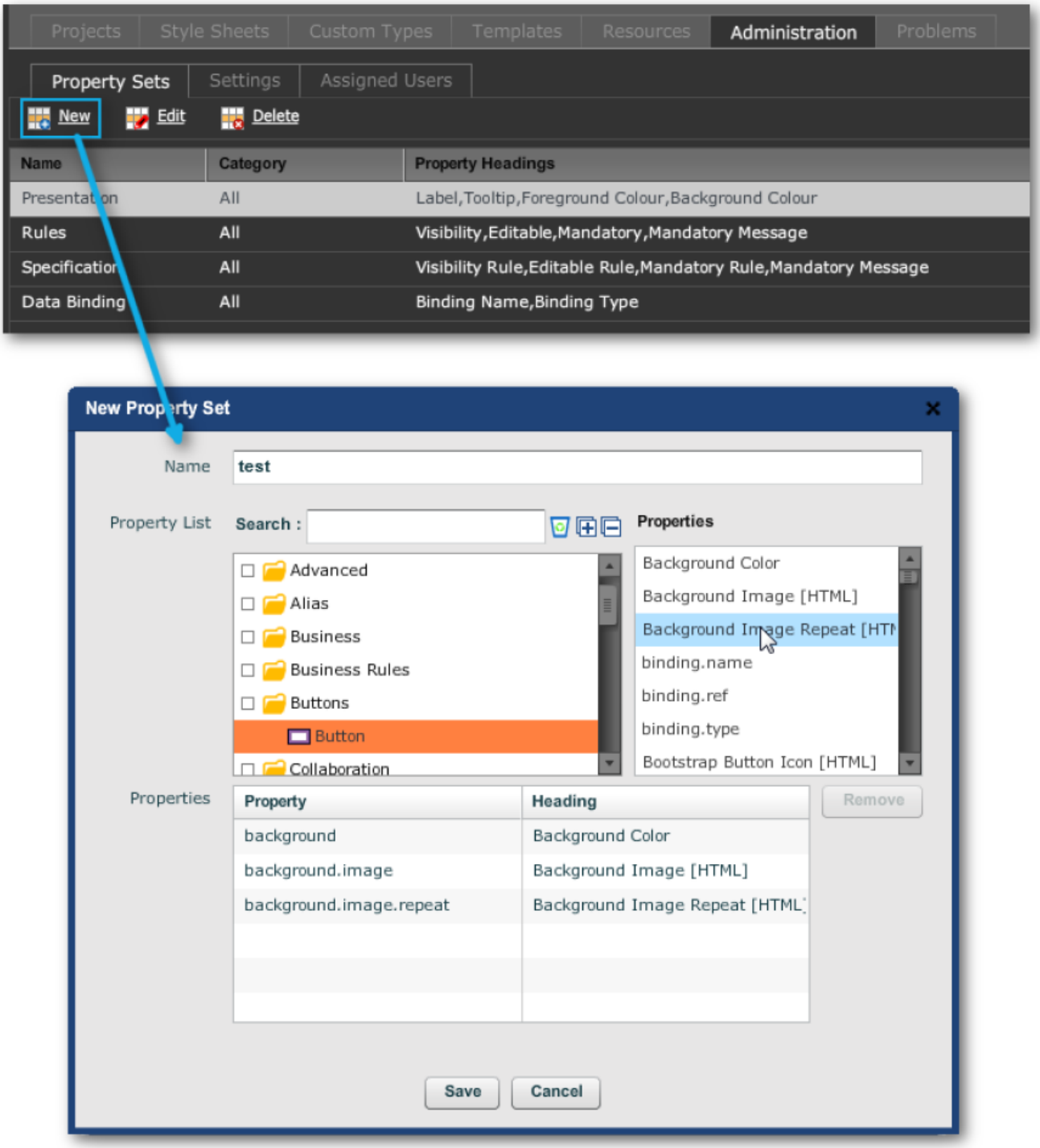



# Assigning Libraries

# Maintaining Property Sets

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> Administration tab -> Property Sets tab
**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Adminisatration, Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner




Property sets allow you to group the Properties of various Custom Types together into convenient sets. You can see some of the default sets in the above screen grab: Presentation, Rules, Data Binding and so forth.

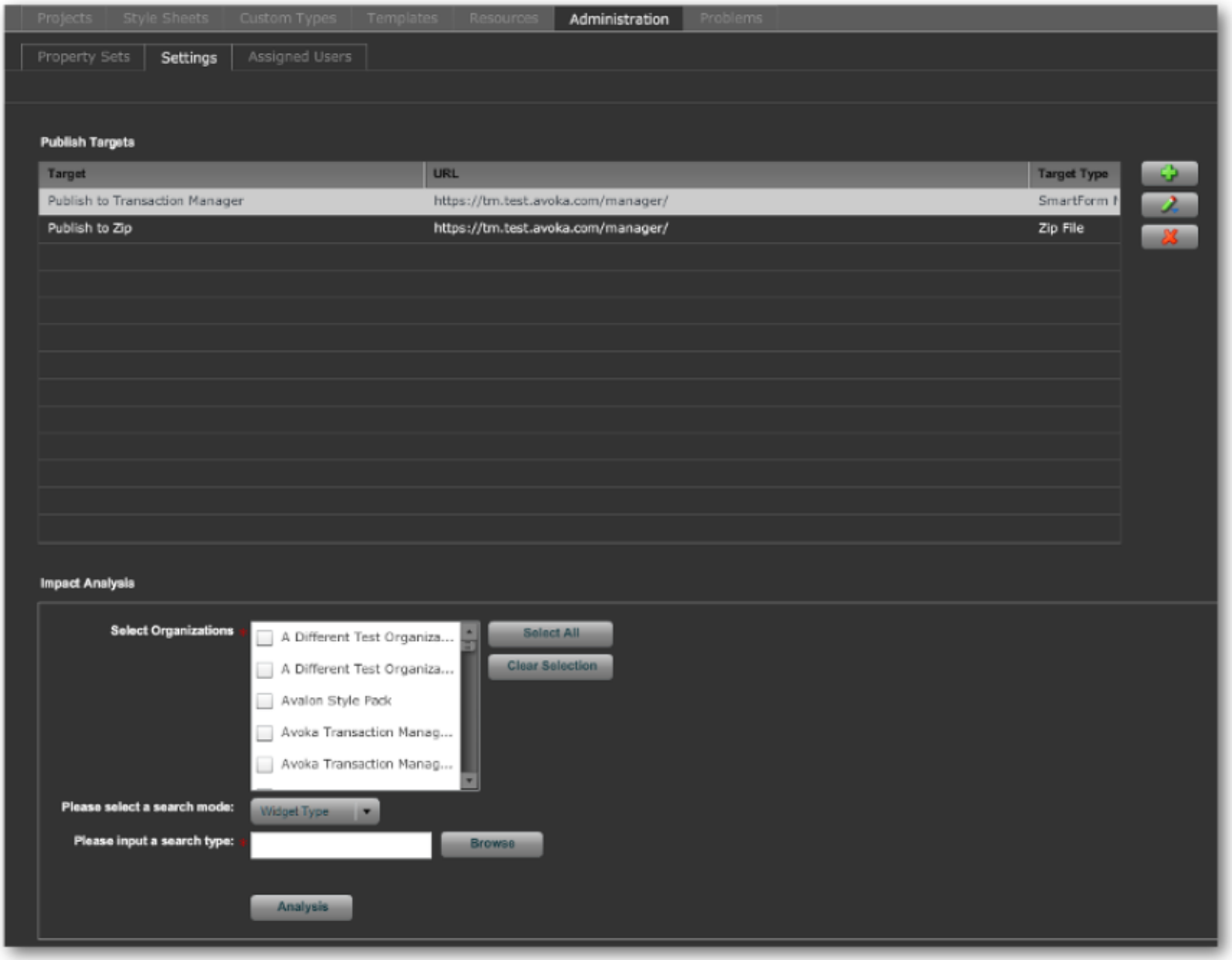
# Publishing & Impact Analysis

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> Administration tab -> Settings tab
**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administration, Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner

This panel allows 2 functions

1. Set the publish targets
2. Run an impact analysis that will report on specified search criteria in the organization




### Publish Targets

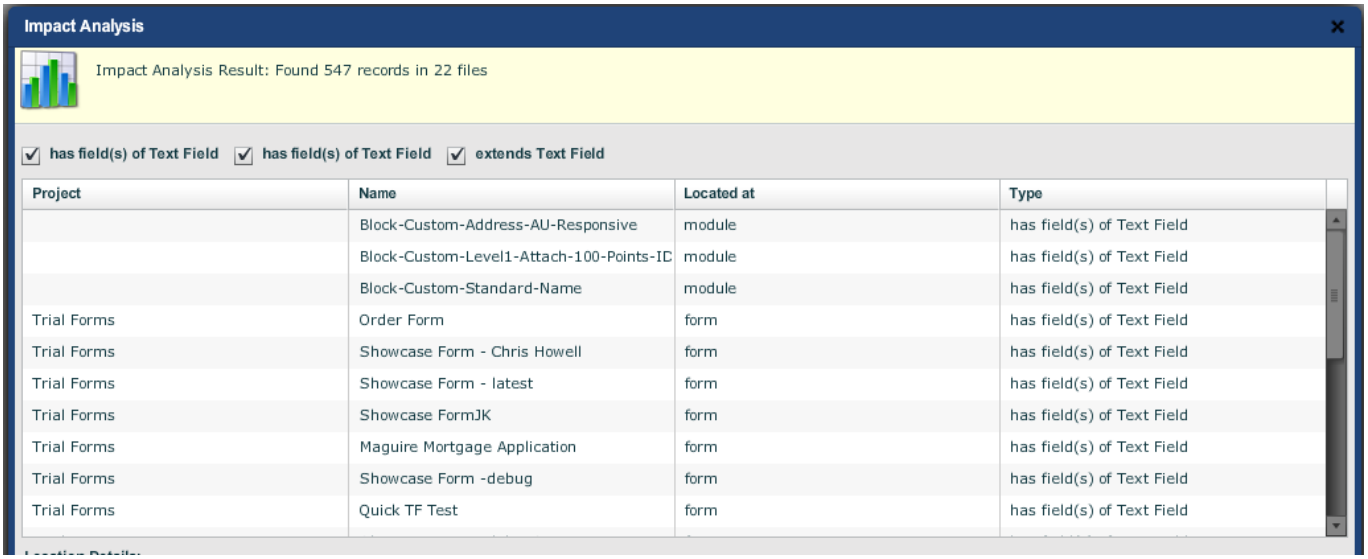
The **Publish Targets** panel allows you to set the default options for the Organization. These options will be presented to end-users whenever they publish forms to Transaction Manager. Here you can define targets - combinations of different instances of TM as defined by their URLs and of target types (i.e. either zip files for uploading to TM or Composer Form packages posted online to the TM nominated instance).

### Impact Analysis

The Impact Analysis panel produces a report on the impact of various elements on selected Organizations. You can nominate which search mode: whether on **Widget Type**, **Template** or **Stylesheet**.

The resultant read-only report lists the hits by **Project** and **(Form) Name**.

The example below shows a search on Widget Type "Text Field". The result shows all the organizational assets that contain a "Text field".



# Creating Users

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Composer supports two tiers of user: Client and System.

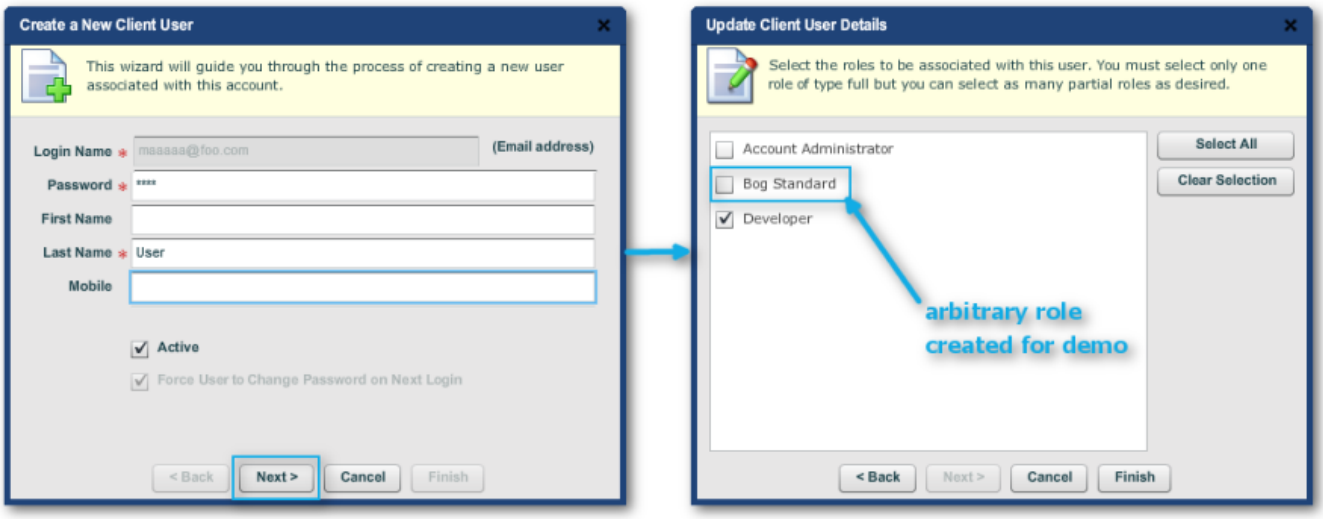
- Client Tier who can only see read-only Accounts designated "Public Accounts" and the one Account to which they have been allocated.
- System Tier who can access one or more non-public accounts and who in general have more powerful roles than the Client Tier.

**Client Tier Users**

**Location:** Workspace -> <account> -> Users tab
**Required Permissions:**USER_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Account Administrator,

Client tier users can be created only at this location.

Use the "Users (tab) -> Create New User" link (see here) to access the "Create a New Client User" wizard:



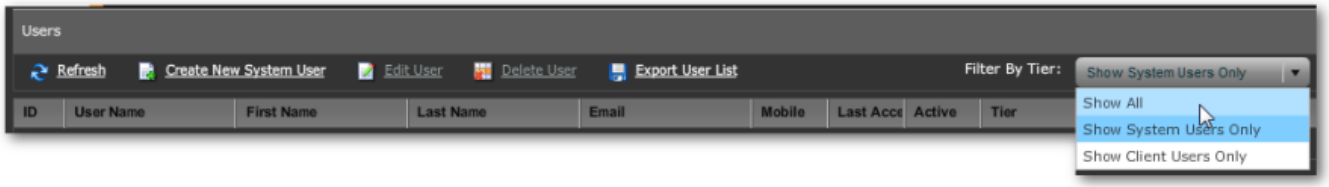
When you progress to the next part of the wizard, choose the role or roles for the user you are creating. Please refer to Creating Roles on how to define roles.

Here, we have created an arbitrary role for the sake of the demo.

The non-System user you create here at the Account level also appears in System -> Access Control and can then be assigned to this, or some other account, through System -> Account Management.

**System Tier Users**

**Location:** System -> Access Control -> Users
**Required Permissions:**SYSTEM_USER_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator

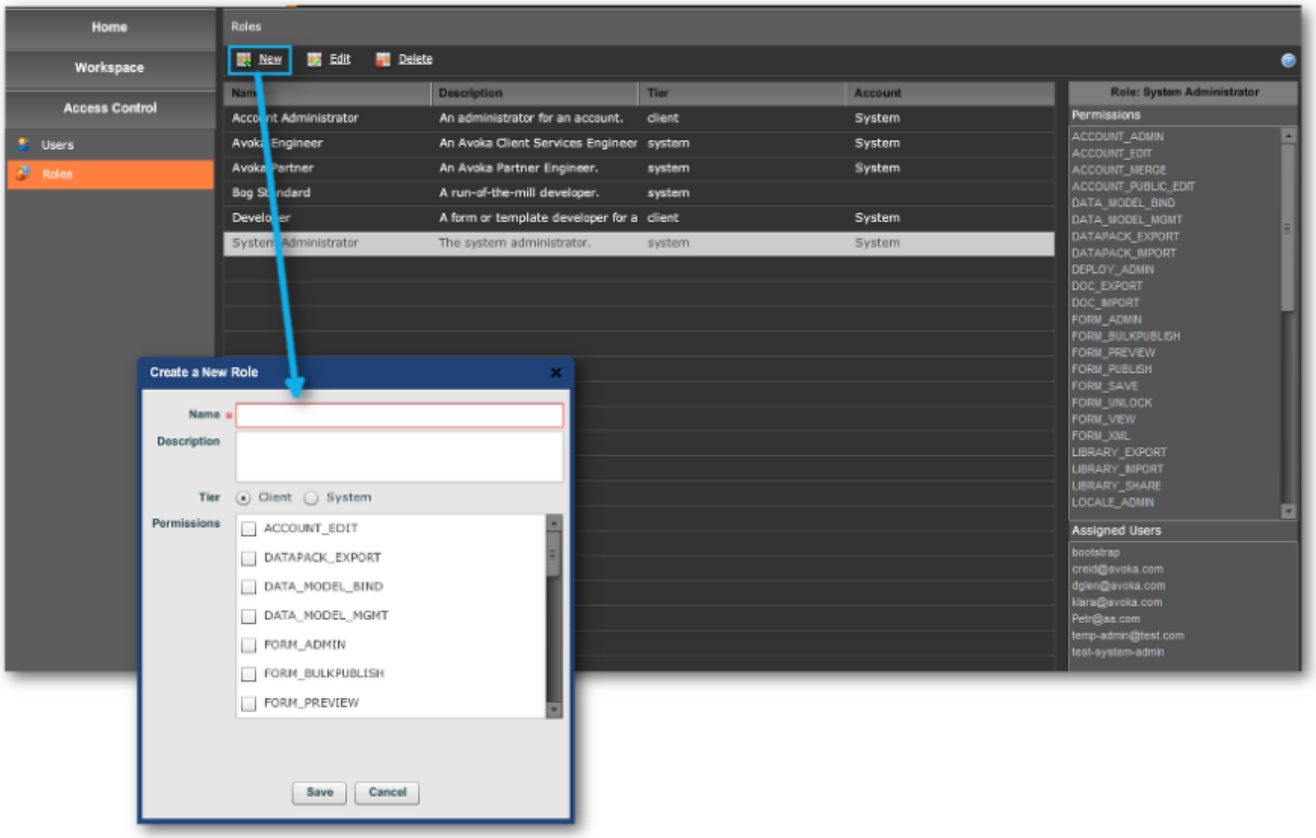



The "Create New System User" link invokes the same wizard as in Client Tier Users, and you also get to assign a role to the user.

# Creating Roles

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** Access Control -> Roles
**Required Permissions:**SYSTEM_ROLE_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator




There are two tiers of user: Client and System.

- Client Tier who can only see those read-only Accounts designated "Public Accounts" and the one Account to which they have been allocated.
- System Tier who may also see other non-public accounts and who in general have more powerful roles than the Client Tier.

You also decide the permissions to allocate to each role. You actually have quite a lot of control as there are many permission items to choose from. Here are the default System roles that ship with the product:

| Permission | Description |
|---|---|
| ACCOUNT_ ADMIN | Allows access to the account and organization management panes, creation/deletion/editing of account info. |
| ACCOUNT_EDIT | Allows editing of account meta data (display name,etc). |
| ACCOUNT_ MERGE | Allows merging of accounts. |
| ACCOUNT_ PUBLIC_EDIT | Allows writing to public organizations and accounts. |
| DATA_ DICTIONARY_ BIND | Allows binding of form fields to the data dictionary. |
| DATA_ DICTIONARY_ MGMT | Allows creation and maintenance of the organization level data dictionary. |
| DATA_ DICTIONARY_ STATUS | Allows status changes of data dictionary elements. |
| DATA_MODEL_ BIND | Allows binding of form fields to the data model. |
| DATA_MODEL_ MGMT | Allows creation/deletion and editing of data connections, uploading and deleting of seed files. |
| DATAPACK_ EXPORT | Allows exporting system datapacks. |
| DATAPACK_ IMPORT | Allows importing system datapacks. |
| DEPLOY_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion/editing of deployment properties. |
| DOC_EXPORT | Allows exporting documentation datapacks. |
| DOC_IMPORT | Allows importing documentation datapacks. |
| FORM_ADMIN | Allows viewing form statistics, generating form spec information. |
| FORM_ BULKPUBLISH | Allows bulk publishing of forms. |
| FORM_PREVIEW | Allows previewing of forms, access to artifacts pane. |
| FORM_PUBLISH | Allows publishing of forms. |
| FORM_SAVE | Allows editing and saving of forms, creation and management of |

| | |
|---|---|
| | form revisions. |
| FORM_UNLOCK | Allows unlocking of forms locked by other users, allows opening (but not saving) of forms locked by other users. |
| FORM_VIEW | Allows viewing and opening of forms (but not saving/preview). |
| FORM_XML | Allows viewing and saving of form xml. |
| LIBRARY_EXPORT | Allows exporting of account libraries. |
| LIBRARY_IMPORT | Allows importing client libraries. |
| LIBRARY_SHARE | Allows sharing of a library (or patch) with another account. |
| LOCALE_ADMIN | Allows generation and uploading of localized property files, generation of localization keys |
| LOCALE_ AUTOTRANSLATE | Allows use of auto translation tools. |
| MODULE_MGMT | Allows creation/deletion and editing of custom widgets/blocks, allows creating custom widgets and blocks from within a form. |
| NEWS_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion/editing of welcome screen news. |
| ORGANIZATION_ ADMIN | Allows editing organization meta data and search paths, upgrading to a release/servicepack, deleting, renaming, creating, moving and copying organizations, managing organization property sets. |
| ORGANIZATION_ EXPORT | Allows exporting user organizations. |
| ORGANIZATION_ IMPORT | Allows importing user organizations. |
| PATCH_EXPORT | Allows exporting patches. |
| PATCH_IMPORT | Allows importing patches. |
| PROJECT_ADMIN | Allows creation and deletion of projects, restricting access of users and templates to projects. |
| RELEASE_ADMIN | Allows access to the release management pane, editing release meta data, toggling release active state, bulk organisation release upgrades. |
| RELEASE_ EXPORT | Allows exporting releases. |

| | |
|---|---|
| RELEASE_IMPORT | Allows importing releases. |
| RESOURCE_MGMT | Allows uploading/deleting resources. |
| ROLE_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion of roles for an account. |
| SERVICEPACK_EXPORT | Allows exporting servicepacks. |
| SERVICEPACK_IMPORT | Allows importing servicepacks. |
| STYLESHEET_MGMT | Allows creation/deletion and editing of stylesheets, allows push to stylesheet from within a form. |
| SYSTEM_FORM_DEBUG | Allows use of debug versions of system script libraries. |
| SYSTEM_FORM_PREVIEW | Allows system wide previewing of forms. |
| SYSTEM_FORM_PUBLISH | Allows system wide publishing and bulk publishing of forms. |
| SYSTEM_FORM_VIEW | Allows system wide viewing of forms. |
| SYSTEM_LOG_VIEW | Allows access to system level log files. |
| SYSTEM_ROLE_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion of system level roles. |
| SYSTEM_USER_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion of system level users and creation of user list. |
| TEMPLATE_MGMT | Allows creation/deletion of templates. |
| TIPS_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion/editing of quick help tips. |
| USER_ADMIN | Allows creation/deletion of users for an account. |

And here is the list of permissions for these predefined roles.:

| Role | Permissions |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| System Administrator | ACCOUNT_ADMIN<br>ACCOUNT_EDIT<br>ACCOUNT_MERGE<br>ACCOUNT_PUBLIC_EDIT<br>DATA_MODEL_BIND<br>DATA_MODEL_MGMT<br>DATAPACK_EXPORT<br>DATAPACK_IMPORT<br>DEPLOY_ADMIN<br>DOC_EXPORT<br>DOC_IMPORT<br>FORM_ADMIN<br>FORM_BULKPUBLISH<br>FORM_PREVIEW<br>FORM_PUBLISH<br>FORM_SAVE<br>FORM_UNLOCK<br>FORM_VIEW<br>FORM_XML<br>LIBRARY_EXPORT<br>LIBRARY_IMPORT<br>LIBRARY_SHARE<br>LOCALE_ADMIN<br>LOCALE_AUTOTRANSLATE<br>MODULE_MGMT<br>NEWS_ADMIN<br>ORGANIZATION_ADMIN<br>ORGANIZATION_EXPORT<br>ORGANIZATION_IMPORT<br>PATCH_EXPORT<br>PATCH_IMPORT<br>PROJECT_ADMIN<br>RELEASE_ADMIN<br>RELEASE_EXPORT<br>RELEASE_IMPORT<br>RESOURCE_MGMT |

| | |
|---|---|
| Account Administrator | SERVICEPACK_EXPORT<br>SERVICEPACK_IMPORT<br>STYLESHEET_MGMT<br>SYSTEM_FORM_DEBUG<br>SYSTEM_FORM_PREVIEW<br>SYSTEM_FORM_PUBLISH<br>SYSTEM_FORM_VIEW<br>SYSTEM_LOG_VIEW<br>SYSTEM_ROLE_ADMIN<br>SYSTEM_USER_ADMIN<br>TEMPLATE_MGMT<br>TIPS_ADMIN<br>USER_ADMIN<br>DATA_MODEL_BIND<br>DATA_MODEL_MGMT<br>FORM_ADMIN<br>FORM_BULKPUBLISH<br>FORM_PREVIEW<br>FORM_PUBLISH<br>FORM_SAVE<br>FORM_UNLOCK<br>FORM_VIEW<br>FORM_XML<br>LIBRARY_EXPORT<br>LIBRARY_IMPORT<br>LOCALE_ADMIN<br>LOCALE_AUTOTRANSLATE<br>MODULE_MGMT<br>ORGANIZATION_ADMIN<br>ORGANIZATION_EXPORT<br>ORGANIZATION_IMPORT<br>PROJECT_ADMIN<br>RESOURCE_MGMT<br>STYLESHEET_MGMT<br>USER_ADMIN |

| | |
|---|---|
| Avoka Engineer | DATA_MODEL_BIND<br>DATA_MODEL_MGMT<br>DATAPACK_EXPORT<br>FORM_ADMIN<br>FORM_BULKPUBLISH<br>FORM_PREVIEW<br>FORM_PUBLISH<br>FORM_SAVE<br>FORM_UNLOCK<br>FORM_VIEW<br>FORM_XML<br>LIBRARY_EXPORT<br>LIBRARY_IMPORT<br>LIBRARY_SHARE<br>LOCALE_ADMIN<br>LOCALE_AUTOTRANSLATE<br>MODULE_MGMT<br>ORGANIZATION_ADMIN<br>ORGANIZATION_EXPORT<br>ORGANIZATION_IMPORT<br>PATCH_EXPORT<br>PROJECT_ADMIN<br>RELEASE_EXPORT<br>RESOURCE_MGMT<br>SERVICEPACK_EXPORT<br>STYLESHEET_MGMT<br>SYSTEM_FORM_DEBUG<br>TEMPLATE_MGMT<br>USER_ADMIN |
| Avoka Partner | DATA_MODEL_BIND<br>DATA_MODEL_MGMT<br>DATAPACK_EXPORT<br>FORM_ADMIN<br>FORM_BULKPUBLISH<br>FORM_PREVIEW<br>FORM_PUBLISH |

| | |
|---|---|
| | FORM_SAVE |
| | FORM_UNLOCK |
| | FORM_VIEW |
| | FORM_XML |
| | LIBRARY_EXPORT |
| | LIBRARY_IMPORT |
| | LIBRARY_SHARE |
| | LOCALE_ADMIN |
| | LOCALE_AUTOTRANSLATE |
| | MODULE_MGMT |
| | ORGANIZATION_ADMIN |
| | ORGANIZATION_EXPORT |
| | ORGANIZATION_IMPORT |
| | PATCH_EXPORT |
| Developer | DATA_MODEL_BIND<br>DATA_MODEL_MGMT<br>FORM_PREVIEW<br>FORM_PUBLISH<br>FORM_SAVE<br>FORM_VIEW<br>FORM_XML<br>LOCALE_ADMIN<br>LOCALE_AUTOTRANSLATE<br>MODULE_MGMT<br>RESOURCE_MGMT<br>STYLESHEET_MGMT |

# Allocating Users

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**At the Account Level**

All client tier users are created at the Account level and are therefore assigned to that Account.

All system tier uses have access to all Accounts.

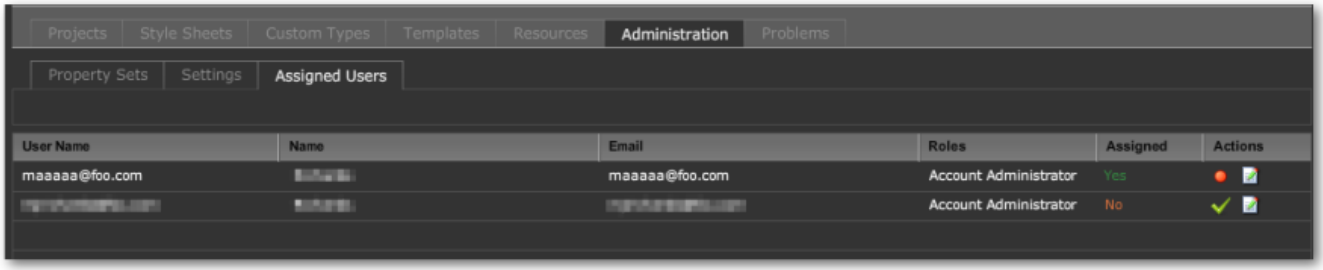
**At the Organization Level**

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> Assigned Users

**Required Permissions:**ORGANIZATION_ADMIN

**Roles:**System AdministratorAccount Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner

This location lists all the Account-level client tier users.




The left Action buttons can be either red (to block that user from any new Projects in the Organization) or a green check mark (to allow the user instead).

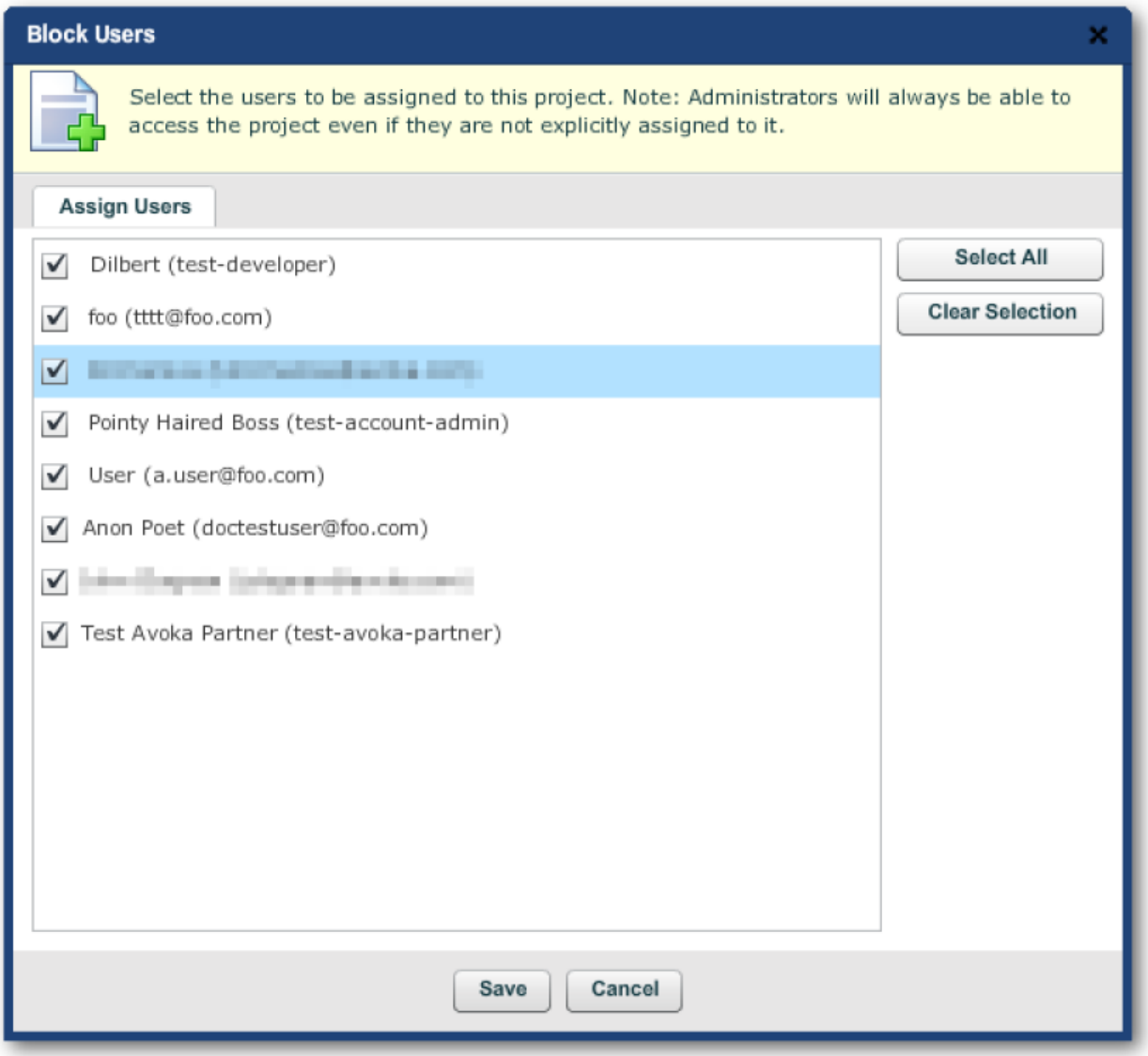
So, at this level, you do not assign users — you either block or unblock them.

**At the Project Level**

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> Project -> Assigned Users tab -> Assign Users link

**Required Permissions:**PROJECT_ADMIN

**Roles:**System Administrator, Account Administrator, Avoka Engineer, Avoka Partner

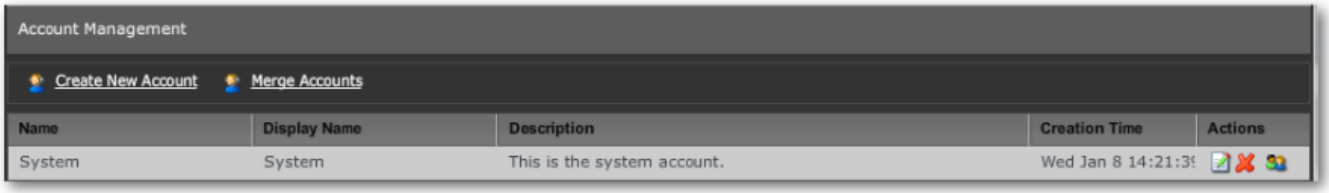



Or, you can use the Workspace -> <Account> -> <Organization> -> Project -> Assigned Users tab, which looks the same as that at the Organization level above.

# Creating New Accounts

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** System -> Account Management
**Required Permissions:**ACCOUNT_PUBLIC_EDIT, ACCOUNT_ADMIN, ACCOUNT_EDIT, ACCOUNT_MERGE
**Roles:**System Administrator



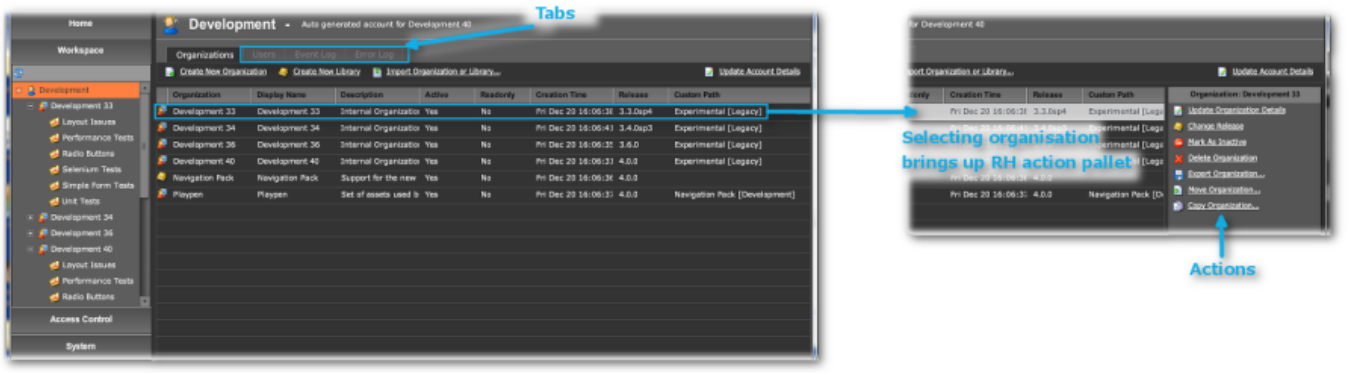

This is the only place in Composer where you can create an Account. You supply the Name, the Display Name and Description for the account.

Use the Actions to edit these properties, to delete the account and assign **System Users** to the account.

Again, this is the only place in Composer where these can be done.

Once an Account has been created, its Account level of the Workspace looks like this:

**Location:** Workspace -> <Account>



# Deployment Properties Setting

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

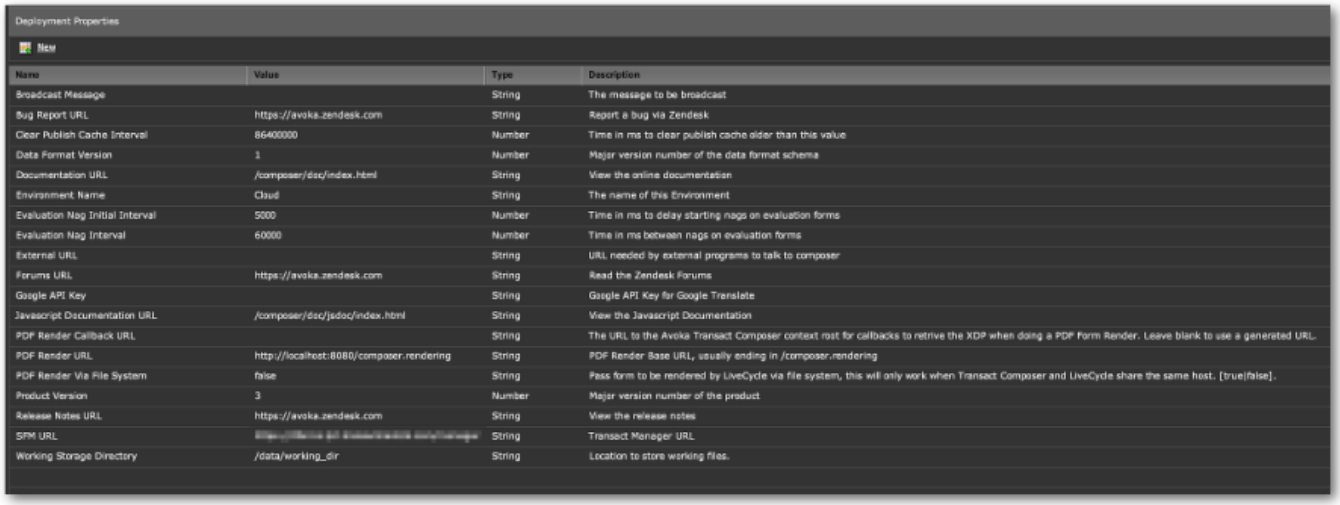
Composer comes with a set of deployments properties that you can use as they are or edit them as required.

Location: System -> Deployment Properties

Required Permissions: DEPLOY_ADMIN

Roles:System Administrator

The System -> Deployment page lists the parameters of the Composer deployment. The parameters are editable. Some of them are shown below:




Here are a few examples how to make use of these properties.

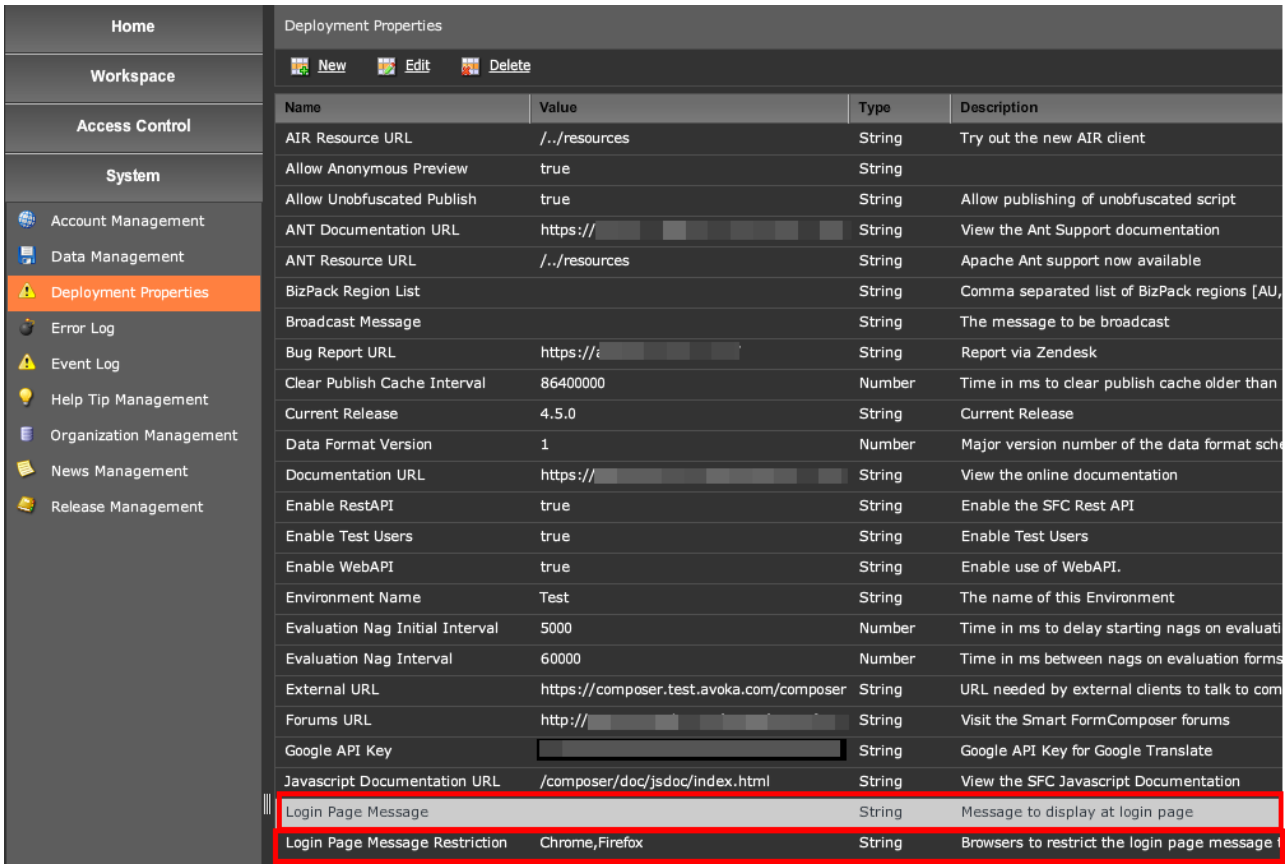
## Display Important Information on the Composer Login Page

When you need to display some important information to Composer users, the best places to do so is on the user log in screen.

To configure a login screen message:

1. Edit the Login Page Message deployment property with your message text and formatting.

2. Update the Login Page Message Restriction with a list of comma separated browsers this message will be displayed on. Leave blank for all browsers or use the following list removing the browsers that are not wanted. Edge, IE, Chrome, Safari, Firefox




3. Check that the message appears on the login page as expected,

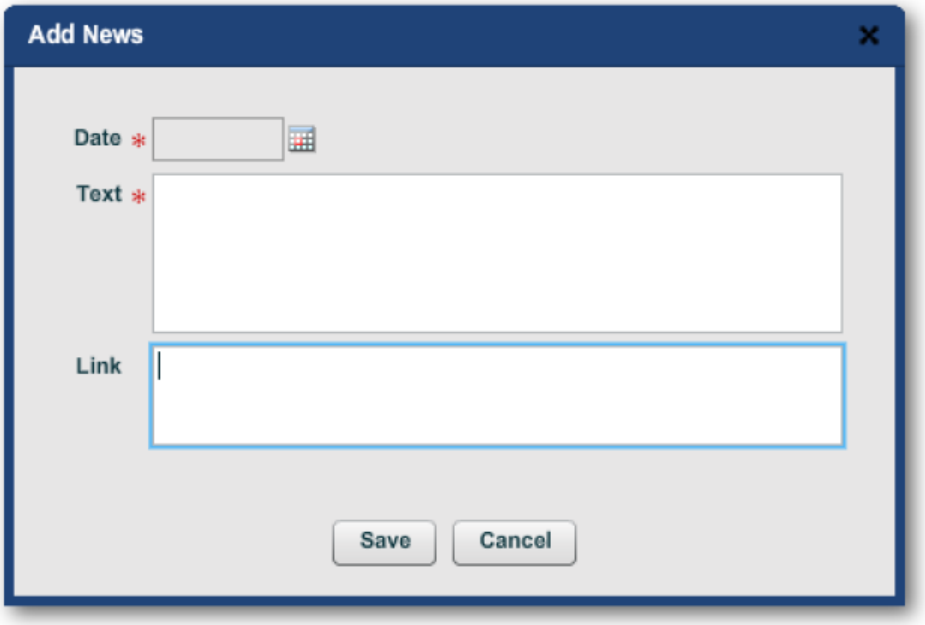
NOTE

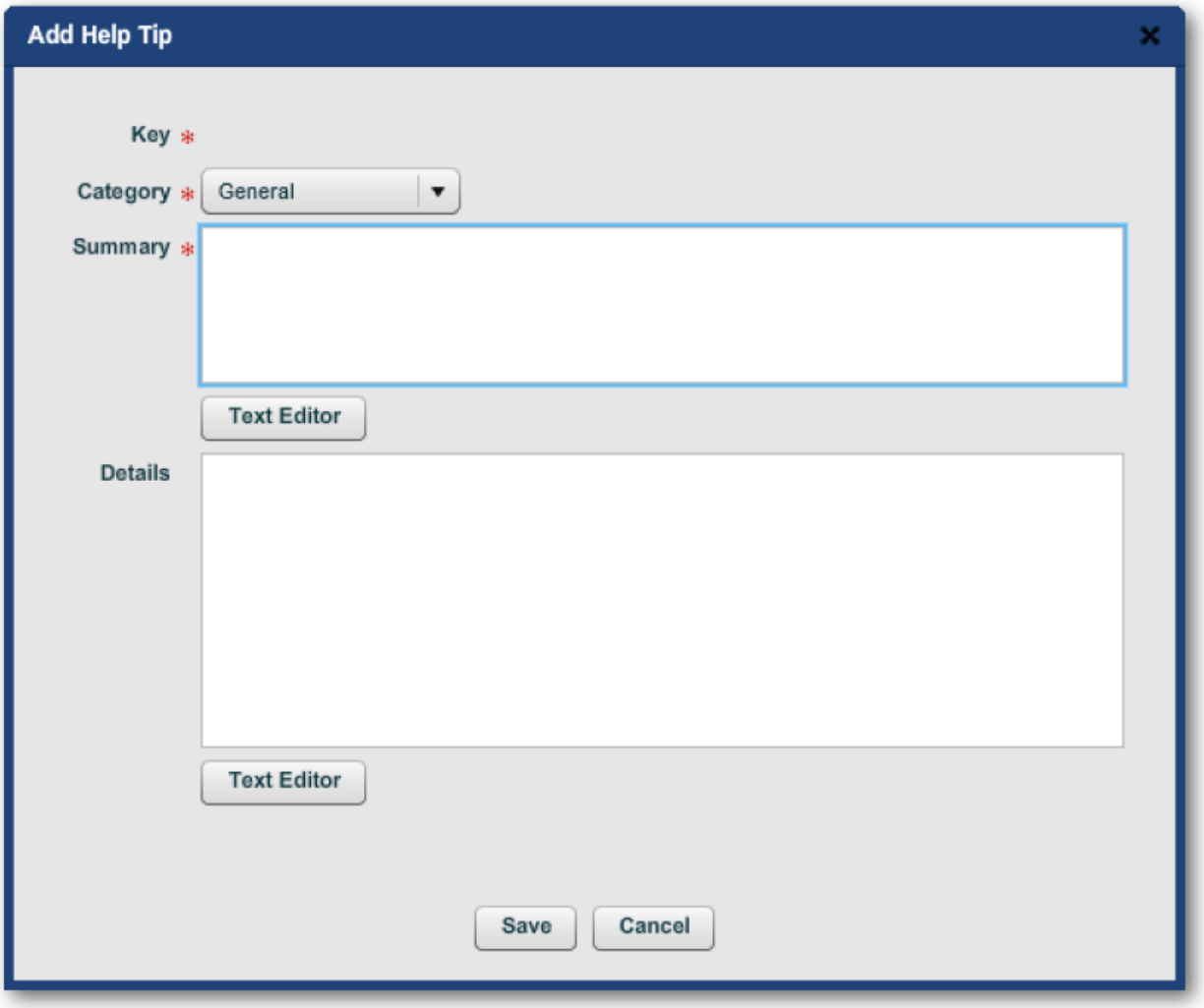
You have to have the above role and permission assigned to you to be able to see and edit this property.

# Maintaining Help, News, and Tips

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** System -> News Management
OR
**Location:** System -> Help Tip Management
**Required Permissions:** NEWS_ADMIN, TIPS_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator






Categories:

- General
- Data Dictionary

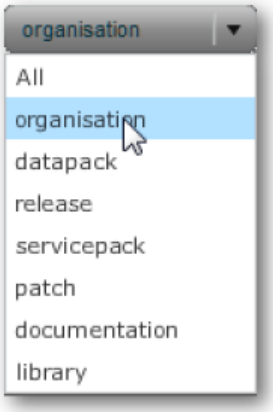
Text editors.
Import data: in XML file
Export as XML file downloaded to browser.

# Organization Management

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

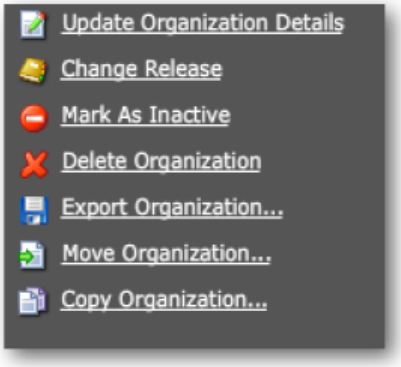
**Location:** System -> Organization Management
**Roles:**System Administration

Use this to administer Organizations, various Libraries, and everything else at the same level of the Workspace (see The Workspace). You can filter the list on the following types:




- **Organizations**
- **Data Packs** in other words, special customization packs
- **Releases**
- **Service Packs**
- **Patches**
- **Documentation** in other words, the online HTML help for an Account in the form of a flat .zip file
- **Libraries**

The Actions available on each item are:




Organizations can be exported as a .zip file, which is useful for importing Organizations to different environments.

The Copy function works within the one environment.

There is also a link (top left of the Organization Management page) to Import a previously-exported Organization.

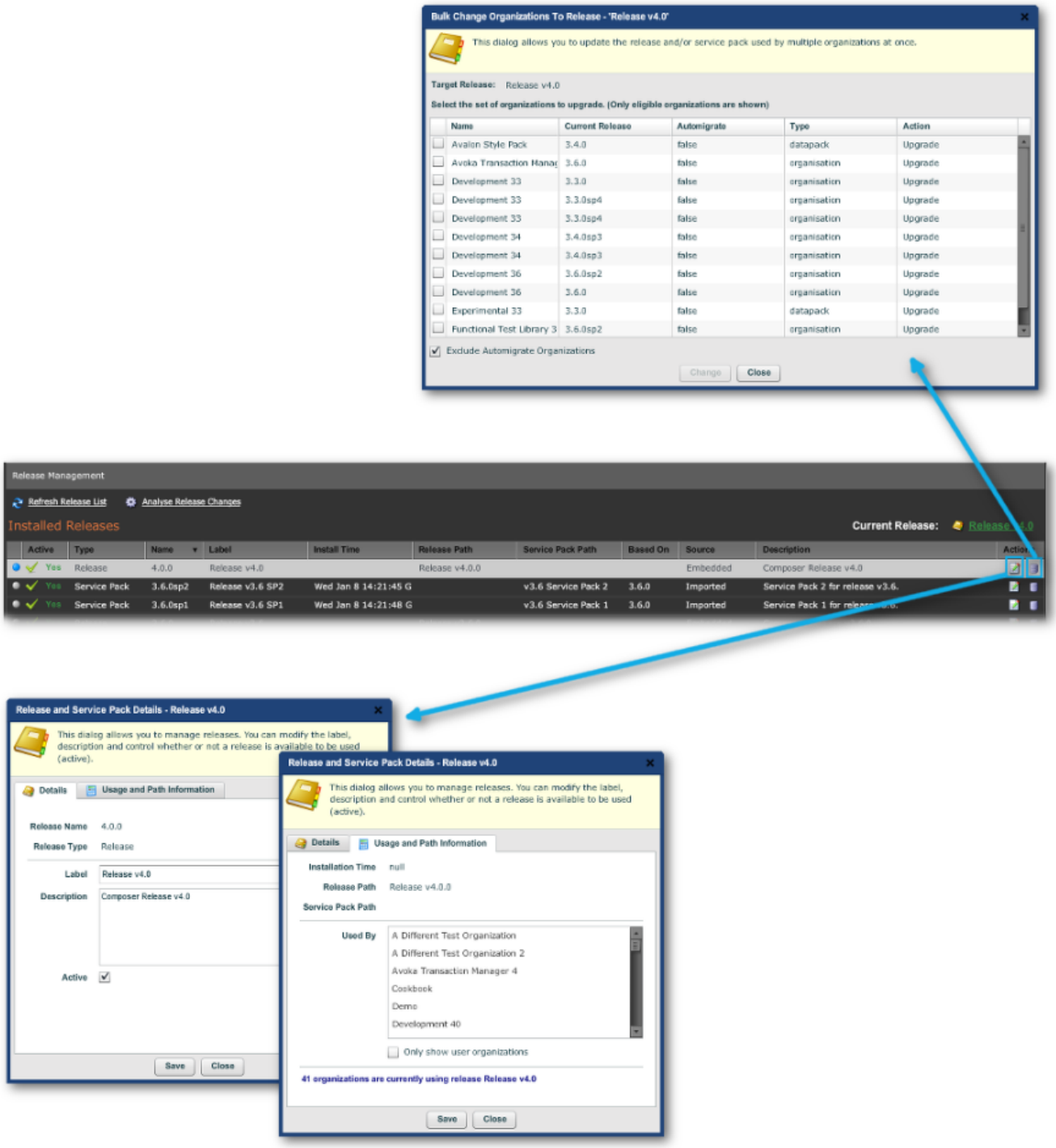
# Release Management

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** System -> Release Management
**Required Permissions:**RELEASE_ADMIN
**Roles:**System Administrator

When you create Organizations, you set their release compatibility with previous releases and whether the Organization migrates to new releases automatically or manually.

You can also alter the release settings for several Organizations in bulk.



# Viewing the Logs

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

**Location:** System -> Error Log
and
**Location:** System -> Event Log
**Required Permissions:**[ SYSTEM_LOG_VIEW|Creating Users#topic_Creating_Roles2SYSTEM_LOG_VIEW]
**Roles:** Avoka Administrator

There are 2 log sets:

- Error
- Event

The logs are listed in a table with these headings:

- ID
- Time
- Account
- Organization
- User Name
- Message

Double-clicking on each log entry brings up a dialog with these values and some others, namely for Errors:

- Context
- Solution
- Stack Trace

and for Events:

- Event Type

Both log listings can also be filtered on:

- Start and End times
- Account
- Organization
- User
- Message

There is no option in Composer for clearing these logs.

# Managed Datapacks

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

The Managed Datapack framework has been created to tie the version of shared datapacks to a composer release automatically. Datapacks such as Maguire reside in a shared datapack account and are not allocated directly to a client. Their allocation is controlled by a Managed datapack that contains the rules for which Maguire version should be used for each Composer release. According to the rules, the correct Maguire Pack version is added to the Organization's path automatically.

By centralizing the datapacks, deployment of new versions is simple because there is only the shared Datapack Account to update, rather than all the accounts on the environment.

The Managed Datapacks are subscribed at the account level. This allows organizations to add the managed datapack to their path if they wish to tie in the Composer version release with the compatible datapack release automatically.

## Background and strategic fit

Many organizations have adopted the Maguire styling and BizPacks resulting in the need to incorporate them into the composer framework to ensure backward compatibility is addressed and that testing ties in with Composer releases.

## Features of using Managed Datapacks

| # | Title | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Ability to tie datapacks to Composer releases | We require a way of linking composer releases with the correct version of Maguire or any other datapack like Bizpacks |
| 2 | Auto upgrade of datapacks | Organizations using Managed Datapacks need to be automatically upgraded to the compatible datapack release when the composer version is upgraded. |
| 3 | Allow for migration code to be run when updating datapacks. | When upgrading to a new version of a datapack such as Maguire, forms in the old version may require changes to make them compatible. This needs to be run automatically on upgrade. |

## User interaction and design

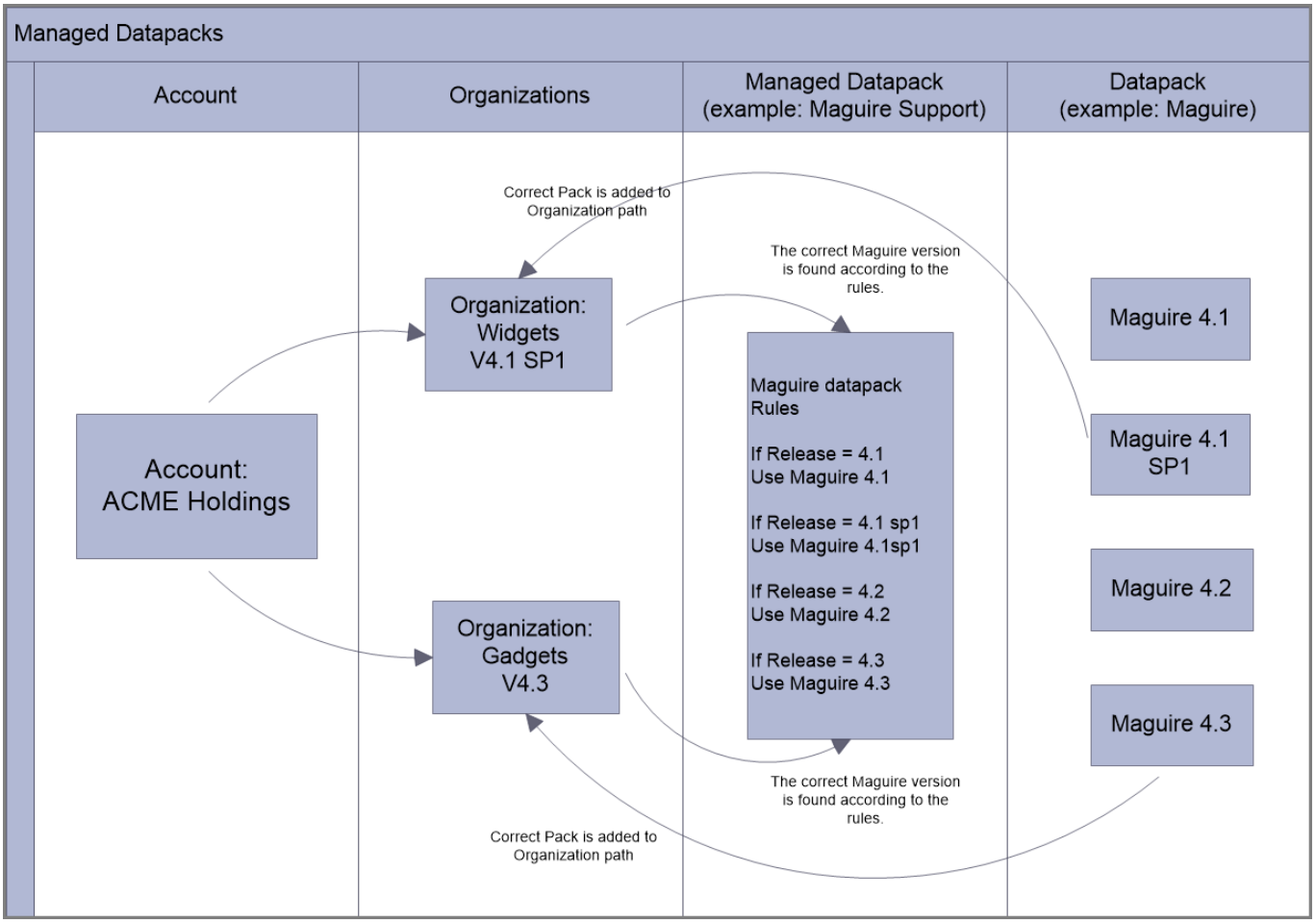
The following diagram illustrates where the managed datapacks reside and how they relate to accounts.

In this framework, the Maguire datapacks are not directly assigned to an organization. They still reside in a shared datapack account (Avoka Datapacks) but their allocation is controlled by the the Managed datapack that contains the rules for which Maguire version should be used for each Composer release. According to the rules, the correct Maguire Pack version is added to the organizational path automatically.

Versioning of Maguire Packs will be aligned with Composer releases.

The Managed Datapacks are subscribed at the account level. This allows organizations to add the managed datapack to their path if they wish to tie in the Composer version release with the compatible Maguire release automatically.

Note that it will still be possible to bypass this process and allocate the Maguire Packs directly **however this will need to be managed manually by the client and is NOT recommended in most cases.**




- Managed Datapacks.
  - These have no content just an organization.xml file
  - The descriptor in this file will contain release/service pack based rules for determining the actual datapack(s) to add the path.
  - Accounts will subscribe to the managed packs making them avaialble to organizations
  - Organizations can then add them to their path via the edit organization function.
- New Maguire releases will force a Composer service pack (or point) release even if there are no composer changes.

# Managed Support for BizPacks

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Bizpacks use the same Managed Datapack framework as Maguire. However there are some differences.

There are 4 Bizpack libraries that are tied to regions. Universal, AU, EU, US.

They reside in a shared datapack account called Avoka Bizpacks.

## Initial Allocation of Bizpack Support

For a new environment Bizpack Support allocation is determined by region. A deployment property in Composer => "BizPack Region List" defines the Bizpacks that will be automatically allocated to all accounts in the Composer instance.

All Accounts automatically subscribe to the universal Bizpack library. The regions are determined by the deployment property. The screen grab below is from a Composer environment that only had AU set up in the deployment property. On initial allocation the account "Client Orgs" has Universal BizPack and AU BizPack Support (Not EU or US). It is of course possible to allocate support to the other regions by selecting them in this dialog.

## Importing the Bundled Packs

The process described above is initiated by an Import function in the Release management Screen. By selecting this option "Import Bundled Packs" the process of setting up all the Bizpacks in their correct account and allocating the Bizpacks to accounts, based on the deployment property is initiated.

## Gaining Access to the BizPack Libraries

We have discussed how the Bizpack support packs are allocated to the Accounts. This only makes the packs available for use to all the organizations under the account. If the organization's release does not have an associated BizPack then nothing will be allocated until the org is upgraded.

When an existing organization is upgraded, the rules in the Bizpack Support Packs available to the account are checked. If the target release for the organization matches one of the rules then the correct Bizpack Support pack will be added to the organization's path.

The BizPack Support packs can also be added manually to the search path by selecting the Update Organization Details dialog and selecting the Plus Button. Only libraries allowed at the account level will be shown for selection. I the following screens only AU and Universal Bizpacks are shown because the Account does not have US and EU selected.

*Account only has Bizpack Universal and AU Support Selected*

*Organization can only allocate these Universal and AU Bizpacks until account setting allows EU and US*

It is possible for Organizations to be subscribed to all 4 Bizpacks.

If the Bizpacks are assigned to the Organization and the release version is Bizpack Compatible the palette will have a new folder called Bizpacks. This will contain all the widgets available in the assigned Bizpacks.

## Removing Access to the BizPack Datapacks

Using the same dialogs as in the previous section, you can also remove access to BizPacks for an organization or account.

## Deprecated Widgets

Some existing Composer widgets have been moved to the Bizpacks.

Existing forms using these widgets may be impacted when they upgrade to 4.2 SP1.

All the widgets that have been moved to Bizpacks are still available in a deprecated folder in Composer. The forms will still generate but will return warning messages.

The form developer can either

1) Ignore the warnings - not recommended because support for these widgets may be removed.

2) Delete the widgets from the form

3) Assign the appropriate BizPack to the organization.

**The Composer Palette**

Core widgets that have been moved to the Bizpacks will appear in a Deprecated Folder in the composer palette. This only occurs if the organization's release version is Bizpack Compatible and the Bizpack containing the deprecated widgets is not assigned to the Organization.

The screen grab below shows widgets specific to the US region that have been moved to the US region Bizpack. The organization has not subscribed to the US Bizpack so these widgets have been moved to the deprecated folder. If the US Bizpack was assigned to the Organization the widgets would not appear in the deprecated folder.

Support still exists for these widgets however a warning will be shown at form generation to inform the user that the widget they are using has been deprecated and they should use the correct Bizpack.

# Managed Support for Maguire

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

A Managed datapack called "Maguire Support" has been created to simplify the distribution of the Maguire datapack and ensure that the correct release of Maguire is being used on the correct version of Composer.

Details of how Managed Datapacks work is below but essentially all that is required for users of Maguire is:

1) The Client Account is set up to subscribe to Maguire Support.

2) Organizations add the Maguire Support Pack to their Path.This happens by default in Accounts that are subscribed to Maguire Support.

NOTES:

No other Maguire datapacks should be present. Custom Client packs can be created to extend Maguire.

The Maguire support pack uses the organization's composer version to ensure that the compatible version of Maguire is being used.

# Composer Ant Support v4.5.0

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## Requirements

The minimum requirements for using Ant with Composer are as follows. Later versions of all dependencies are supported.

| Dependency | Minimum version |
|---|---|
| Java | Java 7 |
| Ant | Ant 18 |
| Composer | Composer 4.5.0 server |

## Setting up your Ant build file

To set up your Ant build file you will need a copy of the Composer Ant JAR file *sfc-ant-4.5.0.jar* which you can get from https://transact.composer.avoka.com/resources. You will also need versions of Java and Ant that meet the minimum requirements.

Before you can use any of the Ant tasks provided in the Composer Ant JAR file, you will need to make them available by adding the following *taskdef* tag to your build file, specifying the appropriate JAR file path for your system.

Make sure you set loaderref="sfc" in the *taskdef* tag otherwise most tasks will not work.

```
<property name="sfcant.path" value="<insert path to jar file>/sfc-ant-4.5.0.jar"/>
<taskdef resource="com/avoka/sfc/ant/antlib.xml" classpath="${sfcant.path}" load-
erref="sfc"/>
```

Here is an example of a complete Ant build file that exports an organization (using *sfc-export-org*, see below). It assumes that you have placed the Composer Ant JAR file in a lib directory at the root of your project.

### Sample build file

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
```

```
<project name="sample" default="export.samples" basedir=".">
	<property name="lib.dir" value="${basedir}/lib"/>
	<property name="target.dir" value="${basedir}/target"/>
	<property name="sfcant.path" value="${lib.dir}/sfc-ant-4.5.0.jar"/>
	<property name="user" value="<insert your username here>"/>
	<property name="password" value="<insert your password here>"/>

	<!-- Make the sfc-ant tasks available -->
	<taskdef resource="com/avoka/sfc/ant/antlib.xml" classpath="${sfcant.path}" load-
erref="sfc"/>

	<!-- Set up the connection details for the composer server you want to use -->
	<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="${user}" password="${password}"/>

	<target name="export.samples">
		<mkdir dir="${target.dir}"/>
		<sfc-export-org account="Common" organization="Samples" server="uscloud" toFile-
e="${target.dir}/Samples.zip"/>
	</target>
</project>
```

## Composer Ant Tasks

The Composer Ant JAR file provides the following Ant tasks.

- sfc-export-account
- sfc-export-org
- sfc-form-spec
- sfc-import
- sfc-publish
- sfc-server

---

### sfc-export-account

The *sfc-export-account* task exports all organizations in an account to a ZIP file on the local file system.

**Task Parameters**

| Attribute | Description | Required | Default |
|---|---|---|---|
| account | The name of an account in the Composer workspace. This account will be exported. | Yes | |
| server | The Composer server to use, specified as the id of an *sfc-server* task defined elsewhere in the build file. | Yes | |
| toFile | The path of the ZIP file to be created. | Yes | |
| overwrite | Whether or not to overwrite the destination ZIP file if it exists already. Valid values are *true* and *false.* | No | true |

**Example**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
<sfc-export-account account="Sample Account" server="uscloud" toFile="${basedir}/sample-
account.zip"/>
```

---

### sfc-export-org

The *sfc-export-org* task exports a single organization or library in an account to a ZIP file on the local file system.

**Task Parameters**

| Attribute | Description | Required | Default |
|---|---|---|---|
| account | The name of an account in the Composer workspace. | Yes | |
| organization | The name of an organization in the account. This organization will be exported. | Yes | |
| server | The Composer server to use, specified as the id of an *sfc-server* task defined elsewhere in the build file. | Yes | |
| toFile | The path of the ZIP file to be created. | Yes | |
| overwrite | Whether or not to overwrite the destination ZIP file if it exists already. Valid values are *true* and *false.* | No | true |

**Example**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
<sfc-export-org account="Sample Account" organization="Sample Organization" server-
r="uscloud" toFile="${basedir}/sample-org.zip"/>
```

---

### sfc-form-spec

The *sfc-form-spec* task generates a form specification (form spec) XML file for one or all forms in a project.

**Task Parameters**

| Attribute | Description | Required | Default |
|---|---|---|---|
| account | The name of an account in the Composer workspace. | Yes | |
| organization | The name of an organization in the account. | Yes | |
| project | The name of a project in the organization. Form specs will be generated for one or all forms in this project. | Yes | |
| form | The name of the form for which a form spec will be generated. Use "*" to generate form specs for all forms in the project. | No | "*" |
| adjustLocalizationKeys | Whether or not to replace #s in localization keys with their resolved values. Valid values are *true* and *false*. | No | false |
| preserveNullValues | Whether or not properties with no value defined are kept in the form spec. Valid values are *true* and *false*. | No | false |
| server | The Composer server to use, specified as the id of a *sfc-server* task defined elsewhere in the build file. | Yes | |
| toFile | The path of the file to be created. This will be an XML file in the case of a single form or a | Yes | |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | ZIP file if generating form specs for all forms in a project. | | |
| overwrite | Whether or not to overwrite the destination ZIP file if it exists already. Valid values are *true* and *false.* | No | true |

#### Examples

**Generate a form spec for a single form**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
<sfc-form-spec account="Sample Account" organization="Sample Organization" project="My
Project" form="Test Form" server="uscloud" toFile="${basedir}/test-form-spec.xml"/>
```

**Generate form specs for all forms in a project**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
<sfc-form-spec account="Sample Account" organization="Sample Organization" project="My
Project" form="*" server="uscloud" toFile="${basedir}/my-project-specs.zip"/>
```

---

### sfc-import

The *sfc-import* task imports an organization ZIP file from the local file system to an account on a Composer server.

#### Task Parameters

| Attribute | Description | Required | Default |
|---|---|---|---|
| account | The name of an account in the Composer workspace. The organization in the ZIP file will be imported into this account.<br>NOTE: This will override the account name from the ZIP file. Leave this attribute blank to use the account name from the ZIP file. | No | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| organization | The name of an organization in the account. This organization will be imported.<br>NOTE: This will override the organization name from the ZIP file. Leave this attribute blank to use the organization name from the ZIP file. | No |
| server | The Composer server to use, specified as the id of a *sfc-server* task defined elsewhere in the build file. | Yes |
| file | The path to the ZIP file to be imported. | Yes |

**Example**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
<sfc-import account="Sample Account" organization="Sample Organization" server="uscloud"
file="${basedir}/sample-org.zip"/>
```

---

### sfc-publish

The *sfc-publish* task creates a publish ZIP or FAR file of a Composer form, suitable for importing into Avoka Transact Manager.

**Task Parameters**

| Attribute | Description | Required | Default |
|---|---|---|---|
| account | The name of an account in the Composer workspace. | Yes | |
| organization | The name of an organization in the account. | Yes | |
| project | The name of a project in the organization. | Yes | |
| form | The name of a form in the project. This form will be published. | Yes | |
| variants | A comma separated list of variants to include in the published ZIP file. Use "*" for all variants or "!" to just use the default variant as defined in the template. | No | "!" |
| format | The type of file to create. Valid values are *zip* and *far.*<br>Note: *far* is only supported when a single variant is spe- | No | zip |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | cified. | | |
| server | The Composer server to use, specified as the id of an *sfc-server* task defined elsewhere in the build file. | Yes | |
| toFile | The path to the ZIP/FAR file to be created. | Yes | |
| overwrite | Whether or not to overwrite the destination ZIP/FAR file if it exists already. Valid values are *true* and *false.* | No | true |

**Example**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
<sfc-publish format="zip" account="Sample Account" organization="Sample Organization" pro-
ject="Samples" form="My Sample" server="uscloud" toFile="${basedir}/my-sample.zip"/>
```

---

### sfc-server

The *sfc-server* task is used to define connection information for a Composer server. Other Composer Ant tasks have a server attribute that needs to match the id of an *sfc-server* task defined in the build file.

**Task Parameters**

| Attribute | Description | Required | Default |
|---|---|---|---|
| id | The id assigned to this server definition. This is an arbitrary identifier used to identify the Composer server in other Ant tasks and must be unique within the build file. | Yes | |
| url | The URL of the Composer server; for example, https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer. | Yes | |
| user | A Composer user name, used to authenticate the Ant build process when accessing the Composer server referenced by the url attribute. | Yes | |
| password | The password for the Composer user identified by the user attribute. | Yes | |

**Example**

```
<sfc-server id="uscloud" url="https://transact.composer.avoka.com/composer" user-
r="user@avoka.com" password="********"/>
```

# Composer On-premise Upgrade Guide (for major release)

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

On-premise Composer installations will require regular upgrades to take advantage of new features and defect fixes.

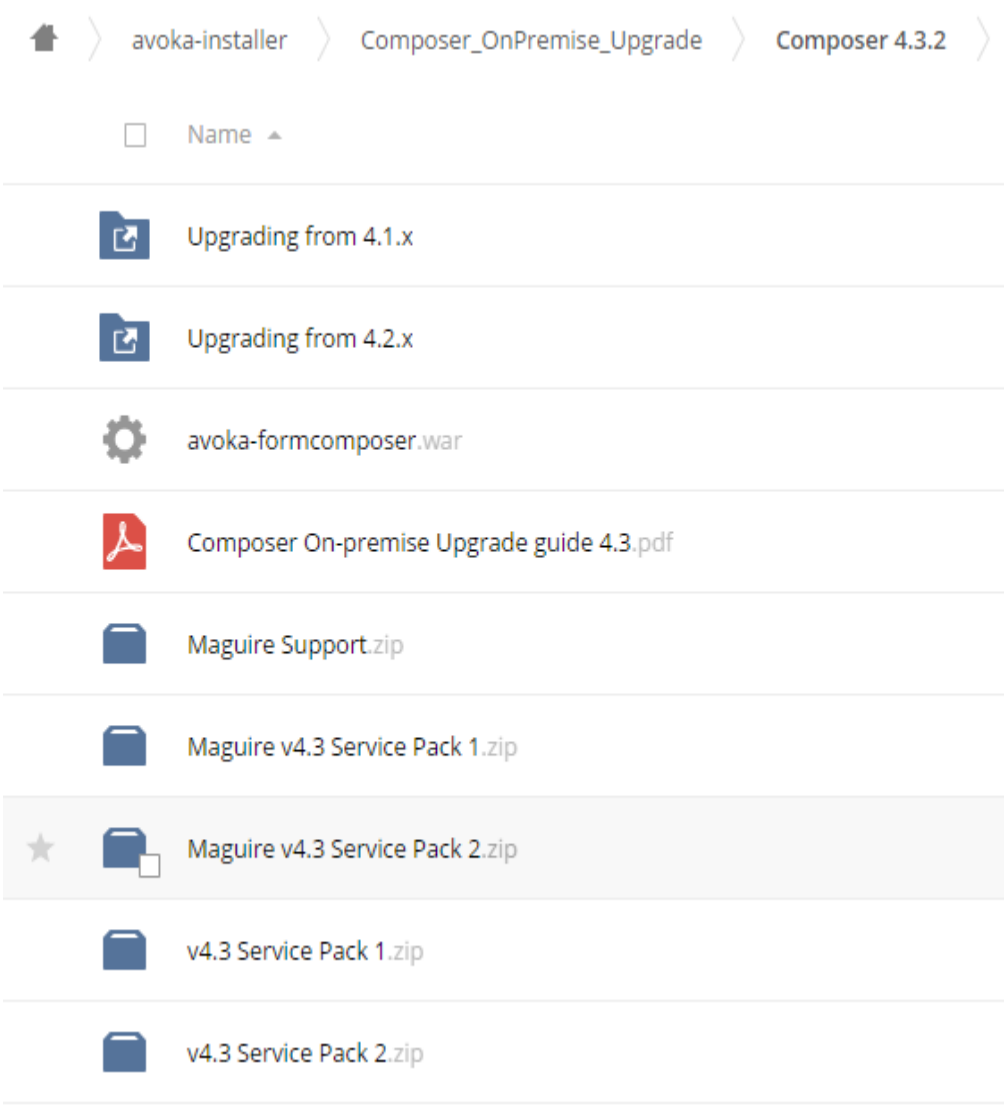
A special build is required for on-premise upgrades. This is available to customers at => On Premise Composer Upgrade Directory

Each available release is listed under this folder and includes all the items required for a successful upgrade. This will include:

- The release "WAR" file.
- Maguire Support Pack
- Maguire datapack
- Service Pack if not a major release.

If the client does not have the latest version of composer on their instance they will need to additional actions to the ones below. These are described later in this document.

The screenshot below shows the artifacts in the files.avoka.com upgrade folder for a 4.3.2 upgrade. The 2 sub-folders "Upgrading from 4.1x" and "Upgrading from 4.2.x" are only required by clients who are NOT on 4.3 and will be required later in the upgrade.




## Upgrade Steps

Composer upgrades require the deployment of a new WAR file in the JBoss application server. The WAR file can be downloaded from On Premise Composer Upgrade Directory, you can contact the Avoka support team to obtain access. The upgrade will automatically upgrade the database if required, it is therefore important to create a full backup of the database before a new WAR file is deployed.

For updating composer war file:

1. Backup composer database
2. Backup old the avoka-formcomposer.war from [JBOSS_HOME]\server-\default\deploy\,
3. Shutdown JBoss for Composer

4. Copy new avoka-formcomposer.war to [JBOSS_HOME]\server\default\deploy\, replacing the old avoka-formcomposer.war
5. Delete [JBOSS_HOME]\server\default\tmp folder
6. Start JBoss for Composer
7. The database upgrade process will be kicked off once the JBoss application server has been started.
8. You will now be able to access Composer as per usual

# Follow up Actions

After a successful upgrade the following actions are required:

**1) Updating the Service Pack(s) (Not required for major releases)**

Service packs are named "v4.x Service Pack x". These need to be uploaded to Composer by a site administrator in the System Account. For major release (eg. 4.4, 5.0 etc) this is not required.

**2) Adding Maguire Packs**

If there is a corresponding Maguire release, there will be Maguire Pack Libraries that need to be uploaded to the Avoka Datapack Account

1) Maguire Support - This is the rule pack for Maguire. It will use the Organization's version to select the correct Maguire Pack. When uploading it can replace the existing pack.

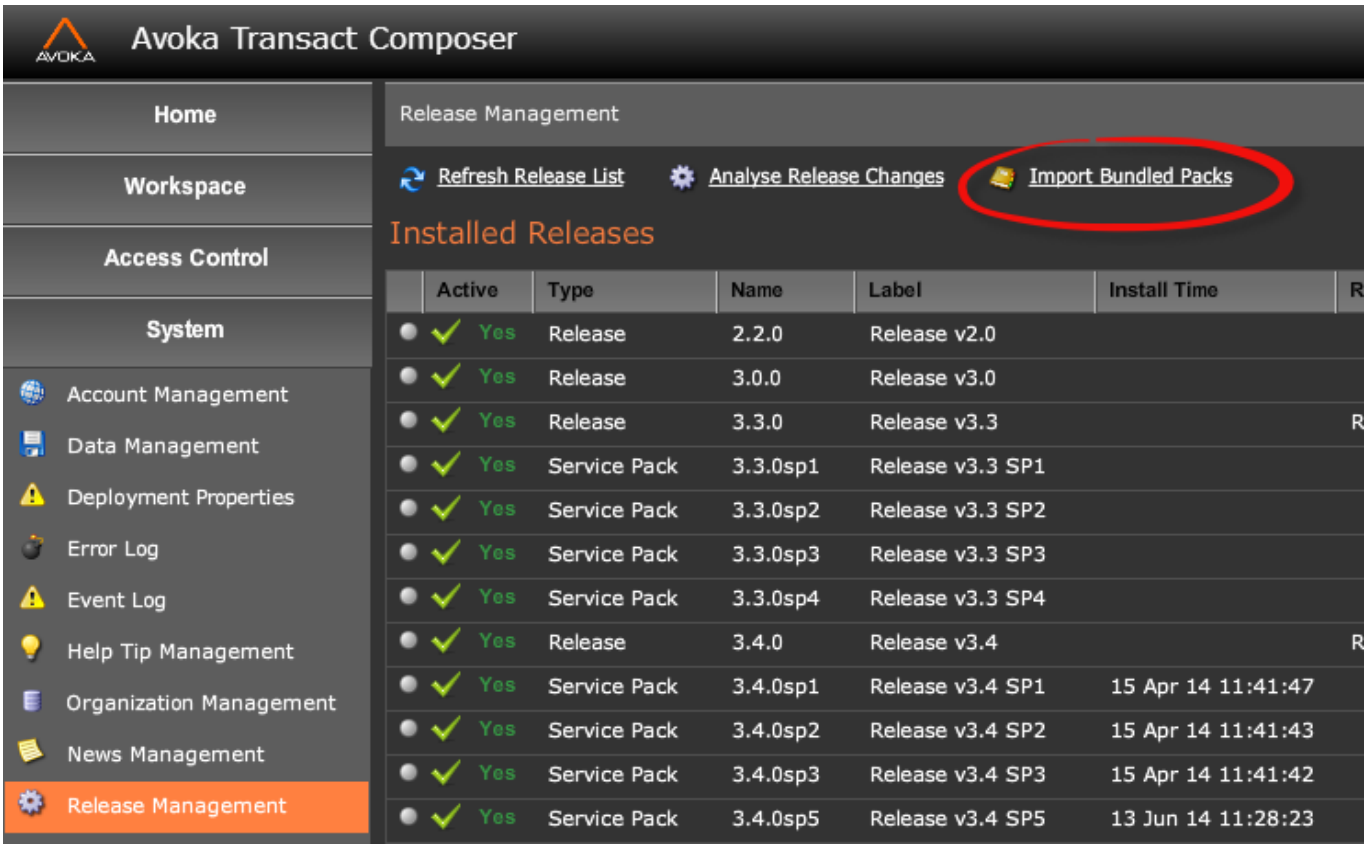
2) Maguire vn.n - This is the Maguire Pack itself and needs to be added to the Avoka Datapack. There may be multiple to add.

### 3) Activating Bizpacks

Bizpacks are bundled into the WAR file however they are not activated automatically. To do this the administrator needs to:

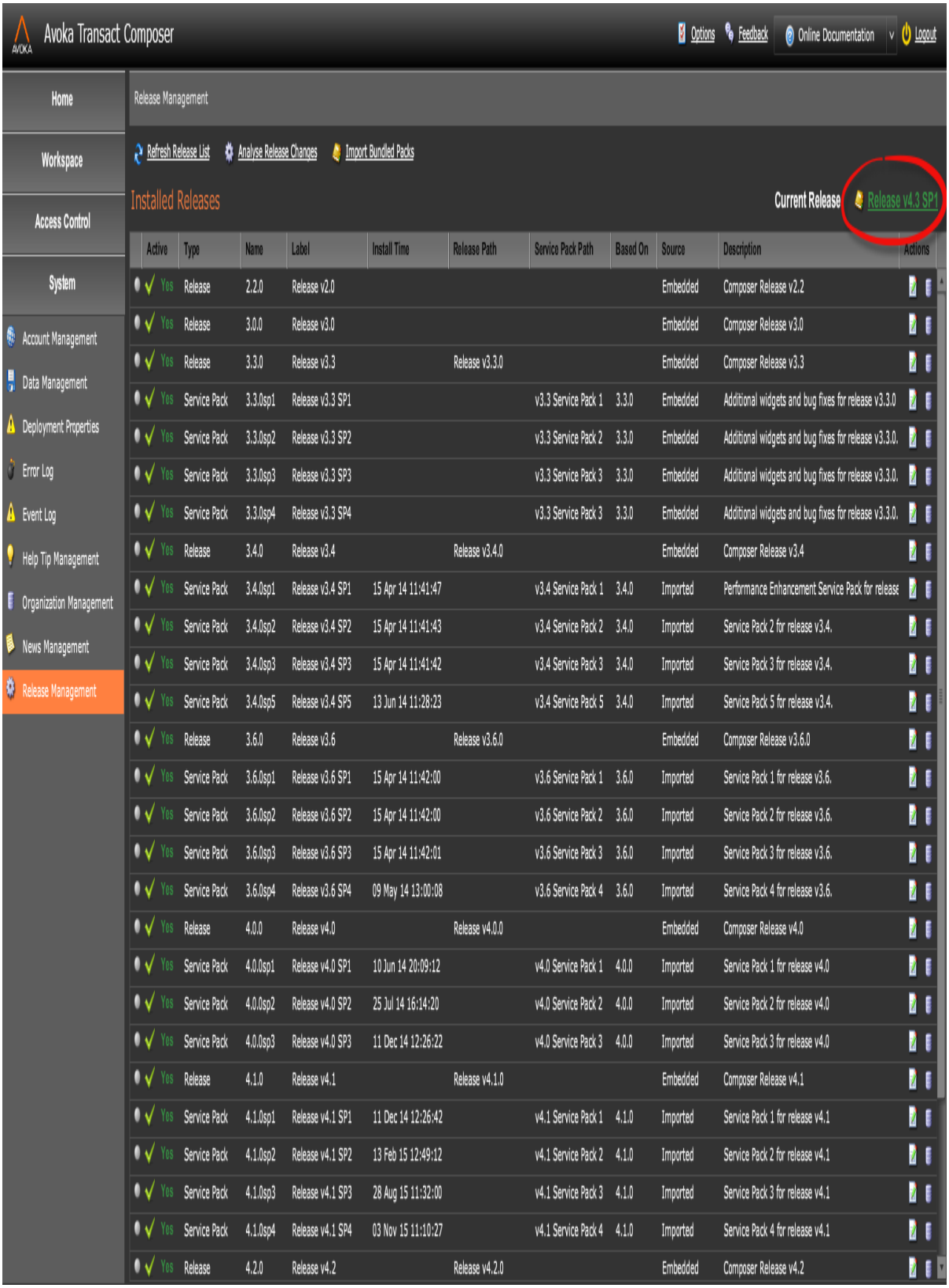
1. Go to: System=>Release Management
2. Select the "Import Bundled Packs" button.

This will add the Bizpacks to the Avoka Bizpacks account automatically.



**4) Setting the current release**

1. Go to: System=>Release Management
2. Select the "Current Release" link on the top right hand corner.
3. The dialog will contain a dropdown with the available releases. Select the latest release and hit "Ok".




| Active | Type | Name | Label | Install Time | Release Path | Service Pack Path | Based On | Source | Description | Actions |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Yes | Release | 2.2.0 | Release v2.0 | | | | | Embedded | Composer Release v2.2 | |
| Yes | Release | 3.0.0 | Release v3.0 | | | | | Embedded | Composer Release v3.0 | |
| Yes | Release | 3.3.0 | Release v3.3 | | Release v3.3.0 | | | Embedded | Composer Release v3.3 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.3.0sp1 | Release v3.3 SP1 | | | v3.3 Service Pack 1 | 3.3.0 | Embedded | Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.3.0sp2 | Release v3.3 SP2 | | | v3.3 Service Pack 2 | 3.3.0 | Embedded | Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.3.0sp3 | Release v3.3 SP3 | | | v3.3 Service Pack 3 | 3.3.0 | Embedded | Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.3.0sp4 | Release v3.3 SP4 | | | v3.3 Service Pack 3 | 3.3.0 | Embedded | Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0. | |
| Yes | Release | 3.4.0 | Release v3.4 | | Release v3.4.0 | | | Embedded | Composer Release v3.4 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.4.0sp1 | Release v3.4 SP1 | 15 Apr 14 11:41:47 | | v3.4 Service Pack 1 | 3.4.0 | Imported | Performance Enhancement Service Pack for release | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.4.0sp2 | Release v3.4 SP2 | 15 Apr 14 11:41:43 | | v3.4 Service Pack 2 | 3.4.0 | Imported | Service Pack 2 for release v3.4. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.4.0sp3 | Release v3.4 SP3 | 15 Apr 14 11:41:42 | | v3.4 Service Pack 3 | 3.4.0 | Imported | Service Pack 3 for release v3.4. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.4.0sp5 | Release v3.4 SP5 | 13 Jun 14 11:28:23 | | v3.4 Service Pack 5 | 3.4.0 | Imported | Service Pack 5 for release v3.4. | |
| Yes | Release | 3.6.0 | Release v3.6 | | Release v3.6.0 | | | Embedded | Composer Release v3.6.0 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.6.0sp1 | Release v3.6 SP1 | 15 Apr 14 11:42:00 | | v3.6 Service Pack 1 | 3.6.0 | Imported | Service Pack 1 for release v3.6. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.6.0sp2 | Release v3.6 SP2 | 15 Apr 14 11:42:00 | | v3.6 Service Pack 2 | 3.6.0 | Imported | Service Pack 2 for release v3.6. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.6.0sp3 | Release v3.6 SP3 | 15 Apr 14 11:42:01 | | v3.6 Service Pack 3 | 3.6.0 | Imported | Service Pack 3 for release v3.6. | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 3.6.0sp4 | Release v3.6 SP4 | 09 May 14 13:00:08 | | v3.6 Service Pack 4 | 3.6.0 | Imported | Service Pack 4 for release v3.6. | |
| Yes | Release | 4.0.0 | Release v4.0 | | Release v4.0.0 | | | Embedded | Composer Release v4.0 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.0.0sp1 | Release v4.0 SP1 | 10 Jun 14 20:09:12 | | v4.0 Service Pack 1 | 4.0.0 | Imported | Service Pack 1 for release v4.0 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.0.0sp2 | Release v4.0 SP2 | 25 Jul 14 16:14:20 | | v4.0 Service Pack 2 | 4.0.0 | Imported | Service Pack 2 for release v4.0 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.0.0sp3 | Release v4.0 SP3 | 11 Dec 14 12:26:22 | | v4.0 Service Pack 3 | 4.0.0 | Imported | Service Pack 3 for release v4.0 | |
| Yes | Release | 4.1.0 | Release v4.1 | | Release v4.1.0 | | | Embedded | Composer Release v4.1 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.1.0sp1 | Release v4.1 SP1 | 11 Dec 14 12:26:42 | | v4.1 Service Pack 1 | 4.1.0 | Imported | Service Pack 1 for release v4.1 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.1.0sp2 | Release v4.1 SP2 | 13 Feb 15 12:49:12 | | v4.1 Service Pack 2 | 4.1.0 | Imported | Service Pack 2 for release v4.1 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.1.0sp3 | Release v4.1 SP3 | 28 Aug 15 11:32:00 | | v4.1 Service Pack 3 | 4.1.0 | Imported | Service Pack 3 for release v4.1 | |
| Yes | Service Pack | 4.1.0sp4 | Release v4.1 SP4 | 03 Nov 15 11:10:27 | | v4.1 Service Pack 4 | 4.1.0 | Imported | Service Pack 4 for release v4.1 | |
| Yes | Release | 4.2.0 | Release v4.2 | | Release v4.2.0 | | | Embedded | Composer Release v4.2 | |

**5) Clients not on the latest release**

For clients who are currently not on the latest release. That is 4.1x or 4.2.x the additional steps are described below Upgrading From Older Versions

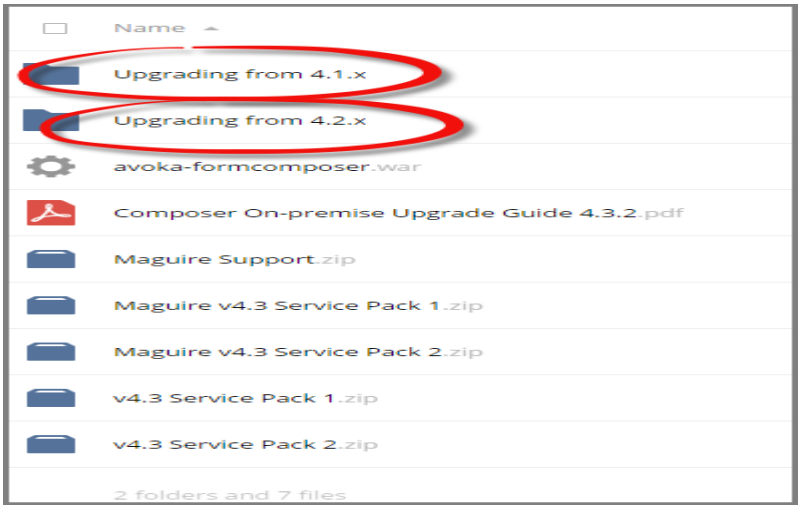
# Rollback

To rollback the upgrade please follow the following steps:

1. Shutdown JBoss for Composer
2. Restore the database
3. Copy the backed up avoka-formcomposer.war to [JBOSS_HOME]\server-\default\deploy\
4. Delete [JBOSS_HOME]\server\default\tmp folder
5. Start JBoss for Composer
6. You will now be able to access Composer as per usual
7. Contact the Avoka support team and provide them with the relevant JBoss log files for further analysis

# Upgrading from an older version

The following two folders are required by clients upgrading from version 4.1and version 4.2.




These contain the datapacks that need to be loaded to ensure the environment is fully up to date.

**Note that if you are upgrading from 4.1x to 4.3.x you will need to add the datapacks from both folders.**

**Steps to upgrade**

1. Open the folder required. Note that not all of the following may be present.
2. If there are Bizpacks in the folder you need to add them to the Avoka Bizpacks Account in Composer.
3. If there are Maguire packs they need to be added to the Avoka Datapacks Account in Composer.
4. If there are Service Packs or Release Packs these need to be added to the System Account in Composer.

# Composer On-premise Upgrade Guide (service pack release only)

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

## 1) Updating the Service Pack(s)

Service packs are named "v4.x Service Pack x". These need to be uploaded to Composer by a site administrator in the System Account. For major releases (eg. 4.4, 5.0 etc) this is not required.

## 2) Adding Maguire Packs

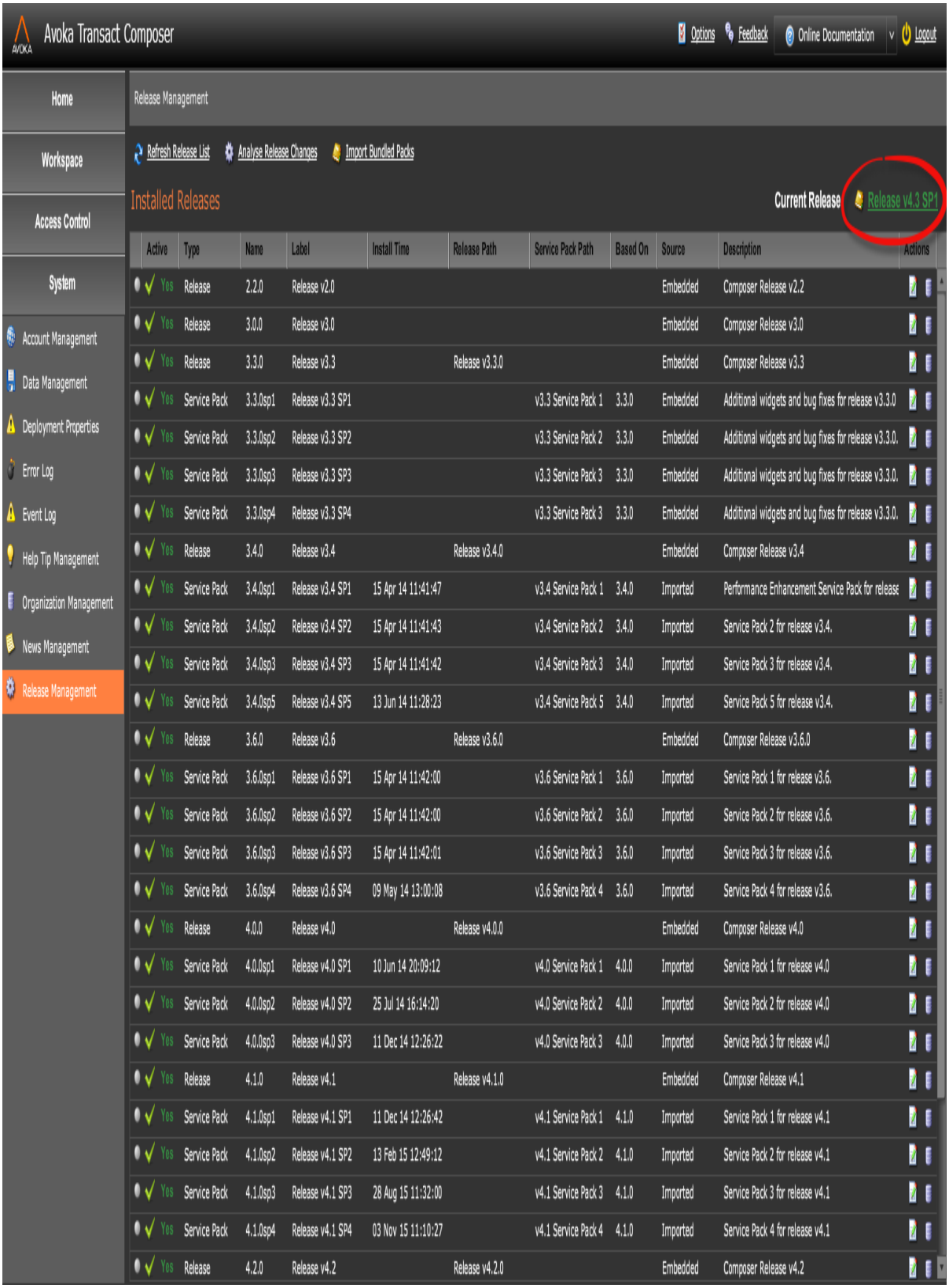
If there is a corresponding Maguire release, there will be Maguire Pack Libraries that need to be uploaded to the Avoka Datapack Account

1) Maguire Support - This is the rule pack for Maguire. It will use the Organization's version to select the correct Maguire Pack. When uploading it can replace the existing pack.

2) Maguire vn.n - This is the Maguire Pack itself and needs to be added to the Avoka Datapack. There may be multiple to add.

# 3) Setting the current release

1. Go to: System=>Release Management
2. Select the "Current Release" link on the top right hand corner.
3. The dialog will contain a dropdown with the available releases. Select the latest release and hit "Ok".


Avoka Transact Composer
Options
Feedback
Online Documentation
Logout
Home
Workspace
Access Control
System
Account Management
Data Management
Deployment Properties
Error Log
Event Log
Help Tip Management
Organization Management
News Management
Release Management
Release Management
Refresh Release List
Analyse Release Changes
Import Bundled Packs
Installed Releases
Current Release
Release v4.3 SP1
Active Type Name Label Install Time Release Path Service Pack Path Based On Source Description Actions
Yes Release 2.2.0 Release v2.0 Embedded Composer Release v2.2
Yes Release 3.0.0 Release v3.0 Embedded Composer Release v3.0
Yes Release 3.3.0 Release v3.3 Release v3.3.0 Embedded Composer Release v3.3
Yes Service Pack 3.3.0sp1 Release v3.3 SP1 v3.3 Service Pack 1 3.3.0 Embedded Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0
Yes Service Pack 3.3.0sp2 Release v3.3 SP2 v3.3 Service Pack 2 3.3.0 Embedded Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0.
Yes Service Pack 3.3.0sp3 Release v3.3 SP3 v3.3 Service Pack 3 3.3.0 Embedded Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0.
Yes Service Pack 3.3.0sp4 Release v3.3 SP4 v3.3 Service Pack 3 3.3.0 Embedded Additional widgets and bug fixes for release v3.3.0.
Yes Release 3.4.0 Release v3.4 Release v3.4.0 Embedded Composer Release v3.4
Yes Service Pack 3.4.0sp1 Release v3.4 SP1 15 Apr 14 11:41:47 v3.4 Service Pack 1 3.4.0 Imported Performance Enhancement Service Pack for release
Yes Service Pack 3.4.0sp2 Release v3.4 SP2 15 Apr 14 11:41:43 v3.4 Service Pack 2 3.4.0 Imported Service Pack 2 for release v3.4.
Yes Service Pack 3.4.0sp3 Release v3.4 SP3 15 Apr 14 11:41:42 v3.4 Service Pack 3 3.4.0 Imported Service Pack 3 for release v3.4.
Yes Service Pack 3.4.0sp5 Release v3.4 SP5 13 Jun 14 11:28:23 v3.4 Service Pack 5 3.4.0 Imported Service Pack 5 for release v3.4.
Yes Release 3.6.0 Release v3.6 Release v3.6.0 Embedded Composer Release v3.6.0
Yes Service Pack 3.6.0sp1 Release v3.6 SP1 15 Apr 14 11:42:00 v3.6 Service Pack 1 3.6.0 Imported Service Pack 1 for release v3.6.
Yes Service Pack 3.6.0sp2 Release v3.6 SP2 15 Apr 14 11:42:00 v3.6 Service Pack 2 3.6.0 Imported Service Pack 2 for release v3.6.
Yes Service Pack 3.6.0sp3 Release v3.6 SP3 15 Apr 14 11:42:01 v3.6 Service Pack 3 3.6.0 Imported Service Pack 3 for release v3.6.
Yes Service Pack 3.6.0sp4 Release v3.6 SP4 09 May 14 13:00:08 v3.6 Service Pack 4 3.6.0 Imported Service Pack 4 for release v3.6.
Yes Release 4.0.0 Release v4.0 Release v4.0.0 Embedded Composer Release v4.0
Yes Service Pack 4.0.0sp1 Release v4.0 SP1 10 Jun 14 20:09:12 v4.0 Service Pack 1 4.0.0 Imported Service Pack 1 for release v4.0
Yes Service Pack 4.0.0sp2 Release v4.0 SP2 25 Jul 14 16:14:20 v4.0 Service Pack 2 4.0.0 Imported Service Pack 2 for release v4.0
Yes Service Pack 4.0.0sp3 Release v4.0 SP3 11 Dec 14 12:26:22 v4.0 Service Pack 3 4.0.0 Imported Service Pack 3 for release v4.0
Yes Release 4.1.0 Release v4.1 Release v4.1.0 Embedded Composer Release v4.1
Yes Service Pack 4.1.0sp1 Release v4.1 SP1 11 Dec 14 12:26:42 v4.1 Service Pack 1 4.1.0 Imported Service Pack 1 for release v4.1
Yes Service Pack 4.1.0sp2 Release v4.1 SP2 13 Feb 15 12:49:12 v4.1 Service Pack 2 4.1.0 Imported Service Pack 2 for release v4.1
Yes Service Pack 4.1.0sp3 Release v4.1 SP3 28 Aug 15 11:32:00 v4.1 Service Pack 3 4.1.0 Imported Service Pack 3 for release v4.1
Yes Service Pack 4.1.0sp4 Release v4.1 SP4 03 Nov 15 11:10:27 v4.1 Service Pack 4 4.1.0 Imported Service Pack 4 for release v4.1
Yes Release 4.2.0 Release v4.2 Release v4.2.0 Embedded Composer Release v4.2

# Composer Attachment Definitions

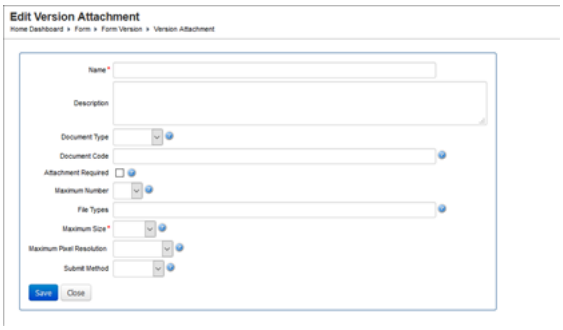
Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Attachments can be defined either in Transaction Manager, or in the form itself via Composer. Both approaches allow Attachment specific restrictions to be specified.

The following sample displays attachments defined in Transaction Manager and Composer.

## Transaction Manager

Attachments can be defined against a Form Version.




*Attachment defined in Transaction Manager*

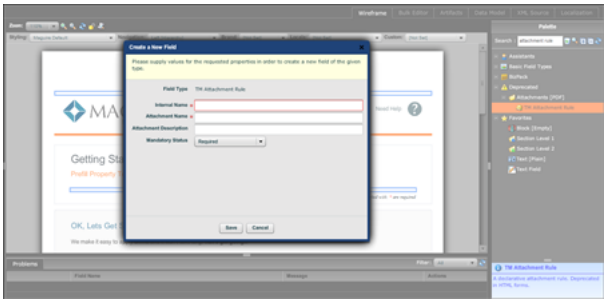
### Pros

- Attachments can be modified without needing to redeploy the Form

## Composer Form

### TM Attachment Rule

Attachments can be added and specified by adding a TM Attachment Rule widget to a form.



*Attachment Rule in Composer*

**Pros**

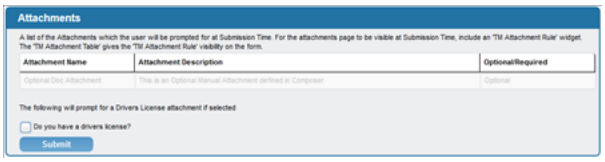
- Composer Attachments can have inclusion rules defined (So they can be dependent on other form elements/conditions)

**Cons**

- Attachment modifications need form redeployment

## TM Attachment Table

The TM Attachment Table will display all of the Transaction Manager Attachments (Including TM Attachment Rules defined within Composer) currently applicable to the form. Any TM Attachment Rules with inclusion rules defined need to be true to be visible in this list.



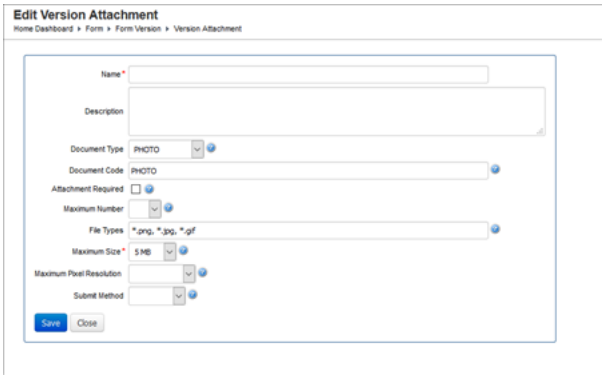

*TM Attachment Table rendered in a form*

# Composer Attachment Restrictions

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Attachments configured in Transaction Manager or Composer can be defined with certain restrictions to improve data integrity or constrain the submitted document. The following restrictions can be configured:

- Mandatory/Optional
- Document Type - Predefined Rules that specify File Type, Size, Description
- Document Code - Code associated with attachment
- Mime Type/File Ext - Comma separated list of file extensions
- File Size - Maximum File Size
- Pixel Resolution - Maximum Image Pixel Resolution
- Submit Method - Electronic (Upload a document) / Manual (Upload a document)

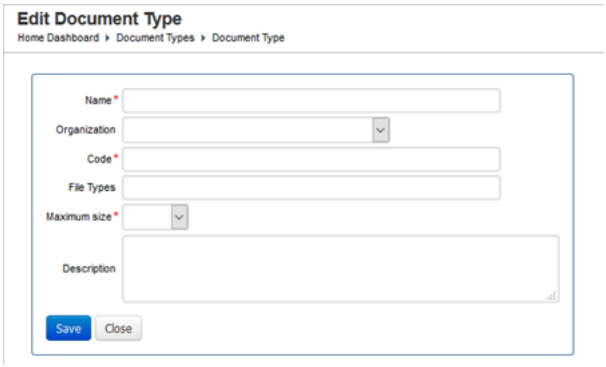



*Example of an Attachment configured in Transaction Manager using a Predefined Photo Document Type which reuses its configured File Type, Size and Pixel Resolution Requirements*

## Transaction Manager - Document Types

Generic Document Types to be used across multiple Attachments can be predefined in Transaction Manager.

This allows file type, size, description, code to be preconfigured. Document types can also be specific to an Organisation.



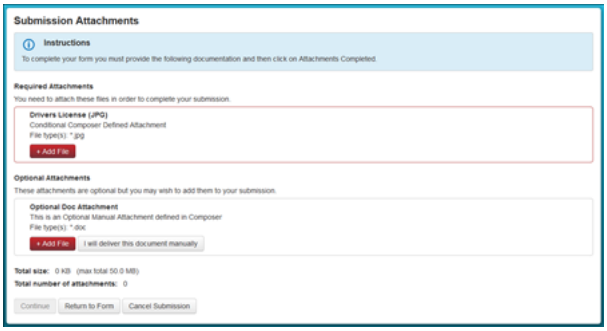

*Document Type Editor in Transaction Manager*

# Composer Attachment Time

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Attachments can be added at different times in the overall flow.

Attachments defined within Transaction Manager or as TM Attachment Rules in Composer will prompt the user after submission. The user will also be informed of any applicable File Type or Size restrictions applicable to each attachment.




*Form Prompting User after Submission for attachments*

The following sample displays TM Attachments defined in Transaction Manager and Composer. The user is prompted to provide the attachments after form submission.

**Sample form:** https://t-m.demo.avoka.com/govassist/servlet/SmartForm.html?formCode=attachments6

# Composer Attachments in Repeats

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | Form Builder | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

Attachments in repeats or table-rows can be a little problematic, because Attachments are (by definition) global to the submission, whereas attachments in repeats are (again, by definition) repeating. The problem is that every attachment needs to have a unique name, and by default all the attachments in a repeat will have the same name.

There is a fairly easy way to work around this:

1. In the hierarchy tree, click the toolbar **gear** to show hidden fields.
2. Locate the appropriate attachment.
3. Expand it, and find the sub-field named Attachment Name. Open the properties dialog for Attachment Name.
4. You will notice that the Initial Value of this field is set to **$../{attachment.name}** - this will evaluate to the **Attachment Name** property at the Attachment Rule level.
5. What we need to do is use a Calculation Rule to make the value of this sub-field a unique value.

There are several ways to do this, but probably the easiest way is to use a calculation rule based on concatenating a string with the current repeating row index. You will need to drop a **Repeatable Block Index** field into your repeat in order to use this in a calculation.

# Transact for Salesforce App

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Transact for Salesforce App was created in response to recurring feedback we received from our customer base. Feedback around the Customer Experiences produced by the Temenos Journey Manager platform has always been very positive and we've been fortunate enough to assist many businesses transform the way they interact with their customers online. However, several clients were concerned about the staff experience and didn't want their sales and customer service staff to have to login to a separate system in order to initiate these online transactions and track their progress to completion. Many of these customer facing staff spend their day inside a CRM[1] environment, becoming very productive in this environment, and for a growing number of our clients this CRM is Salesforce.com.

Transact for Salesforce App is about improving the staff experience, specifically the staff who spend the bulk of their time working in Salesforce and dealing directly with the customer.

We asked ourselves some questions:

- What if Sales staff could send out an Application Form to one of their contacts, directly from the Contact record, and have it pre-filled with information from Salesforce?
- How could we make it easy for Customer Service staff to assist customers complete their transactions without having to leave the Salesforce environment?
- Could we record completed form-based transactions into the CRM such that they get added to the historical timeline of the customer relationship?

Transact for Salesforce App is designed to answer the following questions:

1. Provide a Salesforce embedded UI that allows users to view and manage transactions that reside on the Temenos Journey Manager platform without having to access the platform directly, removing the need for them to leave the Salesforce

[1] AcroForms are the original PDF forms technology that accepts input in both Forms Data Format (FDF) and XML Forms Data Format (XFDF). Many 3rd party vendors support AcroForms.

environment.

2. Provide a generic integration channel between Manager and force.com to avoid custom integration work for each use case.
3. Provide a simple framework for integration that enables Salesforce consulting partners and Salesforce administrators with the ability to more easily configure and control the receipt of data from and release of data to the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

You can easily install and configure the application, which supports:

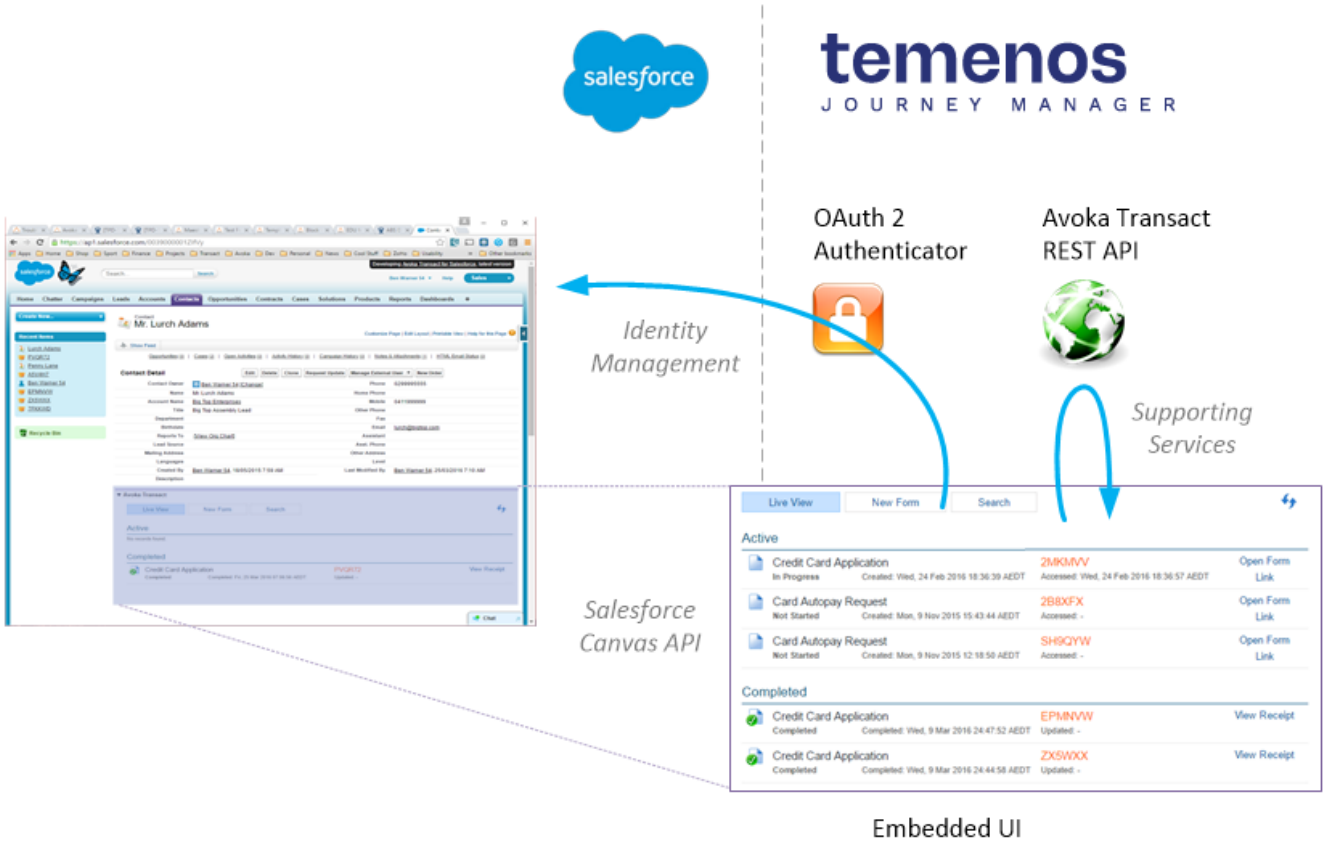
- Salesforce - all editions of Salesforce are supported. All APEX code is written for API version 33.
- The Manager versions.

You can perform the following application administration and managementactivities:

- Configure Transact for Salesforce App
- Enable or restrict access to forms
- Access security tokens
- Manage user licenses

## User Interface Design

The user interface is facilitated by a Canvas application that is hosted on the Manager server and rendered into the Salesforce UI using the Canvas framework. A set of REST APIs exposed on the Temenos Journey Manager platform support the UI for accessing, creating and updating transactions.




## Styling

Styling of the Canvas UI is designed to blend in with the Salesforce Desktop UI by utilizing complementary colors, fonts and button styles. Where appropriate, subtle changes have been applied to provide a more modern look and feel, yet still maintaining a natural integration into the visual design of the platform.

## Navigation

Page navigation is facilitated by a simple tab metaphor at the top of the UI, supporting navigation between the following page functions:

1. My Forms - shows form transactions that are assigned to the current user. This page is typically only surfaced when the user accesses the UI via the Chatter feed.
2. Live View - shows form transactions that are linked to the current Salesforce object (SObject).
3. New Form - is used to select and create a new form transaction based on an available form template.
4. Search - is customer service style search facility to find forms using a search term. Results may include forms that are anonymous and unlinked.

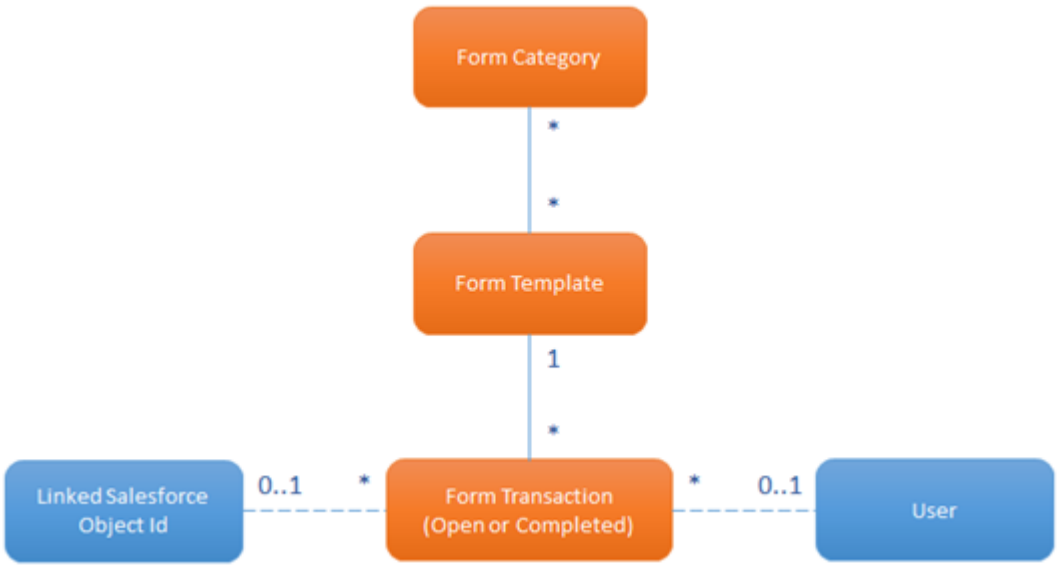
# Information Architecture

A form template represents the code and configuration behind a form design and encapsulates the data model, business rules and presentation assets for a form. Within the Canvas UI, form templates are accessed by navigating to the 'New Form' page and selecting a form category. Form templates can be used to create new form transactions to be opened immediately or sent to a contact.

Form templates can belong to one or more form category. Form categories and the forms that belong to them are configured in Manager.

A form transaction may be assigned to a single user or assigned to no user (anonymous). Forms assigned to a user will appear under the My Forms page when that user is logged in to Salesforce and accessing the Canvas UI.

A form transaction may be linked with a single Salesforce object or unlinked. Forms linked to a Salesforce object will appear under the Live View page when viewing the detail layout for that object.




Note: Primary Entities in Temenos (orange) and Salesforce (blue) and their Relationships

# Integration Approach

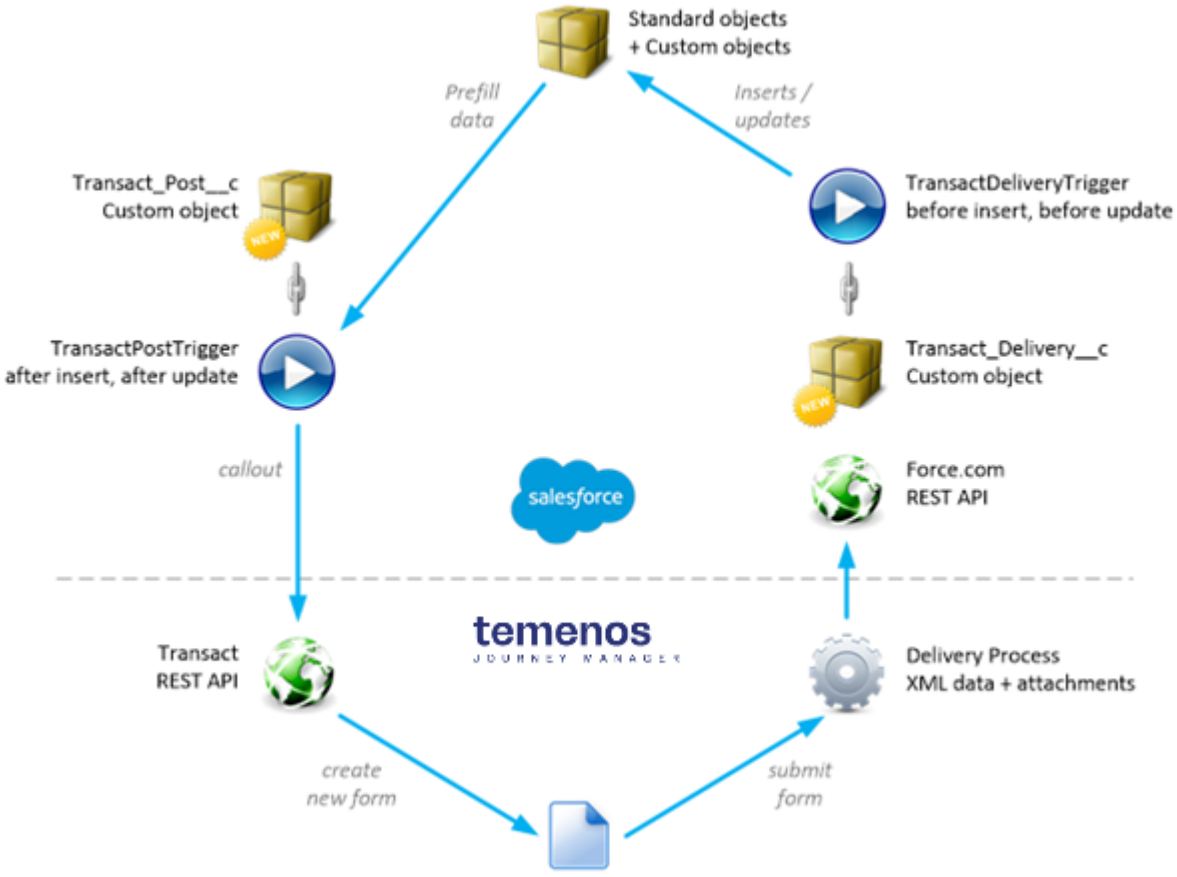
## UI

The Transact for Salesforce App UI is built in and hosted on the Temenos Journey Manager platform. This UI is integrated into the Salesforce page layouts by utilizing the Salesforce Canvas API.

## API

API integration is facilitated by REST services on both platforms. Temenos Journey Manager platform exposes REST services to accommodate the assignment of new forms from Salesforce, while REST API on the Salesforce side are utilized by Manager to deliver completed submissions.

Within Salesforce, these REST services are encapsulated by custom objects and associated triggers to facilitate the bi-directional communications, as illustrated in the following diagram.



### Authentication / Identity Management

Authentication of Salesforce users into Journey Manager is done via OAuth2. Users who access the Transact for Salesforce App UI must be authenticated with Salesforce. Upon first time access to the Temenos UI, a placeholder account is created on the Manager server with the required permissions to perform the functions associated with the UI.

## Data Security

This section provides an assessment of the data security considerations associated with the managed package. For detailed information on data security in the Temenos Journey Manager platform, request a copy of the Temenos Journey Manager platform security architecture documentation.

The base installation of the package does not require access to any Salesforce standard or custom objects other than those contained within the package itself.

Control over which data is shared with Manager for prefill into forms, and which data is updated by incoming submissions is under complete control of the Salesforce administrators. This is a manual configuration function that is not enabled by default.

### Data Access Controls

The solution provides a framework for Salesforce administrators to release data to Manager for the purposes of pre-filling forms before sending them to contacts to complete and submit. This framework is facilitated by a set of Apex classes that consume configuration based rules to build dynamic SOQL[1] queries for the retrieval of data.

Within this apex code, the following access controls are employed:

- With Sharing - all Apex classes in the package have the 'with sharing' control activated such that sharing rules of the current user are considered.
- Data Access Rights - where configuration requires that a field be prefilled into a form, the current user's data access rights are first checked before that field is retrieved with SOQL. Similarly, where data flows back into Salesforce, the user's

[1]Salesforce Object Query Language (SOQL) is used to construct simple but powerful query strings in the queryString parameter in the query() call, in Apex statements, in Visualforce controllers and getter methods, or in the Schema Explorer of the Force.com IDE.

permission to create or update fields and objects is checked prior to performing any change. The Apex class `SecurityController` has been included to accommodate these checks. The following code is an example of these checks in action: `if(SecurityController.isFieldAccessible(objectType, fieldName))`

### Off-Platform Data Storage

The Temenos Journey Manager platform is a system of engagement, not a system of record, so no data is retained in our platform, other than configuration data, longer than it is required in order to complete the data capture transaction and forward the data to the appropriate system of record.

Due to the requirements of our most sensitive clients, such as federal government agencies, police departments, and financial services organization, Manager data security is exceptionally strong. All data in transit and at rest is encrypted according to the industry's highest standard and flexible purge policies allow clients to ensure that sensitive data is removed from the system at the earliest opportunity.

## Salesforce Organization Impacts

Manager does not include pre-built data capture experiences targeting specific use cases, but rather provides a template based design environment with many pre-built components that can be strung together to rapidly produce these experiences. Each of our customers use Manager to facilitate different use cases within their organization, and these are typically built to spec.

With this consideration, it is difficult to provide a general assessment of the impacts the Salesforce package will have on the client's Salesforce Organization. Rather, the impacts need to be assessed on a case by case basis and Temenos will work with each client to ensure that the impacts understood.

The following sections outline the potential areas of impact and the considerations relating to each.

### Licensing

The Transact for Salesforce App package can be used on any edition of Salesforce. Licenses are made available for a monthly fee on a per user basis. Any user who accesses any component included in the managed package must be licensed to use the solution. The primary functions required by users will be:

- Utilize the Canvas App to manage forms against a Salesforce object
- Access delivery records of Manager transactions
- Trigger functions within their Salesforce environment that in turn create a post request to Manager to assign a form

## Data Storage Requirements

The following data storage considerations need to be assessed on a case by case basis:

- Transaction Volumes - the volume of transactions being produced from the Temenos Journey Manager platform and delivered into Salesforce will be a key factor in the determination of data storage requirements.
- Binary attachments - where transactions call for binary attachments to be provided, and these attachments are designated for delivery into Salesforce, the storage requirements for these binary attachment needs to be considered. Controls can be put in place in Temenos Journey Manager platform to restrict the size of attachments that may be provided by users.
- Purge Strategies - the data in the Temenos Journey Manager platform custom object records is transient by design. Data purge strategies can be effectively applied to remove records that are no longer required. Purge rules may be developed to remove only the binary attachments and submission XML while maintaining the metadata about each delivered submission.

## API Usage Volumes

The following API usage considerations need to be assessed on a case by case basis:

- Transaction Volumes -the volume of transactions being produced from the Temenos Journey Manager platform and delivered into Salesforce will be a key factor in the determination of API usage requirements. Each submission delivered into Salesforce will utilize a minimum of one API call, but more where attachments are to be delivered also.
- Prefill Generation - where a user is interacting with the Canvas App and attempts to send a form to a contact, this requires an API call to the prefill generation service.
- Where Journey Manager Post records are created as a result of events in the Salesforce environment, these trigger calls to theTemenos Journey Manager platform.

## Batch Processing

There are currently no batch processes included in the package. Clients may choose to implement their own purge process to remove post and delivery records older than a certain date.

## Reporting

There are currently no reports or dashboards included in the package.

Next, learn how to configure Transact for Salesforce App.

# Integrate Salesforce with Manager

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can configure Salesforce to integrate it with Managerfor the first time.

To configure your Salesforce environment for Journey Manager integration via APIs, follow the process below:

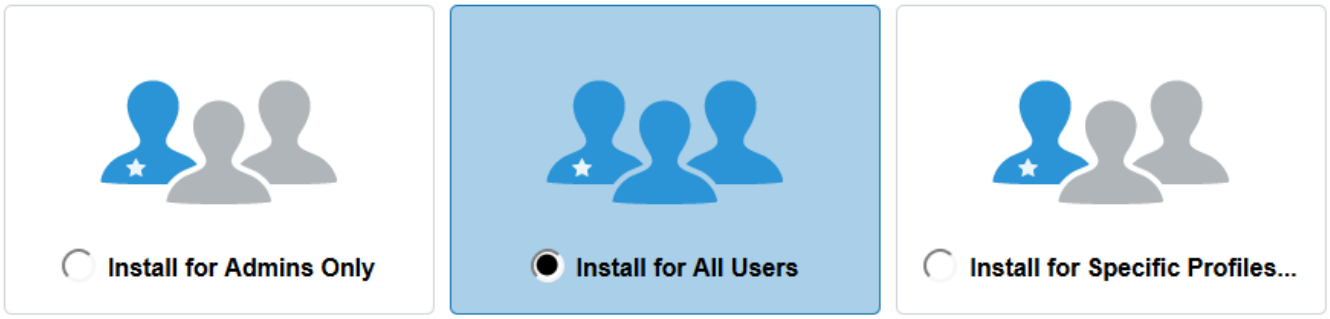
1. Install the Transact for Salesforce App.
2. Create the API User Account in Salesforce.
3. Create the Journey Manager Connected App in Salesforce.
4. Provide the User Account and Connected App details to the Journey Manager team.

## Install the Transact for Salesforce App

Install the latest version of the Transact for Salesforce App that supports your version of Manager:

To commence installation of a Salesforce package, upon opening the package URL in the browser you are required to login to the Salesforce environment that you wish to install into.

When installing the package it is best to elect to Install for All Users as shown below. This will avoid users being unable to access the app due to insufficient privileges.



NOTE

If you have already installed the app for Admins Only or Specific Profiles and some users are unable to access the app due to Insufficient Privileges, you can resolve this issue as described in Insufficient Privileges: You do not have the level of access necessary to perform the operation you requested...

## Create the API User Account in Salesforce

NOTE

We recommend you create a separate Salesforce user account dedicated to Manager integrations. This allows you to keep your real user credentials private and lets you restrict the permissions of the integration user as appropriate.

To create the user and its permission profile for API level integration, contact your Salesforce administrator or refer to the Salesforce documentation. The following items should be considered when doing so:

1. Suggested User Account attributes:
   - First Name - blank
   - Last Name - Transact
   - Alias - transact
   - Email - Suggest using the email address of your Salesforce administrator
   - Username - transact@yourdomain.com.<environment> . Append the environment name for non-prod environments
   - Nickname - Transact
2. The user must have API access enabled
3. See also: https://help.salesforce.com/HTViewHelpDoc?id=integrate_what_is_api.htm&language=en_US
4. The user must have full access to the Temenos custom objects to deliver submission records into Salesforce. The app package includes permission sets to help manage user access to Manager objects. Allocate the included Manager administrator permission set to this user.
5. The user must also have appropriate permissions to any objects you may wish to update when a submission is delivered as these update functions will be performed as this API user.

6. Ensure the user is licensed to use the Transact for Salesforce App - How to manage user licensing for the Salesforce App

WARNING

It is important to understand the impacts of password expiry on integration user accounts.

## Create the Manager Connected App in Salesforce

1. Under App Setup, click Create > Apps
2. Under Connected Apps, click New
3. Suggested Connected App attributes:
   - Connected App Name - Transact Connector
   - API Name - Transact_Connector
   - Contact Email - Suggest using the email address of your Salesforce administrator
4. Ensure Enable OAuth Settings is checked with the following attributes set:
   - Enable OAuth Settings - Yes (selected)
   - Callback URL - https://<Transact Domain>/sfdc/secure/account/home.htm , where <Transact Domain> is the domain of your Transact environment
   - Use Digital Signatures - No (unselected)
   - Selected OAuth Scopes - Access and manage your data, Access your basic information, Provide access to your data via the Web. It is important to set all and only these 3 scopes
5. Under Web App Settings enter the following values:
   - Start URL - https://<Transact Domain>/sfdc/servlet/SmartForm.html?formCode=AT4SF-canvas , where <Transact Domain> is the domain of your Manager environment
   - Enable SAML - No (unselected)
6. Under Mobile App Settings leave blank.
7. Under Canvas App Settings ensure Force.com Canvas is selected and enter the following values:
   - Force.com Canvas - Yes (selected)
   - Canvas App URL - https://<Transact Domain>/sfdc/servlet/SmartForm.html?formCode=AT4SF-canvas , where <Transact Domain> is the domain of your Manager environment
   - Access Method - Signed Request (POST)

- SAML Initiation Method - None
- Locations (Selected) - Chatter Tab, Layouts and Mobile Cards, Visualforce Page
- Lifecycle Class - leave blank

8. Click Save to update the changes.

## Configure Permitted Users for the Connected App

The app currently only supports Administrator Approved users.

1. Under 'Administration Setup', click Manage Apps > Connected Apps.
2. Locate the Manager connected app and click Edit.
3. Under 'OAuth Policies' selected 'Admin approved users are pre-authorized' for Permitted Users.
4. Click Save to update the changes.
5. Again under 'Administration Setup', click Manage Apps > Connected Apps, locate your application and click the App name link to view the detail page.
6. Under Profiles, click Manage Profiles and select the profiles you wish to pre-approve for app usage. This is typically System Administrator and Standard User.
7. Click Save to update the changes.

## Create the API Named Credential in Salesforce

NOTE

If your integration scenarios include pushing form task assignments from Salesforce to Temenos in batch or within an Apex trigger (not very common), you will need to setup an API user in Temenos and configure the named credential in Salesforce. The named credential is not required for other scenarios and this step may be skipped.

1. Under Administration Setup, click Security Controls > Named Credentials
2. Under Named Credentials, click New Named Credential and enter the following Named Credential attribute values:
   - Label - Transact API Credential
   - Name - Transact_API_Credential, which must match this exactly
   - URL - https://<Transact Domain>/manager/secure/rest/groovy-service-invoke/v2/at4sf-postrequest/v1/ , where <Transact Domain> is the domain of your Manager environment, the version number at the end (v1) must refer to

the version of the AT4SF-PostRequest service in Manager that you wish to call (version 1at the time of writing). For older Manager environment you may need to use the GroovyServiceServlet URL, such as https://<Transact Domain>/manager/secure/GroovyServiceServlet?sfmServiceName=AT4SF-PostRequest
- Certificate - leave blank unless you have certificate based authentication in place.
- Identity Type - Named Principal
- Authentication Protocol - Password Authentication
- Username and Password - the username and password used must correspond to a user who belongs to the required organization.

3. Click Save to update the changes.

WARNING

For the IP White-Listing, be aware that if your Manager server has IP white-listing enabled, you will need to add the Salesforce IP ranges to the white-list for the task creation calls to be successful. See:

- https://help.salesforce.com/articleView?id=000003652&type=1
- Post Request: 403 Forbidden - You don't have permission to access /manager/secure/GroovyServiceServlet on this server.

## Information required by the Journey Manager Team

Once the integration User Account and Connected App have been correctly configured in Salesforce, the Manager administration staff will require the following information:

- Salesforce Login URL, for example, https://login.salesforce.com or https://test.salesforce.com.
- API User - Username
- API User - Password
- API User - Security Token
- Connected App - Consumer Key
- Connected App - Consumer Secret

To retrieve this information from Salesforce

- How to retrieve the Security Token for a Salesforce User Account.
- How to retrieve the Consumer Key and Secret for a Salesforce Connected App.

Next, learn how to make forms available for Salesforce users.

# Enable Access to the Transact for Sales-force App

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can give user profiles access to the Transact for Salesforce App pages using the Salesforce App Menu.

To enable access to the TTransact for Salesforce App:

1. Under App Setup, click Create > Apps.
2. Under Apps, click Edit next to the Transact App.
3. Under Assign to Profiles on the App Edit Page, select the user profiles that you wish to give access to the Transact for Salesforce App.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to group forms using form categories

# Manage User Licenses

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can manage which users are licensed to use the Transact for Salesforce App when a limited number of user license is available.

NOTE

If your organization has a site license for the Transact for Salesforce App, all users will automatically be licensed and no license management will be required. This is relevant where your organization has purchased a limited number of seats.

To manage user license:

1. Under App Setup > Installed Packages, click Manage Licenses next to the Transact for Salesforce App package
2. Under Licensed Users, add and remove licensed users as required.
3. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to troubleshoot Transact for Salesforce App.

# Retrieve the Consumer Key and Secret for the Salesforce App

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

If you're setting up the Salesforce integration using a Connected App, you'll need to get your Consumer Key, Secret and Security Token from Salesforce.

To retrieve the key and secret:

1. Login to Salesforce with the target user account.
2. Select App Setup and click Create > Apps.
3. Open the Connected App target and retrieve the Consumer Key and Consumer Secret from the API (oAuth) section.

   NOTE

   The Consumer Secret may be protected by a Click to reveal link.

Next, learn how to retrieve the security token for the Salesforce user account.

# Retrieve the Security Token for the Salesforce User Account

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Each Salesforce user account has an associated security token that is commonly required when integrating with Salesforce. Your Salesforce security token should have been emailed to you when you set up your Salesforce account or the last time you reset your password. If you don't know the security token for a selected user account, there is no way to retrieve it through the UI, so you may want to first search for it through old emails sent to the user's registered email address before resetting the security token.

> NOTE
>
> If the user account is already being used for integration purposes, resetting the security token may break these integrations until they are updated with the new token.

To retrieve the security token:

1. Login to Salesforce with the target user account.
2. Click Username in the top right and select Setup or My Settings from the menu.
3. Under Personal Setup, click My Personal Information > Reset My Security Token.

   > NOTE
   >
   > If you can't see the Reset My Security Token option, see Missing "Reset My Security Token" Option in the troubleshooting guide.

4. Click Reset Security Token.
5. Check the User's email inbox for an email from Salesforce advising of the new security token.

Next, learn how to manage user license for the Salesforce app.

# Remove Password Expiry on a Salesforce User Account

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

When setting up an API integration user with Salesforce, a password expiry event will break the integration with little or no warning. You can disable password expiry for these selected users only and keep your integration channels open.

## Creating a 'Password Never Expires' Permission Set

Follow this procedure to create a permission set that will disable password expiry:

1. Under Administration Setup, click Manage Users > Permission Sets
2. Create a new Permission Set with label 'Password Never Expires' and save
3. Edit the System Permissions against this Permission Set, select the 'Password Never Expires' permission and save

## Adding the 'Password Never Expires' Permission Set to a User Account

Once you have created the 'Password Never Expires' Permission Set, follow this procedure to add the permission set to a selected user account:

1. Under Administration Setup, click Manage Users > Users
2. Open the target user account and edit Permission Set Assignments
3. Add the 'Password Never Expires' Permission Set.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

NOTE

To improve security for integration user accounts you could look at one or more of the following strategies:

- Limit permissions to only the objects it needs to access
- Enable IP address restrictions to the IP ranges of the integrating system(s)
- Turn off integration clients (e.g. Outlook)
- Turn off all tabs

Next, learn how to restrict access for selected forms to user groups.

# Configure the Transact for Salesforce App UI in Salesforce

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can configure the Transact for Salesforce AppCanvas UI in Salesforce so that users can access this UI on the object detail pages.

## Create the Visualforce Page

A Visualforce page needs to be created for each Salesforce object type you wish to make the Transact for Salesforce App UI available for. In this example, we will outline the process for enabling the UI for the Contact object.

1. Select App Setup and click Develop > Pages.
2. Select Visualforce Pages and click New.
3. Suggested Page Attributes:
    - Label - Transact - Contact
    - Name - Transact_Contact
    - Description - Contains the view for the Contact object.
    - Leave defaults for other options
4. Enter the following Visualforce Markup and click save:

```
<apex:page standardController="Contact">
<!-- Begin Transact App -->
  <div id="transact-container"></div>
  <apex:canvasApp applicationName="Avoka_Transact_Connector"
        containerId="transact-container"
        width="100%"
        border="0"
        scrolling="no"
        height="350px"
        maxHeight="infinite"
        parameters="{
            SObjectId:'{!HTMLENCODE(Contact.Id)}',
            SObjectType:'Contact',
            ContactFirstName:'{!HTMLENCODE(Contact.FirstName)}',
            ContactLastName:'{!HTMLENCODE(Contact.LastName)}',
            ContactEmail:'{!HTMLENCODE(Contact.Email)}',
            EnableUserView:'false',
            EnableObjectView:'true',
            EnableNewForm:'true',
            EnableGlobalSearch:'true'
        }" />
  <!-- End Transact App -->
</apex:page>
```

5. Click Save to update the changes.

## Visualforce Markup Attributes

- standardController="Contact" - should be set to the name of the object you wish to present the Visualforce page on - in this case 'Contact', if we were creating a Visualforce page for the Account object this value would be 'Account'
- applicationName="Avoka_Transact_Connector" - should be set to the name of the connected app that has been configured - in this case `Avoka_Transact_Connector`
- containerId="transact-container" - set the containerId to the id of the div above the canvas app definition - in this case transact-container
- width="100%" - Stretch the canvas app to the full available width
- border="0" - Use no border on the frame
- scrolling="no" - set scrolling off because we enable the scrollbars in the page layout (see next section)
- height="350px" - default height of app

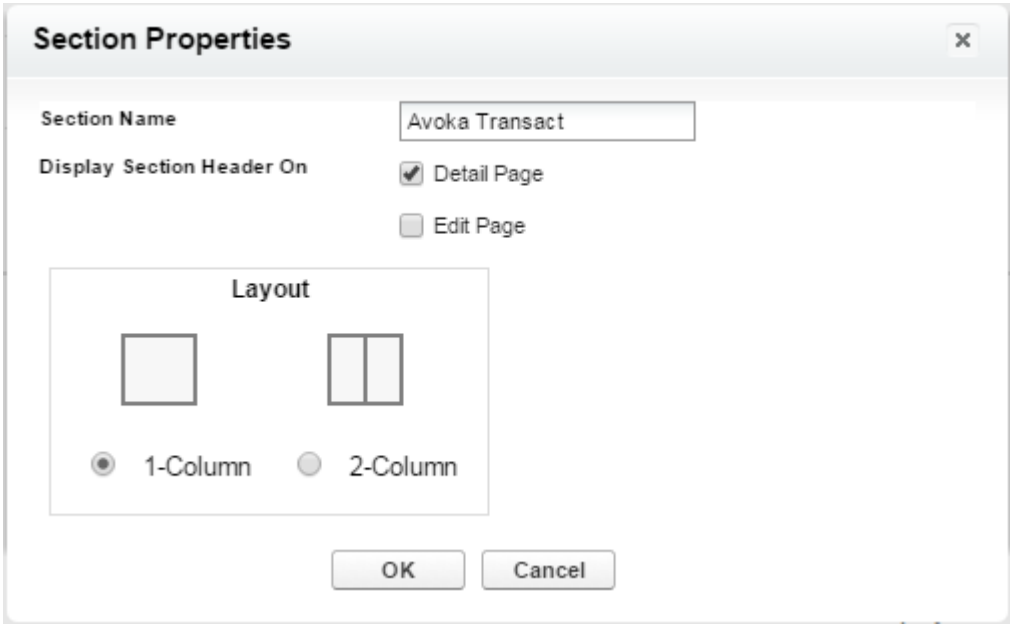
- maxHeight="infinite" - app can grow in height unconstrained
- Parameter SObjectId - (required) the Id of the Sobject being accessed - in this case just taking the Id of the current Contact record
- Parameter SObjectType - (required) a plain english name for the type of the SObject being accessed, may be used in some places throughout the Canvas UI
- Parameter ContactFirstName - (optional) The first name of the contact for 'Send to Contact' forms. As we are illustrating with the Contact record we are able to take the Contact's first name, but for other object types we may leave this parameter out
- Parameter ContactLastName - (optional) The lastname of the contact for 'Send to Contact' forms. As we are illustrating with the Contact record we are able to take the Contact's last name, but for other object types we may leave this parameter out
- Parameter ContactEmail - (optional) The default value to include for the email address of the contact for 'Send to Contact' forms. As we are illustrating with the Contact record we are able to take the Contact's email, but for other object types we may leave this parameter out
- Parameter EnableUserView - (optional) A 'true' or 'false' flag to indicate whether to show the User's My Forms page in the Canvas App. Default is false.
- Parameter EnableObjectView- (optional) A 'true' or 'false' flag to indicate whether to show the Object Forms page in the Canvas App. Default is false.
- Parameter EnableNewForm- (optional) A 'true' or 'false' flag to indicate whether to show the New Form page in the Canvas App. Default is false.
- Parameter EnableGlobalSearch- (optional) A 'true' or 'false' flag to indicate whether to show the Search page in the Canvas App. Default is false.
- Parameter InitialView - (optional) The name of the page to present when the Canvas App loads. Valid values are 'UserView', 'ObjectView', 'NewForm', 'GlobalSearch'. Default is to initialise on the first included page on the left.
- Parameter FormCategoryFilter - (optional) {Version 15} A comma separated list of form category names to present in the New Form view. Category names should exactly match the names in Transaction Manager. Without this parameter, all available categories containing forms will be presented.

NOTE

The HTMLENCODE directive is required for parameter values to avoid unescaped characters.

# Add the Visualforce page to the Page Layout

1. Under App Setup, click Customize > Contacts > Page Layouts.
2. Under Contact Page Layouts find Contact Layout and click edit.
3. In the widget palette at the top, choose Visualforce pages.
4. Drag a new Section onto the page in the location you want the UI to appear.
5. Name it as Transact.
6. Clear the Edit Page and choose 1-Column layout.




7. Drag the Visualforce page into the section just created.
8. Click Save to update the changes.
9. Edit the Forms properties, set height to 350px and select Show Scrollbars.
10. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to enable access to restricted forms

# Configure Transact for Salesforce App

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can configure Manager to integrate it with the Salesforce App, which has to be done once before the first use.

> NOTE
>
> Check that the Salesforce support was included when Manager was installed.

To check the Salesforce support is included:

1. Log on to Manager.
2. Select Forms > Form Spaces and search for the Salesforce space.
3. If the Salesforce space exists, the installation was done correctly and you can proceed with the following configuration.
4. If the Salesforce support is not installed, submit a request to the Temenos Cloud Hosting Team (ACS portal) to install the Salesforce support module.

To configure your Manager environment to support the Transact for Salesforce App:

1. Create the API User Account in Manager
2. Import the Manager extension packages
3. Configure the imported modules

## Create the API User Account in Manager

> NOTE
>
> This step is only required if you are performing task assignment operations from Salesforce to Manager.

1. Select Security > User Accounts
2. Click New
3. Select the User Details tab and enter the following values:
   - Login Name - at4sf-client
   - User Type - Local

- Password - take a note of the password you use and ensure the Change Password After Login checkbox is unselected
- Given Name(s) - AT4SF
- Family Name - Client User
- Email - use the email address of your Manageror Salesforce administrator
- Portal - Manager

4. Click Save to update the changes.
5. Select the Roles tab and assign the Administrator role to the user.
6. Click Save to update the changes.
7. Select the Organizations tab and assign your organization to the user.
8. Click Save to update the changes.

## Configure the Salesforce API Client Details

1. Select Services > Service Connections
2. Locate the Salesforce Service Connection and configure its API credentials. Alternatively, for more restricted access you could create a new Salesforce API Invoke role with the following minimum permissions:
   - Admin Directory
   - Web Service Invoke
3. Click Save to update the changes.
4. Update the Security Manager settings as described in the Configure the Security Manager section below.

NOTE

You will need the connected app and Manager user details from Salesforce to complete this configuration. For more information, see how to retrieve the consumer key and secret for a Salesforce connected app and how to retrieve the security token for a Salesforce user account.

## Import the Manager Extension Packages

To import the following extension packages, ideally in this order:

1. AT4SF-SecurityManager.zip - Contains the OAuth2 Single Sign-On Security Manager. Imported under 'Security' > 'Security Managers' > 'Import'
2. AT4SF-Services.zip - Imported under 'Services' > 'All Services' > 'Import'

3. AT4SF-Canvas.zip - Contains the Canvas UI that is presented in the Salesforce Desktop environment. Imported under 'Forms' > ' Forms' > 'Import Form Version'. Select the target organization in the import wizard.
4. AT4SF-TestForm.zip - Optional test form handy for verifying the connectivity. Imported under 'Forms' > 'Forms' > 'Import Form Version'

## Configure the Salesforce User Space

NOTE

Check that the Salesforce support was included when Manager was installed.

To associate the forms with the space:

1. Select Forms>Organizations
2. Click on your organization
3. Select the Spaces tab and select the Salesforce space as an 'Assigned Space'
4. Click Save to update the changes.
5. Select Forms>Forms
6. For each of the forms you wish to show under the portal, click on the form name to edit the form
7. On the Spaces tab select the Salesforce space as an 'Assigned Space' and save
8. Don't forget to do this for the Salesforce App form 'AT4SF Canvas'

## Configure the Security Manager

NOTE

You will need the app connection details from Salesforce to complete this configuration.

The security manager needs to be configured against the target Salesforce connected app and assigned to the Salesforce User Space as follows:

1. Select Security > Security Managers
2. Locate and open the AT4SF-UserSecurityManager and navigate to the Parameters tab.

3. Edit the 'Client Id' and 'Client Secret' parameters and update to the Consumer Key and Consumer Secret values from the Salesforce connected app (see article linked above).
4. If required, edit the URI parameters to ensure the correct domain name is being used. By default the domain will be the primary Salesforce login domain but for sandbox environments this may need to be changed to test.salesforce.com.
5. If you are using a test Salesforce instance (where the login page is under https://test.salesforce.com/) you will need to update each of the 3 URI parameters accordingly (Auth Uri, Token Uri, User Info Uri):
    - Auth Uri - https://login.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/authorize https://test.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/authorize
    - Token Uri - https://login.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/token https://test.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/token
    - User Info Uri - https://login.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/userinfo https://test.salesforce.com/services/oauth2/userinfo
6. Click Save to update the changes.
7. Select Forms > Form Spaces, locate and edit the 'Salesforce' user space to ensure the Salesforce User Space is configured to use the correct security manager
8. On the 'Space' tab, ensure the 'AT4SF-UserSecurityManager' is selected in the 'Security Manager' field
9. Click Save to update the changes.

## Configure the Delivery Service and Delivery Channel

Before delivery into Salesforce can occur the Delivery Service needs to be referenced by an organization Delivery Channel as follows:

1. Select Forms > Organizations
2. Locate and open your organization and navigate to the 'Delivery Channels' tab.
3. Click 'New' and enter the following values
    - Name - Salesforce Push Delivery
    - Delivery Method - Delivery Process
    - Description Transact for Salesforce App Generic Push Delivery Channel
    - Delivery Process - AT4SF-DeliveryPush
4. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to configure a prefill generator in Salesforce.

# Make Forms Available for Salesforce Users

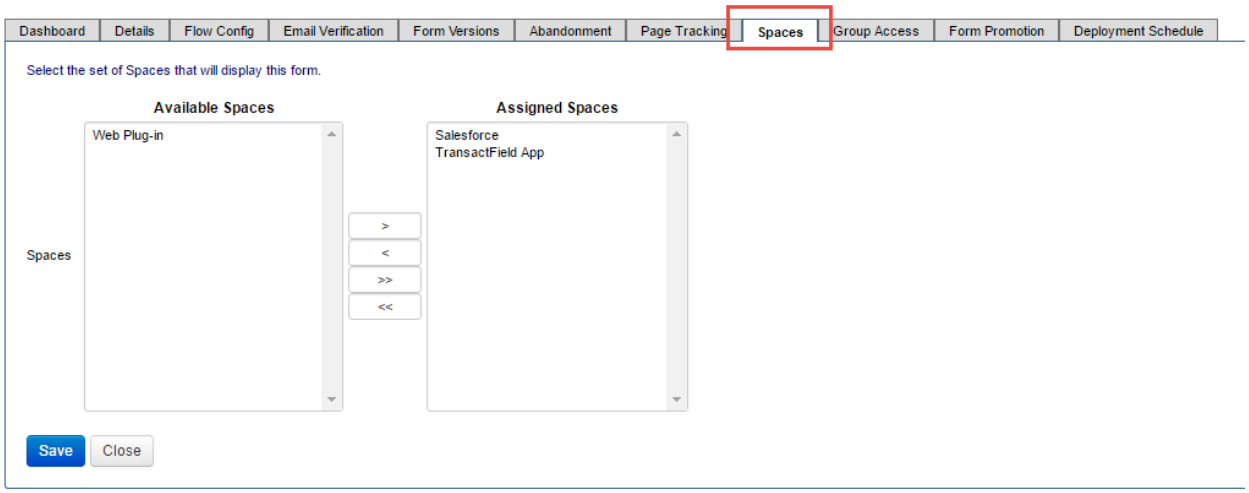
PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

To make a form available to Salesforce users it must be assigned into at least one form category and published to the Salesforce User Portal.

> NOTE
>
> Forms that are not published to the Salesforce User Portal or are not assigned into at least one form category will not appear in the Salesforce Desktop UI.

To make forms available:

1. Log onto Manager
2. Select Forms > Forms.
3. Find the form you wish to publish to Salesforce users, open it and navigate to the Spaces tab, image below.
4. Assign the form into the Salesforce form space.




5. Ensure the form is assigned to at least one category otherwise it will not be accessible from Salesforce.
6. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to populate a form with Salesforce prefill data

# Group Forms Using Form Categories

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Transact for Salesforce App uses form categories to visually group forms together, which allows users to find relevant forms quickly.

To group forms by form categories:

1. Log onto Manager
2. Select Forms > Organizations.
3. Locate an organization and select the Form Categories tab.
4. Click New to add the form categories.
5. Click Save to update the changes.
6. Select Forms > Forms.
7. Locate each active form version of the form you want to group and click Edit
8. Select the Form Categories tab and assign one or more categories to the form.
9. Click Save to update the changes.
10. Repeat the process for all forms you want to group.

Next, learn how to integrate Salesforce with Manager

# Configure Salesforce Delivery Channel

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Any form that must be delivered into Salesforce, for example, sent submissions to Salesforce, should be configured with the Salesforce Delivery Channel.

## Completed Transaction Delivery

1. Select Forms > Forms.
2. Locate and open the form you wish to configure and select the Details tab.
3. Under the Delivery Channels section, select the Salesforce delivery channel for Production Delivery, Test Delivery or both.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

## Abandoned Transaction Delivery

1. Select Forms > Forms.
2. Locate and open the form you wish to configure and select the Abandonment tab.
3. Under the Abandoned Transaction Delivery section, select the Salesforce delivery channel for Abandoned Delivery Channel.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

## Saved Transaction Delivery

1. Select Forms > Forms.
2. Locate and open the form you wish to configure, open the active version record and select the Services tab.
3. Select the AT4SF-SavedProcessor service for Form Saved Processor.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to configure a delivery processor in Salesforce.

# Configure a Prefill Generator in Salesforce

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can configure a prefill generator against a particular Manager form in Salesforce by following this process:

1. Identify the data in Salesforce that you wish to use for prefill. This configuration is done in Salesforce by defining a Prefill Generator in the Prefill Generation tab of the Manager app as described below.
2. Configure where that data will be injected into a form's XML data structure at render time. This configuration is done in the Form Data Config in Manager and is described here.

## Create the Prefill Generator Record

1. In the App Menu select Transact or simply view All Tabs, then select the Prefill Generation Tab and click New.
2. Enter the form code of the form - this value must exactly match the form code in Manager
3. Retain the default Prefill Generator Class, `TransactPrefillGenerator`, which allows you to provide JSON configuration to control which fields are included in the prefill generation
4. Specify the Generator Configuration as a JSON string according to the specification defined in this article
5. You may also specify a Sample SObject Id that will allow you to generate a Sample Prefill XML value and test your configuration (Note the SObject Id for a Salesforce object can be obtained from the URL while viewing that object)
6. Save
7. To test the configuration (where you have provided a Sample SObject Id), click the Generate Sample button - the generated prefill XML data will be added to the Sample Prefill XML field if your configuration is correct.
8. You may copy the sample prefill XML and use this in Transaction Manager to define your Input XML prefill mappings for the form.

## Managing Form Versions

Where you need to perform different prefill generation between multiple versions of a form you may append an array of versions to the form code attribute to target specific versions. For example, you may wish to have 2 separate prefill generators, one for the first version of the form and another for subsequent versions. This will allow you to configure the prefill generation for new form versions prior to activation of those versions.

To utilize this feature you must specify the specific version numbers as an array directly after the form code. Some samples assuming a form code of 'my-form':

- my-form - Default configuration to be used where no specific configuration is found for the requested version. Shorthand for use of wildcard my-form[*].
- my-form[10] - Configuration for version 10 of the form. Any versions other than 10 will fall back to the default configuration (where no version is specified).
- my-form[10,2.0,3.0] - Configuration for versions 10, 2.0 and 3.0 of the form.

## JSON Configuration Format

This section describes the syntax and supported directives of the JSON configuration consumed by the TransactPrefillGenerator class. This article assumes knowledge of JSON formatting. The JSON configuration should conform to the following structure:

```
{
    "parameters":{
        "<param-name>": "<param-value>"
    },
    "sobjects":{
        "<object-type-name>": {
            "includeFields": ["<field-name>", ... ],
            "includeRelated": ["<relationship-name>", ... ],
            "includeCustom": {"<custom-label>": "<custom-value>", ... }
        },
        ...
    }
}
```

The following example configuration illustrates all supported directives:

```
{
    "parameters":{
        "rootElementName": "SalesforceData"
    },
    "sobjects":{
        "Contact": {
            "includeFields":["Id","FirstName","LastName","Email","Phone","Title"],
            "includeRelated":["Account"],
            "includeCustom":{"FullName": "{!FirstName} {!LastName}"}
        },
        "Account": {
            "includeFields":["Name","Type","Industry"],
            "includeRelated":["Owner","Opportunities"]
        },
        "Opportunity": {
            "includeFields":["Name","Amount"]
        },
        "User": {
            "includeFields":["Name","Email","Username","Manager.Name"]
        }
    }
}
```

## Supported Parameters

rootElementName - The name to be given to the root element in the generated XML pre-fill data. Defaults to SFDCPrefillData. This is the optional parameter.

## Object Type Definition

A single JSON configuration can support any number of Salesforce object types, thereby allowing the form to be prefilled with many different object types. For example, the same form may be prefilled from a contact record or a lead record.

The configuration for an object type must be contained in an attribute labeled with the name of that object type. Note the configuration below for the Account object:

```
"Account": {
    "includeFields":["Name","Type","Industry"]
}
```

## Dealing with Complex Types

If you wish to prefill data from Salesforce that is contained in complex types (e.g. Addresses), you should configure the individual data sub-attributes in your prefill configuration. For example, if you want to prefill the Shipping Address from the Account object, your configuration should be similar to this:

```
{
    "sobjects":{
        "Account": {
            "includeFields":["Name","Ship-
pingStreet","ShippingCity","ShippingState","ShippingPostalCode","ShippingCountry"]
        }
    }
}
```

## The includeFields Directive (Required)

The includeFields directive is required for all object prefill definitions and allows you to explicitly specify the fields to be included in the prefill data with the following considerations:

- The field list should be provided as a comma separated list of string litterals where each item specifies the field name, not the label of the field.
- Parent and referential relationships can be leveraged by using the 'dot' notation to traverse the relationships by the name of the relationship (E.g. "includeFields": "FirstName,LastName,Owner.Name"). Note: if a child relationship is specified it will be ignored, but child relationships are supported in the includeRelated directive.
- Include the Id field if you want to support form user edits to the object information. If the Id value is present when the competed submission is processed on its return to Salesforce, the delivery processor may use this Id to update the object according to the updates made in the form.

## The includeRelated Directive (Optional)

The includeRelated directive is optional and allows you to specify related objects to include in the prefill data with the following considerations:

- Specifying a related entity requires that the object type definition exists in the JSON configuration for that related entity.
- The object type definition must specify the name of the object type, not the name of the relationship. As an example, consider the directive "includeRelated":"Owner". The relationship name is 'Owner' but the related entity is a 'User' so the JSON configuration must contain an object definition named 'User'.
- Child relationships are supported, provided that the object is not itself a child of the primary prefill entity.

## The includeCustom Directive (Optional)

- The includeCustom directive is optional an allows you to specify custom fields to include in the prefill data with the following considerations:
- Hard coded values may be used. E.g. "includeCustom":{"CampaignCode":"FF102"}
- Field references to the object context may be used but the referenced fields must be specified in the includeFields directive. E.g. "includeCustom":{"FullName": "{!FirstName} {!LastName}"}

## XML Prefill Data Generation

The TransactPrefillGenerator interprets the JSON configuration and generates the XML data used to prefill the form according to the following rules:

- XML root element is always named 'SFDCPrefillData' unless an alternative root element name is specified.
- Each sub-node within the root element represents a single Salesforce object or a list of objects
- All fields specified in the includeFields or includeCustom directives will be included in the object node
- Where a related field is specified in the includeFields directive (E.g. Manager.Name), that field will generated the parent object node in a containing element named according to the relationship
- Where the includeRelated directive includes a parent or referencial relationship (E.g. "includeRelated":"Owner"), the object node for the related object will be added to the XML root node and named according to the relationship, as shown below.

```
<Owner>
    <Name>Jeff Johnson</Name>
    <Manager>
        <Name>Jenny Quack</Name>
    </Manager>
</Owner>
```

- Where the includeRelated directive includes a child relationship, a list container node will be added to the XML root node and named according to the relationship, each object node within the container will be named with the object type name, as shown below

```
<Opportunities>
    <Opportunity>
        <Name>Chicago City Store Displays</Name>
        <Amount>$50,000.00</Amount>
    </Opportunity>
    <Opportunity>
        <Name>San Francisco Mobile Signage</Name>
        <Amount>$28,000.00</Amount>
    </Opportunity>
</Opportunities>
```

The following block illustrates an example of the XML prefill data produced by the generation engine:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<SFDCPrefillData>
    <Contact>
        <Id>00390000015C9LBAA0</Id>
        <FirstName>Kristen</FirstName>
        <LastName>Akin</LastName>
        <Title>Director, Warehouse Mgmt</Title>
        <Phone>(434) 555-3100</Phone>
        <Email>kakin@sony.com</Email>
        <FullName>Kristen Akin</FullName>
    </Contact>
    <Account>
        <Name>Volley Music</Name>
        <Type>Customer - Direct</Type>
        <Industry>Retail</Industry>
    </Account>
    <Owner>
        <Name>Jeff Johnson</Name>
        <Email>jj@domain.com</Email>
        <Username>jj@domain.com</Username>
        <Manager>
            <Name>Jenny Quack</Name>
        </Manager>
    </Owner>
    <Opportunities>
        <Opportunity>
            <Name>Chicago City Store Displays</Name>
            <Amount>$50,000.00</Amount>
        </Opportunity>
        <Opportunity>
            <Name>San Francisco Mobile Signage</Name>
            <Amount>$28,000.00</Amount>
        </Opportunity>
    </Opportunities>
    <User>
        <Name>Johny Lighning</Name>
        <Email>jl@domain.com</Email>
        <Username>jl@domain.com</Username>
        <Manager>
            <Name>Jack Sparrow</Name>
        </Manager>
```

```
    </User>
</SFDCPrefillData>
```

## Custom Prefill Generators

Where the default prefill generator does not provide the level of control required, you may define your own prefill generator by developing an APEX class that implements the ITransactPrefillGenerator interface. To utilize your custom prefill generator, simply specify the class name in the relevant Prefill Generator record and any configuration required by the class.

```
global interface ITransactPrefillGenerator {

    /**
     * This function generates the prefill XML data based on the config provided.
     *
     * @param prefillObjectId The Id of the object to use for prefill generation
     * @param formPrefillConfig The string containing the generation config
     * @return The generated prefill XML data
     */
    String generatePrefillXml(Id entityId, String config);
}
```

Next, learn how to configure the Transact for Salesforce App UI in Salesforce

# Populate a Form with Salesforce Prefill Data

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Configuration of form pre-population from Salesforce generated prefill data is managed by the standard Input XML Prefill Mappings in the form data config. For more information on how to configure prefill data generation in Salesforce, see this documentation.

To populate a form with Salesforce prefill data:

1. Log onto Manager
2. Select Forms > Forms
3. Locate and open the form you wish to pre-populate.
4. From the Dashboard tab open the Data Config page of the active form version and navigate to the 'Input XML Prefill Mapping' tab.
5. Click New Input XML and past the Sample Prefill XML from the Salesforce Prefill Generator, enter a version name.
6. Click Save to update the changes.
7. Click Edit XML Mapping and map each input data element with the target element in the form XML.
8. Click Save to update the changes.

The Input XML Prefill Mappings do not accommodate mapping for repeating elements, so if you are generating prefill data that has multiple records of information in it (e.g. all cases related to a contact) there is currently no simple process available out-of-the-box to map this into the form and a more customized solution will need to be assessed.

Next, learn how to receive administrator alerts when delivery processing fails.

# Configure a Delivery Processor in Sales-force

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can configure a delivery processing function against a particular Manager form in Salesforce, so that you can update your standard and custom Salesforce objects with data from the submitted form. The consideration as to which object to create or update in Salesforce is typically unique to the use case being targeted but often this involves the Contact or Lead objects.

For more information on the Salesforce standard objects, see Salesforce sales objects

## Create the Delivery Processor Record

1. In the App Menu select Transact or simply view All Tabs, then select the Delivery Processing Tab and click new.
2. Enter the form code of the form - this value must exactly match the form code in Manager.
3. Retain the default Delivery Processor Class, `TransactDeliveryProcessor`, which allows you to provide JSON configuration to control what objects are affected by the submission and how.
4. Specify the Processing Configuration as a JSON string, as described below.
5. Click Save to update the changes.

Delivery Trigger Types
Delivery records are received from Manager according to the specified triggers. Transactions are typically delivered when completed, but they can also be delivered when the transaction has been saved or deemed to be abandoned, to facilitate lead generation and follow up.

Managing Form Versions
Where you need to perform different delivery processing functions between multiple versions of a form you may append an array of versions to the form code attribute to target specific versions. For example, you may wish to have 2 separate delivery processing functions, one for the first version of the form and another for subsequent versions. This will allow you to continue to accept deliveries for in-flight transactions on old form versions after a new version is activated.
To utilize this feature you must specify the specific version numbers as an array directly after the form code. Some samples assuming a form code of 'my-form':

- my-form Default configuration to be used where no specific configuration is found for the requested version. Shorthand for use of wildcard my-form[*].
- my-form[10] Configuration for version 10 of the form. Any versions other than 10 will fall back to the default configuration (where no version is specified).
- my-form[10,2.0,3.0] Configuration for versions 10, 2.0 and 3.0 of the form.

## JSON Configuration Format

The TransactPrefillGenerator class uses the following JSON configuration:

```
{
    "parameters":{
        "<param-name>": "<param-value>"
    },
    "sobjects":{
        "<object-label>": {
            "type": "<object-api-name>",
            "matchFields": ["<field-name>", ... ],
            "insertFields": ["<field-name>", ... ],
            "updateFields": ["<field-name>", ... ],
            "sourceFields": {
                "<field-name>": "<field-mapping>",
                ...
            },
            "relations": {
                "<relationship-name>": "<object-label>",
                ...
            }
        },
        ...
    }
}
```

The following example configuration illustrates all supported directives:

```
{
    "parameters": {
        "formAssociationTarget":"new-case",
        "attachmentTarget":"new-case",
        "receiptTarget":"new-case",
        "caseNumber":"new-case.CaseNumber"
    },
    "sobjects": {
        "parent-account": {
            "type": "Account",
            "insertFields":[],
            "updateFields":[],
            "sourceFields" : {
                "Id":"[!XML://Account/AccountId]"
            }
        },
        "my-contact": {
            "type": "Contact",
            "matchFields":["LastName","Email"],
            "insertFields":["*"],
            "updateFields":["Email","Phone","MobilePhone","Title","Department"],
            "sourceFields" : {
                "Id":"[!XML://Contact/ContactId]",
                "Salutation":"[!XML://Contact/Title]",
                "FirstName":"[!XML://Contact/FirstName]",
                "LastName":"[!XML://Contact/LastName]",
                "Phone":"[!XML://Contact/Phone]",
                "MobilePhone":"[!XML://Contact/Mobile]",
                "Email":"[!XML://Contact/Email]",
                "Title":"[!XML://Contact/Position]",
                "Department":"[!XML://Contact/Department]"
            },
            "relations": {
                "Account": "parent-account"
            }
        },
        "new-case": {
            "type": "Case",
            "insertFields":["*"],
            "updateFields":["*"],
            "sourceFields" : {
```

```
                "Type":"[!XML://IssueDetails/IssueType]",
                "Reason":"[!XML://IssueDetails/Reason]",
                "Subject":"[!XML://IssueDetails/Summary]",
                "Description":"[!XML://IssueDetails/Description]",
                "Origin":"Web"
            },
            "relations": {
                "Account": "parent-account",
                "Contact": "my-contact"
            }
        }
    }
}
```

The list of supported parameters is shown below:

- formAssociationTarget - (Optional) The object (specified by referencing the relevant <object-label>) to associate the Manager form with so that it appears against that object in the Canvas App.
- attachmentTarget - (Optional) The object (specified by referencing the relevant <object-label>) to add the submitted attachments to.
- receiptTarget - (Optional) The object (specified by referencing the relevant <object-label>) to add the generated PDF receipt to.
- caseNumber - (Optional) The field (specified by referencing the <object-label>.<field-name>) from which to retrieve the Salesforce case number. This case number is returned to Manager and stored against the submission.

## Object Type Definition

A single JSON configuration can define impacts to any number of Salesforce objects. Each object configuration must be given a label that is unique in the configuration. Note the configuration below for a Contact object:

```
"my-contact": {
    "type": "Contact",
    "matchFields":["LastName","Email"],
    "insertFields":["*"],
    "updateFields":["Email","Phone","MobilePhone","Title","Department"],
    "sourceFields" : {
        "Id":"[!XML://Contact/ContactId]",
        "Salutation":"[!XML://Contact/Title]",
        "FirstName":"[!XML://Contact/FirstName]",
        "LastName":"[!XML://Contact/LastName]",
        "Phone":"[!XML://Contact/Phone]",
        "MobilePhone":"[!XML://Contact/Mobile]",
        "Email":"[!XML://Contact/Email]",
        "Title":"[!XML://Contact/Position]",
        "Department":"[!XML://Contact/Department]"
    },
    "relations": {
        "Account": "parent-account"
    }
}
```

## The matchFields Directive (Optional)

The Transact for Salesforce App version 15. The matchFields directive provides a basic de-duplication function by first searching for a matching record before determining whether to perform an insert or update. To utilize this optional function, provide an array of Salesforce field names that should be used to identify an existing record. If a record is found in Salesforce where ALL the listed fields are an exact match for the information provided in the form, this record will be updated.

- The field list should be provided as a comma separated list with no spaces or new lines where each item specifies the field name, not the label of the field.

For example, the following directive will cause the delivery processor to search for a Contact object with matching LastName and Email:

```
"my-contact": {
    "type": "Contact",
    "matchFields":["LastName","Email"],
    ...
```

## The insertFields Directive (Required)

The insertFields directive is required for all object definitions and allows you to explicitly define which fields will be used in an insert scenario (when an Id value is not available).

- The field list should be provided as a comma separated list with no spaces or new lines where each item specifies the field name, not the label of the field.
- The field list should not include the "Id" field.
- A wild card value of "*" may be used to denote that all sourced fields should be affected in the insert.

## The updateFields Directive (Required)

The updateFields directive is required for all object definitions and allows you to explicitly define which fields will be used in an update scenario (when an Id value is available).

- The field list should be provided as a comma separated list with no spaces or new lines where each item specifies the field name, not the label of the field.
- There is no need to include the "Id" field - it will be added automatically if it is available.
- A wild card value of "*" may be used to denote that all sourced fields should be affected in the update.

## The sourceFields Directive (Required)

The sourcefields directive is required for all object definitions and allows you to define the mappings from the submitted XML data into the object fields.

```
"sourceFields" : {
    "Id":"[!XML://Contact/ContactId]",
    "Salutation":"[!XML://Contact/Title]",
    "FirstName":"[!XML://Contact/FirstName]",
    "LastName":"[!XML://Contact/LastName]",
    ....
}
```

- Hard-coded values may be used instead of XML mappings where appropriate, for example, `"Origin":"Web"`

- XML mappings can be specified such that values from the XML submission data are injected into the fields at processing time. XML mappings must be structured, for example, `[!XML://<xml location>]`

  where <xml location> is the URI to the XML element containing the required value. Note the root XML node is not specified in the location.
  If your data contains repeating nodes than you may target a specific node index to pull data from a specific node by specifying the node index (starting at zero) in parentheses. For example the following mapping will pull the Email data element from the 2nd Applicant node in the XML:`[!XML://Applicants/Applicant(1)/Email]`

- Version 18. Lookup fields can be populated with record Ids of related objects by specifying a LOOKUP function that must be structured, for example, `[!LOOKUP://<object-name>?<field-name>=<field-value>[&<field-name>=<field-value>]`

  For example, the following lookup function will search for a Contact record with matching first name and last name and insert the resulting record Id into the Contact__c lookup field: `"Contact__c":"[!LOOKUP://Contact?FirstName=[!XML://Contact/FirstName]&LastName=[!XML://Contact/LastName]]"`

  The value will be left empty if no matching record is found. If multiple records are found, an exception will result.

## The relations Directive (Optional)

The relations directive is optional and allows you to specify object relationships to other objects defined in the configuration.

```
"relations": {
    "Account": "parent-account",
    "Contact": "my-contact"
}
```

For each relationship specified, the key value should match the name of a relationship against the object and the reference value should match an object label of the correct type specified in the configuration.

## XML Consumption

The example configuration above will consume the following XML submission data structure to create the new Case object and make updates to the contact information for the Contact:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<AvokaSmartForm>
    <Account>
        <AccountId>00128000002gH6DAAU</AccountId>
        <AccountName>Big Top Enterprises</AccountName>
        <Industry>Entertainment</Industry>
        <Website>www.bigtop.com</Website>
        <AccountRep>Ben Warner</AccountRep>
    </Account>
    <Contact>
        <ContactId>00328000001tCzaAAE</ContactId>
        <Title>Mr.</Title>
        <FirstName>Jolly</FirstName>
        <LastName>Roger</LastName>
        <Position>CEO</Position>
        <Department>Management</Department>
        <Phone>+61 2 9955 6600</Phone>
        <Mobile>0411 803 240</Mobile>
        <Email>jolly@bigtop.com</Email>
    </Contact>
    <IssueDetails>
        <IssueType>Problem</IssueType>
        <Reason>Instructions not clear</Reason>
        <Summary>Can't find where screw C3 goes</Summary>
        <Description>It is holding together but for how long?</Description>
    </IssueDetails>
</AvokaSmartForm>
```

## Custom Delivery Processors

Where the default delivery processor does not provide the level of control required, you may define your own delivery processor by developing an APEX class that implements the ITransactDeliveryProcessor interface. To utilize your custom delivery processor,

simply specify the class name in the relevant Delivery Processor record and any configuration required by the class.

```
global interface ITransactDeliveryProcessor {

    /**
     * This function processes the delivery record based on the config provided.
     *
     * @param delivery The Transact Delivery object to be processed
     * @param processorConfig The string containing the processing config
     */
    void processDelivery(Transact_Delivery__c delivery, String config);
}
```

The following custom delivery processor class is configured to send an email to an inbox when the submission is delivered to Salesforce.

```
global class CustomDeliveryProcessor implements avoka.ITransactDeliveryProcessor {

    public void processDelivery(avoka__Transact_Delivery__c delivery, String pro-
cessorConfig){
        System.debug('Custom Delivery Processor: ' + delivery.Name);

        Messaging.SingleEmailMessage mail = new Messaging.SingleEmailMessage();
        String[] toAddresses = new String[] {'salesforce@avoka.com'};
        mail.setToAddresses(toAddresses);
        mail.setSubject('Custom Delivery Processor: ' + delivery.Name);
        mail.setPlainTextBody('Processing complete: ' + delivery.Name);
        Messaging.sendEmail(new Messaging.SingleEmailMessage[] { mail });
    }
}
```

To configure your custom delivery processor to be used you must enter the class name in the Delivery Processor object with the appropriate form code. The default value is 'TransactDeliveryProcessor' - you can modify this to be your own class name and it will be used instead of the default. You can also specify your own configuration data if required - your processor class will receive this configuration in the 'config' string parameter in the processDelivery() method signature.

If you have any trouble getting your custom delivery processor class to be used, use the `global` keyword in the class declaration to ensure it is visible to the package.

Next, learn how to configure Manager to support the Transact for Salesforce App.

# Restrict Access for Selected Forms to User Groups

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can configure access restrictions for selected forms to specific user groups. By default, access to forms is unrestricted within the security context of the form. To restrict access for select form to certain user groups we need to first create a form group and then allocate users and forms into that group.

## Create the Form Group

1. Log onto Manager.
2. Select Security > Groups.
3. Click New.
4. Enter the name that you'd like to call the group, relevant to the type of users who will be members of the group.
5. Select Form in the Type dropdown list.
6. Enter a description and select the required group user access control settings.
7. Its recommended to enable all settings unless there are specific reasons not to.
8. Click Save to update the changes.

## Add Users to the Form Group

Users will not have access to forms in form group until they are added to the form group.

1. Log onto Manager.
2. Select Security > Groups.
3. Select the group you wish to manage and click the Members tab and add users to the group as required.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

## Assign Forms to the Form Group

1. Log onto Manager.
2. Select Forms > Forms.

3. Select the form you wish to manage.
4. Click the Group Access tab and assign the form into the available groups as required.
5. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to retrieve the consumer key and secret for the Salesforce app.

# Enable Access to Restricted Forms

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Salesforce administrators can enable access to restricted forms to certain user groups within Salesforce if the restricted form groups have already been established in Manager.

To enable access to restricted form groups, a Salesforce Public Group must be created with the identical name to the Form Group in Manager.

1. Under Administration Setup, select Manage Users, and click Public Groups.
2. Click New.
3. Enter the label and name of the group, ensuring that the Label is identical to associated Form Group name in Manager.
4. Configure the membership to the group.
5. Click Save to update the changes.

Now, users who are members of the public group will automatically gain access to the restricted forms the next time they load the Canvas app.

Next, learn how to enable access to Transact for Salesforce App

# Receive Administrator Alerts when Delivery Processing Fails

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

You can activate administrator alerts to one or more users, when a delivery processing failure occurs.

When delivery processing for a particular transaction fails, it will be identified in the Delivery Log with a status of 'Failed' and failure reason will be available in the Processing Message field.

Delivery processing failure alerts are sent out to anyone who has the Transact Administrator permission set on their account. To add this permission set to a user account:

1. Select Administration Setup > Manage Users > Users.
2. Locate and open the user account.
3. Select Permission Set Assignments and click Edit Assignments.
4. Move the Transact Administrator permission set from the Available to the Enabled column.
5. Click Save to update the changes.

Next, learn how to remove password expiry on a Salesforce user account.

# Transact for Salesforce App Troubleshooting

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

If the integration between Manager and Salesforce is not working as expected, you can start troubleshooting by reviewing the error log, which can quickly reveal the cause of the issue.

The list of the common problems - solutions is listed below.

## Content cannot be displayed: You do not have sufficient privileges to access the page: /apex/Avoka_Transact_Lead

### Problem

Some of your users are getting a message displayed when they try to access the Transact for Salesforce App visualforce page in a page layout:

> ERROR
>
> Content cannot be displayed: You do not have sufficient privileges to access the page: /apex/Avoka_Transact_Lead

This issue may occur if you have enabled security around the visualforce page that does not include the profile of the user trying to access the page.

### Solution

To resolve this issue you must enable page access to the users profile:

1. Select Setup > Develop and then select the Visualforce Pages.
2. Click the Security link next to the target page.
3. Add the profiles that require access to the page.
4. Click Save to update the changes.

### Reference

https://help.salesforce.com/apex/HTViewHelpDoc?id=pages_security_page_def.htm&language=en_US

## Could not identify SObject type <X>

### Problem

When processing a delivery an exception is thrown with error message:

Could not identify SObject type <X>

where <X> is an object type specified in your delivery processor configuration.

### Solution

This issue indicates that there is a problem with the delivery processor configuration. You need to check that you have specified all the SObject types correctly in your configuration.

## Delivery Error: No such column 'avoka__Delivery_Trigger_Type__c' on sobject of type avoka__Transact_Delivery__c

### Problem

The Manager delivery process fails with error message:

```
ERROR
SalesForceException[response=[ { "message" : "No such column 'avoka__Delivery_Trigger_Type__c' on sobject of type avoka__Transact_Delivery__c", "errorCode" : "INVALID_FIELD" } ], operation=perform
```

This issue relates to insufficient permissions on the Salesforce side and is caused by missing permissions for Manager administrator permission set prior to version 1.10 of the in the Transact for Salesforce App.

The Manager administrator permissions should have full permissions on the Delivery Log, Delivery Processing, Post Log, and Prefill Generation objects . In Transact for

Salesforce App versions prior to 1.10, you will notice a number of missing permissions when you view the object settings of this packaged permission set, as shown below.

**Field Permissions**

| Field Name | Read | Edit |
|---|---|---|
| Affected Sobject Id | ☑ | ☑ |
| Attachment Count | ☑ | ☐ |
| Attachment Metadata | ☐ | ☐ |
| Case Number | ☑ | ☑ |
| Created By | ☑ | ☐ |
| Data Extracts | ☐ | ☐ |
| Delivery Trigger Type | ☐ | ☐ |
| Form Code | ☑ | ☑ |
| Form Name | ☐ | ☐ |
| Form Version | ☐ | ☐ |
| Job Reference Code | ☐ | ☐ |
| Last Modified By | ☑ | ☐ |
| Owner | ☑ | ☑ |
| Payment Amount | ☑ | ☐ |
| Payment Gateway Receipt Number | ☑ | ☐ |
| Payment Gateway Timestamp | ☑ | ☐ |
| Payment Gateway Transaction Number | ☑ | ☐ |
| Portal Name | ☐ | ☐ |
| Processed Timestamp | ☑ | ☐ |
| Processing Message | ☑ | ☑ |
| Processing Status | ☑ | ☐ |
| Submission Data | ☑ | ☑ |
| Submission Key | ☑ | ☑ |
| Submission Timestamp | ☑ | ☐ |
| Sync Status | ☐ | ☐ |
| Tracking Code | ☑ | ☑ |
| Transaction Score | ☑ | ☑ |
| Transaction Status | ☐ | ☐ |
| User Name | ☑ | ☑ |

### Solution

NOTE

This issue is only applicable to versions of the Transact for Salesforce App prior to 1.10. The permission set in version 1.10 has the missing permissions added.

As the Manager administrator permission set is part of a managed package, it cannot be modified in your org. To resolve this issue, you will need to create a new permission set that has all permissions enabled for the 4 objects.

1. Under Administer, click Manage Users > Permission Sets
2. Under Permission Sets, click New and enter the label of the new permission set
    - Label - Transact Administrator 1
    - Description - Used to activate missing permissions in the Manager administrator permission set
    - User License - blank
3. Click Save to update the changes.
4. Edit the Object Settings of the permission set to activate all object and field permissions for the 4 objects:
    - Delivery Log
    - Delivery Processing
    - Prefill Generation
    - Post Log
5. Ensure all read and edit permissions are granted to these objects.
6. Click Save to update the changes.
7. Allocate this new permission set to the Manager user.

## Delivery Error: The requested resource does not exist

### Problem

The Manager delivery process in fails with error message:

ERROR

SalesForceException[response=[ { "errorCode" : "NOT_FOUND", "message" : "The requested resource does not exist" } ]

### Solution

This error indicates that the delivery process cannot find the delivery target objects in Salesforce. To resolve this issue:

1. Ensure that the app is installed in Salesforce.
2. If the license is limited to a number of seats, then the API user must be licensed for the app in order to access the Manager delivery objects.

## Delivery Processing Error: Field <X> on <Y> is not CREATEABLE by <Z>

### Problem

When processing a delivery an error is reported with message:

```
ERROR
Delivery Processing Error: Field <X> on <Y> is not CREATEABLE by <Z>
```

X is the target object name, Y is the field being updated and Z is the user name. The same error may also appear with the key word UPDATEABLE.

### Solution

This is a permission related problem and relates to the security around field updates on the object. Ensure the active user specified in the error message has the appropriate permissions to the target field.

## Insufficient Privileges: You do not have the level of access necessary to perform the operation you requested...

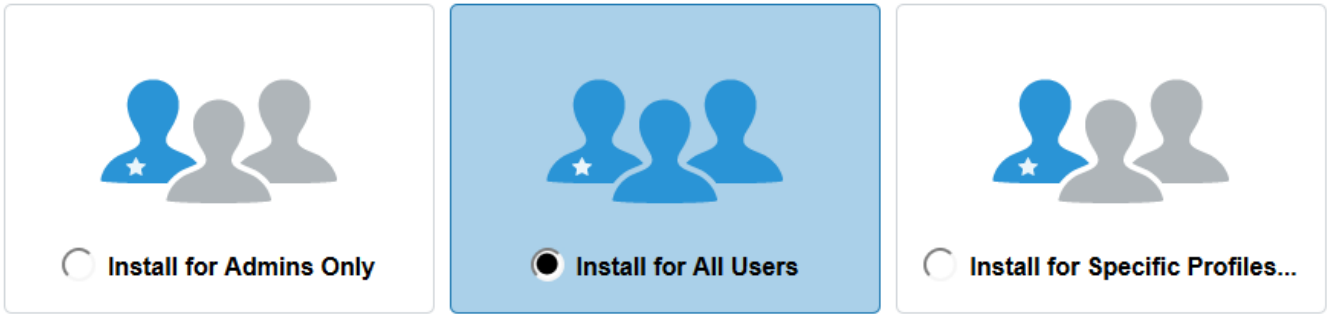
### Problem

While trying to access the Transact for Salesforce App Visualforce page component some users are denied access with the following message:

ERROR

Insufficient Privileges
You do not have the level of access necessary to perform the operation you requested. Please contact the owner of the record or your administrator if access is necessary. For more information, see Insufficient Privileges Errors.

This problem may be encountered if the package was installed for access by Admins Only or Selected Profiles instead of for All Users.




### Solution

To resolve this issue, add the Manager user permission set to all required user accounts:

1. In the Setup menu search for Permission Sets and select the menu item to open the Permission Sets page.
2. Find the Journey Manager User permission set and open it, then select the Manage Assignments button.
3. Select Add Assignments and assign all required users to the permission set.

## Missing "Reset My Security Token" Option

### Problem

After creating the Manager user in Salesforce, no security token was emailed out and when logged in as that user the option to Reset My Security Token is not available as described here.

### Solution

If you do not see the option to reset your token, you may be using IP Login Restrictions in Salesforce. For more information on why this menu option may not be available to your user, see the Salesforce documentation.

If you have further questions about IP Login Restrictions, contact Salesforce support for further assistance.

## Post Request: 403 Forbidden - You don't have permission to access /manager/secure/GroovyServiceServlet on this server

### Problem

When attempting to push a task from Salesforce to Manager using the post request object in Salesforce you may receive an error indicating that the HTTP request failed:

```
ERROR

403 Forbidden - You don't have permission to access /manager/secure/GroovyServiceServlet on this server.
```

This may be due to IP white-listing on the Manager server rejecting access from the Salesforce server.

### Solution

Add the Salesforce IP ranges to the Manager IP while-list as described here.

## Salesforce API Authentication Failure (Invalid Grant)

### Problem

Calls to Salesforce from Manager are failing with an authentication error:

```
ERROR

SalesForceException[response={"error_description":"authentication failure","error":"invalid_grant"}
```

If you are receiving delivery error when trying to deliver to Salesforce, check the error log for the error message above.

### Solution

This issue can be caused due to one of the following reasons:

- Invalid or incorrect credentials being used in the Salesforce Connection parameters
- Insufficient privileges assigned to the API user in Salesforce

To resolve this issue, try the following steps:

1. Re-enter the username, password and security token for the Salesforce Service Connection.
2. Ensure that the Salesforce API user has the following required permissions:
    - The user must have API access.
    - The user must have permission to write to the Manager custom objects.
    - Ensure the user is associated with a profile that is Admin approved for use of the Manager connected app.
3. If you have IP Restrictions in place in your Salesforce environment, double check that the IP ranges cover the Manager environment you are receiving the error on. You can check with the Manager cloud hosting team to verify the IP ranges for your environments.

## Sorry, you are not licensed to use the Transact solution

### Problem

Trying to access the Transact for Salesforce App Visualforce page component and getting a message saying:

> ERROR
>
> Sorry, you are not licensed to use the Transact solution. Please consult your Salesforce Administrator.

### Solution

Your user is not licensed for use of the package, a Salesforce administrator needs to add you as a licensed user.

Next, learn about Transact for Salesforce App.

# Transact for Salesforce App Installation

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

For any new deployment of Transact for Salesforce App, you should use the latest available version compatible with your Manager instance, as shown in the compatibility matrix below.

| Transact for Salesforce App Version | Release Date | Improvements | Manager Version |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.11 | August 24, 2017 | Resolved issue with encoding of Post Request data | 4.3 |
| 1.10 | March 7th, 2016 | Point release to accommodate customer driven features and bug fixes | 4.3 |
| 1.8 | December 16th, 2015 | Point release to accommodate customer driven features and bug fixes | 4.3 |
| 1.6 | December 2nd, 2015 | Minor patch release to improve permissions around Apex class access. No functional changes are included. | 4.3 |
| 1.5 | November 28th, 2015 | Point release to provide client requested features and bug fixes. | 4.3 |
| 1.4 | September 23rd, 2015 | This is the original AppExchange version containing baseline features. | 4.2 |

The latest Salesforce portal war files are listed below.

| Manager Version | Portal WAR File |
|---|---|
| 4.3.4+ | Manager version 4.3.4 and higher has the Salesforce form space war file built into the Journey Manager installer.<br>avoka-sf-portal-salesforce433.war |
| 4.3.3 | NOTE<br>Journey Manager version 4.3.3 is EOL, so you must upgrade to newest Journey Manager, which includes the Salesforce portal. |

avoka-sf-portal-salesforce432.war

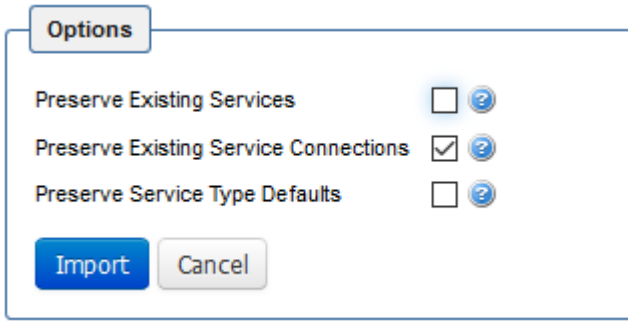
4.3.2

> NOTE
>
> Journey Manager version 4.3.2 is EOL, so you must upgrade to newest Journey Manager, which includes the Salesforce portal.

The Salesforce app can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts.

## Service Definition Import Options

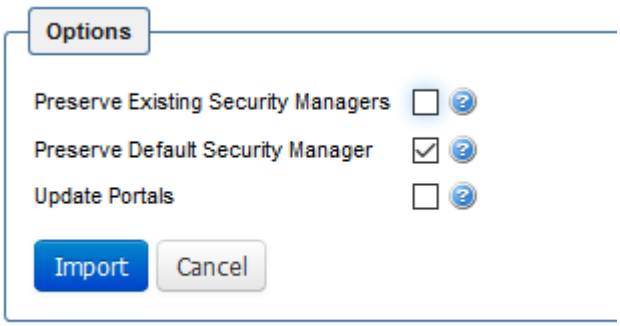
When importing service definitions deselect the Preserve Existing Services option in the import wizard while leaving the Preserve Existing Service Connections option selected:




Once you have imported new versions of the services you are required to manually activate these service versions and where appropriate, update the configurations that refer to the old version of the service to point to the new version.

## Security Manager Import Options

When importing the security manager, deselect the Preserve Existing Security Managers option, as shown below.



Importing the security manager in this way will overwrite the parameters you have specified against this security manager, so make a backup copy of them first. In particular, the Client Id and Client Secret properties should be backed up and re-set after import.

Once you have imported new versions of the services you are required to manually activate these service versions and where appropriate, update the configurations that refer to the old version of the service to point to the new version.

Next, learn about Transact for Salesforce App troubleshooting.

# Installation Assets Version 14

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Salesforce app version 14 is the original AppExchange version containing baseline features.

Release date is September 23rd, 2015.

It requires Manager version 4.2 and higher.

NOTE

This release version has been superseded. Please install the latest version of the App.

## New Features

None

## Issues Resolved

This is the original AppExchange version containing baseline features.

## Installation Assets

The Salesforce App can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts:

- Production: https://-login.salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t900000002ZZ8

Next, learn how to install Transact for Salesforce App.

# Installation Assets Version 15

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Salesforce app version 15 is a point release to provide client requested features and bug fixes.

Release date is November 28th, 2015.

It requires Manager version 4.3 and higher.

## New Features

- SAE-085 Match Fields - You can now optionally specify the set of unique fields for an object type (e.g. LastName and Email for a Lead) and the delivery processor will find the existing record for update rather than insert. This feature was added to assist in the management of duplicate records.
- SAE-151Administrator Alerts - Anyone with the Transact Administrator permission set in Salesforce will receive email notifications when delivery processing fails.
- SAE-055 Form Category Filter - In the visual force page to include the Canvas UI you can now optionally specify which categories you want to appear on the New Form page. This can be different for each instance of the Canvas. If not specified, all categories will be presented.
- SAE-146 Abandoned Forms – Abandoned forms will now appear in the search results (requires Transaction Manager 4.3). When a form becomes abandoned, customers cannot access it anymore. We've added a Reactivate link that is presented for abandoned forms where the data has not yet been purged. The reactivate link will re-open the form for access.
- SAE-147 Enhanced Customer Link - Provided the ability to copy a portal specific URL for an active form by selecting the portal from a drop down. This is to cater for the situation where customers interact with a different portal to staff.
- SAE-152 Reload page button - On all UI pages other than Search, the reload button will refresh the content of the page.

## Issues Resolved

- SAE-135 Authentication Provider Issues - Resolved issues where existing users were not getting added to the current organization and portal when they re-authenticate under certain conditions.
- SAE-148 Incorrect Created Time - Resolved issue where the created time of a form was showing incorrect values under certain conditions.

## Installation Assets

The Salesforce App can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts:

- Production: https://-login.salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t900000002ZjX

The following installation archives should be used to setup Manager:

- Service Definitions: AT4SF-Services-15.zip
- Security Manager: AT4SF-SecurityManager-15.zip
- Canvas UI Form Version: AT4SF-Canvas-15.zip
- Test Form Version: AT4SF-TestForm-10.zip

Next, learn how to install Transact for Salesforce App.

# Installation Assets Version 16

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Salesforce app version 16 is a minor patch release to improve permissions around Apex class access. No functional changes are included.

Release date is December 2nd, 2015.

It requires Manager version 4.3 and higher.

## New Features

None

## Issues Resolved

- Improves permissions around Apex class access.

## Installation Assets

The Salesforce App can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts:

- Production: https://-login.salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t90000000Y1N0

No change to the Manager installation assets since version 15.

Next, learn how to install Transact for Salesforce App.

# Installation Assets Version 18

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Salesforce app version 18 resolves issues to accommodate customer driven features and bug fixes.

Release date is December 16th, 2015.

It requires Manager version 4.3 and higher.

## New Features

- SAE-166 Lookup Fields - Add support for the mapping of form data to lookup field references.

## Issues Resolved

- SAE-161Relationship between the transaction and the current object not created where no prefill service is specified for the form
- SAE-163 Exception thrown if Delivery Processor not configured for specified form code
- SAE-164 Null Pointer if SObjectType not found
- SAE-167 Exception in delivery mapping to Boolean, Decimal or Date fields

## Installation Assets

The Salesforce App can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts:

- Production: https://-login.salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t90000000Y1SP

The following installation archives should be used to setup Manager:

- Service Definitions: AT4SF-Services-18.zip
- Security Manager: AT4SF-SecurityManager-15.zip
- Canvas UI Form Version: AT4SF-Canvas-15.zip
- Test Form Version: AT4SF-TestForm-10.zip

Next, learn how to install Transact for Salesforce App.

# Installation Assets Version 1.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Salesforce app version 1.10 resolves issues to accommodate customer driven features and bug fixes.

Release date is March 7th, 2016.

It requires Manager version 4.3 and higher.

## New Features

- SAE-173 - Support for date time fields in delivery mapping
- SAE-175 - New Preprocessor service option
- SAE-176 - New Completed Processor service option

## Issues Resolved

- SAE-168 - Exception if relationship parent is not found in delivery processing
- SAE-169 - Auto role assignment not working in Auth Provider due to error code
- SAE-174 - Manual Delivery Processing ignores trigger type (always executes Completed Transaction processing)

## Installation Assets

The Salesforce App can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts:

- Production: https://-login.salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t90000000Y1cA
- Sandbox: https://test.-salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t90000000Y1cA

The following installation archives should be used to setup Manager:

- Service Definitions: AT4SF-Services-1.10.zip
  - New service AT4SF-PushToSalesforce - performs submission delivery to Salesforce and is used as a sub process by other services

    - New service AT4SF-CompletedProcessor - provides a service option for delivery to Salesforce on the Submission Completed event
    - New service AT4SF-Preprocessor - provides a service option for delivery to Salesforce on the Submission Preprocessor event
    - Updated service AT4SF-DeliveryPush (v3) - now offloads delivery process to AT4SF-PushToSalesforce
    - Updated service AT4SF-SaveProcessor (v2) - now offloads delivery process to AT4SF-PushToSalesforce
- Security Manager: AT4SF-SecurityManager-1.1.0.zip
- Canvas UI Form Version: AT4SF-Canvas-1.5.zip
- Test Form Version: AT4SF-TestForm-1.0.zip

Next, learn how to install Transact for Salesforce App.

# Installation Assets Version 1.11

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Salesforce app version 1.11resolves issue with encoding of Post Request data.

Release date is August 24, 2017.

It requires Manager version 4.3 and higher.

## New Features

None.

## Issues Resolved

- SAE-179 Post log fails if data contains '&' symbol - When using the Post Log with prefill data from Salesforce objects that contains special symbols like '&' (e.g. "Walker & Sons") the post request content is corrupted.

## Installation Assets

The Salesforce App can be installed into the Salesforce Organization by clicking this link and following the prompts:

- Production: https://-login.salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t90000000JDR9
- Sandbox: https://test.-salesforce.com/packaging/installPackage.apexp?p0=04t90000000JDR9

The following installation archives should be used to setup Transaction Manager:

- Service Definitions: AT4SF-Services-1.10.zip
- Security Manager: AT4SF-SecurityManager-1.11zip
- Canvas UI Form Version: AT4SF-Canvas-1.5.zip
- Test Form Version: AT4SF-TestForm-1.0.zip

Next, learn how to install Transact for Salesforce App.

# Transact Integration Gateway Overview

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | System Manager / DevOps | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

NOTE

Although Transact Integration Gateway (TIG) continues to receive support, it is recommended that Temenos Journey Manager solution builders move away from using TIG and instead use Journey Manager REST APIs to build Temenos Journey Manager solutions. Continuing to use TIG may complicate an upgrade path when TIG is eventually deprecated in a future release.

## Overview

Transact Integration Gateway (TIG) is a lightweight gateway for performing on premise business integration. Customers using a cloud environment often have integration requirements for:

- Dynamic data lookups or data validations to internal systems.
- Straight through processing, when customers submit applications.
- Background transaction delivery integration in internal systems.
- Uploading form prefill reference data to the cloud servers.

Using the Transact Integration Gateway, customers can implement integrations like these quickly without additional software licenses.

If you already have integration gateway capabilities with solutions such as IBM Power Gateway or Mulesoft API Gateway, you may choose to use these. However, if you don't need the complexity of these solutions, the simpler Transact Integration Gateway may be suitable, and is an excellent option for performing delivery integration.

The Journey SDK for Java provides a Java API for Manager services, so you can build applications that integrate directly with them. Journey SDK documentation is available online as well as being included in the Journey SDK download package (authentication required) available from our resources web site. (authentication required).

NOTE

TIG is largely unchanged since TIG v4.3, so it is compatible with current Transact and Journey platform releases.

# Usage and Deployment Models

The deployment model for TIG is to install the application on premise inside a DMZ or a secure location. The application is designed to be very easy to install and configure. You can literally install the application and perform transaction data delivery within minutes.

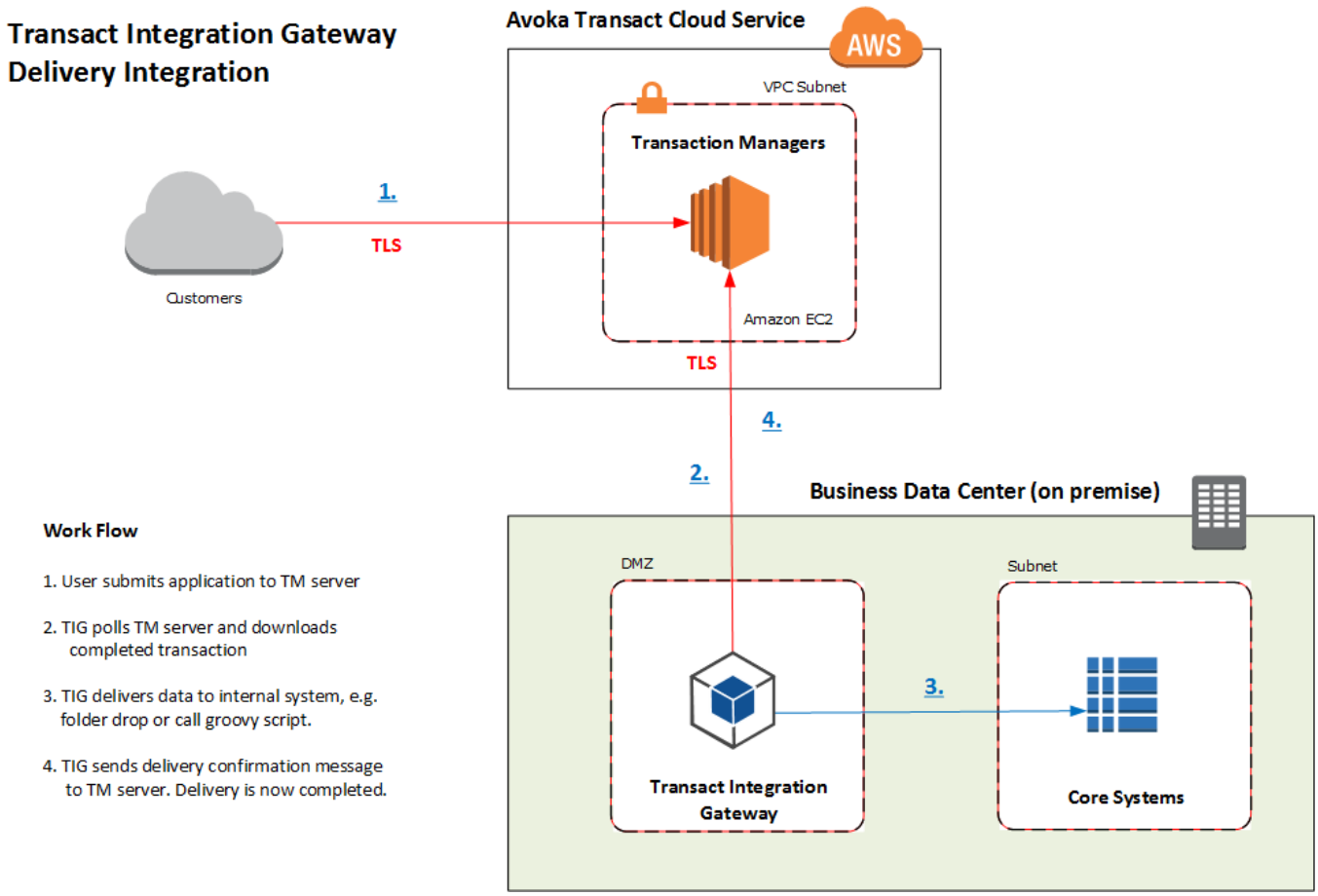
For High Availability (HA) deployment models you would typically install the two TIG applications on separate servers in different availability zones. TIG uses a stateless architecture, with configuration maintained in local JSON[1] configuration files. There is no requirement for a shared database to support HA usage.

## Delivery Integration

A typical use of TIG is to perform transaction delivery integration. In this deployment model, TIG is used to pull down completed transactions from the Cloud Hosted Journey Manager servers, and deliver this data into internal systems.

This usage model is illustrated in the diagram below.

[1] JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.




For straight delivery integration, there is no requirement for TIG to be externally accessible. All network calls are outgoing from TIG to Manager servers. To complete transaction delivery, TIG needs to be able to write transaction data files to a secure and high availability file store such as a SAN, or it should be able to call other internal systems to complete delivery.

When internal transaction delivery has been completed, TIG will send a positive delivery confirmation message to the Manager server. Once this has been done, the transaction data on the server can either be deleted immediately or made available for scheduled data purging.

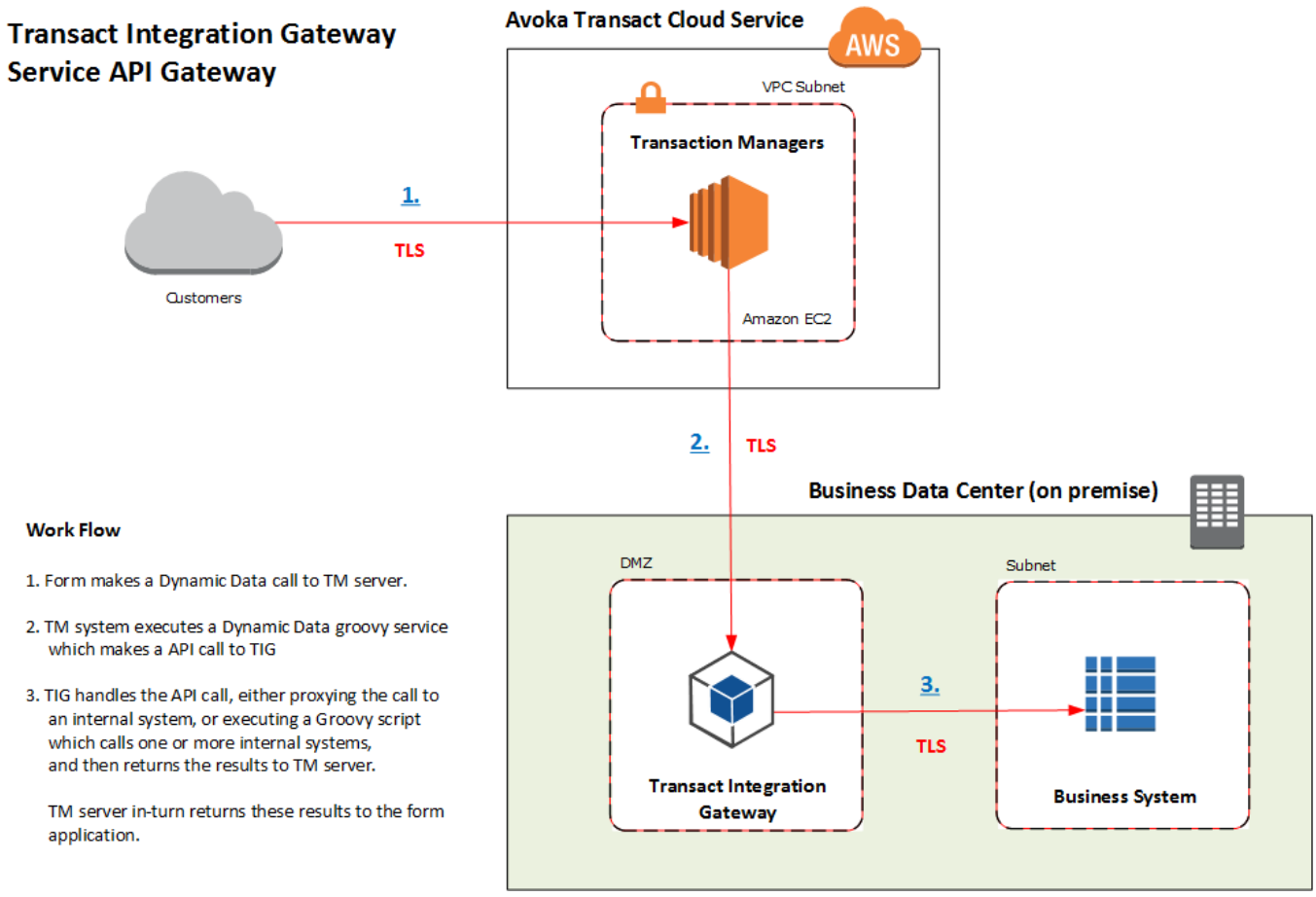
## Service API Gateway

TIG can be used as a Service API Gateway to enable Cloud Manager servers to make real-time (synchronous) API calls to internal business systems. These calls are typically to perform operations like:

- perform a security check before the user opens a saved form
- prefill a form with the customer's profile data

- make a form dynamic data call to perform data verification, such as Identity Verification (IDV)
- straight through processing, when a customer submits an application resulting in an account being opened and the details returned to the user

This usage model is illustrated in the diagram below.




Operating as a Service API Gateway, TIG supports two modes of operation:

- **Service API Proxy** - TIG acts as a proxy routing the external call to an internal system
- **Groovy Service Execution** - TIG calls a Groovy[1] script to perform one or more calls to internal systems

---

[1] Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

By using TIG as a Service API Gateway, access to internal systems can be strictly controlled and no internal network information is exposed externally.

**Gateway Security**

To provide security access control policies to protect internal Service APIs, we recommend a combination of the following security controls:

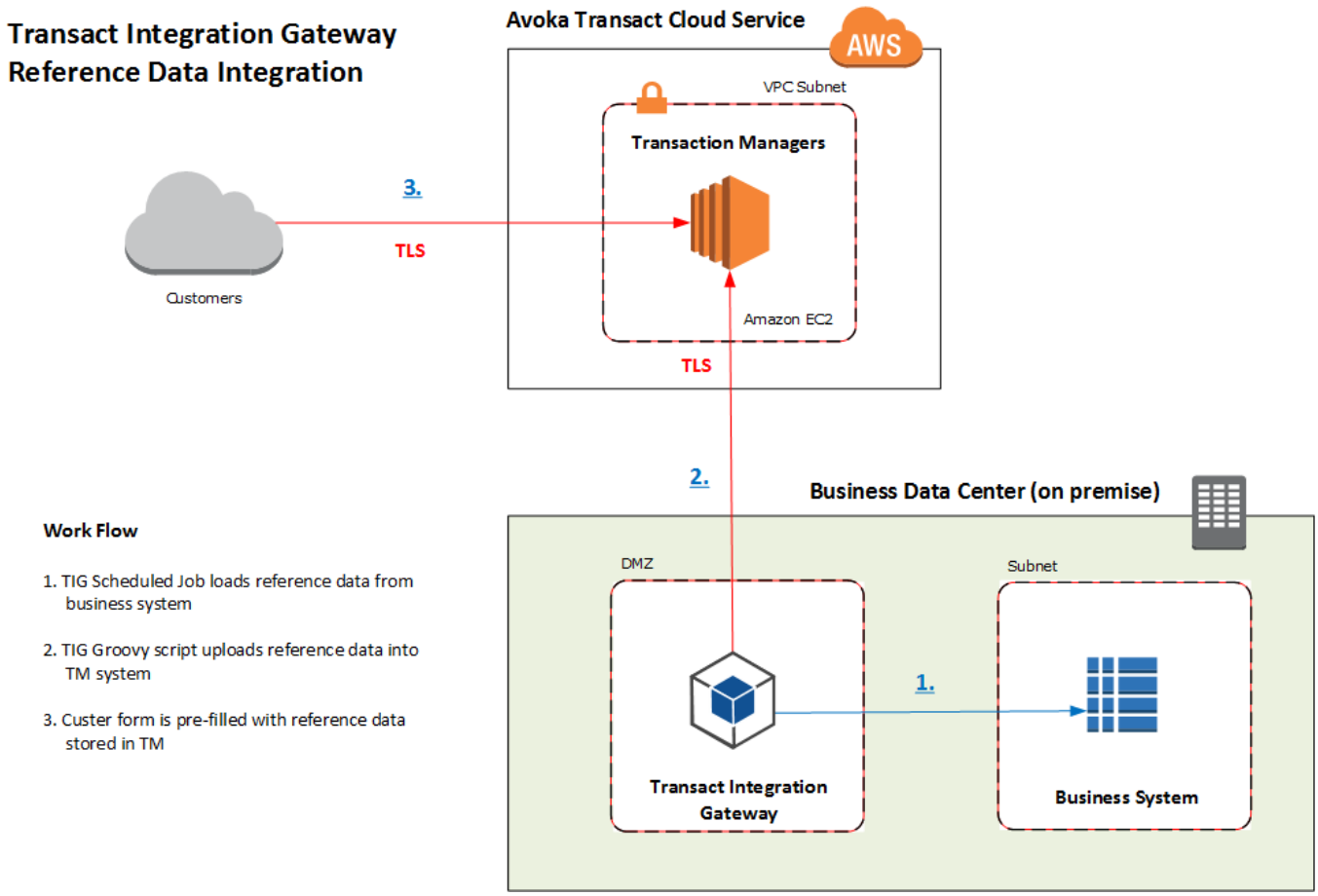
- Transport Layer Security (TLS) protection for all network calls
- IP address white list with TIG only accepting calls from configured Manager servers (configured on switch and TIG)
- BASIC authentication over TLS, with TIG only allowing authenticated requests
- Virtual Private Network (VPN) between business data center and AWS Virtual Private Cloud (VPC)
- Mutual SSL authentication between Manager calls and TIG

TIG utilizes Apache for TLS termination and uses ModSecurity as an Web Application Firewall (WAF) to provided additional protection to the Service API Gateway.

## Reference Data Integration

Another use for TIG is to upload reference data from business systems into Cloud Hosted Manager servers where it can be used for form prefill or form dynamic data.

This usage model is illustrated in the diagram below.




For uploading reference data, there is no requirement for TIG to be externally accessible. All network calls outgoing from TIG are to Manager servers.

TIG provides a Quartz Job scheduler facility which is used for performing background jobs. The job scheduler supports sophisticated CRON[1] expressions and simple interval based scheduling to invoke Groovy[2] scripts to perform integration tasks.

Next, learn about installing and configuring Transact Integration Gateway.

---

[1]Cron is a time-based job scheduler in Unix-like computer operating systems. People who set up and maintain software environments use cron to schedule jobs (commands or shell scripts) to run periodically at fixed times, dates, or intervals.

[2]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

# Transact Integration Gateway Setup

Platform Applicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | System Manager / DevOps | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

NOTE

Although Transact Integration Gateway (TIG) continues to receive support, it is recommended that Temenos Journey Manager solution builders move away from using TIG and instead use Journey Manager REST APIs to build Temenos Journey Manager solutions. Continuing to use TIG may complicate an upgrade path when TIG is eventually deprecated in a future release.

## Prerequisites

You need a JDK installed on the system where you are installing Transact Integration Gateway (TIG). The JDK version you need is dependent upon the version of TIG you are installing, and can be identified as follows.

1. Identify the TIG version (`tig-version`) that you want to install. For example, if you want to install TIG v18.11 (`tig-version` will be v18.11).
2. Identify the JDK version (`jdk-version`) that is required when installing the `tig-version` version of Journey Manager. For example, if you use Journey Manager 18.11, the JDK will be JDK 11 (`jdk-version` = JDK 11).
3. `jdk-version` is the JDK version required when installing the TIG version identified in the first step. In this example, we need JDK 11 installed on our system in order to install TIG v18.11

NOTE

TIG and Journey Manager have been designed so that any version of TIG can communicate with any Journey Manager version. That is, you do not need to install the same version of TIG and Journey Manager.

### Transact Client SDK

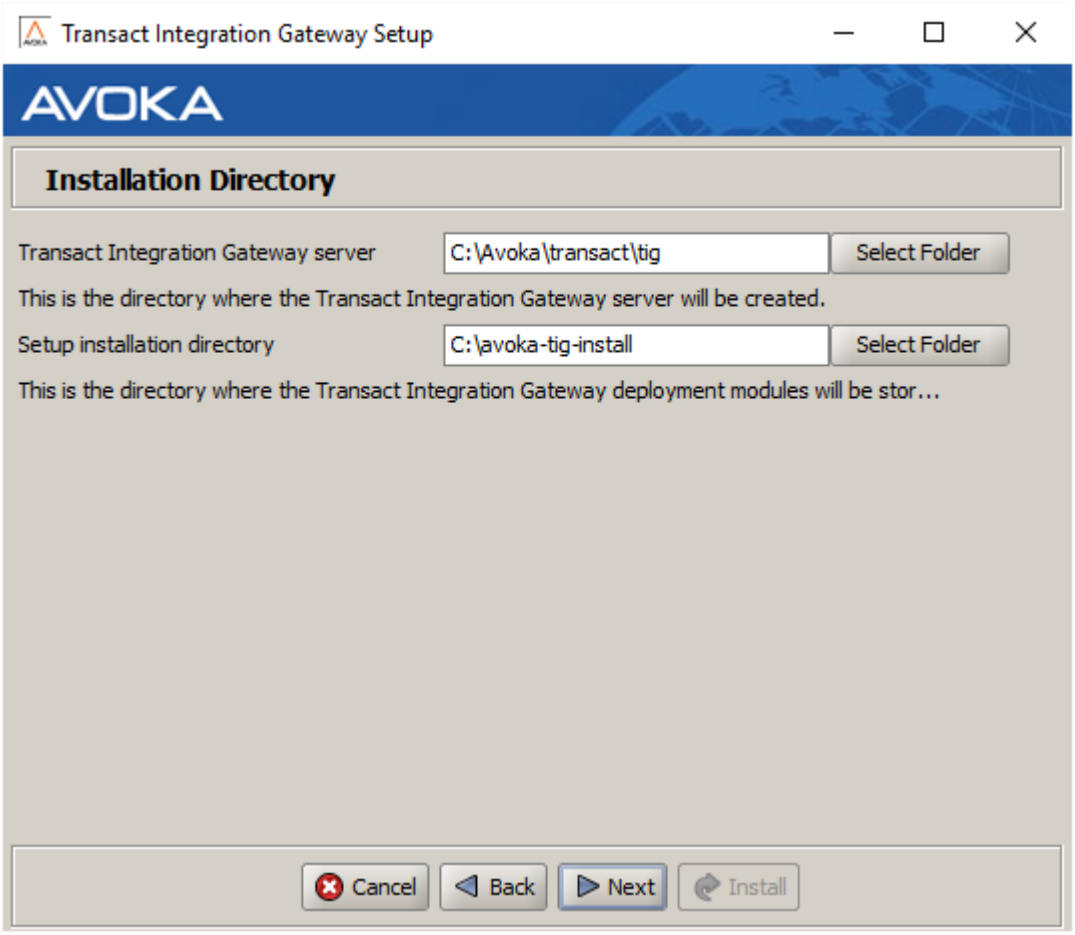
If you're using TIG in your Temenos Journey Manager solution, you may also want to use Transact Client SDK when building that solution. While Transact Client SDK is no longer under active development, it is compatible with later Temenos Journey Manager

versions, just like TIG. You can download the latest Transact Client SDK release which includes reference documentation that is also available online.

## Installation

A TIG Setup Wizard application is provided to enable fast and easy installation.

On a Windows server with a JRE available, TIG can be installed and running as a Windows Service within a few minutes.




## Configuration

TIG is configured through a series of JSON configuration files. These files are located in the configuration directory: `C:\avoka\transact\tig\config\`

| Config File | Description |
|---|---|
| delivery-config.json | Transaction delivery channel configurations |
| proxy-config.json | Service API Gateway proxy configurations |
| services-config.json | Groovy Services configurations |

| | |
|---|---|
| scheduler-config.json | Scheduled Grooovy script job configurations |
| storage-config.json | Submission data storage configuration |

The Groovy scripts directory is also under the configuration directory: `C:\avoka\transact\tig\config\groovy\`

This directory contains a number of sample Groovy scripts which are referenced in the `groovy-config.json` file including:

- `delivery-email.groovy`
- `delivery-example.groovy`
- `google-search.groovy`
- `job-example.groovy`
- `template-example.groovy`

## Delivery Config

The delivery configuration file defines transaction delivery channels to retrieve completed form transactions using the Manager REST Delivery APIs.

The sample `delivery-config.json` installed with TIG is shown below.

```
{
	"pollingIntervalMins": 1,
	"deliveryChannels": [
		{
			"deliveryUrl": "http://localhost:9080/manager/secure/rest/delivery/v1/maguire/re
vice/",
			"user": "administrator",
			"password": "password",
			"dataDir": "C:/tig/delivery/",
			"subDir": "${submissionId}",
			"processingStatus": "Thank you your application is being processed",
			"serviceName": "delivery-example"
		}
	]
}
```

This configuration specifies a 1minute polling interval to call the Manager REST Delivery API to see whether any new transactions are available.

The next element is a collection of delivery channels. A single TIG service can perform deliveries against many Manager Delivery Channels. For more information on how to configure a delivery channel, see the Transact Services Guide > REST API > Delivery API.

The JSON delivery channel attributes include:

| Name | Description |
|---|---|
| deliveryUrl | Delivery channel URL as defined for the Manager organization delivery channel's REST Service URL |
| user | Manager user login name.<br>Users must have the REST Delivery role assigned to them, be assigned to Manager console access, and organization access. |
| password | Manager user password<br>It is recommended that you configure specific REST delivery users, with only the REST Delivery role and no other permissions. |
| dataDir | Base data directory where form transaction data will be written |
| subDir | A pattern sub directory under the base `dataDir`<br>This folder is used to separate different transactions. There are a large number of patterns which can be used to create sub directories for data delivery (see below). |
| processingStatus | A processing status message which is returned to the Manager server when delivery is confirmed and may be displayed to the end user who submitted the form.<br>This is typically use to provided a message informing them that their application is being processed. This message has a maximum length of 100 characters; longer values will be truncated. |
| deleteData | A flag informing the Manager server to delete the transaction data immediately when it receives the delivery confirmation message.<br>Use this option only if you have delivered data into a high available storage system, and you have very strict data retention policies. |
| completedMarker | A flag to specify whether to create a zero length `completed.txt` file in the data delivery directory once all the transaction data has been delivered.<br>This option is useful for folder watch deliver integration systems |

| | |
|---|---|
| | which will perform ELT operations when a marker signal file appears in a directory. |
| serviceName | The name of a Groovy script service to call when all the transaction data has been written into the delivery directory.<br><br>Only delivery type services can be used for delivery integration. |

The `subDir` pattern options include:

| Pattern Variable | Description |
|---|---|
| clientCode | Form's organization client code identifier |
| formCode | Unique form code identifier |
| formVersion | Form version number |
| formStatus | Transaction form status: [ `Completed` \| `Abandoned` ] |
| portal | Name of the portal or form space |
| submissionId | Transaction submission identifier |
| receiptNumber | Transaction receipt number |
| submitKey | Transaction submit key GUID |
| trackingCode | Transaction tracking code |
| transRefNumber | Transaction Trn Ref Number |
| yyyy | Year; for example, 2015 |
| mm | Month of year; for example, 08 |
| dd | Day of month; for example, 01 |

Note that TIG will monitor any changes to the delivery configuration file and make these available immediately. However if you change the polling internal configuration, you will need to restart the TIG service for this change to take effect.

## Proxy Config

The proxy configuration file defines internal services which may be called via Gateway Proxy calls.

The sample `proxy-config.json` installed with TIG is shown below.

```
[
	{
		"route": "google-search",
		"serviceUrl": "https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/services/search/web",
		"connectionTimeout": 10000,
		"returnErrors": true,
		"parameters": [
			{ "name": "v", "value": "1.0" }
		]
	}
]
```

This configuration specifies a collection of proxy services routes. The proxy attributes include:

| Name | Description |
|---|---|
| route | Proxy service route URL path |
| serviceUrl | Internal service API URL to call |
| headers | HTTP headers to add to the internal Service API call |
| parameters | HTTP request parameters to add to the internal Service API call |
| basicAuth | The HTTP Basic authentication header required to execute the call when performing a Service API Gateway call. The basic auth header is a Base64 encode username:password value. |
| connectionTimeout | The connection and socket transfer timeout in milliseconds for the internal Service API call. The default timeout is 10 seconds. |
| returnErrors | Return Groovy script errors to the caller when performing a Service API Gateway call. Use this option when developing scripts, but not in production. Default value is `true`. |

An example of the proxy routing configuration is shown below:

1. URL request from Manager to TIG:

```
GET https://service.mycorp.com/tig/proxy/google-search/?q=Avoka
```

2. TIG extracts gateway route path:

```
address-lookup
```

3. TIG looks up proxy route and makes internal call using the `serviceUrl`, for example:

```
GET https://ajax.googleapis.com/ajax/services/search/web?v=1.0&q=Avoka
```

## Services Config

The services configuration file defines Groovy script services which may be invoked via Gateway Service calls, via Deliveries or via Scheduled Jobs.

The sample `services-config.json` installed with TIG is shown below.

```
[
	{
		"serviceName": "delivery-email",
		"serviceType": "delivery",
		"groovyScript": "$tig/config/groovy/delivery-email.groovy",
		"parameters": [
			{ "name": "emailUrl", "value": "https://outlook.office365.com/EWS/Exchange.asmx"
			{ "name": "emailUser", "value": "username@server.com" },
			{ "name": "emailPassword", "value": "password" }
		]
	},
	{
		"serviceName": "delivery-example",
		"serviceType": "delivery",
		"groovyScript": "$tig/config/groovy/delivery-example.groovy"
	},
	{
		"serviceName": "job-example",
		"serviceType": "scheduled",
		"groovyScript": "$tig/config/groovy/job-example.groovy"
	},
	{
		"serviceName": "google-search",
		"serviceType": "gateway",
		"groovyScript": "$tig/config/groovy/google-search.groovy",
		"groovyTypeChecked": false,
		"executionTimeout": 10000,
		"returnErrors": true,
		"parameters": [
			{ "name": "urlBase", "value": "http://ajax.googleapis.com/" }
		]
	},
	{
		"serviceName": "template-example",
		"serviceType": "gateway",
		"groovyScript": "$tig/config/groovy/template-example.groovy",
		"parameters": [
			{ "name": "Test Mode", "value": "false" }
		]
	}
]
```

This configuration specifies a collection of Groovy services. The service attributes include:

| Name | Description |
|---|---|
| serviceName | Groovy service name, should be unique |
| serviceType | The type of Groovy service: [ `delivery` \| `gateway` \| `scheduled` ]<br>• `delivery` services can be used for performing transaction delivery<br>• `gateway` services can be called via REST service API<br>• `scheduled` services can be called by scheduled Quartz Jobs |
| groovyScript | A Groovy script file path<br>The `$tig` variable is the TIG relative path location. |
| groovyTypeChecked | Perform strict Java style Groovy type checking before executing the script. Default value is `false`. |
| executionTimeout | End execution of the Groovy script if it takes longer than the specified number of milliseconds. Default value is `0` meaning no timeout. |
| returnErrors | Return any Groovy script errors to the caller when performing a Service API Gateway call. Use this option when developing scripts, but not in production. Default value is `true`. |
| basicAuth | The HTTP Basic authentication header required to execute the call when performing a Service API Gateway call<br>The basic auth header is a Base64 encode username:password value. |
| parameters | Collection of parameters to pass to the Groovy script as a parameters map. This is useful for externalizing configuration values. |

NOTE

TIG will monitor any changes to the Groovy configuration file and Groovy script files and make these available immediately.

#### Gateway Services Config

Groovy services with the type `gateway` can be called externally from Manager using the gateway service URL. The URL path is used to resolve the name of the service to

execute.

An example of the gateway service configuration is illustrated below:

1. URL request from Manager to TIG:

```
GET https://service.mycorp.com/tig/service/google-search/?q=Avoka
```

2. TIG extracts service name path:

```
google-search
```

3. TIG looks up service name called "google-search" and invokes the `gateway` service type.

Only services with the type `gateway` can be called externally. Attempting to call a `delivery` or `scheduled` type service will result in a HTTP `404 Not Found` status code being returned.

## Scheduler Config

The scheduler configuration file defines Quartz job schedules for invoking Groovy services. Only services with the `scheduled` service type can be called by Quartz scheduled jobs.

The sample `scheduler-config.json` installed with TIG is shown below.

```
[
	{
		"jobName": "Cron Job",
		"jobType": "cron",
		"cronExpression": "0 30 1 * * ?",
		"serviceName": "job-example"
	},
	{
		"jobName": "Simple Job",
		"jobType": "simple",
		"repeatIntervalMins": 10,
		"serviceName": "job-example"
	}
]
```

This configuration specifies a collection of Groovy service job schedules. The job schedule attributes include:

| Name | Description |
|---|---|
| jobName | Name of the job |
| jobType | Job type: [ `cron` \| `simple` ] |
| cronExpression | A cron scheduling expression, for `cron` type jobs only. For details, see Quartz Tutorials, Lesson 6: CronTrigger. |
| repeatIntervalMins | Repeat interval in minutes, for `simple` type jobs only |
| serviceName | Name of the Groovy service to call when the job is triggered |

> NOTE
>
> If you make changes to `scheduler-config.json`, you must restart the TIG server for these changes to take effect.

## Storage Config

The storage configuration file defines customer transaction data storage options.

The sample `storage-config.json` installed with TIG is shown below.

```
{
	"user": "administrator",
	"password": "tuart!23",
	"dataDir": "C:/tig/storage/"
}
```

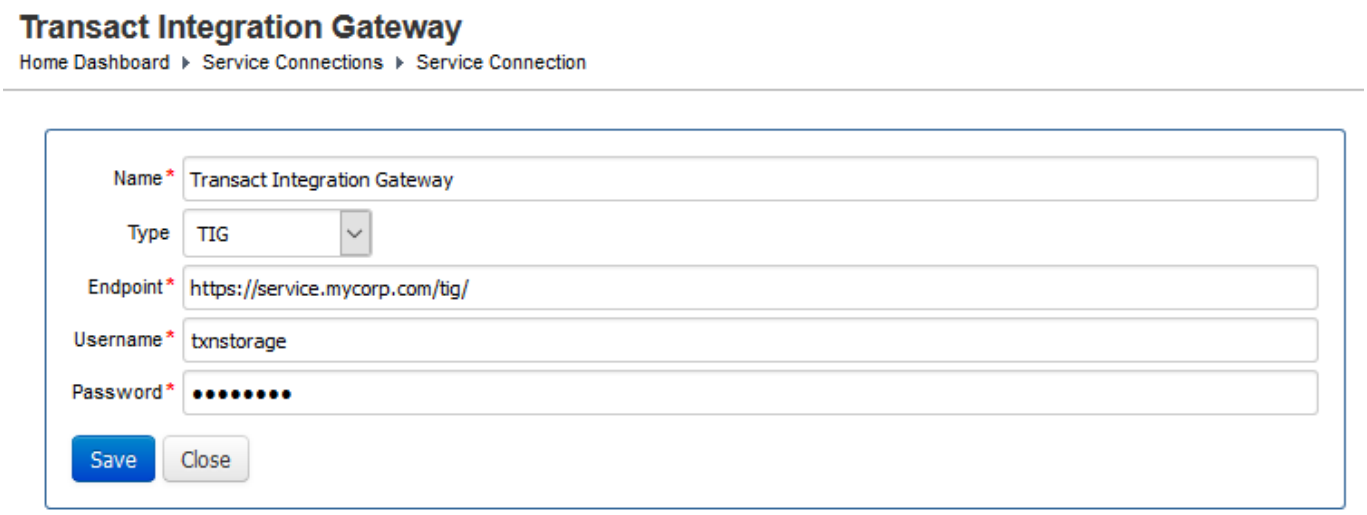
The storage attributes include:

| Name | Description |
|---|---|
| user | The BASIC authentication login user<br>This value should match the Manager TIG Service Connection Username. |
| password | The BASIC authentication login password<br>This value should match the Manager TIG Service Connection Username. |
| dataDir | The customer transaction data storage area |

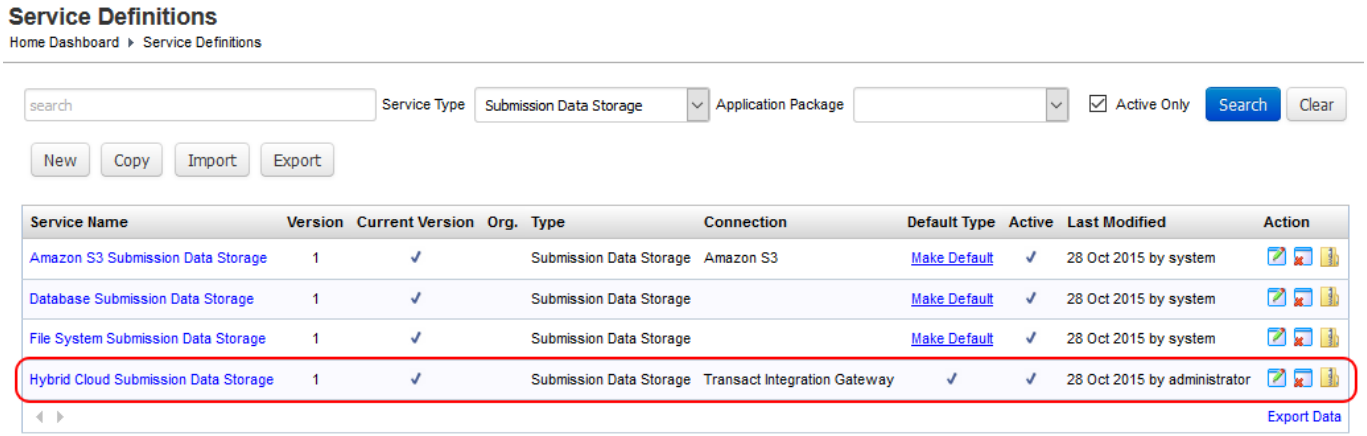
NOTE

If you make changes to `storage-config.json`, you must restart the TIG server for these changes to take effect.

The image below shows the Manager configurations for a Transact Integration Gateway Service Connection.




The image below shows a Manager configuration for the Hybrid Cloud Submission Data Storage service using Transact Integration Gateway.




Next, learn about developing with Transact Integration Gateway.

# Transact Integration Gateway Development

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | System Manager / DevOps | v4.3 & Higher This feature is related to v4.3 and higher.

NOTE

Although Transact Integration Gateway (TIG) continues to receive support, it is recommended that Temenos Journey Manager solution builders move away from using TIG and instead use Journey Manager REST APIs to build Temenos Journey Manager solutions. Continuing to use TIG may complicate an upgrade path when TIG is eventually deprecated in a future release.

## Groovy Development

TIG provides the same integration libraries as Manager for performing Groovy script development. This provides a wide range of options for performing simple and sophisticated integrations.

For details on the Groovy language, see the Groovy Language Syntax Specification.

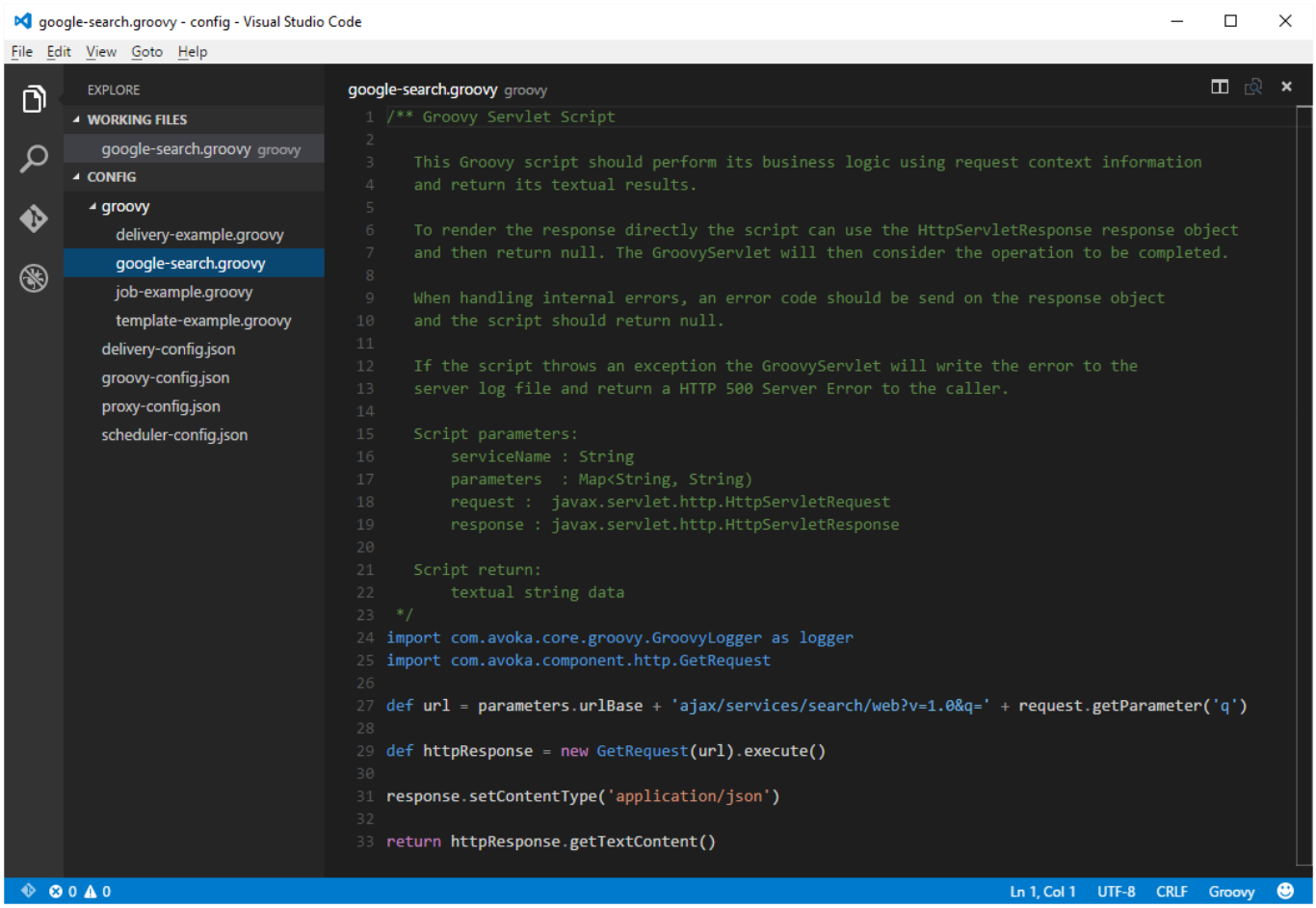
### Security Restrictions

The TIG Groovy 2.4.5 runtime is the same one provided with Manager and includes a number of security restrictions to prevent scripts from terminating the application server.

### Script Development

A good way of developing TIG Groovy scripts and making configuration changes is to use a code editor and point it at the TIG config directory. Any changes you make to your Groovy scripts will be loaded immediately by TIG, and your scripts will be interpreted dynamically. This enables you to quickly develop and test scripts without having to go through lengthy compile and deployment cycles. The development experience is much like writing JavaScript.

A good code editor to use for this is the free Microsoft Visual Studio Code. In Visual Studio Code, open a TIG configuration directory to edit your Groovy scripts and configurations.




## Delivery Service Script

A `delivery` type service Groovy script example is shown below. This script details the Groovy script parameters and error handling.

```
/** Groovy Delivery Script

       This Groovy script should perform any transaction delivery.

       If the delivery integration fails, then the script can throw an exception and the
       delivery will not be completed in Transaction Manager and can be retried again at a
later point.

       If the script does not throw an exception, the transaction will be considered
       to have been delivered, and TM will be notified that delivery has been completed.

       At this point Transaction data will be available for purging.

       Script parameters:
               serviceName : String
               parameters  : Map<String, String>
               transaction : com.avoka.transact.service.delivery.Transaction
               deliveryDir : String
 */
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger

def deliveryInfo = """
   serviceName: $serviceName
    parameters: $parameters
transaction.id: $transaction.id
   deliveryDir: $deliveryDir
"""

logger.info deliveryInfo
```

The Groovy `delivery` service example below performs an Email delivery to the Microsoft Exchange Email server and includes the form XML, PDF receipt and file uploads as attachments to the email. The example externalizes email service configurations to service parameters.

```
/** Groovy Delivery Script

       This Groovy script should perform any transaction delivery.

       If the delivery integration fails, then the script can throw an exception and the
       delivery will not be completed in Transaction Manager and can be retried again at a
later point.

       If the script does not throw an exception, the transaction will be considered
       to have been delivered, and TM will be notified that delivery has been completed.

       At this point Transaction data will be available for purging.

       Script parameters:
               serviceName : String
               parameters  : Map<String, String>
               transaction : com.avoka.transact.service.delivery.Transaction
               deliveryDir : String
 */
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger
import com.avoka.transact.service.delivery.Transaction
import com.avoka.transact.service.delivery.Transaction.Attachment
import microsoft.exchange.webservices.data.core.*
import microsoft.exchange.webservices.data.credential.*
import microsoft.exchange.webservices.data.core.service.item.EmailMessage
import microsoft.exchange.webservices.data.core.enumeration.misc.ExchangeVersion
import microsoft.exchange.webservices.data.property.complex.MessageBody

logger.debug """$serviceName parameters: $parameters"""

// Create Exchange WS client
ExchangeService service = new ExchangeService(ExchangeVersion.Exchange2010_SP2)
service.setUrl(new URI(parameters.emailUrl))
service.setCredentials(new WebCredentials(parameters.emailUser, para-
meters.emailPassword))

// Create email subject line and message body
def subject = """$transaction.formCode Submission: $transaction.id"""

def body = """
<pre>
```

```
    Form Name: $transaction.formName
Tracking Code: $transaction.trackingCode
        Email: $transaction.contactEmailAddress
</pre>
"""

// Send email with attachments
EmailMessage msg = new EmailMessage(service)
msg.getToRecipients().add(parameters.emailUser)
msg.setSubject(subject)
msg.setBody(MessageBody.getMessageBodyFromText(body))
msg.getAttachments().addFileAttachment("form.xml", transaction.xmlData)
msg.getAttachments().addFileAttachment("receipt.pdf", transaction.receiptData)
for (Attachment attachment : transaction.attachments) {
       def name = "attachment-" + attachment.id + "-" + attachment.fileName
       msg.getAttachments().addFileAttachment(name, attachment.fileData)
}
msg.send()

// Log message
logger.info """$subject  email sent to: $parameters.emailUser"""
```

## Gateway Service Script

A `gateway` type service Groovy script is shown below. This script details the Groovy script parameters and error handling.

```
/** Groovy Servlet Script

       This Groovy script should perform its business logic using request context information
       and return its textual results.

       To render the response directly the script can use the HttpServletResponse response
object
       and then return null. The GroovyServlet will then consider the operation to be com-
pleted.

       When handling internal errors, an error code should be send on the response object
       and the script should return null.

       If the script throws an exception the GroovyServlet will write the error to the
       server log file and return a HTTP 500 Server Error to the caller.

       Script parameters:
               serviceName : String
               parameters  : Map<String, String>
               request     :  javax.servlet.http.HttpServletRequest
               response    : javax.servlet.http.HttpServletResponse

       Script return:
               textual string data
 */
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger
import com.avoka.component.http.GetRequest

def url = parameters.urlBase + 'ajax/services/search/web?v=1.0&q=' + request.getParameter
('q')

def httpResponse = new GetRequest(url).execute()

response.setContentType('application/json')

return httpResponse.getTextContent()
```

## Scheduled Service Script

A `scheduled` type service Groovy script is shown below. This script details the Groovy script parameters and error handling.

```
/** Groovy Job Script

       This scheduled Groovy script should perform its business logic.

       Any exceptions thrown will be logged to the server log file.

       Script parameters:
               jobName     : String
               serviceName : String
               parameters  : Map<String, String>
 */
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger

def jobInfo = """
       jobName:     $jobName
       serviceName: $serviceName
       parameters:  $parameters
"""

logger.info jobInfo
```

## Adding JAR Libraries

To include additional Java libraries (JAR) for use by Groovy scripts, place these libraries in the placeholder JBoss modules folder:

```
C:\avoka\transact\tig\server\modules\com\avoka\custom\main
```

Next, edit the `modules.xml` file to reference your included JAR files:

```
C:\avoka\transact\tig\server\modules\com\avoka\custom\main\modules.xml
```

For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<module xmlns="urn:jboss:module:1.0" name="com.avoka.custom">
       <resources>
              <!-- Include your JAR libraries  here. -->
              <resource-root path="custom.jar" />
       </resources>
       <dependencies>
              <!-- Included your library module dependencies here. -->
              <module name="system" />
       </dependencies>
</module>
```

NOTE

You must restart the TIG service for these libraries to become available.

If your JAR file has dependencies on third party libraries, you should also include these files in this modules directory.

If the server has troubles loading your JAR files, you will typically see these when the server starts up or when you call your Groovy script.

## Logging

To monitor the activity of TIG, see the server log file:

```
C:\avoka\transact\tig\server\standalone\log\server.log
```

When developing Groovy scripts, you can use the `GroovyLogger` to log `DEBUG`, `INFO`, `WARN` and `ERROR` messages to the server log file

```
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger

logger.debug 'Started service call'

// ...

logger.debug 'Completed service call'
```

To tune the server logging output, edit the `standalone.xml` configuration file in:

```
C:\avoka\transact\tig\server\standalone\configuration\standalone.xml
```

By default, the `GroovyLogger` will only log `INFO` and above level messages.

See the JBoss standalone XML elements below for the various configuration options:

```
<subsystem xmlns="urn:jboss:domain:logging:1.1">
	<console-handler name="CONSOLE" autoflush="true">
		<level name="INFO"/>
		<formatter>
			<pattern-formatter pattern="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n"/>
		</formatter>
	</console-handler>
	<periodic-rotating-file-handler name="FILE" autoflush="true">
		<level name="INFO"/>
		<formatter>
			<pattern-formatter pattern="%d{HH:mm:ss,SSS} %-5p [%c] (%t) %s%E%n"/>
		</formatter>
		<file relative-to="jboss.server.log.dir" path="server.log"/>
		<suffix value=".yyyy-MM-dd"/>
		<append value="true"/>
	</periodic-rotating-file-handler>
	<logger category="com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger">
		<level name="INFO"/>
	</logger>
	<root-logger>
		<level name="INFO"/>
		<handlers>
		<handler name="CONSOLE"/>
		<handler name="FILE"/>
		</handlers>
	</root-logger>
</subsystem>
```

Next, take a look at an overview of the Temenos Journey Manager.

# Transact Manager Previous Releases

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager.

Documentation for the following older releases of Transact Manager is available to download (PDF) from the TJM resources website.

- Transact Manager 17.10
- Transact Manager 5.1
- Transact Manager 5.0
- Transact Manager 4.3

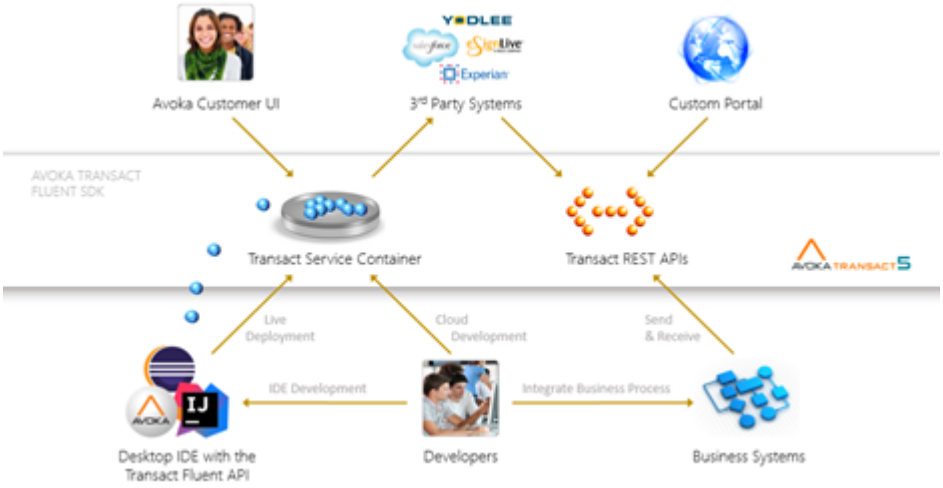
NOTE

These Transact Manager releases have reached end-of-life and are no longer supported.

# Transact Fluent SDK Overview

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | All versions This feature is related to all versions. | v17.10 This feature was deprecated in 17.10.

Journey Manager is designed to be integrated with external systems. This makes the Temenos Journey Manager platform highly extensible, allowing it to meet the growing demands of the most complex financial and government environments with low or no code changes by using configuration rather than development activities. Clients can extend the Manager core capabilities to achieve goals that aren't possible with built-in functionality, such as integration with a custom back-end system.




Manager comes with the Transact Fluent SDK, which developers can use to extend the Temenos Journey Manager platform by writing Groovy[1] scripts that hook into Manager's services and extension points.

Transact Fluent SDK includes:

- Transact Fluent API references.
- Manager Fluent libraries.
- Manager Fluent project templates to develop Groovy services using modern IDE[2]s.

---

[1]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

[2]Integrated Development Environment.

- Tools to help interact with Manager Rest APIs to support deployment and testing of services.

The Fluent Groovy APIs have been designed to enable a simplified Fluent programming style, improve learning, reduce programming complexity, increase productivity, and improve code readability. Upgrades and maintenance become smoother because of the simplified and unchanging Transact Fluent API. Finally, the new APIs provide enhanced levels of security and performance.

Transact Fluent SDK supports IDE[1]-based development that includes:

- Source control integration for team development projects
- Code modularization and reuse
- Unit testing
- Real-time code completion and error checking

Transact Fluent SDK creates a development environment for clients, partners, and the Customer Service team to rapidly extend Manager functionality with new back office Integrations, workflows, and service connections to various FinTech [2] services.

Next, learn about the benefits of using Groovy in Manager.

---

[1]Integrated Development Environment.

[2]Financial Technology, also known as FinTech, is a new industry that uses new technology and innovation to improve activities in finance. It aims to compete with traditional financial methods in the delivery of financial services to customers by improving customer experience, reducing time-to-market, decreasing cost to mention a few.

# Benefits of Using Groovy in Journey Manager

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | All versions This feature is related to all versions. | v17.10 This feature was deprecated in 17.10.

Journey Manager is written in Java[1] and runs on Java Virtual Machine[2] (JVM). Manager provides extensive support for using Groovy[3] language, which enables developers to quickly implement business and integration logic without having to deploy custom code as jar files and restart Manager servers.

Groovy has the following benefits, over other scripting languages, that make it the right candidate for Manager:

- Groovy is a dynamic scripting language, which allows developers to implement and customize Groovy scripts without re-compiling and re-deploying Manager applications. The scripts can be stored as files or as objects in the DB[4]. Manager extensively utilizes Groovy scripts to implement Transact Services. It has the advantage that the service does not need to be compiled nor the containing component rebuilt prior to use. For more information, see the service definitions extension

---

[1]Java is a programming language that produces software for multiple platforms. When a programmer writes a Java application, the compiled code (known as bytecode) runs on most operating systems (OS), including Windows, Linux and Mac OS. Java derives much of its syntax from the C and C++ programming languages.

[2]Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is a software-based machine that runs Java programs. It can be installed on several different operating systems, including Windows, OS X, and Linux. JVMs allow Java apps to run on almost any computer.

[3]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

[4]A database is a data structure that stores organized information. Most databases contain multiple tables, which may each include several different fields. For example, a company database may include tables for products, employees, and financial records. Each of these tables would have different fields that are relevant to the information stored in the table.

points listed below.

- Groovy is developed for Java, so it runs on JVM and most of the code written in Java will compile and work as expected when you try to run it as a Groovy script. It seamlessly and transparently integrates and is compatible with Java and any third-party libraries.
- Groovy is Java syntax compatible, so learning Groovy won't be challenging for someone who knows Java already.
- Groovy has concise, brief and direct syntax, which makes it easy to learn, develop and read the code. It requires less lines of code to implement the same functionality as compared with Java.
- Groovy has native support for markup languages, such as XML and HTML, with which developers can quickly create sophisticated application logic and in less code. It also enables the definition and manipulation of many types of data assets, which is handy in data preparation and manipulation.
- Groovy comes with integrated support for converting between Groovy objects and JSON[1].
- Groovy is a testing-oriented development language, which is great for writing concise and maintainable tests, and for all your build and automation tasks.
- Groovy has powerful features - closures, builders, runtime and compile-time meta-programming, functional programming, type inference, and static compilation - which allows developers to implement complex application rules in a concise and well defined way.

NOTE

Groovy was first introduced in Manager v3.3.0 and it has been extensively used since v3.5.0. Manager v17.10 supports Groovy v2.4.15. Every major Manager release includes the latest Groovy release. If you want to keep up-to-date with Groovy releases, refer to http://groovy-lang.org/index.html.

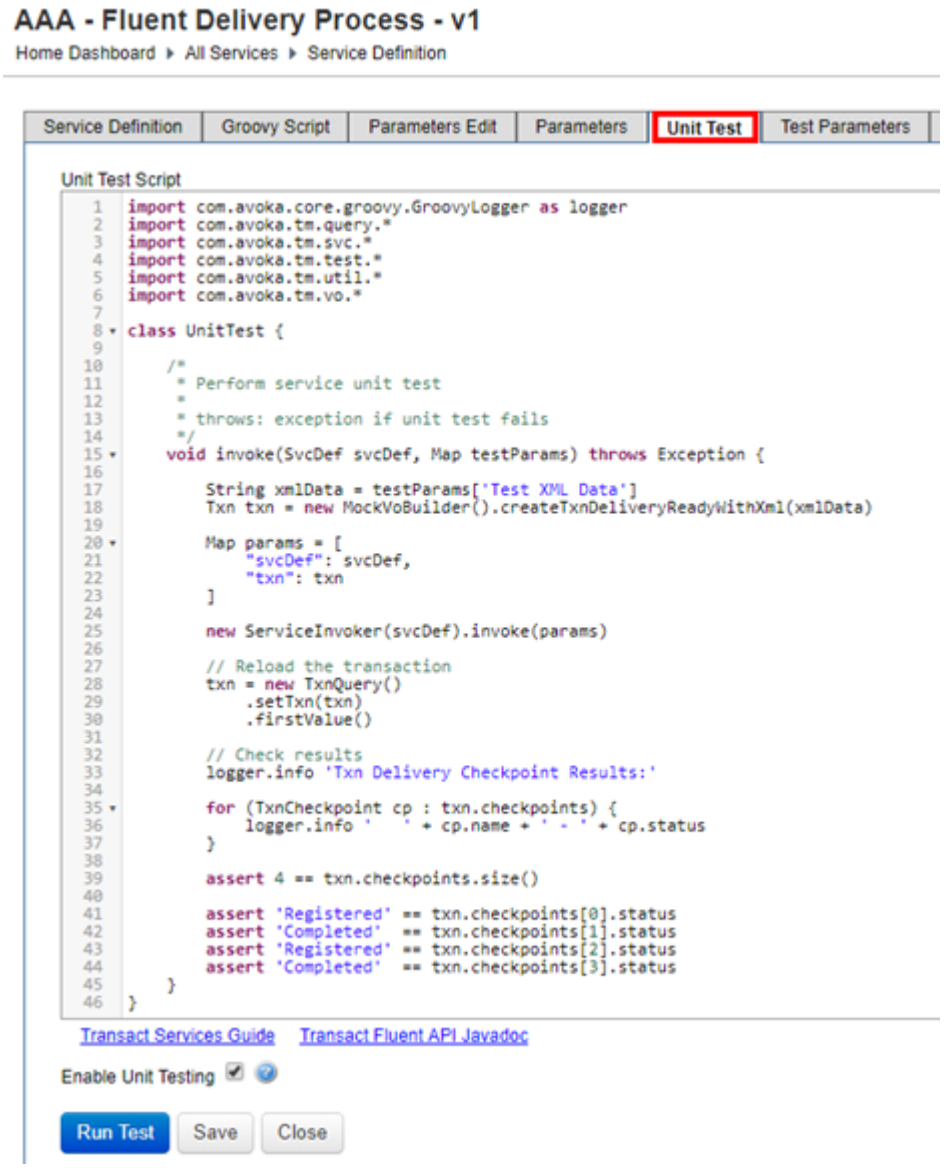
Manager uses service definitions, which provide Groovy extension points for the following service types.

[1]JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.

- Delivery Process.
- Dynamic Data.
- Form Prefill.
- Form Saved Processor.
- Groovy Service.
- Receipt Number.
- Scheduled Service.
- Submission Complete Processor.
- Submission Preprocessor.
- Task Expiry.

All these services have Groovy tab that allows developers to write a Groovy script to implement specific requirements.

The script can be tested using the Unit Test tab, which significantly speeds up the development process and helps to find most of the errors before making use of this service.




Next, learn about benefits of using Fluent Groovy services.

# Fluent Groovy Services vs Groovy Services

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | All versions This feature is related to all versions. | v17.10 This feature was deprecated in 17.10.

Journey Manager is based on an extensible service-oriented architecture, which enables developer to implement highly configurable services written in Groovy[1] language. There are two types of service to choose from to implement a new Groovy service: Fluent Groovy service and Groovy service. The main difference between them is:

- Fluent Groovy service uses Transact Fluent API.
- Groovy service uses Transact Core API.

NOTE

It is strongly recommended to use the Fluent Groovy service for any new clients, services and applications development. If this can't be done due to limitations in the Fluent APIs, Groovy services must be used. However, some efforts must be made to migrate existing Groovy services to Fluent ones, whenever possible, because Manager future version will force everyone to only use the Fluent APIs.

The detailed difference between the services is outlined below.

## Fluent Groovy Service

The Fluent Groovy service is a service that can only use Transact Fluent API. It is impossible to call any Transact Core API from this service. The reasons are as follows:

- Simplify and speed up service implementation for developers because they need to know only limited set of Fluent APIs (34 Fluent API classes vs 1042 Core API classes)
- Enable to use the Fluent programming model, see the example below:

[1]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

```
import com.avoka.tm.svc.*
def params = [:] params.refNumber = ...
def result = new GroovyServiceInvoker()
.setServiceName("Ref Lookup")
.setClientCode("maguire")
.setVersion("0.2.1")
.invoke(params)
```

- Allows to use short names, and immutable value objects
- Reduce time to market and reduce development costs
- Faster to train developers and scale teams
- More supportable and stable API contract, because they are better regression tested
- Easier upgrades
- Improved system performance
- Better architecture for writing server-side business logic where services are tied to a single trigger point and can be used across a range of triggers and arbitrary invocations
- Allows Groovy types checking
- Restricted from using Transact Core APIs to prevent developers from running into implementation troubles or design confusions. For example, object mapping API is restricted, but value objects API is allowed.
- Enforces the Java-like class syntax, as opposed to script-like syntax. It makes development more structured. In the above example, if you create a new service from Fluent Dynamic Data template, your new Groovy script will look like this (compare to the script example in the Groovy Service section):

```
import com.avoka.tm.util.*
import com.avoka.tm.vo.*
import javax.servlet.http.*

class FluentDynamicData {
	public Logger logger
	String invoke(SvcDef svcDef, Txn txn, HttpServletRequest request, User user) {
		String data = '''{ "address": { "firstLine": "123 Wall Street" } }'''
		return data
	}
}
```

NOTE

Developers are encouraged to create new services as Fluent Groovy services. Developers might encounter a few situations when it is difficult, if yet possible, to implement a service using Fluent Groovy service (due to Transact Fluent API limitations). However, it can be resolved on case by case basis. For more information, see Fluent Groovy Service Developer Guide.

NOTE

Fluent service can only invoke Dynamic Groovy services, if the install time Groovy Secure API restriction is not enforced.

## Groovy Service

The Groovy Service uses both Transact Core API and Transact Fluent API, which allows developers to implement nearly any service possible. However, there are number of disadvantages that are listed below:

- Implementation can become complex and labor extensive because there are hundreds of APIs to learn and use. This significantly increase the development cost.
- Developers should have deep understanding of the APIs to be able to write services.
- High possibility to execute potentially dangerous code that can crash the whole Manager server, for example `System.exit()`, or directly manipulate with database objects.
- Groovy code is not stable because it relays of Transact Core API that can change and will change over time to accommodate for bug fixes and Manager new features.
- There is no type checking or any other static checks on the Groovy service code, so often the first time you would find out something had broken was when it failed at runtime.
- Provides the script-like syntax. In the above example, if you create a new service from Groovy Dynamic Data template, your new Groovy script will look like this:

```
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger
def data = '''{
       "address": {
              "firstLine": "123 Wall Street"
       }
}'''
return data
```

NOTE

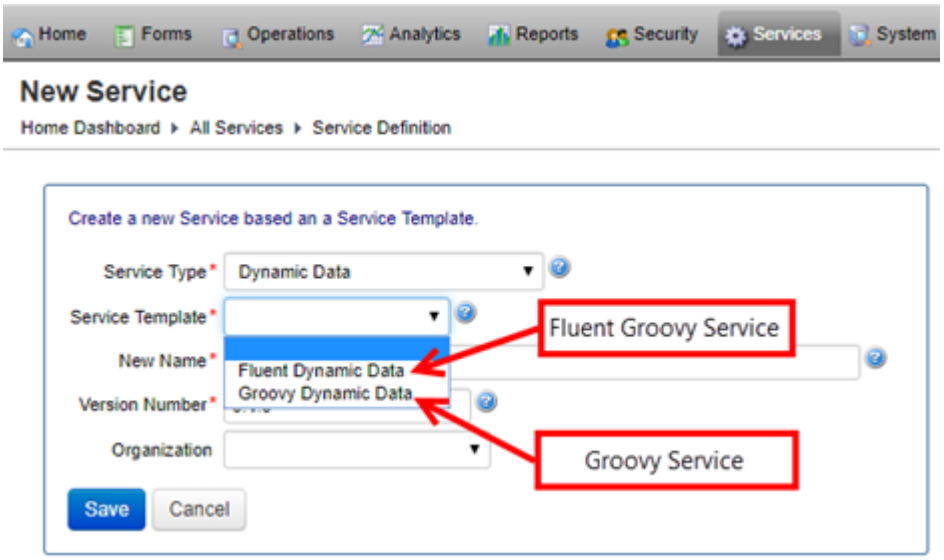
Developers are discouraged to create new services using core Groovy services, which are considered the legacy API and have been deprecated since Journey Manager version 19.11. Instead, whenever possible, use Fluent Groovy Service .

As the core API are deprecated, you can find all legacy Groovy services, which use these core API, by running the following script in the Groovy console with the Secure Fluent API Only checkbox unselected.

```
import com.avoka.fc.core.dao.*
import com.avoka.tm.query.*
import com.avoka.tm.vo.*

List<SvcDef> svcDefs = new SvcDefQuery()
      .withCurrentVersion()
      .setFetchLimit(50000)
      .listValues()

println "all services: " + svcDefs.size()

def legacyServices = svcDefs.collect{ svcDef ->
    def svc = DaoFactory.serviceDefinitionDao.getServiceDefinitionForPK(svcDef.id)
    return !svc.isFluentApiService() ? svc : null
}.findAll {it && it.getClassnameBeanname().contains("Groovy") }

println "all non fluent services: " + legacyServices.size()

legacyServices.collect { it.serviceName + " >> " + it.serviceType }.each {
  println it
}
```

## Configuration Example

To create a new Dynamic Data service (Groovy service) from Services menu, you have an option to create this service based on the Fluent Dynamic Data Template (Fluent Groovy service), or Groovy Dynamic Data Template (Groovy service), as shown below.




NOTE

It is recommended to use Fluent Groovy service.

Next, learn about Transact Fluent SDK.

# Fluent API REST Service

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | 2105
This feature was introduced in 2105.

As you know, Journey Manager comes with an extensive set of private Fluent API enabling you to implement various complex business requirements. All you need to do is to just write a Groovy scrip that calls a few API and run it within your service. And it all works. However, what happens when you want to invoke the same Fluent API outside Manager. Now, we have a solution for you!

The 2105 release of Journey Manager has introduced a new service (`com.avoka.fc.admin.service.FluentApiService.java`) which exposes some of Manager's Fluent API via REST[1] end points. This service is simple to understand and use and yet it provides you with ability to invoke rich in functionality Fluent API.

NOTE

This is the Beta release of the Fluent API REST service, which implements only a limited number of Fluent API. We may need to update or even change some service functionality or implementation depending on REST performance, usability, and your feedback.

Now, you are probably curious to find out how it all works. Well, it's rather simple. The Fluent API REST service is included in the new Transact Manager WAR module, along with other REST services, so if you've installed or upgraded Journey Manager to the 2105 release, you can start using the Fluent API REST service. The new service architecture is illustrated in the diagram below:

## Requests

You interaction with the Fluent API REST service starts by sending a REST request. Each Fluent API class and every of its methods (operations) form a single endpoint, which you call by sending a request to a URL in the following format:

---

[1] REST or RESTful API design (Representational State Transfer) is designed to take advantage of existing protocols. While REST can be used over nearly any protocol, it usually takes advantage of HTTP when used for Web APIs.

```
https://{SERVER}/manager/secure/rest/fluentapi/{CLASSNAME}/{OPERATION}
```

Where:

- `SERVER` is your Manager server instance
- `CLASSNAME` is a case-insensitive name of Fluent API class, for example, `txnupdater` for the `TxnUpdater` class
- `OPERATION` is a case-insensitive name of a final method (oreration) to be called on this API, for example, `update`

> NOTE
>
> We have chosen the combination of class names and methods to simplify the learning curve for developers, who are already familiar with our Fluent API.

You have to provide a body payload for an operation in a JSON[1] format, where each `set` method has its own entry in the JSON payload. The Fluent API REST server processes the request and sends back a response including a response code and a payload, depending on an operation.

Let's illustrate it with a simple example. Suppose, you want to update a transaction delivery status from a Groovy script. For that, you use the `TxnUpdater` class, as shown below.

```
import com.avoka.tm.svc.*
import com.avoka.tm.vo.*

new TxnUpdater(txn)
    .setId(733)
    .setDeliveryStatus(Txn.DELIVERY_READY)
    .update()
```

You can achieve the same result by executing this POST request with a payload:

---

[1] JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.

```
POST https://{SERVER}/manager/secure/rest/fluentapi/txnupdater/update
Content-Type:application/jsor
Accept:application/jsor
{
    "setId" : "733",
    "setDeliveryStatus" : "Ready"
}
```

Let's examine the REST POST method:

- `txnupdater` is the `TxnUpdater` class
- `update` is the last method to be called on the instance of TxnUpdater class, which is the `update ()` method
- `setId` sets a transaction ID to be updated, which is the `setId()` method
- `setDeliveryStatus` sets the Ready status of a transaction, which is the `setDeliveryStatus ()` method

You can see the REST method basically mimics the Fluent API call, which makes developer's life much easier.

## Responses

Each Fluent API REST request has a corresponding response including an HTTP code and data in a JSON format or an error message. We've simplified and minimized the number of responses, so it's easy to use the service.

The Fluent API REST service returns the following HTTP response codes:

| HTTP Code | Description |
|---|---|
| 200 OK | This code is returned when a Fluent API REST call is successful. |
| 400 Bad Request | This code is returned when a Fluent API REST call fails due to bad input. The error message in the response includes an error log ID so you can find more details about the error in the error log. |
| 404 Not Found | This code is returned when a Fluent API REST call fails trying to update or access objects that don't match provided ID. The error message in the response includes an error log ID so you can find more details about the error in the error log. |

## Security

Manager has a new REST Fluent API core permission which you must assign to roles of users who will invoke the Fluent API REST service. The Administrator role has this permission set by default. We recommend creating a dedicated user with this permission.

## Class Names

This release of Manager has the following CLASSNAMEs implemented:

| CLASSNAME | Usage Example |
|---|---|
| ActionResultBuilder | |
| DeliveryTxnBuilder | |
| Emailer | |
| GroupQuery | |
| JobActionQuery | |
| JobBuilder | |
| JobQuery | |
| JobStepQuery | |
| JobUpdater | |
| PaymentLogQuery | |

PropertyQuery

```
https://localhost/manager/secure/rest/fluentapi/propertyquery/getValue

{
  "setName" : "733",
  "setTxn" : "{\r\n    \"id\": 439,\r\n    \"attachmentsStatus\":
null,\r\n    \"orgId\": 7,\r\n    \"clientCode\": \"dccu\",\r\n    \"or-
gName\": \"dccu\",\r\n    \"deliveryStatus\": \"Not Ready\",\r\n
\"deliveryChannel\": null,\r\n    \"deliveryMaxAttempts\": null,\r\n
\"deliveryMessage\": null,\r\n    \"deliveryMethod\": null,\r\n    \"de-
liveryProcessAttempts\": null,\r\n    \"emailAddress\": null,\r\n
\"emailVerificationStatus\": null,\r\n    \"formId\": 54,\r\n
\"formCode\": \"originationform\",\r\n    \"formName\": \"Origination
Form\",\r\n    \"formStatus\": \"Completed\",\r\n    \"formType\":
\"Maestro Form\",\r\n    \"groupNames\": [],\r\n    \"paymentStatus\":
null,\r\n    \"paymentTotal\": null,\r\n    \"jobId\": 21,\r\n
\"jobActionId\": 75,\r\n    \"jobRefNumber\": \"VZTSF33\",\r\n
\"spaceId\": 8,\r\n    \"spaceName\": \"Work Space\",\r\n    \"re-
ceiptNumber\": \"VZTSF33\",\r\n    \"receiptStatus\": \"Com-
pleted\",\r\n    \"saveChallengeHash\": null,\r\n
\"saveChallengeFailures\": null,\r\n    \"saveChallengeLastFailure\":
null,\r\n    \"saveChallengeTimeout\": null,\r\n    \"timeCreated\":
\"24 Apr. 2019, 9:42 am\",\r\n    \"timeAbandoned\": null,\r\n
\"timeAbandonmentScheduled\": null,\r\n    \"timeUserLastModified\":
\"24 Apr. 2019, 9:42 am\",\r\n    \"timeSubmitted\": \"24 Apr. 2019,
9:42 am\",\r\n    \"timeCompleted\": \"24 Apr. 2019, 9:43 am\",\r\n
\"timeDelivered\": null,\r\n    \"timeProcessUpdated\": null,\r\n
\"timePurgeDataScheduled\": null,\r\n    \"timePurgeDataActual\":
null,\r\n    \"timePurgeRecordScheduled\": null,\r\n    \"timeReques-
ted\": \"24 Apr. 2019, 9:42 am\",\r\n    \"timeSubmissionExpiry\":
null,\r\n    \"timeTaskExpiry\": null,\r\n    \"timeTaskScheduled\":
null,\r\n    \"timeTxnExpiry\": null,\r\n    \"dataDeleted\":
false,\r\n    \"submitKey\": \"f788f5d7eb69d5e42dd8250dab4239c1\",\r\n
  \"trackingCode\": \"VZTSF33\",\r\n    \"transRefNumber\": null,\r\n
 \"userLoginName\": null,\r\n    \"userSaved\": false,\r\n    \"ex-
ternalUserId\": null,\r\n    \"paymentGatewayTimestamp\": null,\r\n
\"paymentGatewayReceiptNo\": null,\r\n    \"paymentGatewayTxnNo\":
null,\r\n    \"processStatus\": null,\r\n    \"formVersionId\": 71,\r\n
   \"formVersionNumber\": \"1.0-develop\",\r\n    \"txnScore\":
null,\r\n    \"userAgent\": \"Mozilla\/5.0 (Windows NT 10.0; Win64;
x64) AppleWebKit\/537.36 (KHTML, like Gecko) Chrome\/73.0.3683.103
Safari\/537.36\",\r\n    \"userAgentDeviceType\": \"Desktop\",\r\n
\"formAbandonmentType\": null,\r\n    \"formUrl\": null,\r\n    \"re-
ceiptUrl\": \"ht-
tps:\/\/-
loc-
alhost\/-
work-
space\/ser-
```

PropertyBuilder

RefDataSvc

RefDataQuery

RoleQuery

SpaceQuery

SvcConnQuery

SvcDefQuery

SvcConnUpdater

TrackingCodeBuilder

TxnBuilder

TxnUpdater

TxnHistoryQuery

Query by ID

TxnQuery

```
https://localhost/manager/secure/rest/fluentapi/txnquery/firstValue

{
  "setId" : "733"
}
```

UserQuery

UserBuilder

```
https://localhost/manager/secure/rest/fluentapi/userbuilder/create

{
    "setEmail" : "person@temenos.com",
    "setUserType" : "Local",
    "setLoginName" : "loginName",
    "setPassword" : "pAs3W0rd!@#"
}
```

UserEmailer

```
https://localhost/manager/secure/rest/fluentapi/useremailer/sendEmail

{
    "setLoginName" : "loginName",
    "setSpaceName" : "Work Space",
    "setType" : "WELCOME"
}
```

Next, learn about "Fluent Groovy Services vs Groovy Services" on page 762.

# About Temenos Journey Manager Releases

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Product versioning and product releases go hand in hand with each other. We update and improve the Temenos Journey Manager products on a regular basis and make these changes available to our customers through individual product releases. We use major and minor releases to distribute new product versions. The kind of changes included in a product release depend on whether it is a major or minor release:

## Major Release

A major release adds new product features, enhancements, libraries, and bug fixes, and, sometimes, can introduce behavioral changes that may affect Groovy services and integrations with other systems. While we try to minimize these changes, you need to review all product enhancements carefully to determine if and how they may affect your existing implementations.

A major release is denoted by a 0 as the third number in the release number, with the two first numbers representing the year and month of the release. For example, 22.04.0.

## Maintenance Release

A maintenance release usually includes only bug fixes and minor changes. However, there can be exceptions when a maintenance release includes new features. If this is the case, it will be clearly documented in the product release notes.

A minor release is denoted by the third number in the release number being greater than 0. For example, 22.04.3.

## Release Notes Sitemap

Detailed information on all major and minor releases is available from the Release Notes Sitemap in our Journey Platform resources website.

# What's New

For a quick summary of What's New in each major release, see:

- What's New in 23.04
- What's New in 22.10
- What's New in 22.04
- What's New in 21.11
- What's New in 21.05
- What's New in 20.11

For a quick summary of What's New in each major End-of-Life (EOL) release, see:

- What's New in 20.05
- What's New in 19.11
- What's New in 19.05
- What's New in 18.11

Next, learn about our End-of-Life policy.

# What's New in 23.04

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 23.04 This feature was introduced in 23.04

The 23.04 release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products. The updated products and their changes are listed below.

## Journey Maestro

This release of Maestro includes long awaited updates and bug fixes of many early features, so you'll be delighted to upgrade your current product to the latest version of our software.

Read the detailed Maestro release notes or check the main release features.

- Added the Enable generating brand variables as CSS variables, conditions apply option to output CSS variables to a form during a form build process
- Added the Server Status tab to the Management Dashboard to display a status of a Manager server
- Added support to auto logout Dashboard and show session has ended in the Maestro editor
- Added support to show all users, who have a current design open, in the Maestro editor
- Updated 3-rd party libraries and dependencies, including security updates

Documentation has the following enhancements:

- Updated some images to reflect Maestro UI changes in alignment with Journey Manager restyling as per Temenos rebranding
- Improved Components Options documentation, making it clearer how to create rule helpers and rule templates and use them in a form correctly
- Provided an overview article on accessibility best practices and linked to Maestro accessibility documentation
- Improved Maestro documentation content accessibility, in particular for images
- Corrected and aligned terminology across several topics
- Published Avalon Template components, such as Page (Avalon), Page Controller (Avalon), Progress Bar, as well as the new template structure

## Journey Manager

We are pleased to announce our latest release of Journey Manager is ready for you to download! It's packed with new features and bug fixes, which you have been waiting for.

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or check the main release features.

- Configuration Service - in this release, we've introduced a few functionality that allows you to quickly and easily reconfigure a server instance by uploading a configuration file containing all relevant information. The configuration file is a JSON file with a flat structure defining server's properties as name / value pairs. However, the Configuration Service can't create a new configuration; it can only update the existing one. For more information, see Configuration Service.
- Database Integrity Checker - we've added the Database Integrity Checker service and scheduled jobs to validate database integrity periodically. This service will generate a report for any issues in the Manager database that need to be addressed.
- New Database Integrity Checker Event Type and Configuration Service Event Type - we've introduced 2 new event types in Event Log.
- Import Log - we've added a new Import Type - Configuration Service - to Import Log to allow you to filter all Configuration Service import actions.
- Jakarta EE - it align our underlying technology to the latest standards and trends, we've replaced Java EE with Jakarta EE, upgraded all relevant 3rd-party libraries and our configurations. We still use the WildFly application servers which uses Jakarta EE. For more information, see Migrate to Jakarta EE and Jakarta Transformer service.
- Updated 3-rd party libraries with the normal library updates to address security vulnerabilities as well as with some updates to major core technologies

## Exchange

We are pleased to announce the update of two new Exchange packages for the latest release.

Read the detailed Exchange release notes or view each updated package below:

- Iovation TAF - Version 15 - Corrected version number mismatch in service definition.

  VixVerify GreenID - Version 4.2 - Updated readme.html to Temenos branding.

# Journey Analytics

We are pleased to announce the latest release of Journey Analytics is ready! The enhancements improve existing functionality and incorporate the following updates.

Read the detailed Journey Analytics release notes or check the main release features.

- Multi-tenancy support - In 23.04 Journey Analytics is ready to support multi-tenanted Journey Manager instances via Organisations. Any issues around Segmentation of Journey Analytics data is also isolated by Organisation.
- Queue processing improvements - Improvements have been made to task processing in our GCP queues to provide better error logging and clean up of old tasks.
- EventConsumer API Changes - All EventConsumer APIs have been hardened in this release. Going forward, the following information is required, otherwise an HTTP 400 Bad Request status code will be returned:
    - tmInstance in request JWTs
    - customerId in request JWTs
    - organization, space, form and formVersion data for form analytics payloads
    - The following EventConsumer API requests are affected:
        - Metadata: receives data about the Form or Job sent when a user session begins
        - Session: receives data about each user session for a form transaction
        - Analytics: receives data about user actions during a form transaction
        - Job: receives data about Job events during a Job transaction
- Benchmarking design - Initial conceptual design for Benchmarking has begun and will continue into 23.10.
- Legacy Dashboard deprecated - The Legacy Dashboard has been removed from the code base and is no longer available to clients. Public documentation has been updated to remove content for the Legacy Dashboard.

What's Fixed

This release includes the following fixes:

- Faster load time for Scope Selector data
- Updated the design for empty charts in the Dashboard Completion History and Current Activity for a better UX
- Increased the number of concurrent server requests possible
- Previously unreported Safari users on iPad are now being identified more accurately
- Completion History documentation improved
- Updated old UI screenshots in public documentation.

## Journey Workspaces

This Journey Workspaces release introduces many exciting new Workspaces features and enhancements, and a brand new Journey Applicants app. Read the Journey Workspaces release notes to learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release.

Key new features and enhancements:

- **Improved UI and UX:** Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants have a fresh new user interface and improved user experience.
- **Table row expansion:** Expand table rows on the List, displaying additional information as a custom card.
- **Dedicated application and task panes:** An improved application details screen with dedicated panes for application- and task-level content.
- **New task switcher:** A new task switcher makes switching between tasks in an application seamless.
- **Consolidated notes:** A dedicated Notes card brings all notes added across an application together in one location.
- **Reply to notes:** A new comments feature lets users reply to any application note and view all the replies as a threaded conversation.
- **Simplified application timeline:** A streamlined application timeline feature that displays just the different stages of application progression.

- **Custom card enhancements:** Including:
  - Support for an alert icon on custom card tabs
  - Customize the link icon for invoking a fluent function
  - Tooltips for link icons in custom cards
  - Restored the numerical information display as a chart
  - Extended table cards support tables as a subsection
- **Error framework improvements:** The error reporting framework provides additional information about mapping field configuration errors.
- **Receipt improvements:** Improvements to the receipts data source to ensure Workspaces users can view receipts across the application.
- **Mobile responsive design:** A fully responsive Journey Applicants app for desktop and mobile in both landscape and portrait orientations.
- **Improved modal windows:** Modal window improvements include an optimized viewing area based on its content type.
- **Material icons:** Configuration now supports using any Material icons in Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants.
- **Data source improvements:** Configure the Workspaces List screen using data from job properties in addition to the transaction metadata.
- **On-screen configuration editor:** Improvements to the **experimental** on-screen Workspaces configuration editor including a preview of changes.

Next, learn more about the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

# What's New in 22.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 22.10 This feature was introduced in 22.10.

The 22.10 release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products. The updated products and their changes are listed below.

## Journey Maestro

This release of Maestro includes long awaited updates and bug fixes of many early features, so you'll be delighted to upgrade your current product to the latest version of our software.

Read the detailed Maestro release notes or check the main release features.

- Improved the Offline / Online form building process
- Rebranded the Maestro product according to Temenos' vision, mission and strategy
- Updated 3-rd party libraries and dependencies, including security updates

## Journey Manager

We are pleased to announce our latest release of Journey Manager is ready for you to download! It's packed with new features and bug fixes, which you have been waiting for.

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or check the main release features.

- Introduced the concept of Event-Based Architecture where you can publish and subscribe to events using Kafka. In this release Manager only allows you to publish events, but you can use 3rd party applications, such as Temenos Adapter, to subscribe to events. You can also send REST calls to Manager to query and update submissions.

  NOTE

  This feature is still in development and may be subject to changes.

- Created a Kafka service connection to establish a connection to Apache Kafka 3.2.3 to publish events.

- Added a new DocuSign OAuth service connection to connect to DocuSign services using OAuth user authentication.
- Added support for Journey Manager deployments using OpenShift[1] containerization.

  NOTE

  This feature is still in development and may be subject to changes.

- Added support for billing with more fine grain control to allow for setting of a billing flag on transactions. A billable flag on the Submission class is also exposed via Fluent API, so you can access it via Txn objects and updated via TxnUpdater.
- The new operations portal will be deployed with Journey Manager.
- Updated 3-rd party libraries with the normal library updates to address security vulnerabilities as well as with some updates to major core technologies, such as Wildfly 26.1.2.Final and Open JDK 17.0.4.1+1.
- Rebranded the Manager product according to Temenos' vision, mission and strategy.

## Exchange

We are pleased to announce the update of two new Exchange packages for the latest release.

Read the detailed Exchange release notes or view each updated package below:

- DocuSign Version 13 - Updated to support mandatory OAuth Authentication, and removal of username/password authentication to meet DocuSign API expiry deadline of March 2023.
- VixVerify GreenID Version 4.1- Updated to add support for additional source documents including change of name and marriage certificates, and support for additional AEC fields for date of birth and property name.

[1]OpenShift is a family of containerization software products developed by Red Hat. Its flagship product is the OpenShift Container Platform — a hybrid cloud platform as a service built around Linux containers orchestrated and managed by Kubernetes on a foundation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

## Journey Analytics

We are pleased to announce the latest release of Journey Analytics is ready! The enhancements improve existing functionality and incorporate the following updates.

Read the detailed Journey Analytics release notes or check the main release features.

- New Navigation and branding - The navigation menu is now found under a new hamburger style menu button, which allows more screen real-estate to be used for the data, and to be more usable on smaller screens and devices.
- Scope selector sorting options - These options have been enhanced to allow sorting using Form Code and Last Updated, and allow both ascending and descending sorting directions.
- Caching time reduced - Caching server requests have been reduced from 6 hours to 2 hours to improve wait times to view new data.
- 'Today' definition updated on Dashboard tooltips.
- Security and performance updates - Upgrades and enhancements to the underlying infrastructure of Journey Analytics to improve overall performance and security.

## Journey Workspaces

The latest Journey Workspaces release includes many new features and enhancements to both Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants (formerly known as the Workspaces Applicant space or Applicant portal). There's a fresh new UI with white-label theme support and several UX improvements, enhanced navigation with support for the grouping of spaces, and many new productivity features including support for invoking fluent functions, a new reassign action, and an option to perform bulk actions.

Read the detailed Journey Workspaces release notes or check the main release features.

Key features included in this release:

- **Improved UI and UX:** A fresh new user interface for improved user experience.
- **Support for white-label themes:** Allows dynamic branding based on the logged-in user.
- **Space Grouping:** Group related spaces under the new hamburger menu which also shares reusable configurations.

- **Custom Card Grouping:** Improved custom cards that now allow several custom cards to be grouped within tabs.
- **Fluent Functions:** Native support for invoking Fluent Functions in Workspaces; available for custom actions, custom card links, and as a data source for custom cards.
- **Bulk Actions:** Perform a bulk operation of several commonly used actions: claim, release, assign, reassign, withdraw, and recover.
- **Reassign Tasks:** Reassign tasks without needing to unassign them first.
- **Timeline Stepper:** A new timeline stepper feature that provides a tramline view of application progress.
- **Tooltips:** Tooltips are now supported to display additional information on the List screen's table and in the Details screen's key info card.
- **Improved Modal Window:** Enhanced with an optimized content viewing area, and an option to open forms in a new browser tab.
- **Rules Support:** Configuration now supports rule definitions to control the display of custom actions, custom cards, and the upload attachments button.
- **Material Icons:** Use any Material icons in Workspaces and Journey Applicants configurations.
- **Additional Data Sources:** Configure the Workspaces Details screen using data from the initial transaction's properties, Fluent Functions, and job properties in addition to the current transaction's metadata.
- **On-screen Configuration Editor:** A new **experimental** feature to edit Workspaces configurations from the Workspaces UI and preview the changes.

Next, learn more about the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

# What's New in 22.04

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 22.04 This feature was introduced in 22.04.

The 22.04 release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products. The updated products and their changes are listed below.

## Journey Maestro New Features

This release of Maestro includes long awaited updates and bug fixes of many early features, so you'll be delighted to upgrade your current product to the latest 22.04 version of our software.

Read the detailed Maestro release notes or check the main release features.

- Updated 3-rd party libraries and dependencies, including support for ECMAScript 2019
- Upgraded the Font Awesome library to version 5.15.4 from 4.5.0, so many new icons are now available in the icon picker in the rich text editor
- Improved accessibility in several widgets, for example, in the Dropdown Multi Select component
- Enhanced the validation framework to properly include component validation on pages that were not visited
- Fixed many bugs from our backlog

## Journey Manager New Features

We are pleased to announce our latest 22.04 release of Journey Manager is ready for you to download! It's packed with new features and bug fixes, which you have been waiting for.

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or check the main release features.

- Improved the existing notification messages interface to let you create and schedule status change of various entities, such as form spaces, organizations, forms, and form versions
- Added a new status management service to automatically execute scheduled entity status changes

- Provided a set of new REST API to expose existing Operations as a service. These API will be consumed by new Workspaces functionality
- Added new permissions to the Workspaces form space to provide fine-grained control for new Workspaces Operational Portal REST API, such as `txn/query`, `txn/status`, `txn/task`, and `txn/purge`, as well as the existing `txn/cancel`.
- Included a new version of the Journey SDK, which requires the Journey SDK Maven Plugin to run. We've modified the underlying framework of the integration points between Manager and the SDK to accommodate this change.
- Deprecated a number of older Workspace pages: the Wet Signature, Landing, and Terms And Conditions pages. These pages are part of the old Non-FTX submission life cycle that is now handled within form design itself.

  Landing Page

  - Form > flow config tab doesn't not have a "Show landing page" checkbox
  - Form > there will no landing link to fire off the form
  - When searching for a form in the portal, the form link goes to the form directly instead of the landing page
  - Portal pages don't have landing.htm in pages

  Terms and conditions

  - Form->flow config tab -> will not have a "Show terms and conditions" checkbox
  - Property types will not include "Form Terms and Conditions" and "HTML Terms and Conditions page"
  - Organisations will not have "form Terms and Conditions" property
  - Form version will not have terms and conditions properties
  - Portals will not have Form terms and conditions page property and page

  Wet Signature

  - Form->flow config tab -> will not have "form required signature" drop box
  - Transaction history search pages will not contains signature status, type, timestamp column
  - Form version panel will not have the signature receipt icon
  - Submission status panel will not have "Signature Type" and "Signature status" fields

    - Form data config will not have "Form Signature XPath" and "Old Wet Signatures Required XPath " text boxes
- Updated 3-rd party libraries

## Exchange New Features

We are pleased to announce the update of five Exchange packages for the 22.04 release.

Read the detailed Exchange release notes or view each updated package below:

- Plaid TAF
- Mastersoft Harmony
- Gov.AU
- VIX Verify greenID
- Equifax IDMatrix

## Journey Analytics New Features

We are pleased to announce the latest 22.04 release of Journey Analytics is ready! The 22.04 enhancements improve existing functionality and incorporate the following updates.

Read the detailed Journey Analytics release notes or check the main release features.

- New tooltips added to the Dashboard View.
- The Scope Selector now displays the form code with each form making it easier to correctly identify the form you want to analyse.
- Open UX support has been enhanced to provide Open UX applications with full analytics capabilities. A sample project is now available from the Downloads section!
- Various bug fixes.

## Journey Workspaces New Features

The Journey Workspaces 22.04 release includes enhancements to the Journey Workspaces portal and Applicant space, and the introduction of a new Operations portal.

Workspaces portal improvements include enhancements to the search and notes features, and an updated application timeline, while the Applicant space now offers theming capabilities and a new notes feature. This release also introduces a new Operations Assistance portal for operations staff and administrators that allows authenticated

users to search and view transactions in a Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) system when providing operational assistance to banks and their customers.

Read the detailed Journey Workspaces release notes or check the main release features.

Key features included in this release:

- Improved search and notes features in the Workspaces portal.
- Applicant space enhancements, including theme support, timeline improvements, and a new notes feature.
- A brand new Operations portal, allowing operations staff and administrators to search for transactions, view transaction details, and perform transaction actions.
- An improved build and deployment process via Product Artifactory.
- Migration to the Nightwatch framework for API, configuration, and UI automation.

Next, learn more about the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

# What's New in 21.1.1

Platform Applicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 21.1.1 This feature was introduced in 21.1.1

The 21.1.1 release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products. The updated products and their changes are listed below.

## Journey Maestro New Features

This release of Maestro includes long awaited updates and bug fixes of many early features, so you'll be delighted to upgrade your current product to the latest 21.1.1 version of our software.

Read the detailed Maestro release notes or check the main release features.

- Enhanced the TM Form Version building functionality so you can choose which brand to use from the Brands Options.
- Improved white-labelling[1] support so you can set up multiple brands in a single template much easier.
- Introduced the new Avalon Template, which replaces the Maguire template, and brings a more modern look and feel and encapsulates common design pattern, helping to speed development time frames.
- We have partnered with XLTS.dev who will provide on-going support for AngularJS for Maestro to ensures its longevity.

## Journey Manager New Features

We are pleased to announce our latest 21.1.1 release of Journey Manager is ready for you to download! It's packed with new features and bug fixes, which you have been waiting for.

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or check the main release features.

- Introduced a new set of statuses for organizations, form spaces, forms and form versions, so you have fine control over each of the entities.

---

[1] White-label software is software that is purchased by a company from a service provider and re-branded as its own.

- Updated 3rd party libraries in line with our continuous software development.

## Journey Analytics New Features

We are pleased to announce the latest 21.11 release of Journey Analytics is ready! The 21.11 enhancements improve existing functionality and incorporate the following updates.

Read the detailed Journey Analytics release notes or check the main release features.

- The Timeline View now provides users more options for aggregating data. The tool-tip displayed on hover of the bar chart has also been improved to order the color sequence to match the bar chart for better readability.
- Users can now select a custom date range in a single view in the calendar.
- Ability to allow users to see near-time data from the current day by adding a new **Today** option to the period selector.
- For those customers with forms across multiple organisations, the organisation name will now be displayed above the form name in the Scope Selector to help differentiate between forms of the same name across different organisations.
- The User Journey View segmentation chart has been extended to accommodate the display of the top 10 segmentation values.

## Journey Workspaces New Features

We are pleased to announce the latest 21.11 release of Journey Workspaces. This release introduces a new space for authenticated applicants in addition to improving the Workspaces experience for processing agents, helpdesk agents, assisted channel staff, and group managers.

Read the detailed Journey Workspaces release notes or check the main release features.

Key features included in this release:

- A new space for authenticated applicants as a self-service portal for managing application creation, follow-ups, and keeping track of application progress.
- An improved build and deployment process for Workspaces which is now available directly from the product Artifactory.
- Support for job properties to configure the Workspaces key info section and custom cards.

- Support for switching between languages used for the Workspaces UI, and other enhancements to the localization framework.
- An enhanced focused search feature that now allows searching on fields that are not displayed in the item list.

# What's New in 2105

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 2105 This feature was introduced in 2105.

The 2105 release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products. The updated products and their changes are listed below.

## Journey Maestro New Features

This release of Maestro includes long awaited updates and bug fixes of many early features, so you'll be delighted to upgrade your current product to the latest 2105 version of our software.

Read the detailed Maestro release notes or check the main release features.

- Maestro Dashboard improvements
- Components space separator
- Security hardening
- Maestro Editor improvements

## Journey Manager New Features

We are pleased to announce our latest 2105 release of Journey Manager is ready for you to download! It's packed with new features and bug fixes, which you have been waiting for. One of the exciting features is a Fluent API REST service. As you know, Manager comes with an extensive set of private Fluent API enabling you to implement various complex business requirements. All you need to do is to just write a Groovy scrip that calls a few API and run it within your service. And it all works. However, what happens when you want to invoke the same Fluent API outside Manager. Now, we have a solution for you!

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or check the main release features.

- A new REST service - Proof of Concept
- Fluent API
- Manager installer
- Reports

# What's New in 20.11

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 20.11This feature was introduced in 20.11.

The 20.11release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products:

## Journey Maestro New Features

Read the detailed Journey Maestro release notes to learn about these new features and enhancements.

- Introduced the new concept of shared organization libraries
- Added drag and drop functionality to order libraries in the list
- Library exclude option retains the order of libraries

- Security improvements
- Performance improvements
- Developer experience enhancement

## Journey Manager New Features

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- A new magic byte scanning service
- A new Attachment File Name Regex deployment property

- Updated 3rd party libraries

## SpringboardSmall Business (SMB) New Features

Read the detailed Springboard release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- Introduces a new Springboard Solution for small businesses - SMB
- Improved documentation to accommodate multiple Springboard solutions

# What's New in 20.05

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 20.05 This feature was introduced in 20.05.

The 20.05 release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products:

## Journey Maestro New Features

Read the detailed Journey Maestro release notes to learn about these new features and enhancements.

- Improved the command line offline build tool
- Added the right to left language support

- Enhanced component publishing dependency

## Journey Manager v20.05 New Features

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

Azure Cloud support:

- Encryption key management using Azure Key Vault
- Attachment and Receipt storage using Azure Blob Storage
- System Event Publisher using Azure Queue

Automatic deployment and testing:

- The ExampleImportService, which was used to import example artifacts into Manager on initial startup, now supports all archive types. This is useful to import test artifacts for automation testing.
- The bulk user import spreadsheet is expanded to support Groups, Roles and Organization. This is also incorporated into the ExampleImportService.

## Journey Analytics New Features

Read the detailed Journey Analytics release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- Journey Analytics integration for Kony Visualiser web apps
- Springboard Out-of-the-Box Journey Analytics support

- New Milestone Funnel report
- UX and Design Improvements

## Journey Workspaces New Features

Read the detailed Journey Workspaces release notes to learn about these new features and enhancements.

- Improved build and deployment process
- Switch between timeline tasks when viewing application details
- Task-specific actions, and a new View Notes action
- A new focused and faster search option
- A fresh new user interface
- Improved custom card – permission control, hide empty data

- Improved session logout after a period of inactivity
- Date picker enhancements: single date, custom formats
- Search/Filter options on item list retained in session
- Assignee full name displayed when assigning a task
- Enhanced application/task list – configure line wrapping in tables
- Attachment name now shown in Documents panel

## Exchange New Features

Read the detailed Exchange release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- New Socure TAF package

- Updated AuthenticID TAF package
- Updated Worldpay TAF package
- Exchange Framework

- Updated FIS ChexSystems TIF package
- Updated Iovation TAF package
- Updated Plaid TAF package

## Springboard v3.0.0 New Features

Read the detailed Springboard release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- A new Product Selector form with seamless transition to DAO form
- Upgrade to Maestro v19.11
- iOvation call removed for Workspaces

- Updated documentation
- Addressed some technical debt

# What's New in 19.11

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 19.11This feature was introduced in 19.11

The 19.11release has a number of new exciting features and enhancements across the whole range of Temenos Journey Manager products:

## Journey Maestro New Features

Read the detailed Journey Maestro release notes to learn about these new features and enhancements.

Improvements to shared components including:

- View a component's order of inheritance and source details
- View a component's properties and their source
- Display child components at any level
- Revert local overrides from properties panel or properties display

- Security hardening to address security issues uncovered during penetration testing

## Journey Manager New Features

Read the detailed Journey Manager release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- General Fluent API enhancements
- Fluent API receipting enhancements
- Fluent Security Managers support added

- Adobe LiveCycle support removed
- Card Payment page removed from the Workspace
- Form version import options include Form Function now

## Journey Analytics New Features

Read the detailed Journey Analytics release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- New A/B Testing View (now Custom Reports View) save feature and improved metrics
- Dropoff View improvements

- Improved User Journey save, zoom and segmentation features
- Scope selector improvements

## Journey Workspaces New Features

Read the detailed Journey Workspaces release notes to learn about these new features and enhancements.

- Improved interface for applications with multiple applicants/products
- Supported actions offer custom actions and permission control
- Withdraw a saved application (NEW)
- Recover abandoned applications (NEW)

- Detailed console reporting to aid debugging of configuration issues (NEW)
- Monitor crucial service indicators, e.g. application SLAs, on the listing screen (NEW)
- Documents card enhancement to include/exclude documents using pattern matching
- Improved out-of-the-box templates for review, helpdesk, assisted channel, and manager

## Exchange v19.11 New Features

Read the detailed Exchange release notes or click the links below to learn about each new feature.

- New AuthenticID package

- New Worldpay package
- Exchange Framework

- Updated Yodlee package
- Updated Mitek Tiden package
- Security hardening

# Journey Manager Features

Journey Manager (JM) The transaction engine for the platform. | System Manager / DevOps | 23.04This feature was updated in 23.04

Journey Manager comes packed with the wide range of features empowering you to create complex customer onboarding and user journey solutions. Some of the main product features have now become its core functionality. Click on each feature to learn more.

## Main Features

- Forms for both anonymous and authenticated users
- Form prefill with user data
- Form save and resume
- Form delivery and provisioning
- Receipts and attachment management
- Services and service connections to 3rd party services
- Form data access using the Unified Application Data Document Model and transaction properties
- Digital signature integration
- Collaboration workflows and product bundling orchestration
- Form and process analytics to improve customer journey
- Form testing, including A/B form testing
- Security management, including Single sign-on[1] and a user identity verification
- Management of in-flight transactions and transient data
- Error handling, monitoring, and logging for auditability and compliance regulations
- Integration with systems of records
- Configurable support of server redundancy, quality of service and disaster recovery
- Encryption of in-flight data for enhanced security

[1]Single sign-on (SSO) is a property of access control of multiple related, yet independent, software systems. With this property, a user logs in with a single ID and password to gain access to any of several related systems.

- Management of complex PII[1] data and encryption keys
- Email notifications for various form's events
- System Event Publisher to sent server events to external systems
- Event-Based Architecture to publish various business events to external providers using Apache Kafka
- Quick server configuration update or re-configuration with Configuration Service

# Features by Release

Each release of Manager is shipped with new features and bug fixes to provide you with the best-in-class software and to accelerate business agility and improvements across the board.

The key features for each major Manager release are listed below.

### 23.04

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Configuration Service | Introduced a few Configuration Service allowing you to quickly and easily reconfigure a server instance by uploading a configuration file containing all relevant information |
| Database Integrity Checker | Added the Database Integrity Checker service and scheduled jobs to validate database integrity periodically. This service will generate a report for any issues in the Manager database that need to be addressed. |
| New Database Integrity Checker Event Type and Configuration Service Event Type | Introduced 2 new event types in Event Log. |
| Changes to Jakarta EE | Replaced Java EE with Jakarta EE. This is a requirement for WildFly, and will affect all groovy services within Journey Manager for customers upgrading. For more information, see Migrate to Jakarta EE. |

[1] Personally Identifiable Information (PII) is information about an individual that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual‘s identity, such as name, social security number, date and place of birth, mother‘s maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked to an individual. In Europe, PII is known as personal data.

| | |
|---|---|
| Jakarta Migration Support | In order to support our customers upgrading Journey Manager, we've created a service allowing you to convert Groovy services and security managers to be Jakarta EE 10 compatible. You can download this service (service-jakarata_transformer-v0.10.zip) from the download page. We have also enhanced our SDK documentation with strategies for migration of services. |
| Upgrades & security | Updated 3-rd party libraries with the normal library updates to address security vulnerabilities as well as with some updates to major core technologies, such as Jakarta EE and WildFly |

For more information see Manager 23.04 Release Notes.

### 22.10

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Event-Based Architecture | Introduced the concept of Event-Based Architecture where you can publish and subscribe to events using Kafka. In this release, you can only publish events |
| Apache Kafka | Created a Kafka service connection to establish a connection to Apache Kafka 3.2.3 to publish events |
| DocuSign OAuth service connection | Added a new DocuSign OAuth service connection to connect to DocuSign services using OAuth user authentication |
| OpenShift support | Added support for Journey Manager deployments using OpenShift[1] containerization |
| Billing support | Added support for billing with more fine grain control to allow for setting of a billing flag on transactions. A billable flag on the Submission class is also exposed via Fluent API, so you can access it via `Txn` objects and update it via `TxnUpdater`. |
| Operations portal | The new operations portal can be deployed using the Jour- |

[1]OpenShift is a family of containerization software products developed by Red Hat. Its flagship product is the OpenShift Container Platform — a hybrid cloud platform as a service built around Linux containers orchestrated and managed by Kubernetes on a foundation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

| | |
|---|---|
| | ney Manager installer |
| Upgrades & security | Updated 3-rd party libraries with the normal library updates to address security vulnerabilities as well as with some updates to major core technologies, such as Wildfly 26.1.2.Final and Open JDK 17.0.4.1+1 |
| New look and fee | Rebranded the Manager product according to Temenos' vision, mission and strategy |

For more information see Manager 22.10 Release Notes.

## 22.04

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Status Management | Improved the existing notification messages interface to let you create and schedule status change of various entities, such as form spaces, organizations, forms, and form versions.<br>Added a new status management service to automatically execute scheduled entity status changes. |
| Workspaces API updates | Provided a set of new REST API to expose existing Operations as a service. These API will be consumed by new Workspaces functionality.<br>Added new permissions to the Workspacesform space to provide fine-grained control for new Workspaces Operational Portal REST API, such as `txn/query`, `txn/status`, `txn/task`, and `txn/purge`, as well as the existing `txn/cancel`. |
| Maven SDK | Included a new version of the Journey SDK, which requires the Journey SDK Maven Plugin to run. We've modified the underlying framework of the integration points between Manager and the SDK to accommodate this change. |
| Upgrades & Security | Updated 3-rd party libraries |

For more information see Manager 22.04 Release Notes.

## 21.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|

| | |
|---|---|
| New Statuses added for organizations, form spaces, form versions and forms | Introduced a new set of statuses for organizations, form spaces, forms and form versions, so you have fine control over each of the entities. |
| New ServiceUser role | Scheduled Groovy services now run using the ServiceUser role, which defaults to a admin level role. This role can be limited to enhance the security around these services, if required. |
| New CSRF Protection option | Added the CSRF Protection option to the Workspaces, Workspace and Web-plug spaces. |

For more information see Manager 21.11 Release Notes.

## 21.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| A new REST service - Proof of Co ncept | A new service which exposes some of Manager's Fluent API via REST[1] end points. |
| Fluent API | We've further expanded the Fluent API to expose more features to help reduce the dependency on the deprecated Core Groovy API:<br>• Form VO - Included the form type through the `getFormType()` method.<br>• `TxnUpdater`, `JobUpdater` and `TxnQuery` - Included feature to view and manager comments against Transactions and Jobs<br>• `TxnUrlBuilder` - Included the capability to generate secure URL for forms/transactions through the `setSecured()` accessor method.<br>• `TxnUpdator` - Included the capability to lock and unlock the save Challenge lock state for a transaction |
| Manager installer | We've enhanced the installer so that for AWS installs using MySQL SSL is enabled by default to improve server security. |

[1] REST or RESTful API design (Representational State Transfer) is designed to take advantage of existing protocols. While REST can be used over nearly any protocol, it usually takes advantage of HTTP when used for Web APIs.

| | |
|---|---|
| | For more information, see the SSL JDBC Connection Enforcement for MySQL section of the installation guide.<br><br>Due to components requiring commercial licenses, iText, Oracle and Luna dependencies are not included with installs by default. These will need to be deployed separately. For more information, see the Manual Libraries Deployment section of the installation guide. |
| Reports | Remove the PDF export option from the Transaction and Job Licensing reports because it uses iText, which requires a commercial license. |

For more information see Manager 2105 Release Notes.

### 20.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Core services | Added support for:<br>• A new magic byte scanning service<br>• A new Attachment File Name Regex deployment property |

For more information see Manager 20.11 Release Notes.

### 20.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Azure Cloud support | Added support for:<br>• Encryption key management using Azure Key Vault<br>• Attachment and Receipt storage using Azure Blob Storage<br>• System Event Publisher using Azure Queue |
| Automatic deployment and testing | Added support for:<br>• The ExampleImportService, which is used to import example artifacts into Manager on initial start-up, now supports all archive types. This is useful to import test artifacts for automation testing.<br>• The bulk user import spreadsheet is expanded to sup- |

port Groups, Roles and Organization. This is also incorporated into the ExampleImportService.

For more information see Manager 20.05 Release Notes.

### 19.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| General Fluent API enhancements | Added support for:<br>• `TxnUpdater`, `TxnQuery`, `TxnBuilder` and `Txn VO` to improve the transaction level capability of the Fluent API<br>• `Emailer` and `UserEmailer`<br>• Added a new `Job Builder` class |
| Fluent API receipting enhancements | Added support for:<br>• Calling a named receipt render service from within a Fluent Receipt Service to enable receipt merging while still generating a receipt for the associated transaction.<br>• Generating a Web and Email received from a Fluent Receipt Service.<br>• Externalization of the Core PDFUtils methods to merge receipt in Fluent. |
| Fluent Security Managers support added | Added support for:<br>• A Fluent User Authentication Provider, with a template for a skeleton Fluent Groovy User Auth Provider.<br>• A Fluent Security Manager, which includes a template for a skeleton SSO Security Manager and an out-of-the-box ADFS Security Manager.<br>• Fluent Security Managers implementation has resulted in a number of new Fluent API classes to support the scripting within a Security Manager. |
| Form version import enhancements | Form version import options include Form Function now. |
| Removed features | Removed:<br>• Adobe LiveCycle support removed<br>• Card Payment page removed from the Workspace |

For more information see Manager 19.11 Release Notes.

### 19.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Workspace API | Enhanced to support the development of the new help desk persona for the Workspaces, including:<br>• Transaction search using multiple criteria<br>• Additional updates to Txn and Job Queries<br>• Security enhancements |
| Fluent API | Enhanced to reduce the dependency on the Core API and improve upgrade supportability, including:<br>• New PaymentLog Query class<br>• Improved TxnQuery transaction search capabilities<br>• New feature to support collaboration jobs<br>• Added form expiry information to the Form object |
| Security enhancements | Improved CORS support for form spaces |
| Chromium puppeteer receipt service | Added a new Chromium puppeteer receipt service to render forms as PDF receipts |
| Library upgrades | Upgraded the dependent libraries, including:<br>• Apache Cayenne 4.0<br>• Spring Security 4<br>• Wildfly 16 |
| Removed features | Removed:<br>• Birt and PayPal Payment gateway. It is replaced with the Transaction and Job Licensing screens for transaction usage information.<br>• PayPal Payment gateway. |

For more information see Manager 19.05 Release Notes.

### 18.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Workspace API | Introduced new REST API to support the development of rich UI experiences for 'Back of House' staff who support |

| | |
|---|---|
| | complex workflows and provide help desk functions to end users. The API utilizes Swagger and Spring Security. |
| Static content externalization | Added a new Maestro form rendering mode which significantly reduces the time it takes to load large forms. This is important as long application loading times can significantly increase the bounce rate with users simply closing the browser window before starting the application. |
| System Event Publisher | Added a new user authentication event feed to send user login events. Enhanced scheduled purge time and actual purge time for a transaction. |
| Security hardening | Added support for:<br>• Added Validation of date field to the workspace portal to fix internal error when provided date is invalid.<br>• Security around service connection password in the manager UI.<br><br>Removed confirmation page and receipting from the Server Monitor Form configuration. |
| Library upgrades | Upgraded the dependent libraries, including:<br>• Open JDK 11<br>• User Agent Utils 1.21<br>• Spring Framework 4.3.19<br>• Spring Security 43.17<br>• Bouncycastle 1.60<br>• SDK 3.9<br>• org.apache.xmlgraphics batik 1.10<br><br>Removed:<br>• JLine |
| Platform support enhancements | Added support for:<br>• Microsoft SQL Server 2017 database.<br>• Microsoft Windows Server 2016 operating system. |
| Fluent API | Added new API. |
| Behavior changes | Enhanced management of submissions' lifetime. |
| Removed features | Removed: |

- FopRenderReceiptService receipt render service and `org.apache.xmlgraphics` library
- Use of Flash in the Manager UI
- Apache Camel Support for Groovy Services

For more information see Manager 18.11 Release Notes.

### 18.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| System event publisher | Introduced the System event publisher to connect external systems through an AWS SQS queue, in near real time, where the messages can be picked to provide up to date information about the states of form transactions in Journey Manager. |
| Library upgrades | Upgraded the dependent libraries, including:<br>• Apache Groovy Lang 2.4.15<br>• Eclipse BIRT Runtime 4.6.0<br>• JDBC Database Drivers (MySql, Oracle and SQL Server)<br>• JUnit 4.12<br>• Oracle Java JDK 18u172 |
| Platform support enhancements | Added support for new Insights, including:<br>• Centrally stored ECCL Script<br>• Fluent API to send Insights Segments from server side Groovy Scripts |
| Fluent API | Added new API |
| Behavior changes | Enhanced the transaction abandonment and data purging to ensure PII data is removed accordigly. |

For more information see Manager 18.05 Release Notes.

### 17.10

| Release Key Feature | Description |
|---|---|
| Transact Functions | Introduced Fluent Functions to allow you to use functional programming within Journey Manager, so you can now write a function once and simply trigger it at whatever points or points you need. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Continuous Integration | Provided improved CI-based testing support. Created a definition of what is included in the application package and versioned in GIT or another SCM tool. |
| Transact SDK | Combined developer tools into a unified Transact SDK to provide a single set of tools to help developers make the most of integrating with Transact API while using Continuous Integration (CI/CD). |
| Reference data | Introduced Transact Reference Data to decouple reference data from the form, decrease the form loading time, and enable you to deploy once and use in many forms. |
| Semantic versioning | Unified versioning across the platform for consistency including full semantic versioning across all forms and services. Semantic Versioning enables two teams to work in parallel on more than one form solution and permits hierarchical management of versions. Additional features include support for up to 3 levels of versions and version branching. |
| Security hardening | Add support for Strict Security Headers to enforce that each HTTP request within authenticated user session is checked to make sure it is the originated source that created the session. The HTTP request's IP Address and Browser User Agent are checked. |
| Collaboration Jobs | Enhanced collaboration jobs to support group sharing. |

For more information see Manager 17.10 Release Notes.

## 5.1

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Data retention policy enhancements | Retention duration time is reduced to make sure Journey Manager is used as a system of engagement and not a system of records:<br>• Transactions - reduced from 180 days to 90 days.<br>• Transaction history - reduced from 2 years to 180 days. |
| Transaction history data warehouse integration | Added the following publishing services to publish transaction history directly to a data warehouse:<br>• AWS S3 |

| | |
|---|---|
| | • File system<br>• Fluent Groovy |
| Automated deployments | Introduced a new script-able install or upgrade mode for deployment automation, which supports Continuous Integration (CI) testing. This mode is beneficial to both hosted services and IT professionals in that it helps to automate provisioning and upgrading, which in turn can improve quality by reducing operator errors. |
| Fine grained form space authentication policies | Enhanced forms authentication policies, which depend on form space they are in. |
| Fluent Groovy API | Added new Fluent service types.<br>• Form version Selector<br>• Receipt Render<br>• Transaction History Publisher<br>• Virus Scan Service |
| Application packages | Added new configurations for Organization Properties, Delivery Channels, and Service Connections. |
| Security manger logging | Introduced a new Security Manager logger that can be used in all Security Manager Groovy scripts. |
| Update to latest Maestro form from within Manager | Enhanced Maestro form updates from Journey Manager, so it uses the latest build of the Maestro form without exporting a Maestro Form Version Archive and then importing it Manager. |
| Maestro localization support | Introduced localization to Journey Manager and Maestro, which allows multiple languages to be added to a single form. This feature allows a form to change languages based on the users of the form. |
| Collaboration Jobs | Form and service version pinning:<br>• The form code for Review Tasks is no longer necessary. Task Assign actions that do not specify a Form Code will by default use the same form code and version as the previous submission.<br>• The Form Version can be explicitly set in the Job Definition.<br>• The Job Action Version can be explicitly set in the Job |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Definition. |
| Collaboration Jobs | History logging, so the state of the job is recorded and logged at the end of each branch of processing completes. |

For more information see Manager 5.1Release Notes.

### 5.0

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Fluent Groovy API | Introduced completely new and improved API, which can be used from Groovy scripts. |
| Maestro form version import | Added support for Maestro form version import defaults, which provides specialized import behavior if a form version archive was created in Maestro. |

For more information see Manager 5.0 Release Notes.

### 4.3

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Application packages | Added support for:<br>• Form bundle and form chaining<br>• Receipts with Groovy scripts<br>• Dynamic task assignment<br>• Cancellable tasks<br>• Publish and subscribe data extract sharing<br>• Unified navigation support |
| AWS KMS | Added support for AWS Key Management System (KMS) data encryption in the Cloud Service Enterprise VDC edition. |
| Groovy service tests | Added comprehensive Groovy Services test framework to support accelerated development and development best practices. |
| REST API | Added Transactions, Service Definitions and Groovy Service Invoke REST API. |
| Security hardening | Added security role and group grant leases, improved SEM logging support and Apache Mod Security configurations. |
| Service improvements | Added Form Security Filter, Groovy Receipt service types, service versioning support, Groovy Service Logging, |

| | |
|---|---|
| | improved documentation, service editing and form and service definition Organization Application Packages. |
| Transact Integration Gateway | Introduced TIG, which provides a light weight on-premise integration module for performing deliveries and proxy calls to internal systems. This module replaces the TIA and TDA modules. |

For more information see Manager 4.3 Release Notes.

> NOTE
>
> Detailed information on Manager releases is available from the Release Notes Sitemap in our Journey Platform resources website.

Next, learn more about deprecated features.

# Maestro Features

MaestroThe UI design product. | Form Builder Platform Developer | 23.04This feature was updated in 23.04

Journey Maestro comes packed with the wide range of features empowering you to create complex customer onboarding and user journey solutions. Some of the main product features have now become its core functionality. Click on each feature to learn more.

## Main Features

- Ready-to-use form components and complex native widgets that support standard JavaScript[1]
- Internationalization and right-to-left (R2L) language support
- Configurable form accessibility
- Security permissions and roles to access and design forms
- Advanced Maestro editor including WYSIWYG, undo editing operations, copy and paste across several forms, and source code editing functionality
- Seamless form building and deployment to Journey Manager using FAR files
- Offline Build to develop forms in your favorite IDE
- External source control
- Templates and brands to accelerate form development process
- Logging and error handling to simplify form troubleshooting
- Optimized performance
- All tools are accessible via a web browser so no local software installation is required

## Features by Release

Each release of Maestro is shipped with new features and bug fixes to provide you with the best-in-class software and to accelerate business agility and improvements across the board.

The key features for each major Maestro release are listed below.

---

[1]Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.

## 23.04

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Libraries | Updated 3-rd party libraries and dependencies, including security updates |
| Build process | Added the Enable generating brand variables as CSS variables, conditions apply option to output CSS variables to a form during a form build process |
| User notification | Added the Server Status tab to the Management Dashboard to display a status of a serverManager<br>Added support to show all users, who have a current design open, in the Maestro editor |
| Security | Added support to auto logout Dashboard and show session has ended in the Maestro editor |

For more information see 23.04 Release Notes.

## 22.10

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Libraries | Updated 3-rd party libraries and dependencies, including security updates |
| Form building | Improved the Offline / Online form building process |
| New look and fee | Rebranded the Maestro product according to Temenos' vision, mission and strategy |

For more information see Maestro 22.10 Release Notes.

## 22.04

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Libraries | Upgraded the Font Awesome library to version 5.15.4 from 4.5.0, so many new icons are now available in the icon picker in the rich text editor<br>Updated 3-rd party libraries and dependencies, including support for ECMAScript 2019 |
| Components | Improved accessibility in several included widgets |

| | |
|---|---|
| | Enhanced the validation framework to properly include component validation on pages that were not visited |

For more information see Maestro 22.04 Release Notes.

## 21.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Templates and brands | Introduced the new Avalon Template, which replaces the Maguire template, and brings a more modern look and feel and encapsulates common design pattern, helping to speed development time frames.<br><br>Improved white-labelling[1] support so you can set up multiple brands in a single template much easier. |

For more information see Maestro 21.11 Release Notes.

## 21.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Maestro Dashboard | To improve the management of users' organizations, projects, forms, form versions, libraries, and resources, we've added ability to select multiple resources and perform the available actions on them, such as delete, export and publish.<br><br>You, as a form developer, can now delete published projects, forms and form designs from the Maestro dashboard as you may not have access to the Manager dashboard on the shared environment. |
| Components | We've introduced the Upload new Resources button to the library resource list so you can easily add a resource to your project.<br><br>We've added support to have a " " (space) as the thousand separator to the Decimal, Percentage and Currency Field |

[1] White-label software is software that is purchased by a company from a service provider and re-branded as its own.

| | |
|---|---|
| | components. |
| Security | We've updated all required libraries to harden our software security. |
| | We've added the ability to copy and paste a block of content from one form to another. It only works in a Chrome browser or any Chromium including Microsoft Edge. |
| Maestro editor | We've added an Icon Picker[1] in the rich text editor, which is used in many component's properties, for example a label. |
| | We've added support for scrolling through the entire list of Brand options (Branding for Form) to find a required configuration without clicking on each individual entries. |

For more information see Maestro 2105 Release Notes.

### 20.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Libraries | Introduced the new concept of shared organization libraries |
| | Added drag and drop functionality to order libraries in the list |
| | Library exclude option retains the order of libraries |

For more information see Maestro 20.11 Release Notes.

### 20.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| SCM | Improved the command line offline build tool |
| Language | Added the right to left language support |
| Components | Enhanced component publishing dependency |

For more information see Maestro 20.05 Release Notes.

---

[1] The Icon Picker is a selection dialog allowing you to pick an icon from the range of images shipped with Maestro.

### 19.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Shared components | Improvements to shared components:<br>• View a component's order of inheritance and source details<br>• View a component's properties and their source<br>• Display child components at any level<br>• Revert local overrides from properties panel or properties display |
| Security | Security hardening to address security issues uncovered during penetration tests |

For more information see Maestro 19.11 Release Notes.

### 19.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Components | Video Capture component added to provide you with a reliable user verification option |
| Receipts | Receipt Designer |
| SCM | Offline Builds (BETA) |

For more information see Maestro 19.05 Release Notes.

### 18.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Libraries | Library Tagging |
| SCM | Maestro SCM Feature Branching |
| Forms | Form Dependencies<br>Form Resource Summary |

For more information see Maestro 18.11 Release Notes.

NOTE

Detailed information on Maestro releases is available from the Release Notes Sitemap in our Journey Platform resources website.

Next, learn more about Manager features.

# Journey Analytics Features

Journey Analytics The behavioural analytics tool. | Analytics User | Latest Version Latest version 23.04.0 cloud hosted.

Journey Analytics comes packed with a wide range of features empowering you to analyze complex customer onboarding and user journey solutions. The main product features have now become core functionality in the latest cloud-hosted version. Click on each feature to learn more.

## Main Features

- The Dashboard provides a high-level overview of application performance.
- View an individual form's transaction metrics and better understand completion rates with Dropoff.
- Identify abandonment hotspots and trends in Field Analysis - with detailed field-level statistics.
- Visualize the User Journey milestones while segmenting users.
- Use the Timeline to compare application statuses over time.
- Custom Reports provides a customizable dashboard for many different metrics in a single view.
- Visualize a Collaboration Job and view it's key metrics for the job, step, action, section or field.
- Export analytics reports to CSV.
- Segmentation analysis to help understand the behavior of specific groups of users.
- Follow significant events in the user's journey through Custom Milestones.

## Features by Release

Each release of Journey Analytics is hosted with new features and bug fixes to provide you with the best-in-class software and to accelerate business agility and improvements across the board. All cloud-hosted customers are automatically provided with the latest release.

The key features for each major release of Journey Analytics are listed below. Click on each release number to view the complete release notes and learn about all features and bug fixes.

## 23.04

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Multi-tenancy support | In 23.04 Journey Analytics is ready to support multi-tenanted Journey Manager instances via Organisations. Any issues around Segmentation of Journey Analytics data is also isolated by Organisation. |
| Queue processing improvements | Improvements have been made to task processing in our GCP queues to provide better error logging and clean up of old tasks. |
| EventConsumer API Changes | All EventConsumer APIs have been hardened in this release. |
| Benchmarking design | Initial conceptual design for Benchmarking has begun and will continue into 23.10. |
| Legacy Dashboard deprecated | The Legacy Dashboard has been removed from the code base and is no longer available to clients. Public documentation has been updated to remove content for the Legacy Dashboard. |

For more information see Analytics 23.04 Release Notes.

## 22.10

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| New Navigation and branding | The navigation menu is now found under a new hamburger style menu button, which allows more screen real estate to be used for the data, and to be more usable on smaller screens and devices. |
| Scope Selector sorting options | These options have been enhanced to allow sorting using Form Code and Last Updated, and allow both ascending and descending sorting directions. |
| Caching time reduced | Caching server requests have been reduced from 6 hours to 2 hours to improve wait times to view new data. |
| Dashboard tooltips | 'Today' definition updated on Dashboard tooltips. |
| Security and performance updates | Upgrades and enhancements to the underlying infrastructure of Journey Analytics to improve overall performance and security. |

For more information see Analytics 22.10 Release Notes.

### 22.04

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Scope Selector | The Scope Selector now displays the form code with each form making it easier to correctly identify the form you want to analyse. |
| Dashboard View improvements | New tooltips added to the Dashboard View. |
| Open UX Support | Open UX support has been enhanced to provide Open UX applications with full analytics capabilities. A sample project is now available from the Downloads section. |

For more information see Analytics 22.04 Release Notes.

### 21.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Scope Selector | Custom period date selector displays a single view for start and end date selection.<br><br>Today option provided for the period with Last Day being renamed to Yesterday.<br><br>For multi-organisation clients the organisation name is displayed with the form name in the form version selector.<br><br>Sorting forms in the form version selector is also available for multi-organisation clients. Forms can be sorted by organisation name or form name. |
| Timeline View improvements | The Timeline View now provides users more options for aggregating data. The tooltip displayed on hover of the bar chart has also been improved to order the color sequence to match the bar chart. |
| User Journey View segmentation chart | The User Journey View segmentation chart has been extended to display ten segmentation values compared to the previous five. |

For more information see Analytics 21.11 Release Notes.

## 2105

| Release Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Custom Reports View | A/B Testing was renamed to Custom Reports.<br><br>This view is a customizable dashboard that makes it easy to compare the performance of your application versions, across many different metrics in a single view. Additional reports have been added to the view, such as:<br><br>Best, Worst, Avg - gauge the best, worst and average time taken to complete applications within the selected scope.<br>Completion Rate - examine application performance in terms of user completion for the selected scope in a bar chart.<br>Duration Summary - compare and sort the best, worst, average, and median times to complete each version in the selected scope using a table.<br>Median Time - compare the median time to complete each version in the selected scope as a bar chart.<br>Milestone Funnel - compare standard and custom milestone hit rates for the selected scope with a bar chart.<br>Section Completion - see completion across sections for the selected scope using a line graph.<br>Section Summary - compare and sort by section-level stats for each version in the selected scope in a table.<br>Segment Split - discover the breakdown of values of a segment type for all transactions within the selected scope using a pie chart.<br>Segment Switch - examine how users traverse values of a segment type for all transactions within the selected scope using a sankey graph.<br>Session Map - investigate the number of sessions occurring per country for the selected scope using a choropleth graph.<br><br>Top Fields - compare and sort by field-level stats for each version in the selected scope in a table.<br>Transaction Summary - compare Transaction Statuses for |

| | |
|---|---|
| | the selected scope using this bar chart. |
| Improved analysis and metric readability | Tooltip enhancements for the Field Analysis and Dropoff Views to provide more detailed statistics. |

For more information see Analytics 2105 Release Notes.

### 20.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Milestone Funnel report | A new Milestone Funnel report was introduced to the A/B Testing View. Use this report to understand how milestones are encountered across one or more applications. The chart is a bar chart where each bar represents the number of milestone transactions. |
| Springboard | Provided built-in analytics used by the Springboard solutions. |

For more information see Analytics 20.05 Release Notes.

### 19.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| New reports available in the A/B Testing View | Segment Split, Duration Summary, Best, Worst Average Duration, and Sessions Map. Also rates have been added to the Segment Switch report. |
| Other enhancements | Transaction Recovery Support - Query changes were made to the Journey Analytics backend to support Workspace transaction recovery. This means that Abandoned transactions that were subsequently completed (recovered), will be reflected accurately in the Journey Analytics views.<br><br>Help Tooltips - We improved help tooltips by ensuring a consistent look and feel to tooltips throughout the application. We also added more clarity to some areas via help text, namely the Period selector.<br><br>Export Column Ordering - This new enhancement ensures that the order in which metrics (columns) are selected in the Export View UI, is reflected in the downloaded CSV. |

For more information see Analytics 19.11 Release Notes.

### 19.05

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| A/B Testing View | The new Journey Analytics A/B Testing View brings a customizable dashboard that makes it easy to compare the performance of your application versions, across many different metrics in a single view. |
| Custom Data Export | The new Custom Data Export allows you to export analytics reports to CSV with the ability to select the granularity of your reports and retrieve exports for multiple applications in a single file. |
| Additional enhancements | Segment filtering - Added to the Global Filter Panel to allow users to view different segments of their analytics data.<br><br>Job filtering - Added to the Cohorts filter on the Global Filter Panel to allow users to filter by one or more collaboration jobs, or versions of jobs.<br><br>Last Analysis - Added to the Journey Analytics banner to show the date and time the analytics data was last consolidated and updated. It typically runs hourly. |

For more information see Analytics 19.05 Release Notes.

### 18.11

| Release Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Visualizer user interface | Insights has a brand-new user interface that brings together modern best practices to deliver a refreshed user experience. This was achieved by a major redesign of the Insights' frontend.<br><br>This new user interface is called Visualizer, and will replace the Dashboard user interface from previous versions. |
| Open UX support | Insights extends support for event collection to include Open UX applications, including Out Of The Box React implementations, such as Springboard implementations and framework agnostic wrappers for ECCL integration. |

| | |
|---|---|
| | This means that open UX applications can now be analyzed using Insights, the same way Maestro applications can be analyzed. |
| Collaboration Job support | Insights now provides Collaboration Job analytics to monitor workflow level analytics. |

For more information see Analytics 18.11 Release Notes.

Next, learn more about Manager features.

# Journey Workspaces Features

WorkspacesThis topic relates to Journey Workspaces | Workspaces UserIncludes bank staff, helpdesk, relationship managers, and managers | 18.11This topic was introduced with the 18.11 release | 23.04This topic was updated for the 23.04 release

Journey Workspaces comes packed with a wide range of features empowering you to improve your customers' experience with onboarding assistance, rapid application resolution, and communication of progress, regardless of the channel they are applying from. Out of the box, Workspaces includes the features you need to accomplish your business objectives.

## Main Features

- **Review:** Review capabilities for pending applications that need manual action.
- **Helpdesk:** Support staff can quickly and easily find any application to provide assistance.
- **Assist:** Assisted channel staff can kick start the application process and monitor progress.
- **Manage:** Task management capabilities for managers and supervisors.
- **Applicants:** A self-service portal where authenticated applicants can manage applications.

## Features by Release

Each release of Journey Workspaces has new features, enhancements, and bug fixes to provide you with the best-in-class software and to accelerate business agility and improvements across the board. The key features for each major Workspaces release are listed below.

### Journey Workspaces 23.04

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 23.04.

The following key features are included in this release:

- **Improved UI and UX:** Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants have a fresh new user interface and improved user experience.

- **Table row expansion:** Expand table rows on the List, displaying additional information as a custom card.
- **Dedicated application and task panes:** An improved application details screen with dedicated panes for application- and task-level content.
- **New task switcher:** A new task switcher makes switching between tasks in an application seamless.
- **Consolidated notes:** A dedicated Notes card brings all notes added across an application together in one location.
- **Reply to notes:** A new comments feature lets users reply to any application note and view all the replies as a threaded conversation.
- **Simplified application timeline:** A streamlined application timeline feature that displays just the different stages of application progression.
- **Custom card enhancements:** Including:
  - Support for an alert icon on custom card tabs
  - Customize the link icon for invoking a fluent function
  - Tooltips for link icons in custom cards
  - Restored the numerical information display as a chart
  - Extended table cards support tables as a subsection
- **Error framework improvements:** The error reporting framework provides additional information about mapping field configuration errors.
- **Receipt improvements:** Improvements to the receipts data source to ensure Workspaces users can view receipts across the application.
- **Mobile responsive design:** A fully responsive Journey Applicants app for desktop and mobile in both landscape and portrait orientations.
- **Improved modal windows:** Modal window improvements include an optimized viewing area based on its content type.
- **Material icons:** Configuration now supports using any Material icons in Journey Workspaces and Journey Applicants.
- **Data source improvements:** Configure the Workspaces List screen using data from job properties in addition to the transaction metadata.
- **On-screen configuration editor:** Improvements to the **experimental** on-screen Workspaces configuration editor including a preview of changes.

## Journey Workspaces 22.10

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 22.10.

The following key features are included in this release:

- **Improved UI and UX:** A fresh new user interface for improved user experience.
- **Support for white-label themes:** Allows dynamic branding based on the logged-in user.
- **Space Grouping:** Group related spaces under the new hamburger menu which also shares reusable configurations.
- **Custom Card Grouping:** Improved custom cards that now allow several custom cards to be grouped within tabs.
- **Fluent Functions:** Native support for invoking Fluent Functions in Workspaces; available for custom actions, custom card links, and as a data source for custom cards.
- **Bulk Actions:** Perform a bulk operation of several commonly used actions: claim, release, assign, reassign, withdraw, and recover.
- **Reassign Tasks:** Reassign tasks without needing to unassign them first.
- **Timeline Stepper:** A new timeline stepper feature that provides a tramline view of application progress.
- **Tooltips:** Tooltips are now supported to display additional information on the List screen's table and in the Details screen's key info card.
- **Improved Modal Window:** Enhanced with an optimized content viewing area, and an option to open forms in a new browser tab.
- **Rules Support:** Configuration now supports rule definitions to control the display of custom actions, custom cards, and the upload attachments button.
- **Material Icons:** Use any Material icons in Workspaces and Journey Applicants configurations.
- **Additional Data Sources:** Configure the Workspaces Details screen using data from the initial transaction's properties, Fluent Functions, and job properties in addition to the current transaction's metadata.
- **On-screen Configuration Editor:** A new **experimental** feature to edit Workspaces configurations from the Workspaces UI and preview the changes.

## Journey Workspaces 22.04

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 22.04.

| Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Improved build and deployment process | Improved version control in Product Artifactory that allows easy access to a specific Workspaces release. |

| Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Operations Space | A brand-new Operations portal that allows operations staff and administrators to search and view TJM transactions when providing operational assistance to banks and their customers. |
| Theme support in Applicant space | Apply a theme to the Applicant space to match bank branding and color schemes. |
| Notes feature in Applicant space | A new notes feature in the Applicant space that allows applicants to communicate directly with bank staff for assistance during the application process. |
| Search improvements | Improvements to the Workspaces search feature, allowing the user to return to the parent view quickly after completing a search. |
| Timeline improvements | Improvements to the Application timeline feature to filter out tasks or transactions that are not required. |
| Notes improvements | Improvements to the Workspaces notes feature to make it easier for bank staff to communicate with applicants in the Applicant space. |
| Migration to new automation framework | Migration from the old web driver framework to the Nightwatch framework for API, config, and UI automation. |

## Journey Workspaces 21.11

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 21.11.

| Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Improved build and deployment process | An improved build and deployment process for Workspaces is now available from the Product Artifactory. |
| Applicant Space template | A fully configurable workspace for authenticated non-bank users to manage the application journey. |
| Support for Job Properties | Support for configuring the Key Info card and custom cards using the application's job properties. |
| Localization improvements | Support for switching the UI language within Workspaces, and other minor enhancements to the localization framework. |

| Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Search improvements | Configure the search feature to include fields that are not part of the item list data. |

## Journey Workspaces 20.05

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 20.05.

| Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| Improved build and deployment process | An improved build and deployment process for Workspaces that supports seamless integration to your dev-ops practices such as CI/CD. |
| Task-specific actions | Task-specific actions are presented alongside each task in an application to give you confidence you're acting on the right task. |
| Focused search | A new focused search option that lets you search on a specific application data item and get results faster. |
| Improved UI / UX | A fresh new user interface for an improved user experience. |
| Improved custom card configurations | Improved custom card configuration including permission control and an option to hide empty or null data. |
| Improved session logout | Automatic session logout after a defined period of inactivity. |
| Date picker enhancements | Enhancements to the date picker to support single date selection and custom date formats. |
| Enhanced search/-filter behavior | New search and filter behaviour on the List pages, with the latest search/filter retained in each space until cleared or the session ends. |
| Enhanced application assignment | The assignee full name is displayed when assigning a task to a user. |
| Enhanced application listing | An enhanced view configuration, extending control over line wrapping in data tables. |
| Enhanced documents panel | Attachment name is now included for each item in the Documents panel. |

## Journey Workspaces 19.11

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 19.11.

| Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Multi-applicant / multi-product interface | An improved interface for viewing applications with multiple applicants and products. |
| Workspaces actions | Enhancements to the supported actions, now offering custom actions and permission control. |
| Withdraw an application | The ability to withdraw a saved application from Workspaces. |
| Recover an application | The ability to recover an abandoned application from Workspaces. |
| Console error reporting | Detailed console reporting of configuration errors that eases the effort required by solution builders when debugging configuration issues. |
| Application SLA | The ability to add a visual indicator in the application listing screen to keep track of crucial service indicators like application SLA. |
| Documents card | An enhanced documents card interface and configuration that supports options to include or exclude certain documents using pattern matching. |
| Templates | Improved out-of-the-box templates for processing staff, helpdesk staff, assisted channel staff, and manager personas. |

## Journey Workspaces 19.05

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 19.05.

| Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Role based spaces | An improved interface for viewing applications with multiple applicants and products. |
| Task man- | Enhancements to the supported actions that now offers custom actions |

| Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| agement | and permission control. |
| Kickstart applications | The ability to withdraw a saved application from Workspaces. |
| Key Info card | The ability to recover an abandoned application from Workspaces. |
| Multi applic-ant support | Detailed console reporting of configuration errors that eases the effort required by solution builders to debug configuration issues. |
| Application Timeline | The ability to add a visual indicator in the application listing screen to keep track of crucial service indicators like application SLA. |
| Documents card | An enhanced documents card interface and configuration that supports options to include or exclude certain documents using pattern matching. |
| Templates | Improved out-of-the-box templates for processing staff, helpdesk staff, assisted channel staff and manager personas. |

## Journey Workspaces 18.11

To view the release notes and learn about all the new features, improvements, and bug fixes in this release, see Journey Workspaces 18.11.

| Key Features | Description |
|---|---|
| Views | A view is a pre-created filter that allows agents to get to the tasks that they must work on quickly.<br>Views offer the following benefits:<br>• An efficient way to keep track of pending applications that need to be processed.<br>• High visibility on the applications that enter and exit task queues.<br>• Reduce overall time to find the tasks that need to be processed. |
| Filters | Views can be further refined to support the needs of processing agents by filtering and/or sorting on specific task list columns.<br>Filters offer the following benefits:<br>• Augment a view's pre-configured criteria. |

| Key Features | Description |
| --- | --- |
| | • Allows further narrowing down on search criteria.<br>• Specify multiple filter conditions to hone in on specific applications. |
| Applicant Info | Applicant info summarizes the key information about the applicants.<br><br>Applicant Info offer the following benefits:<br>• A simple summary about the applicants in an application.<br>• See key applicant details like name and phone number at a glance.<br>• Easily differentiate between applications with a single applicant or joint applicants. |
| Background Checks | Validation results from third-party services can be seamlessly integrated and viewed in Transact Workspaces.<br><br>Background Checks offer the following benefits:<br>• Summarise the results from integrated third-party services.<br>• Visual indicators that aid in identifying the actions required on pending applications. |
| Application Timeline | A simple application timeline with the ability to add and review notes.<br><br>The Application Timeline offers the following benefits:<br>• A streamlined way to track the stages that an application has completed.<br>• A space for processing agents to add and review notes about the application. |
| Attached Documents | Add and review the attached documents captured at various application stages.<br><br>Attached Documents offer the following benefits:<br>• A centralized place for reviewing documents attached to the application at various stages.<br>• Attach additional supporting documents while reviewing the application. |

# Temenos Journey Manager Features Compatibility

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager.

Temenos Journey Manager software has two major releases per year, with several minor releases in between. A lot of effort goes into the product development to ensure there is backward compatibility between these releases. However, you may need to have a certain Journey Manager version installed to enable and use the following product features.

## Manager

| Manager Version | Product Feature | Compatibility Issue |
|---|---|---|
| 18.11 | Journey Analytics Visualizer UI. | You can only use the Journey Analytics Visualizer UI alongside Manager version 18.11. For earlier Manager versions, the original Journey Analytics Dashboard UI is used. |
| 18.05 | Manager segments. | You can only send segments from Manager to Journey Analytics from 18.05 or later. It is not possible to send segments from any earlier versions of Manager. |
| 17.10 | Manager custom milestones. | You can only send custom milestones from Manager to Journey Analytics from version 17.10 or later. It is not possible to send custom milestones from any earlier versions of Manager |
| 17.10 | Maestro semantic | You can use semantic versioning[1] in Maestro and Manager older than version 17.10, provided the form version number is no longer |

[1]Semantic Versioning is a formal convention for specifying compatibility using a three-part version number: major version; minor version; and patch. The patch number is incremented for minor changes and bug fixes which do not change the software's application programming interface (API). The minor version is incremented for releases which add new, but backward-compatible, API features, and the major version is incremented for API changes which are not backward-compatible. For example, software which relies on version 2.15 of an API is compatible with version 2.2.3, but not necessarily with 3.2.4.

| | |
|---|---|
| versioning. | than 10 characters. For example, a version "10.1" is 5 characters and will work, but a version "10.2-develop" is 13 characters and won't work. However, if you truncate it to "10.3-dev", it will work. |

# Maestro

As we constantly update and improve our Maestro product, we make sure it can run on most recent Manager versions. You can check the compatibility matrix below to confirm which Maestro version you can run on your current Manager installation.

| Maestro Version | Manager Version | Compatibility Issue |
|---|---|---|
| 19.05+<br>21.11 | 21.11 | Journey Manager 21.11 introduced the CSRF Protection option for XSRF tokens support in the workspaces, workspace and web-plug form spaces. If this option is enabled, forms other than the latest Maestro maintenance releases 19.05+ or forms with custom version of the Attachment Field widget will be unable to upload attachments in the form. To resolve this, you will need to upgrade and redeploy the form with this fix, available with the Maestro maintenance releases 19.05+, including 21.11. |
| 19.11.2 | 18.11.2 and later | None |
| 18.11 | 17.10 | None |
| 18.05 | 17.10 and later | The `formInit` event, which is used for performance metrics, is only supported in Manager version 17.10.8 and later. |
| 17.10 | 17.10 | The form version number field has changed from 10 to 20 characters, so a new form with a long version, for example, 10.1-develop, will not work in Manager prior to version 17.10.<br>Transact Functions are only supported in Manager version 17.10 and later. |

# Composer

| Composer Version | Manager Version | Compatibility Issue |
|---|---|---|
| 4.1 | 19.11 | If you want to use FTX forms. |

Also, check Temenos Journey Manager deprecation schedule.

# Product Suite Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

Every product of the Temenos Journey Manager platform is vigorously tested and validated in accordance with the current list of Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE[1]). As a part of software development cycle, we scan all our software libraries nightly to ensure we deliver as secure the product as possible and to guaranty our clients and applicants safe and risk-free journey when they use form applications built and run using our product suite.

Each CVE report is diligently analyzed against Temenos security policies defining what fixes within what time frames we need to apply for each level of vulnerability. For example, Critical and High level vulnerabilities must be resolved before a release can go into production, whilst Medium level vulnerabilities can be fixed within a month with a minor software release. For more information, see vulnerability levels.

Each release of product suite is accompanied with release notes detailed vulnerabilities resolved or proactively addressed by new software. We also maintain the list of libraries by each product release. This is to provide a clear picture of how we manage current and possible secure risks and threats to all our software users, being it a developer, DevOps or a sales representative.

The following list shows all 3rd party libraries used in our product suite:

- Manager libraries
- Maestro libraries
- Workspaces libraries, which use Manager libraries

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager features compatibility.

[1]Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) is a list of publicly disclosed computer security flaws, where each security flaw has a CVE ID number assigned to it for further reference.

# Product Suite Accessibility

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

Accessibility[1] is the degree to which a product or a service is usable by people with the widest range of capabilities. Although, often focused on disabled people using assistive technologies[2], such as screen-readers, this is relevant to all people. Thus, the range of capabilities can also include product customers:

- Using slow broadband
- Using non-mainstream operating systems
- Using a mobile device
- Speaking non-native languages
- Elderly

It's important to remember that accessibility is the right thing to do. Also, providing accessible forms could be part of the law in some countries. Since 1999, the primary international standard for website accessibility has been the Web Content Accessibility Guidelines (WCAG) developed by the W3C. This has formed the basis for accessibility legislation around the world, including:

- Section 508 in the US
- The 2000 Government Online Strategy in Australia
- The UNCRPD signed by all EU member states

For more information, see What is accessibility.

To create an accessible form, you need to understand how assistive technologies interpret the content of the forms, so we recommend reading A (very) brief guide to accessibility.

---

[1]Web accessibility, or eAccessibility, is the inclusive practice of ensuring there are no barriers that prevent interaction with, or access to, websites on the World Wide Web by people with physical disabilities, situational disabilities, and socio-economic restrictions on bandwidth and speed.

[2]Assistive Technology is an umbrella term that includes assistive, adaptive, and rehabilitative devices for people with disabilities while also including the process used in selecting, locating, and using them.

## Accessibility Criteria

There is a lot to consider when it comes to web accessibility. However, the main recommendations for creating a form with well-designed accessibility features can be summarized as follows:

- Use the correct (semantic) HTML elements for their intended purpose as much as possible. For more information, see HTML text fundamentals
- Keep content clear and concise. It should make logical sense as much as possible
- Create a clear attractive page layout using correct markup
- Make link text meaningful and don't add too many links on one page
- Provide informative, unique page titles
- Use headings to convey meaning and structure
- Write informative alternative text for images
- Add semantics to HTML elements that don't have default semantics and roles by default. For more information, see WAI-ARIA documentation
- Create transcripts and captions for multimedia
- Select correct colors and contrast. For more information, see Contrast checker
- Don't overuse CSS styles and JavaScript. Avoid masking an HTML element to look like or behave like it is not. For example, don't style `<div>` to look like `<button>`.
- Provide keyboard shortcuts as much as possible

This list covers almost all areas of form application development, so we recommend thinking about accessibility from early design stages and constantly implementing and improving it as your form application takes shape.

Keep in mind that your application will be used on mobile devices as well, so you may need to spend additional efforts to ensure it all works as there are some exceptions that need special consideration for mobile. For more information, see Accessibility on mobile devices.

> NOTE
>
> We recommend testing your forms for accessibility. For more information, see Handling common accessibility problems

This is out of scope of this documentation to guide you through all aspects of accessibility implementation, so we only concentrate on how to use our products' features to implement accessibility in forms.

Every product of the Temenos Journey Manager platform is designed with accessibility in mind, nevertheless Template Designers and Form Builders need to apply some specific configurations or code modifications to improve accessibility of form applications. The most popular tools to build forms are the Maestro editor and Sprintboard Solutions, so we will look at them in more details.

## Maestro Forms

When you build application forms in the Maestro editor, it enables you to use templates, shared libraries and common Maestro configurations - all of which has accessibility features - some are pre-configured and some are adjustable. Furthermore, each component you use in a form may have some accessibility configurations, which provides you with even more control over what you can configure.

For more information, see Maestro form accessibility as well as particular accessibility features of each component.

## Springboard Applications

You can build application forms using Sprintboard Solutions, which also allows you use accessibility features via component configuration.

## Documentation

All our products and solutions are complex and therefore require rather deep understanding of concepts, technologies and various techniques used to implement them. To enable you to get onboard with that and start develop your own applications, we strive to create and maintain up-to-date technical documentation, including API documentation. As we do so, the documentation is written and styled with accessibility in mind.

If you are a developer who needs to document your new application functionality, API or integration interface, we recommend following the main accessibility criteria as you write your documentation.

Next, learn about Maestro form accessibility.

# Temenos Journey Manager for Developers

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

As a developer, you want to build user experiences[1] that differentiate your digital products from competitors. Unfortunately, that also means that you need to handle many things that cross from front-end to back-end services and develop features that a front-end can't always manage. That's where the Temenos Journey Manager comes in handy as it gives you the ability to create best in class customer journeys for financial services.

Temenos Journey Manager platform provides critical services for customer acquisition and onboarding, including:

- Save & resume
- Receipt generation
- PII[2] security
- Bundling of multiple forms into a submission
- Accessibility compliance
- Multiple applicants

Because we take care of developing, testing, and maintaining these complex features, organizations can focus on designing an effective customer journey without dealing with the complexity of the underlying platform.

---

[1]Customer Experience (CX) is the product of an interaction between an organization and a customer over the duration of their relationship. This interaction is made up of three parts: the customer journey, the brand touchpoints the customer interacts with, and the environments the customer experiences (including digital environment) during their experience. A good customer experience means that the individual's experience during all points of contact matches the individual's expectations.
[2]Personally Identifiable Information (PII) is information about an individual that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, such as name, social security number, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked to an individual. In Europe, PII is known as personal data.

Each customer journey is made of one or several web applications, also referred to as forms, which are hosted on and managed by Journey Manager. Our platform provides developers with two distinct paths for building web applications:

## Journey Maestro Design Environment

Journey Maestro is the customer experience development environment of the Temenos Journey Manager platform, purpose-built for the creation of financial customer experiences. It's a design tool that enables trained developers and forms designers to create, visualize, integrate third-party services, test, deploy, and iterate a financial customer journey. Typically, a user action triggers an integration. And often, there is a moderately sophisticated user interface that needs to communicate with the service. These can sometimes be challenging to design, build and test. To simplify this, we provide well-designed and implemented user interfaces for each of our integrations. And while not every integration has a user interface, many do.

To build applications in Maestro, developers are required to have the following skills:

- JavaScript[1]
- AngularJS[2]
- HTML5[3]

---

[1]Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.

[2]AngularJS is a structural framework for dynamic web apps. It lets you use HTML as your template language and lets you extend HTML's syntax to express your application's components clearly and succinctly. AngularJS's data binding and dependency injection eliminate much of the code you would otherwise have to write. For more information, see http://angularjs.org/

[3]Maestro forms are fundamentally built using HTML 5. The structure of the form and the text displayed in the form are all configured and established using HTML5. HTML is the standard markup language for creating Web pages and stands for Hypertext Markup Language. HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.

- CSS[1]
- LESS[2]
- Maestro product training

## Open UX Environment

The Temenos Open UX is a Software Development Kit (SDK), including REST APIs[3], that enables skilled ReactJS[4] developers to create complex web applications that run on Manager. ReactJS developers, with their own IDE[5] and development tools, may choose our Open UX as the most efficient path to creating different user experiences. Banks with established UX development teams, especially those using JavaScript frameworks such as ReactJS, can use the services of Open UX to focus on their customer onboarding experience, while treating infrastructure as a "solved problem", eliminating much of the routine complexity accompanying UX development. Open UX is transparent to existing development pipelines, allowing bank teams to reuse and retain their investment in UX, design, and development environments while taking advantage of the Temenos Journey Manager platform services.

To build Open UX web applications, developers are required to have the following skills:

- ReactJS
- IDEs
- REST API
- UX development expertise

---

[1]CSS stands for Cascading Styles Sheets and is used to define styles for a Maestro Form, including the design, layout, and variations in the form's display on different devices and screen sizes. The CSS on a Maestro form is primarily taken care of by the Template Designer. The Template Designer will implement the branding and/or styling of the form's assets.CSS can be applied to the template of the form, individual components, and any other asset associated with a Maestro form.
[2]LESS is a dynamic preprocessor style sheet language that can be compiled into Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) and run on the client side or server side.
[3]REST or RESTful API design (Representational State Transfer) is designed to take advantage of existing protocols. While REST can be used over nearly any protocol, it usually takes advantage of HTTP when used for Web APIs.
[4]ReactJS is a JavaScript library for building user interfaces.
[5]Integrated Development Environment.

# Integration

The Temenos Journey Manager platform advantage is its capability to integrate with a wide range of third-party services. There are two types of integrations:

## Native Integration

It uses a combination of Groovy scripting language, plus several libraries and services that the Temenos Journey Manager platform provides. Groovy is a scripting language that most developers will find simple to learn and powerful to use. The libraries provided alongside Groovy make it easy to invoke third-party services using SOAP, REST or HTTP, perform data transformations, and more.

Our Temenos Journey Manager platform also comes with a wide range of pre-built third party integrations available from the Exchange.

## 3rd Party Integration

Instead of doing the bulk of the computational work in Groovy and having it run within the Temenos Journey Manager platform, you can create the logic in a third-party integration and simply invoke it from your application during the appropriate life cycle event. The integration platform will perform the service invocations, data translations, and so on, using its capabilities. There are extensive Transact Fluent API that can be called if the integration needs to call back into the platform to retrieve or update transaction information.

Developers depend on the built-in features for routine services, pre-built integrations, and apply their knowledge to rapidly extend the functionality to meet their specific needs. In this case, they require Java and Groovy[1] skills.

Next, learn about the complete range of software development technologies and programming languages you can use in our platform.

---

[1]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

# Software Development Technologies

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

NOTE

These technologies are used across the entire Temenos Journey Manager.

This topic lists the software development technologies and programming languages used in Journey Maestro.

A Maestro form is a dynamic HTML page designed to present information to users, guide them through the form to collect the required inputs, and submit data to Journey Manager for further processing. The design and purpose of a Maestro form depends on the organization that builds and implements it. The organization is free to use their preferred software development processes, and Maestro supports the following popular software development technologies and programming languages to implement forms. They are listed below in the order of importance for a form builder.

## AngularJS

A Maestro form builder can utilize AngularJS[1] framework to build dynamic forms, which implement business logic. One example is a script that retrieves data from Manager or invokes a service to retrieve data from a third-party system. Experience with AngularJS is necessary to create custom native components.

[1] AngularJS is a structural framework for dynamic web apps. It lets you use HTML as your template language and lets you extend HTML's syntax to express your application's components clearly and succinctly. AngularJS's data binding and dependency injection eliminate much of the code you would otherwise have to write. For more information, see http://angularjs.org/

## JavaScript

A Maestro form builder can implement complex business rules to enhance a form using the JavaScript[1] language.

## LESS

Maestro allows a form builder to use LESS[2] (Leaner Style Sheets) to create dynamic CSS[3] to implement a form. For more information, see the CSS section below.

## HTML5

Maestro forms are structured and built using HTML 5[4]. HTML is used as the standard markup language for creating Web pages, while HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.

---

[1]Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.

[2]LESS is a dynamic preprocessor style sheet language that can be compiled into Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) and run on the client side or server side.

[3]CSS stands for Cascading Styles Sheets and is used to define styles for a Maestro Form, including the design, layout, and variations in the form's display on different devices and screen sizes. The CSS on a Maestro form is primarily taken care of by the Template Designer. The Template Designer will implement the branding and/or styling of the form's assets.CSS can be applied to the template of the form, individual components, and any other asset associated with a Maestro form.

[4]Maestro forms are fundamentally built using HTML 5. The structure of the form and the text displayed in the form are all configured and established using HTML5. HTML is the standard markup language for creating Web pages and stands for Hypertext Markup Language. HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.

## JSON

A Maestro form builder can use JSON[1] format to store form data in Maestro forms or exchange data between different systems, such as Manager, and Maestro. For example, to transfer forms to another system, use the **Download JSON** feature in Maestro.

## CSS

CSS[2] is used to define styles for a Maestro form that includes the design, layout, and variations in the form's display on different devices and screen sizes. A template designer primarily looks after CSS of Maestro forms by implementing the branding and styling of the form's assets. CSS can then be applied to a form template, individual components, and any other asset associated with a Maestro form.

## CSV

Maestro stores all translation files as CSV[3] files, which can be edited by language translators to add new languages to a Maestro form.

---

[1]JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.

[2]CSS stands for Cascading Styles Sheets and is used to define styles for a Maestro Form, including the design, layout, and variations in the form's display on different devices and screen sizes. The CSS on a Maestro form is primarily taken care of by the Template Designer. The Template Designer will implement the branding and/or styling of the form's assets.CSS can be applied to the template of the form, individual components, and any other asset associated with a Maestro form.

[3]CSV is a comma-separated values fil, which s a delimited text file that uses a comma to separate values. A CSV file stores tabular data (numbers and text) in plain text. Each line of the file is a data record. Each record consists of one or more fields, separated by commas.

# XML

Maestro uses XML[1] to store and transfer form data, such as form submissions. However, JSON is now replacing XML to perform these functions.

Next, learn about the Maestro dashboard.

[1] XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language that defines a set of rules for encoding documents in a format that is both human-readable and machine-readable.

# Migrate to Jakarta EE

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | 23.04 This feature was introduced in 23.04

Journey Manager runs on the WildFly application server, which now uses Jakarta EE instead of the Java EE. Jakarta EE is a new Java technology trend in the Enterprise Edition Frameworks that can be also seen in new releases of other Java-based products, such as Spring and Spring Security. However, Jakarta EE introduces breaking changes to existing source code, which is based on previous versions of Spring framework.

Therefore, in order to continue using WildFly, we've upgraded all our underlying artifacts to align them with Jakarta EE 10 standards. This also means that any Java source code using previous Java EE code will not run in Journey Manager version 23.04.0 and above. One reason for this is that the servlet package name has been changed from `javax.servlet` to `jakarta.servlet`. Therefore, all Groovy scripts, templates and 3rd party libraries shipped with Manager need to be replaced with their Jakarta EE alternatives.

Existing Journey Manager customers who wish to upgrade to Manager version 23.4.0+ need to upgrade their deployed applications by changing all Groovy scripts, which are normally used in services, security managers, SDK projects, and exported archives. This activity can be summarized below:

- Change package imports to use new Jakarta EE artifacts, for example, `import javax.servlet.http` to `import jakarta.servlet.http`
- Change constants, for example, `javax.xml.ws.http.request.headers` to `jakarta.xml.ws.http.request.headers`

NOTE

After you've upgraded Groovy scripts for Journey Manager 23.04.0+, they won't be anymore backward compatible to the previous versions of Journey Manager.

## Upgrade SDK Project

To be able to use the latest Journey Manager release, you must upgrade your SDK projects.

To upgrade an SDK project:

1. Download Journey SDK 23.04.0 or later.

   > NOTE
   >
   > Journey SDKs prior to 23.04.0 are not compatible with Journey Manager 23.04.0.

2. Copy the old project source code into the new downloaded SDK project.
3. Port any existing project customization into the new project.
4. Convert the existing Groovy scripts to use correct Jakarta package names in import statements and constant names. You can choose one of the following methods to convert the project:

### Search and Replace Manually

1. Search for `javax` in all Groovy script files of the project and check whether the import statement needs to be changed to the new value.
2. If the project has exported Journey Manager entities, such as application package JAR files, service JAR files and so on, check whether these archives contain Groovy scripts and correct them as per the previous step.

### Use Eclipse Transformer Tool

1. Download the Eclipse Transformer tool (`org.eclipse.transformer.cli-0.6.0-SNAPSHOT-distribution.jar`).
2. Extract the JAR into a new directory and open it. You should see the main jar utility `org.eclipse.transformer.cli-0.6.0-SNAPSHOT.jar` as well as a lib directory including all dependencies.
3. Run the following command to convert the files:

```
java -jar org.eclipse.transformer.cli-0.6.0.jar -o path/to/sdk-project path/to/upgraded-sdk-project
```

This will create a new `path_to_upgraded-sdk-project` directory containing a new version of the project with Groovy files upgraded to use the new Jakarta imports and constants. If the project contains exported archives of applications, services and so on, the tool will also change the content of these archives.

## Upgrade Services and Security Managers

To be able to use the latest Journey Manager release, you must upgrade your existing Groovy services and Security Managers to make them compatible with Jakarta EE. To simplify this process, we provide a Jakarta Transformer service that performs all required changes.

The upgrade involves irreversible database changes, so you should perform the following steps before you commence:

1. Back up a database of an environment that you are upgrading
2. Upgrade the Dev, Test, and Staging environments first, test it thoroughly and only then upgrade the Prod environment

To upgrade services and security managers:

1. Locate the Jakarta Transformer service.
2. Run the service in the `dryRun` mode to see what services and security managers will be changed but without actually changing them. Running the service in the `list` or `dryRun` modes invoke the service's Unit Test that helps you analyze the size of changes and pinpoint where changes need to be applied. If you prefer doing changes manually, this can also serve as a check list. For more information, see Jakarta Transformer service.
3. After you are happy with the changes, run the service in the `transform` mode to persists them in the database.
4. Open Groovy Console and paste the following Groovy script into the Groovy Script text area:

```
import com.avoka.tm.svc.*;
Map params = [:]
params.action = (Object)“transform”
def result = new GroovyServiceInvoker()
      .setServiceName(“Jakarata transformer”)
      .setVersion(“0.1.0”)
      .invoke(params)
println(result)
```

5. Select the Commit DB Changes checkbox to commit the changes to the database and click Execute Script.

6. Check committed changes in the Execution Output text area and save this information in a file for future references, for example, if you will need to troubleshoot service errors after the migration process is done.

   WARNING

   If you don't save the output and close the Groovy Console window, the change log will be lost.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform development.

# Temenos Journey Manager Integration

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Temenos Journey Manager enables digital interaction between an organization and its customers. Because of the importance of this interaction, there is often a need to integrate between the Temenos Journey Manager platform and other systems. In some cases, the integration required can be minimal, but integration can be quite extensive.

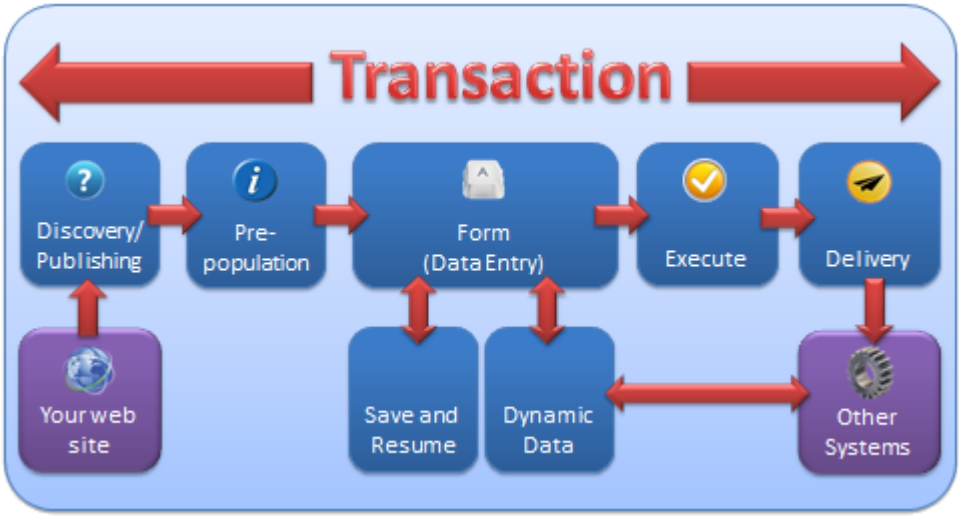
- Integration areas occur at different stages within the interaction between a user and the organization.
- Within each integration area, there are different integration implementations, to support different technologies used by different organizations.

## Integration Areas

There are several key integration areas or stages in which integrations generally occur during transactions:

- Transactions Discovery
- Data Pre-population
- Data Entry Streamlining
- Execution
- Save and Resume
- Delivery

This is illustrated in the diagram below.



These integration stages are detailed described below.

## Transactions Discovery

Your users need to be able to discover the transactions that you provide. There are a number of ways to do this. The simplest is to have a link on your web site which launches the transaction.

Things can get more sophisticated than this. For example:

- You may want to have customized links, which are different for different users. Generally this is so that you can provide custom pieces of data in the link URL, generally so that you can pre-populate some of the fields in the form from this data. This helps to make it easier for users to fill out forms (see Pre-population below).
- If your users are logged into your web site, you may want to pass their identity to the transaction. This again allows the form to pre-populate some of the fields.
- You may want to embed the form into your existing web site, rather than linking to it. This is generally not recommended in modern responsive and task-oriented designs, although it is possible to implement with Transact.
- Another option is to send the user a link to the transaction using some other mechanism, such as via an email. You can send them a link to a blank form, alternately you can also use Transaction Manager to create a custom link that contains a partially pre-filled form to make their lives easier.
- Users can also save a transaction that they have partially completed. This will generate a custom link for them, that will enable them to return to the transaction at a later date. There are also other ways for them to get back to the transaction if they lose the link. You can configure a challenge question to ensure that only the original author can access their saved transaction.

## Data Pre-population

We want to make it as easy for your users to complete a transaction as possible. Transact is specifically designed to make the entire experience as intuitive and simple and engaging as possible.

You can make the data entry process even simpler by pre-populating (or pre-filling) information into the form that you already know about them, which means that they won't have to type the information themselves. Depending on what information is available, this can dramatically

We can generally provide the pre-fill data in one of the following ways:

- Front-end data passing. If your existing web site knows who the user is, you can pass specific pieces of data about that user directly to the transaction. This can be done via URL parameters, cookies, lookup tokens, and a variety of other techniques.
- Back-end look-ups. If the user has been authenticated by your web site, you can pass their identity to the Transaction Manager server. We can then use this identity to look up information in back-end business systems, or Transaction Manager's own profile database, to pre-fill the form.

Pre-population is also sometimes provided by using a previous submission's data to populate a new submission. This is useful when a transaction has to be repeated every year (or periodically). and the data doesn't change much from submission to submission.

## Data Entry Streamlining

During the data entry process, we want to make it as easy as possible for users to complete the form, and get the product or service they are requesting.

There are a number of ways we can do this. For example:

- We can populate fields in the form from third party services, such as LinkedIn or Facebook. (This is similar to pre-population, but occurs once the form has already loaded, rather than prior to loading.)
- We can do calculations and lookups to provide them more information, or to validate their data entry. For example, we might verify the name of the account holder that they are trying to transfer funds to, or calculate the approximate repayments for their loan.
- We can provide them ways of speeding up their data entry. For example, instead of forcing them to type in an address laboriously, field by field, we can allow them to just start typing an address, and provide a matching set of possible candidate addresses, and then auto-complete the individual fields. (Like the address picker in Google Maps.)
- We can ask the user to upload a document, such as a photo of their license. We could use OCR technology to recognize the text on the document, and used to populate fields on the form.
- We can give the user real-time validation of their eligibility. For example, we could integrate with a credit scoring service to provide an indication about whether their loan is likely to be approved or not.

Data entry optimization is usually done using one of two techniques:

- Client-side integration. This occurs directly between the form (executing in the client's browser), and the information system. The LinkedIn pre-population widget is this type - no server-side installation or configuration is required.
- Dynamic Data. In this case, the form will invoke Transaction Manager, which will in turn invoke the actual service. Several Composer widgets are designed to work with Dynamic Data Services. Transaction Manager can provide added value, such as data and protocol transformation and security.

## Execution

Execution is the process of adding additional value to the transaction after the data entry step. It can consist of a number of added-value steps, some of which require may integration with back-office or third party systems.

Some examples of added value integrations include:

- Adding electronic signatures using third-party eSignature solutions.
- Processing payments using third-party payment gateways.
- Retrieving credit scores or identity verification results using third-party services.
- Using Enterprise Document Management systems to generate documents or welcome kits to provide to the customer.
- Providing a review-and-approval step prior to delivery.

## Save and Resume

Saving a form and returning to it to resume editing is an important capability. This is shown on the diagram for completeness, but is in fact implemented purely inside of Transaction Manager. There are no user-modifiable extension points.

## Delivery

Delivery is the process of delivering the results of the transaction, in both human-readable and machine-readable format, to the organization.

Of all the different points of integration, delivery is the most important. The reason is obvious - unless we deliver the data that was collected (in some way) to the organization, there is no value achieved for the organization.

The range of different delivery options is highly varied. It can be as simple as an email containing a PDF as an attachment which is processed manually, or as complicated as direct integration of different parts of the data into a number of different back-end

business systems. Delivery can even be performed for transactions that haven't been completed by the end user, as this abandonment information can itself be useful.

## Authenticated and Unauthenticated Transactions

Manager supports the use of both authenticated or unauthenticated transactions. Authentication is usually the process of identifying a user using a user-name and password, or sometimes more sophisticated methods. An unauthenticated user is a user who hasn't logged into Transaction Manager, and doesn't have an identity in Transaction Manager. This does not necessarily mean that they are unknown, and usually some information will be known about them, often including their email address.

Similar capabilities are available for authenticated and unauthenticated users, but are implemented in slightly different ways:

| Capability | Authenticated | Unauthenticated (Anonymous) |
|---|---|---|
| Pre-population | A user's identity can be used to pre-fill forms with information that is already known about that particular person. This assumes that the user's identity already exists in an existing system. | Pre-population can still be achieved, but is implemented without the user actually logging in. For example, pre-fill data can be passed to the transaction using URL parameters. |
| Save and Resume | An authenticated user can save a partially completed transaction. By logging in again later, the user can view their partially completed transactions (known as drafts), and resume editing. The user can also log in from a different device. | Save and resume is implemented via a simple reference code and challenge question (similar to an airline booking code). |
| Transaction History | When an authenticated user logs into Transaction Manager, they can see the history of their submissions. (Note that they will usually only be able to see a summary of the transaction, not the content, because generally data retention policies will result in the details being purged.) | Transaction history can be provided to in a number of different ways, such as a confirmation email. Historical information is often maintained in other systems that maintain a more complete history of the customer's interactions with the organization, such as CRM systems. |
| Tasks | A task can be assigned to a user who | A task can be assigned to an unau- |

| | |
|---|---|
| is authenticated in Transaction Manager, and appears in their task list. | thenticated user via email or any other system that can display a URL. The user will simply click on the link in order to perform the task. |

A question that is often asked is whether to use authenticated or unauthenticated access. Transaction Manager supports both types extremely well. However, it is important to note the following regarding authenticated transactions.

1. Many organizations already have the concept of identity and usernames/passwords. Usually the organization will not want to introduce a new and different username and password, but rather re-use the existing mechanism.
2. Users are often reluctant to sign up with a username and password just in order to be able to save and resume a transaction later. (We have data that supports this assumption.) This can increase transaction abandonment, because users simply don't want to register. It's usually wise to allow users to complete a transaction without requiring them to register.
3. Identity can also be complicated to implement, especially the identity of your customers outside the firewall. Transaction Manager does support both common signon using LDAP, and Single Sign On (using SAML), but these can add complexity to the implementation.

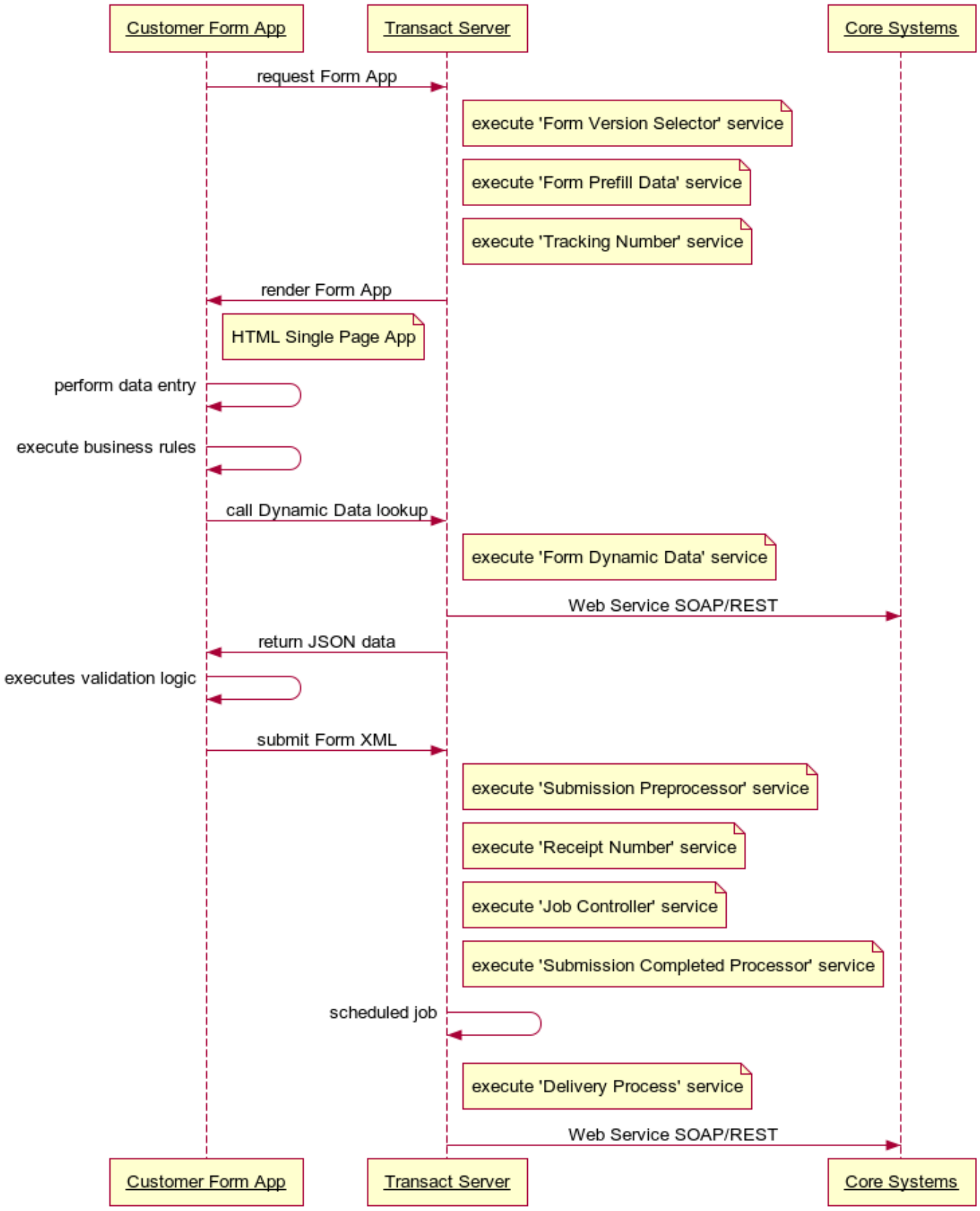
Because of the above, we generally recommend the following:

- External customers be treated as "anonymous" users, without trying to establish or confirm their identity online. This may have a minor impact on their ability to pre-fill their forms (although there are ways to achieve this), but in general, treating them as anonymous dramatically simplifies the integration requirements, the security implications, and the time to market. As outlined above, most features in Transact such as save and resume, task assignment and pre-fill have been designed to work with either anonymous or authenticated users.
- Internal users (such as help desk and call center staff) be treated as authenticated users. This is usually much simpler to implement, since all internal users are already authenticated on the network, and both LDAP and SSO are relatively simple to implement.

In some cases authenticated end users may be required for business reasons, and Transact does support this extremely well - but bear in mind that it may affect your time and cost of implementation.

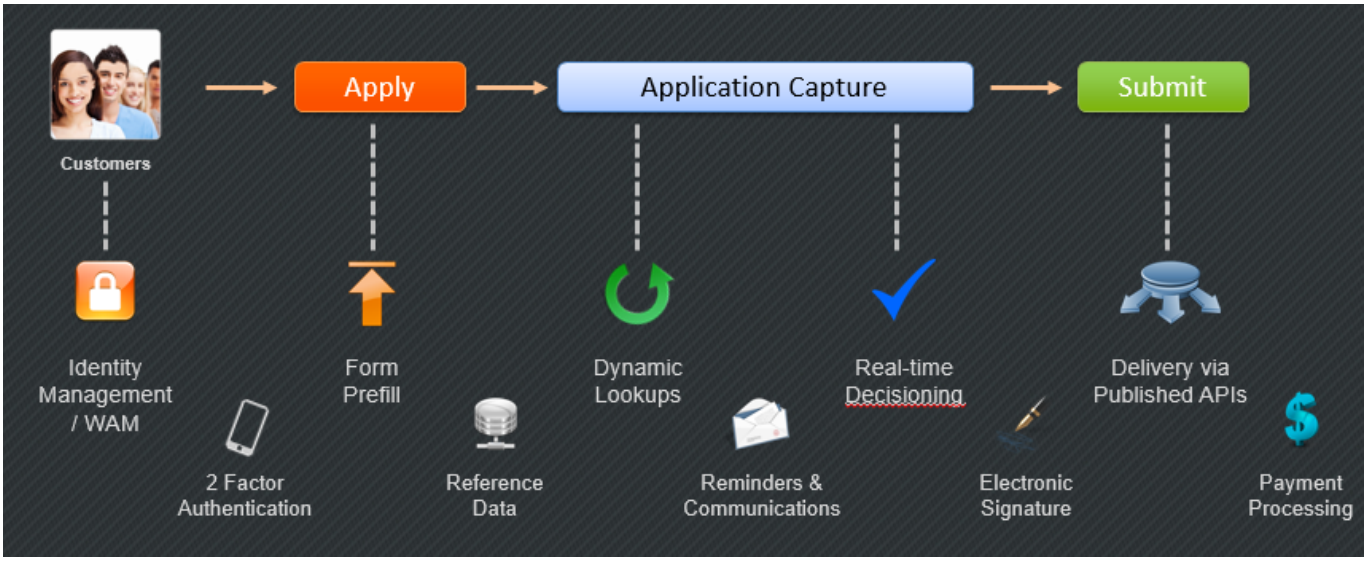
## Extension Points

Integration is performed in various areas of the transaction life-cycle though the use of defined extension points. Developers can inject code or other invocations at these defined extension points. The main points are shown in the interaction or sequence diagram below, although some extension points have been omitted for simplicity.



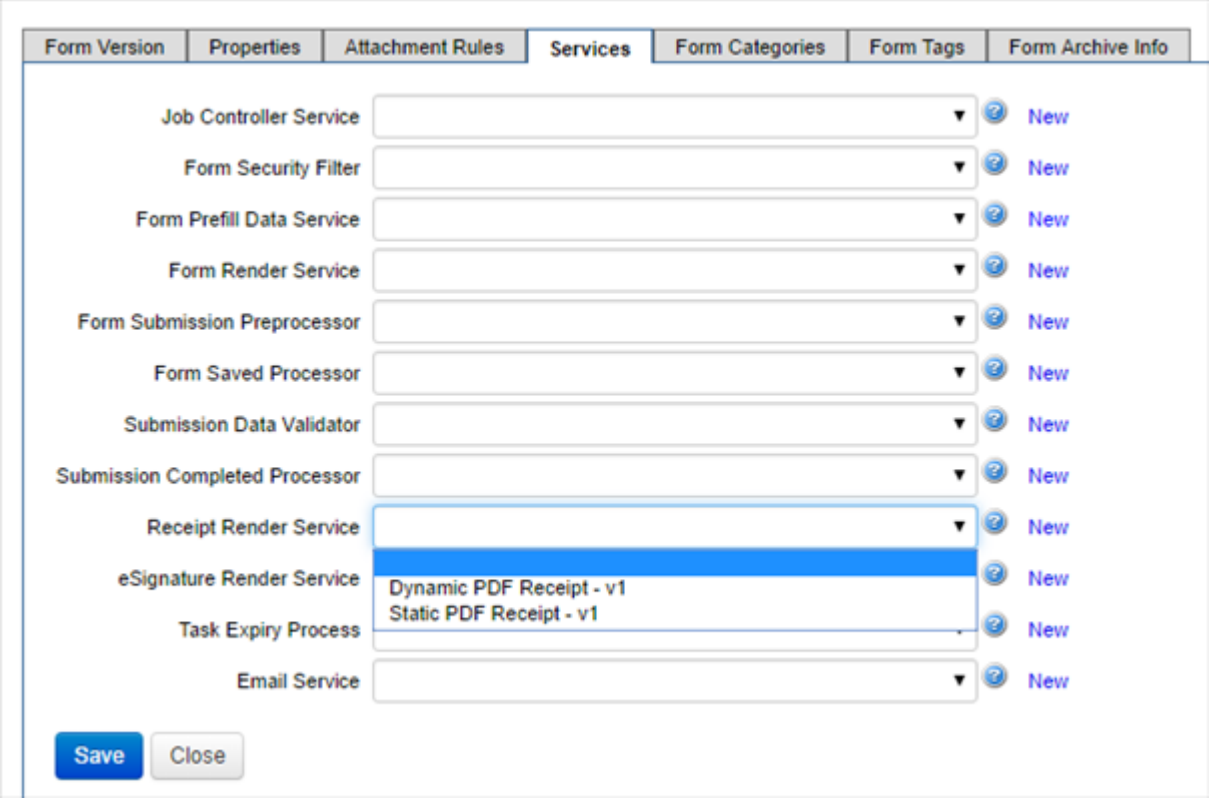

There are many different points in the life-cycle of a user interacting with a form, between the time that the user first clicks on a link to open the form, and the time that

the transaction is complete. We won't go into all the details, since there are over 20 different life-cycle events, but some of the key events are shown in the diagram below.




Some of these points are handled by built-in capabilities within the Temenos Journey Manager platform, but others require integration with third-party or organization systems.

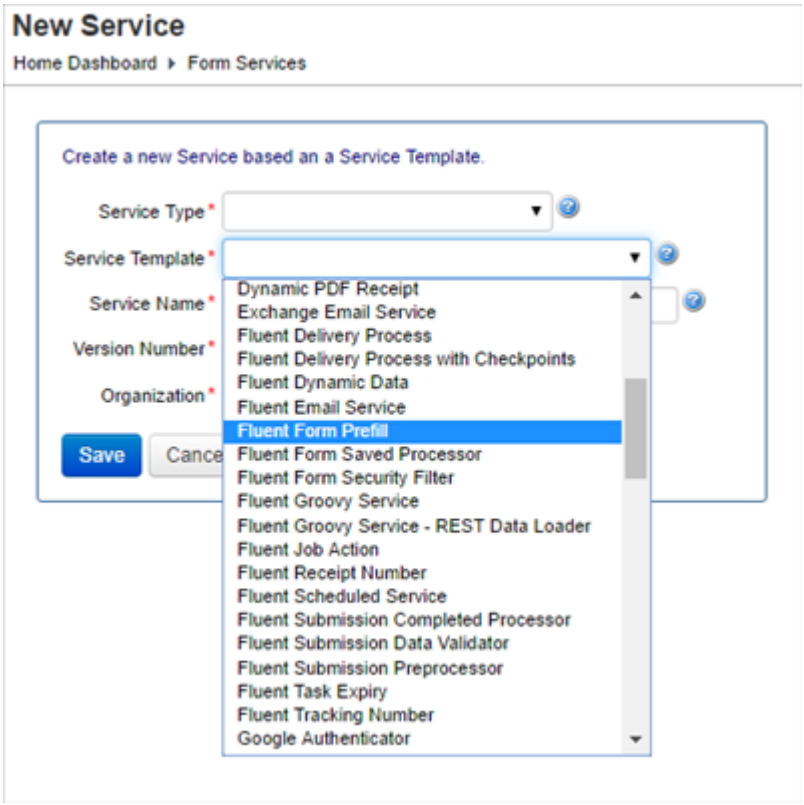
Manager provides extension points at many of these life-cycle events to allow integration between Manager and these other systems. The example of these extension points is shown below.




Each of the drop-down lists specifies a service that may be invoked at that particular point in the transaction life-cycle. You may select an existing extension point (as is shown in the Receipt Render Service in the screenshot), or you may create a new extension point by clicking the "New" button.

In order to build a new extension point, you author the extension point in a language called Groovy. Groovy is a simple yet powerful scripting environment that most developers find intuitive and productive.

When you create a new service, you are not simply presented with an empty screen and begin typing. Over the years, we have collected a series of templates from real projects that can be used as starting points for development of different types of services. A subset of the available templates is shown in the screenshot below:




The template will create a starter script which allows a programmer to simply "fill in the blanks" for their particular service.

## Calling External Services and API

Once you start building a service, you will often need to invoke external services to actually perform the work. These services will usually be exposed as either SOAP or REST web services. These services may already exist, or they may be built as part of the Manager project. They can be built in a number of different ways, including hand-built using coding languages, or the use of specialized integration system or an Enterprise Service Bus.

Libraries for calling these external services are built into the Temenos Journey Manager platform as shown in the example below.

**Examples**

The example below performs REST request and returns a JSON object

```
import com.avoka.tm.http.*
import com.avoka.tm.util.*

Map params = [:]
params.id = request.getParameter('customerId')
params.account = request.getParameter('accountId')

String username = svcDef.paramsMap.username
String password = svcDef.paramsMap.password

// execute GET request and return a HttpResponse object
HttpResponse response = new GetRequest('https://service.mycorp.com/secure/rest/accounts/')
      .setParams(params)
      .setBasicAuth(username, password)
      .execute()

if (response.isStatusOK()) {
    // get Path object from the response
    Path path = response.getPathContent()
    ...

} else if (response.isStatusNotFound()) {
    // object not found
    ...

} else {
    throw new RuntimeException(response.statusLine)
}
```

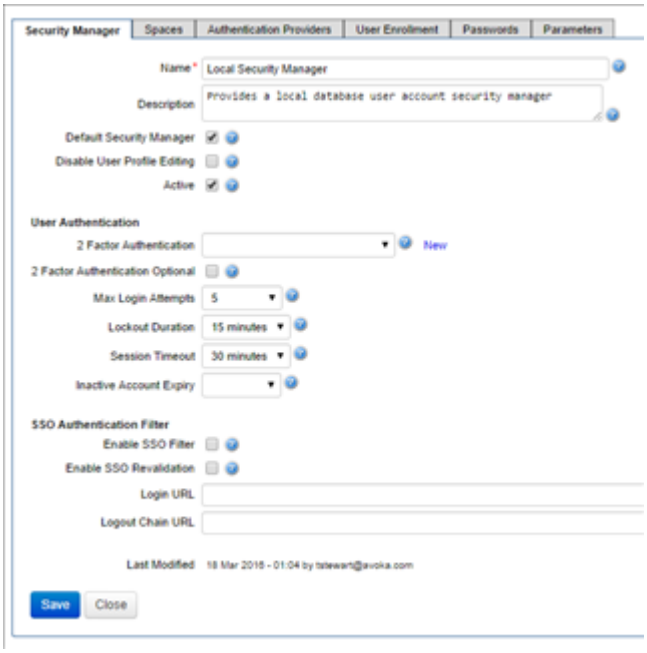
This illustrates how easy it is to invoke these external services. Of course, more sophisticated services can be developed.

It is often also necessary to invoke Transact Manager itself in order to get more information from the system, or to update the transaction. This is also available through a set of comprehensive Transact API's.

## Web Site Integration and Single Signon

It is almost always required to integrate a form into an existing web site. Usually this is achieve through a simple link or button. In the past, more complex integrations were performed, such as embedding forms within existing html pages, although in modern sites this is rare, largely due to the needs of smaller screens and mobile devices.

It is also sometimes necessary to provide single-sign-on integration with existing systems. This is provided by an extensible single-sign-on mechanism that is part of the security management sub-system within Transact. SAML, oAuth and two-factor authentication are supported. A screenshot is shown below:




# Form Level Integration

Sometimes it is useful to perform integration directly between a form and another service. This can be performed in two ways:

- Directly between the form and the service. This can be implemented directly using JavaScript in the usual way. Generally the integration will be packaged up into reusable component that can be simply dropped into any form that needs it.
- Using Transact Manager as a proxy service. This mechanism is known as Transact Dynamic Data services. The form uses a standard mechanism for passing data in and out, which both programmers and non-programmers can easily use and configure. This invokes a service on Transact Manager (written in Groovy). The Groovy service has all the power of the Groovy programming language and supplied libraries, and so arbitrary complexity can be simplified to ensure that the service exposed to the form is easy to use. There are several advantages to implementing the system this way, including ease of use, centralized configuration, integration with Transact licensing audit logs, and more. This is the technique usually used.

Next, learn about the five Temenos Journey Manager platform integration areas.

# Five Temenos Journey Manager Integration Areas

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Temenos Journey Manager comes with the following five integration areas:

1. Delivery
2. Form discovery
3. Pre-Population to accelerate data entry
4. Streamlining of data entry
5. Execution

Let's take a look at each integration in more detail.

## Delivery

Delivery integration is extremely important to every organization. Unless you deliver the data collected to the organization in some way, you are ultimately not gaining any value. This area is listed first, because it is almost always implemented, whereas many of the other integration areas are optional.

There are generally three types of artifacts that are delivered:

- **Receipt.** A human-readable version of the form, usually in the form of a PDF document. This is known as a receipt, and can be generated in several different styles.
- **Data.** A computer-readable version of the data, in the form of an XML document. This is suitable for integrating into other systems.
- **Attachments.** Any supporting documents, known as attachments. These may be photographs, scanned documents, or electronic documents of various types.

The Temenos Journey Manager platform has a large number of different ways in which deliveries can be performed, ranging from simple to sophisticated.

| Delivery Type | Description | Examples |
|---|---|---|
| Email | The PDF, XML and attachments are attached to an email, which is then emailed to an individual or | There is really not very much to do, other than |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | group email box for processing. The person/people monitoring this email account process the PDF, XML and/or attachments manually. This approach is usually the simplest option for low volume and/or low value transactions, but it can also be used very successfully as a short term solution while more sophisticated integrations are being built. | making sure Manager has access to a mail server, and identifying the correct email recipients. |
| Fax Gateway | If your organization already has a fax gateway, then the inbound faxes will generally be delivered as attachments to an email message, or as files in a folder. Manager can easily be configured to do the same. | Temenos have previously integrated with the RightFax fax gateway. |
| Web Services (SOAP) | Managerhas a SOAP API that lets external systems retrieve submissions (including their PDF, XML and attachments). This API can be called by any client that is SOAP-compliant. This approach has the advantage that no firewall holes are required since this is a pull invocation. | Several of our customers have used the SOAP API in order to retrieve submissions. |
| TIA | The Temenos Journey Manager platform includes a pre-built (but extensible) application known as the Integration Agent. This Java-based application uses the SOAP API to retrieve submissions from Manager, and deliver these into external systems. A number of standard integration end-points are provided, such as folder drop, or customers can customize TIA to perform any type of integration that is possible from Java. | The Australian Dept of Industry uses TIA to deliver submissions into a number of different agencies in a multi-tenanted environment. This provides a level of separation between the Dept of Industry who manage and administer the system, and the agencies who only receive submissions destined for them. |
| ESB / Mulesoft | MuleSoft is an Enterprise Service Bus. Temenos has developed a Mule connector which uses the SOAP API to retrieve submissions from Manager. Once a submission has been retrieved, it can be easily integ- | |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | rated with any of the systems that Mulesoft supports, which are listed here: https://www.mulesoft.org/connectors Mulesoft also has a sophisticated data mapping tool for mapping data from one form to another. | |
| REST API | Manager has a REST API that that lets external systems retrieve submissions (including their PDF, XML and attachments). This is similar to the SOAP API, but is a more modern protocol, easier to use, and supports high availability architectures. | |
| TMRDC | The Manager REST Deliver Client is a very simple and self-contained application built in the Go language. It uses the REST API to retrieve submissions from a Manager server. The default implementation is to store these submissions in a folder/directory. However, source code is provided, and can be customized to perform other types of integrations. | |
| Groovy | Manager allows delivery integrations (and other types of integrations) using the Groovy scripting language. Groovy is a simple yet powerful scripting language that has been built into Manager. Groovy gives you access to many of the internal Java API's provided by Manager, and also has capabilities for calling third party services and systems, including REST and Web Service API's, so it is a powerful tool for building sophisticated integrations. Groovy is often used to "glue" Manager to another system, rather than being used as a programming language. A full set of the available Manager API's can be provided upon request if desired. | Examples!!! They abound. |
| Java | For even more sophisticated integrations, Manager allows Java modules to be developed and uploaded into Manager, where the methods they contain can be invoked at defined extension points. This provides access to the full power of Java, plus all of the Manager Java API's. | |

In addition to these general purpose delivery mechanisms, several specific integrations have been developed for particular end-points.

These have been integrated into Manager as pre-built integrations, and they include:

| Delivery End-point | Description |
|---|---|
| Microsoft SharePoint | This integration allows submissions to be delivered directly into a Share-point instance. |
| SalesForce | This integration allows for:<br>1. OAuth 2 authentication against SalesForce identities.<br>2. Delivery of submission information directly into SalesForce for mar-shalling into destination objects.<br>3. API level form assignment to known and anonymous users directly from SalesForce, encapsulating APIs on Manager.<br>4. UI objects to present a categorized list of available forms directly inside SalesForce, for either opening immediately or pushing to SalesForce contacts. These may be automatically pre-filled with data from SalesForce objects.<br>5. UI objects to review the active and completed forms for a particular object within SalesForce. |
| Marketo | Creates or updates the visitor's Marketo LeadRecord using the submitted form data. |
| Adobe LiveCycle | Manager can deliver submissions directly into Adobe LiveCycle Process Management. Process Management is a BPM system that allows back-office business processes to be easily developed. |

Finally, Temenos staff and our customers have used some of the above capabilities to integrate with a large number of off-the-shelf and custom systems. Some of these include:

- PEGA (BPM system)
- SAP (ERP system)
- Microsoft Dynamics (CRM system)
- FTP/SFTP (file transfer protocols)
- Shift (a dealer management system)
- Carflow (a dealer management system)

- Huddle (a document management system)
- K2 (a BPM system)
- IBM Lombardi (a BPM system)
- Telco systems (several bespoke systems at a large Telco)

The Delivery Service extension point with Manager provides a number of built-in added value services, including:

- **Retry capabilities.** If a delivery fails, it can be automatically or manually retried. This can be helpful for cases when a delivery end-point is temporarily unavailable.
- **Delivery checkpoints.** If a delivery consists of multiple steps (for example, send an email, then update a database, and then store a file in a directory), then each part of this delivery can be set up as an individual checkpoint. If one of the steps fails, but a previous step has completed successfully, then when the delivery is retried, it will start on the first incomplete checkpoint, rather than from the beginning. This would ensure that, for example, only one email ever gets sent.
- **Alerts.** The delivery subsystem provides administrative alerts to notify system administrators when a delivery has failed so that the underlying cause can be corrected.

## Form Discovery

Every unique form in Manager has an associated URL link that you can place on your site. Any user who clicks on the links will launch the form. You can also use the form URL in any other way such as in an email. You can also link to the form from any type of "form finder" technology, or a wizard that assists a customer to find the appropriate forms. You can also embed links to forms in outbound communications such as email or social networks.

Another way for customers to complete a form is to send a customer a link to a form that has already been partially completed on their behalf. Manager includes a Task API, that allows you to create a partially completed form, generate a custom URL, and then pass that URL to the end user. This can be used to "push" forms from CRM or other systems.

An older approach is to embed the Temenos Journey Manager platform form directly inside the organization's web site. This approach is rarely used, mostly because of the advent of smart-phones, which lack the screen real estate to display both the existing site and the form in the same screen. There are also other issues with this approach, including the importance of removing distractions and navigation links from the task-

oriented process of completing the transaction, as well as the difficulty of effectively designing responsive user interfaces in two separate web pages that effectively work together.

## 3 Pre-Population - Accelerating Data Entry

Manager provides many different techniques for pre-filling forms. One of the simplest ways to implement this is to pass pre-population data as URL parameters in the URL that links to the form. These parameters can be customized on a per user basis in your existing web site if required. Another way is to retrieve pre-population data from data stored in cookies.

Alternately, Manager has many extension points where calls can be made to external systems, and the results of these calls can be injected into the form's data before it is presented to the user. The sequence diagram above highlights the key extension points. The extension points can be implemented as Java or Groovy calls to external systems. These extension points also have access to many of the internal Manager API's.

Manager implements a form receipt-number generation service, to ensure that each form has a unique code. This service can be configured to auto-generate different styles of receipt number, or it can be extended to call external systems to generate the receipt number. This allows the form receipt number to match a reference number in an existing system.

Manager implements several different techniques for passing identity from an existing system to Manager, including SSO/SAML, LDAP integration, and others. If the user's identity has been established, then calls can be made to back-end system using this identity to retrieve user-specific data, which can then be injected into the form before being presented to the user.

## Streamlining Data Entry

Once the user is actually within the form, we want to make their experience as streamlined as possible. One way we can do this is by designing and creating engaging, simple to use, guided experiences using Composer.

We can also streamline their experience by providing contextual data within the form that:

- Accelerates their data entry
- Validates their data entry

- Provides information to them that helps them to make decisions

Usually this type of integration is provided by custom user interface widgets within the form itself. There are generally two different mechanisms that these widgets use to communicate to external systems.

| Mechanism | Explanation |
| --- | --- |
| Direct | The widget communicates directly to the third party service, usually (but not always) using JavaScript, REST and JSON.<br>This is most useful for cloud-hosted third-party services that don't require usage keys, identity verification, or license/billing, and are not subject to security concerns. |
| Dynamic Data Service | A Composer widget communicates with a standardized dynamic data service within Manager. The dynamic data service protocol is predefined, and uses JSON data as the payload. The dynamic data service then communicates to the desired back-end service to verify or retrieve data, perform a calculation, or verify data. The results are then passed back to the widget.<br>Dynamic data services are useful for several scenarios:<br>• Licensing. Some external services require the user to specify a usage key of some sort.<br>• Billing reconciliation.<br>• Security (secure channel to backend services)<br>• Data transformation or consolidation, protocol translation.<br>Composer includes several pre-built widgets that support Dynamic Data calls, and custom widgets can also be created. |
| Hybrid | Occasionally it is useful to build widgets that use a combination of direct access and dynamic data services. For example, an initial call may use Dynamic Data to establish credentials with a third-party, but then use direct access to the third party service for greatest efficiency. |

Some examples of pre-built services that communicate with third-party services include:

- Experian, which provides postal address lookup services.
- GreenID which provides identify verification services.

- Manager Reference Data, which allows data to be stored in Manager, and displayed in a variety of different ways.

Many our customers have used the generic Dynamic Data-aware widgets to expose their back-end web services, REST services, databases and bespoke systems in a variety of ways within the form.

# Execution

Execution is largely about adding additional value to the overall transaction, after the basic data completion step has been completed. Some of these integrations are part of the process of completing the transaction, and are visible steps to the end users, whereas other types of integrations occur behind-the-scenes.

The following examples list some of the types of integrations that are possible at execution time with Transact.

| Integration | Description |
|---|---|
| Electronic Signatures | Manager can integrate with Electronic Signature providers in order to provide an improved level of signature compliance. (Note that Manager provides several types of electronic signature capability directly in our system, without requiring third-party services.) Manager has already been integrated with DocuSign and Silanis, but the same principles can be extended to similar electronic signature providers.<br><br>Electronic signatures are usually implemented in one of two ways:<br><br>1. **Immediate signature.** A receipt (or document of record) is created, and submitted to the third-party signature provider, along with signatory meta-data. The signature provider processes this request, prepares the document for signing, and returns the signatory id to Manager. It then redirects the user to the signature provider web site, where the document will be presented for signature. The signature providers may also request additional identification information. Once the user has signed the document, the signature provider will redirect back to the Manager web site, so that the transaction can be completed, delivered, etc.<br>2. **Signature by email.** A receipt is submitted to the signature provider, along with signatory meta-data.The signature provider will prepare the document for signing, and then send an email to the signer for |

processing. Manager will notify the applicant to check their email address. The user will click on the link in the email, and complete the signature process in the signature provider's web site. Manager will be notified of the signature completion, and will complete the transaction, including delivery etc.

The immediate signature approach is a more seamless experience for the end user. However, the signature by email approach can have a higher level of identity for the signer, because it implicitly validates their email address. It is also generally the only way in which a document can be signed by multiple signers - this is usually supported by signature providers in either parallel or sequential flows.

Payment processing

Many transactions require an associated payment. The application form will calculate the fee, and also specify what payment methods are available. When the form has been submitted, Manager will redirect the user to a payment provider's website, along with meta-data about the payment, such as the amount. This site is known as a Payment Gateway. The Payment Gateway will process the payment, and then redirect back to Transact, passing payment meta-data. Manager will inform the user of the outcome, as well as store the payment-meta-data to allow for reconciliation reports to be run.

never stores or processes credit card or banking information directly. This is a specialist service that requires specific levels of security and privacy compliance, and is always performed by a specialist payment providers. Temenos Journey Manager platformhas built-in integrations with several providers, and other providers can be implemented as required.

Additional Verification

Additional Verification of the user's information for purposes such as credit scores or identity verification can be implemented within Manager itself. These can also be implemented post-delivery in the organization's back-end processes, but performing them within Manager provides the ability for the end-user to be informed of the result while they are still within the transaction, and therefore have an opportunity to retry the application and correct the information.

Review and Approval

Manager includes a simple but powerful review and approval capability known as Collaboration Jobs. Transactions that have been completed by end users can be progressed through several review/approval steps, by dif-

ferent individuals or groups. Steps can also be designed to retrieve information, perform processing, or make decisions. Review and approval is often implemented in larger and more sophisticated BPM or Workflow systems, but the Review and Approval capability in Manager provides a number of benefits:

- There is no need to purchase or maintain a BPM or Workflow system.
- Review and Approval is very simple to configure, and very easy to use for the reviewers.

Manager produces a receipt automatically, in PDF format, providing a document of record for the customer and for the organization. Manager can produce a document of record using:

- Composer-generated receipt templates (automatically)
- Hand-created Adobe LIveCycle Designer receipt
- Hand-created Adobe Acroform receipt (also known as pixel-perfect receipt).

Document Generation

However, in some cases, the documents that need to be created are more sophisticated or different to what can be achieved in Manager natively. There are a number of systems known as Customer Communication Management systems which are designed to produce customer communication such as offers, receipts, contracts and information packs. These systems can be used by Manager to generate the document of record.

## The Economics of Integration

It is very important to remember the consider why we do integration - we don't do integration just for the sake of it, we do integration order to provide specific value to the organization. Integration can often be the most time-consuming and costly part of any implementation. It's very easy to fall into the trap of doing integration because it's possible or seems obvious, but it is wise to always step back and consider what value integration is providing to the overall business objectives relative the cost of implementation and future maintenance.

## Why do we do integration?

Usually we do integration in order to achieve operational efficiencies. Integration usually saves humans from having to perform manual tasks, which in turn reduces costs. These efficiencies may be realized by the end-user (eg save typing and frustration through pre-population) or by the organization itself (save money and reduce errors by eliminating

## Assess the Value of Integration

A survey performed by the Forrester group in 2015 asked "What initiatives are likely to be your organization's top business priorities over the next 12 months?"

The top three responses were:

- Grow revenues (77%)
- Improve the experience of our customers (74%)
- Reduce costs (61%)

It is interesting that improving user experience is regarded as significantly more important than reducing costs. And that growing revenues is the most important criterion in the entire survey.

- The Temenos Journey Manager platform is all about improving customer experience, and growing revenues (although it also leads to improving efficiency).
- Integration is all about improving operational efficiencies, and reducing costs.

It is important to keep in mind that in many cases, the primary goal of implementing the Temenos Journey Manager platform is improving user experience, and growing revenue. You should therefore consider very carefully the value of doing integration compared to the cost. It may be that you can achieve a large proportion of the value of the Temenos Journey Manager platform without doing any integration.

We're not saying that you shouldn't do integration, just that you should be aware of the costs and the value.

## Consider Deferring Integration

Another factor to consider is time to market. Manager can be implemented very quickly, and realize important benefits such as improved user experience and improved conversion rates. However, integration, because it touches back-office systems, needs to

be very carefully developed and tested, and this can often take a significant amount of time.

One common approach is to implement Manager with little or simple integration, and realize the primary benefits as early as possible. More sophisticated integration can then be performed at a slower and more careful pace - and because Manager delivers the data in XML format, it's easy to add integration later. Integration can be prioritized for the most important transactions first, with lower value or lower volume transactions deferred till later.

Some of our most successful implementations had started with minimal integration at the beginning, but over time the integration has been phased in separately.

## Consider Leveraging Existing Paper/image-based Processes

Ideally the goal is to completely replace paper/images with all-digital transactions. However, in reality we rarely achieve 100% success - there are almost always going to be some customers who insist on hand-writing on paper. This means that you almost always needs to maintain your existing back-office processes which currently handle paper or images of paper.

Since you're going to need to maintain these back-office processes anyway, one useful approach is to augment or plug into these back-office processes using digital artefacts, rather than trying to create a completely all-digital back-office process. In other words, deliver a digital document (generally a PDF) into your existing paper- or image-based systems. If you do this, integration is usually very simple and quick.

## Hidden Costs of Process Re-engineering

Process re-engineering is costly. This is not just about technology, but about people, skills, training, management, and related costs. Overall change management is often overlooked, and can be hugely costly. You don't want to introduce a new digital channel, and at the same time, completely re-engineer your back-office processes. Instead, one option is to simply plug digital artefacts into existing back-office systems. You get the benefits of a new digital customer-experience, but you don't have to retrain anyone, build new processes and procedures and manuals, hire new staff with different skills, or put new managers in place. You have the opportunity to re-engineer and optimize your existing back office processes at a later time.

Our strong recommendation is not to combine process re-engineering with a (user-experience improvement) project, otherwise there is a possibility that both projects will fail. Process re-engineering and change management are hard and expensive, and shouldn't be embarked upon lightly.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform development.

# Temenos Transact Core Banking Integration

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

At the moment, the Temenos Journey Manager doesn't have direct integration with any Temenos Transact core banking systems. However, you can create a delivery channel using a Groovy scripts to implement such integration.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform development.

# Google Analytics Virtual Page Integration

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

The Temenos Journey Manager allows you to add page tracking using Google Analytics (GA), so each page will fire a page view event with a title and URL, which you can analyze to improve user onboarding. You can easily add GTM[1] to a Maestro form using Journey Manager and Journey Maestro tools. The simplified steps are outlined below. For detailed instructions, including Google Tag Manager configuration, see how to add Google Tag Manager to a Maestro form.

To add GA to your web app form:

1. Add GA code to the head of the page in Manager.
2. Create a Business Rule to call the GA method on page change in Maestro. You need to configure the Maestro form business rules with the following JavaScripts:

[1]Google Tag Manager (GTM) is a tag management system (TMS) that allows you to quickly and easily update tracking codes and related code fragments collectively known as tags on your website or mobile app.

- On Form Load:

```
// Init the global variable used to store the form story for GTM
dataLayer.push({event: "Form started"});

window.addPageToGTMTag = function() {
  var currentPage = Form.getCurrentPageId();
  dataLayer.push({ event: currentPage});
}

// Function to add Google Tag Manager leaving page event
window.addGTMLeavingPageTag = function() {
  // Push this event to GTM
  var currentPage = "leaving_" + Form.getCurrentPageId();
  dataLayer.push({ event: currentPage});
}


// Function to add the Google Tag Manager iFrame to the form
function addGTMTag() {
  $('body').prepend('<noscript></noscript>');
  $('body noscript').first().prepend('<iframe src-
c="https://www.googletagmanager.com/ns.html?id=GTM-PTNXXX" height="0" width-
h="0" style="display:none;visibility:hidden"></iframe>');
}
addGTMTag();
```

- On Page Load:

```
// Push this event to GTM
window.addPageToGTMTag();
```

- On Continue (Next Page Action):

```
// Push leave event to GTM
window.addGTMLeavingPageTag();
```

3. Use Google Analytics tool to view reports on user form usage.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform development.

# DocuSign Integration

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

The Temenos Journey Manager platform offers a seamless integration of services with DocuSign[1] so form users can exchange contracts and sign documents electronically from application forms.

To enable the integration in Manager, which runs services that interact with a DocuSign server, you need to:

- Configure OAuth authentication in a DocuSign account
- Install the latest DocuSign Exchange component
- Configure a DocuSign service connection
- Grant one-time consent to a DocuSign API user

## Configure OAuth Authentication in a DocuSign Account

You must have a correctly configured DocuSign user's account to set up a DocuSign Exchange component and DocuSign service connection.

To configure OAuth authentication in your DocuSign account:

1. Login to your DocuSign account as an admin user you want to use to make API calls.
2. Select the Settings tab to open the Admin Dashboard page, then click the Apps and Keys tab.
3. Copy the User ID under My Account Information and save it. You need this to populate the DocuSign service connection properties.
4. Select your app under Apps and Integration Keys, then select Edit from the ACTIONS dropdown list.
5. Copy the Integration Key under General Info and save it. You need this to construct the URL in the Grant OAuth Consent to API User, as well as to populate the DocuSign service connection properties.

---

[1]DocuSign is the leader in eSignature transaction management. The Temenos Journey Manager platform uses this solution to speed the rate at which all digital documents are completed, signed, and returned.

6. In the Service Integration block, generate an RSA key pair and save the private key to a file. You need this to upload into the DocuSign service connection.
7. In the Additional settings block, add `https://www.docusign.com` and `https://httpbin.org/get` to the Redirect URIs list.
8. Click Save at the bottom of the page.

## Configure a DocuSign service connection

DocuSign is in the process of retiring basic user password authentication which will no longer be supported after March 2023. For more information, see DocuSign API Basic User Password Authentication Retirement.

The DocuSign OAuth service connection replaces the DocuSign service connection, which uses basic username and password authentication.

Depending on what Manager version you are on, you need to configure:

- DocuSign service connection - prior to version 22.10
- DocuSign OAuth service connection - version 22.10

## Grant one-time Consent to a DocuSign API User

As a final part of DocuSign configuration, you need to grant OAuth authentication access to a configured DocuSign API user permanently. You have to do this only once after the DocuSign API user is created or changed. Depending on what Manager version you are on, you need to follow a different set of instructions:

- DocuSign service connection - prior to version 22.10
- DocuSign OAuth service connection - version 22.10

Now, you have successfully installed and configured the DocuSign service connection and services, so you can start implementing DocuSign functionality in your forms.

Next, learn more about Journey Manager features.

# Continuous Integration Overview

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Continuous Integration[1] (CI) is an essential ingredient in a software development process, which helps improve software quality, provide reliable, repeatable, and well designed automated processes to save time, reduce the chance of human errors, and identify errors early. The Temenos Journey Manager provides the services and tools to facilitate in Continuous Integration of Journey applications.

Continuous Integration is the frequent building and testing of new code changes, assisted by software tools that automate the process. It is often referred to as a pipeline. A typical CI environment includes the following components:

- Version control systems: Git, Subversion, Visual Studio Team Services
- Build automation tools: Ant, Gradle
- Dependency management tools: Maven
- CI servers: Jenkins, TeamCity, Bamboo, GitLab CI
- Task automation tools: Ant, Maven, Gradle, Gulp, Make
- Unit testing frameworks: JUnit
- Mocking libraries: Mockito
- Deployment and configuration automation tools: Ansible, Chef
- In-house APIs: the REST APIs built into Journey Manager

CI environments are implemented using software tools that work alone or together to support the creation of pipelines. Implementation is usually achieved via configuration, rather than a specific development. Sometimes, as is the case with our Transact REST APIs, you might have to provide support services to enable application specific deployment or configuration.

There is often crossover in functionality between tools, which blurs the functional boundaries. In GitLab, for example, version control, build and CI services are all available in a single-source system.

---

[1] Continuous Integration (CI) is a development practice that requires developers to integrate code into a shared repository several times a day. Each check-in is then verified by an automated build, allowing teams to detect problems early.

We don't prescribe the use of specific tools to apply CI techniques to the Temenos Journey Manager platform application development process. Customers are free to configure their existing Ant-compatible CI systems with Ant tasks from the Transact Fluent SDK to provide the underlying automation.

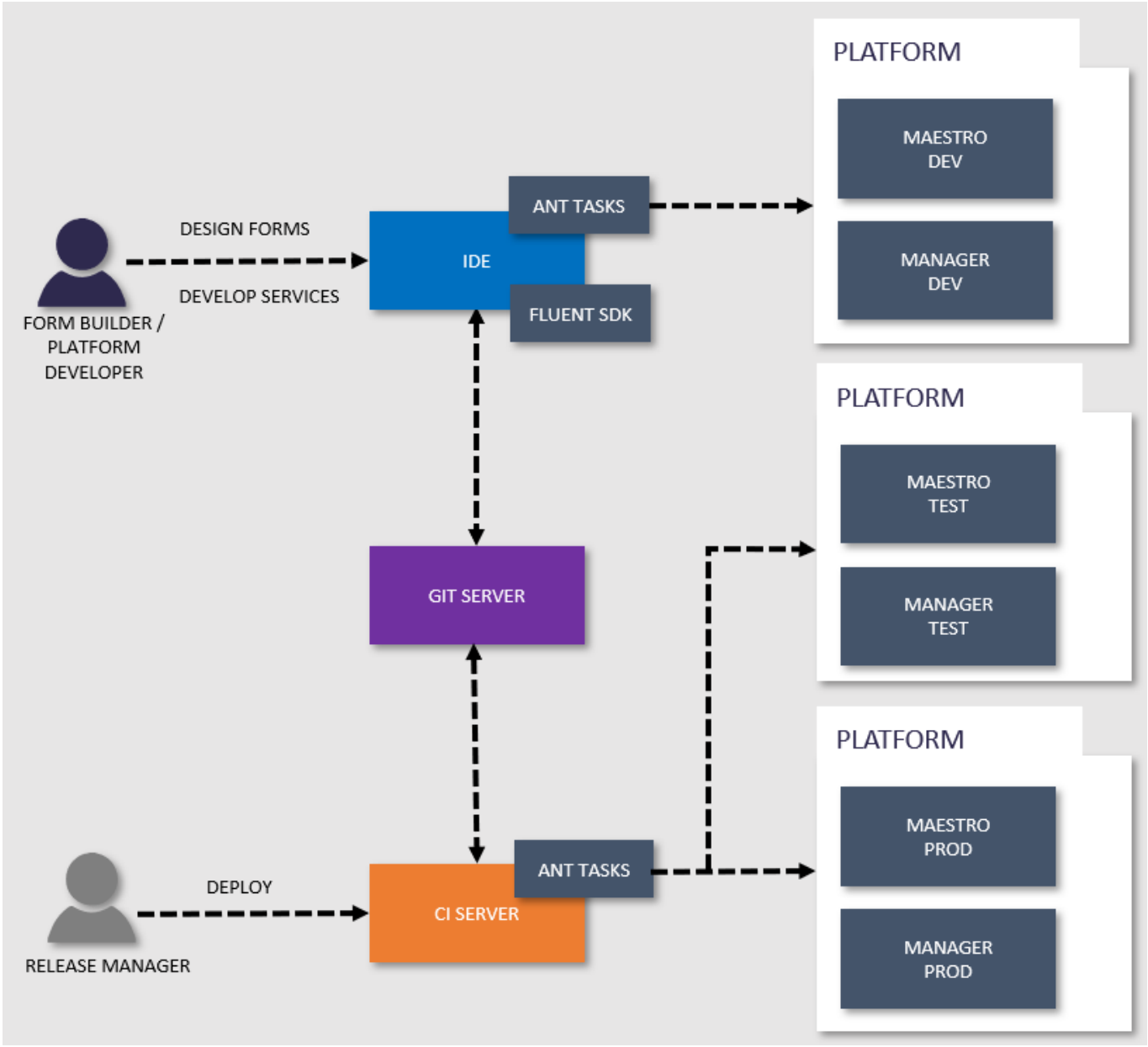
For customers who don't have existing CI infrastructure, we recommend the following tools:

- GitLab - for source code version control.
- Maven - for dependency management of third-party content, and potentially for storing output from the build system.
- Jenkins - for integration to version control systems and orchestration of builds, dependency management and CI services.

Journey Manager supports Continuous Integration practices through the following three key features:

- Application packages that contain primary deployable artifacts, such as forms and services
- Transact REST APIs references that include services to facilitate the deployment of application packages
- Transact Fluent SDK which includes Ant tasks to leverage on the REST APIs

Temenos Journey Manager platform implements CI model as shown below.




In this model, application developers, using Maestro, Manager, and other IDEs, collaborate in a development environment. They work with assets including forms, templates, organization properties, delivery channels, services, and service connections. They configure JSON files to define the contents of application packages. Changes in the development environment are committed to the version control system, from where they can be checked out, packaged into application packages and deployed to other environments by Ant tasks interacting with the Transact REST APIs. This is summarized below:

1. Check assets and supporting files into and out of the version control system
2. Trigger CI pipelines

3. Execute Ant tasks that form part of the Transact Fluent SDK
4. Package assets into application packages
5. Publish the application packages to Manager services exposed via the Transact REST APIs

## Continuous Integration Workflow

The Manager CI workflow involves the following steps:

1. Download and install the Journey SDK. The Journey SDK is a part of the SDK download which you can find in the release notes for each Journey Manager release.
2. Define an application package:
    - Create configuration folder structure.
    - Obtain form version archive files from Manager, if required.
    - Create JSON configuration files to describe application package contents.
3. Configure your CI server with Ant tasks from the Journey SDK.
4. Create your CI workflow:
    - Build the application package.
    - Deploy the application package to one or more servers.
    - Run the remote tests on deployed servers.
5. Configure the CI server to work with source control.
6. Check the application package configuration files and resources into source control.
7. Check the state of the CI workflow on the CI server.

Next, learn about version control systems.

# CI Version Control Systems

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

A version control system[1] is the primary entry point for getting your new code into a system. A Continuous Integration pipeline starts with detecting changes to source code, which are triggered by source code check-ins or commits. These changes can also be detected by polling the version control system status or by broadcasting change events. You can choose which method to use depending on your preferences and the capability of your version control systems. Once triggered, the CI pipeline commences collecting all required assets from source control system. After that, the build system is triggered to gather additional dependencies, create the deployment artifacts, and run initial tests.

As with any software development project, the version control system, used for Journey Manager application development, should hold assets required to rebuild entire projects from scratch, including:

- Source code: Groovy, Java, and JavaScript files.
- Configuration: JSON, XML, and property files.
- Object Libraries: 3rd party libraries, in the absence of a dependency management system such as Maven.
- Resources: images, icons, and other visual components.
- Custom content: proprietary format content, such as Journey Maestro resources.
- Scripts: shell scripts to create folders, databases, seed tables, configure services, and execute any other actions required to create a development environment.

For more information on how to store content GitLab, see GitLab CI tutorial.

The version control system should not include unprotected sensitive and credential information where it can be easily viewed. User IDs and, especially, passwords do not belong in unprotected version control system. Either don't store such content in the

[1] Source Code Control System (SCCS) is a version control system designed to track changes in source code and other text files during the development of a piece of software. This allows the user to retrieve any of the previous versions of the original source code and the changes which are stored.

first place or use encryption or vault technologies to secure the content. For more information on how to protect your sensitive content, use the following links:

- https://github.com/StackExchange/blackbox
- https://github.com/AGWA/git-crypt
- http://docs.ansible.com/ansible/latest/playbooks_vault.html
- https://github.com/hashicorp/vault
- https://square.github.io/keywhiz/

Next, learn about CI servers.

# CI Servers

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

A CI server allows you to build artifacts, run the unit tests periodically or after every commit, and send the results to developers. This makes it a critical part of a Continuous Integration pipeline. You typically need to configure your CI server with the following software:

- Java JDK
- Ant and Ant tasks
- The Transact Fluent SDK `build.xml` file.
- Version control system connection
- Dependency management system

You might need to configure triggers from the version control system to the CI server. Integration between GitLab and Jenkins CI server is described in here. For more information on Jenkins CI server configuration, see Jenkins CI tutorial.

Next, learn about CI build systems.

# CI Build Systems

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

A build system in the Continuous Integration pipeline is responsible for converting source assets into deployable artifacts. This could involve compiling source code into executable object code, or some other form of conversion from an input representation to an output object.

A build can be triggered by one of the following actions:

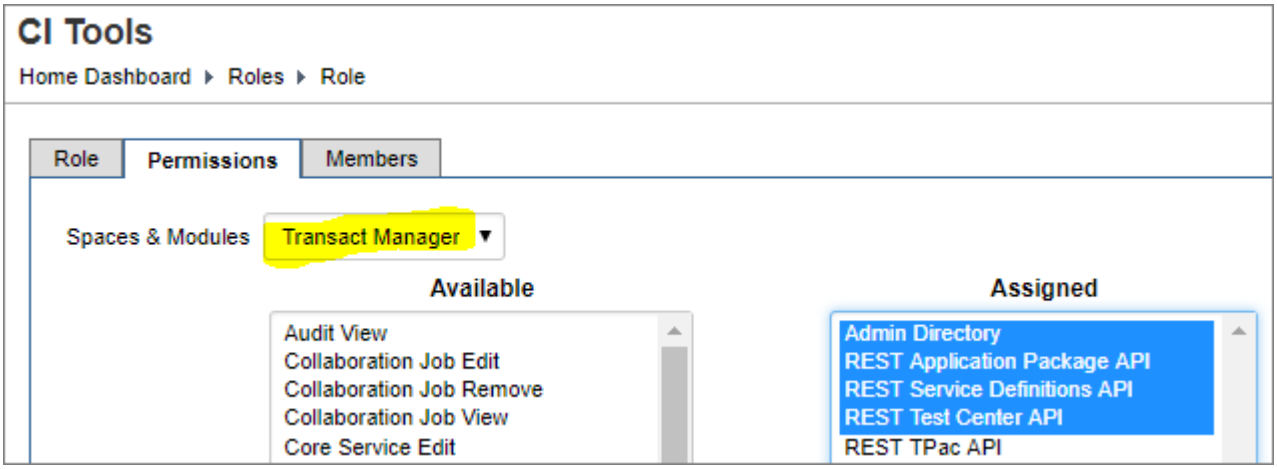
- Manual - run a script at a command prompt, or click a button on a web UI.
- Scheduled - a periodic trigger that runs at specified times.
- Event based - a configured event happens, such as a code check-in or commit to a version control system.

A build system can be a standalone, or integrated into a version control system, dependency management system, or the CI system.

The CI build can have a deployment configuration that uses Ant's `ant-deploy` task to deploy the built package. You need to ensure that Manager has the following permissions configured for the CI Tools user:

- Admin Directory
- REST Application Package API
- REST Service Definitions API
- REST Test Center API
- REST TPac API – optional, if you use TPacs

The organization, configured in your build.properties file, should be assigned to the CI Tools user to allow this user deploy and execute services under this organization.




NOTE

Incorrect permissions can result in the HTTP 403 error thrown by the Ant task.

Next, learn about CI dependency management systems.

# CI Dependency Management Systems

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

A dependency management system is part of a Continuous Integration pipeline that is responsible for storing and managing 3rd party artifacts required to build application packages. A dependency management system, such as Maven, is backed by a repository system, where you can store build outputs. For more information on Maven, see https://maven.apache.org.

Next, learn about CI application packages.

# CI Application Packages

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Application packages are the output of the Continuous Integration pipeline that can be deployed into Journey Manager servers. Application packages are ZIP files containing a folder structure and files that define:

- Delivery channels
- Forms
- Properties
- Service connections
- Services

An application package is created by the Ant `app-package` task. It contains a JSON definition file (shown below), which contains references to other definition files.

# Main JSON

## app- package- def.json

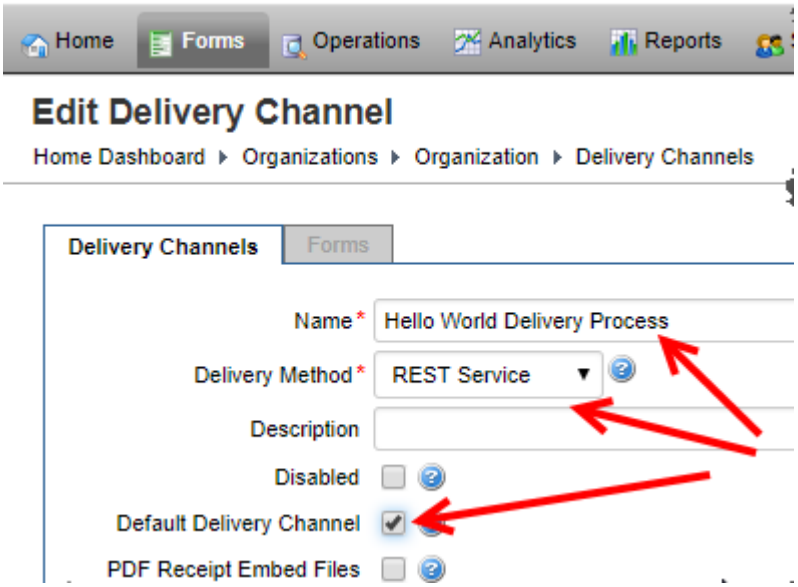
```
{
  "name": "Hello World App package",
  "description": "TODO...",
  "clientCode": "maguire",
  "delivery": [
    "delivery/rest-service-delivery-def.json",
    "delivery/trash-can-delivery-def.json"
  ],
  "forms": [
    "forms/CCA-MAESTRO-AP/cca-maestro-form-def.json",
    "forms/customer-enquiry-ap/customer-enquiry-form-def.json"
  ],
  "properties": [
    "properties/property-def.json",
    "properties/property-de-def.json",
    "properties/property-def1.json"
  ],
  "connections": [
    "connections/connection-def.json",
    "connections/connection-def2.json"
  ],
  "services": [
    "services/helloworld/service-def.json"
  ]
}
```

# Delivery Channels JSON

### delivery/rest-service-delivery-def.json

```
{
    "name": "Hello World Delivery Process",
    "deliveryMethod": "REST Service",
    "defaultChannel": true,
    "retryDelayMins": 15,
    "serviceName":"Hello World Delivery Process"
}
```

This delivery service definition appears in Manager as shown below.




# Forms JSON

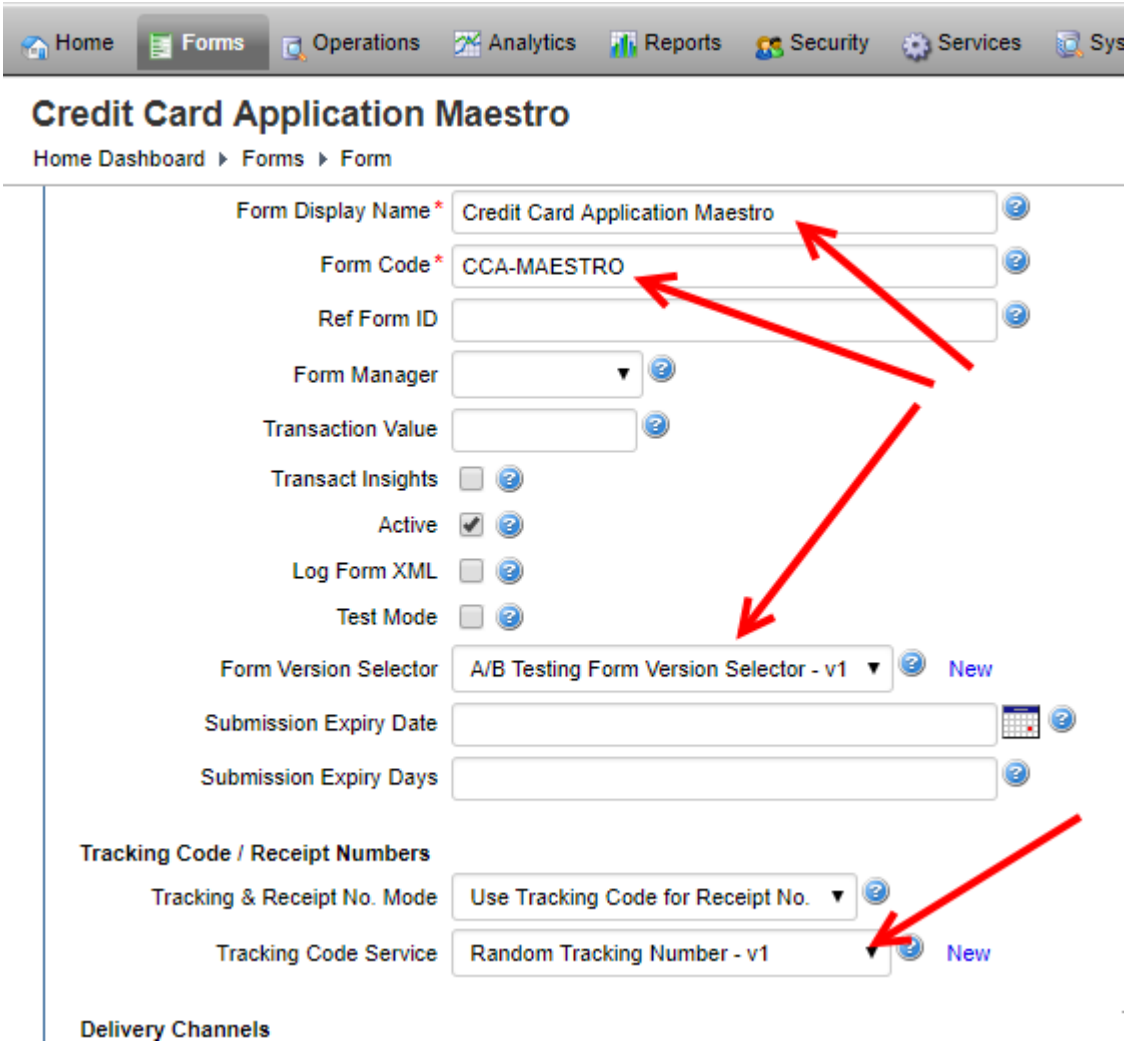
### forms/CCA-MAESTRO-AP/cca-maestro-form-def.json

This definition causes a form to be uploaded into Maestro, and subsequently be visible in Manager.

```
{
   "name":"Credit Card Application Maestro",
   "formCode":"CCA-MAESTRO-AP",
   "currentFormVersionNumber":"9",
   "formVersionSelector":{
         "serviceName":"A/B Testing Form Version Selector",
         "serviceVersion":1
   },
   "trackingCodeService":{
         "serviceName":"Random Tracking Number",
         "serviceVersion":1
   },
   "defaultChannels":{
      "productionDelivery":"Hello World Delivery Process",
      "abandonDelivery":"Hello World Delivery Process",
      "validationFailureDelivery":""
   },
   "dataRetention":{
      "savedDays":30,
      "finishedDays":5
   },
   "emailConfirmation":"Confirmation and PDF Receipt",
   "formSpaces":[
      {
         "name":"Maguire",
         "anonAccess":true,
         "authAccess":true
      }
   ],
   "formVersions":[
      {
         "versionNumber":"9",
         "formDataEncryption":true,
         "formType":"Maestro Form",
         "formVersionFile":"./form-version-Credit_Card_Application_Maestro-all-2017-06-
26.zip",
         "properties":[
            {
               "name":"Form Description",
               "description":"Form Description",
               "dataType":"String",
```

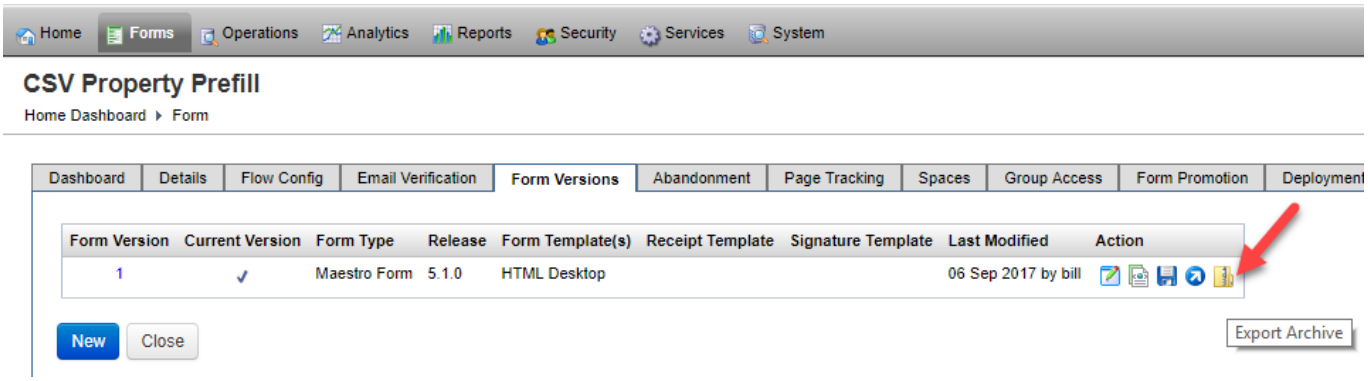
```
                "value":""
            },
            {
                "name":"Locale De",
                "description":"Form Description",
                "dataType":"JSON",
                "valueFile":"locale-de.json"
            }
         ],

         "formDataConfig":{
            "contactEmailXPath":"//ContactDetails/EmailAddress"
         }
      },
      {
         "versionNumber":"8",
         "formDataEncryption":true,
         "formType":"Maestro Form",
         "formVersionFile":"./form-version-Credit_Card_Application_Maestro-all-2017-06-
26.zip",
         "properties":[
            {
                "name":"Form Description",
                "description":"Form Description",
                "dataType":"String",
                "scope":"Form",
                "value":""
            }
         ],

         "formDataConfig":{
            "contactEmailXPath":"//ContactDetails/EmailAddress"
         }
      }
   ]
}
```

The form appears in Manager as shown below.




When specifying forms, form version archive files need to be exported from Manager, saved locally, and checked into source control. They can then be referenced by a `formVersionFile` property in the `formVersions` array of the form definition JSON fil (shown above).

You can export a selected form in the Manager as shown below.




The `emailConfirmation` property, if specified, must be one of the following values:

- None
- Confirmation
- Confirmation and PDF Receipt
- Link to Receipt

### forms/ CCA- MAESTRO- AP/ locale- de.json

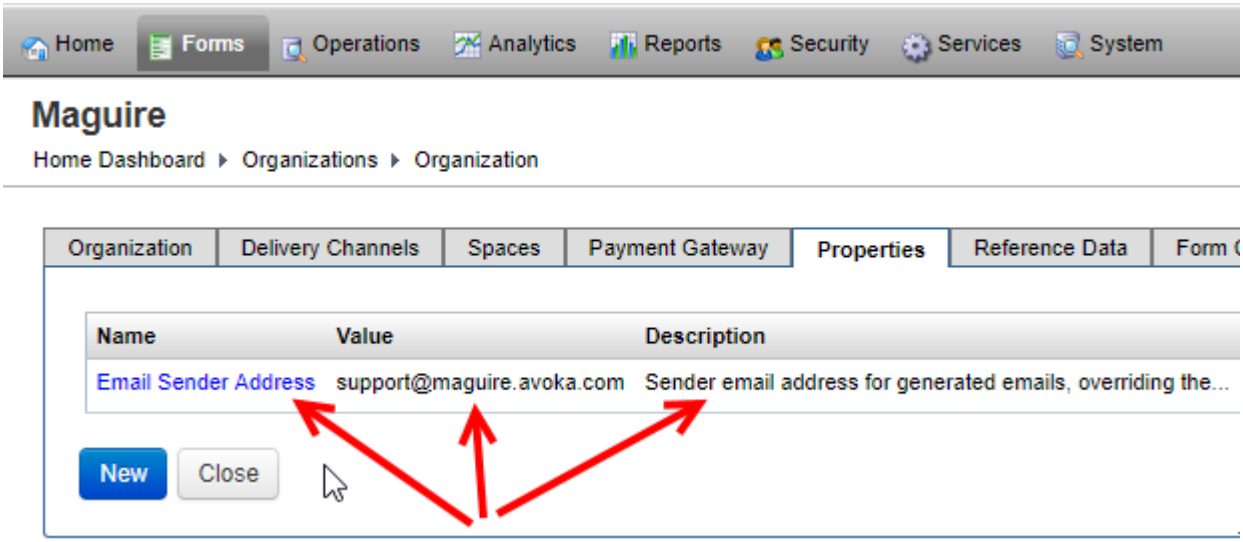
```
{
    "key.de": "Brüderlich zusammenhält"
}
```

# Properties

### properties/ property- def.json

```
{
    "name": "Email Sender Address",
    "description": "Sender email address for generated emails, overriding the global
email sender address.",
    "scope": "Form",
    "dataType": "String",
    "value": "support@maguire.avoka.com"
}
```

This property appears in Manager as shown below.

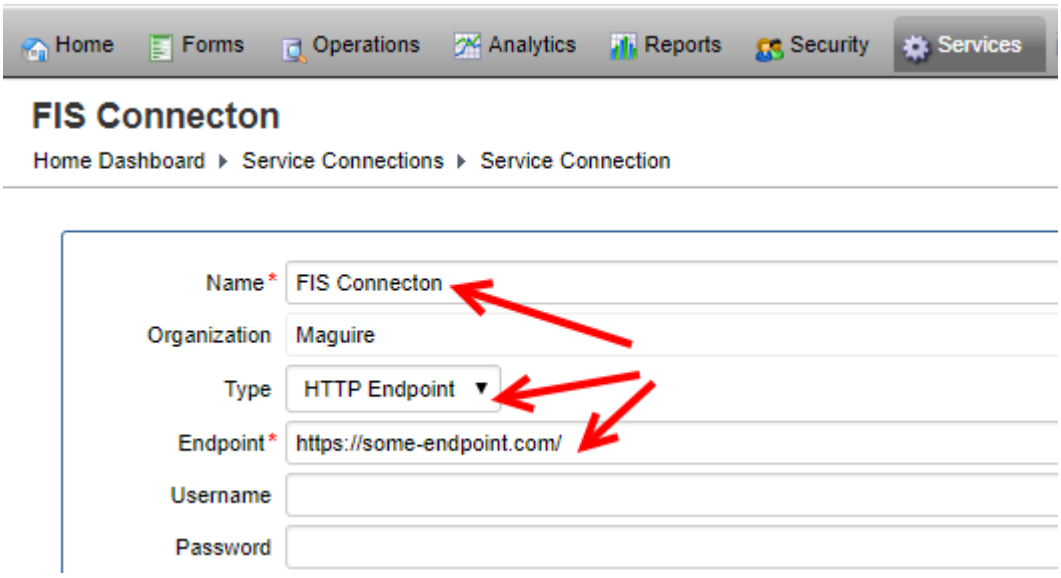


# Service Connections

## connections/ connection- def.json

```
{
   "name": "FIS Connection",
   "type": "HTTP Endpoint",
   "endpoint": "https://some-endpoint.com/",
   "username": "username",
   "password": "password",
   "dataFile": ""
}
```

After installation of the application package, the above service connection details will be available to see in Manager:



# Services

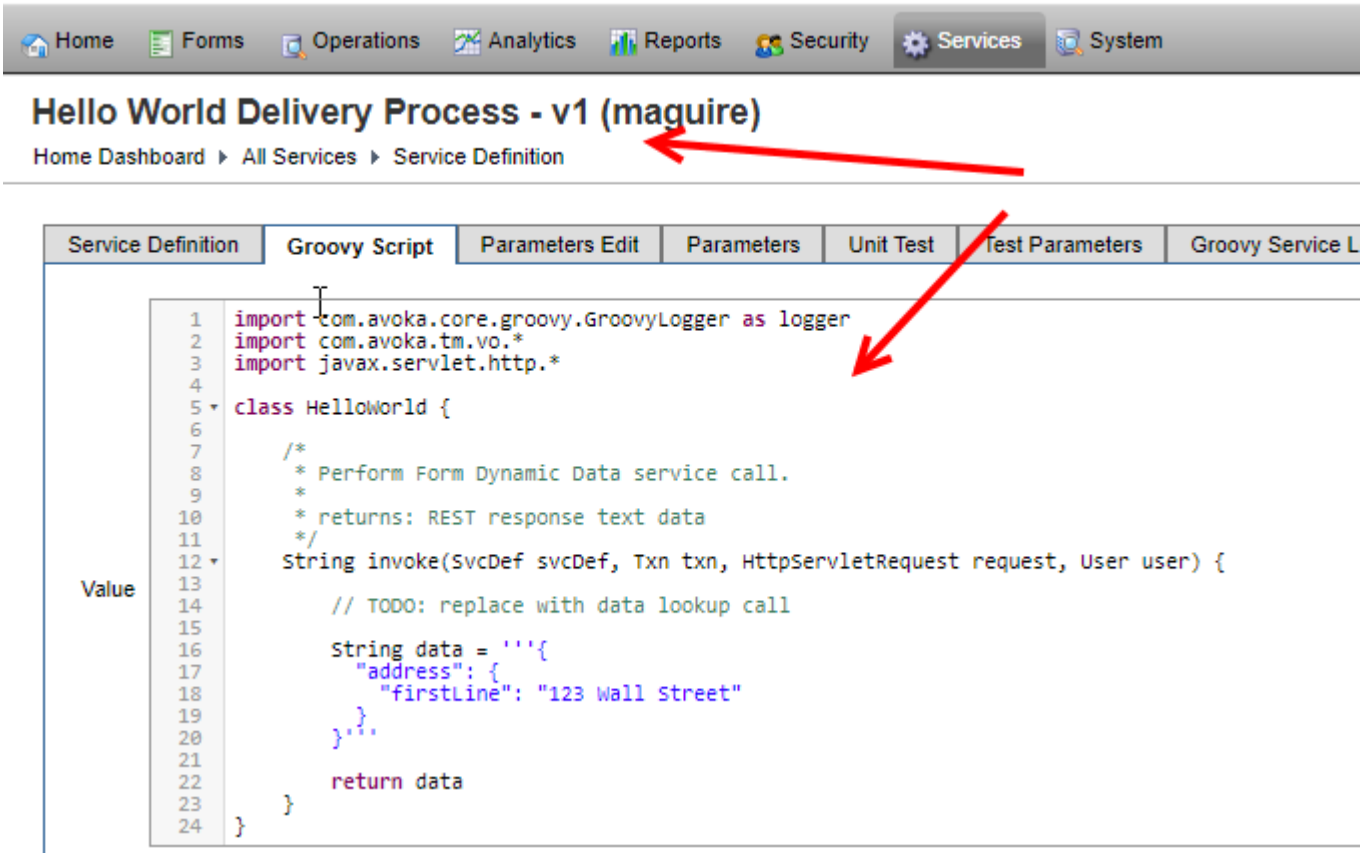
## services/ helloworld/ service- def.json

```
{
  "name": "Hello World Delivery Process",
  "description": "",
  "type": "Delivery Process",
  "version": 1,
  "tmMinVersion": "5.0.0",
  "parameters": [
    {
      "name": "groovyScript",
      "filePath": "HelloWorld.groovy",
      "fileIncludes": [],
      "bind": true,
      "required": false,
      "clearOnExport": false,
      "readOnly": false
    },
    {
      "name": "Unit Test Script",
      "filePath": "HelloWorldTest.groovy",
      "fileIncludes": [],
      "bind": false,
      "required": false,
      "clearOnExport": false,
      "readOnly": false,
      "unitTest": true
    },
    {
      "name": "Help Doc",
      "type": "HTML",
      "filePath": "service-help.html",
      "bind": false,
      "required": false,
      "clearOnExport": false,
      "readOnly": false
    }
  ]
}
```

### services/helloworld/HelloWorld.groovy

```
import com.avoka.core.groovy.GroovyLogger as logger
import com.avoka.tm.vo.*
import javax.servlet.http.*

class HelloWorld {

    /*
     * Perform Form Dynamic Data service call.
     *
     * returns: REST response text data
     */
    String invoke(SvcDef svcDef, Txn txn, HttpServletRequest request, User user) {

        // TODO: replace with data lookup call

        String data = '''{
          "address": {
            "firstLine": "123 Wall Street"
          }
        }'''

        return data
    }
}
```

The two files above will provision Manager with a new service with the following Groovy script.




Next, learn about Continuous Integration.

# Journey SDK Maven Plugin

Temenos Journey Manager API Developer resources for building Temenos Journey Manager solutions | Platform Developer | 22.04 This feature was introduced in 22.04.

The Journey SDK Maven plugin provides goals and lifecycles to build and deploy Journey Manager (JM) form applications from the Maven command line. Mavin plugin goals provide functionality supporting Journey Manager platform development, and can be used in place of the Ant tasks used by all versions of Journey SDK. Two new customized lifecycles, `app` and `svc`, join Maven's built-in build lifecycles (`default`, `clean` and `site`) to enhance the Journey SDK CI/CD process. To learn more about this plugin, see Journey SDK Maven Plugin.

Let's learn how to start a new Journey Manager project using the Journey SDK Maven Plugin.

## Requirements

- Maven 3.6.1
- JDK 11 or later

You need the same JDK version used by your Journey Manager server. For details, see Journey Manager 3rd Party Libraries > JDK.

You also need access to the Temenos Journey Manager Artifactory. If you don't have this access, contact your Temenos support team to request access. You will receive an email when your account is created, including instructions for setting up the `settings.xml` file.

## Setup

Make sure your Maven `settings.xml` is configured to connect to the correct Artifactory in order to download the required dependencies.

Edit the `pom.xml` file, and replace the placeholder values in the following tags:

```
<groupId>com.example</groupId>
<artifactId>com.example.artifact</artifactId>
<version>1.0.0-SNAPSHOT</version>
```

# Examples

Examples for all goals and phases are available in Journey SDK Plugin Examples.

- **Run a specific goal**

  For example, run the `app-scaffold` goal:

  ```
  mvn initialize tm-sdk:app-scaffold
  ```

- **Run a phase**

  For example, run the `app-package` phase:

  ```
  mvn initialize app-package
  ```

# Development Tips

## Passing arguments

There are two ways to pass input parameters to a Maven goal: command-line parameters, or POM properties.

- **Command-line parameters:**

  Pass command-line parameters to a Maven goal using the `-D` or `--define` option. For example:

  ```
  mvn initialize tm-sdk:app-scaffold-connect -Dconnection.name="My Connect"
  ```

- **POM properties:**

  POM properties are added to the `pom.xml` file. For example:

  ```
  <!-- Example parameter for app-scaffold-connect -->
  <connectionName>My Connect</connectionName>
  ```

  Then, when you run the goal, the property's value is loaded from the `pom.xml` file.

For example:

```
mvn initialize tm-sdk:app-scaffold-connect
```

## Running unit tests

You can run unit tests on the command line or in your preferred IDE.

- **To run a unit test on the command-line:**

  Start by running the `mvnDebug` command:

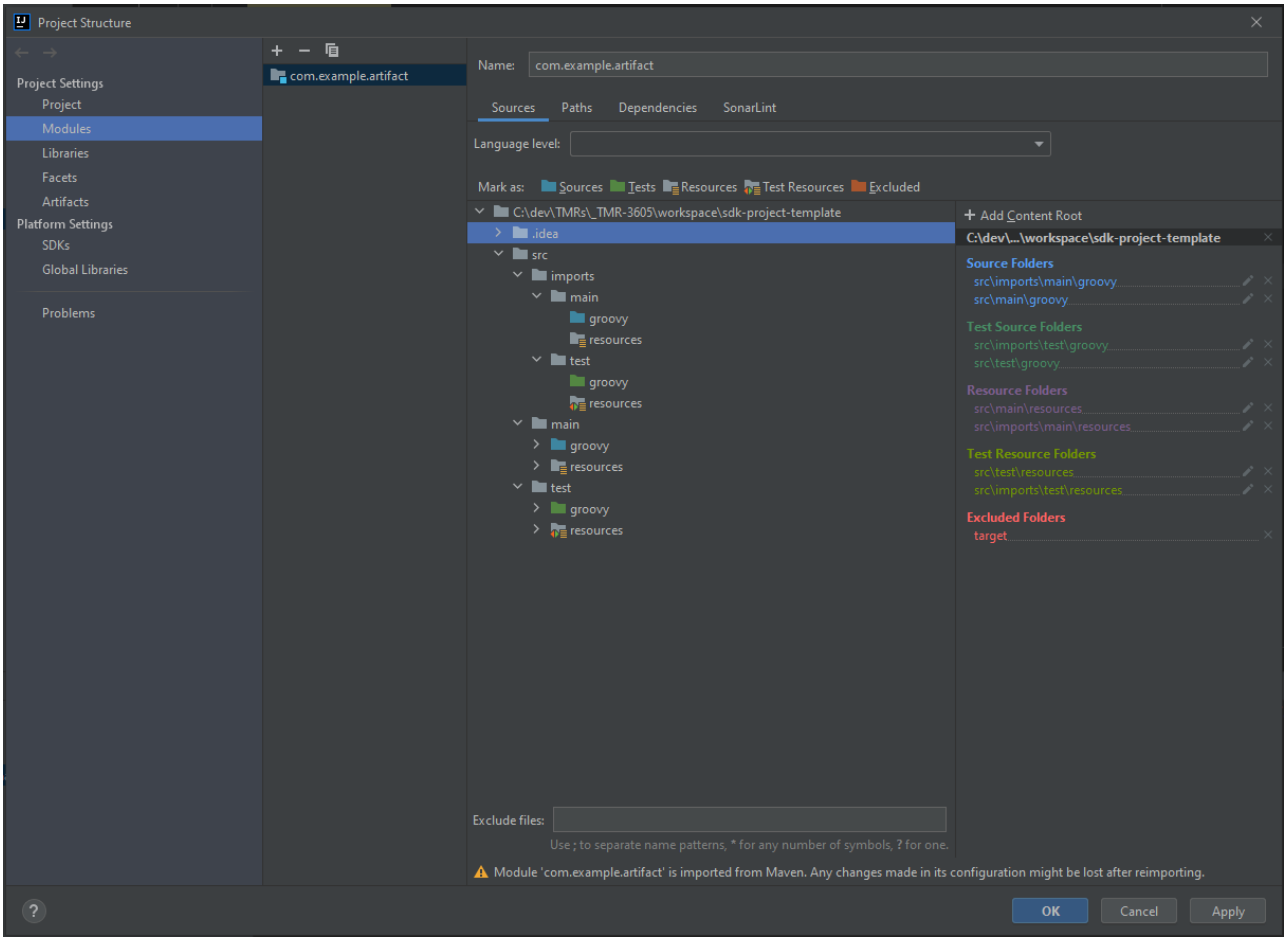
  ```
  mvnDebug initialize tm-sdk:app-scaffold-connect
  ```

  Now, you can debug your application on your local machine (using port 8000) by creating and running a remote JVM debug connection.

- **To run a unit test in an IDE such as IntelliJ IDEA:**

  Open IntelliJ and configure Groovy Sources, Tests, Resources and Test Resources

as shown below, then debug the unit test as required.




Next, learn about Continuous Integration.

Welcome to the Journey Manager Support Hub. We are committed to supporting our customers who have Journey Manager solutions installed in the cloud or on-premise.

On this page you will find quick links to our mandatory system requirements, end-of-life and deprecation policies, as well as other resources like the product release notes, Q&A forum and announcements.

You will also find quick links to the Temenos Support Portal, to log your ideas for future product developments (New Feature Request), or raise a support ticket (Support Request).

The Support Handbook contains information on how to raise these requests, what severity to use and the location of our support centres.

More detailed information about your specific support arrangements can be found in your customer contract or license agreement.

## Support

- keyboard_arrow_right Support Handbook
- keyboard_arrow_right Reset Support Portal Password
- keyboard_arrow_right New Product Releases
- keyboard_arrow_right For Developers

## Support Portal Links

- keyboard_arrow_right Raise a Support Request
- keyboard_arrow_right View Existing Support Requests
- keyboard_arrow_right Raise an Idea (New Feature Request)
- keyboard_arrow_right View Existing Ideas (New Feature Requests)

## Policies

- keyboard_arrow_right End Of Life
- keyboard_arrow_right Deprecation Schedule

## Resources

- keyboard_arrow_right Release Notes
- keyboard_arrow_right Q&A forum
- keyboard_arrow_right Announcements
- keyboard_arrow_right Articles

## System Requirement

- keyboard_arrow_right Journey Platform
- keyboard_arrow_right Journey Manager
- keyboard_arrow_right Journey Maestro
- keyboard_arrow_right Journey Platform Forms
- keyboard_arrow_right Mobile Browsers

## Legacy System Requirements

- keyboard_arrow_right Transact Composer
- keyboard_arrow_right Transact Integration Gateway

- keyboard_arrow_right TransactField App
- keyboard_arrow_right Legacy Browsers

# Journey Manager Support Handbook

Journey Platform Previously known as the Transact Platform. | All Personas | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

Learn about raising ideas and support requests, what severity to use and the location of our Support Centres.

This handbook contains the following sections:


- Support definitions
- Severity level definitions
- Contact Support
- Raise an Idea
- Raise a Support Request/Incident
- New Product Releases
- More information


## Support definitions

### Standard Platform Support

#### Definition

Platform Support is included in your annual platform subscription. Services differ depending on the support package purchased. Additional services may be available depending on the support package you purchased.

Platform Support is there to assist if the platform malfunctions due to a product defect or issue with the hosting services.

#### Examples

A platform issue is one where the expected behavior of the module is not observed. For example, a form won't render in Journey Manager, or a form field is not behaving as expected, submission is not delivered, etc.

#### Out of Scope

- Development assistance such as web application (form) development, custom services and scripts
- Product Training

- Third Party integration (except Mitek and Yodlee)
- New feature request (Ideas)

### Development Assistance

We have self-service options to help you if you need development assistance. Instructional documentation and online training (access required) is available on our resources website. Classroom or remote instructor led training is also available for up to 12 participants at a time.

Alternatively, you can contact your Customer Success Manager or Account Executive to discuss commercial requirements for Development Assistance Services and product training.

## Severity level definitions

Severity levels are used to define the impact on your business and the urgency required for resolution. Below are summaries of the severity levels for Standard Platform Support; please consult your contract for any variations, or contact your Customer Success Manager or Account Executive for further details.

#### Severity 1 Critical

- The Temenos Software is down or in a severely degraded state impacting the majority of the Client Users and/or Client's customers.
- There is a key processing or Temenos Software component failure, carrying a significant impact to normal operations and no immediate Workaround available.
- The impact is extensive and widespread, introducing high risk and exposure to the Client's business.
- Example: Platform is unresponsive, non-operational.

#### Severity 2 Urgent

- The Temenos Software performance is materially degraded but can reasonably continue its operation via a Workaround or temporary manual processes.
- The operational impact is moderate and limited, introducing a medium level of risk and exposure to the Client's business.
- Example: Email queue is stuck in Manager; a service is stopped and won't restart in Manager.

**Severity 3 High**

- The Temenos Software does not function correctly and is limited to a specific area of the Temenos Software's functionality, but such impact does not impede the ability of Client and/or Client's customers to operate the Temenos Software.
- The impact is minor and localized, introducing a low level of risk and exposure to the Client's business.
- Example: Third-party integration is down and is affecting the form.

**Severity 4 Medium**

- The use of an isolated part, characteristic, or feature of the Temenos Software deviates from normal or documented use or is subject to some restrictions or difficulties in use.
- The impact is procedural, introducing a very low level of risk and exposure to the Client's business.
- The identified issue has minimal impact to Client's customer.
- Example: Third-party integration is down and is affecting the form.

**Severity 5 Low**

- A potential non-conformity has been identified with the Temenos Software that is deemed non-critical but must be corrected.
- The identified issue if of a cosmetic nature and has no functional impact to Client's customers.
- Example: Third-party integration is down and is affecting the form.

# Contact Support

**Support Centers**

Our support centers are in India and Australia.

**Business Hours**

Our centers and business working hours are:

| India - Hyderabad | Australia - Sydney |
|---|---|
| Mon - Fri | Mon - Fri |
| 9:00 AM - 5:00 PM IST | 9:00 AM - 5:00 PM AEST |

### Temenos Support Portal

You can contact our Support Team by logging a ticket on our Temenos Support Portal.

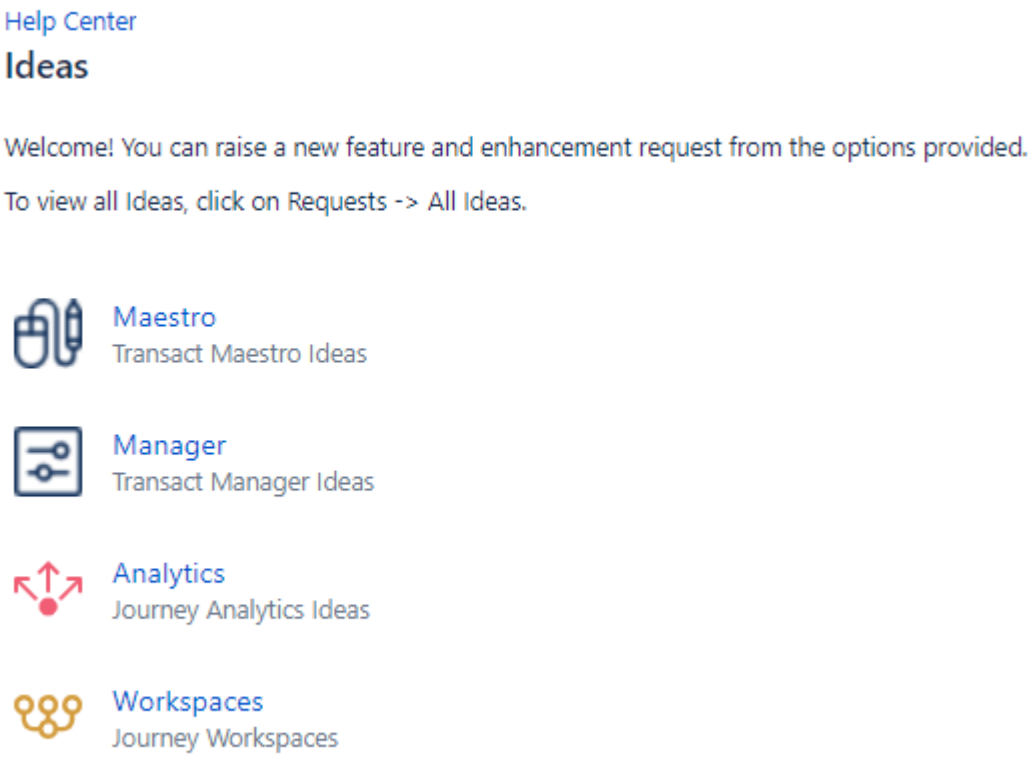
#### Client contact username and password

Each organization nominates who can access the Support Portal, and only these contacts are able to login using their email address as their username.

To request access for a new contact, ask the manager from your organization to request new user access through the Temenos Support Portal or contact us at cloudjira-support@temenos.com or jira_servicedesk_admins@temenos.com.

## Raise an Idea

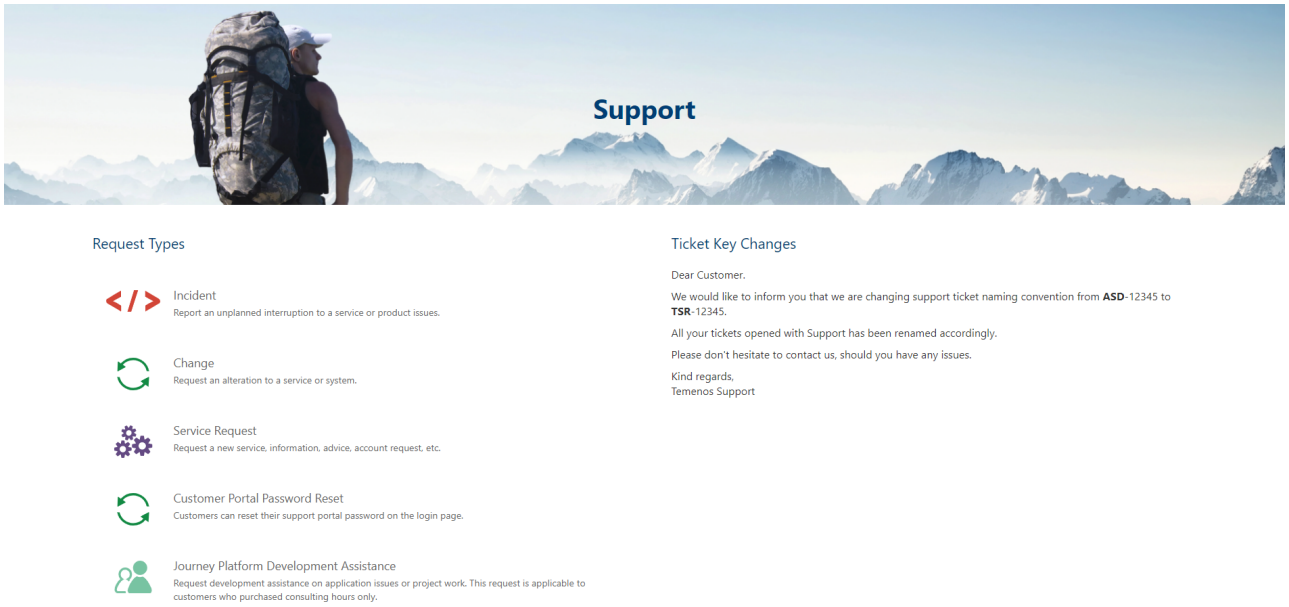
1. To log ideas (New Feature Requests), go to the Ideas Portal.



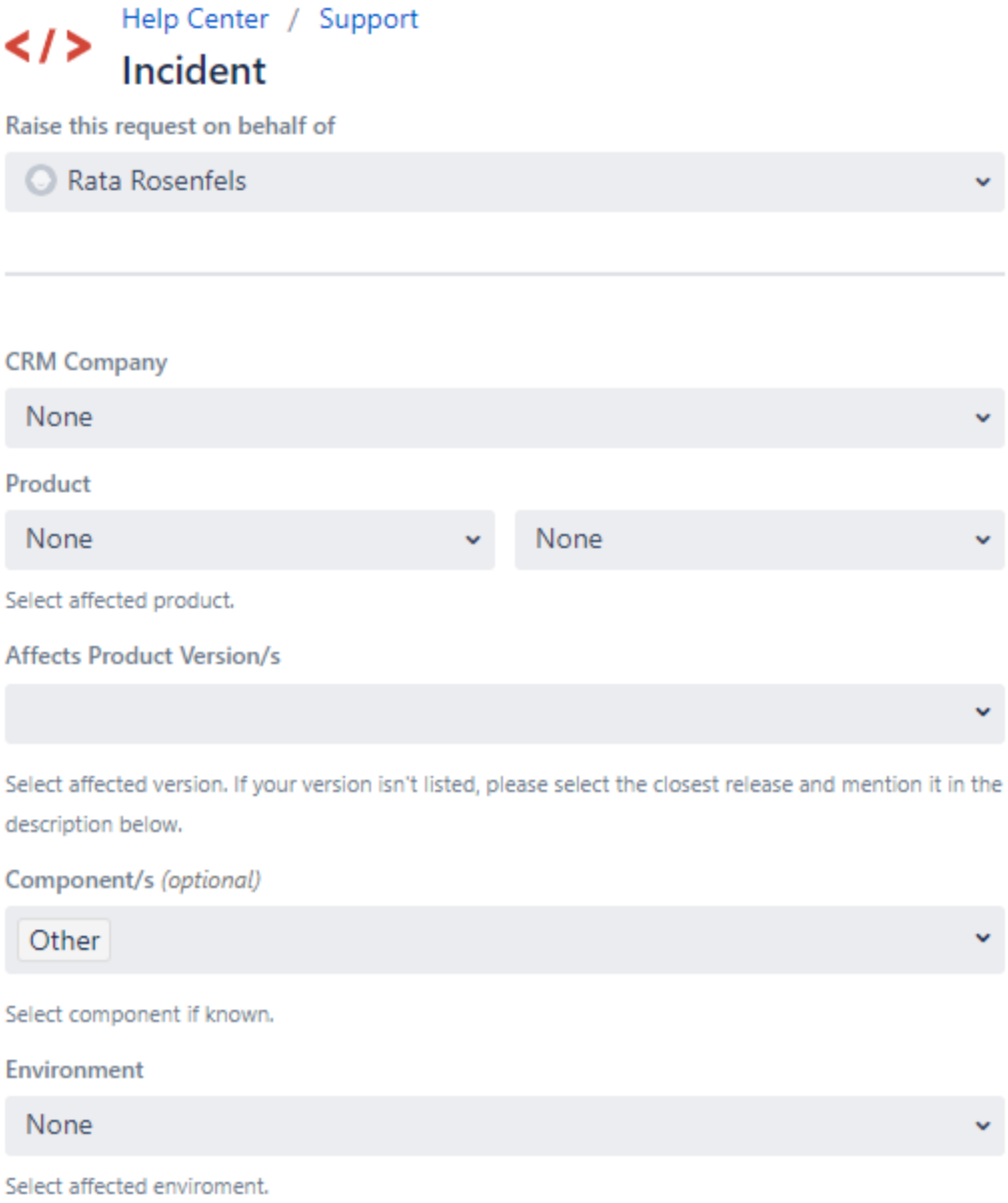

2. Select the product you have a suggestion for, and log your idea.
3. This will submit your ideas directly onto the product backlogs for review by the product development teams. To view existing ideas, click on Requests > All Ideas.

# Raise a Support Request/Incident

1. To request technical support, go to the Temenos Support Portal.
2. Click **Support**.




3. Select the **Request Type**, for example **Incident**.
   - Incident - Report an unplanned interruption to a service or product issue.
   - Change - Request an alteration to a service or system.
   - Service Request - Request a new service, information, advice, account request, etc.
   - Customer Portal Password Reset - Customers can reset their support portal password on the login page.
   - Journey Platform Development Assistance - Request development assistance on application issues or project work. This request is applicable to customers who purchased consulting hours only.
4. The Incident Request form displays.




5. Enter your name, company, product **Journey Platform** and module (**Manager**, **Maestro**, **Analytics**, **Exchange**, **Workspaces**) affected.
6. Make sure you select all the relevant product versions in Affects Product Version/s.
7. Select the Environment that is affected, such as **Dev**, **Test**, **SIT**, **UAT** or **Production**.
8. Select the Severity. See Severity Level Definitions above for more information.
9. Enter a brief explanation of the issue in the Issue Summary to highlight the core problem.
10. Enter all other details needed to describe this issue in Description.

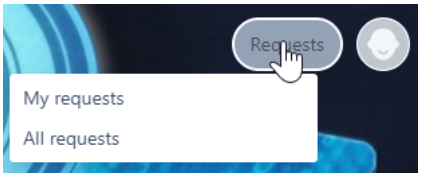
11. Attach a zipped file containing the Maestro form in Attachment(s) if applicable.
12. Click Create.
13. Our Support Team will contact you if they need anymore information before passing this issue on to the relevant investigation team. All support tickets are triaged by the Indian team and escalated to the Australian team for resolution. It is important that the ticket is submitted with relevant, accurate, and detailed information otherwise delays might be introduced to gather the information necessary to troubleshoot the issue.

**Issue Description Examples**

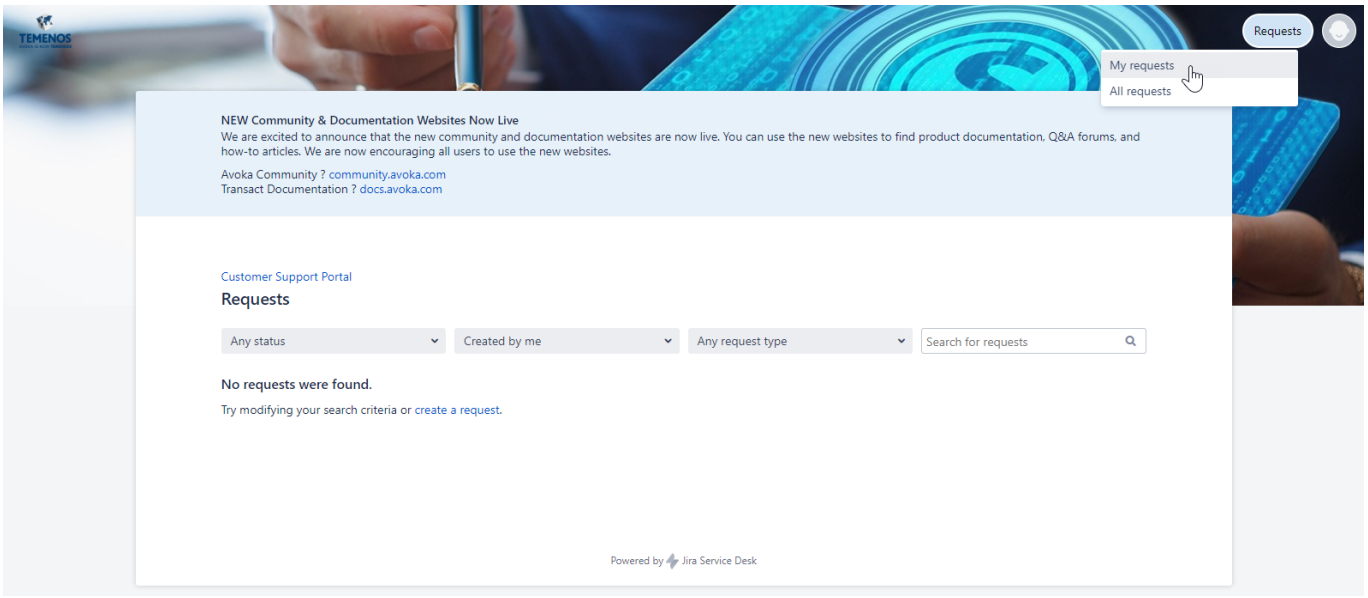
- Single issue - Include a single problem per ticket to avoid misunderstanding and keep focus on the issue. Ensure there is no ambiguity in description of the issue.
- Environment details – Provide any environment details including product versions, form versions, 3rd party services involved, any resent changes or updates, etc.
- Severity and business impact – Describe business impact and context, including number of services, forms, users, customer impacted, frequency of the issue, project schedule at risk, etc.
- Reproducible steps - Clearly define the steps that we can take to reproduce the issue and try to reproduce issue on the latest deployment with simple configuration.
- Actual behavior – Describe and provide screenshots for the actual behavior when experiencing an issue.
- Expected behavior – Describe and provide mockups screenshots for the expected behavior.
- Screenshots – Include any related screenshots which can help us to better understand the issue. Take screenshots of the whole window rather than providing cropped images, without context.
- Attachments - If the issue relates to system outputs (e.g. receipt documents, or emails) please attach examples when submitting the ticket. The screenshots should be correctly named to match the description.
- Your expectations – Provide details on your expectations including time deadlines, versions where issues are expected to be fixed, etc.

## View existing support tickets

To monitor your existing support tickets, click Requests in the upper right corner of the Support Portal and select **My requests**.




You can also search for and view requests using filters (**Status**, **Created by**, **Request Type**, and search text).




## What does the ticket status mean?

| Status | Description |
|---|---|
| New | The ticket is awaiting triage by a Support Engineer. |
| In Progress | Temenos representative is actively working on the ticket. |
| Waiting for Customer | Ticket is waiting on information or update from the customer. |
| Under DEV Investigation | The issue is under investigation by development team. |
| Defect Acknowledged | Issue reported has been qualified to require a code change and has been assigned to the development team. |
| Awaiting Version Release | Issue has been fixed by code change in a specific version and the version is pending release. |
| On Hold | Ticket has been suspended by agreement with the customer. |
| Closed | Ticket is now closed and no longer actively worked on. |

When a ticket is created, our system automatically verifies your Support Package and assigns the Response SLA based on the severity of the ticket.

### Escalating a support ticket

Our goal is to provide a way for our customers to escalate an issue to the Support Manager if:

- There is an increased impact on your business and you need to raise the priority.
- You require faster response or more attention.
- You are dissatisfied with the progress of your issue, or the Support experience.

Our Support team will work with you through the life cycle of your ticket to ensure that the appropriate resources and level of attention are focused towards a timely resolution of your issue(s). If you are not satisfied with the experience you can raise the ticket to the attention of the Support Management Team.

#### How do I escalate the visibility of a support ticket?

To escalate an issue to Support Management Team, take the following steps:

1. Log into the Support Portal.
2. Navigate to your existing ticket.
3. Click the Escalate button.
4. Enter the reason for the escalation.
5. Click the Escalate button which will complete the Escalation process.

#### What happens after an escalation request is made?

Once your request for escalation has been received, we will acknowledge the receipt of your request and the Support Manager will contact you within 24 business hours. The Support Engineer assigned to the issue will be notified to review the issue and contact you within the working hours of your ticket.

## New Product Releases

### Major Release

A major release adds new product features, enhancements, libraries, and bug fixes, and, sometimes, can introduce behavioral changes that may affect Groovy services and integrations with other systems. While we try to minimize these changes, you need to review all product enhancements carefully to determine if and how they may affect your existing implementations.

A major release is denoted by a 0 as the third number in the release number, with the two first numbers representing the year and month of the release. For example, 19.05.0, or 22.10.0.

### Maintenance Release

A maintenance release usually includes only bug fixes and minor changes. However, there can be exceptions when a maintenance release includes new features. If this is the case, it will be clearly documented in the product release notes.

A minor release is denoted by the third number in the release number being greater than 0. For example, 18.05.10, or 19.05.5.

### Release Notes Sitemap

Detailed information on all major and minor releases is available from the Release Notes Sitemap in our Journey Manager resources website.

### End-of-Life Policy

Our support will only provide assistance on supported product and platform versions. For more information, see our End-of-Life policy.

While support will be provided for all versions until End-of-Life Date, it is likely that in the case of issues related to older versions, the Support Engineer will require an upgrade to resolve the issue.

End-of-Life Support may also be considered for an additional fee, however you should contact your Account Executive for more details.

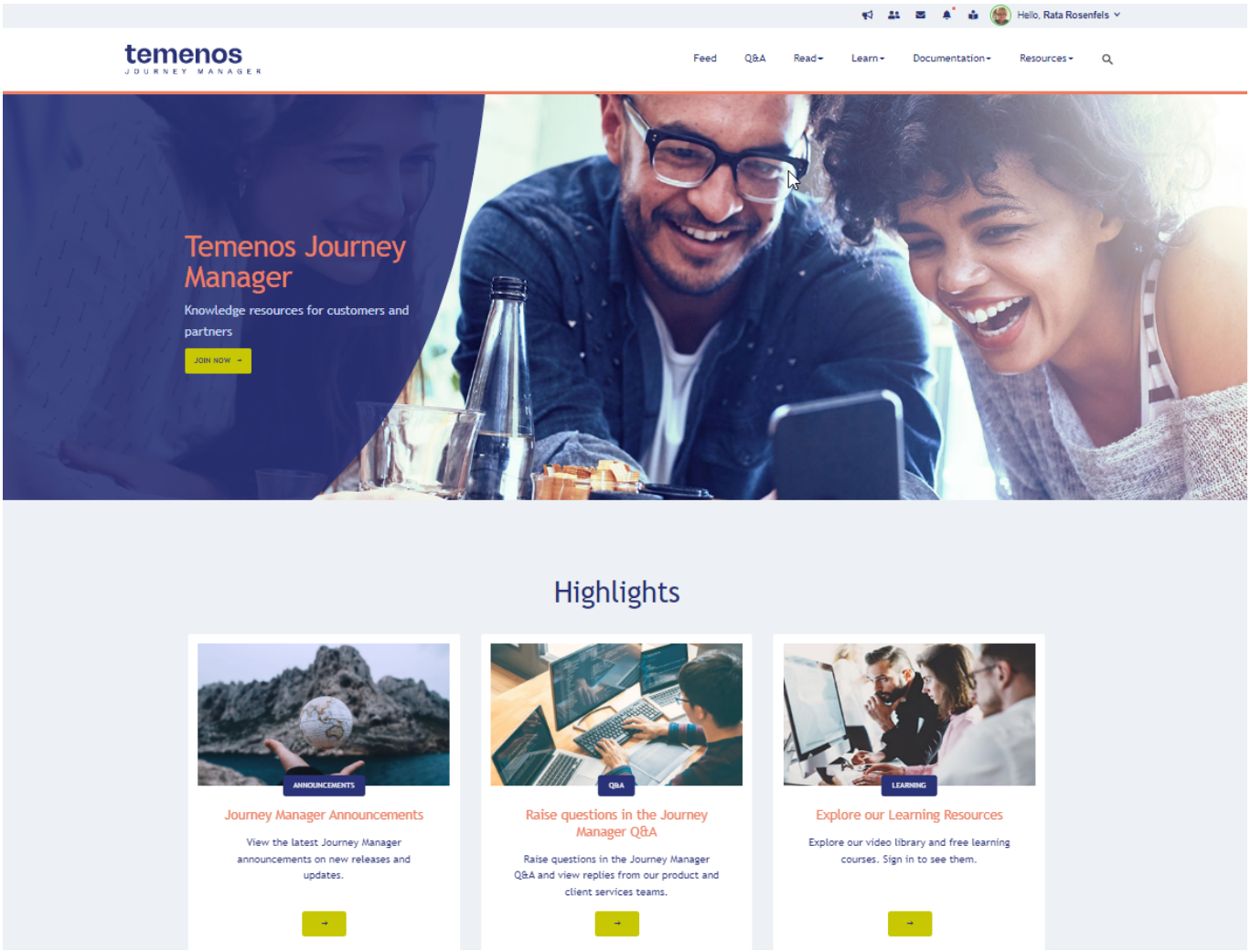
### Deprecation Schedule

As the Temenos Journey Manager platform continuously aims to innovate, improve and stay current with security hardening, there is sometimes a need to deprecate some older or obsolete features of the platform. For more information, see our Deprecation Schedule.

## More information

### Temenos Journey Manager resources website

For more information visit the Temenos Journey Manager resources website at journey.temenos.com.




Here you will find a wealth of information, such as product and technical documentation, announcements, release notes and product downloads, as well as our Q&A forum.

- **Documentation** - Extensive product documentation on Manager, Maestro, Exchange, Workspaces and Journey Analytics.
- **API** - Technical documentation such as the Journey SDK, Services Guide and more.
- **Announcements** - All product announcements and advisories can be found in the Announcements section.
- **Release Notes** - Product release notes for all Journey Manager products, including detailed features, enhancements, and resolved issues for each release.
- **Q&A forum** - This is the space for our customers to ask questions to the wider user community. The Q&A is offered to foster user community discussion to gather feedback and crowd source ideas.

# Temenos Journey Manager End-of-Life Policy

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Each Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) release reaches its End-of-Life[1] (EOL) date 3 years after its General Availability[2] (GA) date.

This policy relates to our core product modules, including:

- Journey Manager
- Journey Maestro
- Journey Workspaces
- Transact Composer
- Transact Field App

Each Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) module has its own release numbering and GA dates.

All Temenos Journey Manager (TJM) releases are supported and maintained until their EOL date. After that, out-of-support releases will be supported only to facilitate an upgrade to a supported release.

| Support | Period | Support & Maintenance |
|---|---|---|
| Normal support | Release to EOL date (years 1 to 3) | • Full access to the support portal per your support package<br>• Monthly Maintenance Release available against the most recent major release version only<br>• For older Manager releases - Critical issues fixed on request and with approval from the Product Owners and company management |

[1] End-of-life (EOL) is a term used with respect to a product supplied to customers, indicating that the product is in the end of its useful life (from the vendor's point of view), and a vendor stops marketing, selling, or rework sustaining it.
[2] General availability (GA) is the marketing phase when all commercialization activities pertaining to the software product have been completed and it is available for purchase. It is also known as production release.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | | • Access to new releases |
| No support | After Support Period (years 4+) | • No support<br>• Access to new releases |

# Feature and Maintenance Releases

New features are added to our products in major releases only. These features are not backported to previous releases. For example, features added in release version 21.1.0 will not be available in release version 21.0.5.x.

Maintenance releases provide fixes and security improvements. Monthly Maintenance Releases are available against the most recent major version only, unless, in our view, there is a significant reason to patch a previous release, such as a major security issue or critical bug fixes. For example, a fix in 21.1.1.2 will not be ported to 21.0.5 unless there is a significant reason to do so.

## Release Notes

Release notes, identifying new features, improvements and fixes, are available for all release versions of all our products.

## Feature Lists

Feature lists are available for Manager, Maestro, Analytics and Workspaces, with features grouped for each major release.

# End-of-Life Schedules

The following are the End-of-Life schedules for our products. Click a link in the Release column to view the release notes for that release.

## Journey Manager

### Supported releases

| Release | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 23.04 | Jun 16, 2023 | Jun 16, 2026 |
| 22.10 | Nov 16, 2022 | Nov 16, 2025 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 22.04 | Jun 8, 2022 | Jun 8, 2025 |
| 21.11 | Dec 3, 2021 | Dec 3, 2024 |
| 21.05 | June 15, 2021 | June 15, 2024 |
| 20.11 | Jan 12, 2021 | Jan 12, 2024 |

**Unsupported (EOL) releases**

| Release | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 20.05 | May 1, 2020 | May 1, 2023 |
| 19.11 | Nov 30, 2019 | Nov 30, 2022 |
| 19.05 | Jun 14, 2019 | Jun 14, 2022 |
| 18.11 | Nov 26, 2018 | Nov 26, 2021 |
| 18.05 | Jun 1, 2018 | Jun 1, 2021 |
| 17.10 | Dec 8, 2017 | Dec 8, 2020 |
| 5.1 | Apr 12, 2017 | Apr 12, 2020 |
| 5.0 | Oct 17, 2016 | Oct 17, 2019 |
| 4.3 | Nov 25, 2015 | Nov 25, 2018 |
| 4.2 | Jul 15, 2015 | Jul 15, 2018 |
| 4.1 | Nov 6, 2014 | Nov 6, 2017 |
| 4.0 | Apr 15, 2015 | Apr 15, 2017 |
| 3.6 | Aug 15, 2013 | Aug 15, 2016 |
| 3.5 | Apr 8, 2013 | Apr 8, 2016 |
| 3.4 | Sep 28, 2012 | Sep 28, 2015 |

## Journey Maestro

**Supported releases**

| Release | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 23.04 | TBA | TBA |
| 22.10 | Nov 16, 2022 | Nov 16, 2025 |
| 22.04 | Jun 8, 2022 | Jun 8, 2025 |
| 21.11 | Dec 3, 2021 | Dec 3, 2024 |
| 21.05 | July 6, 2021 | July 6, 2024 |
| 20.11 | Jan 11, 2021 | Jan 11, 2024 |

### Unsupported (EOL) releases

| Release | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 20.05 | May 31, 2020 | May 31, 2023 |
| 19.11 | Dec 13, 2019 | Dec 13, 2022 |
| 19.05 | July 5, 2019 | July 5, 2022 |
| 18.11 | Dec 7, 2018 | Dec 7, 2021 |
| 18.05 | May 31, 2018 | May 31, 2021 |
| 17.10 | Dec 8, 2017 | Dec 8, 2020 |
| 5.1 | May 5, 2017 | May 5, 2020 |
| 5.0 | Oct 17, 2016 | Oct 17, 2019 |

## Journey Workspaces

### Supported releases

| Release | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 23.04 | Jun 16, 2304 | Jun 16, 2306 |
| 22.10 | Nov 16, 2022 | Nov 16, 2025 |
| 22.04 | Jun 8, 2022 | Jun 8, 2025 |
| 21.11 | Jan 14, 2021 | Jan 14, 2024 |
| 2105 | No release | |
| 20.11 | No release | |

### Unsupported (EOL) releases

| Release | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 20.05 | Jun 26, 2020 | Jun 26, 2023 |
| 19.11 | Dec 13, 2019 | Dec 13, 2022 |
| 19.05 | Jul 12, 2019 | Jul 12, 2022 |
| 18.11 | Jan 10, 2019 | Jan 10, 2022 |

## Journey Maestro Support for End-of-Life AngularJS Releases

Support for AngularJS officially ended on 31December 2021, per an announcement on the official AngularJS website: AngularJS - Version Support Status. This means that

security patches and fixes will no longer be provided by the AngularJS project. It does not mean AngularJS apps will stop working. All AngularJS applications that work now, will continue to work in the future. For more information, see Stable AngularJS and Long Term Support.

Journey Maestro uses AngularJS as its underlying web framework. **Temenos will continue to support Maestro after the AngularJS EOL.** Below is an outline of Temenos' strategy and commitment to fully support the Journey Maestro product after the AngularJS EOL and into the foreseeable future.

Temenos is currently in negotiation with a third-party support provider to provide a commercial support contract, service level agreement, and license for a version of AngularJS that is maintained by the third-party through to at least 2026 (with an option to extend). The commercial support is identical to what we currently receive and covers security weaknesses and fixes caused by web browser and jQuery changes. This version of AngularJS will be included in the 2021Q4 Maestro release, Maestro 21.11.

As new AngularJS patches are made available, Temenos will continue to apply these patch versions to Maestro with appropriate regression testing. We do not anticipate any impact to Journey Maestro customers.

## Transact Composer

**Unsupported (EOL) versions**

| Version | GA Release Date | EOL Date |
|---|---|---|
| 4.5 | May 3, 2018 | May 3, 2021 |
| 4.4 | Oct 17, 2016 | Oct 17, 2019 |
| 4.3 | Nov 3, 2015 | Nov 3, 2018 |
| 4.2 | Jul 15, 2015 | Jul 15, 2018 |
| 4.1 | Nov 6, 2014 | Nov 6, 2017 |
| 4.0 | Apr 15, 2014 | Apr 15, 2017 |
| 3.6 | Aug 15, 2013 | Aug 15, 2016 |
| 3.5 | Apr 8, 2013 | Apr 8, 2016 |
| 3.4 | Sep 28, 2012 | Sep 28, 2015 |

## TransactField App

### Unsupported (EOL) versions

| Version | GA Release Date | EOL Date | EOL Reached |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4.3 | Mar 1, 2016 | May 3, 2021 | |
| 4.2 | Jul 9, 2015 | Jul 9, 2018 | |
| 4.1 | Nov 6, 2014 | Nov 6, 2017 | |
| 4.0 | Apr 15, 2014 | Apr 15, 2017 | |
| 3.6 | Aug 15, 2013 | Aug 15, 2016 | |

Next, learn about our product support.

# Temenos Journey Manager Deprecation Schedule

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

As the Journey Manager platform continuously aims to innovate, improve and stay current with security hardening, there is sometimes a need to deprecate some older or obsolete features of the platform.

The reasons for deprecating features include:

- Reliance on 3rd party components which have reached End-of-Life[1] and are no longer supported.
- Features which pose a security risk to the platform and our customers.
- Features which are not used or barely used by customers.
- Features which add significant complexity to the platform without delivering commensurate business value.

NOTE

When deprecated features are removed in a future Temenos Journey Manager platform release, they will still be supported in their current Temenos Journey Manager platform version until EOL of that version.

| Feature | Last Supported Release of Temenos Journey Manager platform [1] | Reason for Deprecation | Migration Strategy |
|---|---|---|---|
| Oracle JDK 8 | 18.05 | Oracle EOL Policy (Jan 2019) | Upgrade to Temenos Journey Manager platform 18.11 or later to obtain OpenJDK Java 11 security updates |
| Payment | 18.11 | PCI Com- | Use redirect gateway integrations (3 party) |

[1] End-of-life (EOL) is a term used with respect to a product supplied to customers, indicating that the product is in the end of its useful life (from the vendor's point of view), and a vendor stops marketing, selling, or rework sustaining it.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Gateway APIs (2 party) | | pliance & Gateway Vendor EOL Policies | |
| Eclipse BIRT Reports | 18.11 | Security Hardening Reasons | Use the Licensing reports and new Operational reporting features in Temenos Journey Manager platform 18.11 |
| Adobe LiveCycle | 19.05 | Adobe EOL Policy | Migrate Adobe LiveCycle Forms to Maestro Forms. Migrate Adobe LiveCycle Output PDF receipts to use Manager dynamic PDF receipts. |
| Groovy Access to internal APIs | 19.11 | Security Hardening and Platform Support Reasons | Migrate scripts to supported Transact Fluent API |
| Work Space (v1) | 20.11 | Platform Support and Performance Reasons | Use Workspaces (v2) replacement module |

NOTE

[1]- Future release numbers and actual release dates are subject to change. For more information, see latest announcements.

Next, learn more about the Temenos Journey Manager End-of-Life Policy.

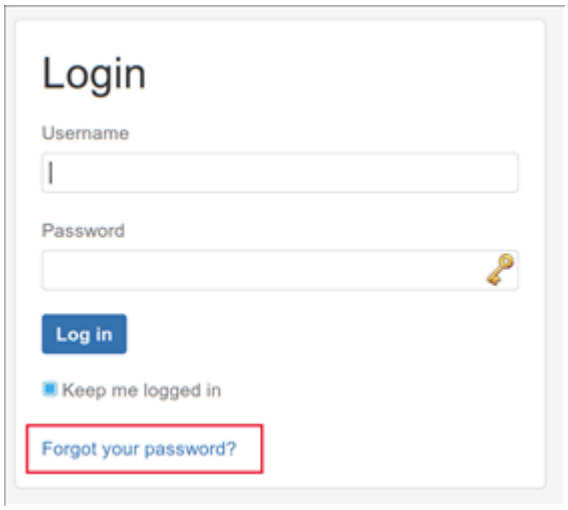
# Reset Support Portal Password

Journey Platform Previously known as the Transact Platform. | All Personas | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

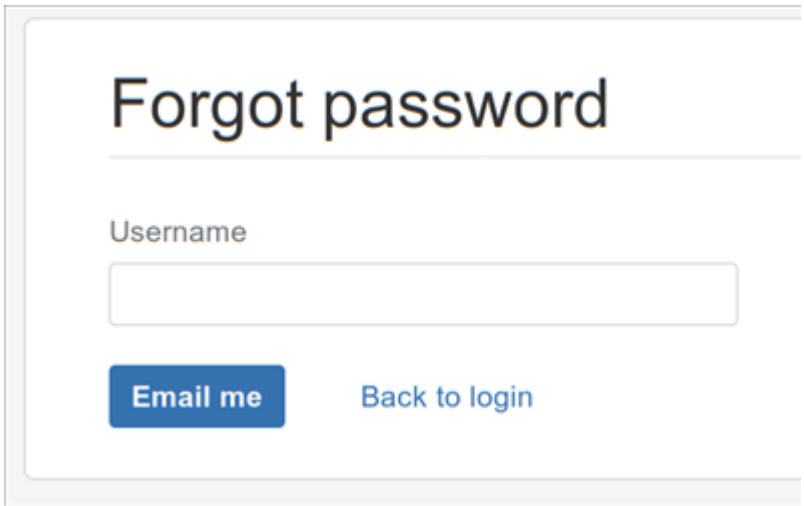
Every now and then you may need to reset your Support Portal password. If you still need help with your access, contact jira_servicedesk_admins@temenos.com or cloudjir-asupport@temenos.com.

To reset the password:

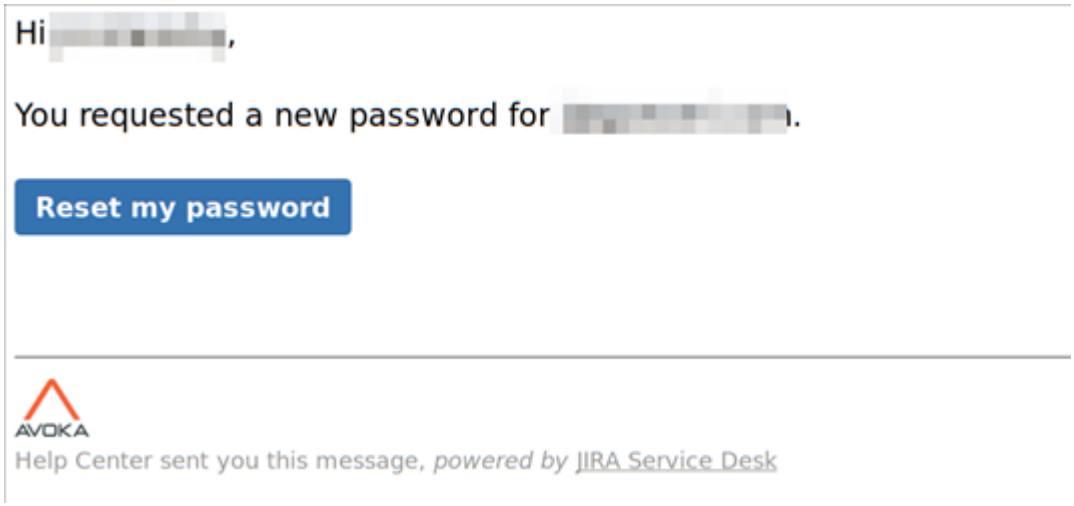
1. Go to Support Portal.
2. Click on Forgot your passport?



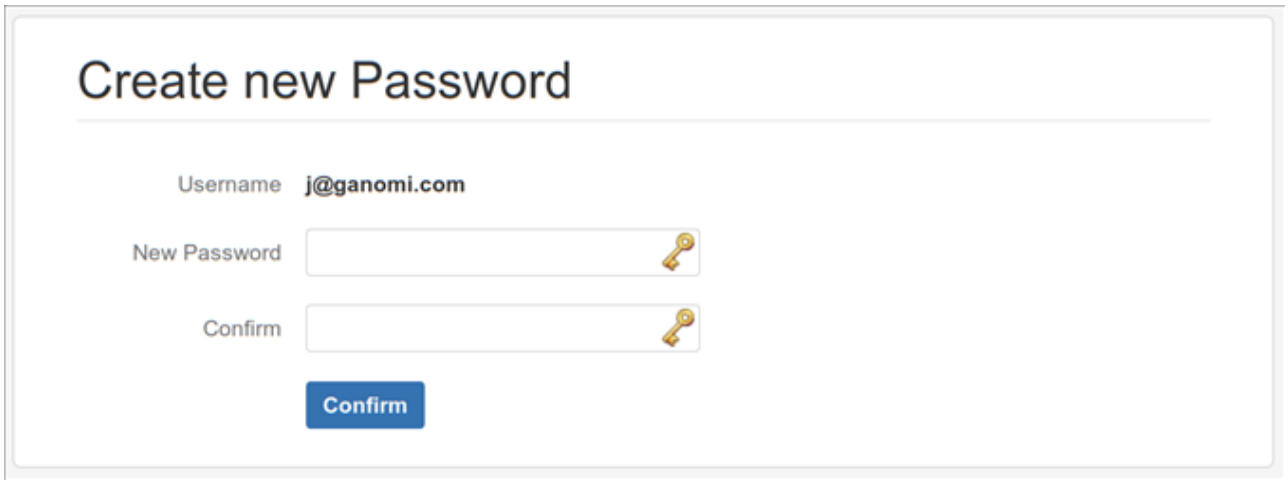

3. Enter your username (email address) and click Email me.



4. A link to reset your password will be send to your email address. Click Reset my password in the email.




5. Enter your new password and click Confirm.




NOTE

Don't use your last 3 passwords, otherwise your password will not be reset. If you make a mistake and enter any of your last 3 passwords, you have to reset the password again.

6. Your password has been reset and you should be logged into the Support Portal automatically.

# Changes to Our Product Names

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas | All versions
This feature is related to all versions.

Avoka is now a part of Temenos. In December 2018 Temenos announced and completed the acquisition of Avoka. Temenos chose Avoka to further its leadership with a digital banking product focused on customer experience, and has integrated Avoka as the Journey Manager product in the newly announced Temenos Infinity suite of products.

As part of the integration with Temenos, all product names have been changed and reflected in our documentation. Both names now appear in the labels at the top of each topic. Refer to the table below to see the original and new product names.

| Original Name (Avoka) | New Name (Temenos) |
|---|---|
| Transact Platform | Journey Platform |
| Transact Manager | Journey Manager |
| Transact Maestro | Journey Maestro |
| Transact Insights | Journey Analytics |
| Avoka Exchange | Journey Exchange |
| Transact SDK | Journey SDK |
| Transact Open UX | Journey Open UX |
| Springboard | Journey Springboard |

For example, if you are looking for the Transact Manager Overview topic, you should now search for the Journey Manager Overview.

## Name Changes from the original Knowledge Base

We have always believed in providing high quality documentation. Prior to hosting on journey.temenos.com/docs/, we hosted the Knowledge Base via our Confluence portal at https://support.avoka.com/kb/. Since then, the platform and its products evolved, and we rewrote our content as topic-based[1] articles and improved its accessibility and search capability with the Algolia search engine.

[1]Topic-based authoring is a modular approach to content creation where content is structured around topics that can be mixed and reused in different contexts.

The improvements are quite significant, affecting the structure, look and feel of the content and its discovery, so we recommend you become familiar with the website by checking our getting started page. If you are experiencing difficulties locating old KB documentation, we have mapped the most popular old KB content with the new topics, which are the entry points to all related content. Check the tables below to see how of the old KB articles map to new documentation topics.

| Old KB Articles | New Documentation Topics |
|---|---|
| Transact Manager Administration Guide | Journey Manager Overview |
| Transact Manager Configuration | Journey Manager Home Dashboard |
| Organizations | Organizations Overview |
| User Accounts | User Accounts Overview |
| Form Spaces | Form Spaces Overview |
| System Logs | System Logs |
| Configure Virus Scanning for Attachments | Symantec Attachment Virus Scanning Service<br>ClamAV Attachment Virus Scanning Service |
| Core Global Services | Core Global Services Overview |
| Maestro Form Configuration in TM | Form Dashboard |
| Multi-Environment | Multi-Environment Support |
| Server Nodes | Server Nodes Overview |
| Outgoing Email | Outgoing Email Service Overview |

For more information on our products prior to version 5.1, see Other products under Products.

NOTE

If you can't find an article you are looking for, but you remember its name as it was in the KB, try to search for that name using our Algolia search engine.

Next, learn about our new documentation.

# Temenos Journey Manager System Requirements

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

Each product of the Temenos Journey Manager platform has its own requirements for running in the cloud or on-premise. These requirements are listed below:

- Journey Manager requirements
- Journey Maestro requirements
- Temenos Journey Manager forms requirements
- Journey Workspaces requirements
- Web browser support for Journey Maestro forms

Each product version may have slightly different system requirements, so we recommend checking the product certification matrix.

### Legacy

- Transact Composer requirements
- TransactField App requirements
- Transact Integration Gateway requirements
- Legacy Browsers requirements

Next, learn about the Temenos Journey Manager deprecation schedule.

# Journey Manager System Requirements

Journey Manager (JM) The transaction engine for the platform. | All Personas

Journey Manager is a secure, high performance application server that processes, manages, and monitors transactions associated with customer onboarding journeys. To provide the best customer experience while handling a significant number of transactions, the application server requires specific system configurations described below.

Journey Manager can be run in the cloud or on premise, depending on your requirements. We recommend running our software in the cloud environment provisioned by Temenos Journey Cloud Service, so you can have new services commissioned quickly and additional capacity allocated to you dynamically as required.

## Cloud

Journey Manager can be run as a hosted service in the following clouds:

- Amazon[1] cloud
- Azure[2] cloud | 20.05 This feature was introduced in 20.05.

Journey Manager is provisioned in the following regions:

- APAC: AWS Sydney region / Azure Australia East
- North America: AWS Oregon region / Azure US East
- EMEA: AWS Ireland region / Azure North Europe

We can provision Journey Manager in other regions as well, as long as they support the services that our software requires.

---

[1]Amazon Web Services (AWS) is a comprehensive, evolving cloud computing platform provided by Amazon. It provides a mix of infrastructure as a service (IaaS), platform as a service (PaaS) and packaged software as a service (SaaS) offerings.
[2]Microsoft Azure is a cloud computing service created by Microsoft for building, testing, deploying, and managing applications and services through Microsoft-managed data centers.

## On Premise

You can install Journey Manager in local environments giving you a complete control of the whole infrastructure.

## Browser

- Google Chrome current version
- Microsoft Edge current version
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 11.0
- Mozilla Firefox current version

## Operating Systems

Journey Manager is certified on the following OS:

- Microsoft Windows Server[1] 2016, 2012 or 2008 R2 64 bit Edition on Intel x86-64
- CentOS Linux[2] 7 on Intel x86-64 (recommended)
- CentOS Linux 6 on Intel x86-64 (supported)
- Oracle Linux[3] 6 (Unbreakable Enterprise Kernel) on Intel x86-64 (supported)
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server[4] AP 6 on Intel x86-64 (supported)

## Databases

Journey Manager is certified on the following DBs:

---

[1]Microsoft Windows Server OS (operating system) is a series of enterprise-class server operating systems designed to share services with multiple users and provide extensive administrative control of data storage, applications and corporate networks.
[2]CentOS (Community Enterprise Operating System) is a Linux distribution that provides a free, enterprise-class, community-supported computing platform functionally compatible with its upstream source, Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL).
[3]Oracle Linux (OL, formerly known as Oracle Enterprise Linux) is a Linux distribution packaged and freely distributed by Oracle, available partially under the GNU General Public License since late 2006. It is compiled from Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) source code, replacing Red Hat branding with Oracle's. It is also used by Oracle Cloud and Oracle Engineered Systems such as Oracle Exadata and others.
[4]is a distribution of the Linux operating system developed for the business market.

- AWS Aurora RDS[1] (MySQL-Compatible Edition)
- Microsoft SQL Server[2] 2017, 2014, 2012
- Oracle MySQL[3] 5.7 (recommended), 5.6 and 5.5 (supported)
- Oracle RDBMS[4] 19c | 20.05 This feature was introduced in 20.05.
- Oracle RDBMS 12c and 11g

## JDK

Check the required Java versions for the supported Manager releases.

## Hardware

Journey Manager runs best on latest Intel x86-64 Xeon CPU architectures with high CPU performance. We recommend using server virtualization[5], such as VMware ESX, to enable better hardware utilization and improve operational support.

The recommended server specification is:

- Intel Xeon Processors 8 Cores with 2.4 GHz or greater clock speed (4 Cores minimum)

---

[1]Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) is a web service that makes it easier to set up, operate, and scale a relational database in the cloud. It provides cost-efficient, resizable capacity for an industry-standard relational database and manages common database administration tasks.
[2]Microsoft SQL Server is a relational database management system developed by Microsoft. As a database server, it is a software product with the primary function of storing and retrieving data as requested by other software applications—which may run either on the same computer or on another computer across a network (including the Internet).
[3]MySQL is an open-source relational database management system (RDBMS). It's an Oracle-backed open source relational database management system (RDBMS) based on Structured Query Language (SQL). MySQL runs on virtually all platforms, including Linux, UNIX and Windows. Although it can be used in a wide range of applications, MySQL is most often associated with web applications and online publishing.
[4]Oracle Database is a multi-model database management system produced and marketed by Oracle Corporation. It is a database commonly used for running online transaction processing (OLTP), data warehousing (DW) and mixed (OLTP & DW) database workloads.

- 16 GB of RAM (8 GB minimum)
- 100 GB of disk storage

To get a complete picture of all system requirements you might need, check other Temenos Journey Manager products that you will need to use along with Journey Manager to build different customer journeys.

Each product version may have slightly different system requirements, so we recommend checking the product certification matrix.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform support.

# Journey Maestro System Requirements

MaestroThe UI design product. | All Personas

Journey Maestro is web-based design tool for creating HTML applications which are hosted on Journey Manager.

NOTE

To deploy a Maestro form, Journey Manager v5.0 or higher is required.

We support the following configurations:

## Cloud

Available as an Amazon[1] hosted service, currently provided in the AWS regions US West (Oregon), EU (Ireland) and Asia Pacific (Sydney).

## Browser

- Google Chrome - current version. This is the recommended browser.
- Mozilla Firefox - current version.

## Recommended Hardware

- Operating System: Microsoft supported Windows 7 or Windows 10 versions, and Apple supported macOS versions
- RAM: 8GB
- CPU: Intel Core i5 or above
- Screen size: 1920 x 1080 or larger. This is not a hard requirement, however, the greater the screen size the better it is to design pages in Maestro tool
- Disk space: 10GB

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform support.

[1] Amazon Web Services (AWS) is a comprehensive, evolving cloud computing platform provided by Amazon. It provides a mix of infrastructure as a service (IaaS), platform as a service (PaaS) and packaged software as a service (SaaS) offerings.

# Web browser support for Journey Maestro forms

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

Journey Maestro includes features designed to ensure that forms built with Maestro work well on both desktop and mobile web browsers. For the best experience, we recommend using the latest version of a supported web browser, and that you keep your browser updated, especially through the application of security patches. While you may be able to access forms built with Maestro using other browsers, there's no guarantee that everything will work, and you may not enjoy the same great user experience that is available when using a supported browser.

## Supported web browsers

### Desktop browsers

Temenos Journey Manager supports Maestro forms being used on the following desktop browsers:

- Apple Safari
- Google Chrome
- Microsoft Edge
- Mozilla Firefox

### Mobile browsers

Temenos Journey Manager supports Maestro forms being used on the following mobile browsers:

- **iOS 7 and later:** Apple Safari, Google Chrome
- **Android 4.0 and later:** Google Chrome

NOTE

The Google Search App (GSA) is not supported. You should use Google Chrome instead.

Maestro forms have been tested across a wide range of browsers on market-leading mobile devices including those from Apple, Samsung, and Google. However, the proliferation of mobile platform combinations (mobile device + OS + patches + browser) preclude us from testing Maestro form functionality against all mobile platform combinations.

You can expect that your Maestro forms will continue to work on supported devices and browsers as they did at the time they were created, even if the device or browser ceases to be supported.

# Legacy web browsers and devices

## Internet Explorer

NOTE

Temenos Journey Manager no longer supports Maestro forms on Internet Explorer (IE). To learn more, see Update on TJM Support for IE11.

TJM support for IE has been discontinued because Microsoft no longer provides security patches or fixes for IE browsers and this poses a significant security risk. Further, IE does not support modern security standards required for security transactions including:

- TLS 12 which is required for secure credit card transactions (PCI policy)
- Content Security Policy[1] (CSP) to prevent JavaScript injection (XSS) attacks. For more information, see https://www.w3.org/TR/CSP/

Information about Microsoft's support for IE is available on Microsoft's website:

[1]Content Security Policy (CSP) is a computer security standard introduced to prevent cross-site scripting (XSS), clickjacking and other code injection attacks resulting from execution of malicious content in the trusted web page context. CSP provides a standard method for website owners to declare approved origins of content that browsers should be allowed to load on that website—covered types are JavaScript, CSS, HTML frames, web workers, fonts, images, embeddable objects such as Java applets, ActiveX, audio and video files, and other HTML5 features. For more information, see https://www.w3.org/TR/CSP/

- Internet Explorer 11 desktop application ended support for certain operating systems
- Microsoft Lifecycle Policy

INFO

For Journey Manager 4.3.3 and later, customers must explicitly configure their environments to support IE10, IE9, or IE8. The default Journey Manager configuration does not support these browsers. Customers enabling support for legacy browsers do so at their own risk.

NOTE

If you're using TransactField App in a Bring Your Own Device (BYOD) deployment model, we recommend testing Temenos Journey Manager forms against your target devices.

### Microsoft Windows Phone

Microsoft Windows Phone 8 devices are not supported as these are end-of-life by Microsoft. Windows 10 Mobile phone devices are not supported as these have not been successful in the market and were scheduled by Microsoft to go end-of-life in 2019.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform support.

# Journey Manager Certification Matrix

Journey Manager (JM) The transaction engine for the platform. | All Personas

You must have some minimum system requirements to run Journey Manager software. Each product version may have slightly different system requirements, which we have summarized in the certification matrix below.

NOTE

Support for future releases is indicative of current plans and may be different at the time of release.

## Operating Systems

The table below lists the names and versions of Operating Systems supported for each Journey Manager release.

| Name | Version | 23.10 | 23.04 | 22.10 | 22.04 | 21.11 | 21.05 | 20.11 | 20.05 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Microsoft Windows Server | | | | | | | | | |
| | 2016 | | | | | | | | |
| | 2012 | | | | | | | | |
| | 2008 R2 64 bit Edition (Intel x86-64) | | | | | | | | |
| CentOS | | | | | | | | | |
| | Linux 6 Intel x86-64 (supported) | | | | | | | | |
| | Linux 7 Intel x86-64 (recommended) | | | | | | | | |
| | Linux 9 | | | | | | | | |
| Oracle | | | | | | | | | |
| | Linux 6 Unbreakable Enterprise Kernel) on Intel x86-64 (supported) | | | | | | | | |
| Red Hat | | | | | | | | | |

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Enterprise Linux Server | | | | | | | | | |
| | AP 6 Intel x86-64 (supported) | | | | | | | | |

## Databases

The table below lists the names and versions of Databases supported for each Journey Manager release.

| Name | Version | 23.10 | 23.04 | 22.10 | 22.04 | 21.11 | 21.05 | 20.11 | 20.05 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| AWS Aurora RDS | | | | | | | | | |
| | MySQL-Compatible Edition | | | | | | | | |
| Microsoft SQL Server | | | | | | | | | |
| | 2017 | | | | | | | | |
| | 2014 | | | | | | | | |
| | 2012 | | | | | | | | |
| Oracle MySQL | | | | | | | | | |
| | 5.7 (Recommended) | | | | | | | | |
| | 5.6 | | | | | | | | |
| | 5.5 | | | | | | | | |
| Oracle RDBMS | | | | | | | | | |
| | 19C | | | | | | | | |
| | 12C | | | | | | | | |
| | 11G | | | | | | | | |

## JDK

The table below lists the names and versions of JDKs supported for each Journey Manager release.

| Name | Version | 23.10 | 23.04 | 22.10 | 22.04 | 21.11 | 21.05 | 20.11 | 20.05 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Open JDK | | | | | | | | | |
| | 17.0.4.1 | | | | | | | | |

- 10.11
- 10.9
- 10.7

For more information, see the list of all 3rd party libraries used by Manager.

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform support.

# Transact Composer Requirements

Composer This topic is related to Transact Composer. | All Personas

Transact Composer is design tool for creating HTML applications which are hosted on Journey Manager . The Composer design tool is an Adobe Flash based application which can be used web browsers supporting Flash or as a desktop Adobe AIR application.

We support the following configurations:

## Cloud

Available as an Amazon[1] hosted service, currently provided in the AWS regions US West (Oregon), EU (Ireland) and Asia Pacific (Sydney).

## Adobe Flash

Requires browsers supporting Adobe Flash[2] Player, or the Adobe AIR runtime environment for desktops.

## Browser

- Google Chrome - current version
- Microsoft Edge – current version
- Microsoft Internet Explorer 11.0
- Mozilla Firefox - current version

---

[1]Amazon Web Services (AWS) is a comprehensive, evolving cloud computing platform provided by Amazon. It provides a mix of infrastructure as a service (IaaS), platform as a service (PaaS) and packaged software as a service (SaaS) offerings.

[2]Adobe Flash is a deprecated multimedia software platform used for production of animations, rich Internet applications, desktop applications, mobile applications, mobile games and embedded web browser video players. Flash displays text, vector graphics and raster graphics to provide animations, video games and applications. It allows streaming of audio and video, and can capture mouse, keyboard, microphone and camera input. Related development platform Adobe AIR continues to be supported.

NOTE

Composer is built with Flash, which is scheduled for deprecation in 2020. Once this happens, Composer will need to be run via Adobe Air.

## Recommended Hardware

- Operating System: Microsoft supported Windows 7 or Windows 10 versions, and Apple supported macOS versions
- RAM: 8GB
- CPU: Intel Core i5 or above
- Screen size: 1920 x 1080 or larger (recommended)
- Disk space: 10 GB freely available

For more information see Temenos Journey Manager platform support overview.

# Transact Integration Gateway System Requirements

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

The Transact Integration Gateway (TIG) is a light weight software appliance for deploying on premise to enable hybrid cloud Transact integration.

We support the following configurations:

## Certified Operating Systems

- Microsoft Windows Server 2012 or 2008 R2 64 bit Edition on Intel x86-64
- CentOS Linux 7 on Intel x86-64 (recommended)
- CentOS Linux 6 on Intel x86-64 (supported)
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server AP 6 on Intel x86-64

## Recommended Hardware

Transact Integration Gateway runs best on latest Intel x86-64 CPU architectures. We recommend server virtualization such as VMware ESX to provide enable better hardware utilization and improve operational support.

The Transact Integration Gateway has the following server requirements:

- Intel x86-64 Processors (2-4 Cores)
- 4-8 GB of RAM
- 100 GB of disk storage

For more information, see the Transact Integration Gateway Installation Guide documentation.

Next, learn about Temenos support.

# TransactField App System Requirements

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

TransactField App supports the following devices for existing customers:

- Apple iOS 7 or later devices
- Google Android version 4 or later devices
- Microsoft Windows 8.1devices via the Windows Store
- Microsoft Windows 7 or later PCs with Windows App

Next, learn about Temenos Journey Manager platform support.

# Legacy Browsers Requirements

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

The Temenos Journey Manager platform doesn't support the following legacy desktop browsers:

- Internet Explorer 8
- Internet Explorer 9
- Internet Explorer 10

Microsoft no longer supports these browsers and doesn't provide security patches or fixes for zero day exploits making them a significant security risk and liability to customers, form users, and Temenos. For more information, refer to the following documentation:

- https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/lifecycle#gp/Microsoft-Internet-Explorer
- https://www.microsoft.com/en-au/WindowsForBusiness/End-of-IE-support

In addition, these legacy browsers don't support modern security standards required for secure transactions to take place:

- TLS[1] 1.2 which is required for secure credit card transactions such as PCI policy[2].
- Content Security Policy[3] (CSP) to prevent JavaScript injection (XSS) attacks.

In Journey Manager 4.3.3 and higher, customers must explicitly configure their environments to support IE10, IE9 or IE8 because its default configuration doesn't support them.

> WARNING
>
> Customers enabling legacy browsers do so at their own risk.

Next, learn what Temenos supports.

---

[1]Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a protocol that provides privacy and data integrity between two communicating applications. It's the most widely deployed security protocol used today, and is used for Web browsers and other applications that require data to be securely exchanged over a network, such as file transfers, VPN connections, instant messaging and voice over IP.

[2]PCI policy is a type of security policy that covers how an organization addresses the 12 requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS). A PCI policy is required of all merchants and service providers who store, process or transmit credit card holder data.

[3]Content Security Policy (CSP) is a computer security standard introduced to prevent cross-site scripting (XSS), clickjacking and other code injection attacks resulting from execution of malicious content in the trusted web page context. CSP provides a standard method for website owners to declare approved origins of content that browsers should be allowed to load on that website—covered types are JavaScript, CSS, HTML frames, web workers, fonts, images, embeddable objects such as Java applets, ActiveX, audio and video files, and other HTML5 features. For more information, see https://www.w3.org/TR/CSP/

# Journey Platform Persona Overview

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

To identify, deliver, maintain and support an outstanding Journey platform customer experience requires the efforts of individuals with a broad range of strengths and skills. They can be associated with specific Temenos Journey Manager platform actions and responsibilities to define specific personas. Personas have roles associated with them, which provide a guideline and a reference for users performing specific tasks and actions. For example, a Form Builder is a persona that creates forms in Journey Maestro.

We have two special personas, Executive and Starter, that define the audience that need to understand and start using our Temenos Journey Manager platform quickly. Both personas have well defined user paths, the Executive path and Starter path. We recommend reading at least one of them before you proceed with other user paths.

Personas can be grouped by teams. We define two main teams within the Temenos Journey Manager platform:

- Implementation team
- Business as Usual (BAU) team

## Implementation Team

The Implementation team develops new applications, such as forms, services, and delivery channels. The team typically consists of Implementation Managers, Form Builders, Template Designers, Platform Developers, Solution Architects, and Testers. Often there are multiple teams working concurrently to introduce new transactions to the environment. These teams are structured as a project team and depend on your organization's chosen delivery style. The Implementation team will have access to develop forms within the authoring tools and deploy them to Manager development and test environments. They will have access to implement new services that correspond and compliment the forms in development, or that are required to support forms already in production.

The Implementation team consists of the following personas, including their user paths:

- Form Builder | Form Builder user path
- Platform Developer | Platform Developer user path
- Solution Architect
- Maestro Template Designer
- Application Tester
- Implementation / Project Manager
- Analytics User

## Business as Usual (BAU) Team

The BAU team maintains and monitors the platform, performs user management, and so on. It is imperative that customers assign the BAU[1], or Operations, team to ensure the daily on-going operation of the forms.

> NOTE
>
> We can provide documentation on recommended operational support practices to the BAU team.

The following activities should be included in BAU monitoring:

- Developing processes to manage deployments.
- Creating and enforcing user management processes.
- Building error alerts.
- Regular Manager transaction monitoring.
- Supporting communication lines.
- Reviewing Manager analytics screens.
- Monitoring server health for on premise installations.
- Deploying updates and applications to the production environment.

The BAU team will:

- Have access to Manager for monitoring, supporting and checking alerts.
- Contain members who can review development works, before these developments are moved from the development phase, thus providing a level of security for the production systems from poorly written code.

---

[1] usiness As Usual (BAU) is the view of an organisation, business unit, work team or team member completing their everyday work in the normal way.

- Test all new developments once they are deemed to be production grade developments.
- This team will also regression test any production changes to ensure ongoing integrity of the system.
- Be responsible for user accounts and user management on the Testing, Staging and Production environments and also for provisioning new development environments when requested.
- Maintain the UX[1] component of all developments, ensuring compliance to company standards.
- Have attended our training courses and completed the Operational Support Training module.

The BAU team consists of the following personas:

- Champion / System Owner
- System Administrator
- System Manager / DevOps
- Support Team

[1] User experience (UX) design is the process of creating products that provide meaningful and relevant experiences to users. This involves the design of the entire process of acquiring and integrating the product, including aspects of branding, design, usability, and function.

# Maestro Form Builder

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder

A Form Builder is responsible for designing and testing the data capture and display portion of the solution built with Journey Maestro.

This may include creating forms using existing components and functionality. They may also create simple business scripts and shared components. At a more advanced level, Form Builders may also write simple to complex business and display logic using JavaScript, jQuery, and AngularJS tags. In addition, they will use the Transact Fluent SDK and an IDE to create native components. They will also work closely with the Journey Platform Developer for technical integration points and the Template Designer for styling.

To see a list of Temenos Journey Manager platform features specific to the Form Builder persona, see the Form Builder user path.

Example tasks of a Form Builder include:

- Convert requirement documents into Maestro form and component designs.
- Develop and maintain shared components, including global shared binding and data schema.
- Build forms and import them into Manager in non-production environments.
- Implement visibility and validation logic.
- Use relevant APIs[1] for forms and services.
- Prepare deployment assets.
- Test functionality to ensure the application meets the requirement specification.

## Prerequisite Skill set of a Form Builder

- 1-2 years background in web page design (3-4 years preferred).
- An understanding of HTML5 tags and HTML5 structure.
- Ability to add functionality with JavaScript and JQuery.
- Ability to modify the view with AngularJS expressions.
- Ability to manage and describe data structure, such as JSON and XML.

[1] Application Programming Interface.

- Work with Source Code Control Systems[1] and understand version control.
- Debug using browser development tools.
- Work with an IDE and Transact Fluent SDK to build native components and front-end using another development environment, such as ReactJS[2].
- Effective communication skills: ability to describe and understand integration points.

## Objectives and Goals of a Form Builder

- Create Journey applications that follow the requirement specification documentation.
- Follow best practices when creating new application solutions.
- Design efficient, reusable components to share with other Journey applications.
- Become Temenos Journey certified.

Next, learn about the Implementation/Project Manager />persona.

[1]Source Code Control System (SCCS) is a version control system designed to track changes in source code and other text files during the development of a piece of software. This allows the user to retrieve any of the previous versions of the original source code and the changes which are stored.
[2]ReactJS is a JavaScript library for building user interfaces.

# Journey Solution Architect

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Solution Architect

A Journey Solution Architect is responsible for the overall design of the application built on the Temenos Journey Manager. They work with the client to gather business requirements and translate these into the architecture for the solution: describing it through architecture and design artifacts. They also work as a single point of contact for Form Builders and Platform Developers on integration points and defining expected functionality. They are the technical lead for planning, analysis, development, testing and transitioning to from development to live customer solutions.

It is recommended that the Solution Architect accomplishes the above tasks following Agile[1] methodology; therefore, an understanding of Agile development methodology is usually required.

### Example tasks of a Journey Solution Architect include:

- Complete code review for new developments.
- Communicate best practices and new Temenos Journey Manager platform features to relevant stakeholders at all levels of the business.
- Formulate solutions to complex business problems.
- Document solution designs for later reference.
- Manage all aspects – planning, development, implementation, archiving, and hand-off – of the development cycle.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a Solution Architect

- Effective communication and interpersonal skills.
- 5+ years commercial software delivery experience in a vendor (consultancy or development).
- 2+ years as a web application developer with exposure to the different layers of the stack aside from their area of expertise.

---

[1] Agile software development is an approach to software development under which requirements and solutions evolve through the collaborative effort of self-organizing and cross-functional teams and their customer/end user.

- Experience with the following (or equivalent substitute):
  - Java/Groovy[1].
  - Principals of Object-Oriented Programming.
  - JavaScript.
  - HTML, CSS.
- Experience with the following (or equivalent substitute):
  - Manipulate data formats, such as XSD[2], XML[3], JSON[4], using tools and code.
  - WebService/Restful Endpoints.
  - JavaScript Frameworks.
  - Databases, for example, SQLServer, Oracle or MySQL.
  - Application deployment to Web Servers, App Servers, Databases, and various Operating Systems.

## Objectives and Goals of a Solution Architect

- Define and follow best practices for building a Temenos Journey Manager platform application.
- Lead a project from conception to completion.
- Discover integration points between application.
- Be known as an expert on the Temenos Journey Manager platform.
- Liaison/buffer between the Temenos team and the client.
- Guide teams and follow governance practices for developing on the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

Next, learn about the Support persona.

---

[1]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.
[2]XSD (XML Schema Definition) is a World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) recommendation that specifies how to formally describe the elements in an Extensible Markup Language (XML) document.
[3]XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language that defines a set of rules for encoding documents in a format that is both human-readable and machine-readable.
[4]JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.

# Journey Platform Developer

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer

A Journey Platform Developer is responsible for designing and testing the back-end portion of an application built on the Temenos Journey Manager. This includes setting form and organizational properties, creating services that use the Transact Fluent API, as well as third-party APIs to manage, secure, and manipulate data and digital assets. They are also responsible for creating workflows based on business logic, designing and implementing unit and integration tests, documenting functionality and bundling applications for the various Journey Manager instances (Dev, UAT, etc.). In addition, they may be responsible for implementing CSS, CSS-Less, ReactJS or AngularJS design and functionality for form portals.

It is recommended that the developer accomplishes the above tasks following Agile[1] methodology; therefore, an understanding of Agile development methodology is usually required.

To see a list of Temenos Journey Manager platform features specific to the Platform Developer persona, see the Platform Developer user path.

### Example tasks of a Platform Developer include:

- Develop and maintain pages to be used as Portal/Dashboard UI screens.
- Develop and maintain Manager service definitions and Transact functions (Groovy[2] scripts).
- Implement business logic using collaboration jobs.
- Version and deploy artifacts using the portal and dashboard in DEV and TEST environments.
- Develop, package and deploy applications using Journey SDK.

---

[1]Agile software development is an approach to software development under which requirements and solutions evolve through the collaborative effort of self-organizing and cross-functional teams and their customer/end user.

[2]Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a Platform Developer

- Experience with Object Oriented Analysis, Development and Design using Java and Groovy.
- Experience with IDEs[1], such as Eclipse or IntelliJ, and Journey SDK to build projects using Ant and Maven.
- Understand the principal of continuous integration development.
- Ability to unit test and perform integration testing using Java objects and framework.
- Ability to create services for the Java platform.
- Manipulate data formats such as XML[2] and JSON[3].
- Integrate IDEs with source code control tools[4].
- Convert business logic to electronic workflows.
- Develop following the agile delivery methodology.
- Debug and optimize code.
- Create custom portals using a variety of programming languages and frameworks (Form Spaces).
- Create secure communication channels using credentials, certificates, and keystores.
- Intermediate to advanced knowledge of Groovy, Java, and JavaScript.
- Familiar with SOAP and REST APIs integration.

## Objectives and Goals of a Platform Developer

- Design back-end solution of a Journey application.
- Create and maintain Manager service definitions (Groovy scripts).
- Solve technical problems.

---

[1]Integrated Development Environment.
[2]XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language that defines a set of rules for encoding documents in a format that is both human-readable and machine-readable.
[3]JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.
[4]Source Code Control System (SCCS) is a version control system designed to track changes in source code and other text files during the development of a piece of software. This allows the user to retrieve any of the previous versions of the original source code and the changes which are stored.

- Optimize code.
- Collaborate with other team members.
- Work with the latest technology.
- Become Temenos Journey certified.

Next, learn about the Solution Architect persona.

# Maestro Template Designer

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Template Designer

A Journey Template Designer is responsible for creating and maintaining templates in Journey Maestro. A template is the foundation of a form. It defines the form look-and-feel as well as components, which is based on requirements provided by a client. The template also dictates what elements can be accessed and modified by a Form Builder.

The Template Designer creates an initial template based on discussions with the client's UX[1] design team. The Template Designer uses various libraries and IDE[2] for building and modifying the templates. The Maestro template designer interface is the IDE, which allows the Template Designer work with assets, resources and libraries.

A Template Designer does not focus on the form's content - this is the role of a Form Builder- nor are they concerned with the user's journey. However, some specific content may be added to a template. Such content is considered template content and is used across most, if not all, forms based on the template. Template content may include the content within modal pages or dialogs, such as the submission confirmation modal page.

Example tasks of a Template Designer include:

- Creating a custom template, including the placeholder template
- Managing style libraries within the Maestro project and organization
- Creating component styles for use in Maestro applications
- Creating brands that can be applied in the Maestro form

[1]User experience (UX) design is the process of creating products that provide meaningful and relevant experiences to users. This involves the design of the entire process of acquiring and integrating the product, including aspects of branding, design, usability, and function.
[2]Integrated Development Environment.

## Prerequisite Skill set of a Template Designer

- Ability to develop and implement CSS3[1] and CSS-Less[2] libraries.
- 3 years+ background in web page design.
- 3+ years' experience as a Front-End Developer.
- Understanding of HTML5[3].
- Experience working with JavaScript frameworks.
- Experience with source code control management[4].
- 1-3 years Visual design, for example, wireframes, mock-ups, graphic design.
- Experience working with Corporate Style guides.
- Knowledge of best practices for accessibility.

## Objectives and Goals of a Template Designer

- Review and analysis design specifications for use in the Maestro template.
- Ensure best practices are followed when new styles and templates are created.
- Ensure accessibility requirements are met.

Next, learn about the Application Tester persona.

---

[1]CSS3 is the latest evolution of the Cascading Style Sheets language and aims at extending CSS2.1. It brings a lot of long-awaited novelties, like rounded corners, shadows, gradients, transitions or animations, as well as new layouts like multi-columns, flexible box or grid layouts.

[2]Less is a dynamic preprocessor style sheet language that can be compiled into Cascading Style Sheets and run on the client side or server side.

[3]Maestro forms are fundamentally built using HTML 5. The structure of the form and the text displayed in the form are all configured and established using HTML5. HTML is the standard markup language for creating Web pages and stands for Hypertext Markup Language. HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.

[4]Source Code Control System (SCCS) is a version control system designed to track changes in source code and other text files during the development of a piece of software. This allows the user to retrieve any of the previous versions of the original source code and the changes which are stored.

# Journey Application Tester

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Application Tester

A Journey Application Tester is responsible for designing testing scenarios for usability, application functionality, integration, and bug discovery. They conduct the testing, analyse the results and provide feedback to the development team. The Application Tester is also responsible for creating the testing scripts – usability storyboards, test cases, and automation scripts. For Temenos clients, the persona may be limited to user-acceptance testing, which is less technical but requires a deep understanding of the business rules associated with the application as well as an understanding of the various interfaces provided.

### Example tasks of a JourneyApplication Tester include:

- Create test cases based upon documented requirements.
- Write test reports.
- Compare the form to the specification documentation.
- Complete breakage testing - try to break the form, get creative with what you check, etc.
- Check the visual aspects of the form - spacing, spelling, grammar, layout, etc.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey Application Tester

- Ability to review and understand requirement specifications.
- Ability to use the Manager dashboard interface.
- Detail oriented.
- Familiarity with XML[1] and JSON[2] data structure.
- Experience with Java-based software testing tools, such as Selenium Suite, SahiPro, etc.

---

[1]XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language that defines a set of rules for encoding documents in a format that is both human-readable and machine-readable.
[2]JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.

- Familiarity with version control systems, such as Git, SVN[1], etc.
- Experience with Issue & Project Tracking Software, such as Jira.

## Objectives and Goals of a Journey Application Tester

- Assess the quality of the application and provide feedback to the stakeholders.
- Provide a level of confidence to management and the developers that the application will meet expectations.
- Ensure the quality of development prior to being released to User Acceptance Testing[2] by running test cases.
- Re-test cases during System Testing and UAT processes.

Next, learn about the Analytics persona.

[1]Subversion (SVN) is a software versioning and revision control system.
[2]User acceptance testing (UAT) is the last phase of the software testing process. During UAT, actual software users test the software to make sure it can handle required tasks in real-world scenarios, according to specifications.

# Journey Analytics User

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Analytics User

A Journey Analytics persona is responsible for ensuring that the Temenos Journey Manager application is performing to an agreed upon set of Key Performance Indicators[1] and to identify current trends and design features that can be used to optimize the application using Journey Analytics and Journey Manager dashboard.

## Prerequisite Skillset of Journey Analytics

- Understand business needs and objectives.
- Define application-level metrics.
- Extract reports from Journey Analytics and Manager.
- Build systems to transform raw data into actionable business insights.
- Ability to interpret data and improve application performance.
- Keep abreast of industry trends.
- Design and interpret results of A/B testing.

## Objectives and Goals of Journey Analytics

- Identify areas of application optimization based on collected data.
- Confirm improvements in application based on metrics.

Next, learn about the Champion/System Owner persona.

[1]Key Performance Indicator (KPI) is a measurable value that demonstrates how effectively a company is achieving key business objectives. Organizations use KPIs to evaluate their success at reaching targets.

# Journey Implementation/Project Manager

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Implementation / Project Manager

A Journey Implementation/Project Manager is responsible for the successful implementation of an Temenos Journey Manager custom application. They manage the budget, resources, relationships and set up clients for long-term success. In addition to working with the client, they work closely with solution architects and coordinate the IT and infrastructure teams, brand designers, integration specialists, and developers to ensure that the defined business requirements match the functionality of the application.

### Example tasks of a Journey Implementation/Project Manager include:

- Drive the development work ensuring all resources are available, communication lines are clear, and timeframes are communicated and agreed upon.
- Communicate with all stakeholders at various levels of the organization.
- Manage risks and issues of the project, including issues associated with loading a new transaction into the system.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey Implementation/Project Manager

- Experience in a customer-facing technical project management persona with proven ability to deliver on time and on budget.
- Understanding of software development methodologies, including Agile software development[1].
- Bank experience either internally or as a vendor.
- Experience with project management methodologies and tools.
- Ability to work through problems independently and engage the team as needed.
- Effective communication and documentation skills.
- PMI and CSM certifications desirable.

---

[1]Agile software development is an approach to software development under which requirements and solutions evolve through the collaborative effort of self-organizing and cross-functional teams and their customer/end user.

## Objectives and Goals of a Journey Implementation/Project Manager

- Deliver on specific business value expected.
- Create professional services SOWs[1].
- Advise client on the best implementation methodology and adjust to deliver the best customer outcome. Contribute domain expertise to business discussions.
- Define new processes to increase team efficiency and improve the delivery cycle.
- Ensure the project keeps to time and budget constraints.
- Ensure Quality Assurance checks are complete.
- Ensure processes are followed and documentation is maintained.

Next, learn about the Platform Developer persona.

[1]A statement of work (SoW) is a document routinely employed in the field of project management. It defines project-specific activities, deliverables and timelines for a vendor providing services to the client.

# Journey Champion/System Owner

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Champion / System Owner

A Journey Champion/System Owner is a client resource that recognizes the value of the Temenos Journey Manager and already has a relationship with our sales team. They understand the business requirements and can, at a high-level, map the requirements to capabilities of the Temenos Journey Manager platform. This may be a technical or non-technical resource. Their job is to support the Temenos team in the presales phase as well as other divisions and decision makers.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey Champion/System Owner

- Ability to describe use-cases for the Temenos Journey Manager platform.
- Ability to describe – at a high-level - the value proposition of the Temenos Journey Manager platform.
- Able to describe – at a high-level - the technologies used in the Temenos Journey Manager platform.
- Accesses to decision makers.
- Effective communication or a thought leader for technology in the company.

## Objectives and Goals of a Journey Champion/System Owner

- Successful implementation of a Journey solution.
- Introduce the benefits of the platform to other members of the company.

Next, learn about the Form Builder persona.

# Journey System Administrator

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | System Administrator

A Journey System Administrator is responsible for the deployment of applications from Staging to Production and will work closely with the Journey System Manager/DevOps persona.

### Example tasks of a Journey System Administrator include:

- Deploy new Journey applications.
- Set up and monitor daily alerts on the Staging and Production environments.
- Notify the business and other stakeholders of any issues that will affect regular operations such as planned and unplanned outages.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a Journey System Administrator

- Journey Manager skills.
- Knowledge of Journey authoring tools.
- Excellent problem-solving skills.
- Good verbal and written communication skills.
- Outstanding customer service skills.
- Knowledge of cloud-based applications.

## Objectives and Goals of a Journey System Administrator

- Ensure that the Temenos Journey Manager platform and their applications are performing within acceptable parameters.
- Ensure that the correct resources, based on their roles and the environment (Dev, UAT, etc.), have access to the system.
- Work with the Journey System Manager/DevOps persona.

Next, learn about the System Manager/DevOps persona.

# Journey System Manager/DevOps

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | System Manager / DevOps

A Journey System Manager/DevOps is responsible for the management and maintenance of various Journey Manager (Dev, UAT, etc.) servers. They will provision users, deploy applications, receive notification of issues, and provide internal support as well as liaison with Temenos support should any issues arise. They are also responsible for training on the day-to-day usage of the platform (i.e. assisting with testing, reports, and reading logs). The role is technical in nature, but does not involve development; however, they will need to have a strong understanding of the Temenos Journey Manager and web applications in general.

### Example tasks of a Journey System Manager/DevOps include:

- Responsible for governance and processes for the system.
- Liaise with the business stakeholder on new developments.
- Manager vendors.
- Approve requests for Temenos Assist support time to be used.

## Prerequisite Skillset of a System Manager/DevOps

- Understand development life cycle and associated various environments (Dev, UAT Staging, and Production)
- Knowledge of the Temenos Journey Manager platform stack and interfaces.
- Understanding of the roles and permissions when providing access to the various environments and product interfaces.
- Able to navigate the Manager dashboard and set properties.

## Objectives and Goals of a System Manager/DevOps

- Become the single point of contact for questions regarding the custom application and the Temenos Journey Manager platform.
- Cultivate a relationship with Temenos.
- Ensure the Operations team are following agreed monitoring and support processes.

Next, learn about the Template Designer persona.

# Journey Support Team

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Support

A Journey Support Team is a technical persona focused on the maintenance of the Temenos Journey Manager. This includes monitoring system health, receiving and responding to alerts, troubleshooting by reading logs and answering technical questions about the platform, and the application(s) built on the platform. In addition to answering questions, the Support Team will need to diagnose hardware and software faults and solve technical and application problems, either over the phone or in person. They will also need to liaison with other experts on the platform or application to resolve or flag issues. The Support Team personamay also include producing procedural documentation and relevant reports.

### Example tasks of a Journey Support Team include:

- Attend to any support issues arising from regular monitoring or as reported by the business.
- Ensure implementation teams are kept up to date on any new releases or patches that need to be applied to the test and development environments.
- Provide support to implementation teams when required.

## Prerequisite Skillset of the Support Team

- The ability to think logically and possess a good memory of how the platform and application work.
- Effective listening and questioning skills combined with the ability to interact confidently with clients to establish what the problem is and explain or document the solution.
- The ability to work well in a team.
- Strong problem-solving skills and customer/client focus.
- Depending on the technical aspect of their persona - will they be supporting the platform and business users of the application or only the business users - a background in computer science, information technology, or experience working with software and hardware, web-based applications.

## Objectives and Goals of a Support Team

- Assist users with Level 1and Level 2 tier support issues.
- Resolve support issues as per any support agreement.

Next, learn about the System Administrator persona.

# Instructor-Led Training and eLearning overview

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to all versions.

Temenos offers instructor-led training and eLearning courses to help further your knowledge of the Temenos Journey Manager.

# Instructor-Led Training ILT

Let our expert instructors teach you the skills you need to fully benefit from your investment. Training can be offered face-to-face or virtually.

To book a course contact Temenos Training or contact your Account Manager.

# eLearning

Learn at your own pace at the new consolidated Journey Platform resources website. There are a number of online courses and videos available to view. The eLearning courses contain topics across the Temenos Journey Manager, each with a number of modules. There are also exercises throughout the courses that will allow you to practice your skills.

We recommend that you view each course in order, following the listed order of the modules. After a few modules you will be given an exercise which will allow you to practice what you have learned.

If you do not have an account please contact the Journey Knowledge Team.

**Available eLearning Courses**

- NEW Upgrading to Maestro v17.10
- NEW Upgrading to Maestro v18.05
- NEW Upgrading to Journey Analytics (formerly Insights) v18.05
- Maestro v5.1
- Introduction to Maestro Form Builder 1
- Introduction to Maestro Form Builder 2
- Maestro Form Builder Scripting
- Journey Manager v5.1
- Getting Started with Journey Manager
- Configure a Maestro Form in Journey Manager
- Submission ManagementForm Data Configuration
- Collaboration Jobs
- Journey Analytics (formerly Insights)
- Composer

# eLearning Exercises

Exercises for eLearning courses can be found here.

**Version 5.1**

- Maestro v5.1 Exercises
- Journey Manager v5.1 Exercises

**Version 17.10**

- Maestro v17.10 Exercises

# Help

For help view the Learning Center Help Guide.

If you have any questions, issues or feedback please feel free to contact the Journey Knowledge Team.

# Learning Center Help Guide

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

The Temenos Learning Center has been migrated to our new consolidated Journey Platform resources website. This new consolidated website contains all our existing online training videos on products within the Temenos Journey Manager.

## New consolidated Journey Platform resources website

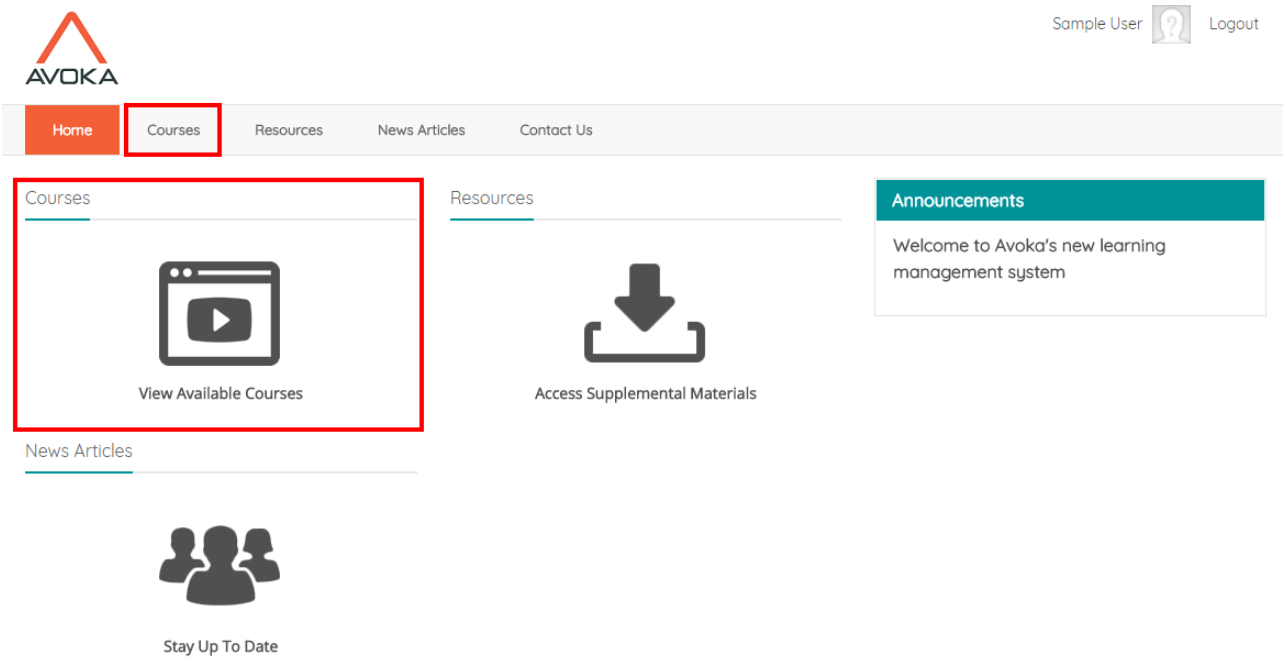
To request access to all the courses in the new consolidated Journey Platform resources website send your request to the Journey Knowledge Team. Once your access has been granted you will be able to access all the online learning materials. A video library and extensive product documentation with product overviews are also available from the Journey Platform resources website for self paced exploration.

## Access the online courses at the new website - journey.temenos.com

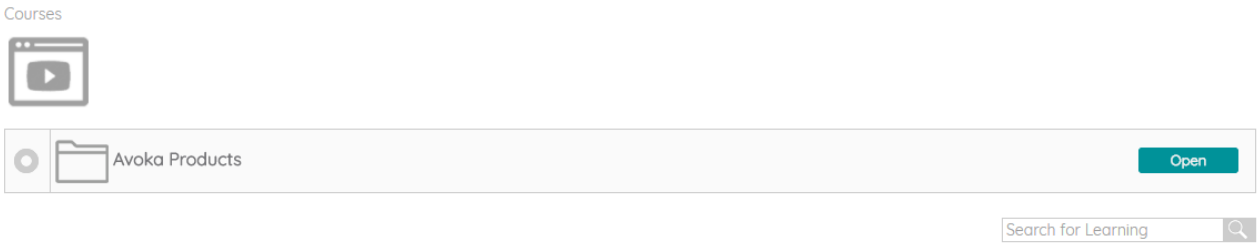
1. Simply visit the new consolidated Journey Platform resources website, or Sign In if you already have your user credentials.
2. Go to **Learn** on the main menu at the top of the page to view all courses.
3. If you don't see the **Learn** menu, send a request for access via the website, or email the Journey Knowledge Team.
4. Instructions on how to take a course can be found in the Learn article.

## Access the online courses at the original location - learning.avoka.com

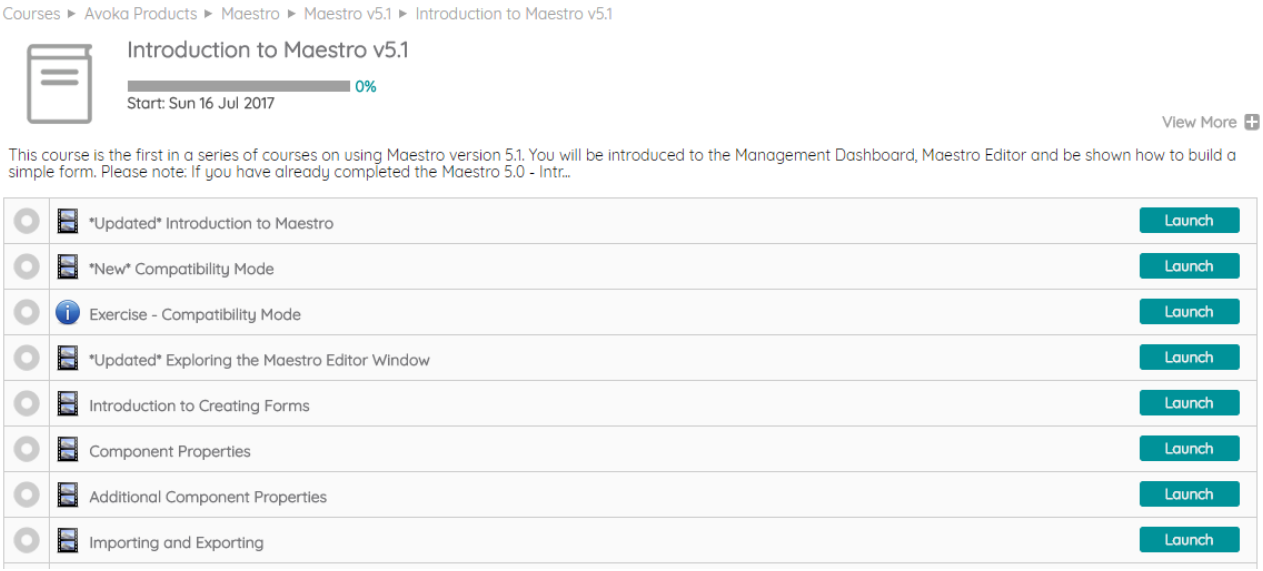
1. Login to learning.avoka.com.
2. Select the Courses menu or the Courses tile on the home page.



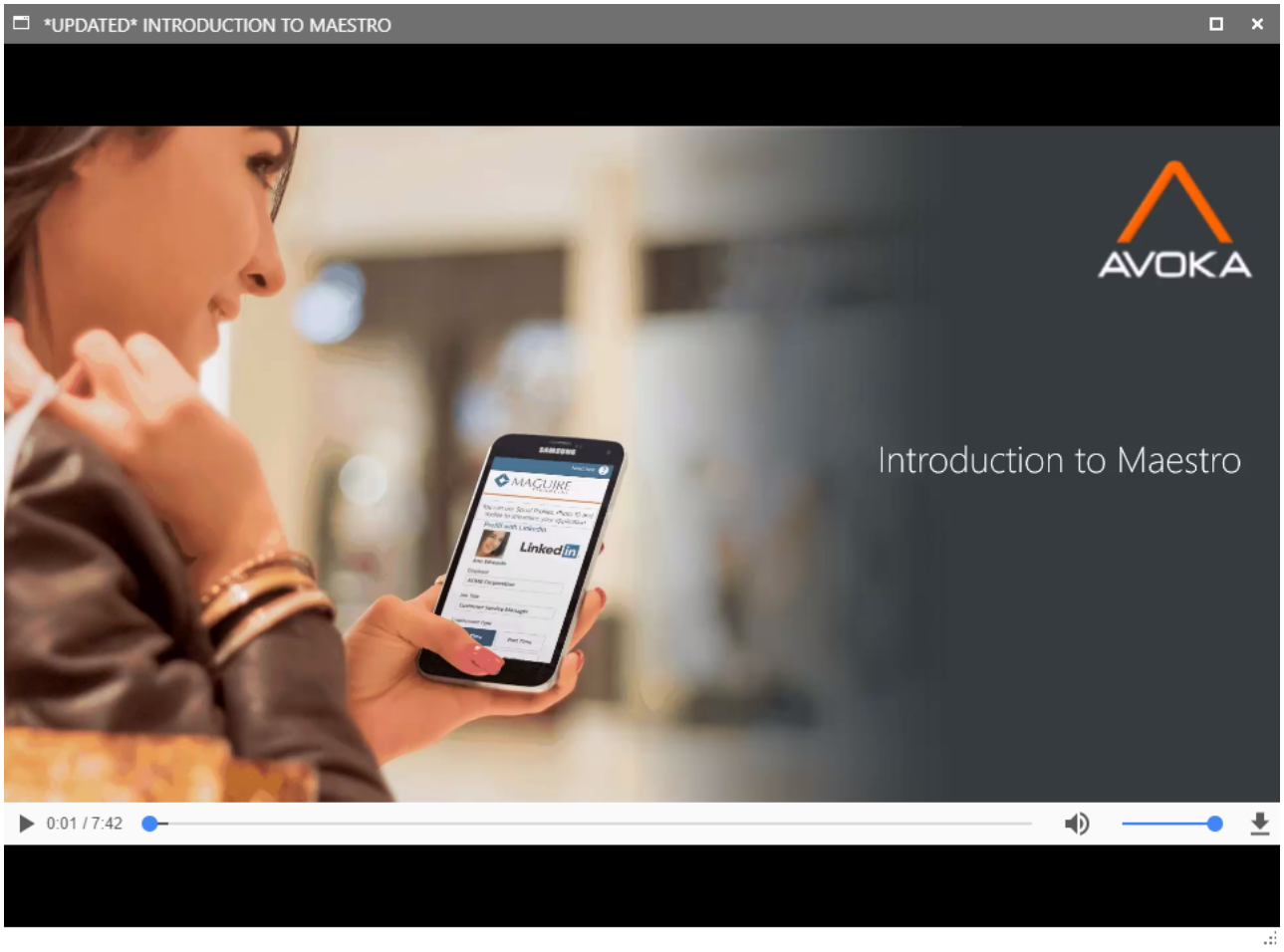

3. Click Open to view additional topics and/or courses.




4. Continue to Open the topics and/or courses, until you are viewing a course list.
5. Once you are inside the course, you will see a list of videos available to view.

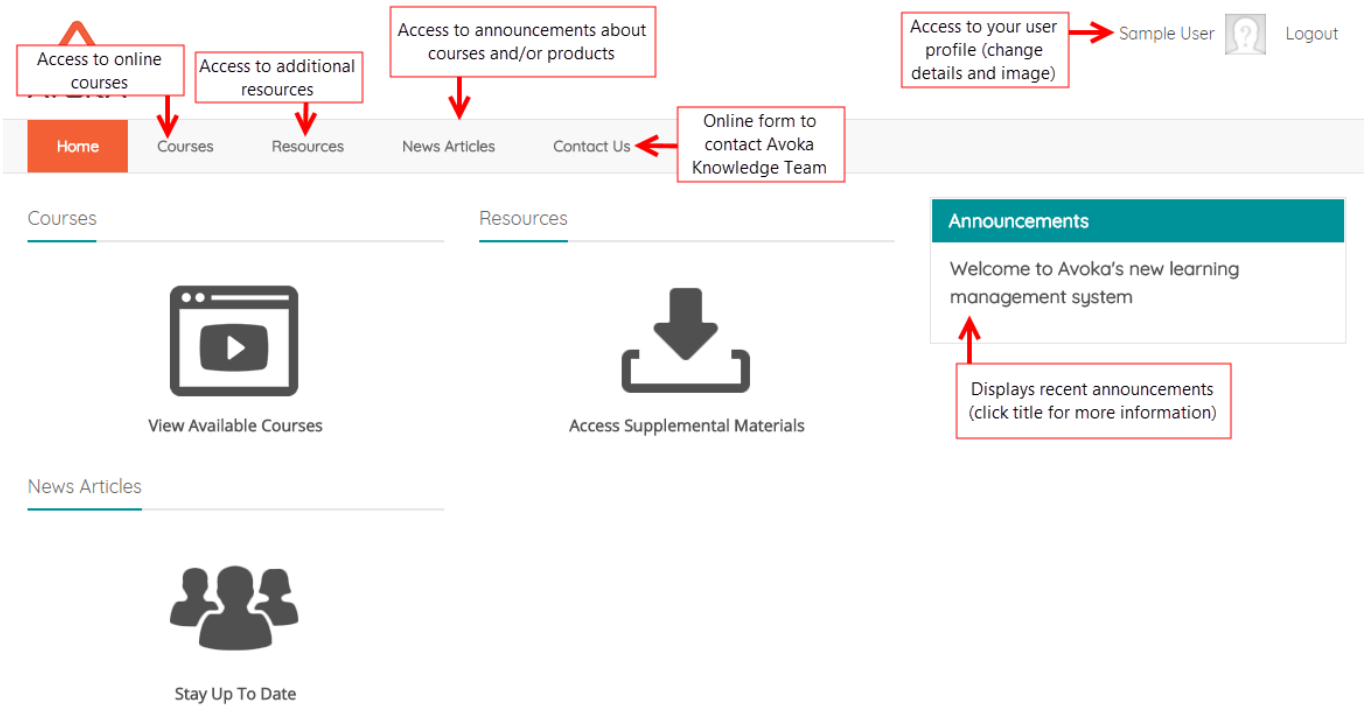



6. Click Launch to view the video. This will open a pop up window which will automatically begin to play the online training video.



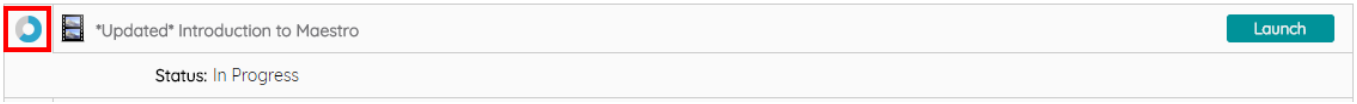
# Navigate through the Temenos Learning Center

### Home page and menu bar



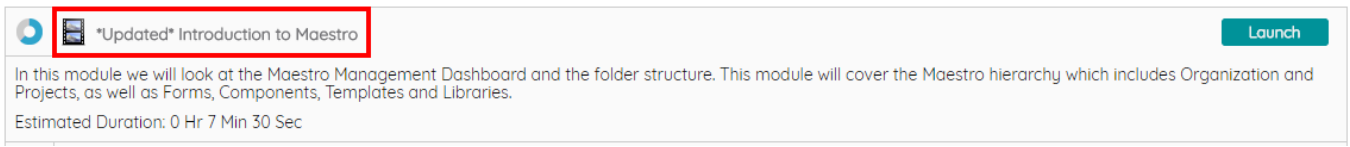

### Status icon

Select the status icon to display the correct status of the course and/or online video.



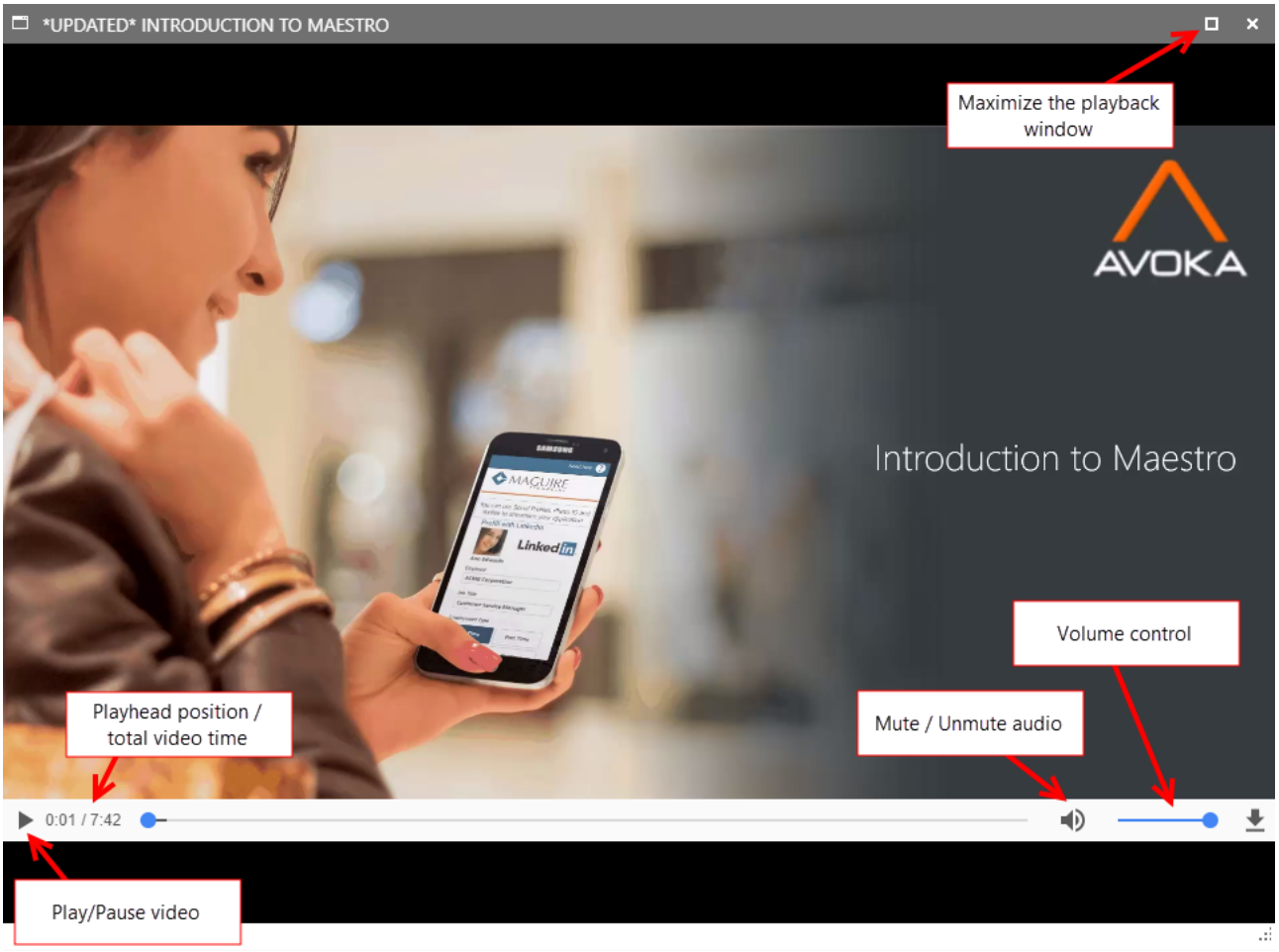

### Course name

Select the course name or video name to display a description.




### Launch video

Select Launch to open a pop up window which will automatically begin to play the online training video.


*UPDATED* INTRODUCTION TO MAESTRO
Maximize the playback window
AVOKA
Introduction to Maestro
Volume control
Playhead position / total video time
Mute / Unmute audio
0:01 / 7:42
Play/Pause video

# eLearning Exercises for Maestro v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

View the eLearning courses available from **Learn** on the main menu of the new consolidated Journey Platform resources website.

We recommend that you view each course in order, following the listed order of the modules. After a few modules you will be given an exercise which will allow you to practice what you have learned. We strongly recommend you use these exercises to complete your training.

## Pre- requisite

- First you will need to import the exercise files used for the Maestro 17.10 training exercises. Refer to Setup the Exercise Files.

## eLearning Exercises for Maestro v17.10

Use the links below to jump directly to each exercise. Please follow the instructions for each exercise to identify which resources and assets you'll be using.

Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10:

- Setup the Exercise Files

**Whats new?**

Maestro ID Management:

- Exercise - ID Management
- Exercise - Duplicate IDs

Impact Analysis:

- Exercise - Impact Analysis

Entities:

- Exercise - Create an Entity (ID field)
- Exercise - Create an Entity (Entity panel)
- Exercise - Delete an Entity
- Exercise - Assign an Entity to multiple items

Semantic Versioning:

- Exercise - Semantic Versioning

Compatibility Mode:

- Exercise - Upgrade a project

## Help

For help using the Learning Center refer to the Learning Center Help Guide.

If you have any questions, issues or feedback please feel free to contact the Journey Knowledge Team.

# Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro v17.10 Exercise Files

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

Follow the steps below to import the Maestro Project Exercise files.

> Use the Import Project button to import Version 17.10 Projects or later.
> For older projects exported from a 5.1x environment use the Import Legacy Project button.

## Step 1: Download the Exercise Project

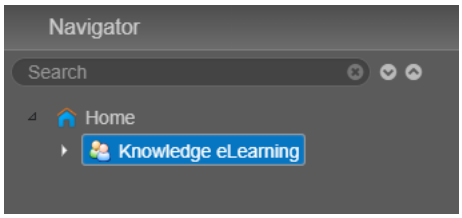
If you haven't done so already, download the Maestro Exercise Project.

1. For Version 17.10 projects or later, click Maestro_Project_Upgrade_17.10_20180424 to download the exercise project (zipped folder).
2. For older projects exported from a 5.1x environment, click Maestro_Project_Legacy51_20180424 to download the exercise project (zipped folder).
3. Leave this file in the Downloads folder or move it to a different location. Just remember, you'll need to navigate to this file in the next step to import it into Maestro.

## Step 2: Navigate to the Maestro Organization

Login to Maestro and navigate to the Organization.

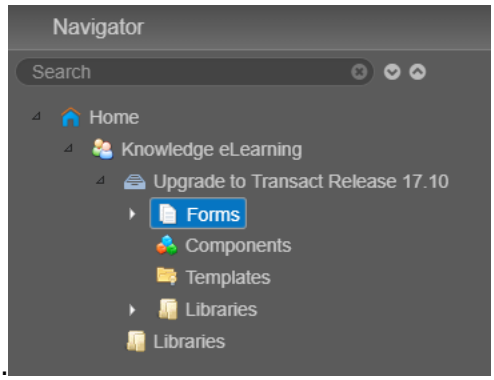
1. Display the Maestro web page.
2. Login using your credentials.
3. Expand Home (in Navigator panel).
4. Select your Organization.



## Step 3: Import Project

Import the exercise project.

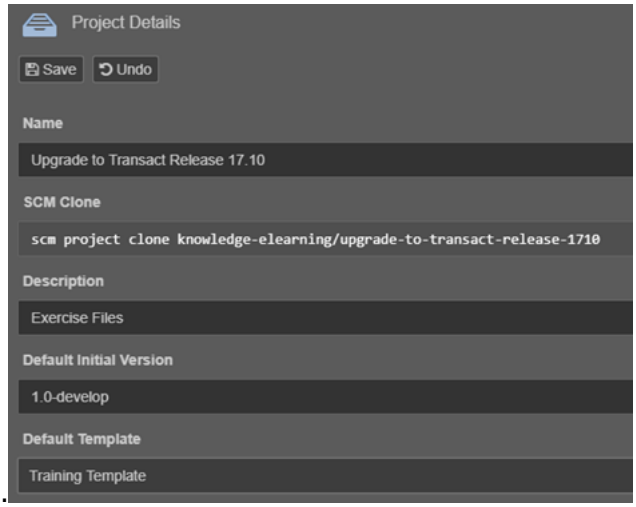
1. Click the Import Project button (17.10 or later) or Import Legacy Project button (5.1x).
2. Enter Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10 for the project name.
3. Click Import.
4. Navigate to where the downloaded Maestro Project (zipped folder) is saved.
5. Select the project and click Open




## Step 4: Set the Default Initial Version and Default Template

1. Important: make sure the Project name is selected (i.e. Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10).
2. Click the Project Details tab (top right).
3. Enter 10-develop as the Default Initial Version.
4. Select Training Template for the Default Template.

5. Click Save to finish




Once you've setup the project, you can access all the form, template and component assets.

# Assign an Entity to Multiple Items Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

You can assign an Entity to multiple items at once using the Structure panel.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Add a new Section and Components

1. Display Page Two of the 'Exercise – Entities' form
2. Add a new section to the form and call it HomeAddress.
3. Add the following 'text field' components to 'HomeAddress':
    - StreetNumber
    - StreetName
    - Suburb
    - PostCode
    - Country
4. From the Entities panel, confirm the new components are 'Not Assigned' to any Entities

## Step 2: Assign an Entity to multiple items

1. To relate an Entity to multiple components, you need to assign the Entity to the section first, i.e. where all the components are located.
2. Make sure the 'Home Address' section is selected.
3. Use the ID property field to assign the location Entity to the Section.
4. Display the Structure panel > right-click the homeAddress section and choose Apply Entity Path to Children.
5. From the 'Entities' panel, confirm all components are now related to the 'location' Entity
6. Select each component in the form and confirm the IDs have all been assigned to the location Entity.
7. Click Save, then close the form (Browser Tab).

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Create an Entity in the ID Field Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will demonstrate how to create an entity directly in the ID field.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Create a Form

1. Create a new form and enter the follow details:
   - Form Name: Exercise - Entities
   - Description: This form is to demonstrate how to work with entities
   - Template: Training Template
2. Click Create.

## Step 2: Create an Entity

1. Add a new 'Text Field' into 'About You'
2. To create a new Entity, enter 'applicant' followed by an underscore, '_'

   > NOTE
   >
   > After the underscore (_) an inline warning displays 'An Entity called applicant will be created'

3. Enter 'FirstName' as the ID (then TAB or click away)

   > NOTE
   >
   > The Label only displays 'First Name'

4. Display the 'Entities' panel and confirm the 'applicant' Entity has one related component (i.e. 'FirstName')
5. Click Save.

## Step 3: Assign an Entity

1. Add a new ‘Text Field’ component below ‘First Name’
2. Enter the first few letters of ‘applicant’ in the ID property field, i.e. ‘app’

   > NOTE
   >
   > Any matching Entities will display in dropdown

3. Select the ‘applicant’ Entity
4. Enter ‘LastName’ (after underscore) for the ID

   > NOTE
   >
   > Note: the label only displays ‘Last Name’

5. Display the Entities panel and confirm the applicant Entity now has two related components.

## Step 4: Create a nested Entity

1. Add another new ‘Text Field’ below ‘Last Name’
2. Enter ‘app’ in the ID property field and select the ‘applicant’ Entity
3. Enter ‘work_’ as the new nested Entity, e.g. ‘applicant_work_’

   > NOTE
   >
   > After the second underscore (_) an inline warning displays ‘An Entity called work will be created’

4. Enter ‘Email’ for the ID, e.g. ‘applicant_work_Email’
5. Press Tab or click away

   > NOTE
   >
   > Label only displays ‘Email’

6. Display the Entities panel and confirm the new nested work Entity with one related component.
7. Click Save.

NOTE

Existing IDs with an underscore will not automatically cause Entities to be created. Entities are only created when you modify an existing ID.
Any underscores followed by one or more digits (like suffixes applied by auto-generated IDs) are also ignored.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Create an Entity in the Entity Panel Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

Create a new Entity in the Entities panel by right-clicking where you want the new Entity to be placed.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Create an Entity

1. Make sure the Exercise – Entities form is displayed in Design view.
2. From the Entities panel, right-click the 'Entities' icon and choose 'Add Entity'
3. Enter 'location' for the Entity name and click Save
4. Confirm the new location Entity now appears in the panel.

## Step 2: Create a nested Entity

1. From the Entities panel, right-click the 'location' Entity and choose 'Add Entity'
2. Enter phone for the new Entity name and click Save.
3. Expand the location Entity to display the new nested phone Entity.
4. Add a new 'Text Field' component to the form below 'Email'
5. Enter the ID as 'HomePhone' and relate this component to the nested 'phone' Entity
6. From the 'Entities' panel, confirm 'Home Phone' is related to the nested 'phone' Entity
7. Click Save.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Delete an Entity Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

NOTE

Note that you can't delete an Entity if any component IDs use that Entity.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Delete an Entity

1. To delete the 'phone' Entity, you must delete or re-assign any related components
2. For this exercise, delete 'Home Phone' on the form
3. From the Entities panel, confirm the 'phone' Entity no longer has any related component IDs
4. Right-click the phone Entity and choose Delete Entity.
5. Click OK to confirm.
6. Click Save.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Duplicate IDs Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will demonstrate the new duplicate ID functionality. You will:

1. Create a duplicate ID and Review
2. Create a duplicate ID and Accept

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Add a component with a duplicate ID and Review

1. Make sure the form you created for the ID Management exercise is open.
2. Add a new Text Field beneath First Name.
3. Update the ID to FName.

   NOTE

   This ID was deliberately used to create a duplicate ID.

4. An inline warning confirms Value generates to a duplicate ID.

   NOTE

   IDs are case sensitive - if you enter anything other than FName, the inline warning will not display.

5. At this point, you can either modify the ID directly (in the property field) ... or (click away to) Review or Accept the update.
6. For this example, click Review and update the ID to MiddleName.

   NOTE

   Modifying the ID means it doesn't cause a duplicate.

## Step 2: Add a component with a duplicate ID and Accept

1. Add another new Text Field beneath ‘Middle Name’.
2. Update the ID to MiddleName and click away.

3. For this example, click Accept in the popup.

> NOTE
>
> Choosing Accept appends a suffix to the ID, i.e. middleName_1

4. Click Save and close the form (i.e. the browser tab).

> NOTE
>
> If you 'Accept' a duplicate ID, 'XML Name' and 'Full Path' ('Integration' panel) keep their default names (i.e. 'TextField'). To update these properties, uncheck 'Use Auto-generated XML Name' and manually update the 'XML Name'.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# ID Management Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will demonstrate the updated functionality for component IDs. You will:

- create a new form
- add a new component
- update the component ID

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Create a new form

1. Create a new form using the following details:
   - Form Name: Exercise - ID Management
   - Description: This form is to demonstrate the new ID features
   - Template: Training Template

## Step 2: Add a new Text Field component

1. Add a new Text Field into the About You section.

   NOTE

   The initial focus is set to ID Property field.

## Step 3: Update the Text Field component

1. Update the ID Property value to FirstName.

   NOTE

   The Label Property has automatically updated to First Name.

2. Display the Integration pane.

   NOTE

   The XML Name and Full Path properties have updated to the new ID.

3. Display the Properties pane and update the ID to FName.

   NOTE

   The ‘Label’ remains unchanged and only updates when the initial ‘ID’ is entered.

4. Display the Integration pane.

   NOTE

   ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ have updated to the latest ‘ID’ (i.e. ‘FName’).

5. Click Save.

NOTE

If ‘Use Auto-generated XML Name’ is not checked (‘Integration’ panel), ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ won’t update if the ID changes and will need to be manually updated.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Impact Analysis Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

The following exercise will involve the Order form.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Open the Order form

1. Open the Order Form.

## Step 2: Review the current references

1. Right-click the First Name text field and choose Show References to firstName.
2. Confirm one existing reference to the FullName item.
3. Close the dialog.

## Step 3: Add a new Text Field that references First Name

1. Display Page Two of the form.
2. Add a new Text Field and update the ID to FirstNameP2.
3. Update the Label to First Name.
4. With the new Text Field selected, click Create Rule.
5. Click Script (under Calculation).
6. In the dialog, expand Page One, then expand the first Section.
7. Double-click First Name to setup a reference to this component.
8. Click Save then save the form.
9. Preview the form, then enter a sample First Name on Page One, then confirm it displays in First Name on Page Two.
10. Switch back to Design view.

## Step 4: Review the updated references

1. Right-click First Name on Page One and choose Show References to First Name.
2. Confirm a second reference to firstNameP2 (on Page Two) now exists.
3. Close the dialog.
4. Save the form, then close it (i.e. the Browser Tab).

# Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Semantic Versioning Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will demonstrate how to create multiple semantic versions of a form.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Update the 10- develop version

1. Select the Exercise - Entities form.
2. Add a new text field to ‘Getting Started’ called ‘PhoneNumber’(below 'Email')
3. Click Save and Close the form (Browser Tab).

## Step 2: Create a Tagged version (based on 10- develop)

1. Select the Exercise - Entities form in the Navigator panel.
2. Click the New Tag button.
3. Confirm the new Semantic Version number is 10.1
4. Enter the Description as: This is the first tagged version.
5. Click Create.
6. Expand the Exercise – Entities form in the Navigator panel and confirm the new tagged 10.1version is displayed.

## Step 3: Open the Tagged version

1. Select the Exercise - Entities form in the Navigator panel.
2. Select the 10.1tagged version (note the tick icon).

   NOTE

   Note: the Palette panel is empty, i.e. you can’t add or delete components

3. Close the form (Browser Tab).

## Step 4: Update the 10- develop version

Remember: all changes and updates are completed in 10- develop.

1. Open the 10-develop version of the Exercise - Entities form.
2. Add a new text field to the Getting Started section called FaxNumber.
3. Click Save and Close the form (Browser Tab).

## Step 5: Create another Tagged version (based on 10-develop)

1. Select the Exercise - Entities form in the Navigator panel.
2. Select 10-develop and click New Tag.
3. Confirm the new Semantic Version number is 10.2.
4. Enter the Description as: This is the second tagged version.
5. Click Create.
6. Expand the Exercise – Entities form the Navigator panel and confirm the tagged 10.2 version is displayed.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# Upgrade a Project Exercise v17.10

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

You can upgrade an existing project to the latest Maestro release from the Management Dashboard.

Extra help is available at the end of this exercise if you get stuck.

## Step 1: Import a Legacy project

To upgrade a project, you'll need to add a legacy project to your organization first.

1. If you haven't done so already, download the sample Legacy Project.
2. Navigate to the Maestro webpage and select the Organization
3. Click Import Legacy Project.
4. Name the project Legacy Project and click Import.
5. Navigate to the location of the downloaded project.
6. Select the project and click Open.
7. Confirm the imported project now appears under your organization.

## Step 2: Upgrade the project

1. Select Legacy Project in the Navigator.
2. Click the Project Details tab.
3. Update the Release Version to 17.10.0.

   NOTE

   When you select a new version, a warning message confirms you can't change the release version back to a previous version once the Project Details are saved.

4. Click OK in the warning message, then click Save.
5. The project has now been upgraded.

NOTE

Note : The Release Version dropdown no longer displays any previous release versions.

## Extra Help

Download the Exercise PDF for more detailed instructions to help you complete the exercise.

# eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

View the eLearning courses available from **Learn** on the main menu of the new consolidated Journey Platform resources website.

We recommend that you view each course in order, following the listed order of the modules. After a few modules you will be given an exercise which will allow you to practice what you have learned. We strongly recommend you use these exercises to complete your training.

## Pre- requisite

- First you will need to import the exercise files used for the Maestro 5.1exercises. Refer to Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files.

## eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.1

Use the following links to view the exercise guides. Please follow the instructions in each guide to identify the resources and assets you'll need to use.

Introduction to Maestro 5.1:

- Compatibility Mode Exercise
- Create a New Form Exercise
- Pages and Sections Exercise

Form Builder 1:

- Layout Exercise
- Creating Rules (without Scripting) Exercise
- Repeating and Shared Components Exercise

Form Builder 2:

- Creating Shared Components Exercise
- Two Level Navigation Exercise

Form Builder Scripting:

- Calculation Rules Exercise
- Creating Rules Exercise
- Validation Rules Exercise

# Help

For help using the Learning Center refer to the Learning Center Help Guide.

If you have any questions, issues or feedback please feel free to contact the Journey Knowledge Team.

# Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro v5.1 Exercise Files

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This guide explains how to import the Maestro exercise files as a Maestro project. This project contains all the required forms, templates, components and styles needed to complete the exercises.

You can also access a training module on the Avoka LMS that explains how to import and export in Maestro. You may want to view this module before importing the exercise project.

## Step 1: Identify the Training Environment

1. Identify which of the following best describes the Training Environment you will use to complete the Maestro 5.1 training.

| Training Environment | Uses Maestro version | Download... | Import Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| elearning.avoka.com | 17.10 or later | Version 2018.03.08 | Import Project |
| Your company | 17.10 or later | Version 2018.03.08 | Import Project |
| Your company | 5.1x or earlier | Version 2017.06.16 | Import Project |

NOTE

+ Version 2017.06.16: was exported from Maestro 5.1x environment
+ Version 2018.03.08: was exported from Maestro 17.10 (or later)

## Step 2: Download the Exercise Project

The file to be downloaded is a zipped folder that contains the Maestro training exercise project.

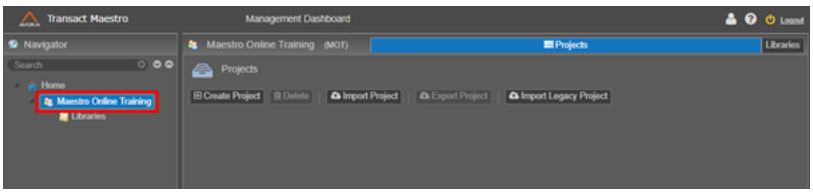
1. Click on the required download link above to download the Exercise Project to your PC.

2. Leave this file in the Downloads folder or move it to a different location. Just remember, you'll need to navigate to this file in the next step to import it into Maestro.

## Step 3 Import the Exercise Project

Once you've selected the Organization, you can import a project into Maestro.

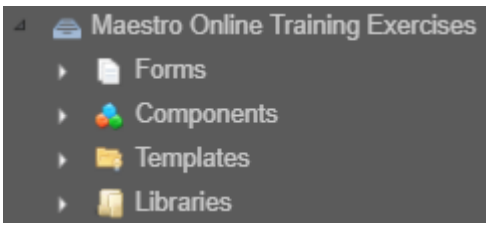
1. Login to Maestro.
2. Expand Home (in the Navigator panel).
3. Click on your Organization.




4. Click Import Project to import the Maestro Project.
5. Enter Maestro Online Training Exercises for the name of the project you're importing.
6. Click Import.
7. Navigate to and select the Maestro Exercise Project zipped folder you downloaded.
8. Click Open.

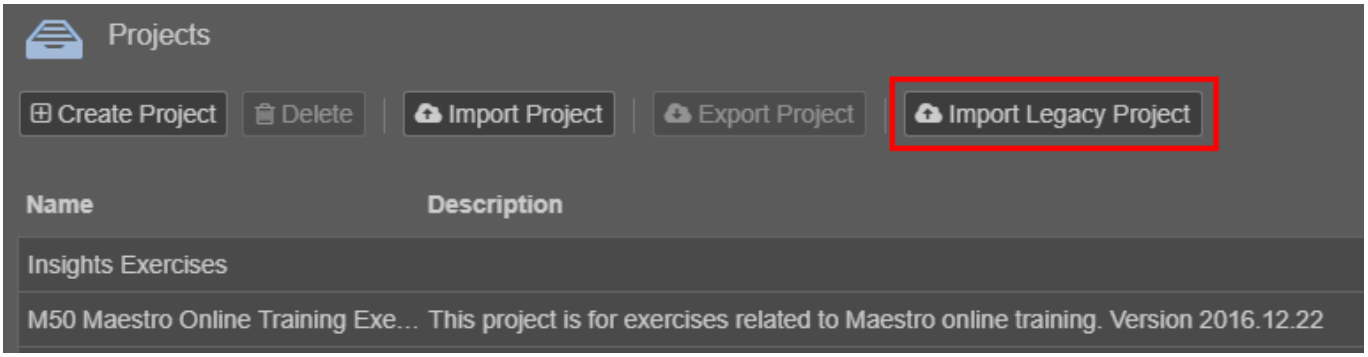
## Result

After importing the project you'll have access to the exercise forms, templates and components.




## Optional Step 4 Importing Legacy Projects

Maestro offers an additional import option for projects created and exported from legacy (or previous) versions of Maestro.




A project is considered Legacy if it was created and exported from any version of Maestro prior to v17.10. The option to Import Legacy Projects is only available to Maestro users assigned the Maestro Site Administrator Role. If you need to import a legacy project, speak to your Maestro account manager.

## Step 5 Update Release Version

Once you've imported the Exercise Project, you may need to update the Default Initial Version and assign a Release Version (if required) in the Project Details.

Assigning the Release Version associates the version of Maestro used to access the forms in your imported Maestro project.

1 Select the imported project in the Navigator panel.

2. Click the Project Details tab.

3. Enter 10-develop for the Default Initial Version.

NOTE

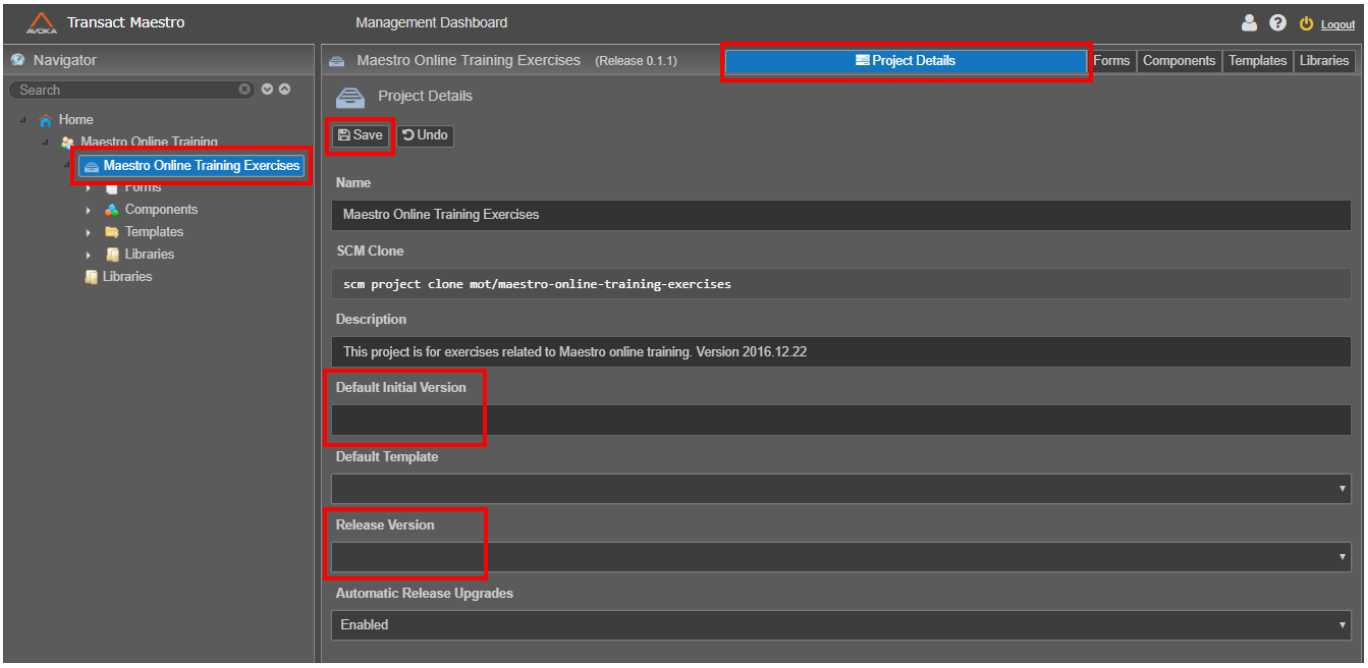
For more information on the Default Initial Version see Form Versions.

4. Select 5.14 (or the latest available version beginning 5.1x) for the Release Version.

NOTE

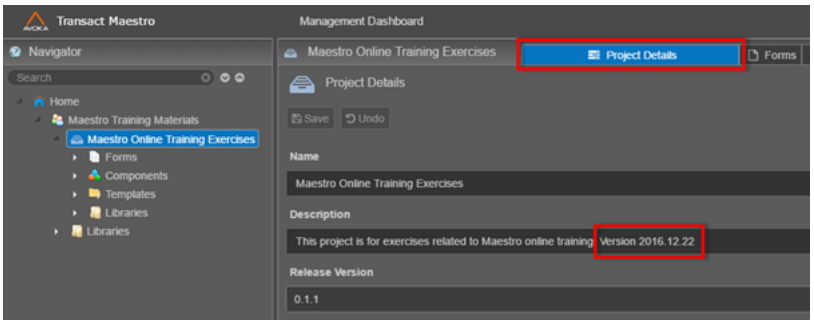
Release Versions for Maestro Projects prior to v5.1 (i.e. v5.0) were named using a 1x.x naming convention. For Maestro 5.1 projects, the Release Version followed a 5.x.x. naming convention. Starting with the v17.10 release, all Release Versions are based on a Year.Month naming convention, e.g. 17.10 = 2017 October.

5. Click Save.



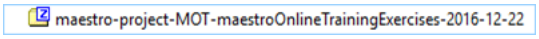

NOTE

The date a Maestro Project is exported can be found on the Project Details tab, in the Description Field (as long as it's not been changed).




Any Maestro Projects exported prior to 2016.12.22 won't display a date in the Description field.

Instead, the export date can be found at the end of the zipped folder filename:




# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

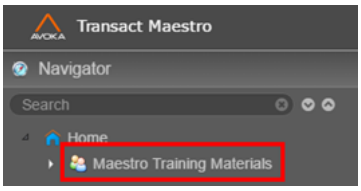
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

**Importing a Project**

When you import a project, that includes all the resources and assets within the project, e.g. the forms, templates, components, styles, and libraries etc.

To import a project, you need to have the Maestro Organization selected first.

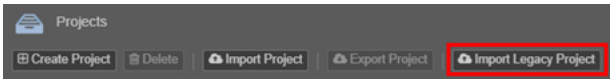
Once you login to Maestro, expand Home, then select the Organization in the Navigator panel (left side of the window).



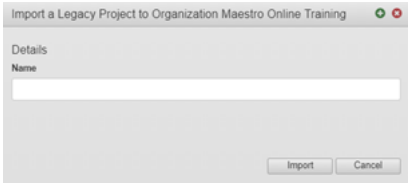

Once you select the Organization, a list of all the projects displays on the right.

The Import Project button is situated just above the list.

> NOTE
>
> Use Import Legacy Project for Projects exported from Maestro 5.1x or earlier.



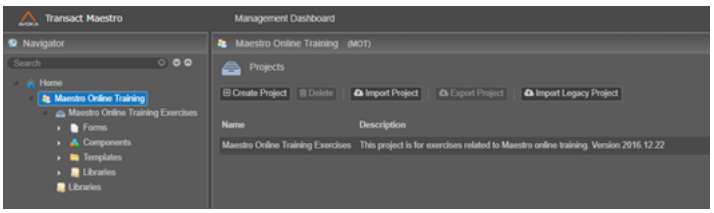

In the dialog, you must enter a name for the new project - then click Import.



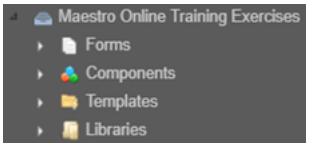

For example, we use Maestro Online Training Exercises for the name.

Click Import, then navigate to the required Maestro Exercise project.

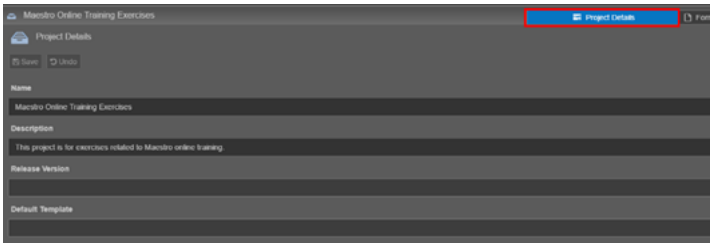
Once selected you can click Open and the project will be imported to your Maestro Organization.



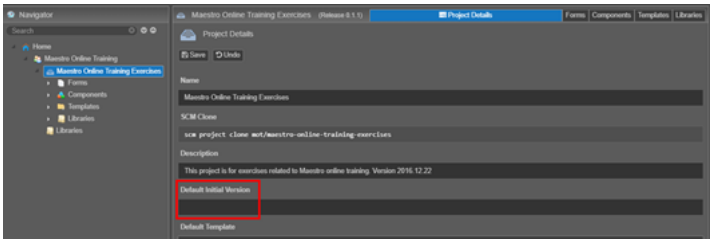
Select the project from the Navigator on the left side of the window.



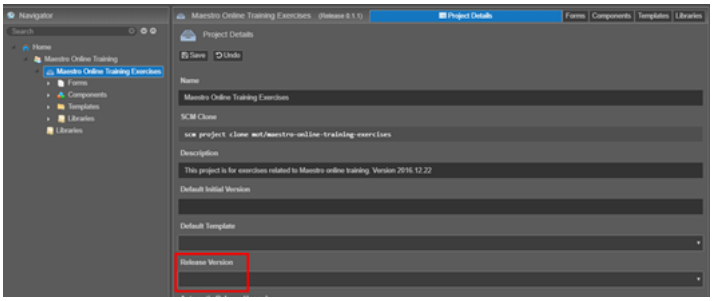

Select the Project Details tab.



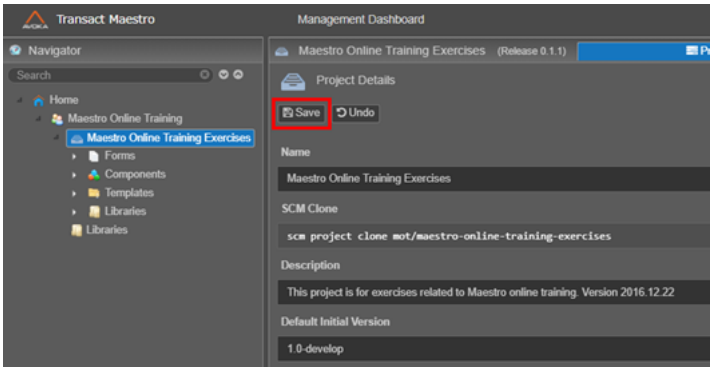

Enter a Default Initial Version.




Expand the Release Version dropdown and select the appropriate release version to apply to the project.




Click Save.


Transact Maestro
Management Dashboard
Navigator
Search
Home
Maestro Online Training
Maestro Online Training Exercises
Forms
Components
Templates
Libraries
Libraries
Maestro Online Training Exercises (Release 0.1.1)
Project Details
Save
Undo
Name
Maestro Online Training Exercises
SCM Clone
scm project clone mot/maestro-online-training-exercises
Description
This project is for exercises related to Maestro online training. Version 2016.12.22
Default Initial Version
1.0-develop

# Calculation Rules Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating rules. During this exercise you will create a new form and add components. You will then create rules on the added components.

Do your best to follow the information provided and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises v5.1> Calculation Rules Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Create a New Form

Create a new form using the details provided below.

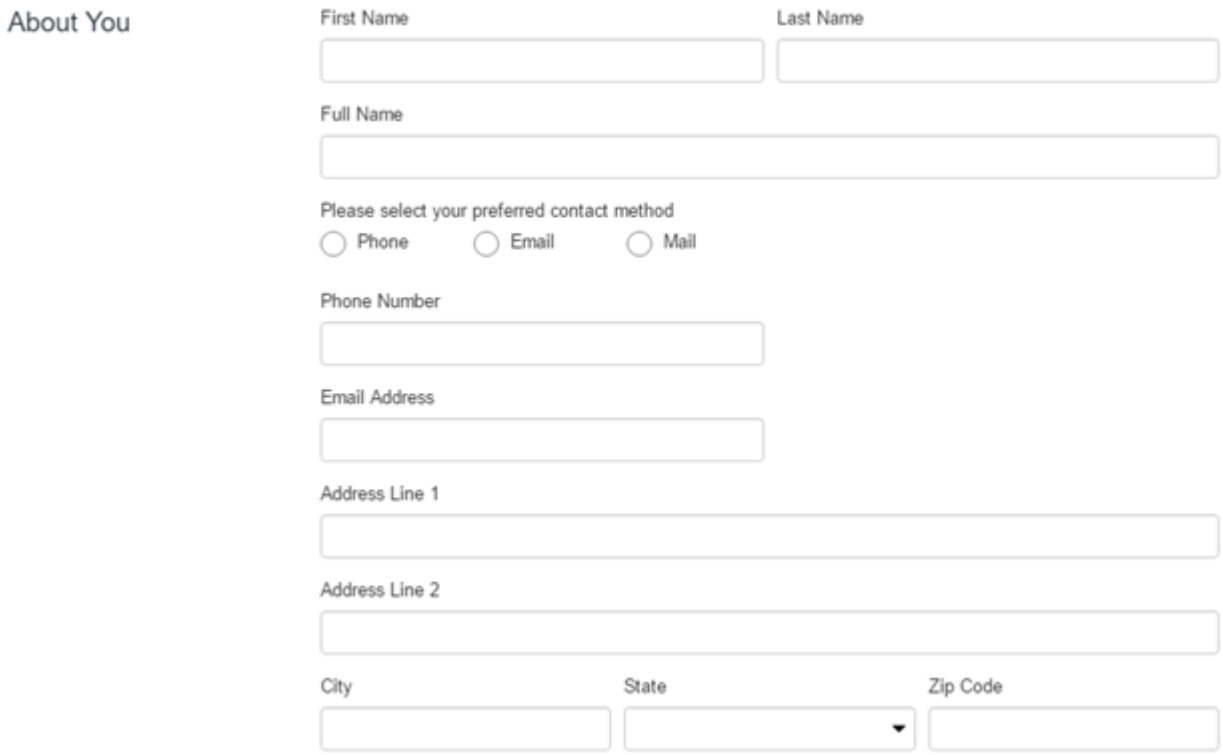
1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Click Create Form.
5. Enter details about the form:

- Name: Order Form
- New Version: 10-develop
  (should be pre-populated if Default Initial Version has been set up in Project Details)
- Description: This form is to practice creating calculation rules.
- Template: Exercise Template

6. Click Create.

## Step 2 Add Components to Page One

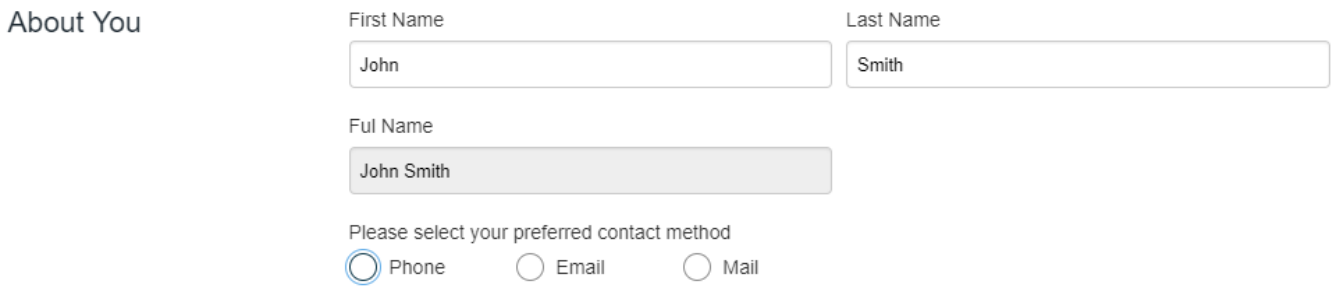
Add components to Page One so your form resembles the image below.




Click Save.

## Step 3 Populate a Component Based on Entered Data

Populate the Full Name component based on a script that concatenates the data entered in First Name and Last Name.




Add a Read Only rule to Full Name so the populated data cannot be changed.

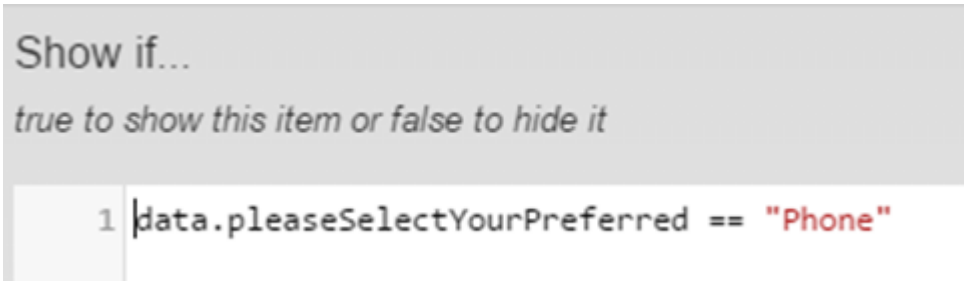
Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

Click Save.

## Step 4 Add Show if Rules

Add Show If rules to the Phone Number, Email Address and Address block based on the preferred contact method selected.

Right-click the appropriate components on the left side of the Create Rule window to create the required Show if scripts (see the example below).

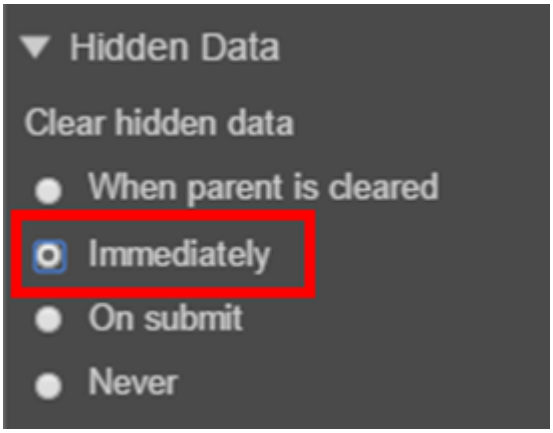



Save your form.

Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

## Step 5 Change the Clear Hidden Data Option

Change the Clear hidden data option for each of the contact detail components so that when they are hidden, any data previously entered in the field is cleared immediately.

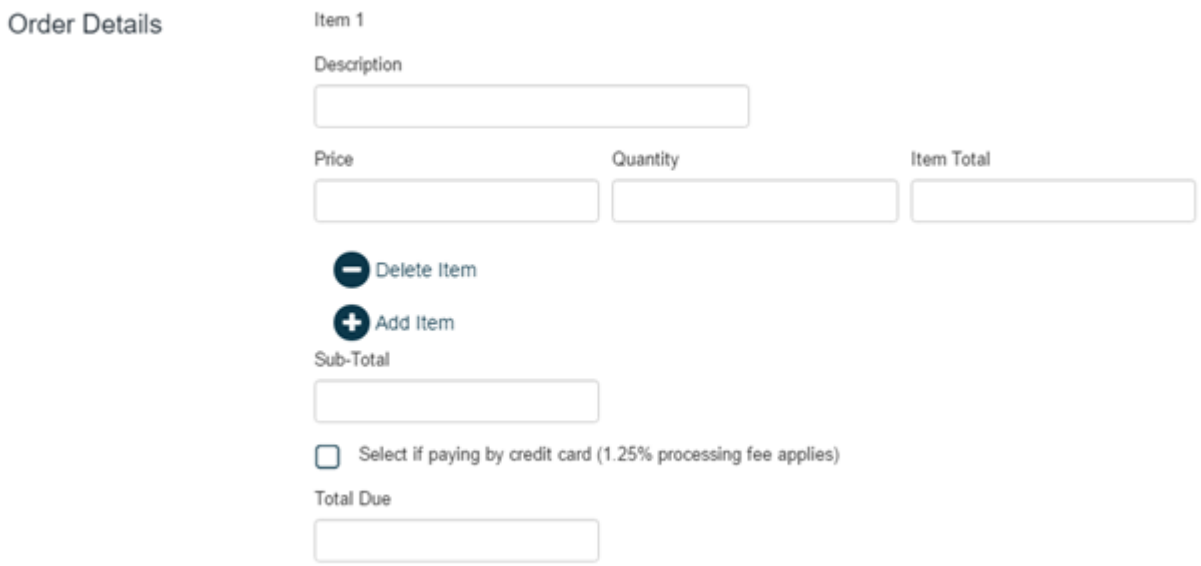



When you've changed the Hidden Data options, Save your form then click Preview to test the form.

Click Save.

## Step 6 Add an Order Details Section to the Form

Add a new section below the About You section. Add components so the new section resembles the image below.

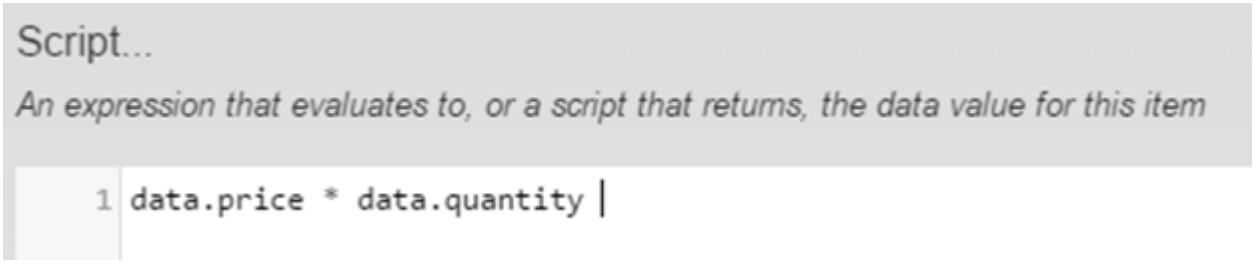



Use the Decimal Field component for Price, Item Total, Sub-Total and Total Due and set the decimal fields to 2 decimal places.

Click Save.

## Step 7 Add a Calculation Rule to the Item Total

Create a calculation rule that multiples Price by Quantity.



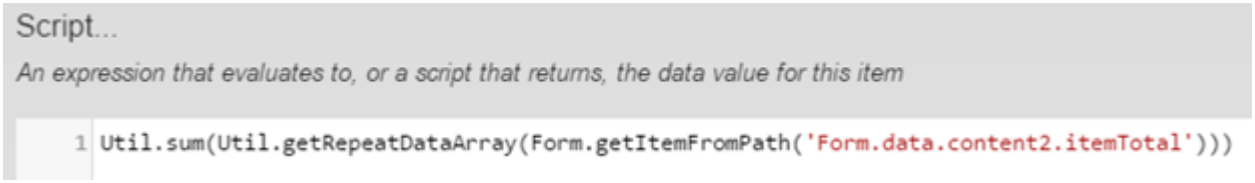

Add a Read Only rule to Item Total so the user cannot change the calculated value.

Click Save.

Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

## Step 8: Add a Calculation Rule to the Sub-Total Component

Create a calculation rule that sums the Item Totals for each repeat.



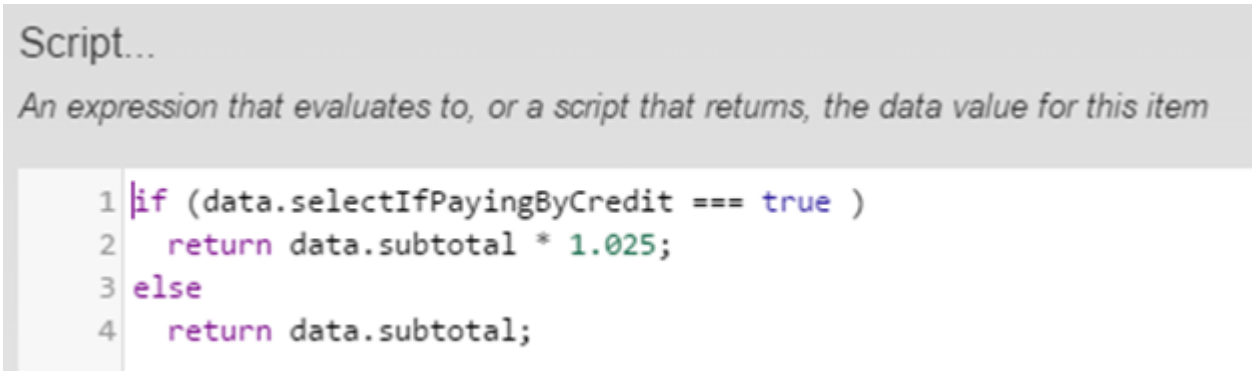

Add a Read Only rule so that the user cannot change the calculated value.

Click Save.

Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

## Step 9: Add a Calculation Rule to the Total Due Component

Create a calculation rule that includes the Sub-Total multiplied by the credit card processing fee if the checkbox is selected.




Add a Read Only rule so that the user cannot change the calculated value.

Click Save.

Preview the form and check the calculation rules.

## Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create a Show If Rule

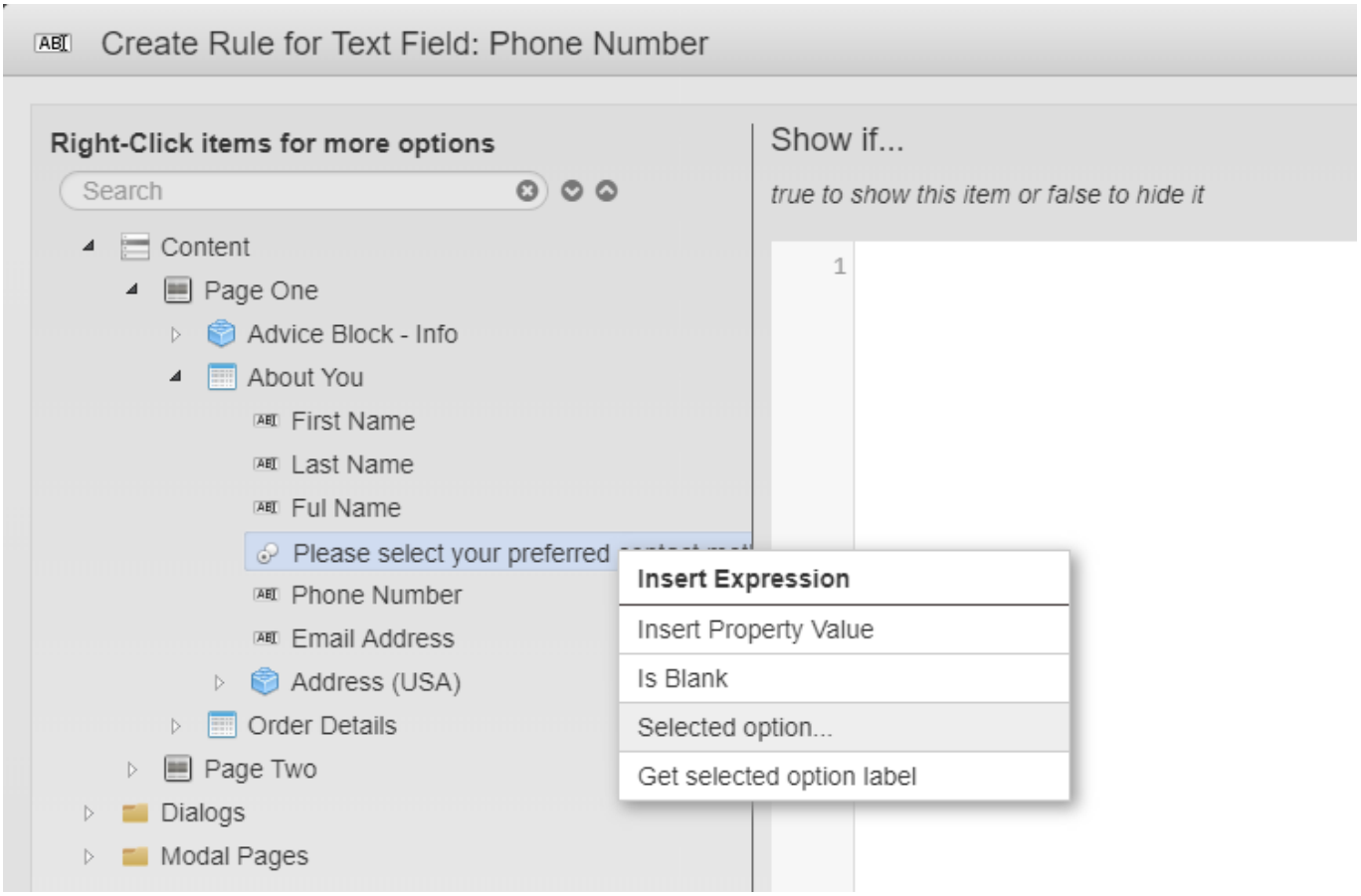
Select the component whose visibility is conditional (i.e. visible or not visible).

Click Create Rule from the Rules section (Properties panel).

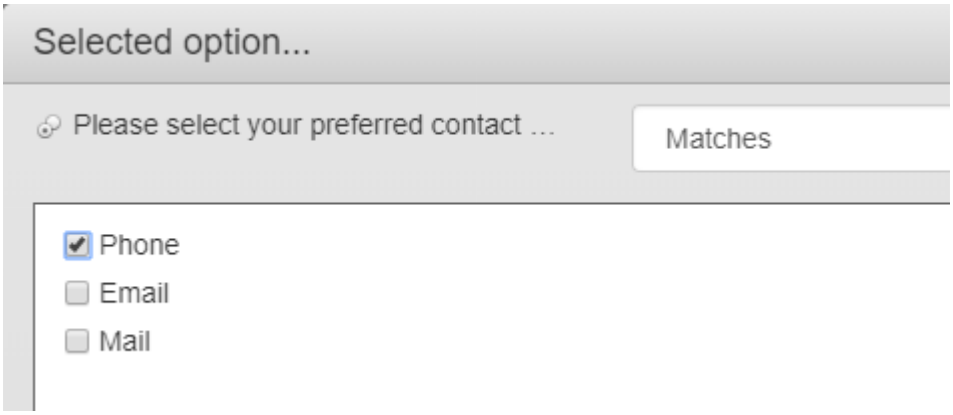
Select Show If from the Create Rule window.

Right-click the component that determines if a component is shown on the form

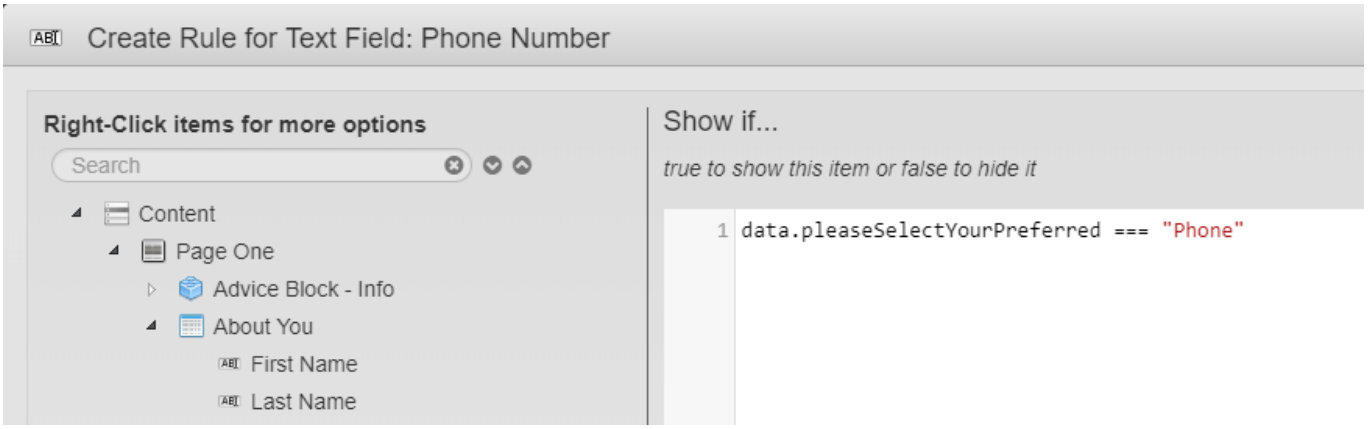
Choose Selected option.




Nominate the matching Option (e.g. Phone) and click OK.




The script is added to the Create Rule window.




## Combine entered data into a component

Select the component where the data will be populated.

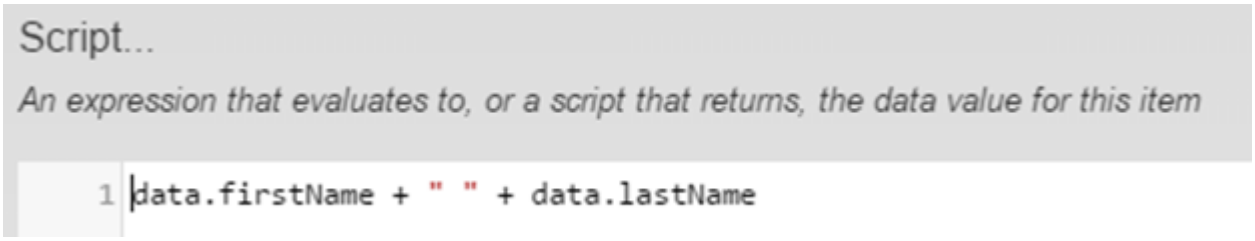
Click Create Rule and select Script.

Double-click the component you want to add to the script, e.g. double-click First Name to add data.firstName to the script window.

Enter a plus sign between the components you want to combine.

Any spaces or other characters to include in the script must be wrapped between quotation marks (“).

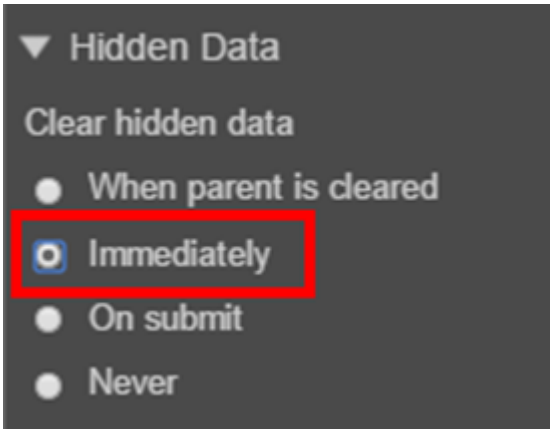
Double-click the next component to add to the script (see example below).




## Clear Hidden Data Immediately

Select the component.

Select the Data tab, expand Hidden Data and choose Immediately from the options.



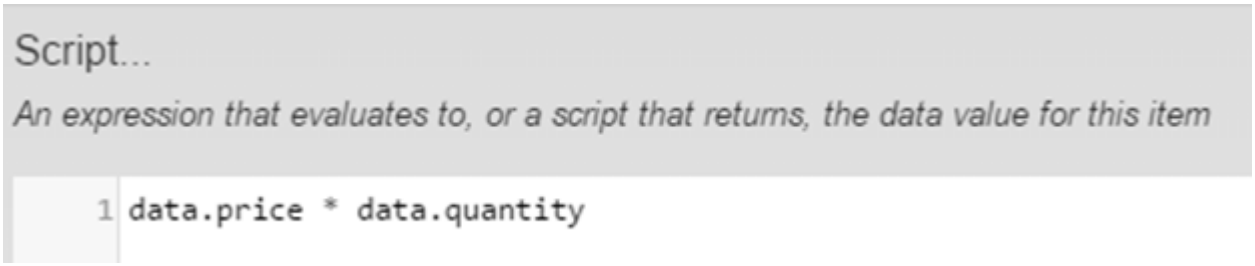

## Create a Mathematical Calculation Rule

Select the component that will contain the calculation.

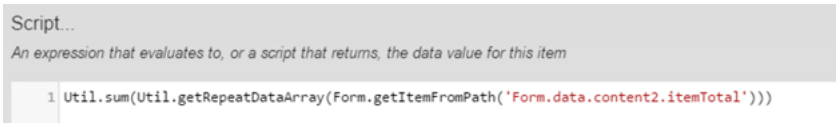
Click Create Rule then select Script.

Double-click any components on the left-side of the window to add them to the script window (on the right).

Insert the required calculation symbols, e.g. * / + -




The script is added to the window.




## Create a Calculation Rule for Repeated Items

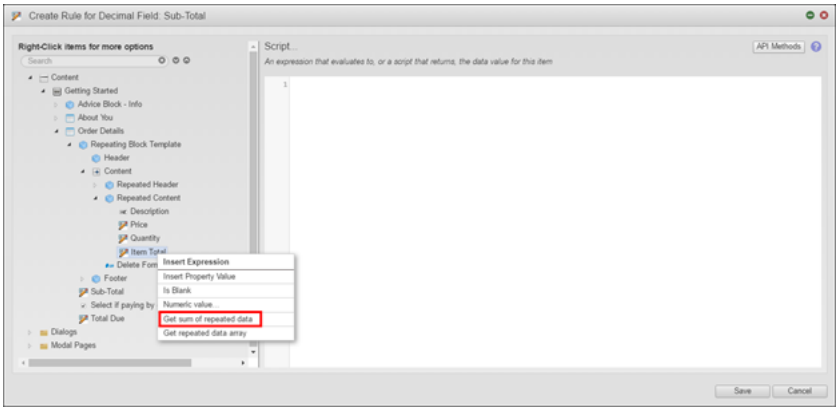
Select the component that will contain the calculation.

Click Create Rule then select Script.

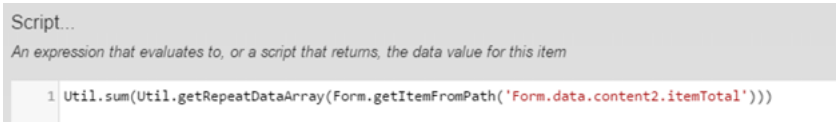
Expand the Repeating Block Template, then expand Content.

Expand Repeated Content.

Right-click the component you want to total and select Get sum of repeated data.




The script is added to the window.



# Compatibility Mode Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills in upgrading an existing project to Maestro 5.1 During this exercise, you will import a new project into your organization and then change the release version to Maestro 5.1.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1: Import Compatibility Mode Project

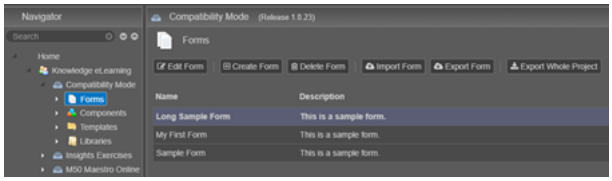
This exercise uses a different project to the one downloaded in the Exercise Setup Guide and will only be used for this exercise.

Identify which of the following best describes the Training Environment you will use to complete this exercise and download the appropriate project version.

| Training Environment | Uses Maestro version | Download... | Import Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| elearning.avoka.com | 17.10 or later | Version 2018.08.03 | Import Project |
| Your company | 17.10 or later | Version 2018.08.03 | Import Project |
| Your company | 5.1x or earlier | Version 2017.06.01 | Import Project |

Once the project is downloaded, import the project into your Maestro organization.

1. Select your Organization then click Import Project.
    - Name: Compatibility Mode
2. Select your project and click Open.
3. The new project is displayed in your selected Organization.



# Step 2: Update the Project to Maestro 5.1

Update the project to Maestro 5.1by changing the Release Version dropdown on the Project Details tab.

# Extra Help

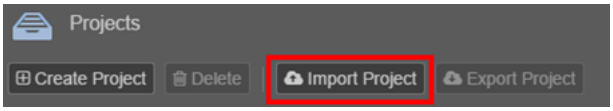
Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

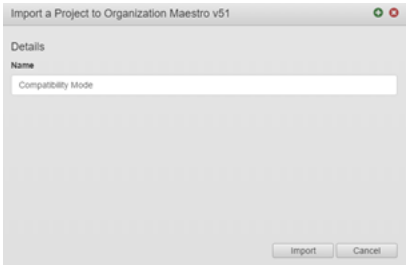
## Import project

Select the Organization from the Navigator panel.

Click the Import Project button.

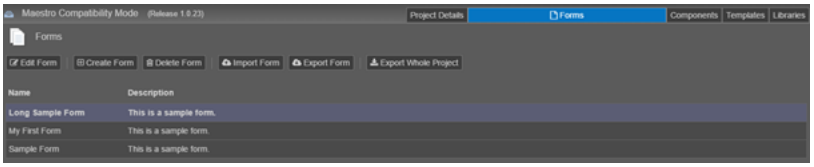



Enter a Name for the new project, then click Import.



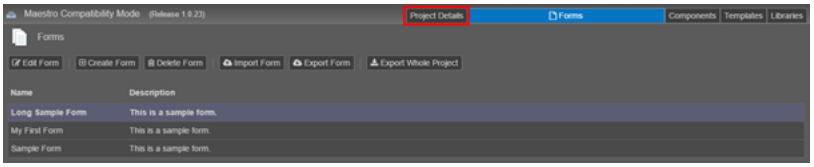

Select the project you want to import and click Open.

The new project will be created and displayed under your Organization.



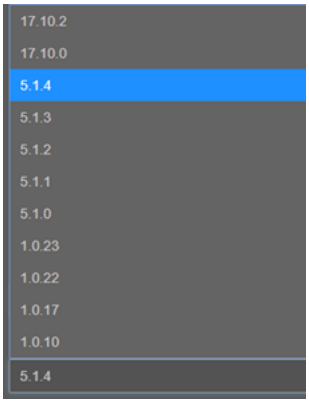

## Change Release Version

Select the project from the Navigator panel, then select the Project Details tab.

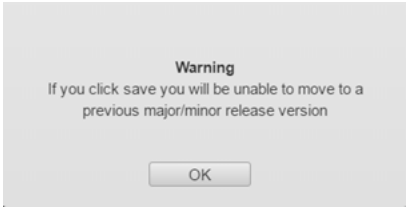



Use the Release Version dropdown to select 5.14.

This will associate the 5.1version of Maestro to access the forms in your compatibility project.




When you select a later version from the dropdown a warning message confirms that once you upgrade you can't change back to a previous release version.

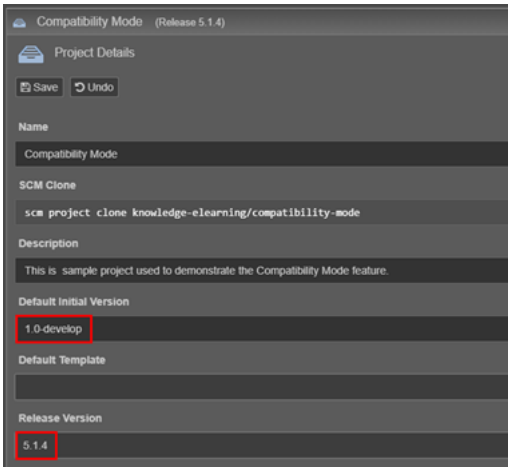



Click OK.

Click Save to apply your changes.

NOTE

You may also need to enter a Default Initial Version before saving, i.e. 10-develop



# Create a New Form Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating new forms in Maestro. During this exercise, you will create a new form and add components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Create New Form Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1: Create a New Form

Create a new form using the details provided below.

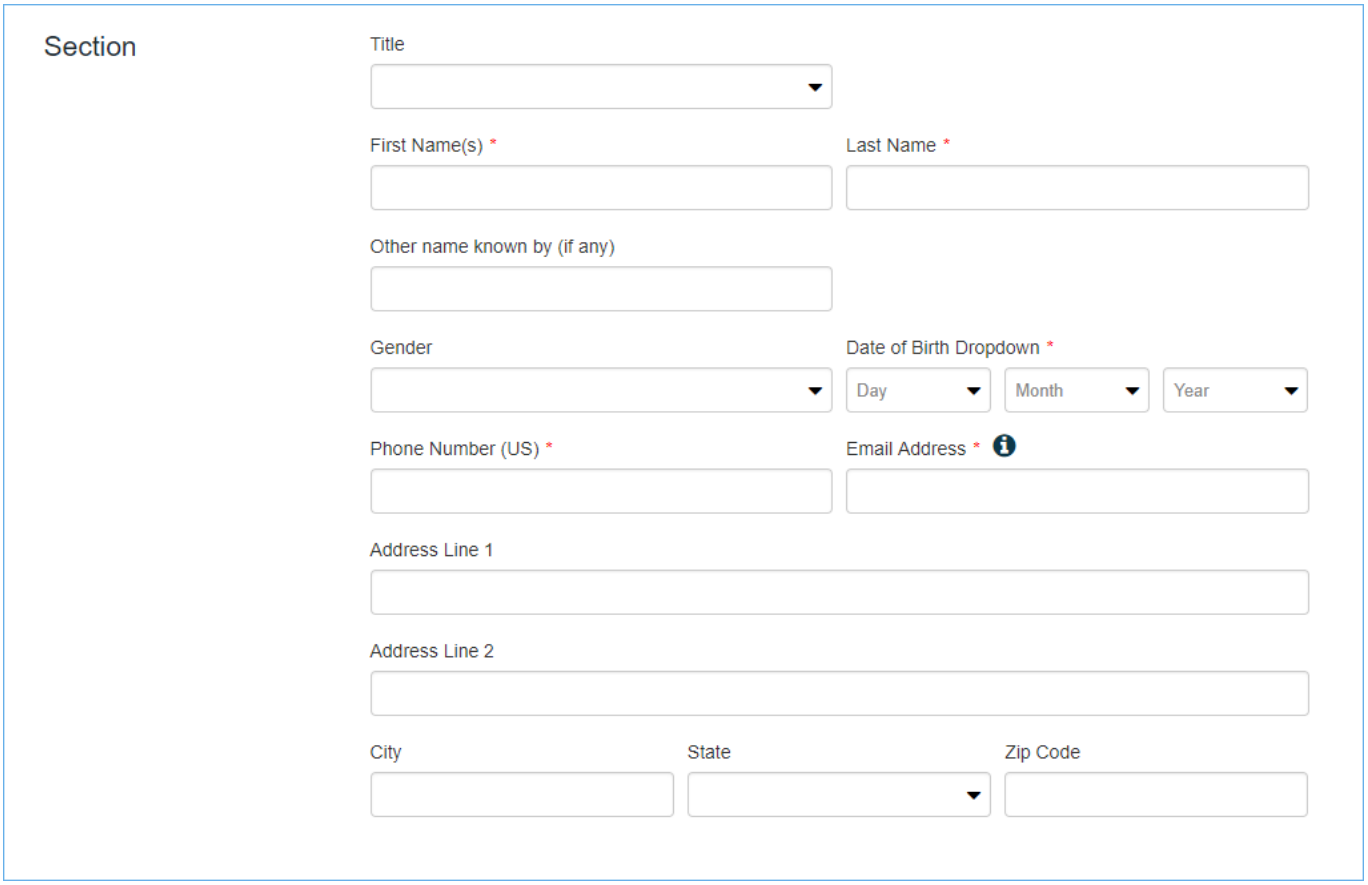
1. In the Navigator Panel, expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Click Create Form.
5. Enter the following details for your new form:
   - Name: Create New Form_[Your initials]
   - New Version: 10-develop

     (should be pre-populated if Default Initial Version has been setup in Project Details)

   - Description: This form is to practice creating new forms and adding components.
   - Template: Exercise Template
6. Click Create.

# Step 2: Add Components to Page One

On Page One, you will find an empty Section. You can add (drag) components into this area. Use the image below as a guide for what you need to add.




You can Preview your form at any time to see how the components look and work.

NOTE

the components marked as mandatory (*) and with the information icon (i).

When adding components, it may be helpful to display the Palette and Structure panel together. Click the Side-by-Side button in the top left corner of the Editor window.

NOTE

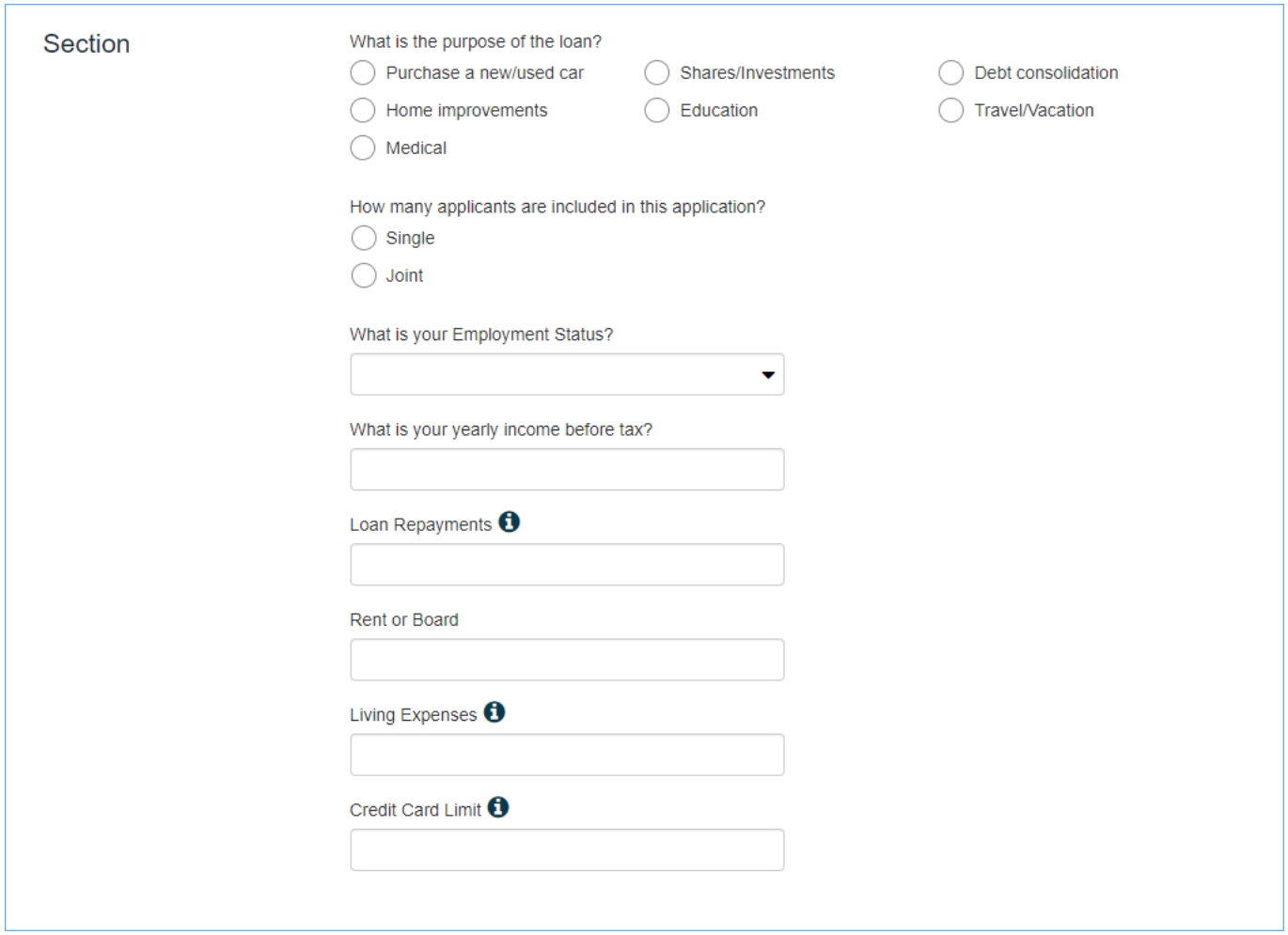
Remember: to use predefined components, rather than recreating your own. You can use Search in the Palette panel to find the required components, for example, the 'Title' component, which contains all the common titles (Mr, Mrs. etc.). The default options can be updated as required and is much easier than building a dropdown from scratch.

Use this for the Email Address Help Text: We use your email to send confirmation of the information you've provided.

Click Save on the toolbar.

## Step 3: Add Components to Page Two

On Page Two, you can add (drag) components into the available section. Use the image below as a guide for what you need to add.



NOTE

Some components have the information icon (i) next to the label.

Use the following entries for the What is the purpose of the loan radio buttons:

- Purchase a new/used car
- Shares/Investments
- Debt consolidation
- Home improvements
- Education
- Travel/Vacation
- Medical

Use the following entries for the How many applicants are included in this application? radio buttons:

- Single
- Joint

Use the following entries for the What is your Employment Status? dropdown:

- Employed
- Self-Employed
- Unemployed

Use the following details for the Help Text:

- Loan Repayments: Please include any mortgage repayments, personal loans or car loans.
- Living Expenses: Consider how much you spend on bills, groceries, transport and entertainment, etc.
- Credit Card Limit: Please include the total limit of all your credit cards.

Use the following for the expense questions:

- What is your Employment Status?
- What is your yearly income before tax?
- Loan Repayments
- Rent or Board
- Living Expenses
- Credit Card Limit

# Step 4: Save the Form

Click Save on the toolbar to save all the changes to your form.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

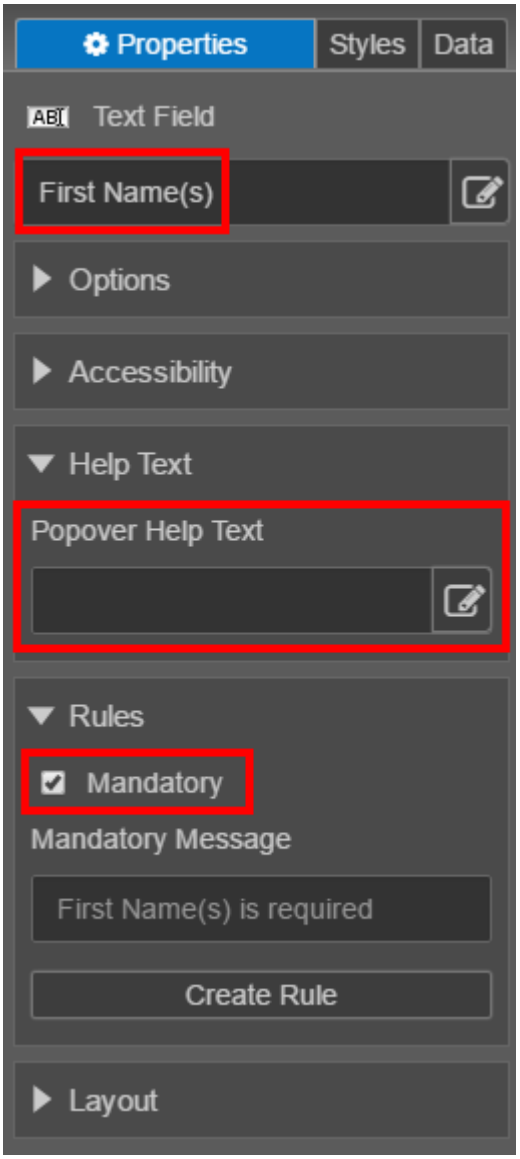
## Component Properties

You can use the Properties panel to change the following settings:

- Component Label
- Add Help Text
- Set Component as Mandatory
- Radio Button Arrangement
- Radio Button Options
- Dropdown Options

The Properties panel displays the settings for the selected component.

For example, properties for the First Name(s) Text Field are displayed below.



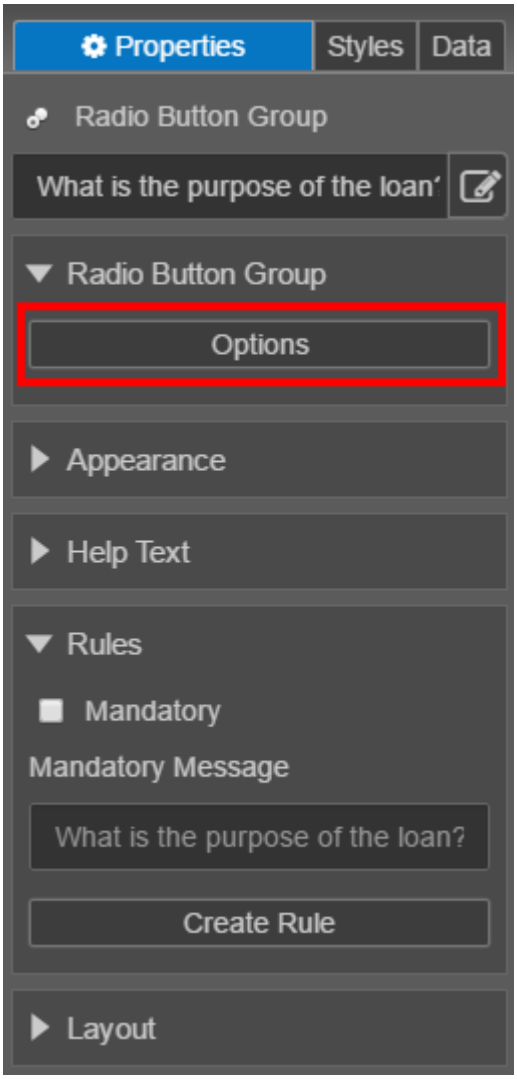

At the top, you can change the component label.

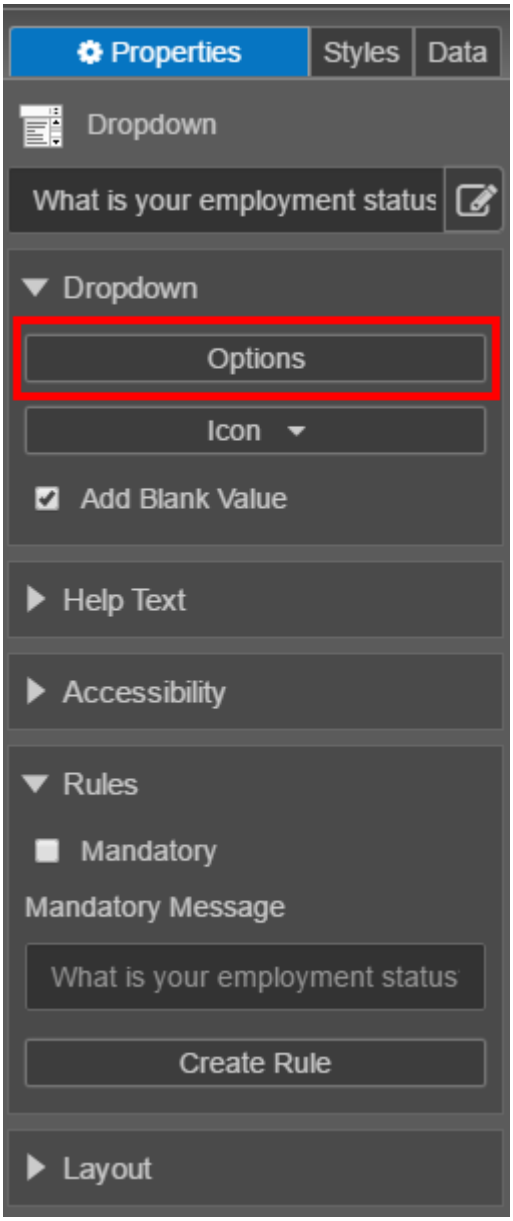
Popover Help Text is where you add the help text, which displays the information icon next to the component label.

The Mandatory option is under Rules. Select this to mark a component as mandatory. This will automatically add the red asterisk next to the label.

## Radio Button and Dropdown Options

Use the Properties panel to customize the options available for Radio Button Group and Dropdown.


Properties
Styles
Data
Radio Button Group
What is the purpose of the loan'
Radio Button Group
Options
Appearance
Help Text
Rules
Mandatory
Mandatory Message
What is the purpose of the loan?
Create Rule
Layout

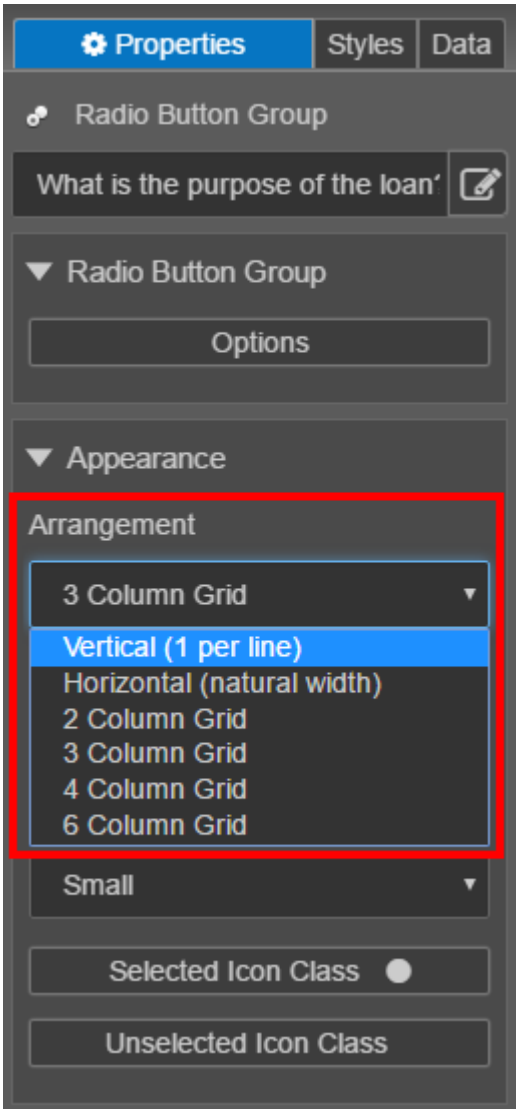



Click the Options button to open a new window, where you can add or edit the radio buttons or dropdown options.

### Arrangement of Radio Button Options

You can change the appearance of the radio buttons, so they're stacked vertically or displayed in a horizontal grid.

To change the appearance, select the required Arrangement.


Properties
Styles
Data
Radio Button Group
What is the purpose of the loan'
Radio Button Group
Options
Appearance
Arrangement
3 Column Grid
Vertical (1 per line)
Horizontal (natural width)
2 Column Grid
3 Column Grid
4 Column Grid
6 Column Grid
Small
Selected Icon Class
Unselected Icon Class

# Creating Rules Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating rules. During this exercise you will create a new form and add components. You will then create rules on the added components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Creating Rules Finished. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

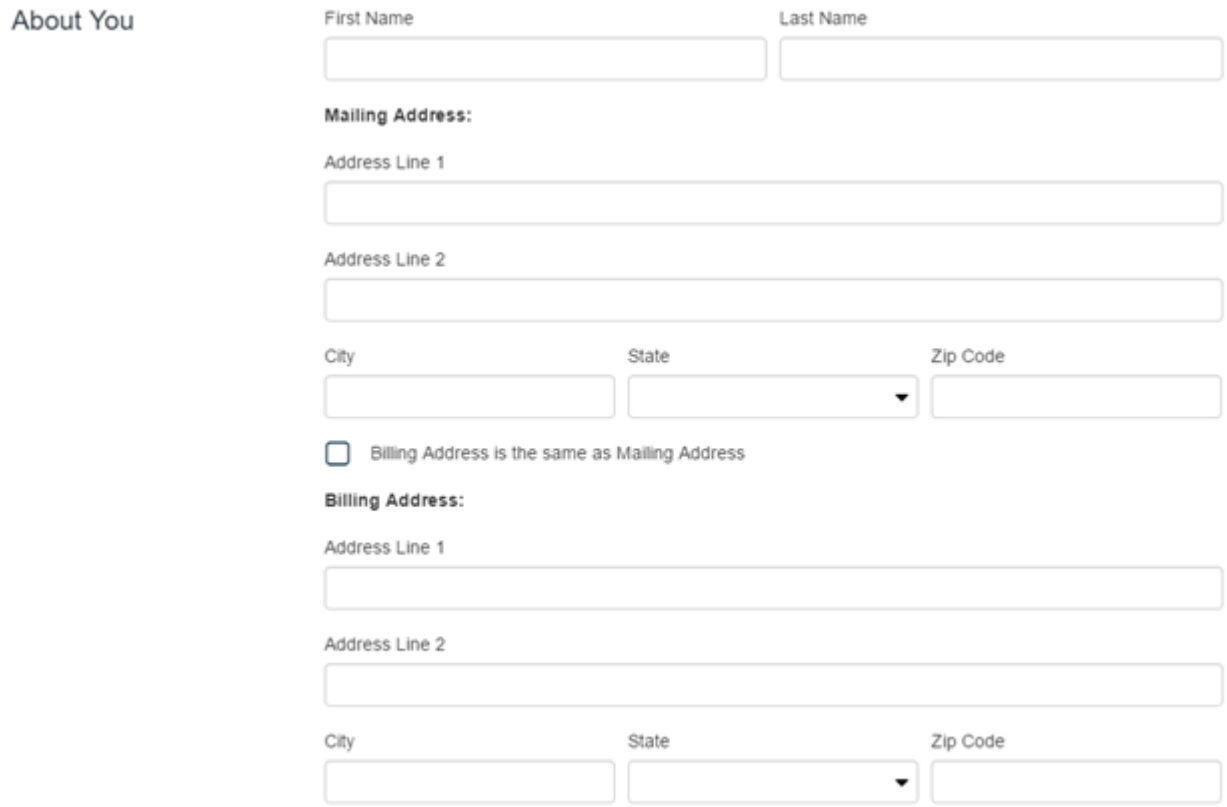
## Step 1 Create a New Form

Create a new form using the details provided below.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Click Create Form.
5. Enter details about the form:
    - Name: Mailing Address
    - New Version: 10-develop
      (should be pre-populated if Default Initial Version has been setup in Project Details)
    - Description: This form is to practice creating component rules.
    - Template: Exercise Template
6. Click Create.

## Step 2 Add Components to Page One

On Page One you will find an empty section. Add new components to this area using the image below as a guide.




NOTE

When adding components, it may be helpful to display the Palette and Structure panel together. Click the Side-by-Side button in the top left corner of the Editor window.

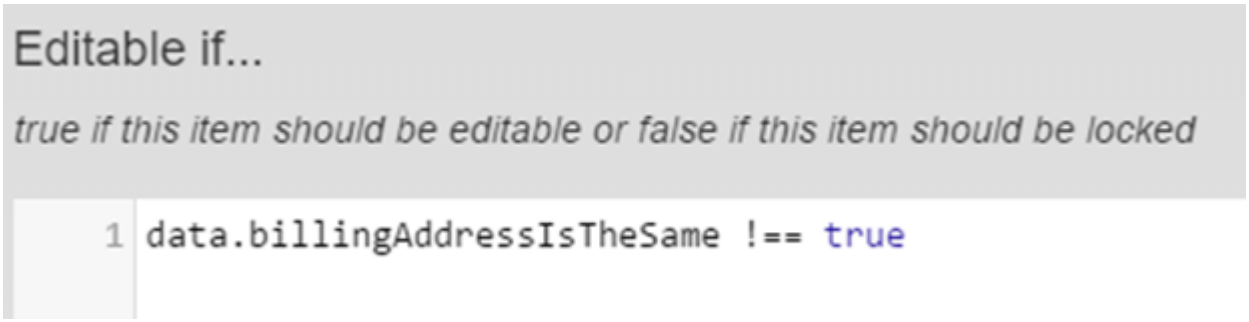
Remember to use predefined components (where appropriate), rather than recreating your own. You can use the search in the Palette panel to find components. For example, use the Address (USA) component rather than adding individual components. This component contains all the necessary fields, which you can customize if needed.

## Step 3 Add a Rule to Billing Address

Add an Editable if rule to the Billing Address block that allows it to be editable if the checkbox is not selected.

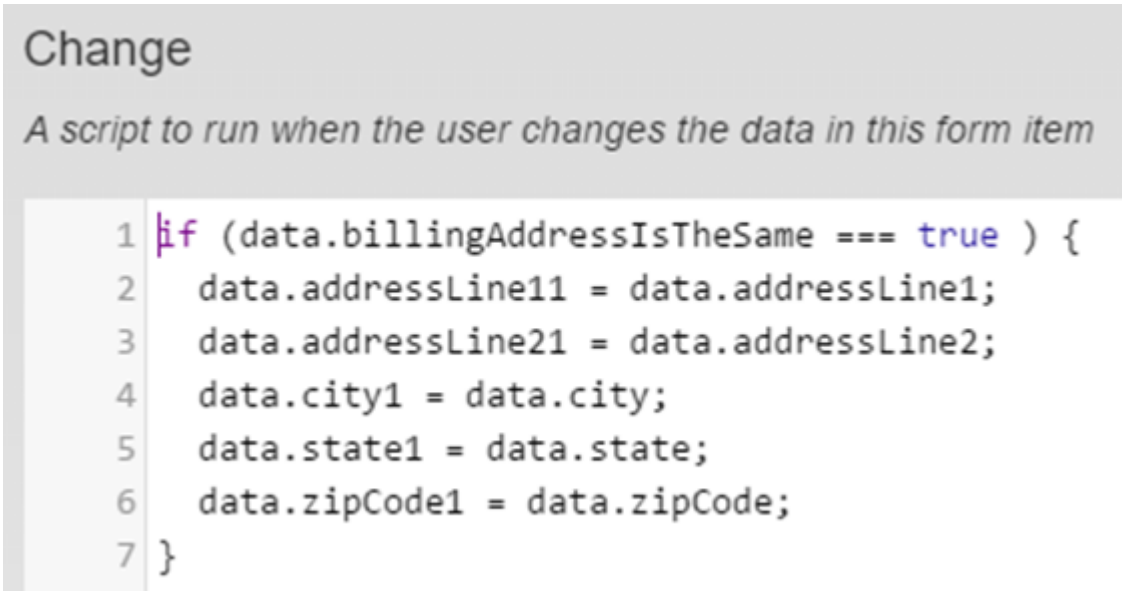
NOTE

You can double-click components on the left side of the Create Rule dialog to add them to the script window or type directly into the script window.



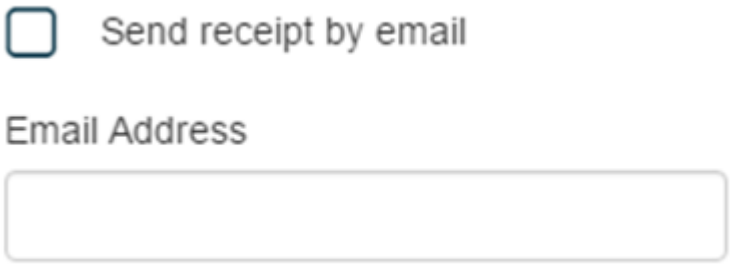

## Step 4 Add a Rule to the Checkbox

Add a Change rule to the checkbox that copies the entered values from Mailing Address to Billing Address if the checkbox is selected.




## Step 5 Add Components with a Mandatory If Rule

Add a checkbox and text field to the end of the form. Create a mandatory if rule on the text field that makes the field mandatory if the checkbox is selected.




# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create an Editable If Rule

Select the required component from the Structure panel (or in the form).

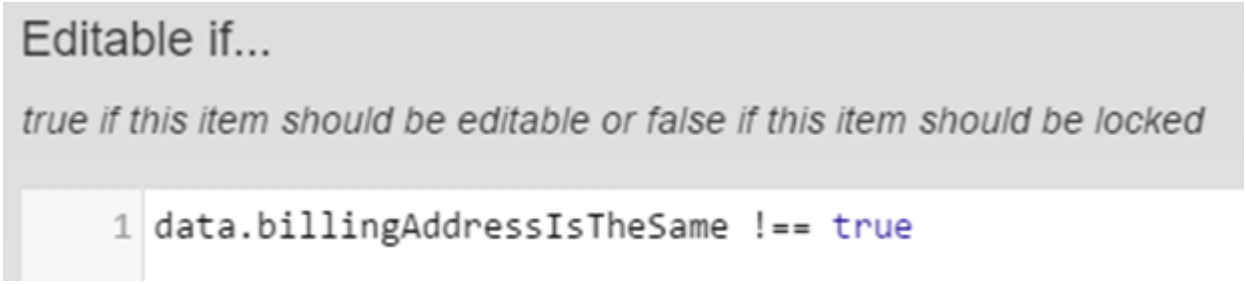
Click the Create Rule button from the Rules section (Properties panel).

Select Editable If.

Right-click the checkbox component that determines when the address component is editable.

The options in the menu are determined by the component selected. The image (above) shows the options for a checkbox.

Based on the exercise requirements, you would reed to select the Is not selected option.




The script for this rule says the address block is editable if the checkbox is not selected.

### Create a Change Rule

A Change rule will trigger when a component is changed.

To start, select the component you want to apply the rule to (i.e. the checkbox).

Click the Create Rule button from the Rules section (Properties panel).

Select Change under Action.

> NOTE
>
> You can double-click components on the left side of the Create Rule dialog to add them to the script window (right) or type directly into the script window.

Based on the exercise requirements, you will need to type at least some of the script. Enter the script as follows:

Type if (

Then right-click the checkbox and select Is selected to add data.-billingAddressIsTheSame === true.

Then type ) { and press Enter.

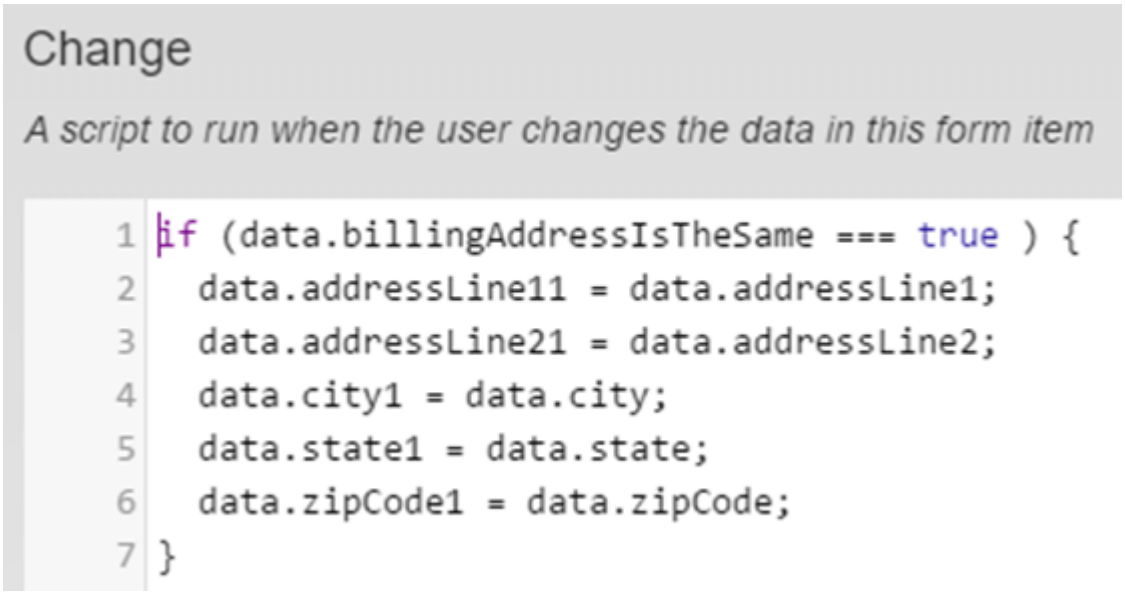
For the next line, double-click Address Line 1from the Billing Address block to add data.addressLine11

Type = and a space.

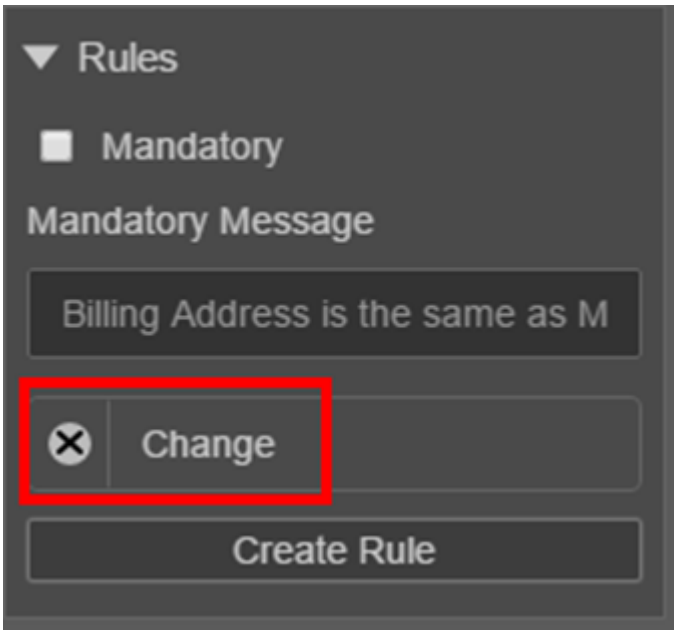
Double-click Address Line 1from the Mailing Address block to add data.addressLine1

Type ; (Semicolon)

Repeat this process for each of the address components. On the final line type } to end the script. See the image below for guidance.




Once you've finished creating the rule is, click Save.




The rule is added to the Rules section (Properties panel).

## Create a Mandatory If Rule

Select the component to be mandatory based on specific conditions (i.e. Email Address).

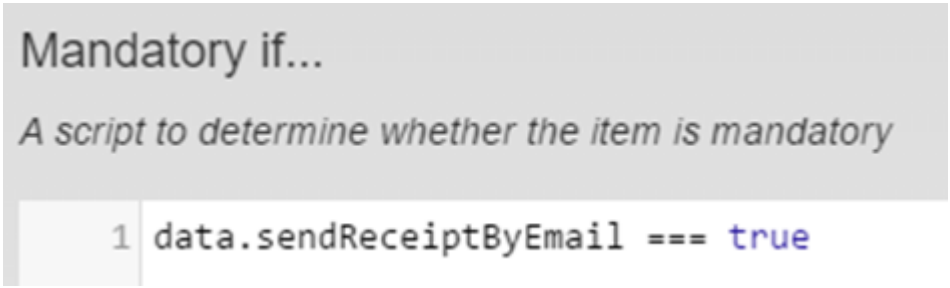
Click the Create Rule button from the Rules section (Properties panel).

Select Mandatory If.

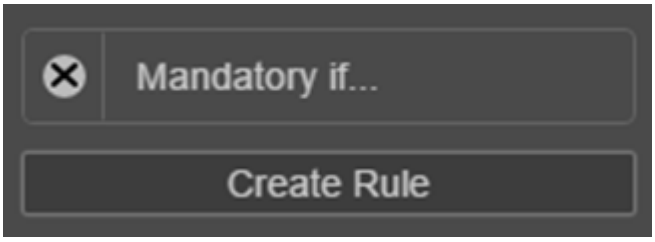
NOTE

You can double-click components on the left side of the Create Rule dialog to add them to the script window (right) or type directly into the script window.

See the image below for guidance.




Click Save.



# Creating Shared Components Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating shared components. During this exercise you will create a new shared component within a form.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Create Component Finish. Please note that this form uses a shared component with a different name to the one suggested in the steps below. Shared components cannot have the same name as other shared components within the same project.

If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open Create Component Begin

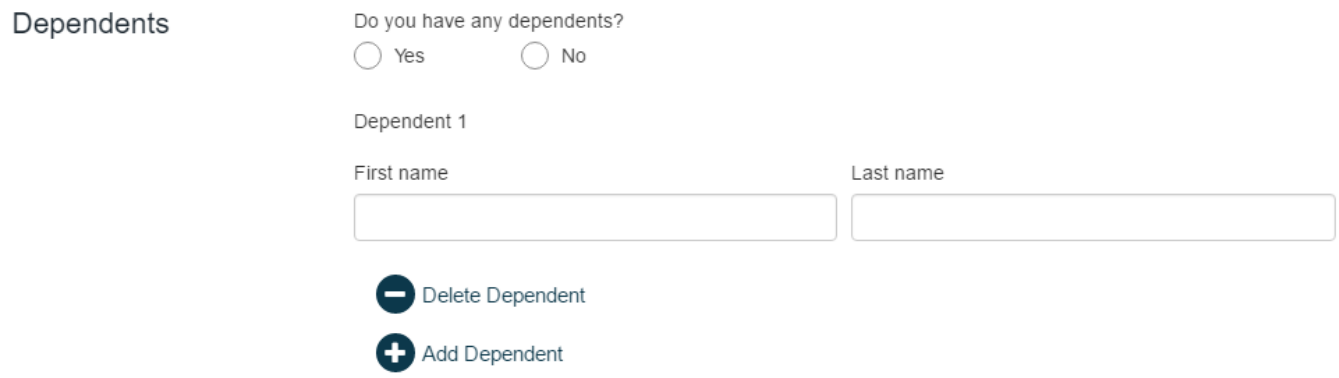
1. Expand Organization.
2. Expand Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Create Component Begin.
5. Click the Edit Version button to open the form

NOTE

You can create components directly from the Components folder, rather than from within a form.

## Step 2 Setup a Repeating Block and Add Components

Add a Repeating Block Template and components to the Dependents section so it matches the image below.



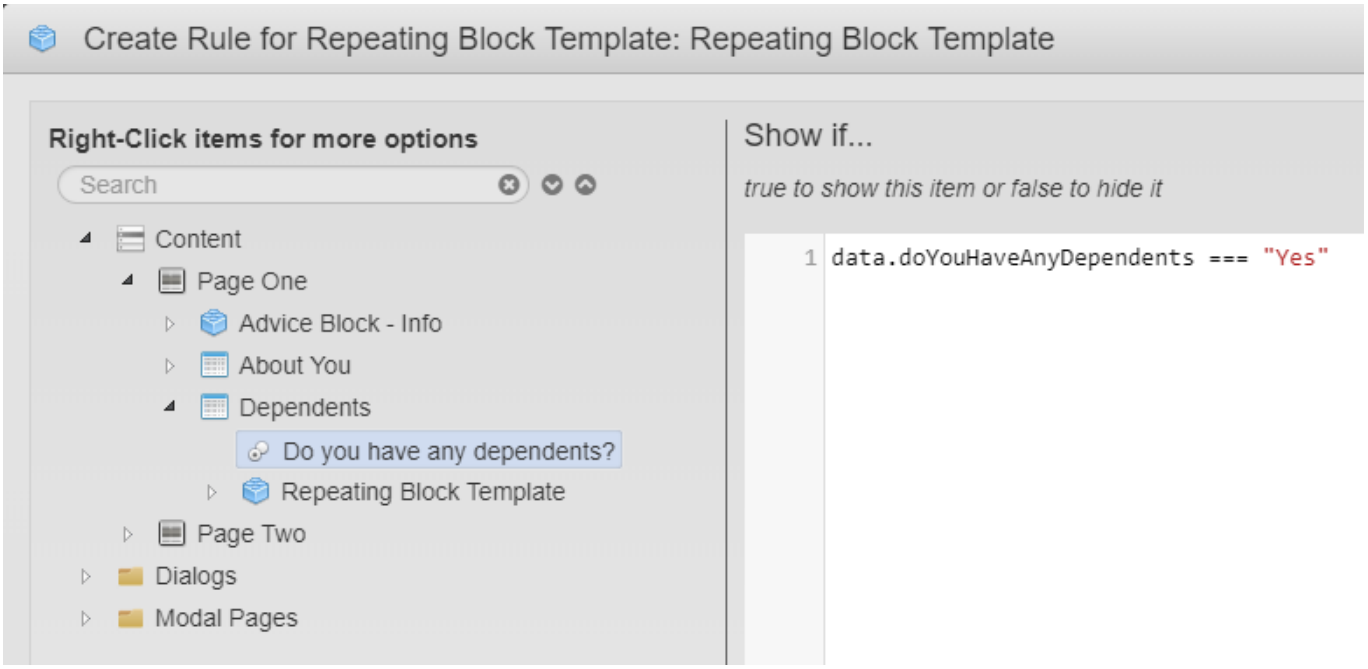

NOTE

The First Name and Last Name components are within the Dependent 1Repeating Block Template. Before you add components, make sure you add the Repeating Block Template first, then add the components.

## Step 3 Create Visibility Rule

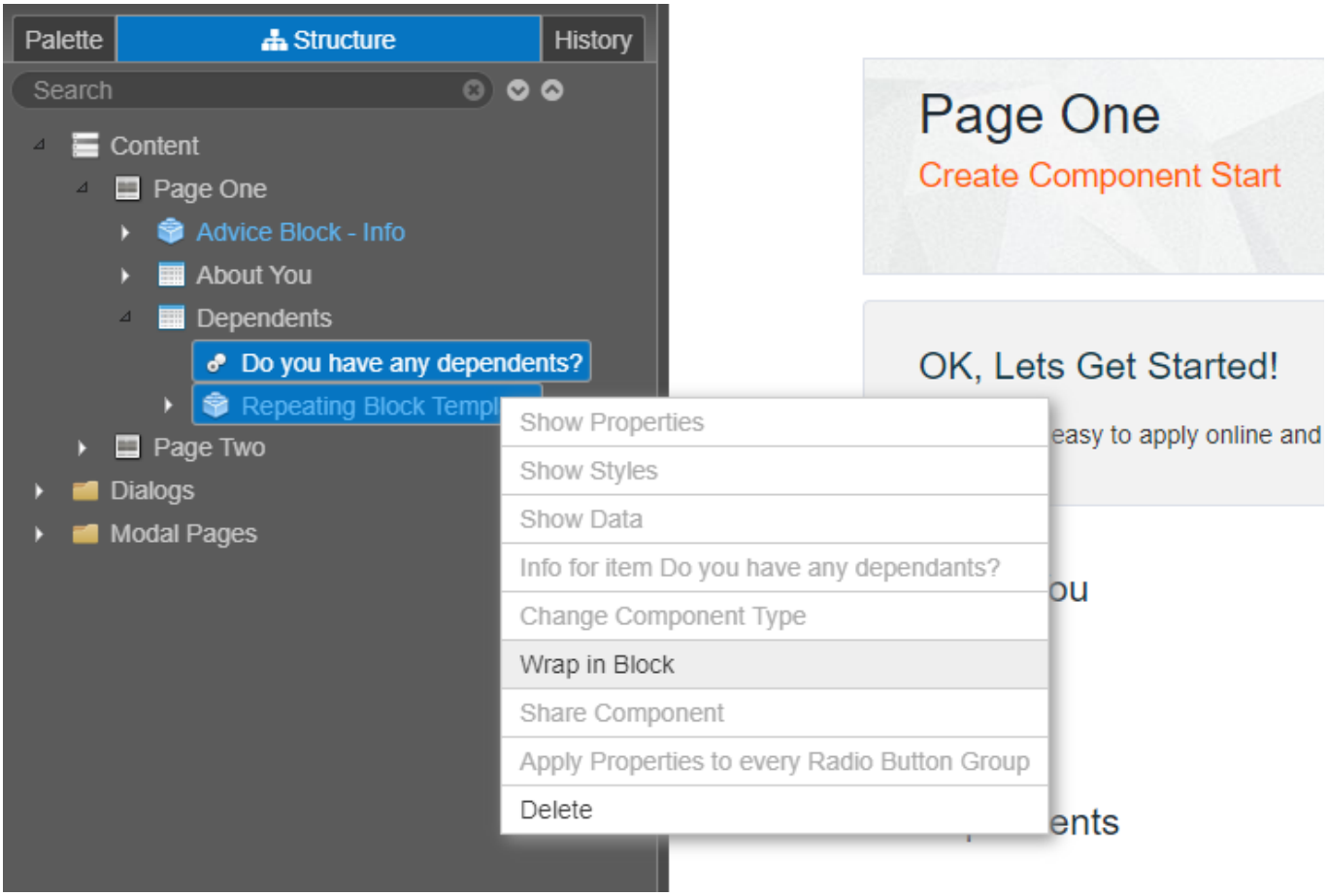
Create a visibility rule so that the repeating block does not show unless the user selects Yes to having dependents.

Create this rule on the Repeating Block Template (see below).



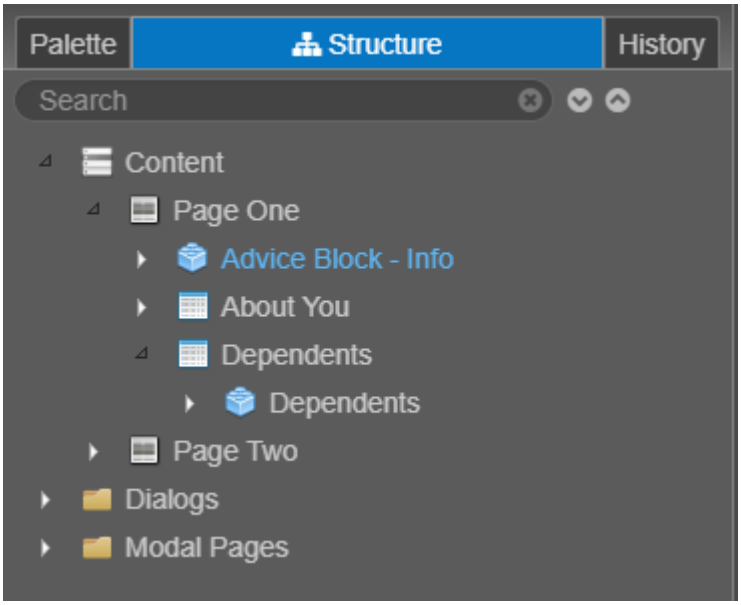

## Step 4 Wrap in block

Wrap all the components (i.e. Radio Button component and Repeating Block) from the Dependents section into a block. See the image below for guidance.



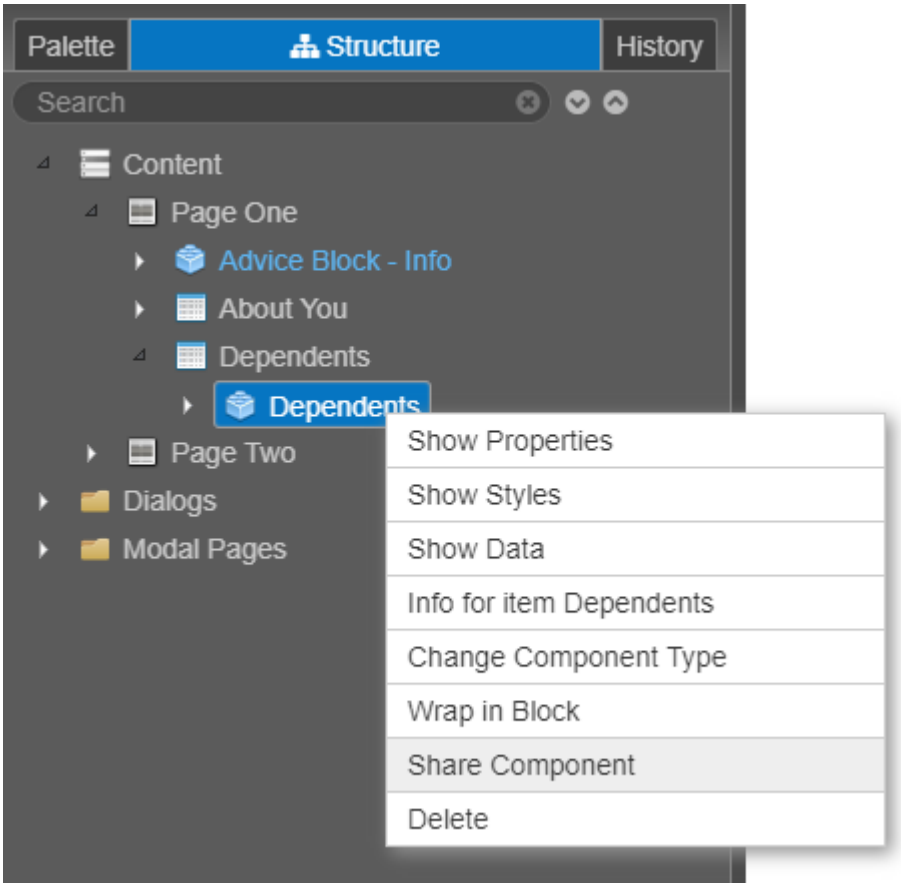
NOTE

If more than one component is going to be part of a shared component, you must wrap the relevant components into a block. Your Structure panel should look like the image below.




## Step 5 Create a Shared Component

Create a shared component that combines the components you just created. Your Structure panel should match the image below.




Use the following details for the shared component:

Name: Dependents_Exercise

Description: Contains the components for applicant's dependents.

Palette Folder: Custom Components

Instant Publish: Select Publish for immediate use and select Replace item with shared component

Publish Library: Select the appropriate project library (e.g. Maestro Training Exercises Library)

> NOTE
>
> Remember: the instant publish options will publish the shared component to the library and replace the existing 'Block' with the shared component. This will ensure the current form is updated if the shared component changes.

To finish, click Save to save the Create Component Begin form - then close the form.

# Step 6 Edit a Shared Component

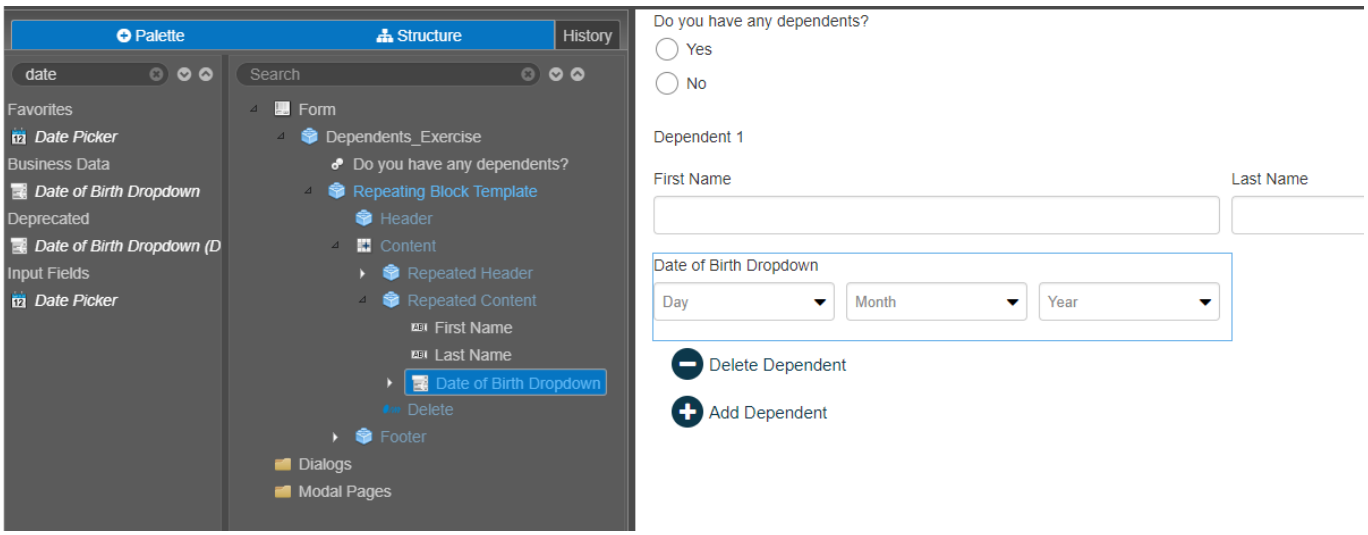
WARNING

Important: make sure your refresh the browser window (Press F5) that displays the Management Dashboard before you proceed.

From the Maestro Management Dashboard, open the shared component you just created and make a change to the component.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Components.
4. Double-click Dependents_Exercise.
5. Click Edit Version to open the Component.

Add the Date of Birth dropdown to the repeating block. Your shared component should match the image below.




NOTE

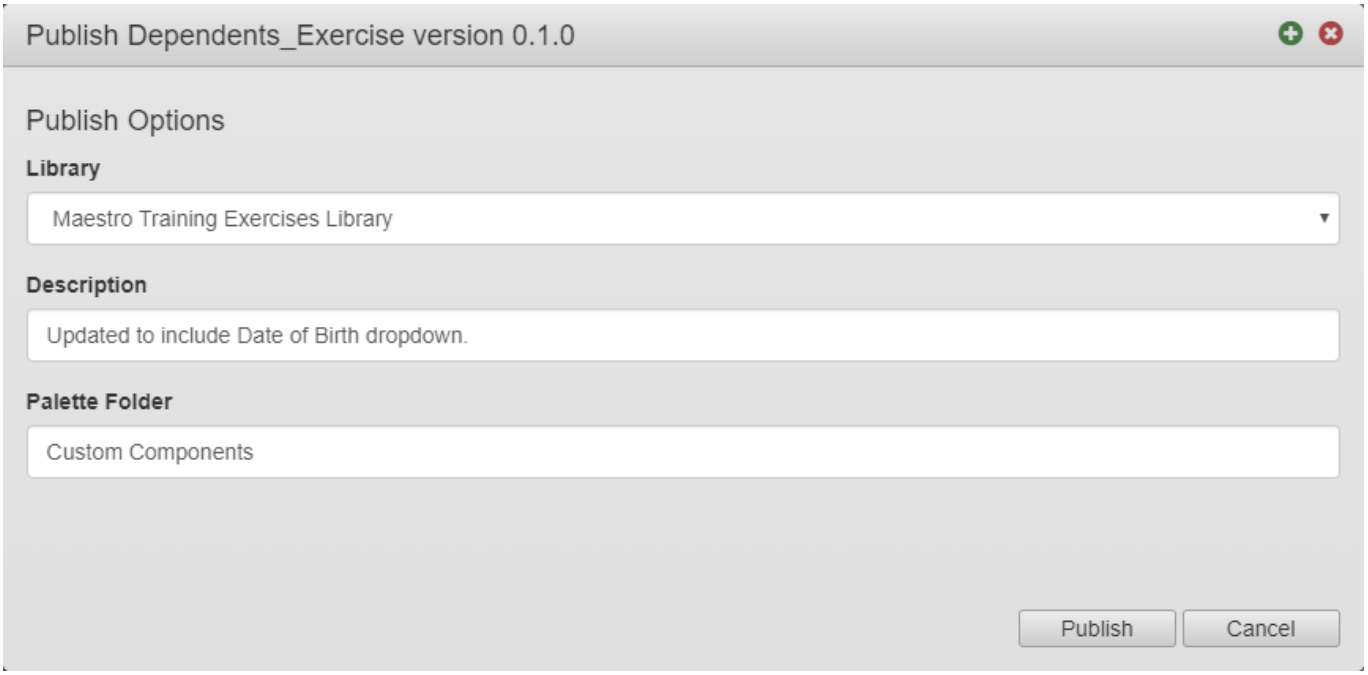
Note that the shared component won't include form elements like the navigator or sections because it's not linked to a specific template.

Click Save to save the changes to the shared component.

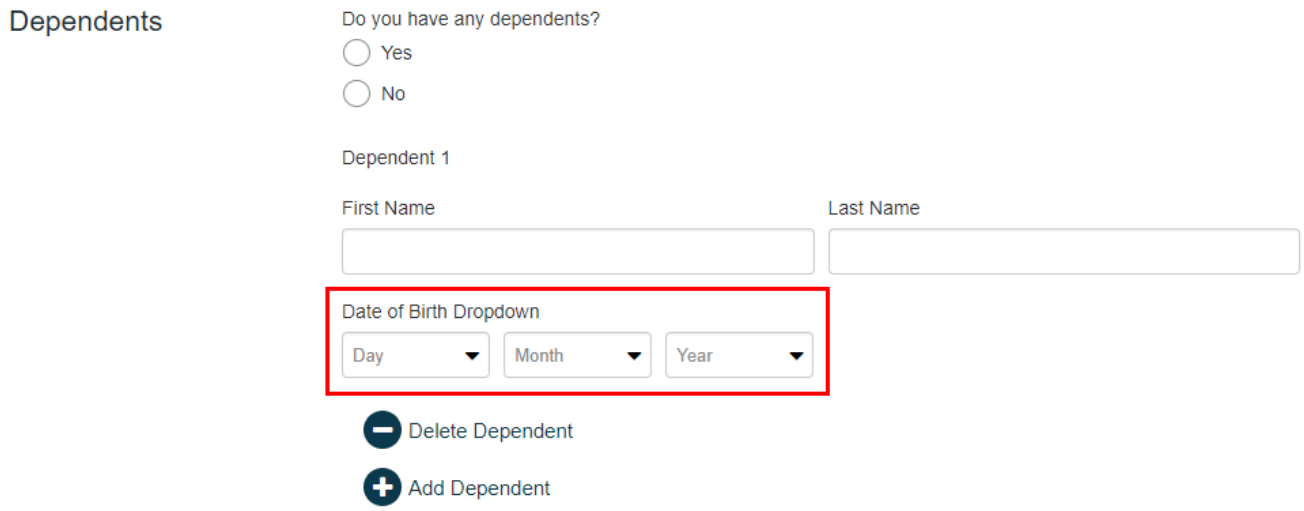
# Step 7 Publish Updated Component

Once the component has been updated, Publish it so the changes are updated in forms currently using the component as well as any new uses of the shared component.

Use the image below for guidance.




Once you publish the updated component, Close the Component window and Open the Create Component Begin form to confirm the changes to the component (below).



# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

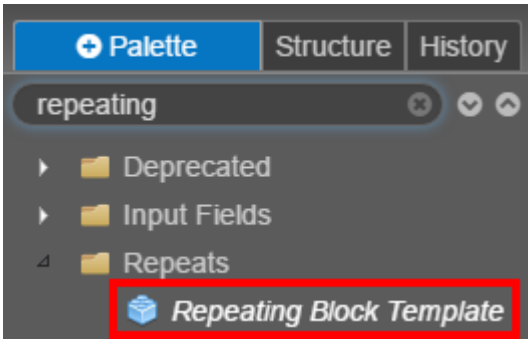
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Using a Repeating Block Template

The Repeating Block Template enables you to easily setup repeating functionality.

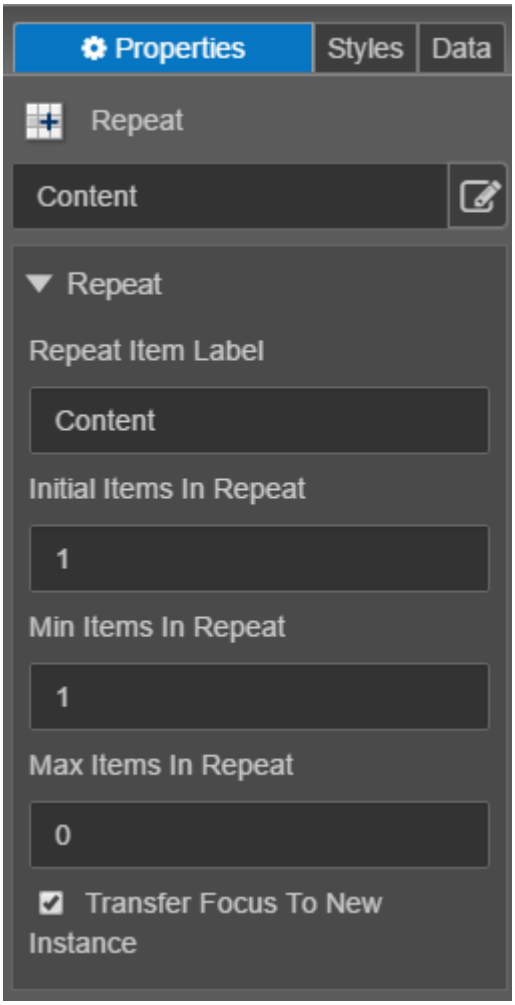
Use the Palette Search to find the Repeating Block Template.

Drag the component onto your form.




Add the components you want to repeat into the field area of the block.

To make adjustments to the Repeating Block properties, select Content within the Repeating Block Template (Structure panel).




Repeat Item Label: updates the label at the top of the block, as well as the button text.

Initial Items In Repeat: determines how many repeating components are on the form by default.

Min Items In Repeat: determines the minimum number of repeating components that must be displayed on the form.

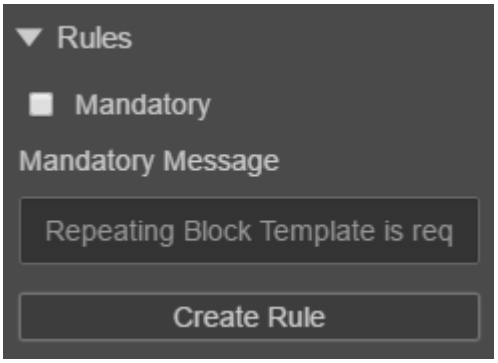
Max Items In Repeat: determines the maximum number of repeating components the user can add to the form.

## Create a Show if Rule

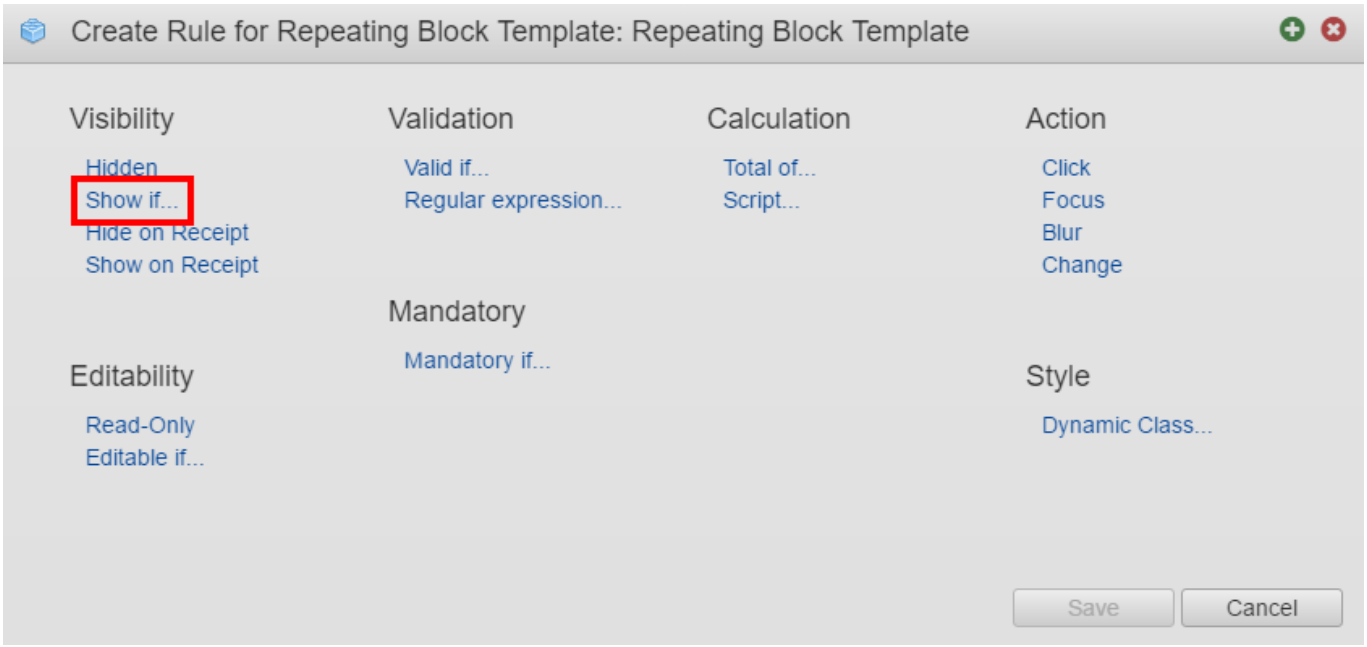
The Show if rule allows you to show or hide a component based on the selection of another.

Start by selecting the component you want to show or hide.

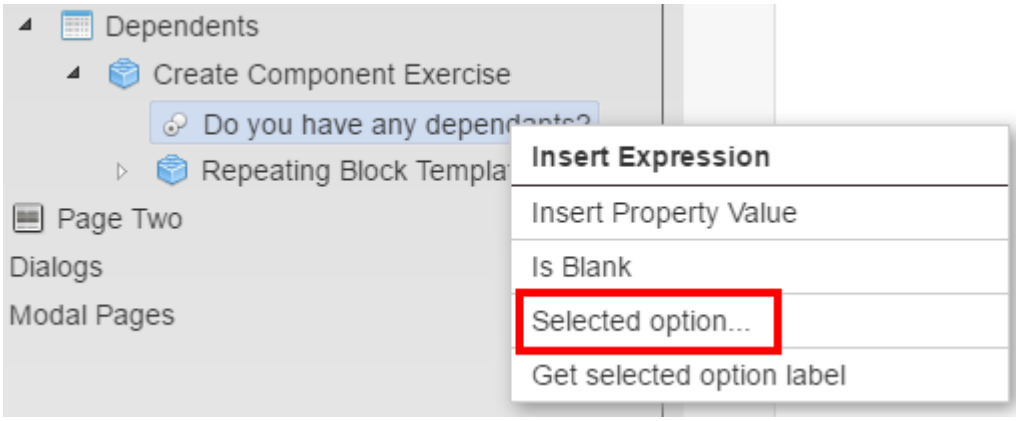
Click Create Rule in the Rules section of the Properties panel.




Select Show if (under Visibility).

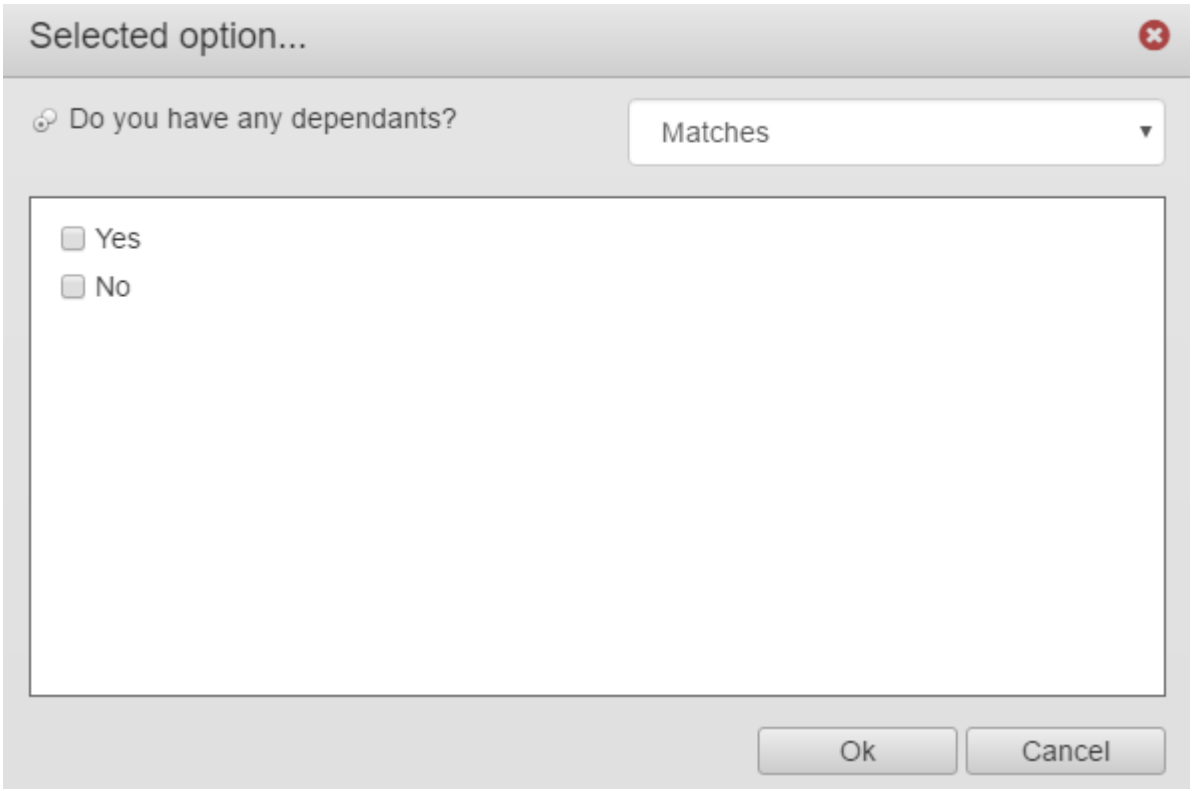



Right-click the component that determines if the selected component is displayed or hidden and click Selected option.




In the top right corner of the Selected option window, choose if the option should match or not match, then select the relevant options.

Click OK to close the window.



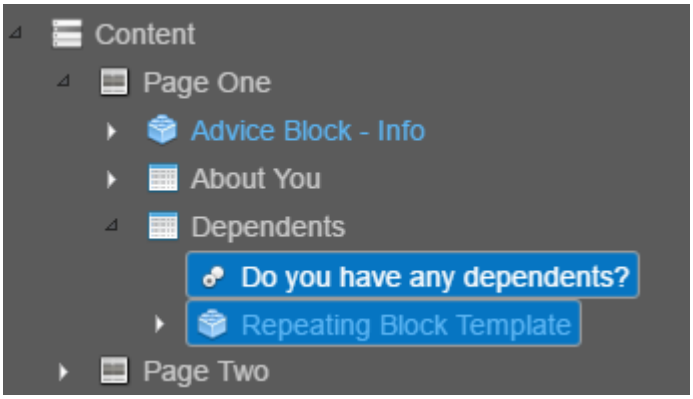

The script for the rule and selected components is displayed.

Click Save to continue.

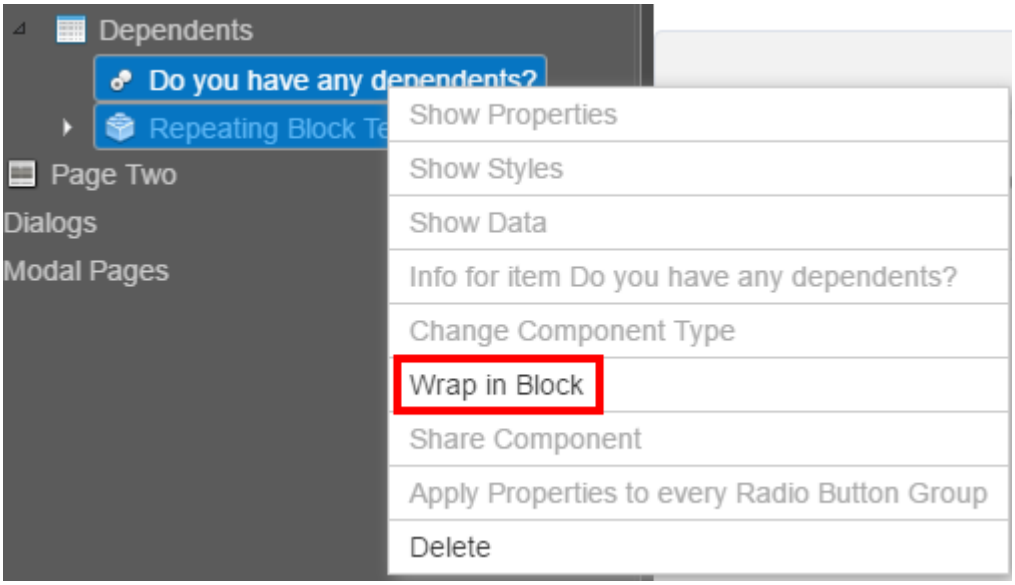
## Wrap Components in a Block

If a shared component is made up of more than one component, you must wrap the relevant components in a block first, then create the shared component.

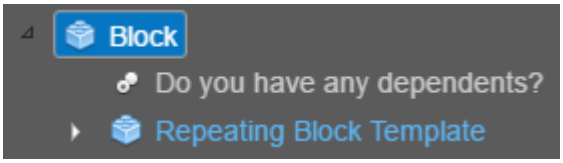
To wrap multiple components in a block, select all the components from the structure panel using either SHIFT or CTRL (see below).



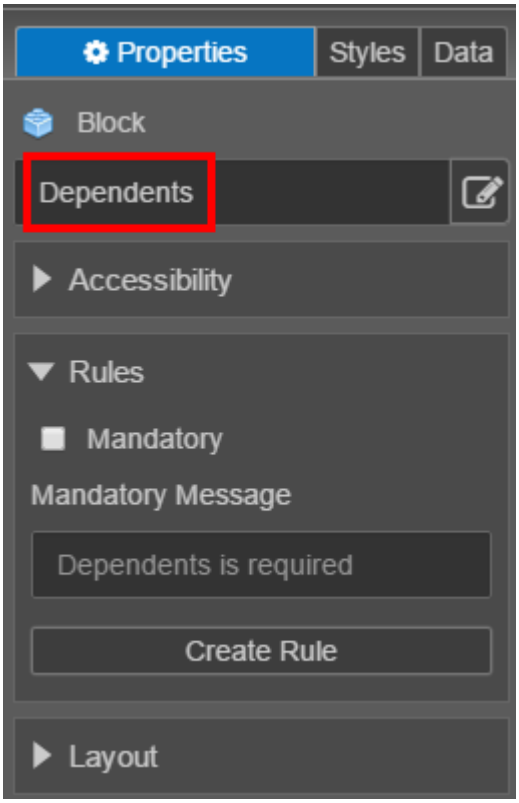

Right-click one of the selected items and select Wrap in Block.




The Block is created and the components are displayed within.



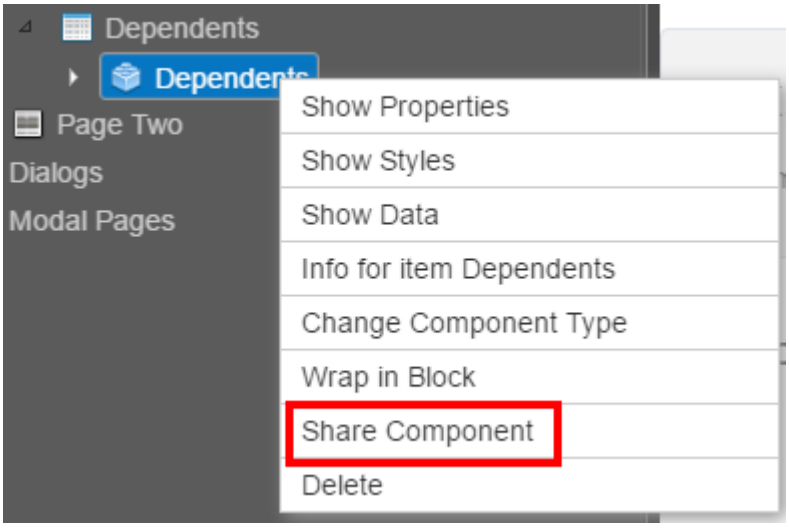

Use the Properties panel to rename the block.



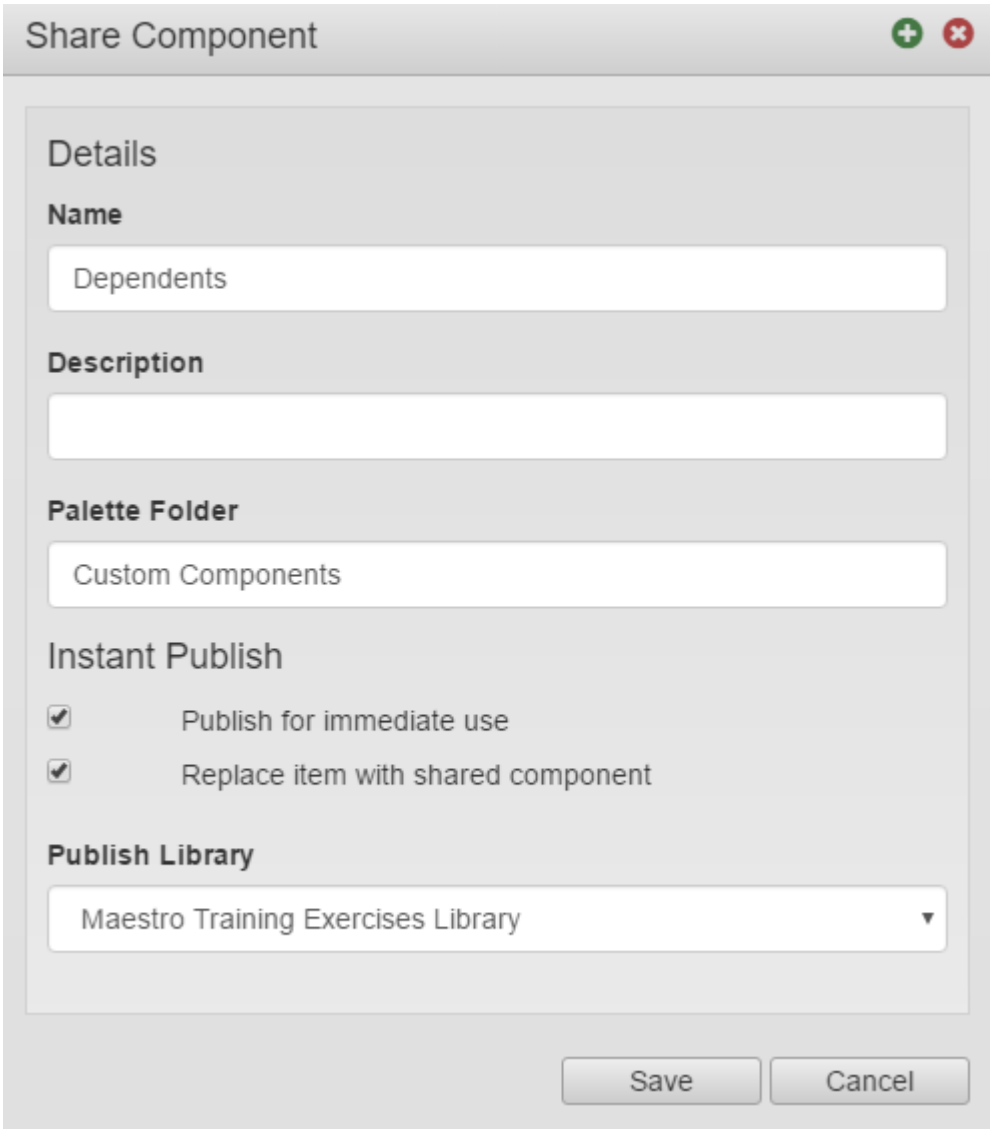

## Create Shared Component

Shared components are stored outside a form, in the Components folder of the project. Once a Shared component is published, it is stored in a Library. Shared components can be updated outside of a form. When they're updated, any forms using that component are updated automatically.

To create a Shared Component, right-click the block and select Share Component.




The Share Component window will display.




Name: is the name of the shared component displayed in the Palette panel.

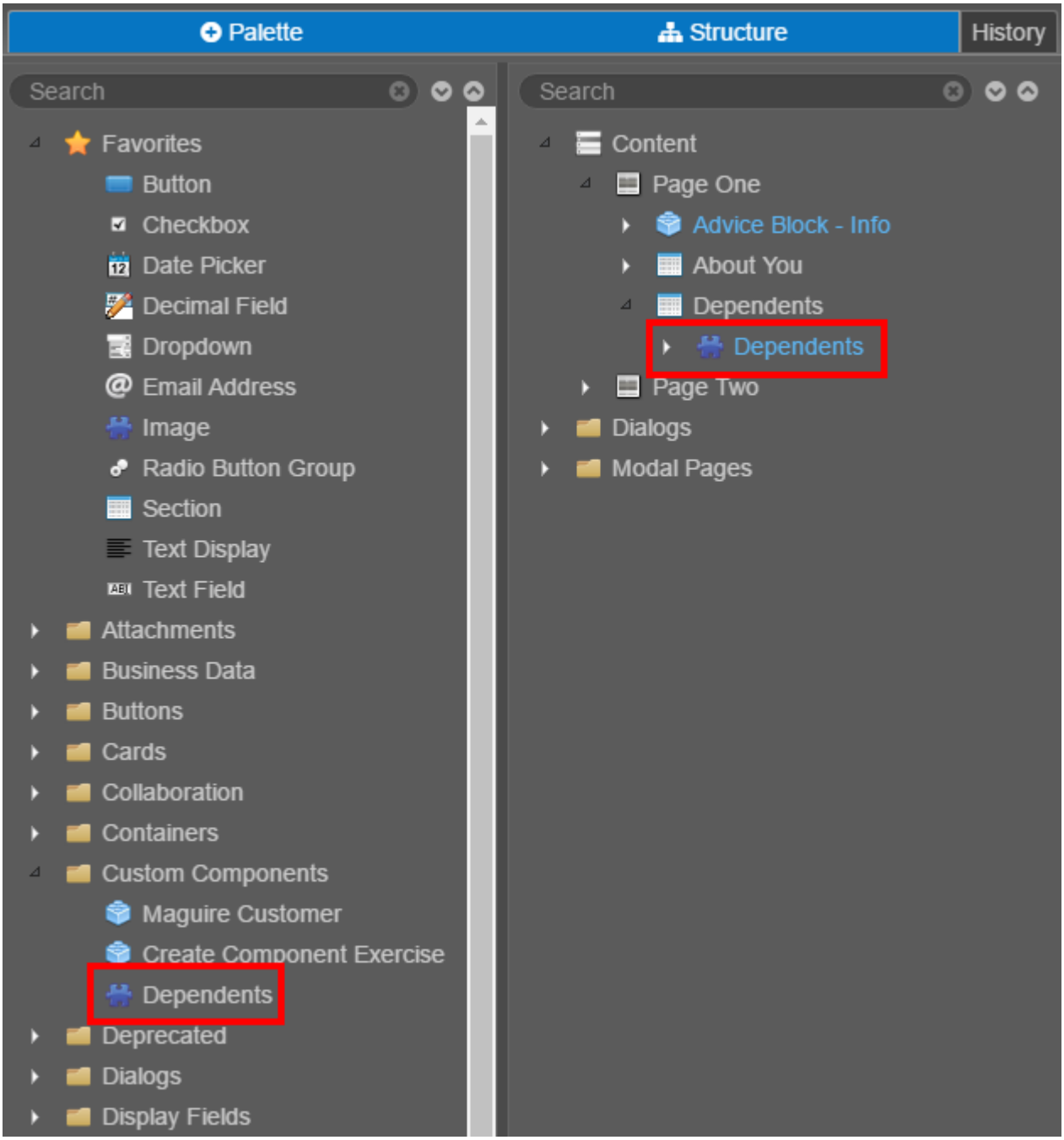
Description: contains details about the shared component like the components in contains.

Palette Folder: is the folder where the shared component is stored within the Palette structure. If you enter a folder name that's already created, the shared component will be added to the folder. If you enter a name not currently be used, a new folder will be created.

Instant Publish – Publish for immediate use: publishes the shared component as soon as you click Save. This adds the component to the library, so other forms can access and use the shared component.

Instant Publish – Replace item with shared component: removes the block currently in the form and replaces it with the shared component. This allows the component in the form to be updated whenever changes to the shared component occur.

The Structure panel is updated with the new shared component and the folder in the Palette panel will contain the shared component.



# Layout Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for working with the layout of your form. During this exercise you will use an existing form to edit the layout of components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

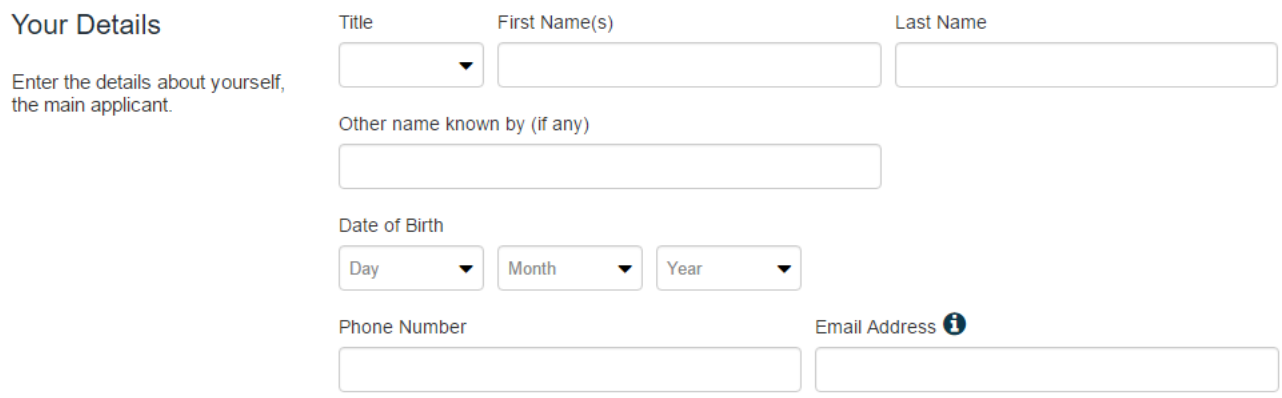
You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises v5.1> Layout Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1: Open the Existing Form Layout Begin.

1. In the Navigator Panel, expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Layout Begin.
5. Click the Edit Version button to open the form.

## Step 2: Adjust the Layout of Title, First Name and Last Name

On the Applicant Details page, adjust the components so they appear on the same line when viewing the form on large screens. Update the 'Your Details' section to match the image below.




Set Title to 2 columns wide.

Set First Name(s) to 5 columns wide.

Set Last Name to 5 columns wide.

Set Other name known by (if any) to 7 columns wide.

Set Phone Number to 6 columns wide.

Set Email Address to 6 columns wide.

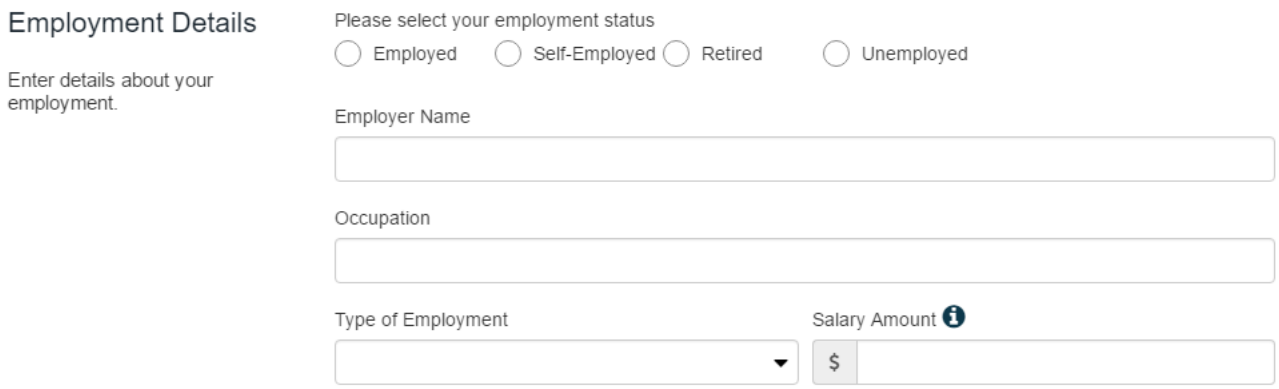
Best practice: only change the width values for the Large and Full Screen sizes.
In the Editor, you'll only see the changes made to the Full screen size.
Use Preview to check the form and make any necessary adjustments.

Once you've made room on a row, you can drag a component into position if it doesn't automatically move to the larger space.

Click Save.

## Step 3: Adjust the Employment Details Components

Adjust the components so they appear like the screenshot below.



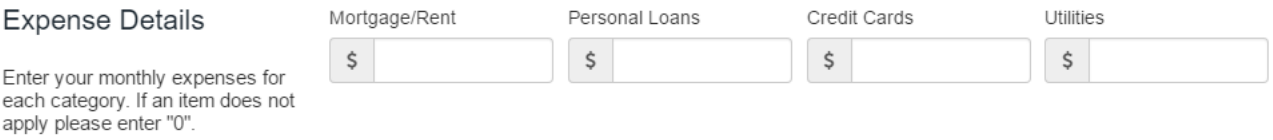

Set Employer Name and Occupation to 12 columns wide.

Set Type of Employment and Salary Amount to 6 columns wide.

Click Save.

## Step 4: Adjust the Living Expenses Components

On the Income and Expenses page, adjust the components so they appear as four columns on the same row.



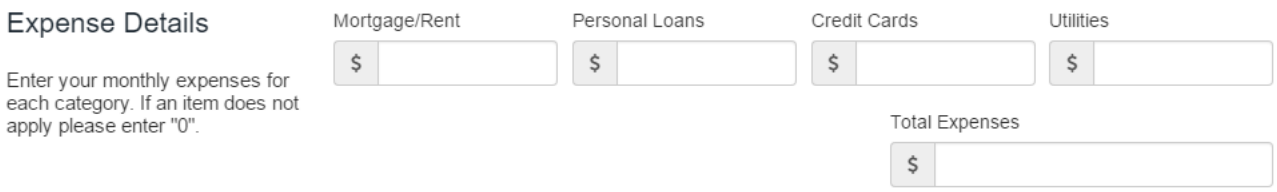

Set all four components to 3 columns wide.

Once you've made room on a row, you can drag a component into position if it doesn't automatically move to the larger space.

Click Save.

## Step 5: Add a New Component to the Living Expenses Section

In the Expense Details section, add a new Total Expenses component.




NOTE

Notice: the currency symbol for Total Expenses is added by using the Currency Field.

Set Total Expenses to 5 columns wide.

Set the Offset for Total Expenses to 7 columns.

Click Save.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

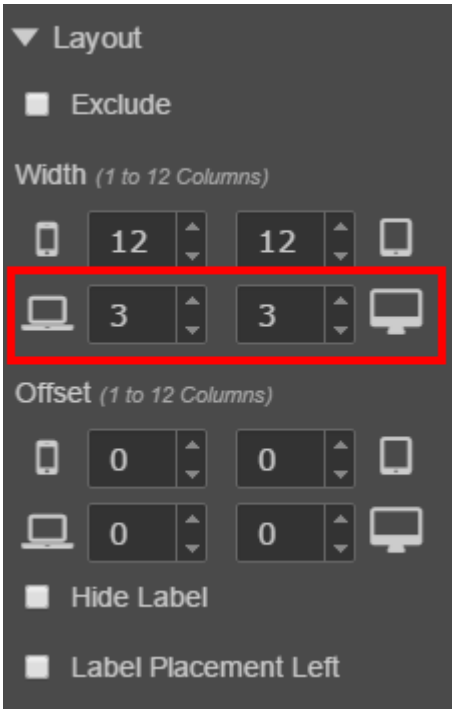
### Change the layout of components

Select the component you want to change. Adjust the Width values within the Layout section (Properties panel) to make any changes.

Decrease the column width for the relevant screen size.

NOTE

You will only see changes in the Editor when you adjust the full screen layout.

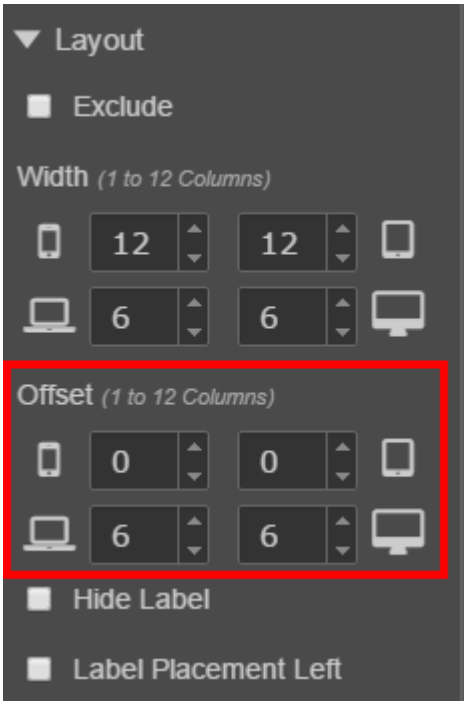



## Change the position of components (using Offset)

Components can be shifted to the right or left within their row. Select the component you want to change.

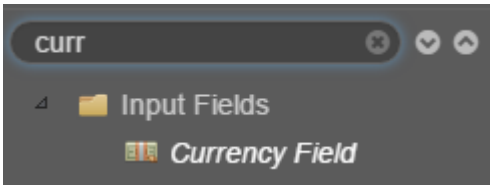
Adjust the Offset values within the Layout section (Properties panel) to make any changes.

You can increase the offset to move the component to the right or decrease the offset to move the component to the left.

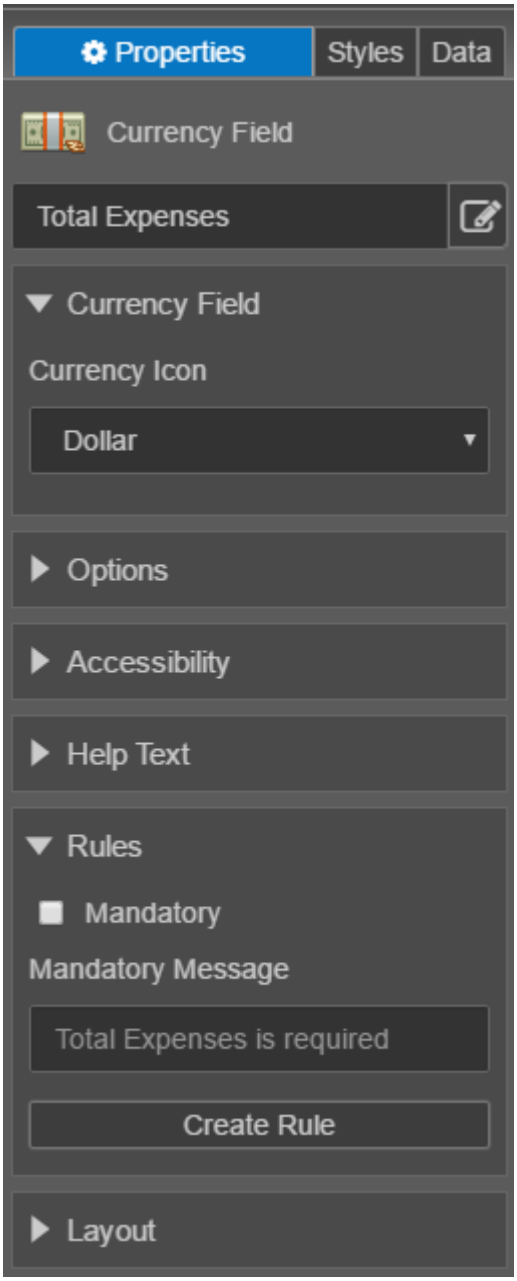



## Add a Currency Field

The Currency Field component automatically includes a currency symbol. Use Search in the Palette to find the Currency Field and add (drag) it to your form.




Use the Properties panel to make changes to the field, including the currency icon used.


Properties
Styles
Data
Currency Field
Total Expenses
Currency Field
Currency Icon
Dollar
Options
Accessibility
Help Text
Rules
Mandatory
Mandatory Message
Total Expenses is required
Create Rule
Layout

# Pages and Sections Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills with pages and sections. During this exercise, you will use an existing form to edit pages and sections as well as add new ones.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises v5.1> Pages and Sections Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1: Create a New Version

Create a new version of the existing form named Pages and Sections Begin.

Follow the steps below to create the new form.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Select Pages and Sections Begin.
5. Click New Version.
6. Enter the following Form Description:

   Description: This form version is to practice working with sections.

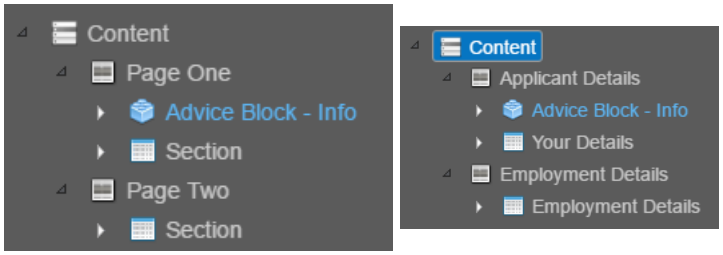
7. Click Create.
8. Click Edit to open the form.

# Step 2: Update the Names of the Existing Pages and Sections

In this form, you will find two pages, each containing a section. You will change the names of both pages and their sections.

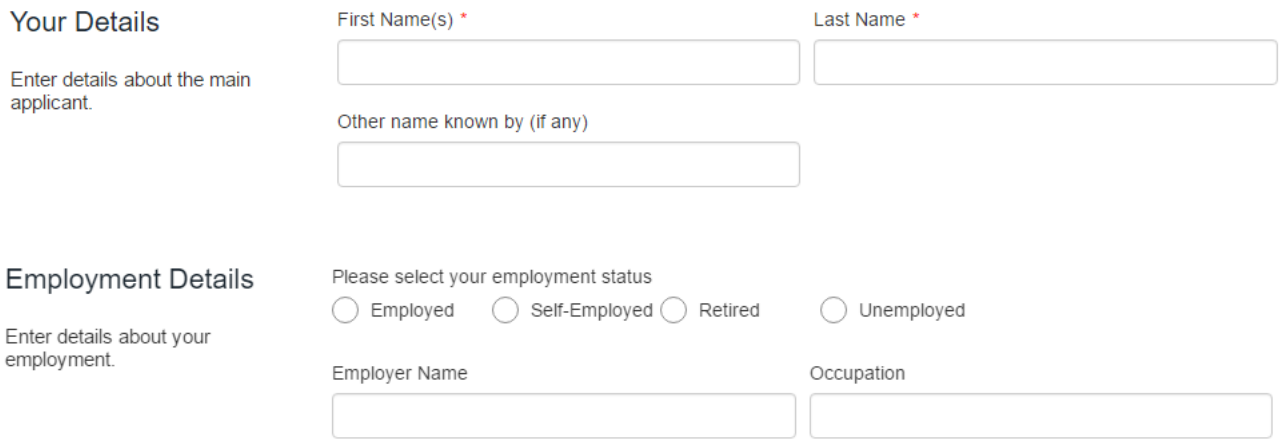
> NOTE
>
> Use the Structure panel to select the pages and sections you want to update.

**Starting Structure Panel** **Updated Structure Panel**




Update the Section - Additional Text (using the supplied text) so your form matches the images below.

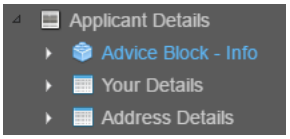
> Your Details: Enter the details about the main applicant.
> Employment Details: Enter details about your employment.




Click Save.

## Step 3: Add a new section to the Applicant Details page

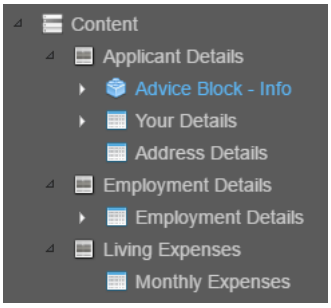
Add your new section after the existing section on page one. Your Structure panel should appear similar to the image displayed.




Click Save.

## Step 4: Add a New Page with a Section

Add a new page (called 'Living Expenses') after the existing pages. Add a new section (called 'Monthly Expenses') to the page. Your Structure panel should match the image below.




Add the following Additional Text for the Monthly Expenses section (text below).

Monthly Expenses: Enter your monthly expenses for each category. If an item does not apply, please enter '0'.

The Living Expenses page should match the image below.

Click Save.

## Step 5: Rearrange the Components

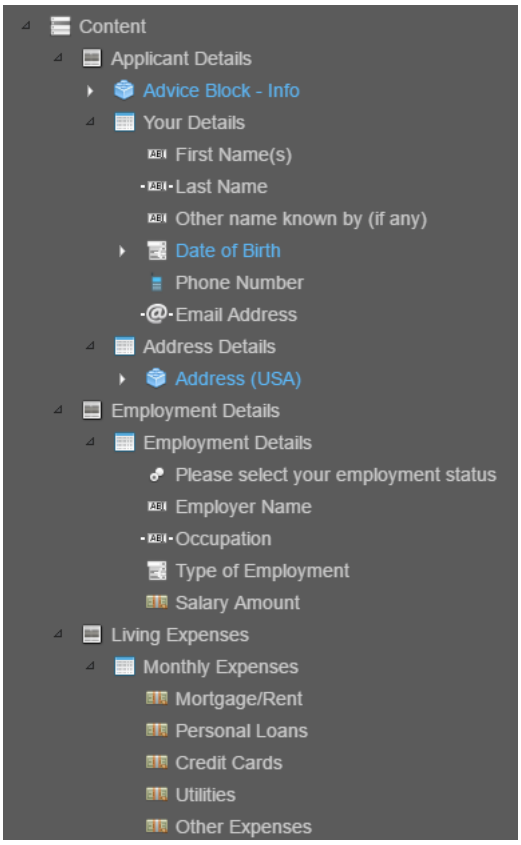
Using the Structure panel:

- Move the Address (USA) block to the Address Details section.
- Move the expense questions (Page Two) to the new Monthly Expenses section (Page Three).

NOTE

You can select multiple components at one time by using SHIFT or CTRL.

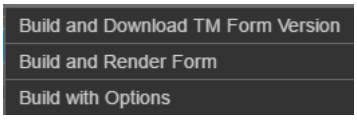
The image below shows how the Structure panel should look once the components have been rearranged.




Click Save.

## Step 6: Build the TM Form Version

Build and Download the TM Form Version.



# Extra Help

Need some Extra Help?

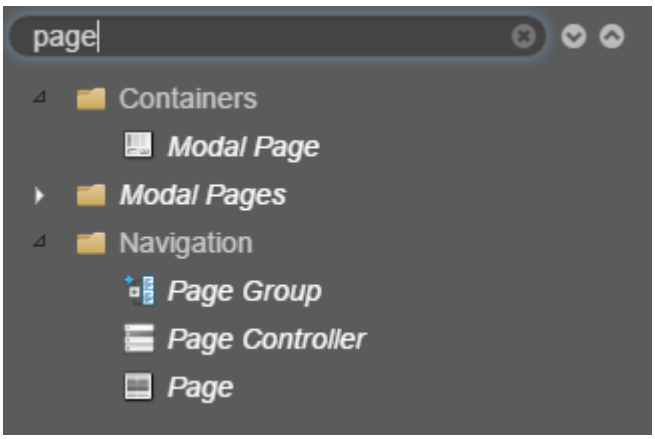
Use the information below to assist in completing the exercise steps.

## Add a new page

Use the Search box in the Palette to find the Page component.

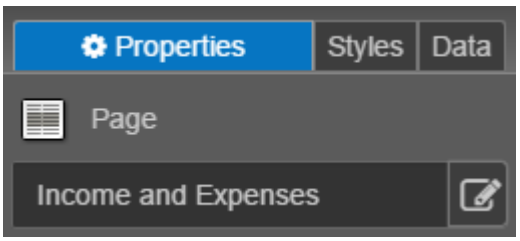
Drag the Page component to the Content container on the Structure panel.

> NOTE
>
> Pages Groups and Pages cannot be added into the Editor pane.



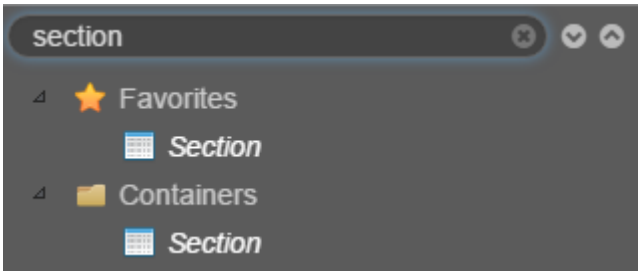

> NOTE
>
> You can also right-click the Content folder (Structure panel) and choose Add Page Group.

Use the Properties panel to change the name of the page.



## Add a new section

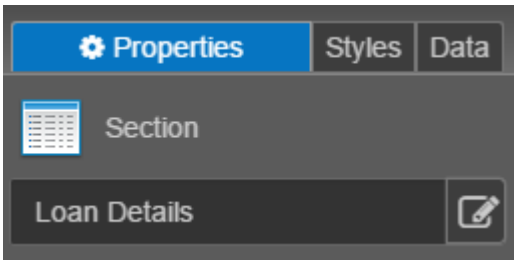
Sections can be added to pages to help organize the display of the components. Use the Search box in the Palette to find the Section component (or look under 'Favourites'). Drag the Section component to the Page container on the Structure panel.




NOTE

You can also drag a new 'Section' component onto the form.

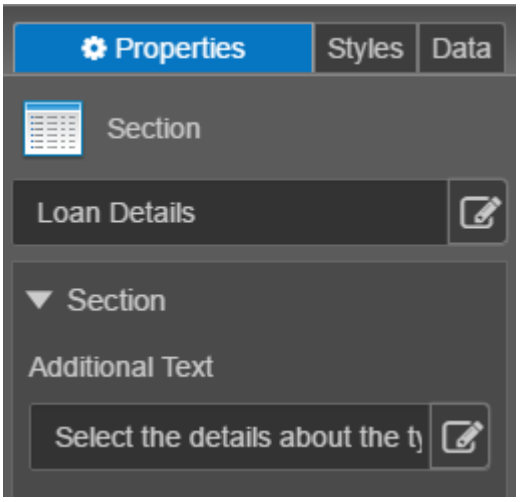
Use the Properties panel to change the name of the section.



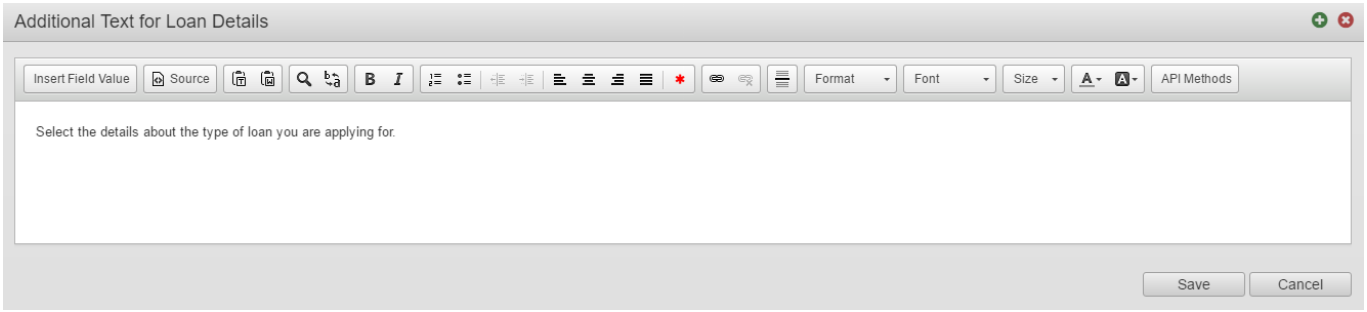

## Additional Text

Use the Properties panel to customize the text below the section title.

In the Properties panel, enter text in the Additional Text entry box.

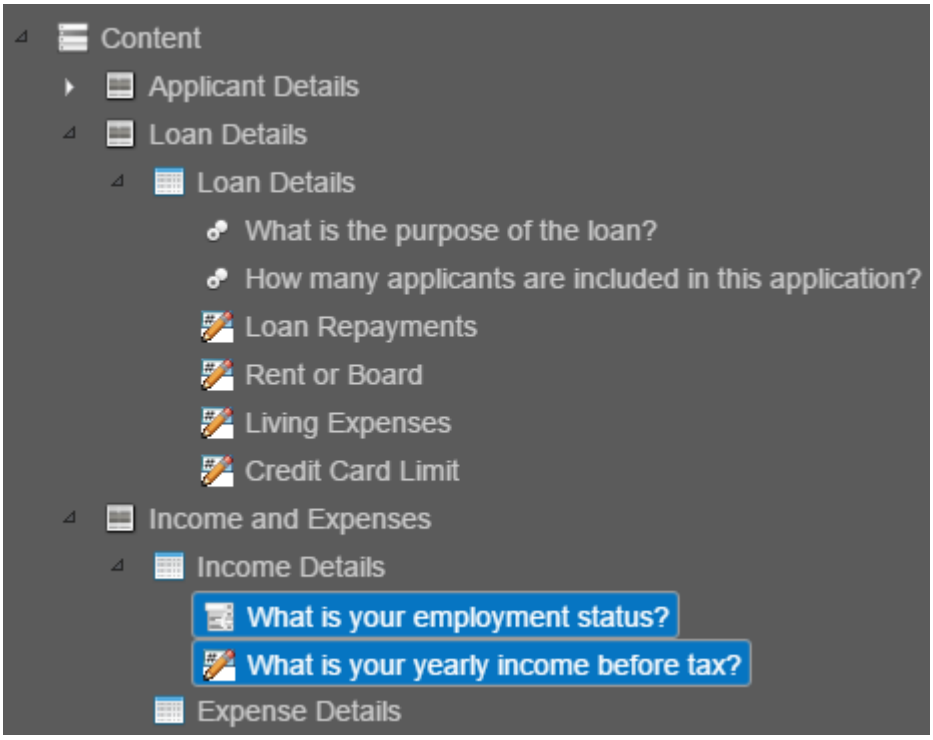



You can click the Edit button to display the Additional Text window. Here you can edit and format the additional text displayed on the form.



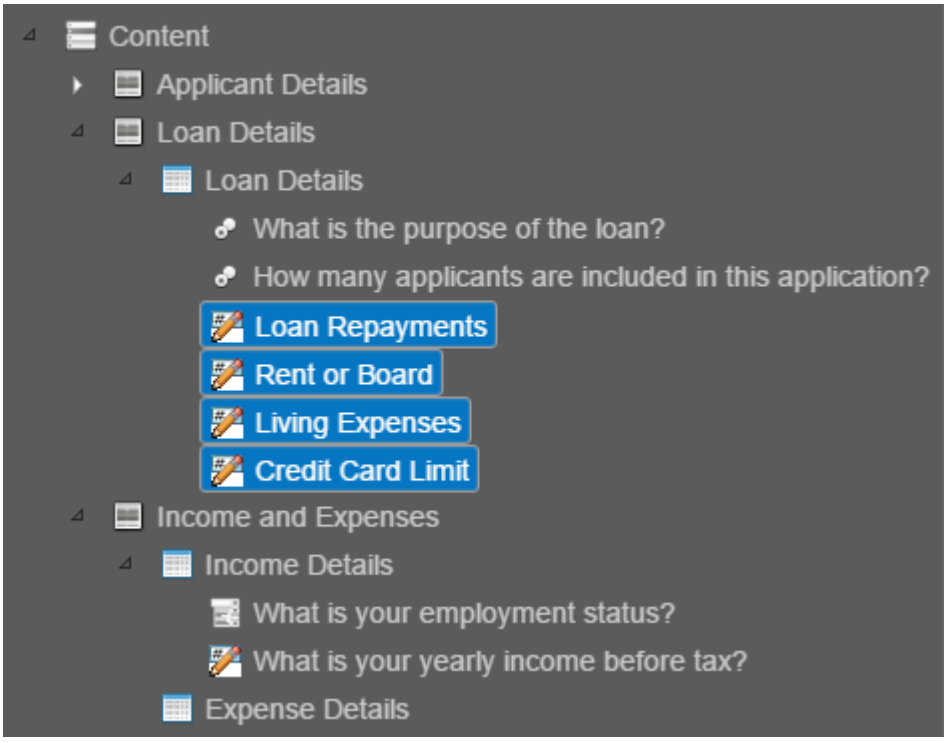

## Rearrange Components

Use the Structure panel to drag and drop components between pages and/or sections.

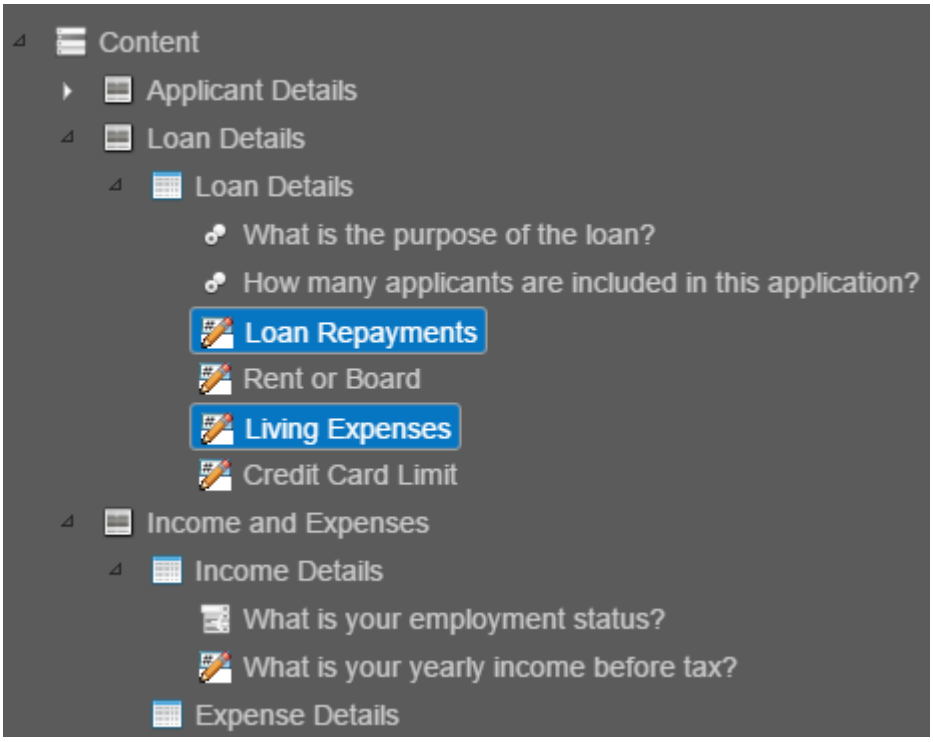



Select multiple components at one time using SHIFT or CTRL. Once selected, you can drag them to a different container.

Select adjacent components using SHIFT (below)




Select non-adjacent components using CTRL (below)


Content
Applicant Details
Loan Details
Loan Details
What is the purpose of the loan?
How many applicants are included in this application?
Loan Repayments
Rent or Board
Living Expenses
Credit Card Limit
Income and Expenses
Income Details
What is your employment status?
What is your yearly income before tax?
Expense Details

# Repeating and Shared Components Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for using repeating components and shared components. During this exercise you will use an existing form to add repeating and shared components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Repeating and Shared Components Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open the Existing Form 'Repeating and Shared Components Begin'

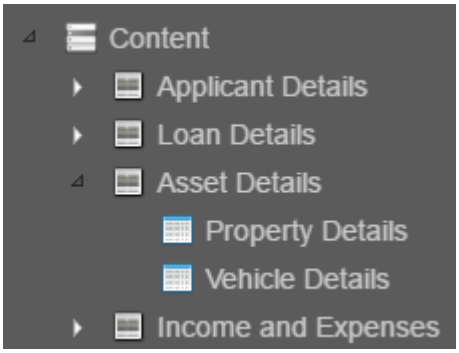
1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Repeating and Shared Components Begin.
5. Click the Edit Version button to open the form

## Step 2 Add a New Page with Sections to Your Form

Add a new Page called Asset Details.

Add two new Sections to this page called Property Details and Vehicle Details.

Your Structure panel should match the image below.




Click Save.

## Step 3 Add Components to the Page

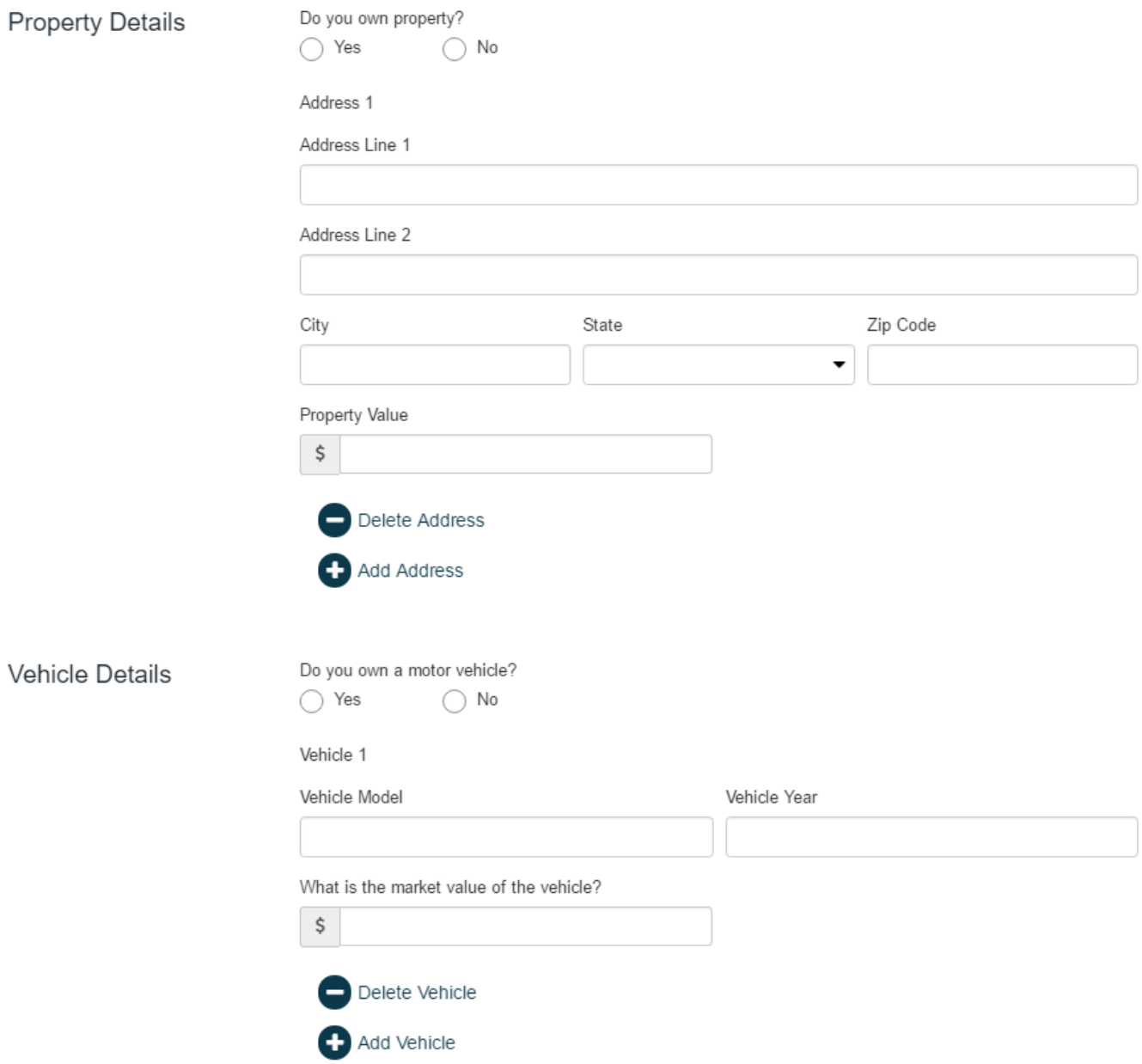
Add components to the new page so it matches the image below.

NOTE

Notice: the Address 1block and Property Value component are within a Repeating Block Template. Before you add components to the page, you should add the Repeating Block Template first, then add the components to the block.

Create a Show if rule to only show the Repeating Block Templates when the user selects Yes to owning Property or a Vehicle.

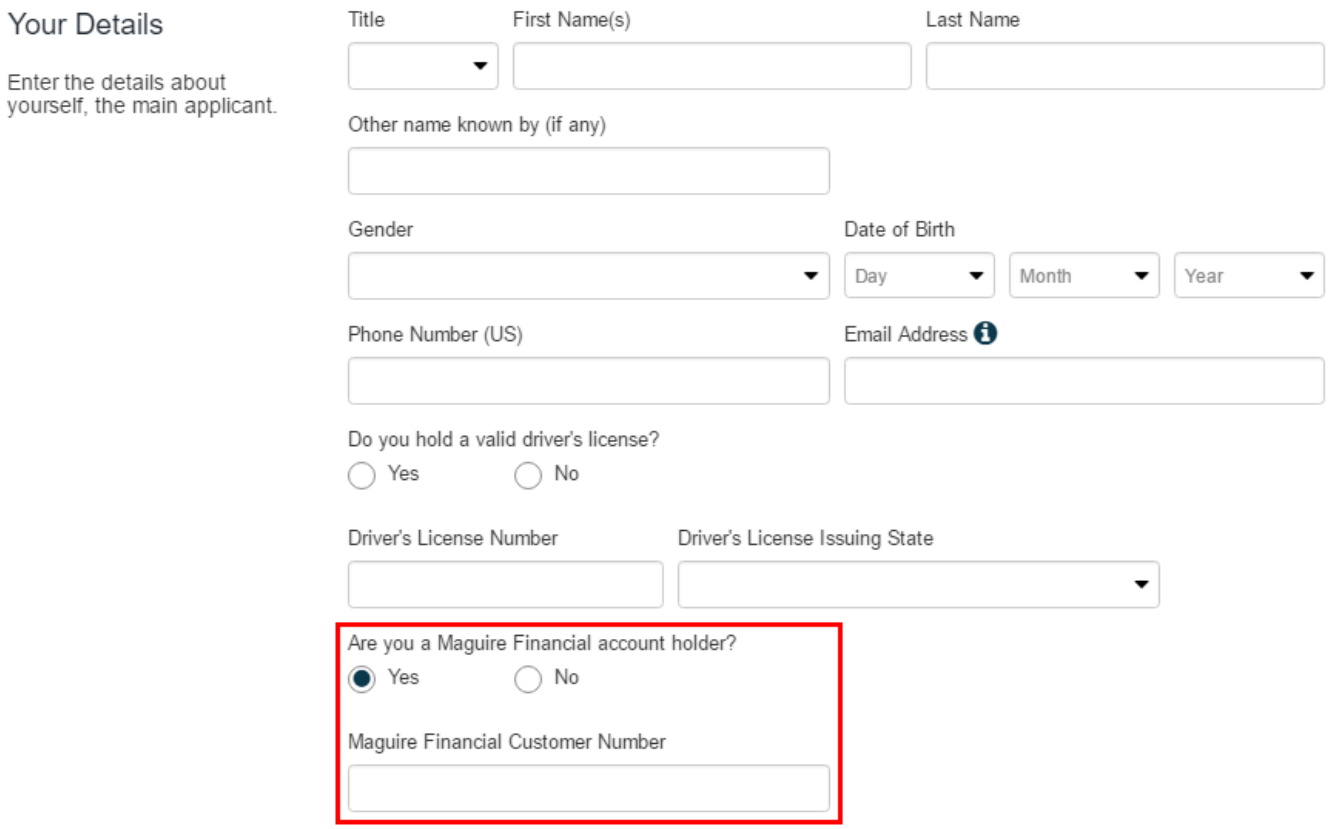
Click Save.




# Step 4 Add a Shared Component

Add the Maguire Customer shared component to the bottom of the Your Details section.

Click Save.




NOTE

Shared components can be stored anywhere in the Palette, so use the Search if you're unsure of a component's location.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Add a new Page and Section

Display the Palette and Structure panels side by side (use button in top left).

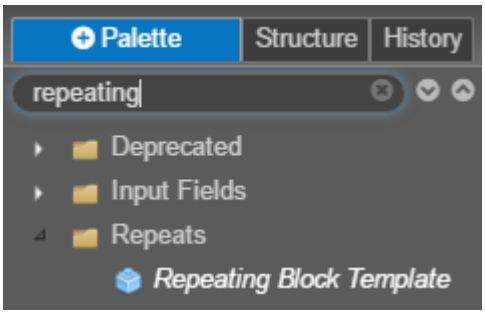
Search for the Page component and drag it onto the Content folder (Structure panel). Drag the new Page into the correct order.

Drag two new Section components onto the new Page.

## Using a Repeating Block Template

The Repeating Block Template includes all of the necessary items to easily setup repeating functionality.

Use the Palette Search to find the Repeating Block Template (see below).

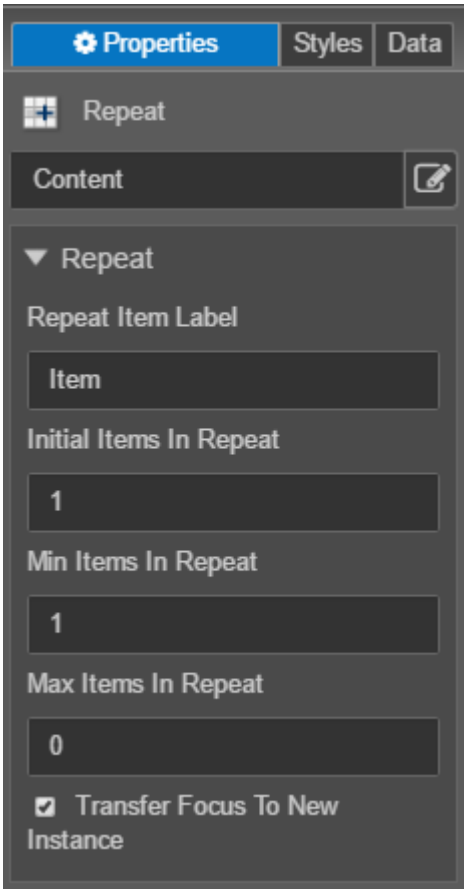



Drag the component onto your form.

You can add the components you want to repeat into the field area of the repeating block.

To make any adjustments to your repeating block, select Content within the Repeating Block Template (Structure panel).

With Content selected you can edit values in the Properties panel.




Repeat Item Label: this updates the label at the top of the block, as well as the button text.

Initial Items In Repeat: determines how many repeating components are on the form by default.

Min Items In Repeat: determines the minimum number of repeating components that must be displayed on the form.

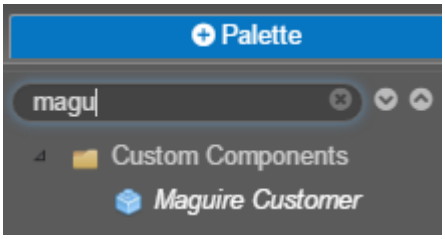
Max Items In Repeat: determines the maximum number of repeating components a user can add to the form.

## Using a Shared Component

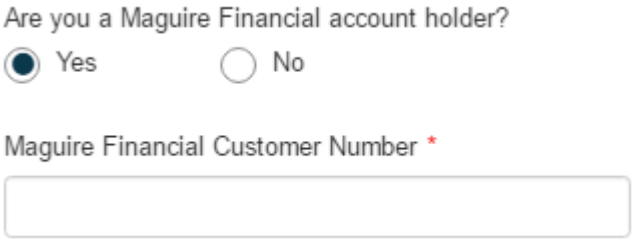
Shared components are stored outside of a form, in the Components folder within the project. A shared component can be updated outside the form. When updates are made, all forms using that component are updated automatically.

Use Search in the Palette to locate the shared component you want to use.

Drag the shared component to the form. The shared component will be added.




The shared component will contain the components along with any custom properties.



# Rules without Scripting Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating rules without scripting. During this exercise you will use an existing form to add non-scripted rules.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

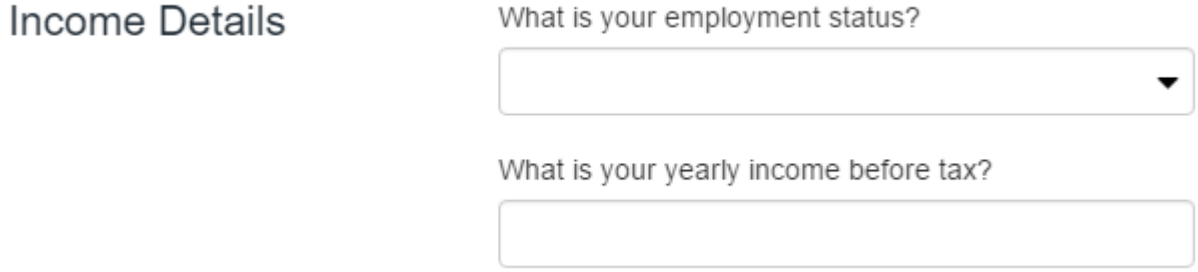
You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises v5.1> Rules without Scripting Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open the existing form Rules without Scripting Begin.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Rules without Scripting Begin.
5. Click Edit Version to open the form.

## Step 2 Create a Rule for Income Details

Create a Show If rule that displays the 'yearly income' component if the 'employment status' is set to 'Employed' or 'Self-Employed'.

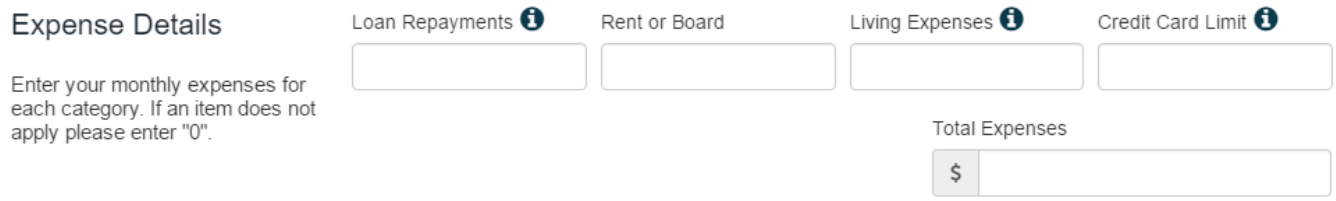


Click Save.

## Step 3 Calculate the Total of the Four Expenses in the Expense Details Section

Calculate the total of the four expenses in the Total Expenses field.

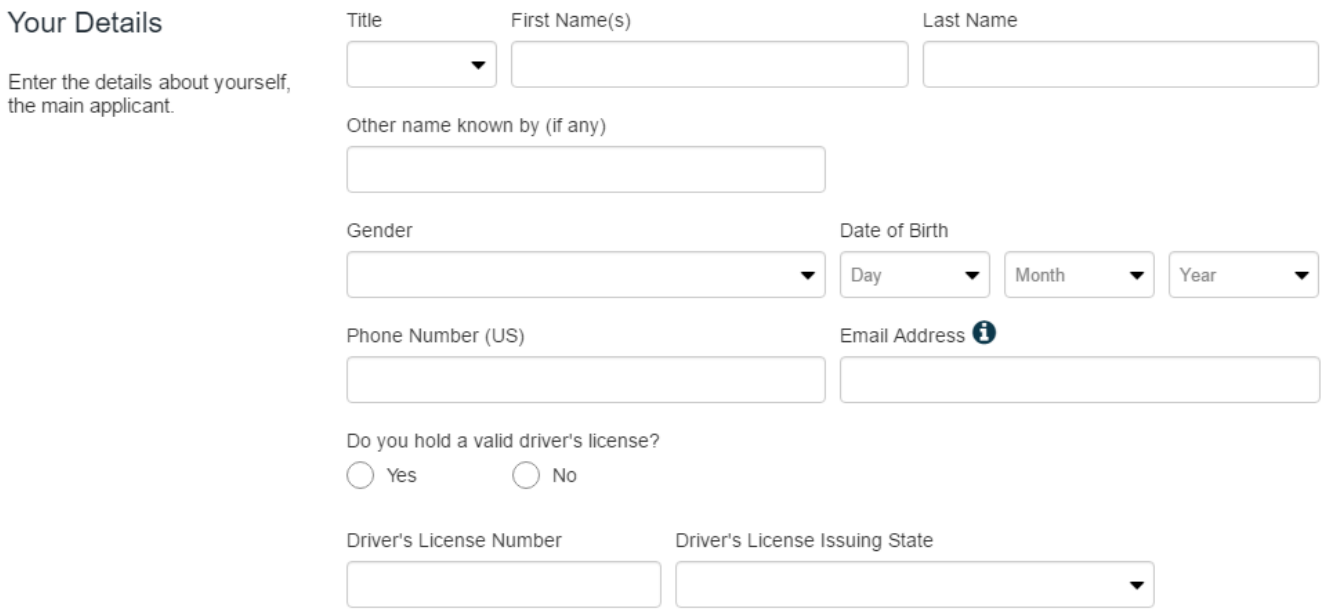
Set up another rule to make Total Expenses read only.




Click Save.

## Step 4 Add the Driver License Components to the Your Details Section.

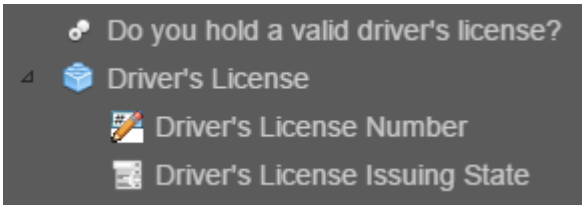
Add the Driver License components shown below.




Click Save.

# Step 5 Create a Rule for Driver License

Wrap the Driver's License Number and Driver's License Issuing State components into a block, then add a Show If rule so the components only display when the user selects Yes to having a driver's license.




Click Save.

NOTE

Important: you should wrap Driver's License Number and Driver's License Issuing State in a block before creating the rule. This way you only have to apply the rule to the block, rather than applying to individual components.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

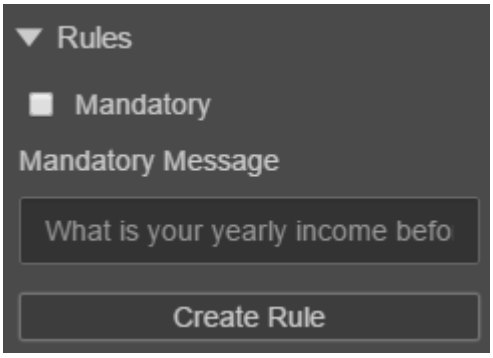
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create a Show If Rule

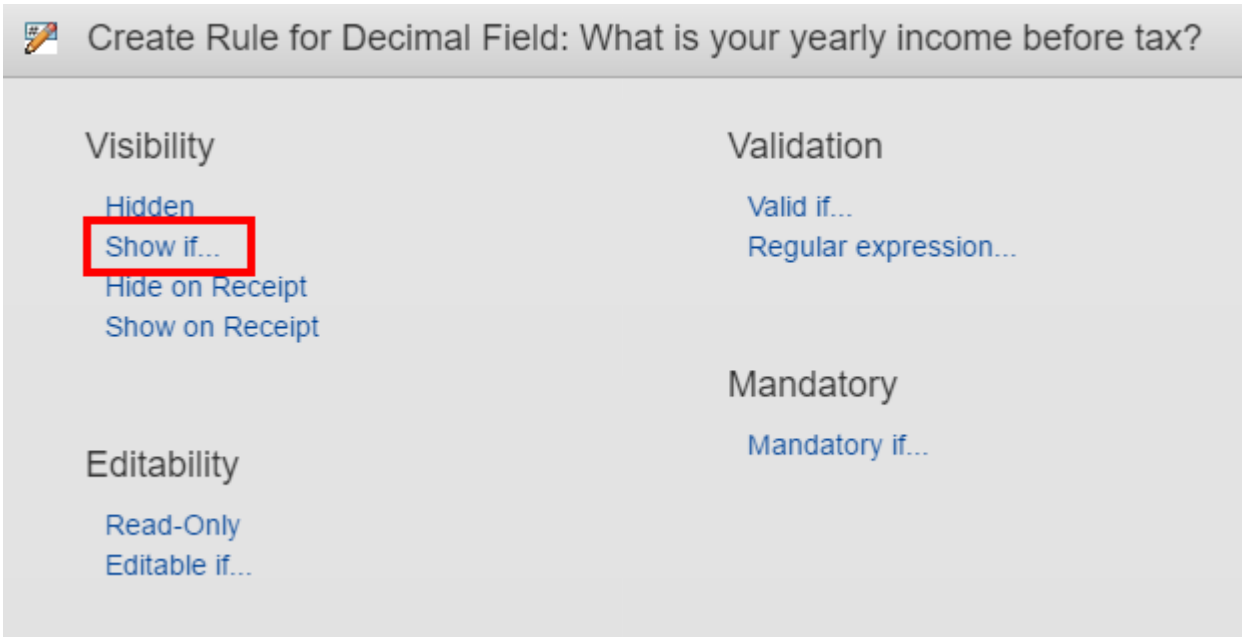
A Show If rule allows you to show or hide a component based on the selection of another component.

Select the component you want to show or hide.

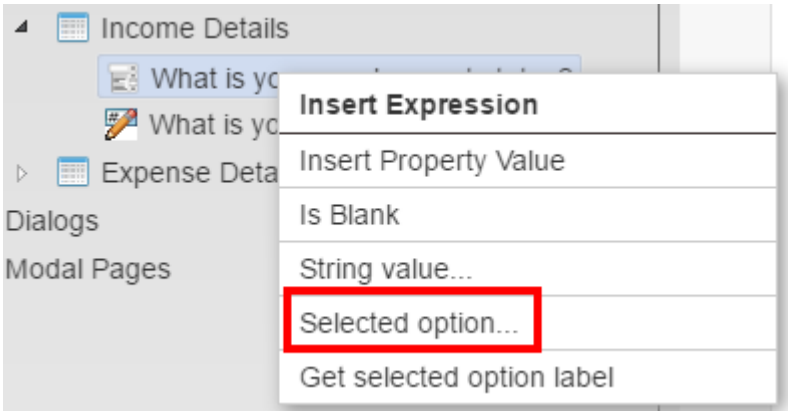
Click Create Rule in the Rules section (Properties panel).



Select Show If.

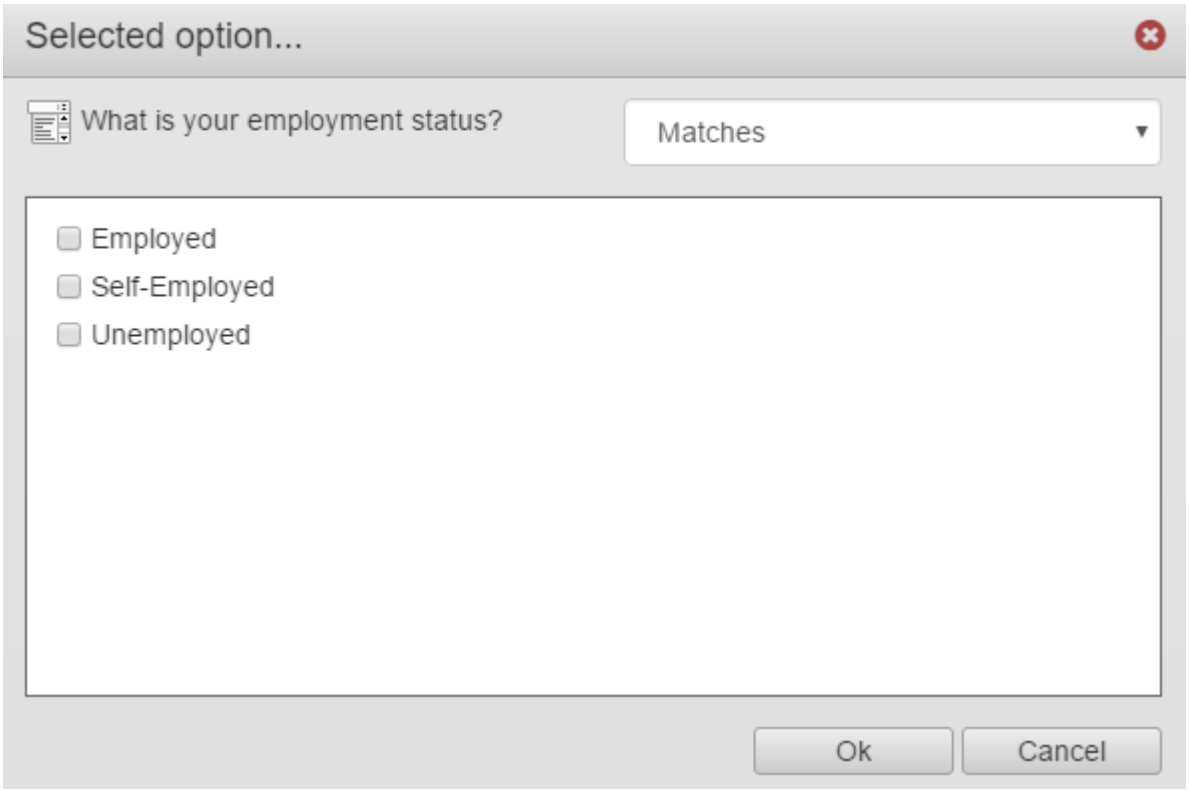



Right-click the component that determines if the selected component is displayed or hidden and click Selected option.




In the top right corner of the Selected option window, select if the option should match or not match, then select the relevant options.

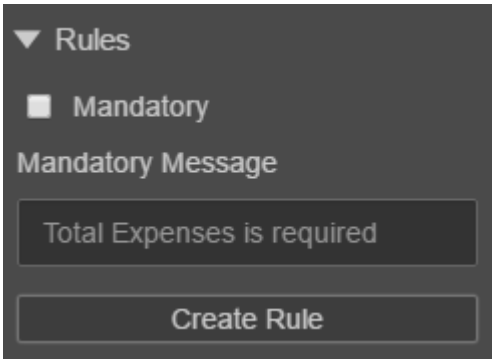
Click OK.



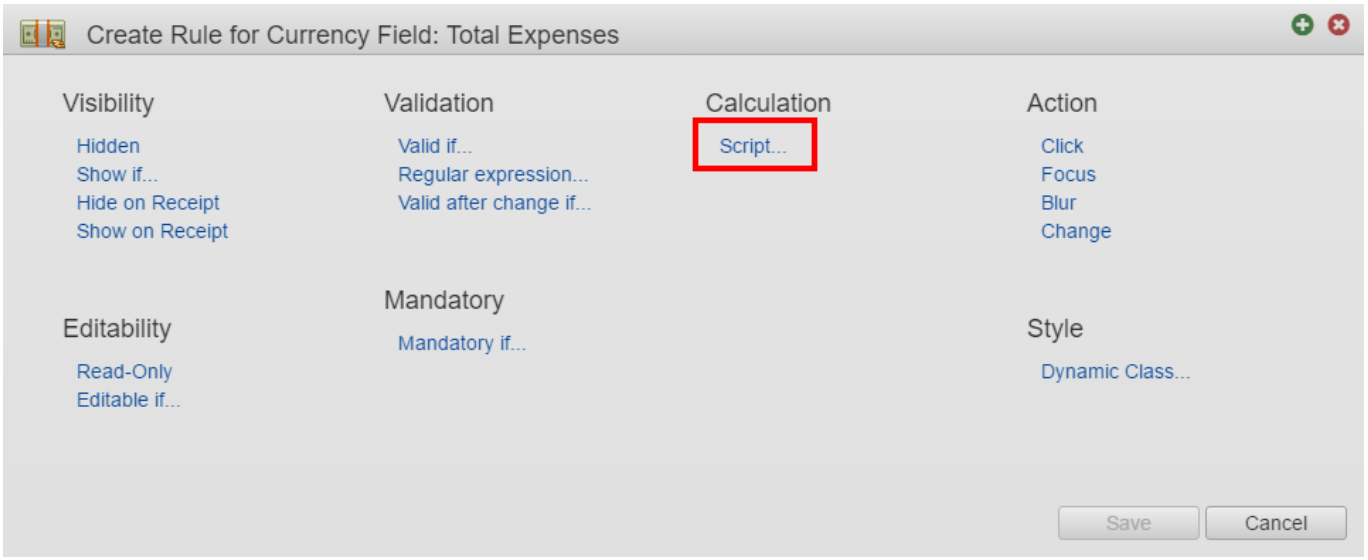

The script for the rule and selected components is displayed. Click Save.

## Create a Script Rule

A Script rule will perform calculations based on selected components. Select the component where the calculation will be displayed. Click Create Rule in the Rules section (Properties panel).

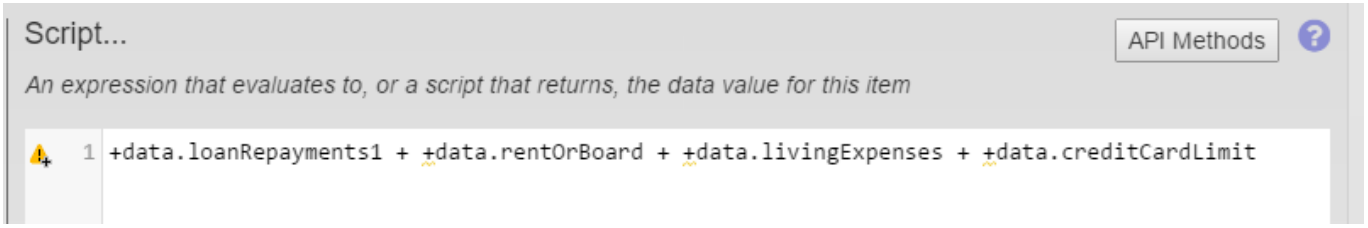



Click Script.




Double click each component you want to use in the calculation. Include a plus sign ( + ) between the components.

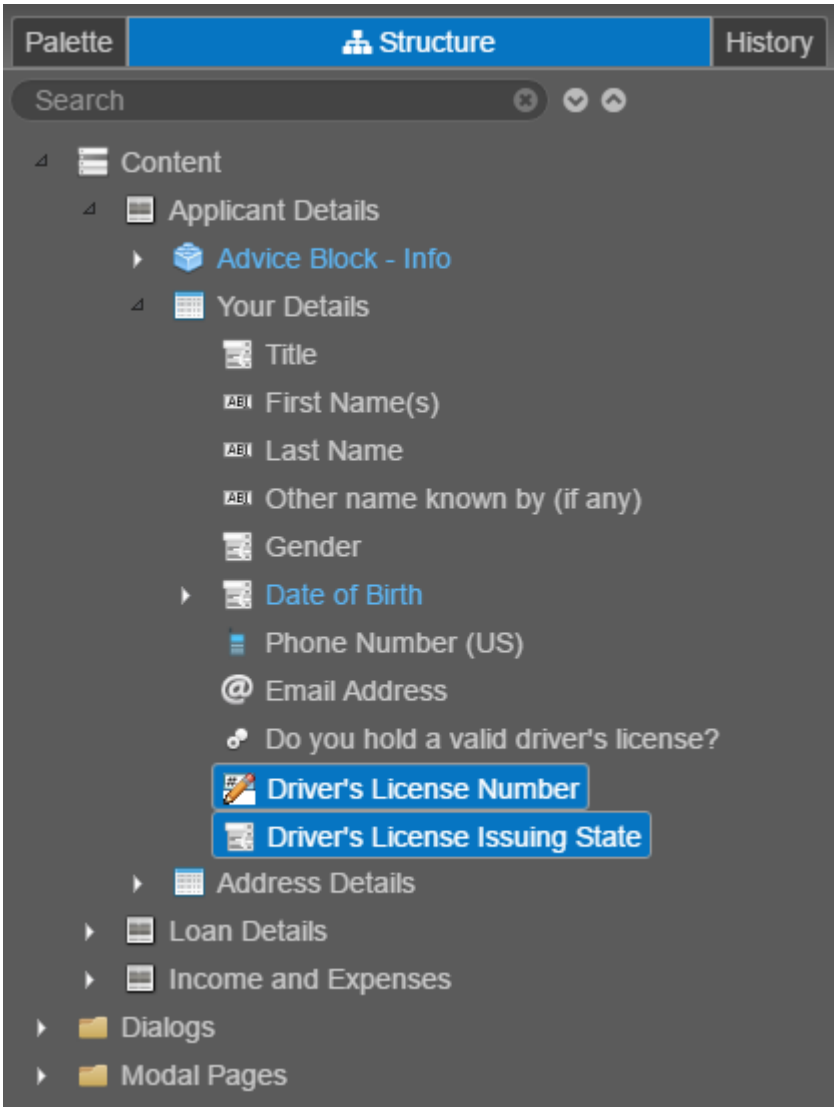
The selected components will display in the list. Click Save.



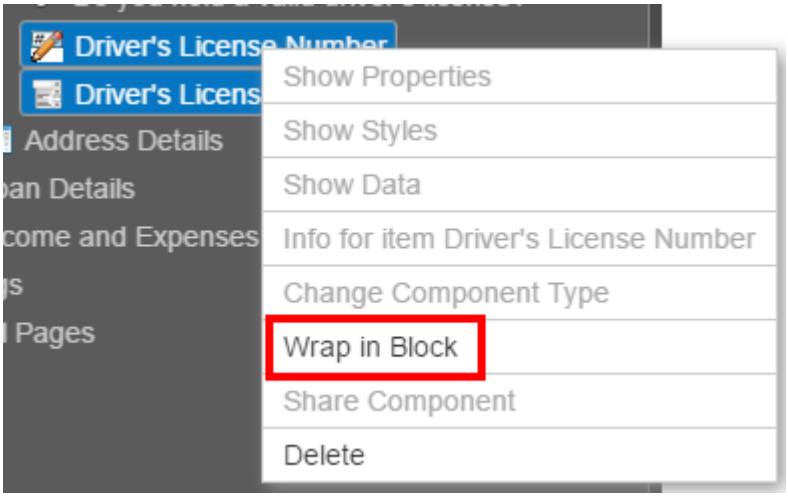

## Wrap Components in a Block

You can wrap components in a block to easily manage related components.

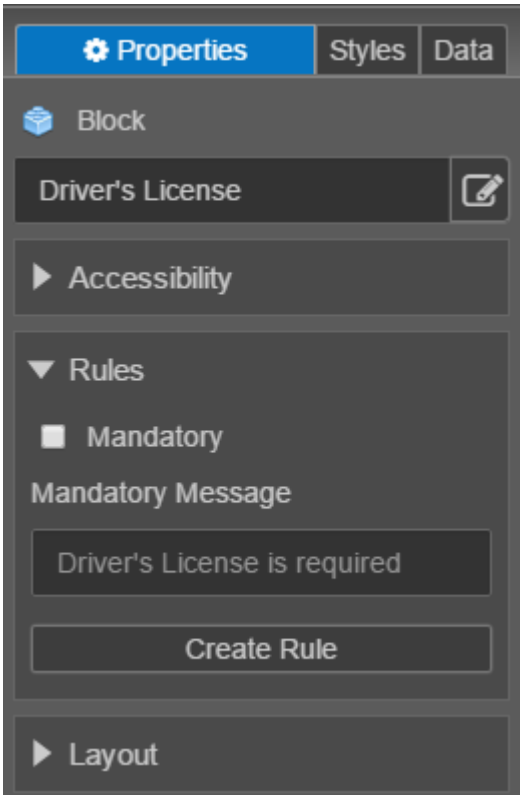
Select the components in the Structure panel you want to wrap in a block.




Right-click one of the selected components and click Wrap in Block.




With the block selected, use the Properties panel to rename the block.


Properties
Styles
Data
Block
Driver's License
Accessibility
Rules
Mandatory
Mandatory Message
Driver's License is required
Create Rule
Layout

# Two Level Navigation Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for working with two level navigation. During this exercise you will create page groups, which will allow you to use two level navigation within your form.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises v5.1> Two Level Navigation Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open Two- Level Navigation Begin

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Two Level Navigation Begin.
5. Click Edit Version to open the form

## Step 2 Add Page Groups to the Form

Add Page Groups to the form, then move the relevant pages into each group. Your Structure panel should match the After image below.

**Before After**

To add a Page Group, you need to drag the component from the Palette panel onto the Structure panel.

Page groups cannot be dragged directly onto a form or template.

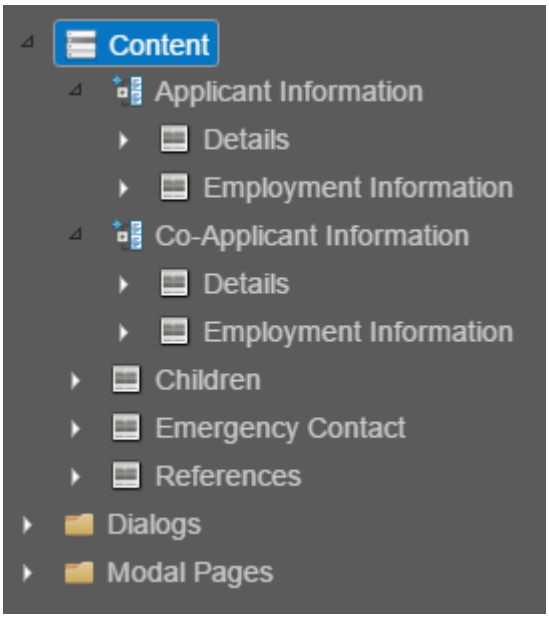
NOTE

Notice: some of the pages have been rearranged.

Click Save.

## Step 3: Rename Pages

Rename the Pages added to each Page Group. Your Structure panel should match the image below.




## Step 4 Set Second Level Navigator to Equal Width

Change the width of the Pages on the second level navigator so that they are equal. Your second level navigator should match the image below.

**Before**



**After**



To change the width of the Second Level Navigator:

1. Click Form Options.
2. Select Navigator Second Level.
3. Select Equal Width.

4. Check Equal Width.
5. Click Save.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

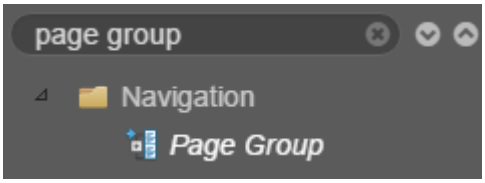
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Using a Page Group

Page Groups let you group pages together. Adding page groups automatically creates a two level navigation. Each page group is displayed on the first level navigator and any pages in the page group are displayed on the second level navigator.

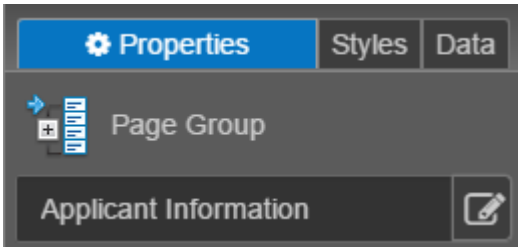
Use Search to find the Page Groups.

Drag the component onto the Structure panel.

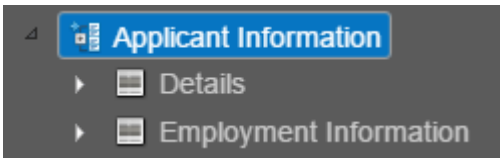



Use the Properties panel to rename the page group.

The Page Group label is automatically used for the first level navigator. If you want the label and menu text different, change the menu text in the Options section on the Properties panel.



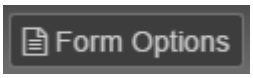

In the Structure panel, drag the pages you want grouped onto the page group component.



## Set the Second Level Navigator to equal widths

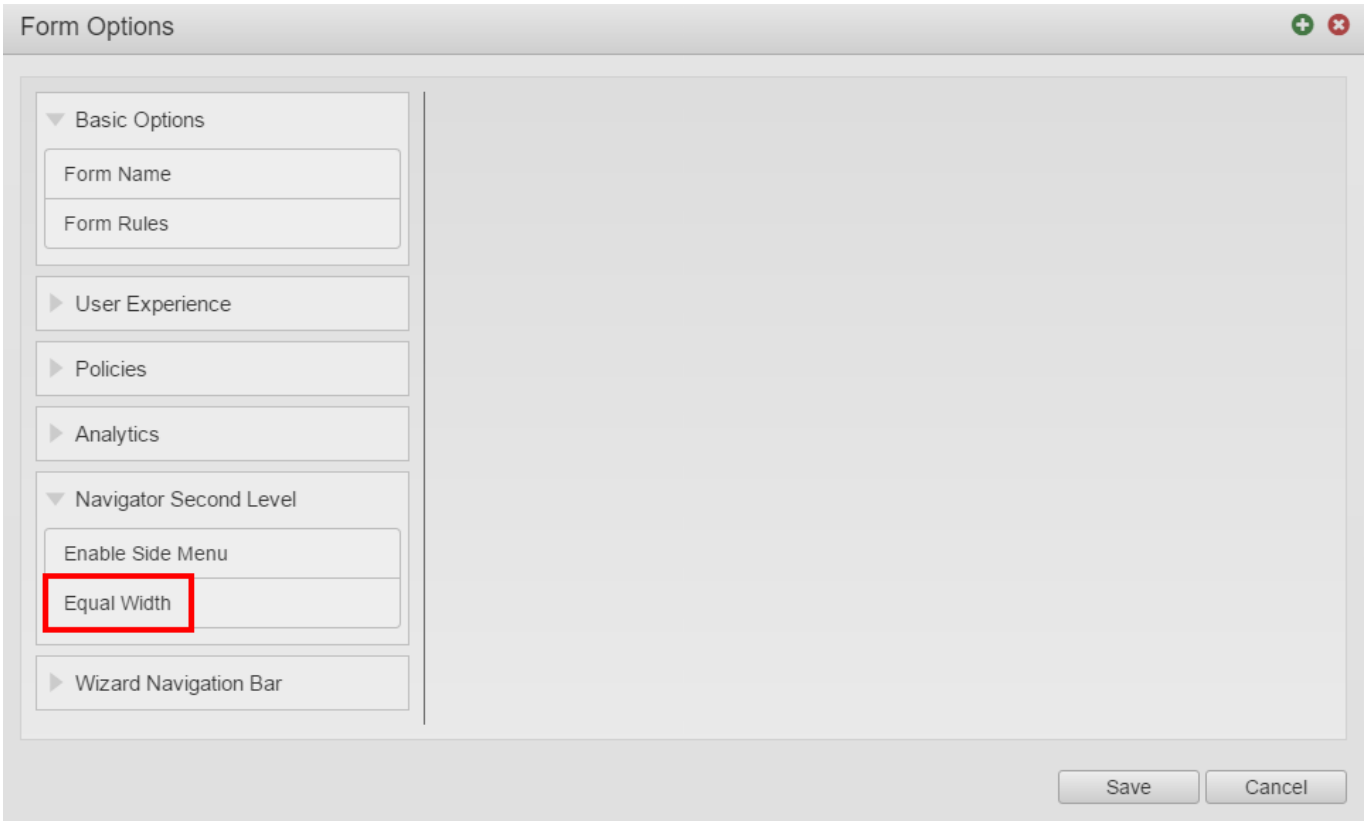
By default, the width of Second Level Navigator menu items is determined by the length of the menu text. You can change this, so each menu item takes up the same width.

Click the Form Options button (towards the top of the Design window).

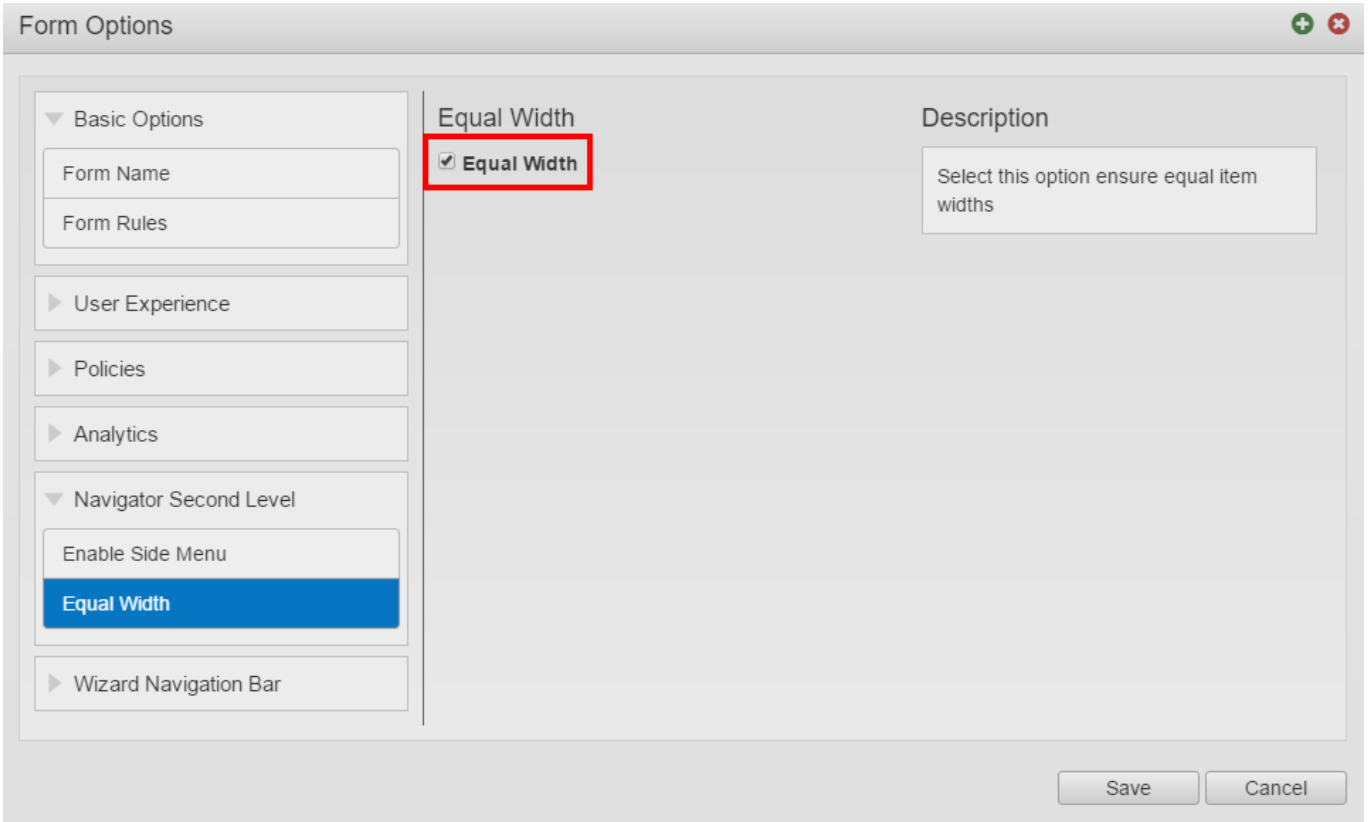



Expand Navigator Second Level.

Select Equal Width.




Check Equal Width, then click Save.



# Validation Rules Exercise v5.1

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating validation rules. During this exercise you will create a new form and add components. You will then create rules on the added components.

Do your best to follow the information provided and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

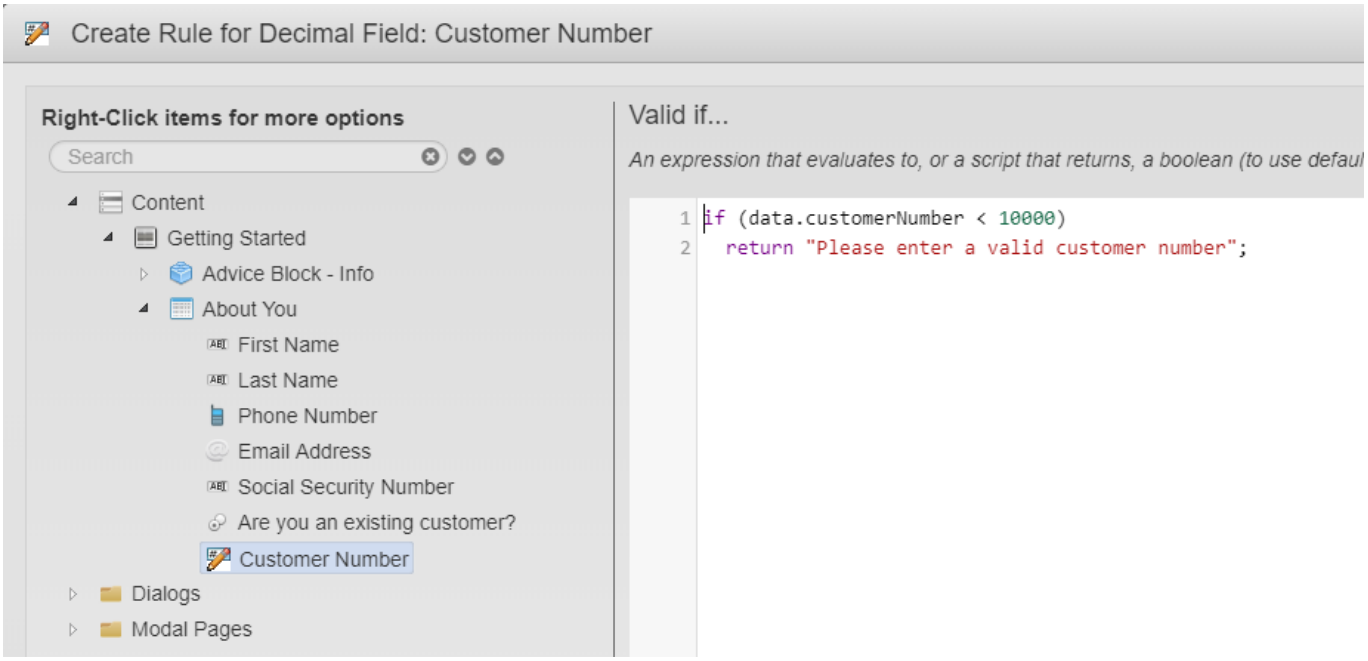
You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises v5.1> Validation Rules Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open Validation Rules Begin

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Validation Rules Begin.
5. Click Edit Version to open the form.

## Step 2 Create a Valid If Rule

Use the Valid If rule for the Customer Number. Create a rule where the Customer Number is valid if greater than 10000.




NOTE

Customer Number contains a visibility rule. You won't see this field in preview until you select Yes for the question 'Are you an existing customer?'

## Step 3 Create a Regular Expression Validation Rule

You can search the Regular Expression Library (http://regexlib.com) to locate pre-defined expressions to use in your Maestro form.

Setup a Regular Expression rule to validate the Social Security Number component. An example expression is included in the image below.

Example Regular expression: ^(?!219-09-9999|078-05-1120)(?!666|000|9\d{2})\d{3}-(?!00)\d{2}-(?!0{4})\d{4}$

Example Match Fails message: Please enter a number using this format ###-##-####

Once the validation rule is created, click Save and Preview the form.

Try entering this number first: 123-4-5678

Then try this number: 123-45-6789

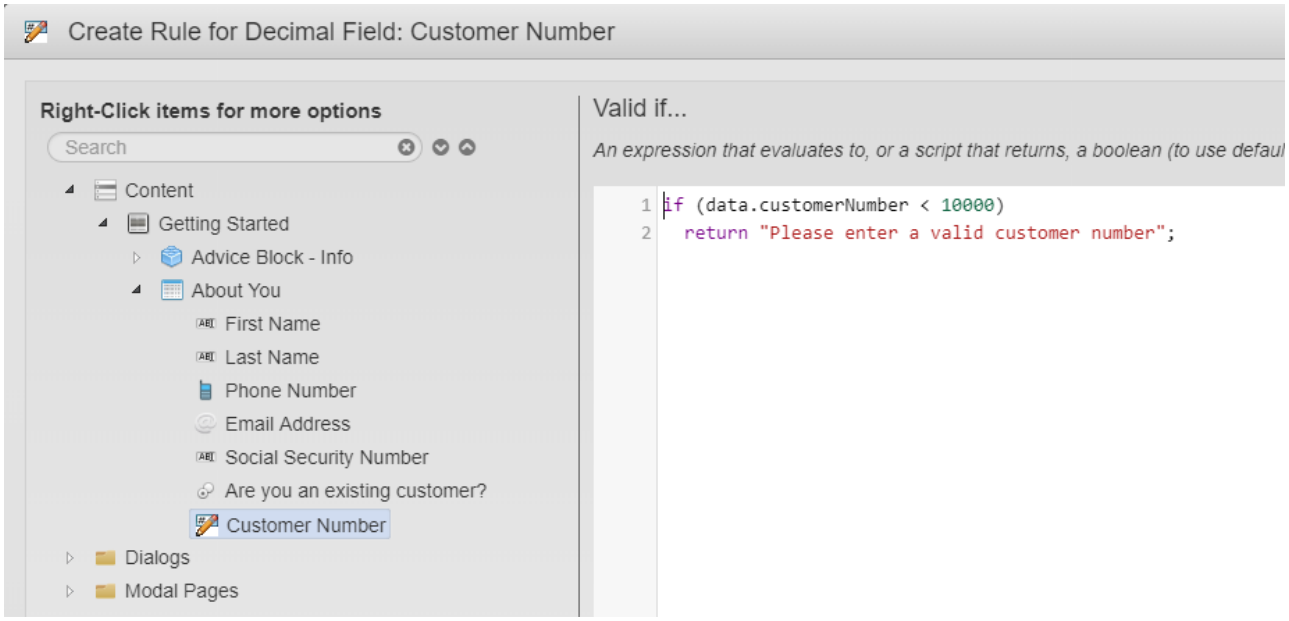
# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create a Valid if rule

1. Select the component to contain the validation rule.
2. Click Create Rule then select Valid if.
3. Type if (.
4. Double-click the (Customer Number) component to add data.customerNumber to the script window.
5. Type < 10000) then press Enter.
6. Type return "Please enter a valid Customer Number.";.




7. Click Save.

## Create a Regular Expression rule

1. Launch the Regular Expression Library - http://regexlib.com
2. Locate the pre-defined expression you want to use.
3. Copy the expression, then return to the Maestro form.
4. Select the component to contain the validation rule.
5. Click Create Rule then select Regular Expression.
6. Paste the pre-defined expression in the Must Match this expression box.
7. Enter an appropriate failure message.

Create Rule for Text Field: Social Security Number
Regular expression...
This item will be valid if it matches the provided regular expression
Must match this expression
^(?!219-09-9999|078-05-1120)(?!666|000|9\d{2})\d{3}-(?!00)\d{2}-(?!0{4})\d{4}$
Expression Flags
Ignore case
Multi-line
Global
If the match fails, display this message
Please enter a number using this format ###-##-####
Save
Cancel

8. Click Save.

# eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

View the eLearning courses available from the Temenos Learning Center.

We recommend that you view each course in order, following the listed order of the modules. After a few modules you will be given an exercise which will allow you to practice what you have learned. We strongly recommend you use these exercises to complete your training.

## Pre- requisite

- First you will need to import the exercise files used for the Maestro 5.0 exercises. Refer to Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files.

## eLearning Exercises for Maestro v5.0

Use the following links to view the exercise guides. Please follow the instructions in each guide to identify the resources and assets you'll need to use.

Introduction to Maestro:

- Create a New Form
- Pages and Sections

Form Builder 1:

- Layout
- Creating Rules (without Scripting)
- Repeating and Shared Components

Form Builder 2:

- Creating Shared Components
- Two Level Navigation

Form Builder Scripting:

- Calculation Rules
- Creating Rules
- Validation Rules

## Help

For help using the Learning Center refer to the Learning Center Help Guide.

If you have any questions, issues or feedback please feel free to contact the Manly Knowledge Team.

# Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro v5.0 Exercise Files

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Platform Developer | Form Builder | All versions This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This guide explains how to import the Maestro exercise files as a Maestro project. This project contains all the required forms, templates, components and styles needed to complete the exercises.

You can also access a training module on the Avoka LMS that explains how to import and export in Maestro. You may want to view this module before importing the exercise project.

## Step 1 Identify the Training Environment

1. Identify which of the following best describes the Training Environment you will use to complete the Maestro 5.0 training.

| Training Environment | Uses Maestro version | Download... | Import Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| elearning.avoka.com | 17.10 or later | Version 2018.08.02 | Import Project |
| Your company | 17.10 or later | Version 2018.08.02 | Import Project |
| Your company | 5.x or earlier | Version 2016.12.22 | Import Project |

NOTE

+ Version 2016.12.22: was exported from Maestro 5.0.x environment
+ Version 2018.08.02: was exported from Maestro 17.10 (or later)

## Step 2 Download the Exercise Project

The file to be downloaded is a zipped folder that contains the Maestro training exercise project.

1. Click on the required download link above to download the Exercise Project to your PC.

2. Leave this file in the Downloads folder or move it to a different location. Just remember, you'll need to navigate to this file in the next step to import it into Maestro.

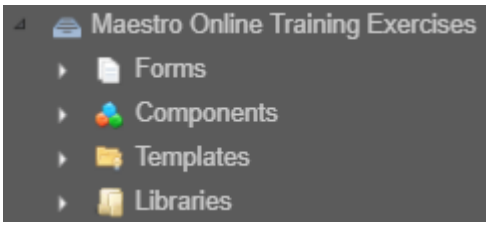
## Step 3 Import the Exercise Project

Once you've selected the Organization, you can import a project into Maestro.

1. Login to Maestro.
2. Click on your Organization.
3. Click Import Project to import the Maestro Project.
4. Enter Maestro Online Training Exercises for the name of the project you're importing.
5. Click Import.
6. Navigate to and select the Maestro Exercise Project zipped folder you downloaded.
7. Click Open.

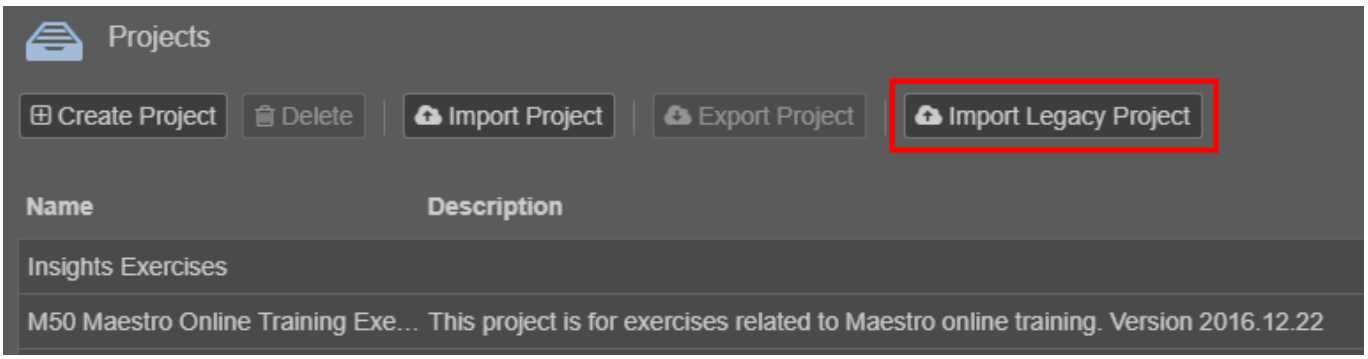
## Result

After importing the project you'll have access to the exercise forms, templates and components.




## Optional Step 4 Importing Legacy Projects

Maestro offers an additional import option for projects created and exported from legacy (or previous) versions of Maestro.



A project is considered Legacy if it was created and exported from any version of Maestro prior to v17.10. The option to Import Legacy Projects is only available to Maestro users assigned the Maestro Site Administrator Role. If you need to import a legacy project, speak to your Maestro account manager.

# Calculation Rules Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating rules. During this exercise you will create a new form and add components. You will then create rules on the added components.

Do your best to follow the information provided and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Calculation Rules Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

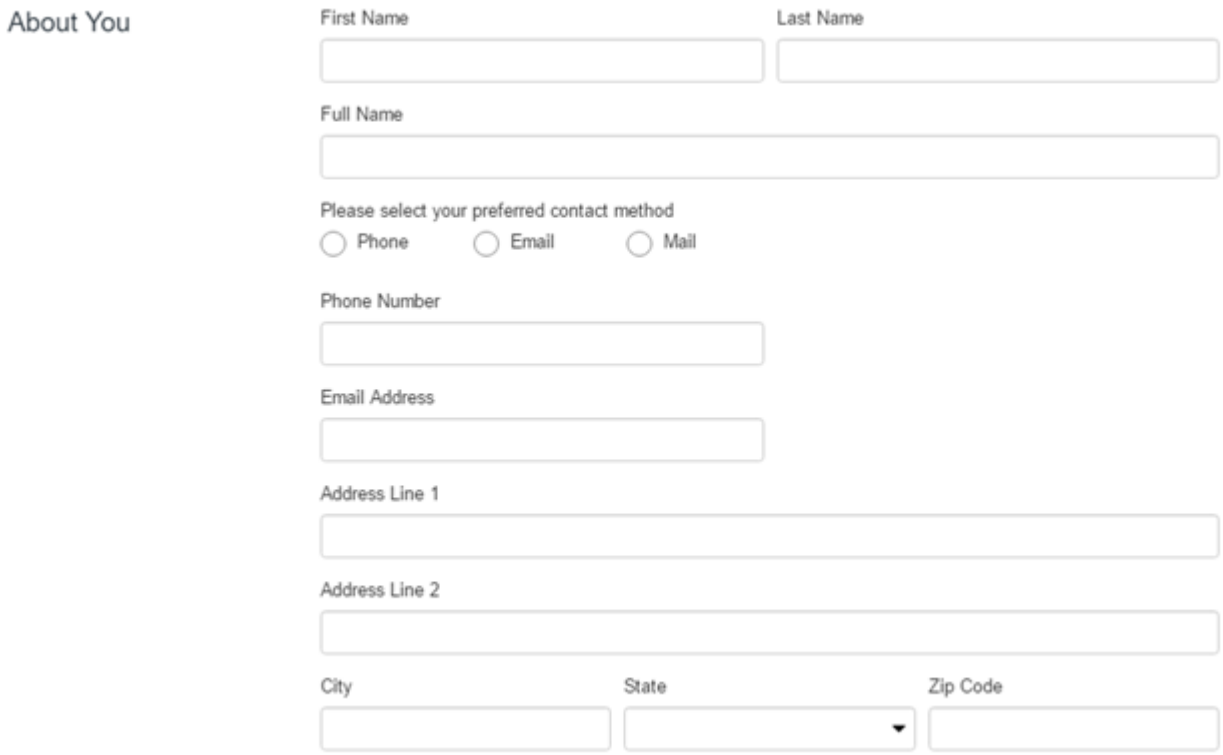
## Step 1 Create a New Form

Create a new form using the details provided below.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Click Create Form.
5. Enter details about the form:
    - Name: Order Form
    - New Version: 10-develop
      (should be pre-populated if Default Initial Version has been set up in Project Details)
    - Description: This form is to practice creating calculation rules.
    - Template: Exercise Template
6. Click Create.

## Step 2 Add Components to Page One

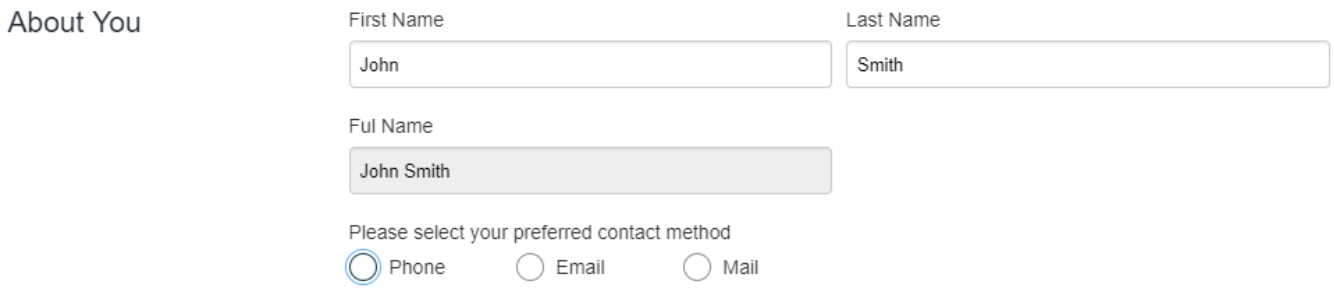
Add components to Page One so your form resembles the image below.




Click Save.

## Step 3 Populate a Component Based on Entered Data

Populate the Full Name component based on a script that concatenates the data entered in First Name and Last Name.




Add a Read Only rule to Full Name so the populated data cannot be changed.

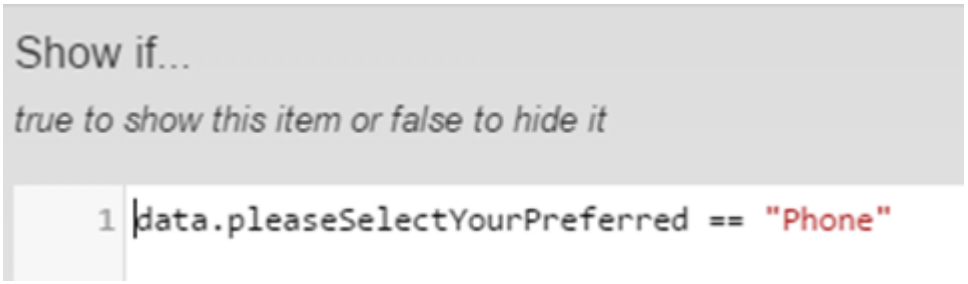
Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

Click Save.

## Step 4 Add Show if Rules

Add Show If rules to the Phone Number, Email Address and Address block based on the preferred contact method selected.

Right-click the appropriate components on the left side of the Create Rule window to create the required Show if scripts (see the example below).

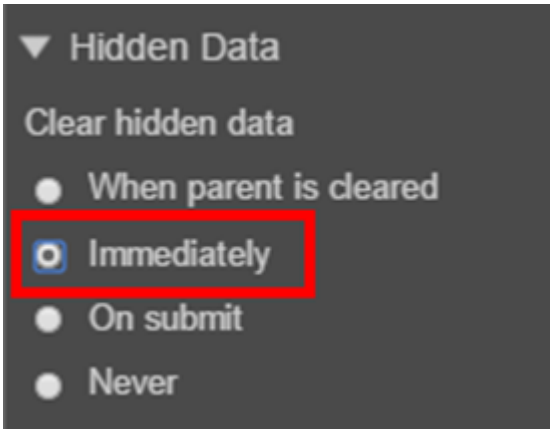



Save your form.

Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

## Step 5 Change the Clear Hidden Data Option

Change the Clear hidden data option for each of the contact detail components so that when they are hidden, any data previously entered in the field is cleared immediately.

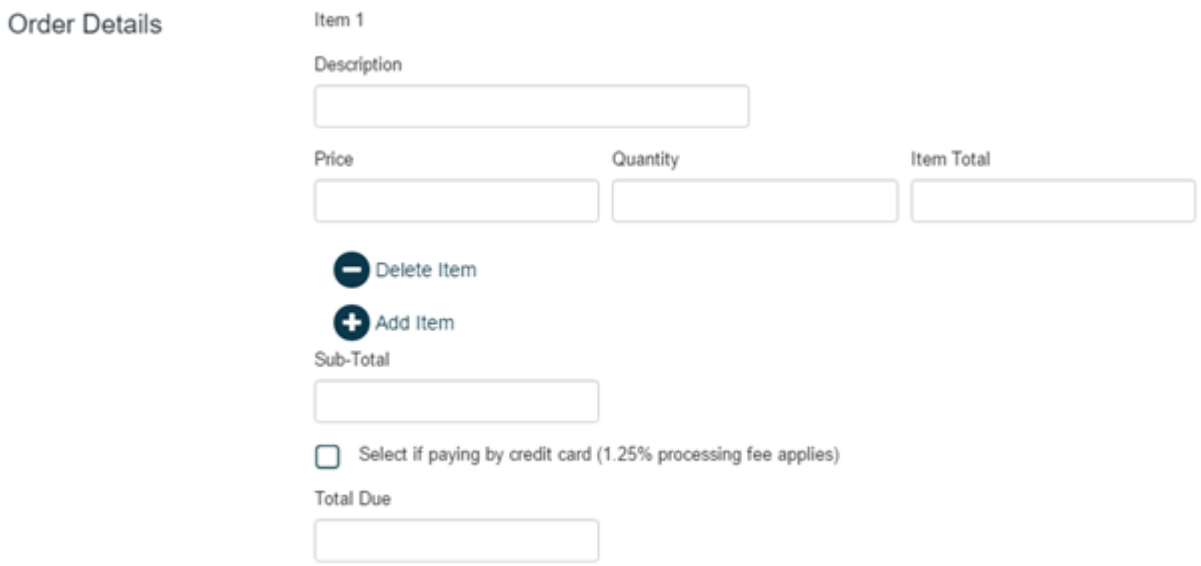



When you've changed the Hidden Data options, Save your form then click Preview to test the form.

Click Save.

## Step 6 Add an Order Details Section to the Form

Add a new section below the About You section. Add components so the new section resembles the image below.

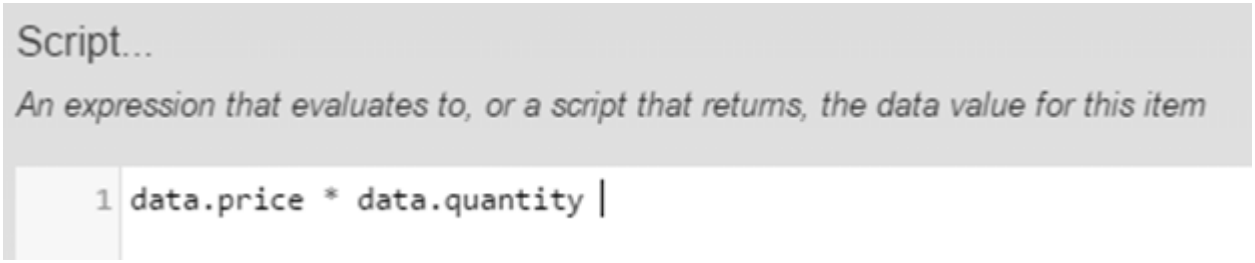



Use the Decimal Field component for Price, Item Total, Sub-Total and Total Due and set the decimal fields to 2 decimal places.

Click Save.

## Step 7 Add a Calculation Rule to the Item Total

Create a calculation rule that multiples Price by Quantity.




Add a Read Only rule to Item Total so the user cannot change the calculated value.

Click Save.

Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

## Step 8: Add a Calculation Rule to the Sub-Total Component

Create a calculation rule that sums the Item Totals for each repeat.

Script...

*An expression that evaluates to, or a script that returns, the data value for this item*

```
1 Util.sum(Util.getRepeatDataArray(Form.getItemFromPath('Form.data.content2.itemTotal')))
```

Add a Read Only rule so that the user cannot change the calculated value.

Click Save.

Preview the form to check the calculation rules.

## Step 9: Add a Calculation Rule to the Total Due Component

Create a calculation rule that includes the Sub-Total multiplied by the credit card processing fee if the checkbox is selected.

Script...

*An expression that evaluates to, or a script that returns, the data value for this item*

```
1 if (data.selectIfPayingByCredit === true )
2   return data.subtotal * 1.025;
3 else
4   return data.subtotal;
```

Add a Read Only rule so that the user cannot change the calculated value.

Click Save.

Preview the form and check the calculation rules.

## Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create a Show If Rule

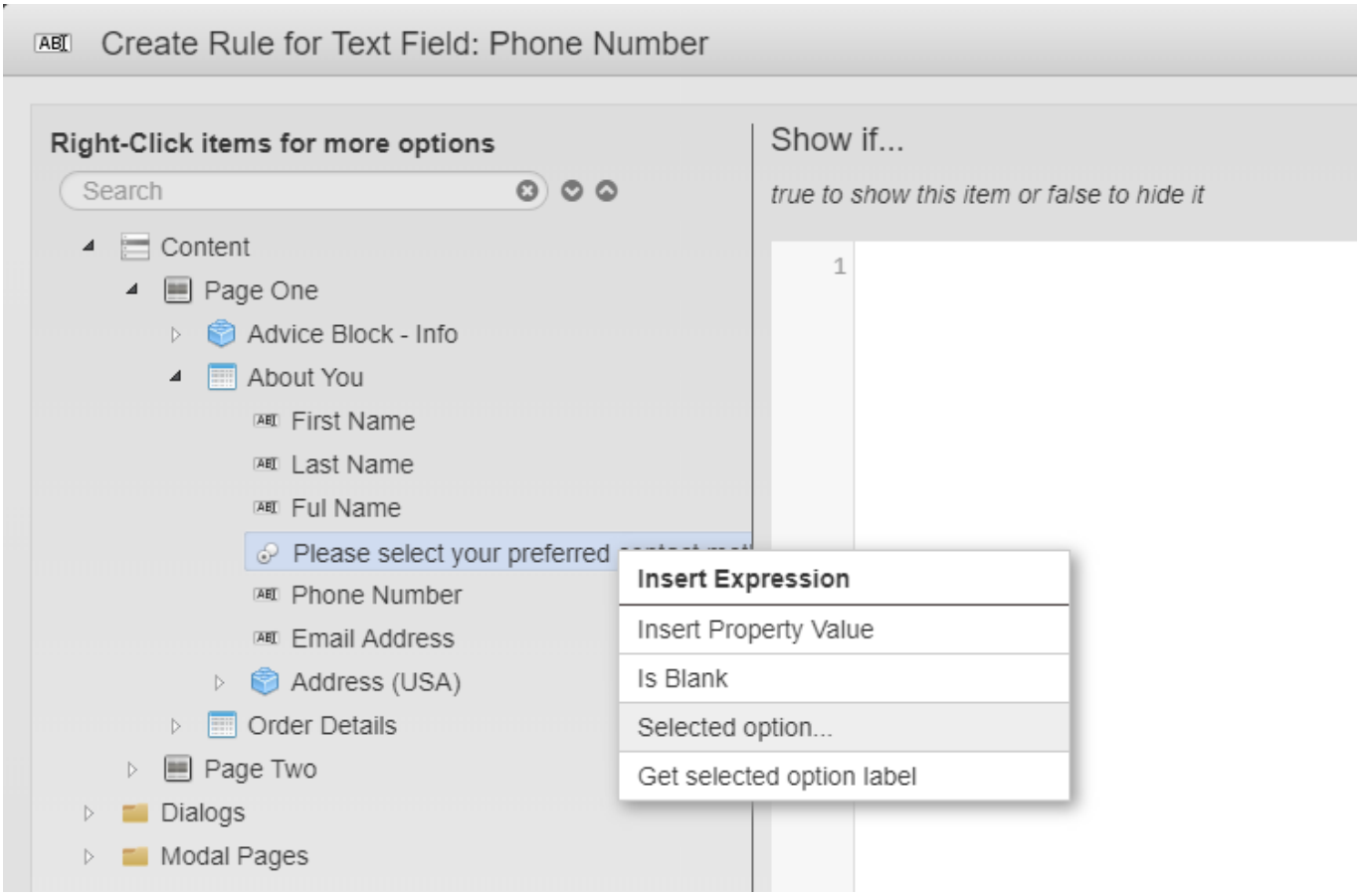
Select the component whose visibility is conditional (i.e. visible or not visible).

Click Create Rule from the Rules section (Properties panel).

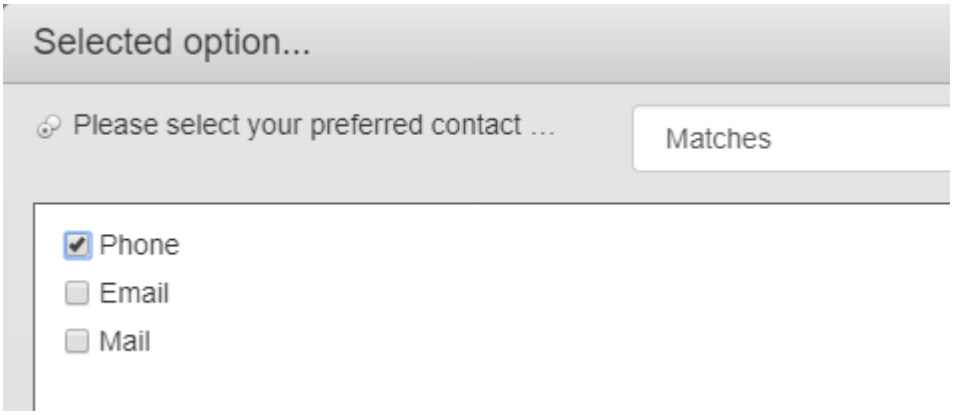
Select Show If from the Create Rule window.

Right-click the component that determines if a component is shown on the form

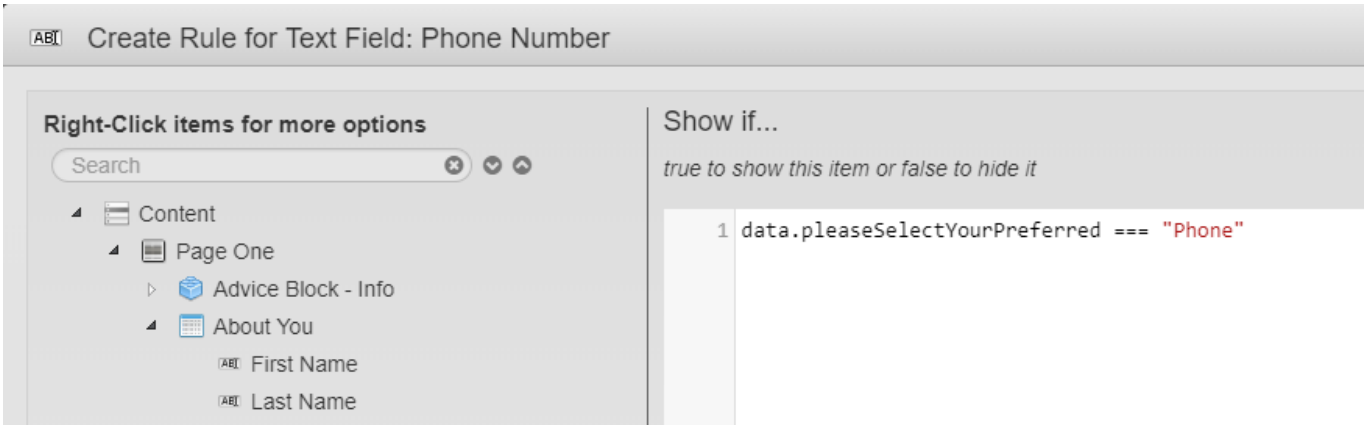
Choose Selected option.




Nominate the matching Option (e.g. Phone) and click OK.




The script is added to the Create Rule window.




## Combine entered data into a component

Select the component where the data will be populated.

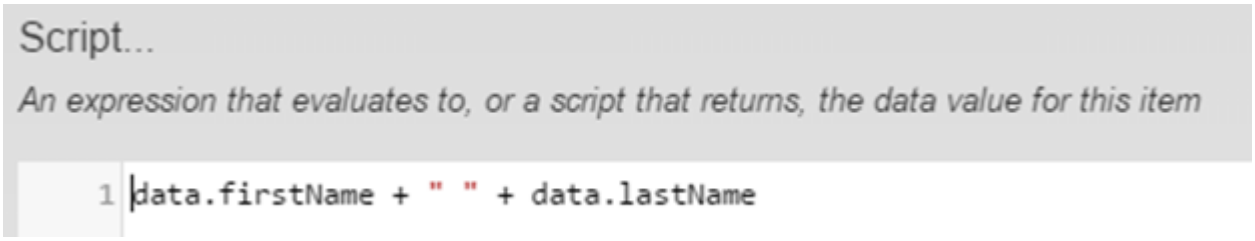
Click Create Rule and select Script.

Double-click the component you want to add to the script, e.g. double-click First Name to add data.firstName to the script window.

Enter a plus sign between the components you want to combine.

Any spaces or other characters to include in the script must be wrapped between quotation marks (“).

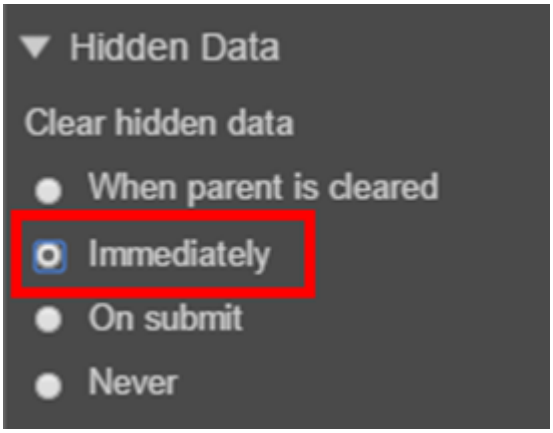
Double-click the next component to add to the script (see example below).




## Clear Hidden Data Immediately

Select the component.

Select the Data tab, expand Hidden Data and choose Immediately from the options.



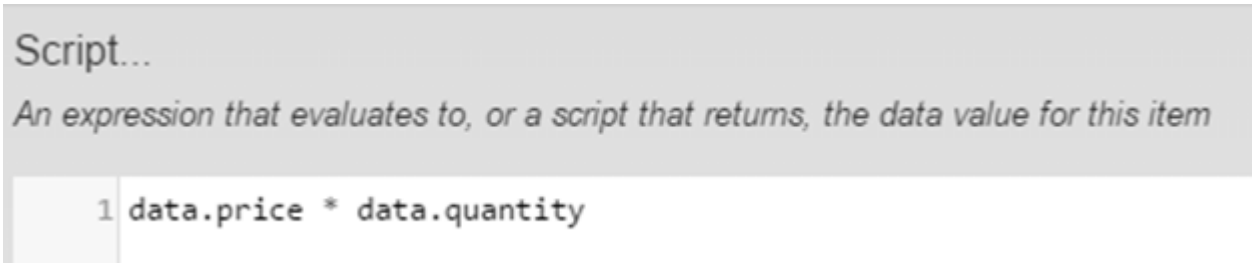

## Create a Mathematical Calculation Rule

Select the component that will contain the calculation.

Click Create Rule then select Script.

Double-click any components on the left-side of the window to add them to the script window (on the right).

Insert the required calculation symbols, e.g. * / + -




The script is added to the window.

Script...

*An expression that evaluates to, or a script that returns, the data value for this item*

```
1 Util.sum(Util.getRepeatDataArray(Form.getItemFromPath('Form.data.content2.itemTotal')))
```

## Create a Calculation Rule for Repeated Items

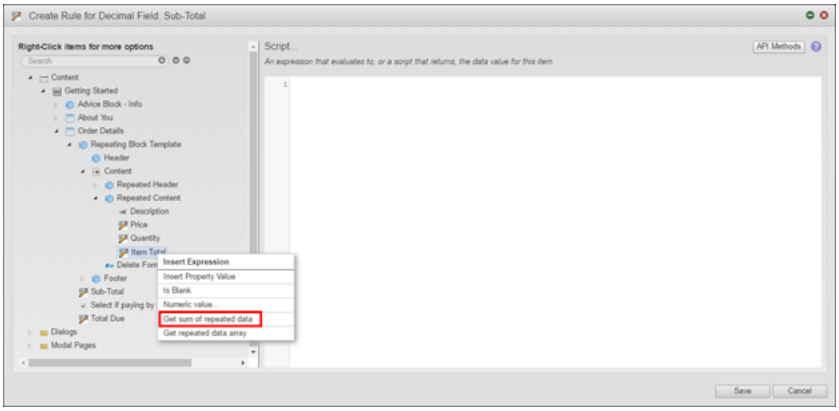
Select the component that will contain the calculation.

Click Create Rule then select Script.

Expand the Repeating Block Template, then expand Content.

Expand Repeated Content.

Right-click the component you want to total and select Get sum of repeated data.




The script is added to the window.

Script...

*An expression that evaluates to, or a script that returns, the data value for this item*

```
1 Util.sum(Util.getRepeatDataArray(Form.getItemFromPath('Form.data.content2.itemTotal')))
```

# Create a New Form Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating new forms in Maestro. During this exercise, you will create a new form and add components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Create New Form Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Create a New Form

Create a new form using the details provided below.

1 In the Navigator Panel, expand the Organization.

2. Expand the Project.

3. Select Forms.

4. Click Create Form.

5. Enter the following details for your new form:

- Name: Create New Form_[Your initials]
- New Version: 10-develop

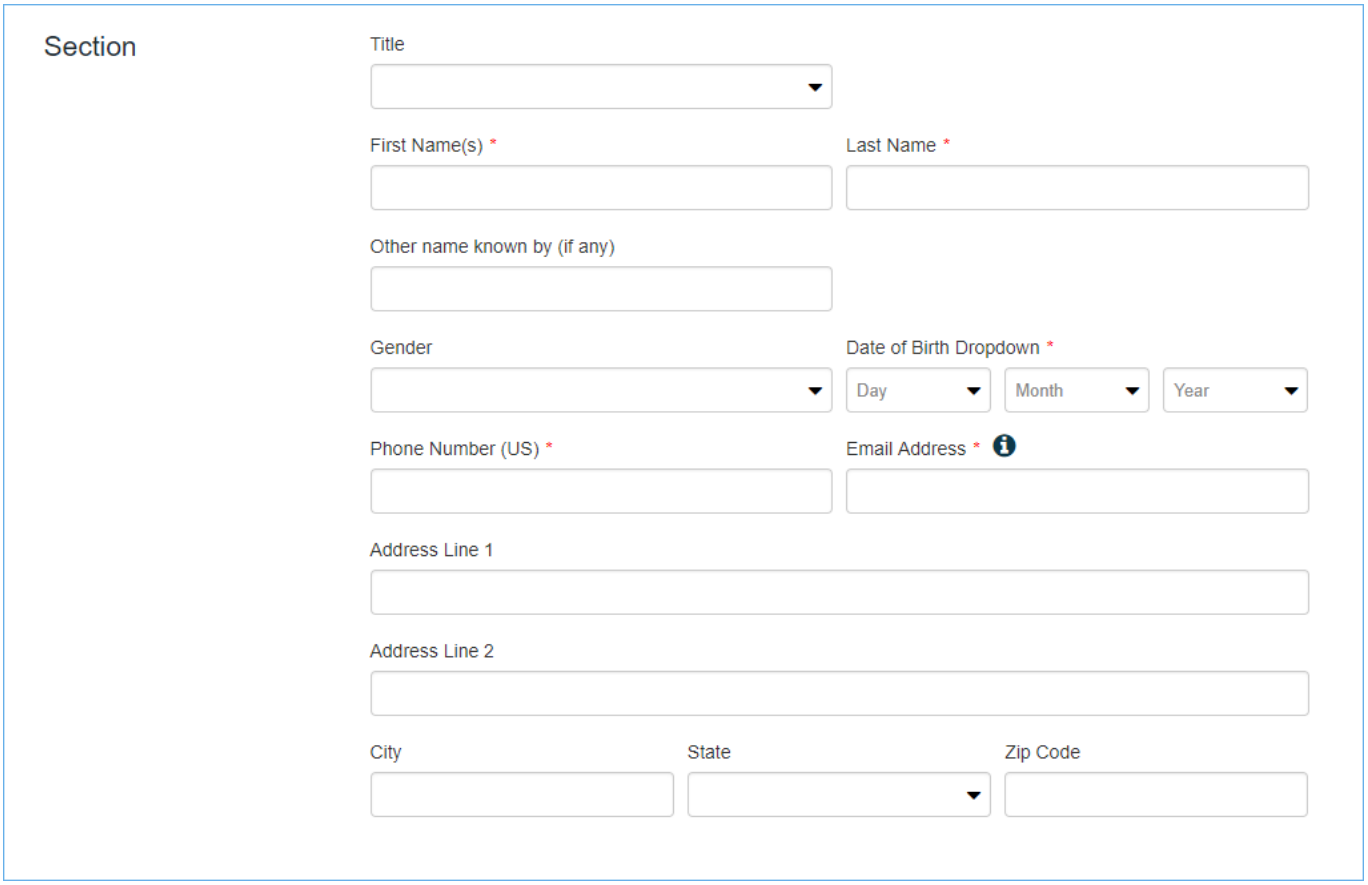
  (should be pre-populated if Default Initial Version has been setup in Project Details)

- Description: This form is to practice creating new forms and adding components.
- Template: Exercise Template

6. Click Create.

# Step 2 Add Components to Page One

On Page One, you will find an empty Section. You can add (drag) components into this area. Use the image below as a guide for what you need to add.




You can Preview your form at any time to see how the components look and work.

NOTE

The components marked as mandatory (*) and with the information icon (i).

When adding components, it may be helpful to display the Palette and Structure panel together. Click the Side-by-Side button in the top left corner of the Editor window.

NOTE

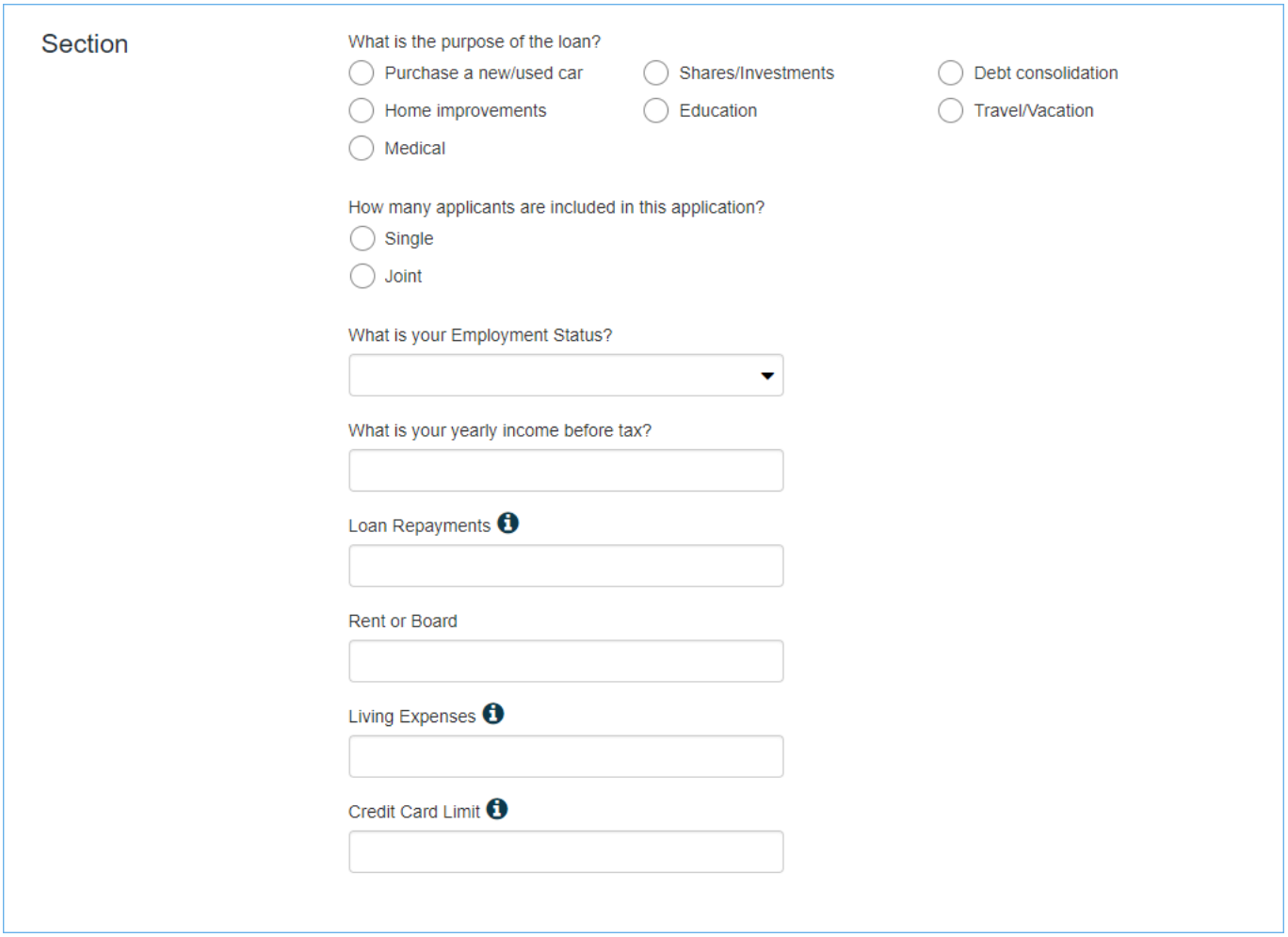
Remember: to use predefined components, rather than recreating your own. You can use Search in the Palette panel to find the required components, for example, the 'Title' component, which contains all the common titles (Mr, Mrs. etc.). The default options can be updated as required and is much easier than building a dropdown from scratch.

Use this for the Email Address Help Text: We use your email to send confirmation of the information you've provided.

Click Save on the toolbar.

## Step 3 Add Components to Page Two

On Page Two, you can add (drag) components into the available section. Use the image below as a guide for what you need to add.



NOTE

Some components have the information icon (i) next to the label.

Use the following entries for the What is the purpose of the loan radio buttons:

- Purchase a new/used car
- Shares/Investments
- Debt consolidation
- Home improvements
- Education
- Travel/Vacation
- Medical

Use the following entries for the How many applicants are included in this application? radio buttons:

- Single
- Joint

Use the following entries for the What is your Employment Status? dropdown:

- Employed
- Self-Employed
- Unemployed

Use the following details for the Help Text:

- Loan Repayments: Please include any mortgage repayments, personal loans or car loans.
- Living Expenses: Consider how much you spend on bills, groceries, transport and entertainment, etc.
- Credit Card Limit: Please include the total limit of all your credit cards.

Use the following for the expense questions:

- What is your Employment Status?
- What is your yearly income before tax?
- Loan Repayments
- Rent or Board
- Living Expenses
- Credit Card Limit

# Step 4 Save the Form

Click Save on the toolbar to save all the changes to your form.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

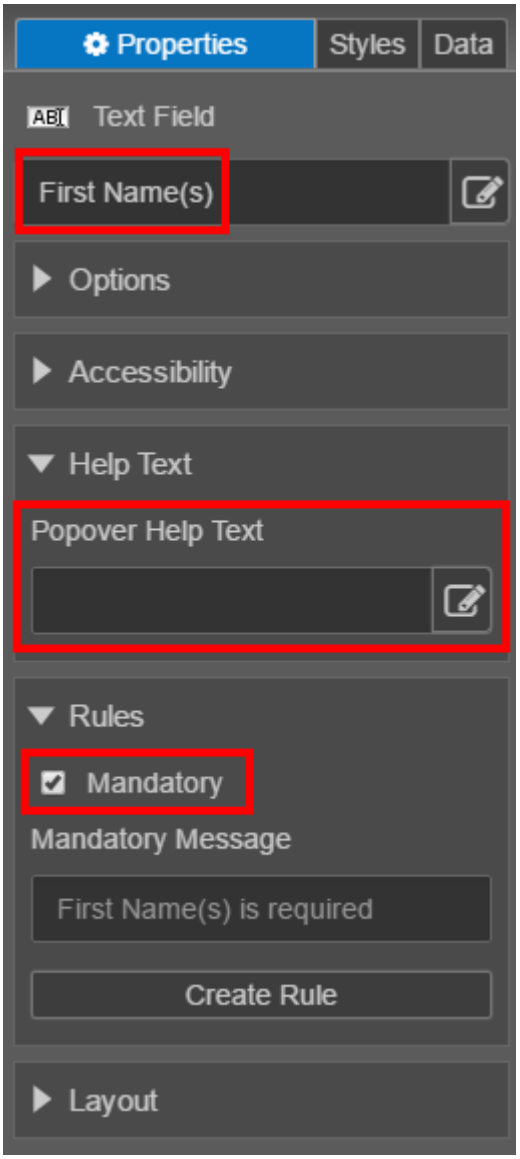
## Component Properties

You can use the Properties panel to change the following settings:

- Component Label
- Add Help Text
- Set Component as Mandatory
- Radio Button Arrangement
- Radio Button Options
- Dropdown Options

The Properties panel displays the settings for the selected component.

For example, properties for the First Name(s) Text Field are displayed below.



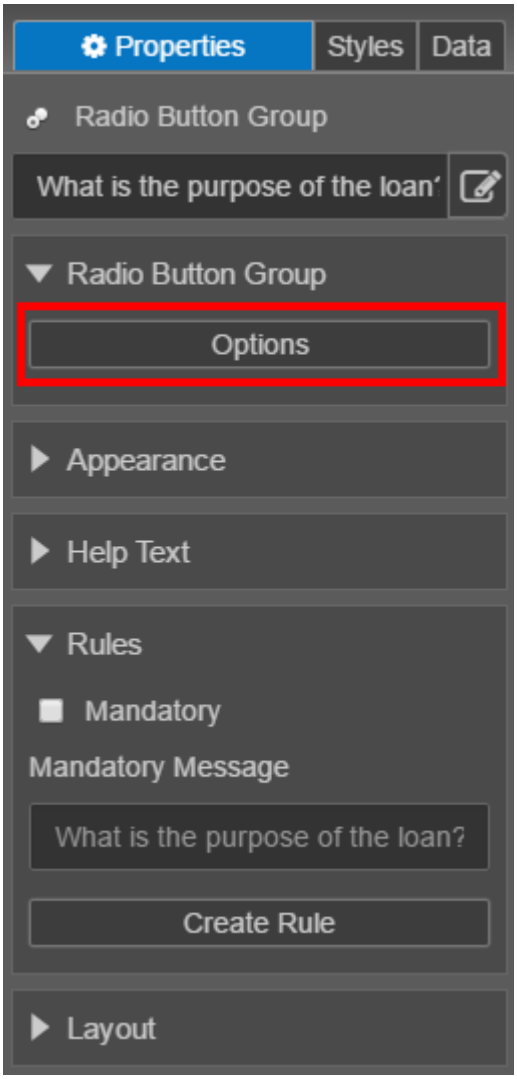

At the top, you can change the component label.

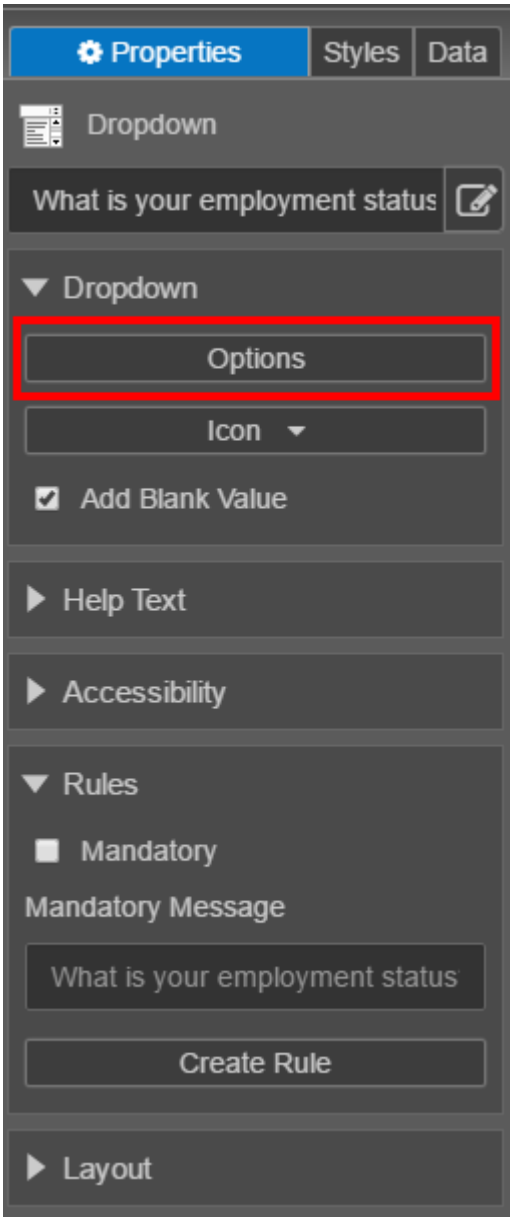
Popover Help Text is where you add the help text, which displays the information icon next to the component label.

The Mandatory option is under Rules. Select this to mark a component as mandatory. This will automatically add the red asterisk next to the label.

## Radio Button and Dropdown Options

Use the Properties panel to customize the options available for Radio Button Group and Dropdown.


Properties
Styles
Data
Radio Button Group
What is the purpose of the loan'
Radio Button Group
Options
Appearance
Help Text
Rules
Mandatory
Mandatory Message
What is the purpose of the loan?
Create Rule
Layout

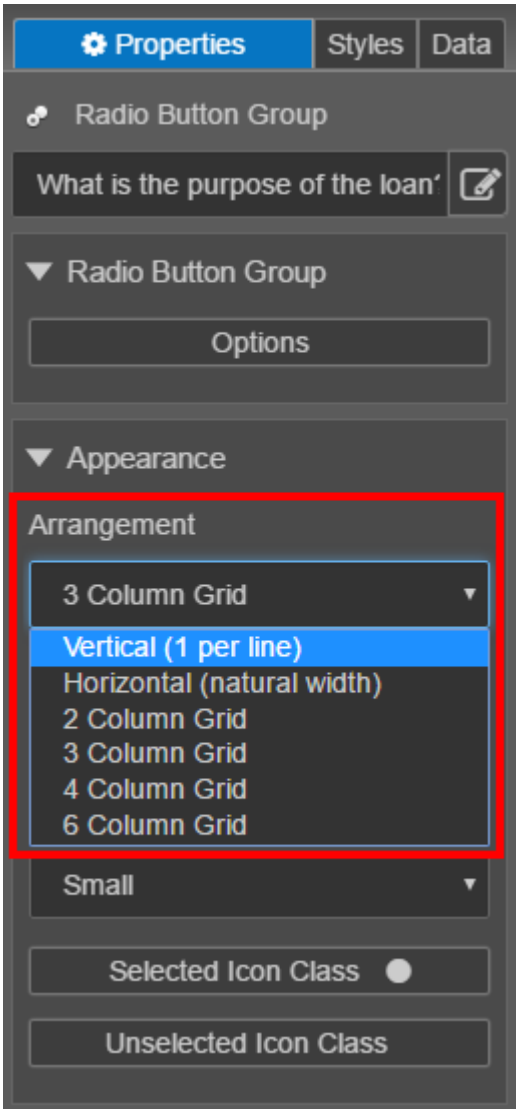



Click the Options button to open a new window, where you can add or edit the radio buttons or dropdown options.

## Arrangement of Radio Button Options

You can change the appearance of the radio buttons, so they're stacked vertically or displayed in a horizontal grid.

To change the appearance, select the required Arrangement.


Properties
Styles
Data
Radio Button Group
What is the purpose of the loan'
Radio Button Group
Options
Appearance
Arrangement
3 Column Grid
Vertical (1 per line)
Horizontal (natural width)
2 Column Grid
3 Column Grid
4 Column Grid
6 Column Grid
Small
Selected Icon Class
Unselected Icon Class

# Creating Rules Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating rules. During this exercise you will create a new form and add components. You will then create rules on the added components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Creating Rules Finished. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

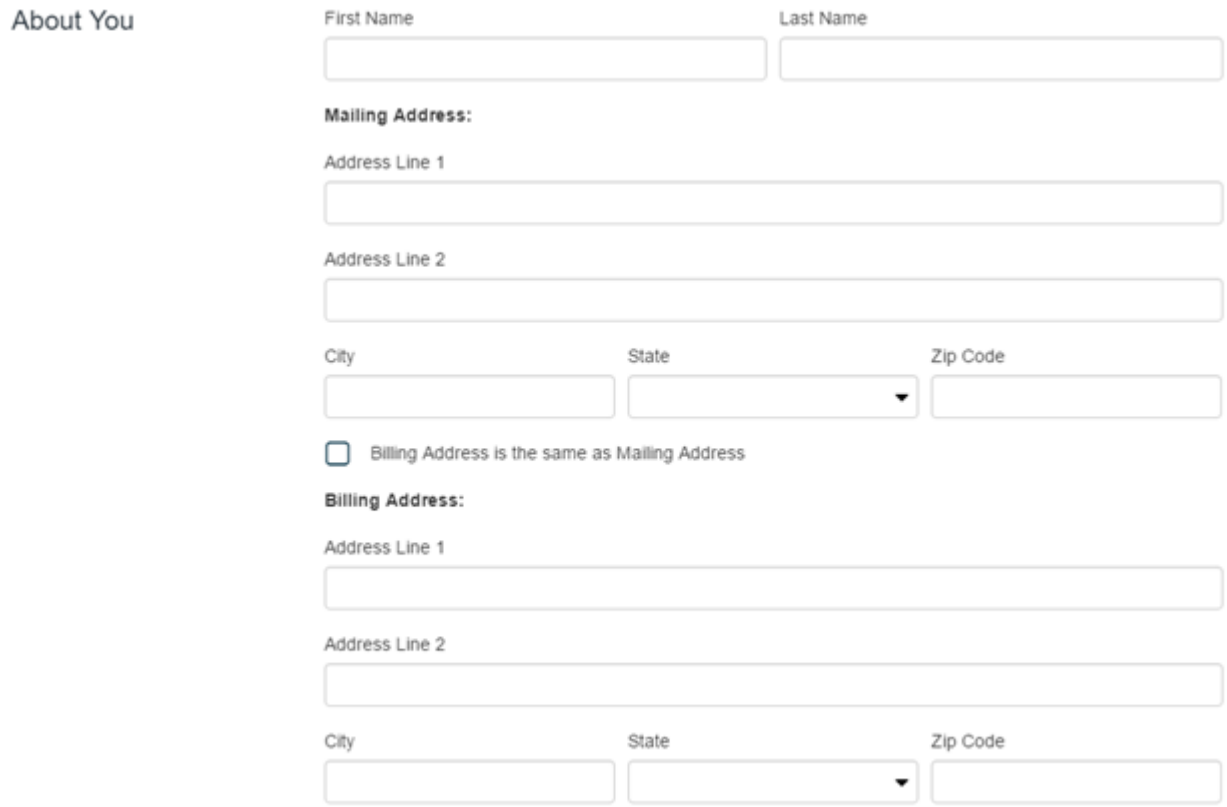
## Step 1 Create a New Form

Create a new form using the details provided below.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Click Create Form.
5. Enter details about the form:
    - Name: Mailing Address
    - New Version: 10-develop
      (should be pre-populated if Default Initial Version has been setup in Project Details)
    - Description: This form is to practice creating component rules.
    - Template: Exercise Template
6. Click Create.

## Step 2 Add Components to Page One

On Page One you will find an empty section. Add new components to this area using the image below as a guide.




NOTE

When adding components, it may be helpful to display the Palette and Structure panel together. Click the Side-by-Side button in the top left corner of the Editor window.

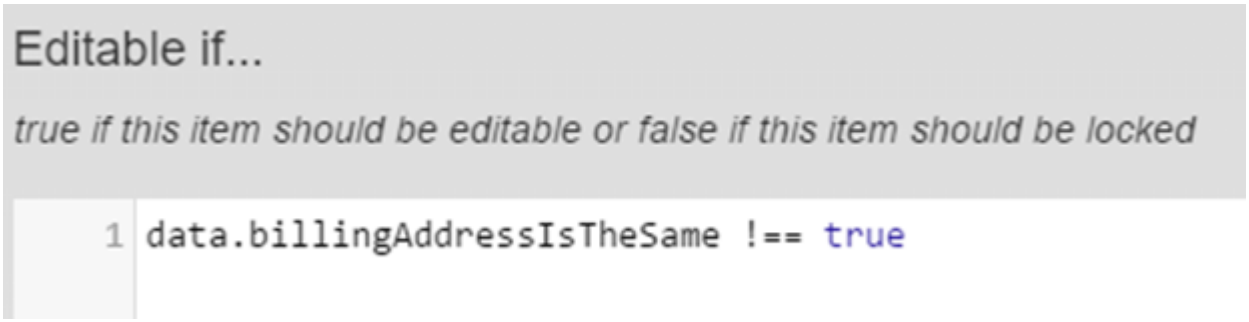
Remember to use predefined components (where appropriate), rather than recreating your own. You can use the search in the Palette panel to find components. For example, use the Address (USA) component rather than adding individual components. This component contains all the necessary fields, which you can customize if needed.

## Step 3 Add a Rule to Billing Address

Add an Editable if rule to the Billing Address block that allows it to be editable if the checkbox is not selected.

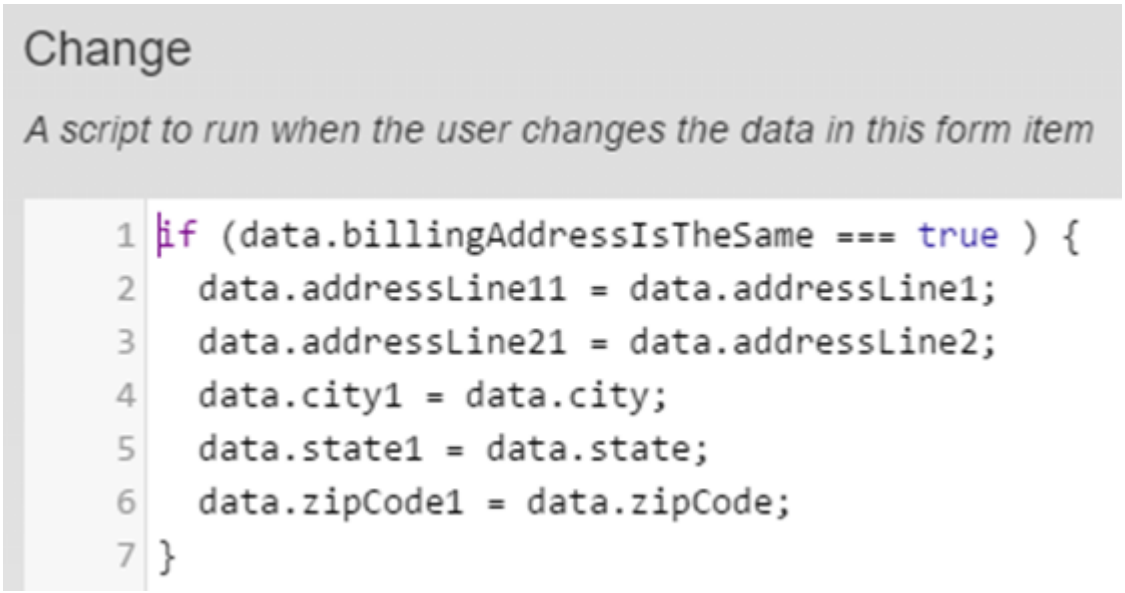
NOTE

You can double-click components on the left side of the Create Rule dialog to add them to the script window or type directly into the script window.



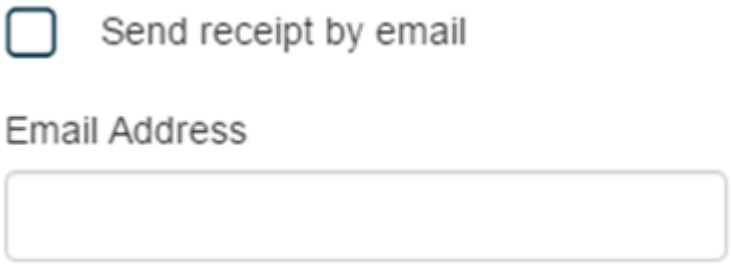

## Step 4 Add a Rule to the Checkbox

Add a Change rule to the checkbox that copies the entered values from Mailing Address to Billing Address if the checkbox is selected.




## Step 5 Add Components with a Mandatory If Rule

Add a checkbox and text field to the end of the form. Create a mandatory if rule on the text field that makes the field mandatory if the checkbox is selected.




## Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

### Create an Editable If Rule

Select the required component from the Structure panel (or in the form).

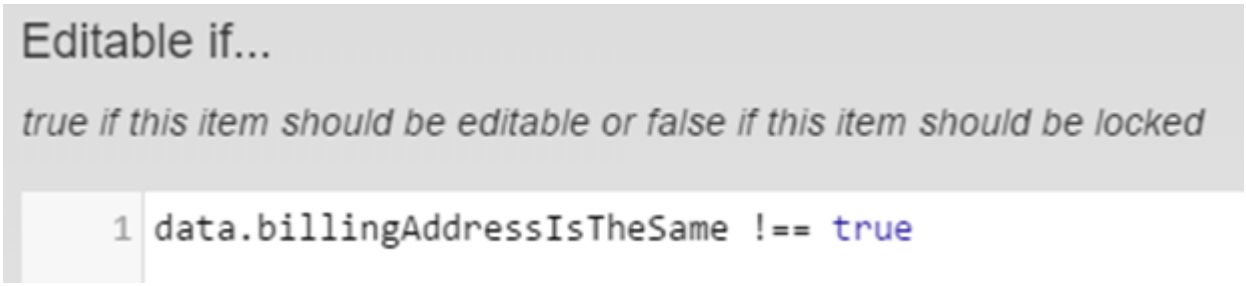
Click the Create Rule button from the Rules section (Properties panel).

Select Editable If.

Right-click the checkbox component that determines when the address component is editable.

The options in the menu are determined by the component selected. The image (above) shows the options for a checkbox.

Based on the exercise requirements, you would reed to select the Is not selected option.




The script for this rule says the address block is editable if the checkbox is not selected.

### Create a Change Rule

A Change rule will trigger when a component is changed.

To start, select the component you want to apply the rule to (i.e. the checkbox).

Click the Create Rule button from the Rules section (Properties panel).

Select Change under Action.

> NOTE
>
> You can double-click components on the left side of the Create Rule dialog to add them to the script window (right) or type directly into the script window.

Based on the exercise requirements, you will need to type at least some of the script. Enter the script as follows:

Type if (

Then right-click the checkbox and select Is selected to add data.-billingAddressIsTheSame === true.

Then type ) { and press Enter.

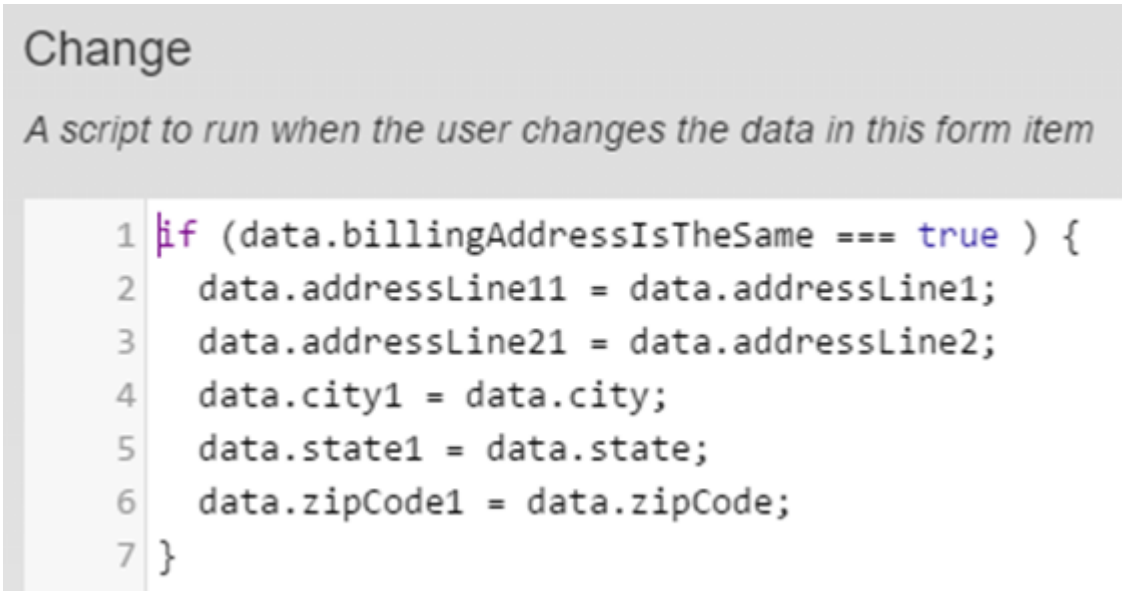
For the next line, double-click Address Line 1from the Billing Address block to add data.addressLine11

Type = and a space.

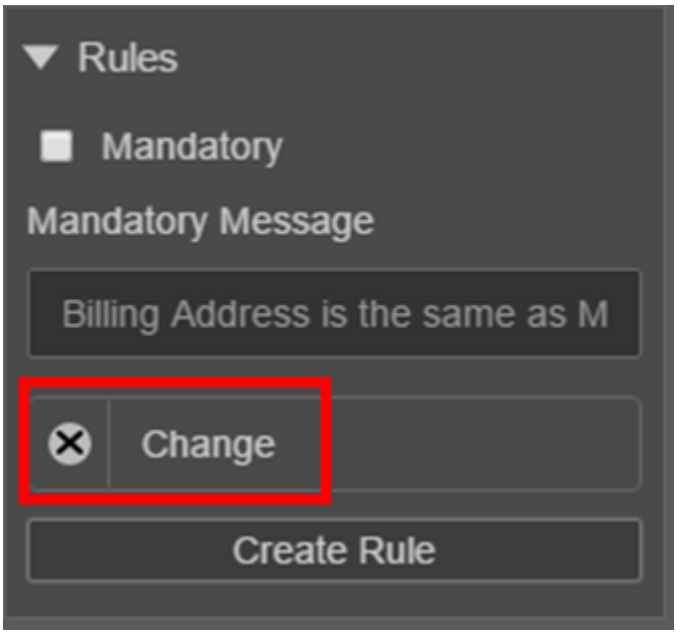
Double-click Address Line 1from the Mailing Address block to add data.addressLine1

Type ; (Semicolon)

Repeat this process for each of the address components. On the final line type } to end the script. See the image below for guidance.




Once you've finished creating the rule is, click Save.




The rule is added to the Rules section (Properties panel).

## Create a Mandatory If Rule

Select the component to be mandatory based on specific conditions (i.e. Email Address).

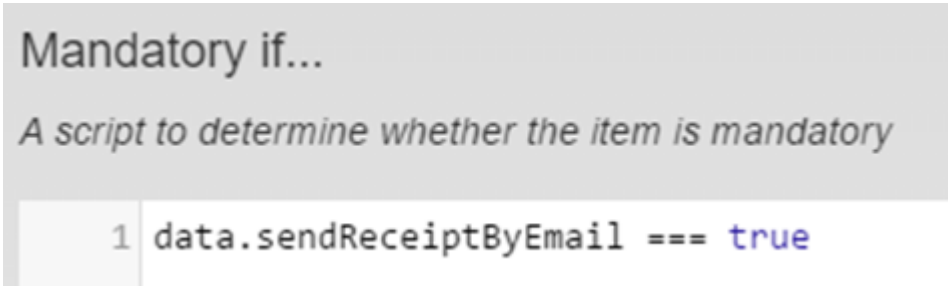
Click the Create Rule button from the Rules section (Properties panel).

Select Mandatory If.

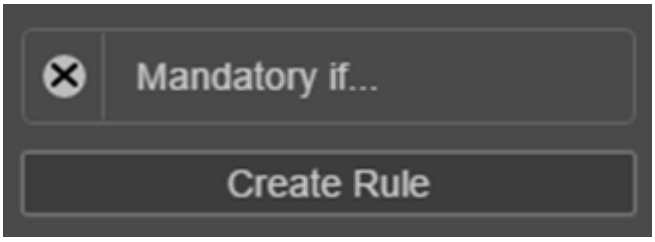
NOTE

You can double-click components on the left side of the Create Rule dialog to add them to the script window (right) or type directly into the script window.

See the image below for guidance.




Click Save.



# Creating Shared Components Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating shared components. During this exercise you will create a new shared component within a form.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Create Component Finish. Please note that this form uses a shared component with a different name to the one suggested in the steps below. Shared components cannot have the same name as other shared components within the same project.

If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open Create Component Begin

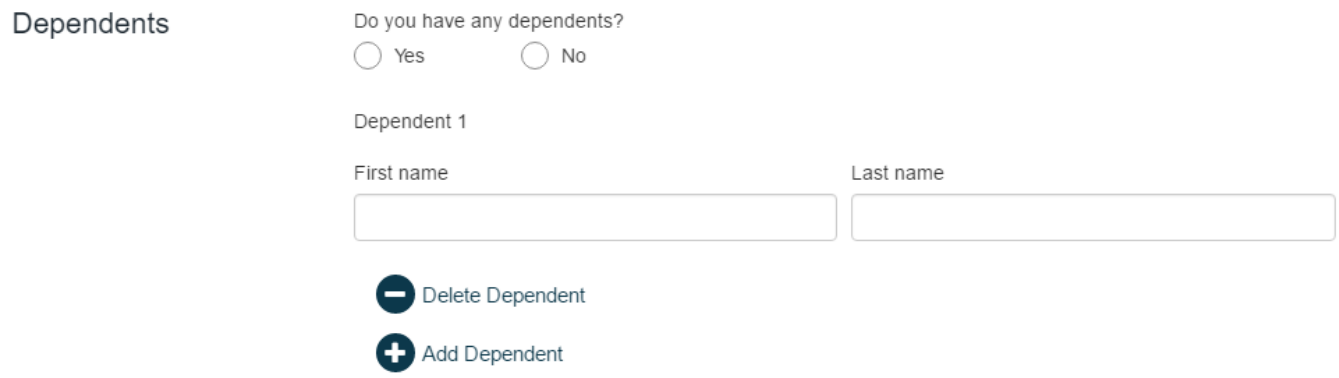
1. Expand Organization.
2. Expand Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Create Component Begin.
5. Click the Edit Version button to open the form

NOTE

You can create components directly from the Components folder, rather than from within a form.

## Step 2 Setup a Repeating Block and Add Components

Add a Repeating Block Template and components to the Dependents section so it matches the image below.



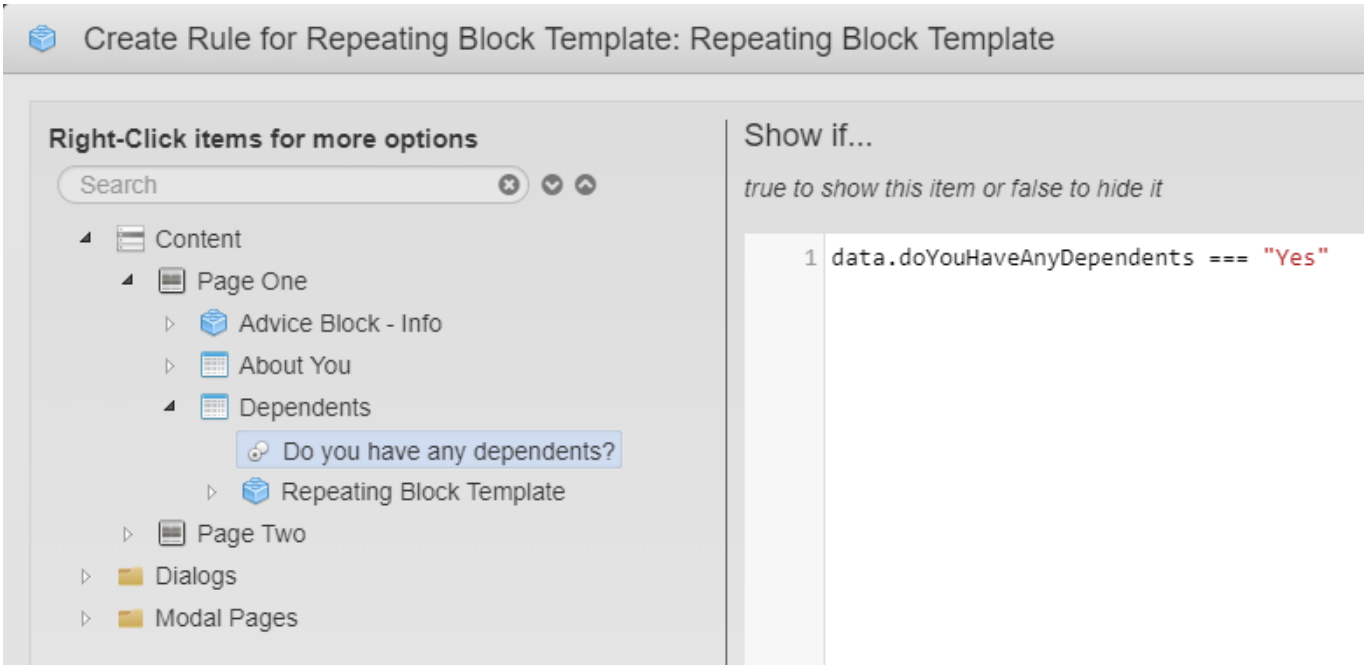

NOTE

The First Name and Last Name components are within the Dependent 1Repeating Block Template. Before you add components, make sure you add the Repeating Block Template first, then add the components.

## Step 3 Create Visibility Rule

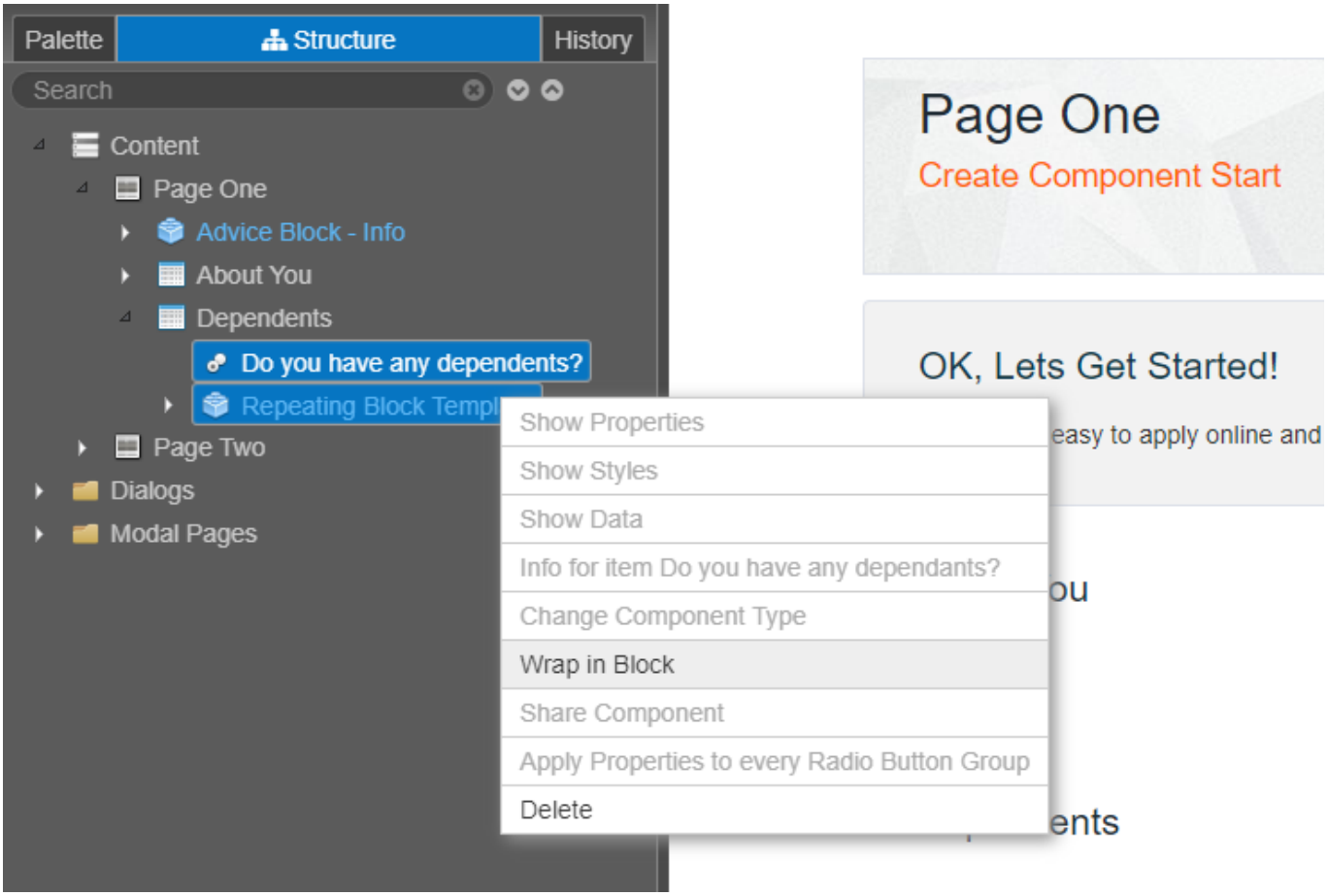
Create a visibility rule so that the repeating block does not show unless the user selects Yes to having dependents.

Create this rule on the Repeating Block Template (see below).



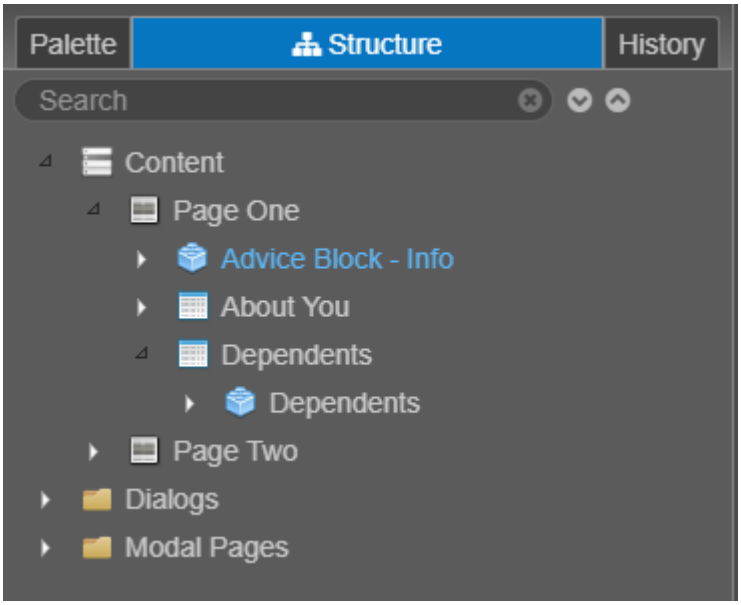

## Step 4 Wrap in block

Wrap all the components (i.e. Radio Button component and Repeating Block) from the Dependents section into a block. See the image below for guidance.



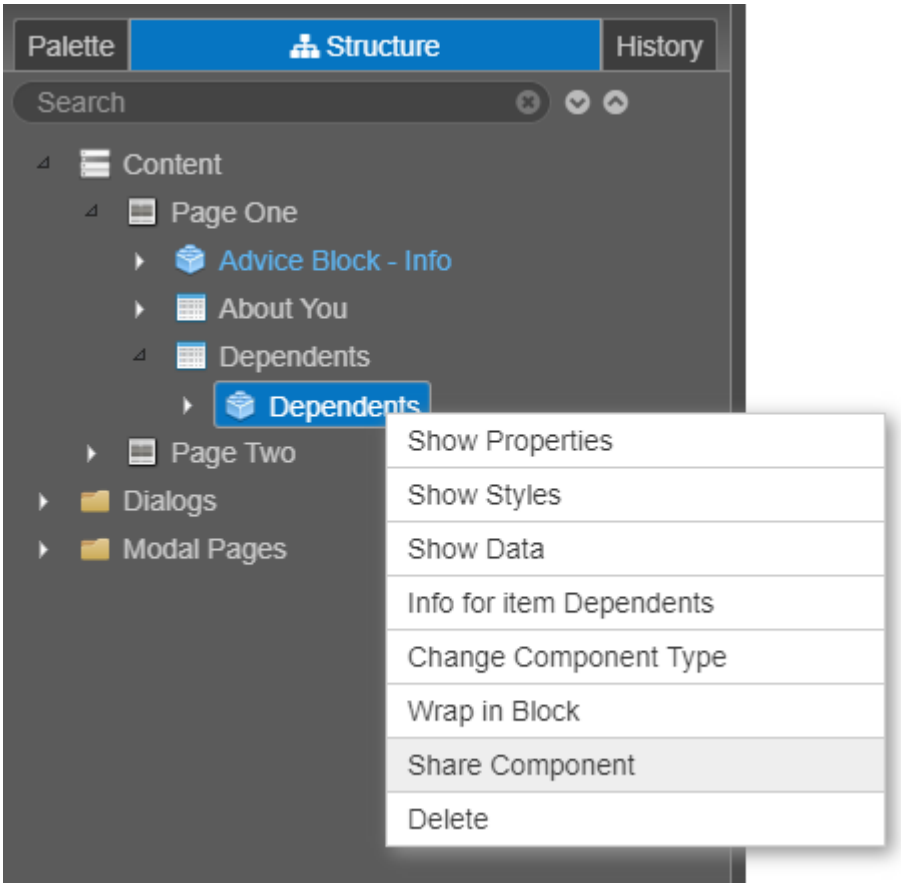
NOTE

If more than one component is going to be part of a shared component, you must wrap the relevant components into a block. Your Structure panel should look like the image below.




## Step 5 Create a Shared Component

Create a shared component that combines the components you just created. Your Structure panel should match the image below.




Use the following details for the shared component:

Name: Dependents_Exercise

Description: Contains the components for applicant's dependents.

Palette Folder: Custom Components

Instant Publish: Select Publish for immediate use and select Replace item with shared component

Publish Library: Select the appropriate project library (e.g. Maestro Training Exercises Library)

> NOTE
>
> Remember: the instant publish options will publish the shared component to the library and replace the existing 'Block' with the shared component. This will ensure the current form is updated if the shared component changes.

To finish, click Save to save the Create Component Begin form - then close the form.

# Step 6 Edit a Shared Component

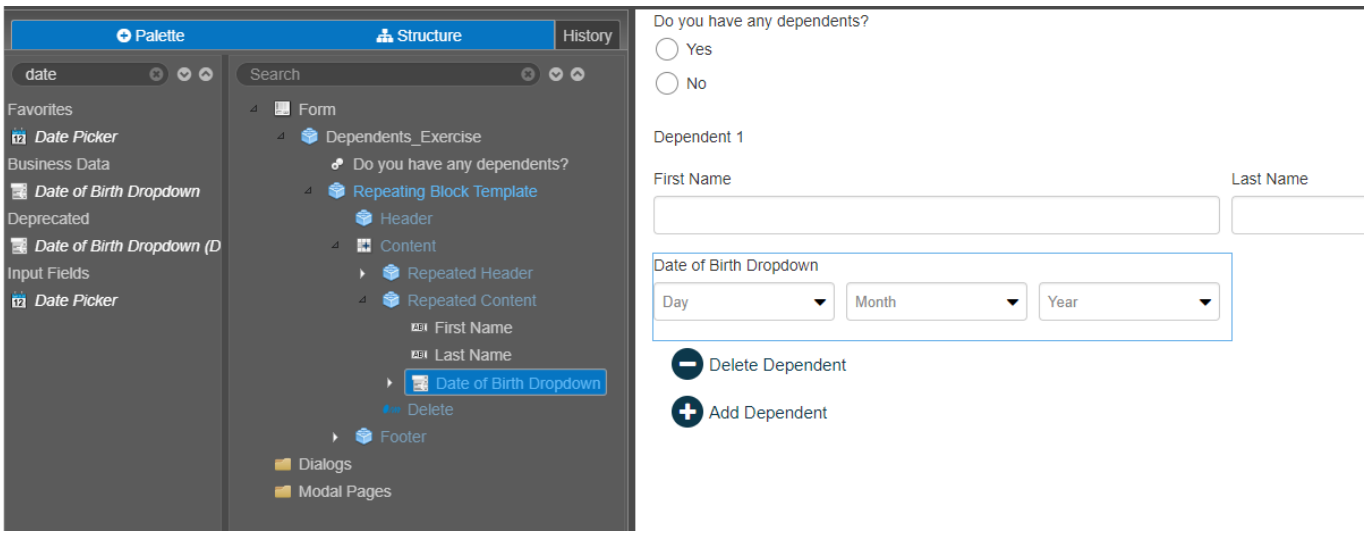
WARNING

Important: make sure your refresh the browser window (Press F5) that displays the Management Dashboard before you proceed.

From the Maestro Management Dashboard, open the shared component you just created and make a change to the component.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Components.
4. Double-click Dependents_Exercise.
5. Click Edit Version to open the Component.

Add the Date of Birth dropdown to the repeating block. Your shared component should match the image below.




NOTE

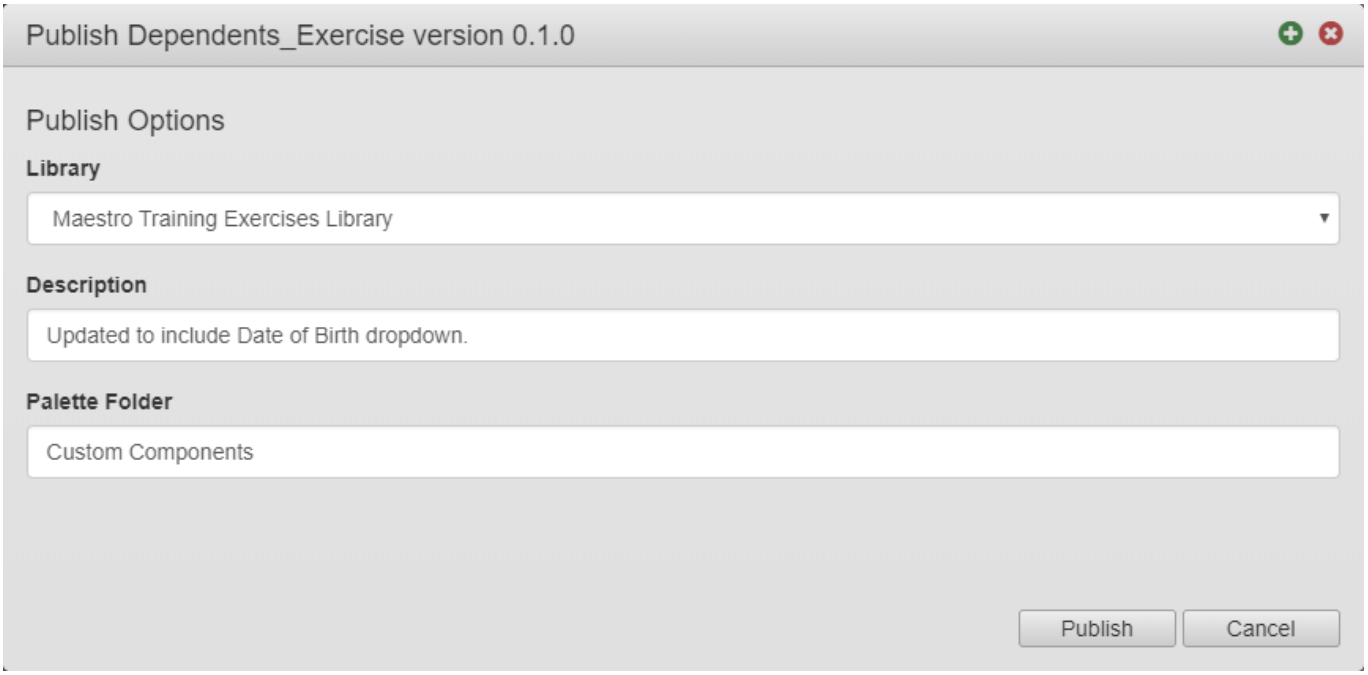
Note that the shared component won't include form elements like the navigator or sections because it's not linked to a specific template.

Click Save to save the changes to the shared component.

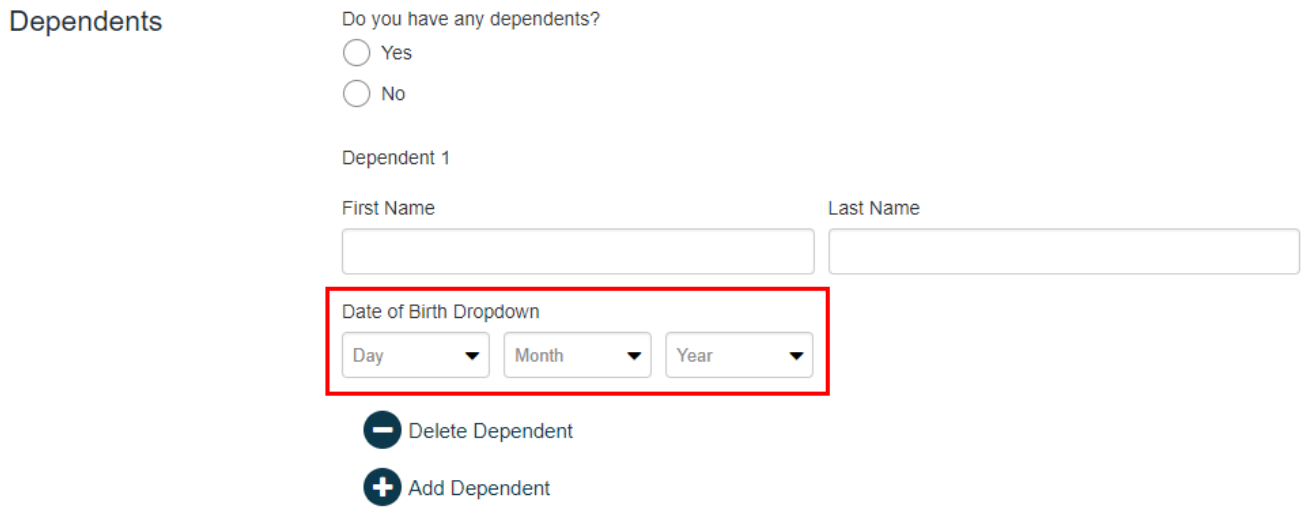
# Step 7 Publish Updated Component

Once the component has been updated, Publish it so the changes are updated in forms currently using the component as well as any new uses of the shared component.

Use the image below for guidance.




Once you publish the updated component, Close the Component window and Open the Create Component Begin form to confirm the changes to the component (below).



# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

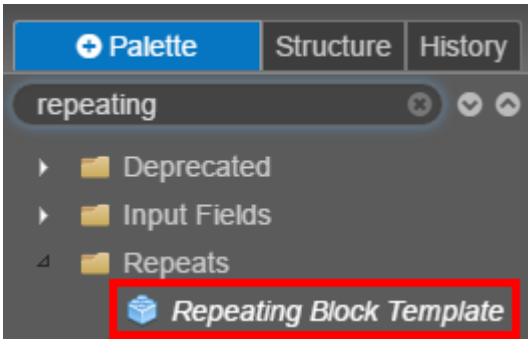
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Using a Repeating Block Template

The Repeating Block Template enables you to easily setup repeating functionality.

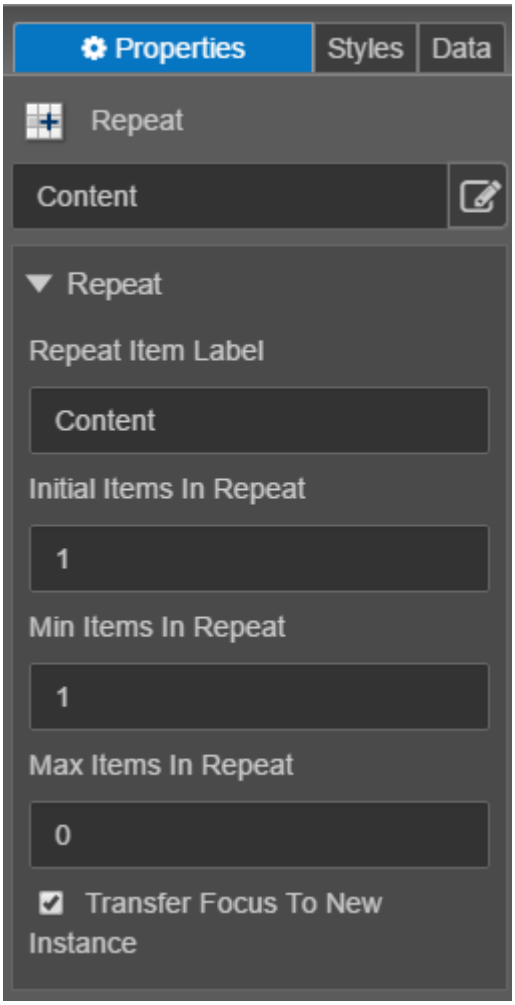
Use the Palette Search to find the Repeating Block Template.

Drag the component onto your form.




Add the components you want to repeat into the field area of the block.

To make adjustments to the Repeating Block properties, select Content within the Repeating Block Template (Structure panel).




Repeat Item Label: updates the label at the top of the block, as well as the button text.

Initial Items In Repeat: determines how many repeating components are on the form by default.

Min Items In Repeat: determines the minimum number of repeating components that must be displayed on the form.

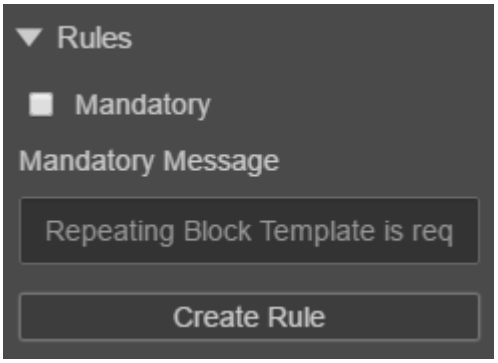
Max Items In Repeat: determines the maximum number of repeating components the user can add to the form.

## Create a Show if Rule

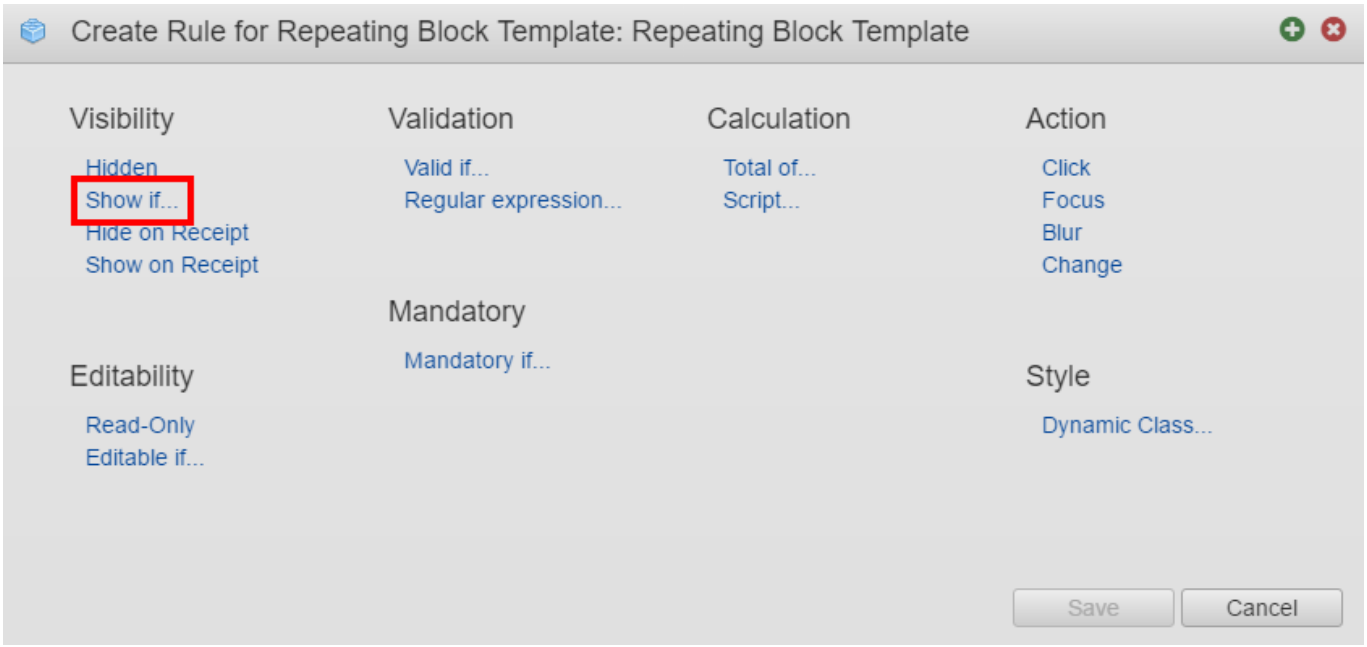
The Show if rule allows you to show or hide a component based on the selection of another.

Start by selecting the component you want to show or hide.

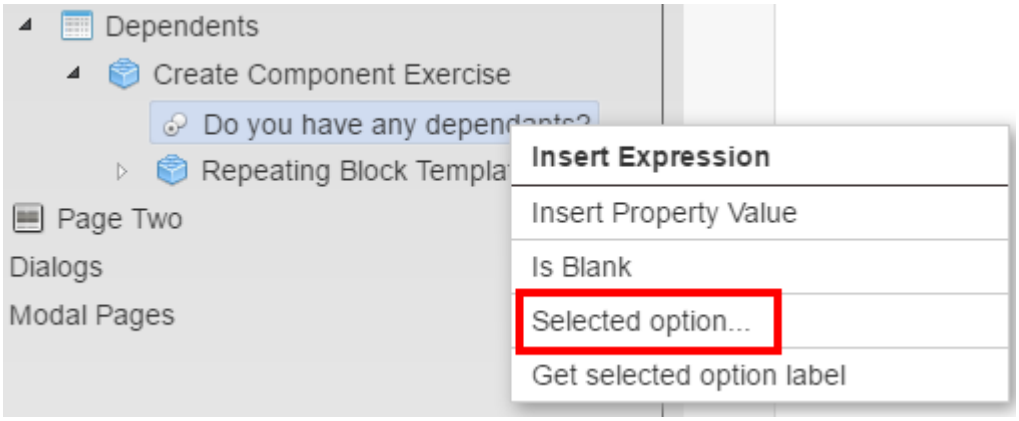
Click Create Rule in the Rules section of the Properties panel.




Select Show if (under Visibility).

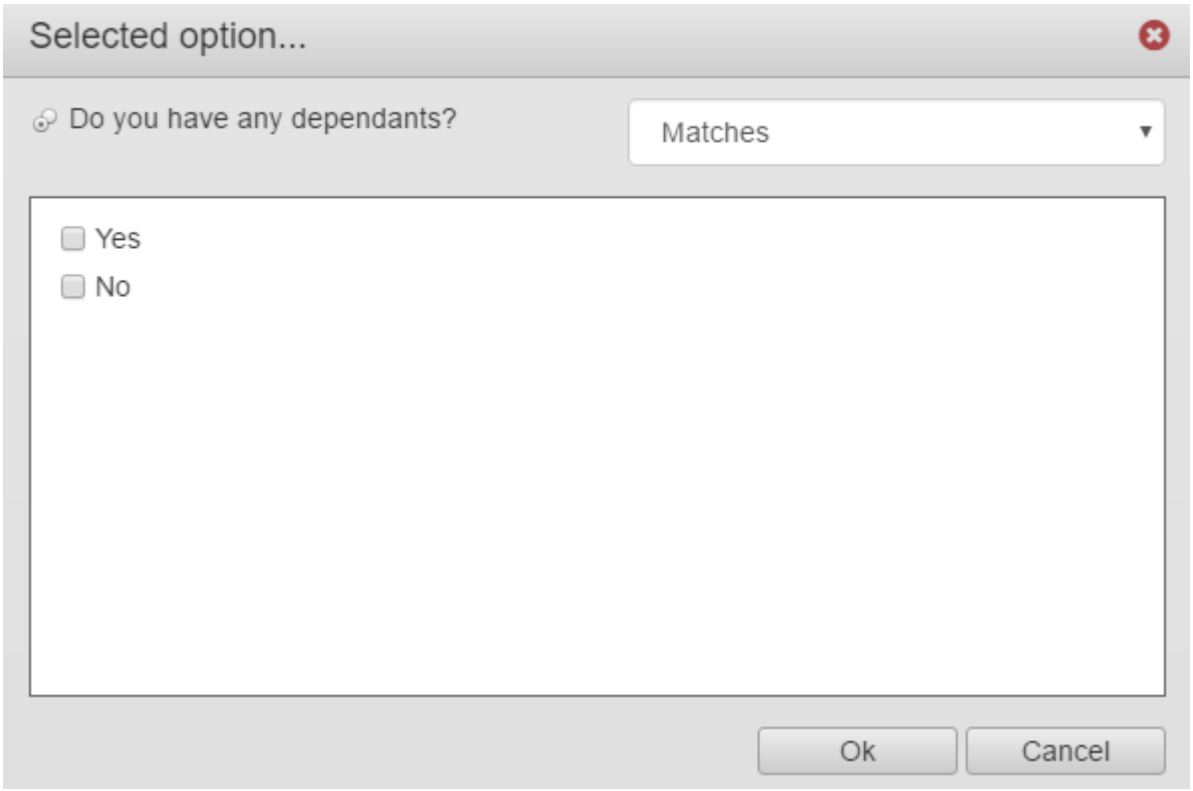



Right-click the component that determines if the selected component is displayed or hidden and click Selected option.




In the top right corner of the Selected option window, choose if the option should match or not match, then select the relevant options.

Click OK to close the window.



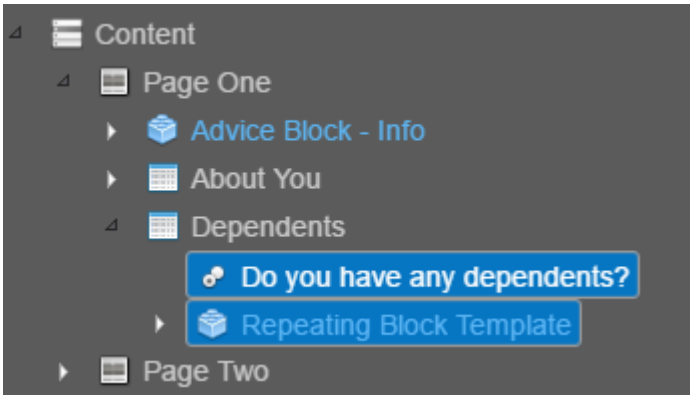

The script for the rule and selected components is displayed.

Click Save to continue.

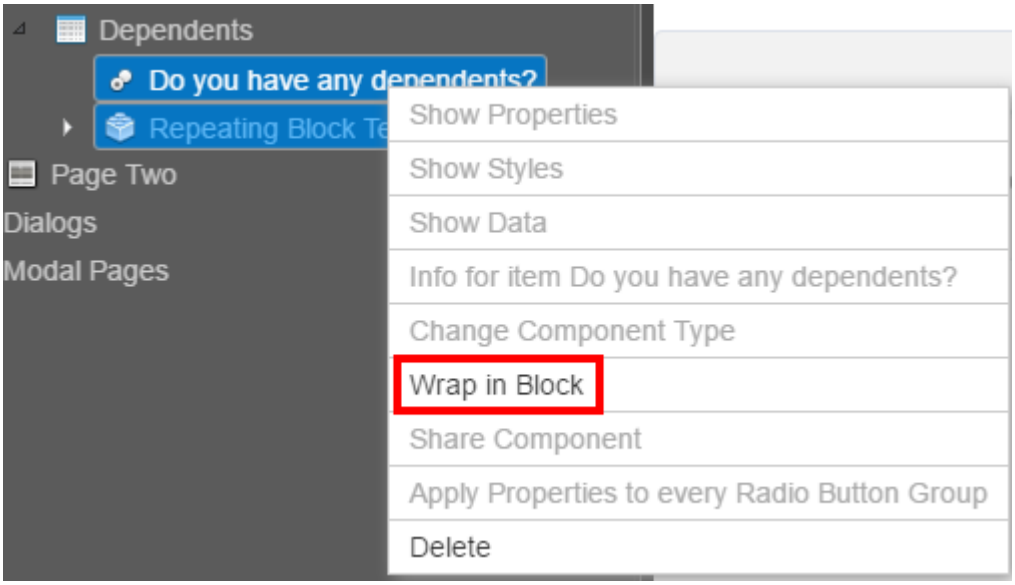
## Wrap Components in a Block

If a shared component is made up of more than one component, you must wrap the relevant components in a block first, then create the shared component.

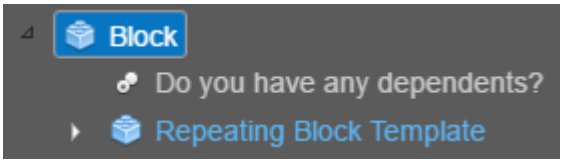
To wrap multiple components in a block, select all the components from the structure panel using either SHIFT or CTRL (see below).



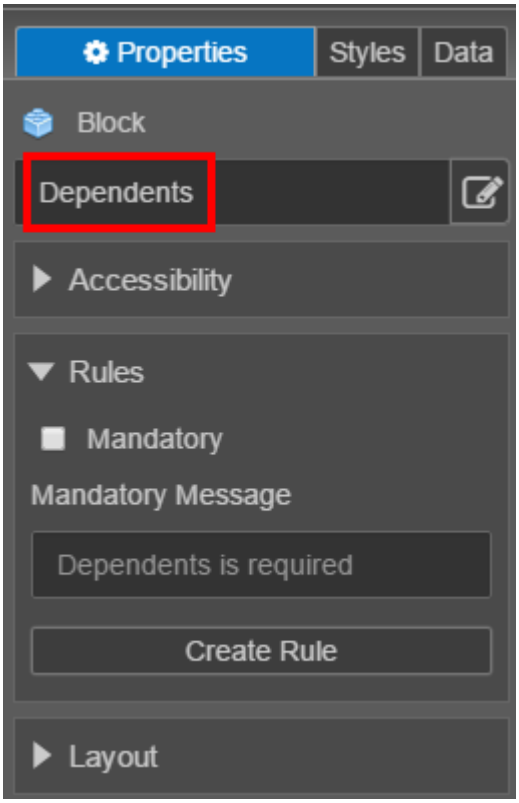

Right-click one of the selected items and select Wrap in Block.




The Block is created and the components are displayed within.



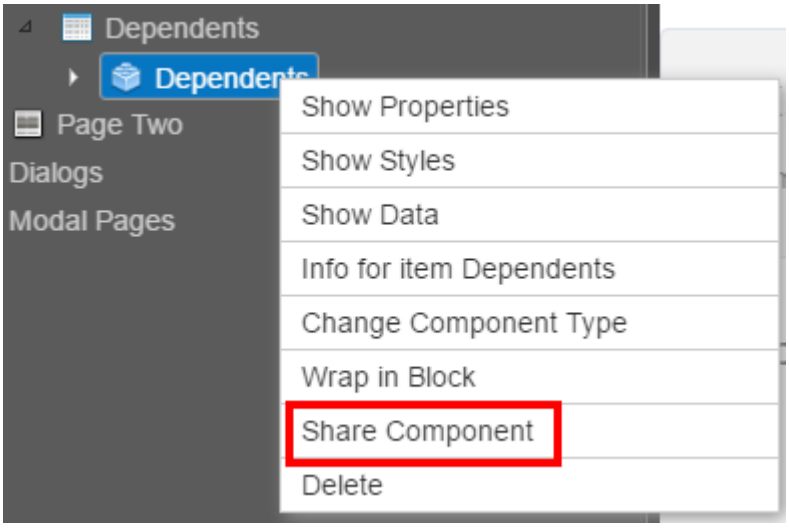

Use the Properties panel to rename the block.



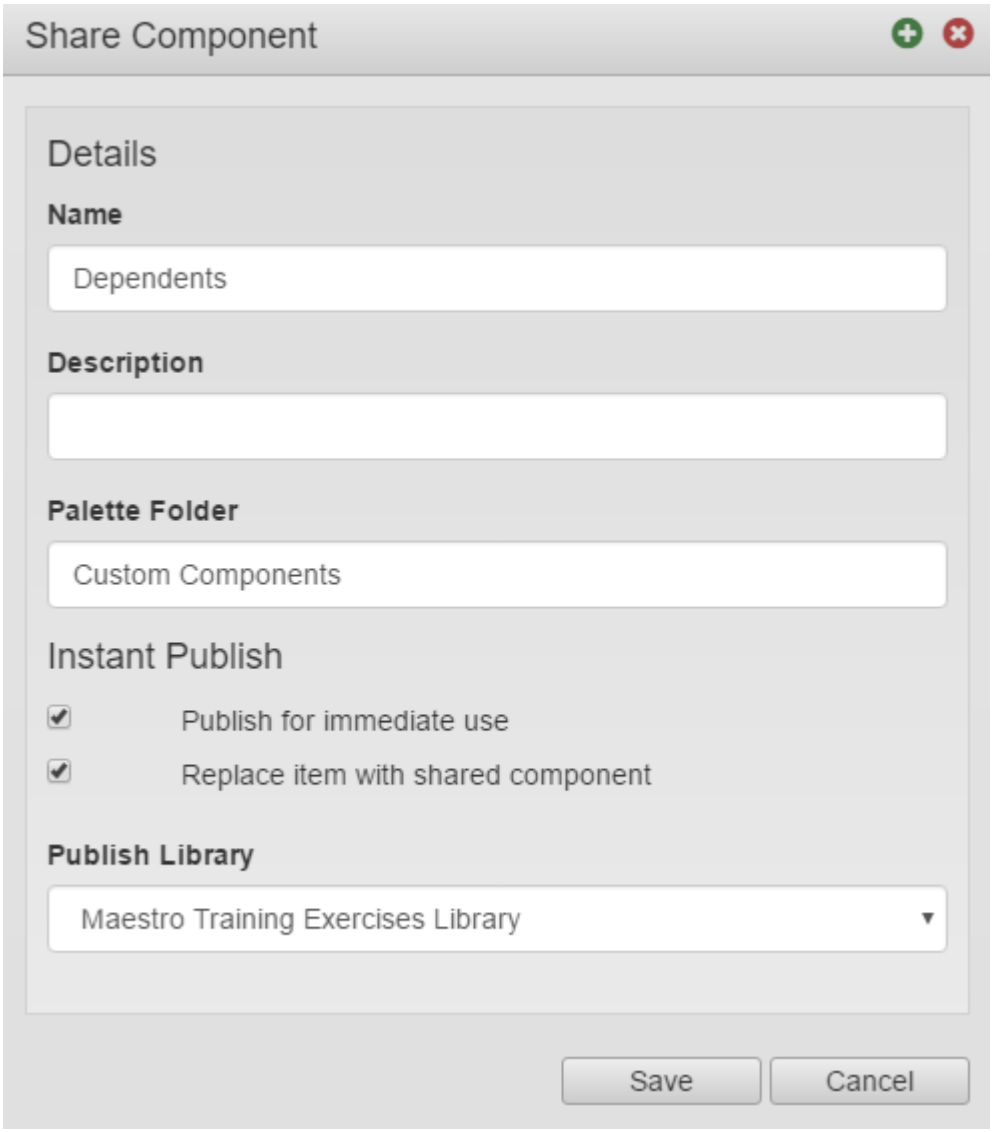

## Create Shared Component

Shared components are stored outside a form, in the Components folder of the project. Once a Shared component is published, it is stored in a Library. Shared components can be updated outside of a form. When they're updated, any forms using that component are updated automatically.

To create a Shared Component, right-click the block and select Share Component.




The Share Component window will display.




Name: is the name of the shared component displayed in the Palette panel.

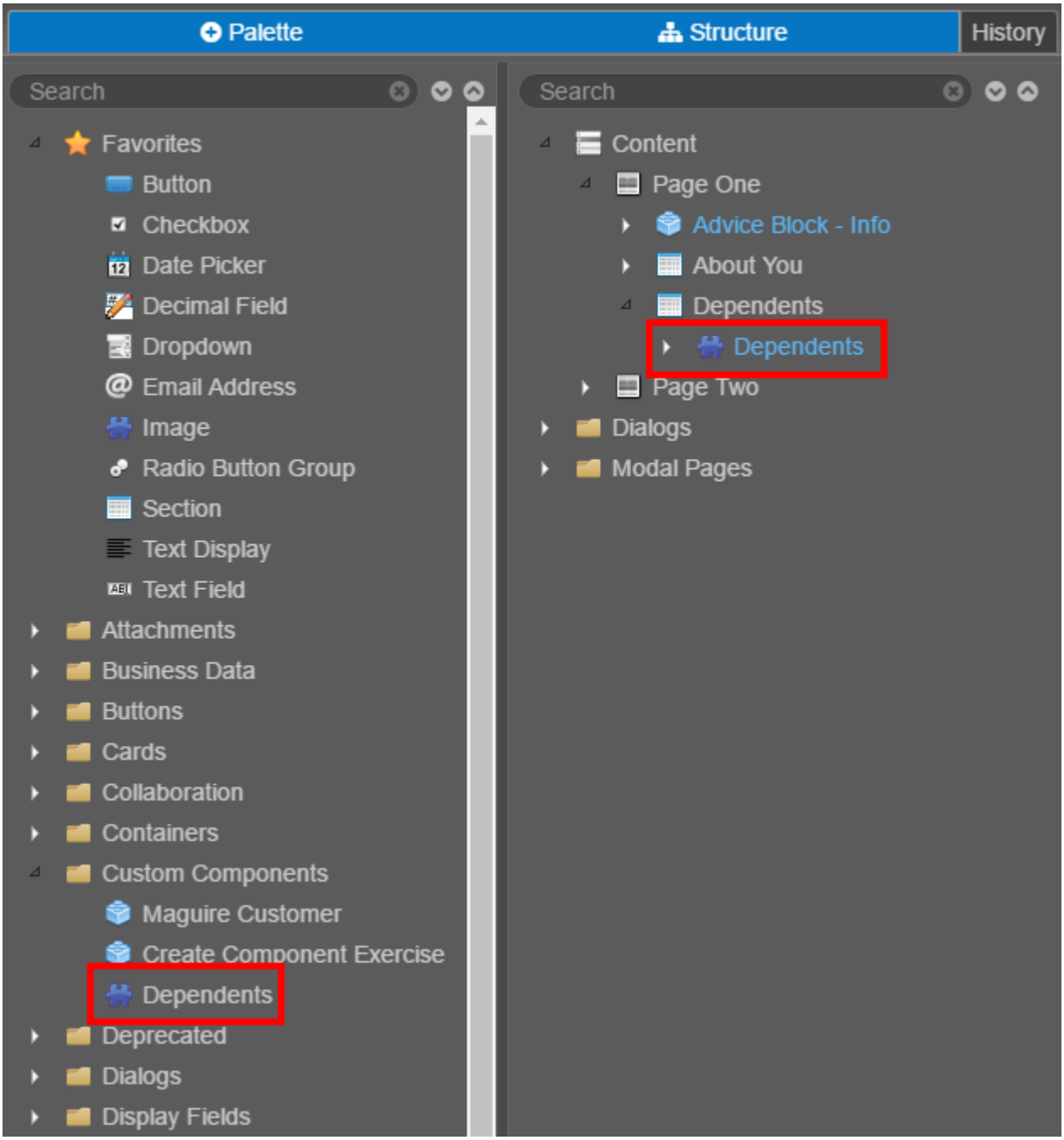
Description: contains details about the shared component like the components in contains.

Palette Folder: is the folder where the shared component is stored within the Palette structure. If you enter a folder name that's already created, the shared component will be added to the folder. If you enter a name not currently be used, a new folder will be created.

Instant Publish – Publish for immediate use: publishes the shared component as soon as you click Save. This adds the component to the library, so other forms can access and use the shared component.

Instant Publish – Replace item with shared component: removes the block currently in the form and replaces it with the shared component. This allows the component in the form to be updated whenever changes to the shared component occur.

The Structure panel is updated with the new shared component and the folder in the Palette panel will contain the shared component.



# Layout Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for working with the layout of your form. During this exercise you will use an existing form to edit the layout of components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

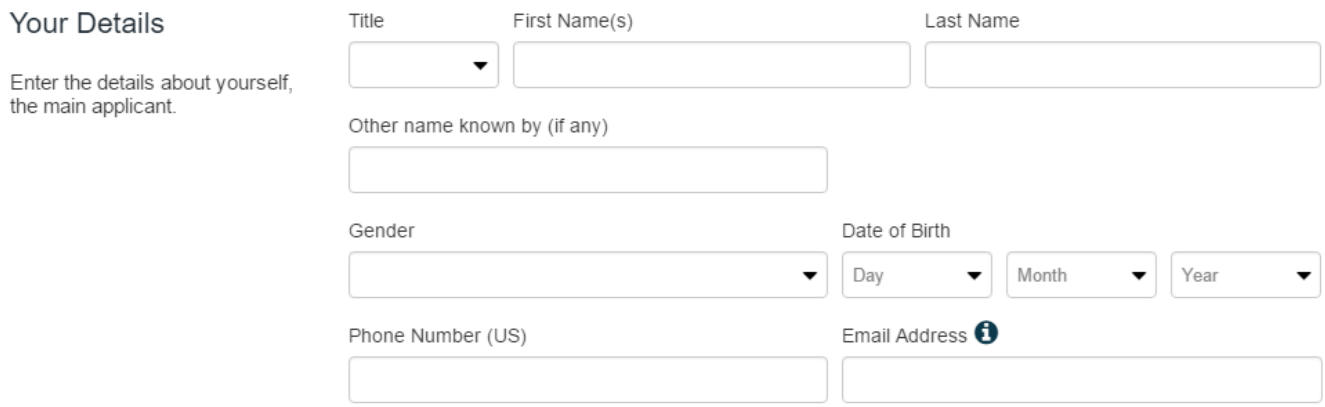
You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Layout Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1: Open the Existing Form Layout Begin.

1. In the Navigator Panel, expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Layout Begin.
5. Click the Edit Version button to open the form.

## Step 2: Adjust the Layout of Title, First Name and Last Name

On the Applicant Details page, adjust the components so they appear on the same line when viewing the form on large screens. Update the 'Your Details' section to match the image below.




Set Title to 2 columns wide.

Set First Name(s) to 5 columns wide.

Set Last Name to 5 columns wide.

Set Other name known by (if any) to 7 columns wide.

Set Phone Number to 6 columns wide.

Set Email Address to 6 columns wide.

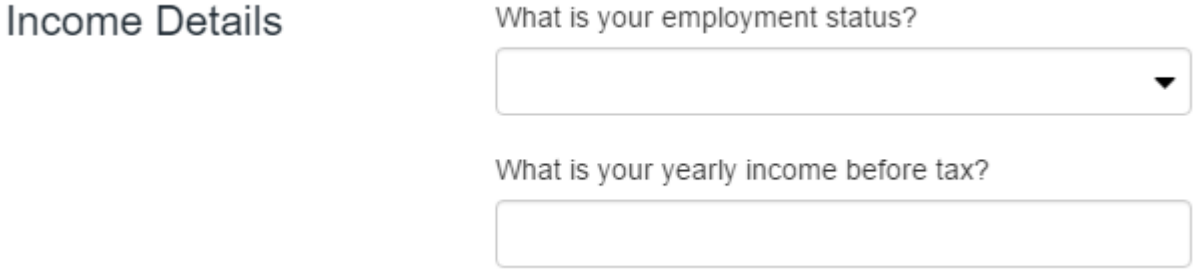
Best practice: only change the width values for the Large and Full Screen sizes.
In the Editor, you'll only see the changes made to the Full screen size.
Use Preview to check the form and make any necessary adjustments.

Once you've made room on a row, you can drag a component into position if it doesn't automatically move to the larger space.

Click Save.

## Step 3: Adjust the Income Details Components

On the Income and Expenses page, adjust the components so they appear on their own row.

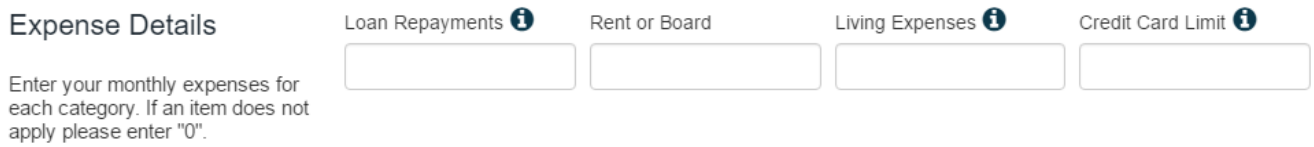


Both components are set to 6 columns wide (for the Large and Full Screen sizes).

Click Save.

## Step 4: Adjust the Expenses Details Components

On the Income and Expenses page, adjust the components so they appear as four columns on the same row.



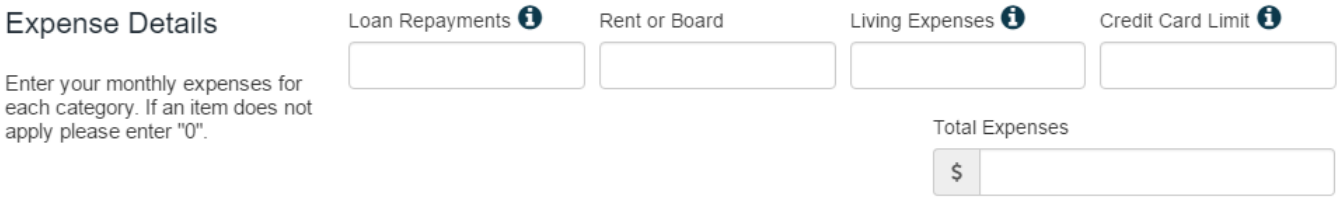

Set all four components to 3 columns wide.

Once you've made room on a row, you can drag a component into position if it doesn't automatically move to the larger space.

Click Save.

## Step 5: Add a New Component to the Expense Details Section

In the Expense Details section, add a new Total Expenses component.




NOTE

Notice: the currency symbol for Total Expenses is added by using the Currency Field.

Set Total Expenses to 5 columns wide.

Set the Offset for Total Expenses to 7 columns.

Click Save.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

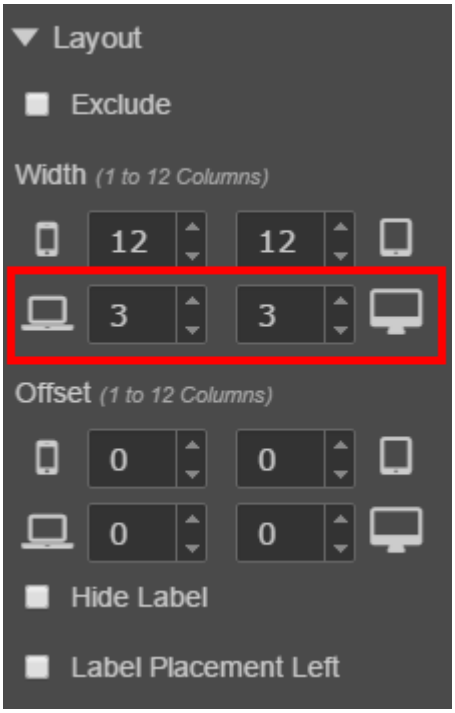
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Change the layout of components

Select the component you want to change. Adjust the Width values within the Layout section (Properties panel) to make any changes.

Decrease the column width for the relevant screen size.

> NOTE
>
> You will only see changes in the Editor when you adjust the full screen layout.

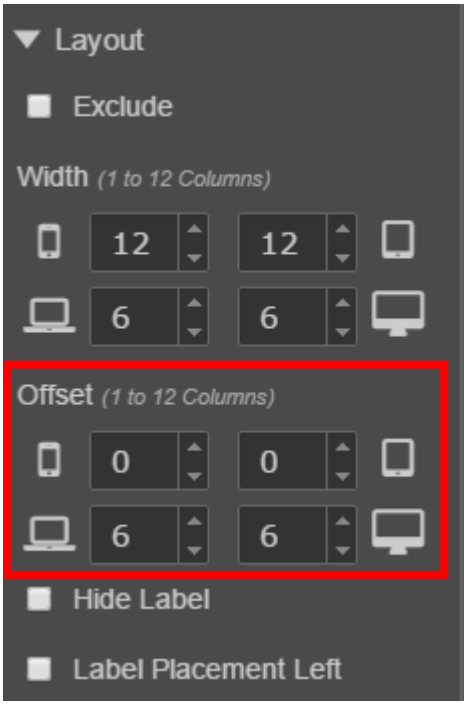



## Change the position of components (using Offset)

Components can be shifted to the right or left within their row. Select the component you want to change.

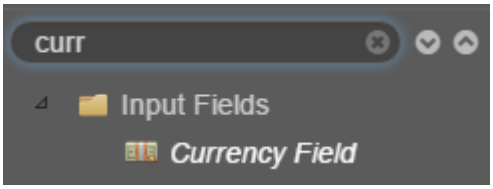
Adjust the Offset values within the Layout section (Properties panel) to make any changes.

You can increase the offset to move the component to the right or decrease the offset to move the component to the left.

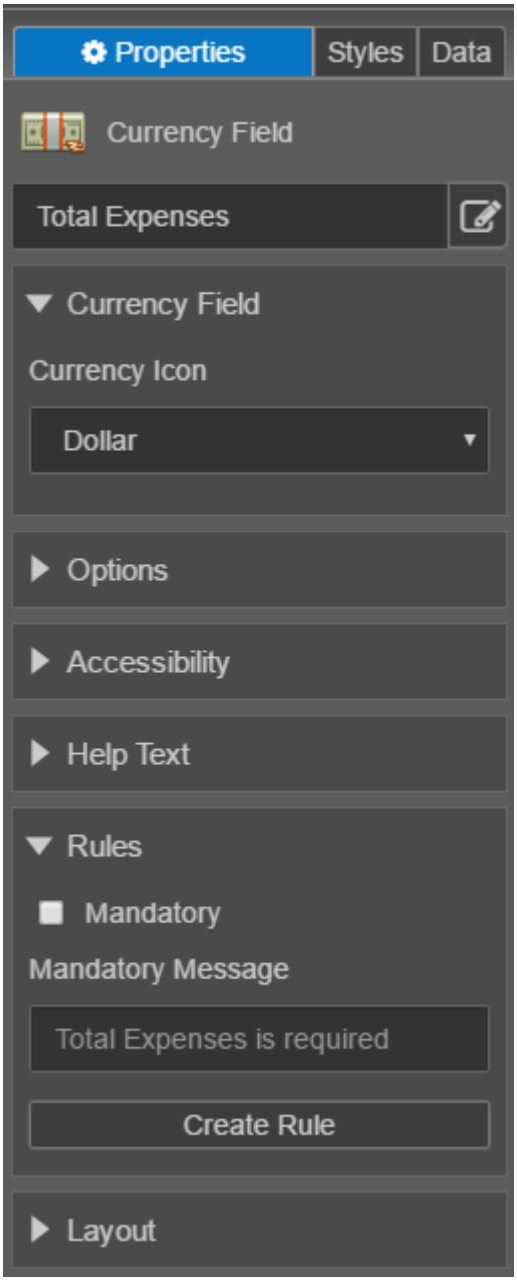



## Add a Currency Field

The Currency Field component automatically includes a currency symbol. Use Search in the Palette to find the Currency Field and add (drag) it to your form.




Use the Properties panel to make changes to the field, including the currency icon used.


Properties
Styles
Data
Currency Field
Total Expenses
Currency Field
Currency Icon
Dollar
Options
Accessibility
Help Text
Rules
Mandatory
Mandatory Message
Total Expenses is required
Create Rule
Layout

# Pages and Sections Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills with pages and sections. During this exercise, you will use an existing form to edit pages and sections as well as add new ones.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Pages and Sections Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Create a New Version

Create a new version of the existing form named Pages and Sections Begin.

Follow the steps below to create the new form.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Select Pages and Sections Begin.
5. Click New Version.
6. Enter the following Form Description:

   Description: This form version is to practice working with sections.

7. Click Create.
8. Click Edit to open the form.

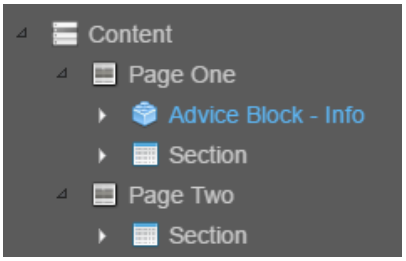
# Step 2 Update the Names of the Existing Pages and Sections

In this form, you will find two pages, each containing a section. You will change the names of both pages and their sections.

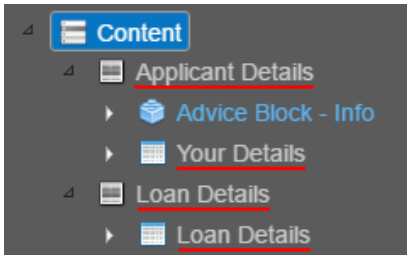
NOTE

Use the Structure panel to select the pages and sections you want to update.

**Starting Structure Panel**



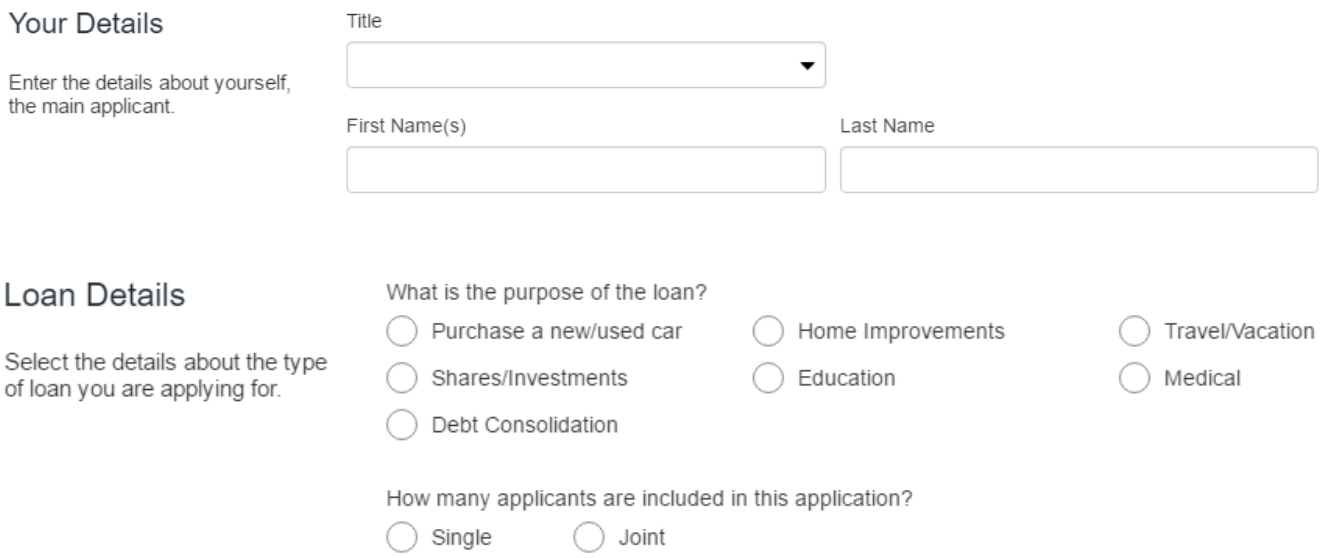

**Updated Structure Panel**




Update the Section - Additional Text (using the supplied text) so your form matches the image below.

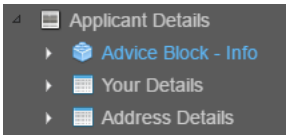
NOTE

- Your Details: Enter the details about yourself, the main applicant.
- Loan Details: Select the details about the type of loan you are applying for.



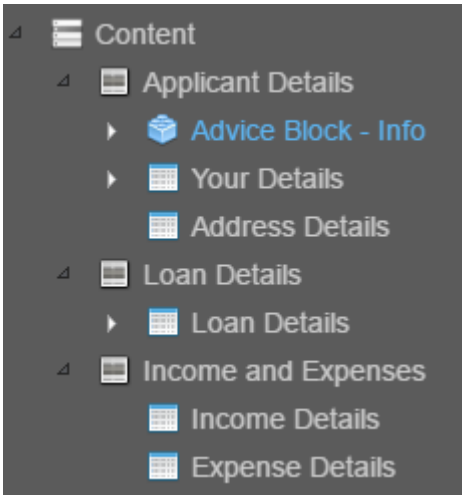
## Step 3 Add a new section to the Applicant Details page

Add your new section after the existing section on page one. Your Structure panel should appear similar to the image displayed.

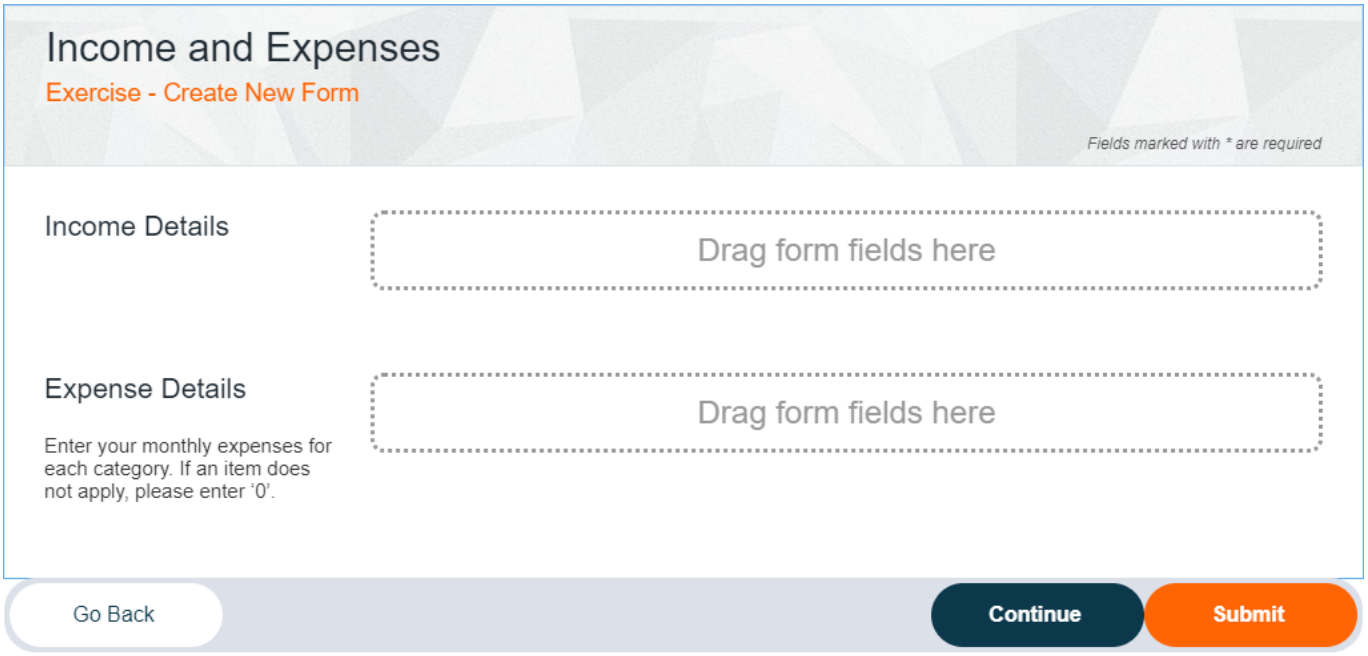



## Step 4 Add a New Page with Two Sections

Add a new page (called 'Income and Expenses') after the existing pages. Add two sections to the page. Your Structure panel should match the image below.




The Income and Expenses page should match the image below.




NOTE

Notice: the additional text for the Expense Details section (text below).

Expense Details: Enter your monthly expenses for each category. If an item does not apply, please enter '0'.

## Step 5 Rearrange the Components

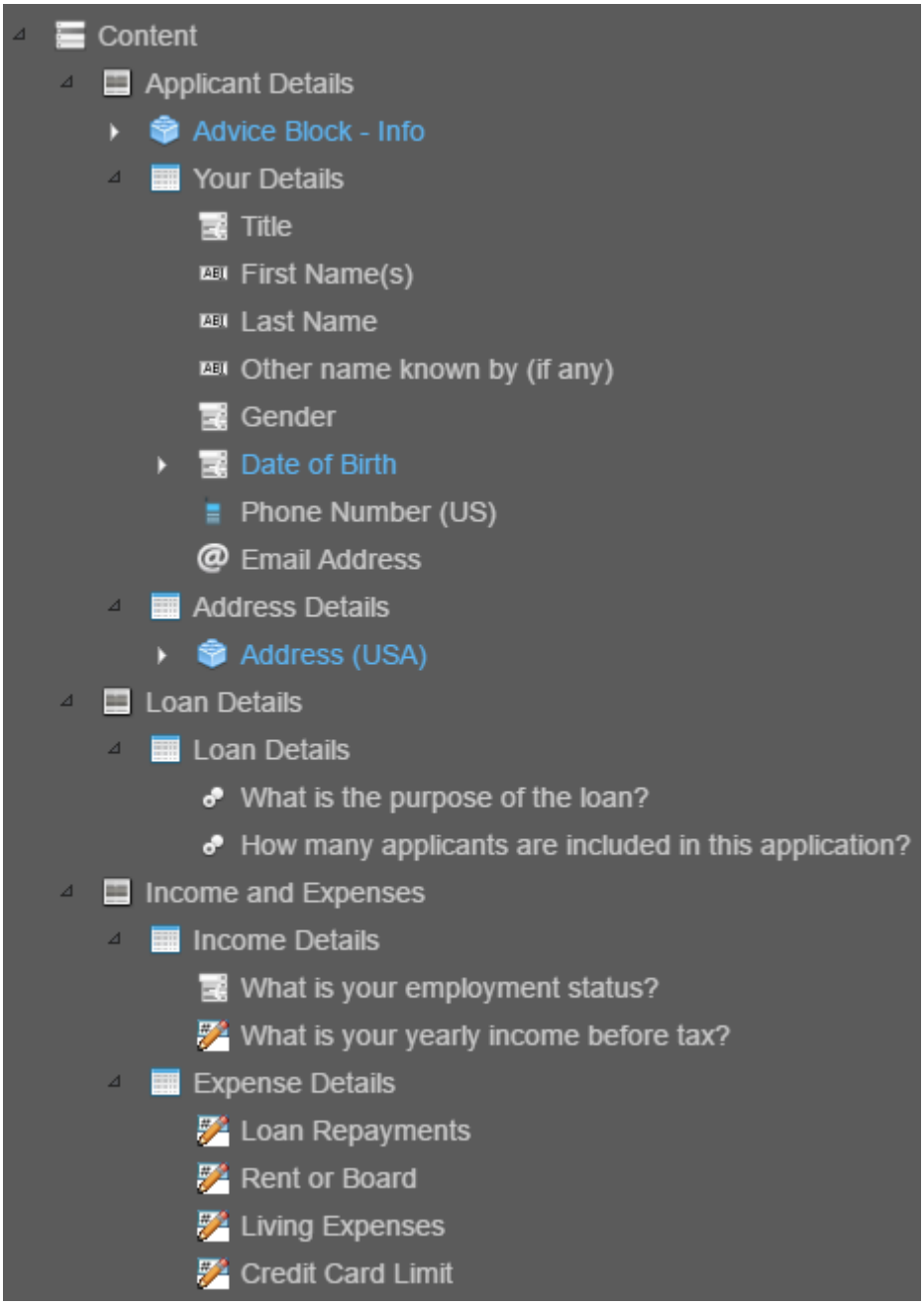
Using the Structure panel:

- Move the Address block to the Address Details section.
- Move (i.e. drag and drop) the income questions to the new Income Details section on page three.
- Move the expense questions to the new Expense Details section on page three.

NOTE

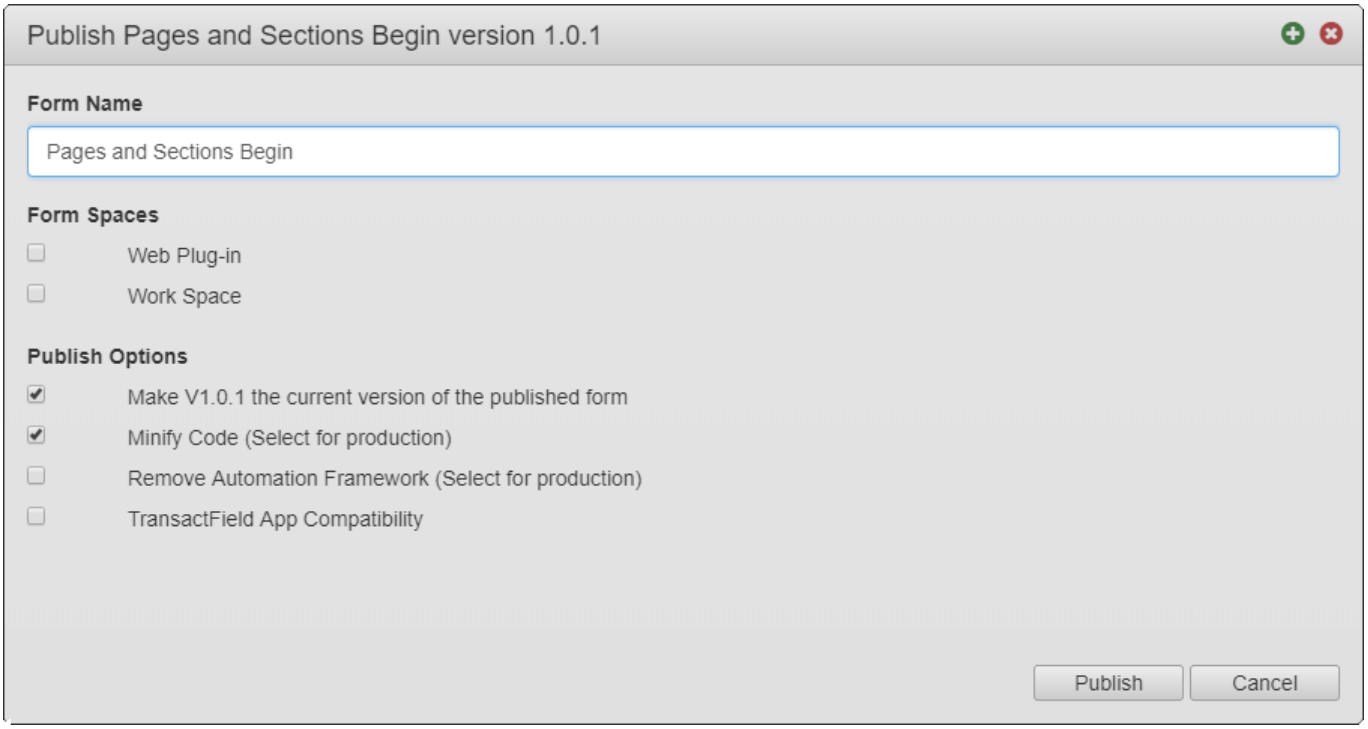
You can select multiple components at one time by using SHIFT or CTRL.

The image below shows how the Structure panel should look once the components have been rearranged.




## Step 6 Publish the Form

Click Publish on the toolbar to publish your form. The publish settings should match (or be like) the image below.




# Extra Help

Need some Extra Help?

Use the information below to assist in completing the exercise steps.

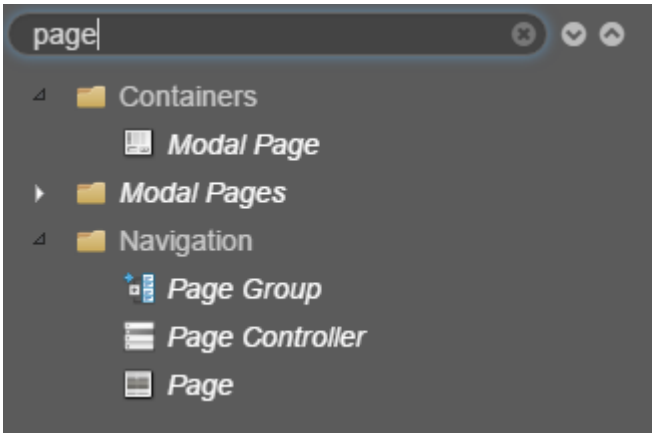
## Add a new page

Use the Search box in the Palette to find the Page component.

Drag the Page component to the Content container on the Structure panel.

NOTE

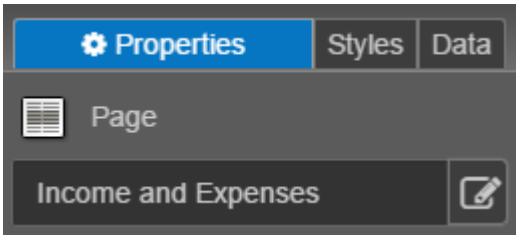
Pages Groups and Pages cannot be added into the Editor pane.




NOTE

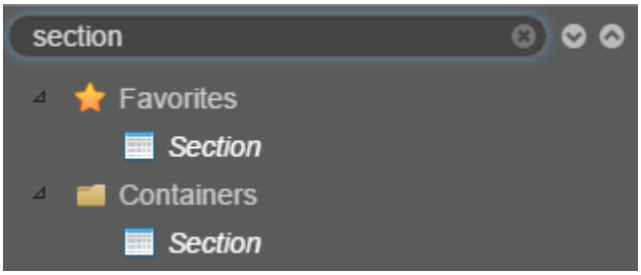
You can also right-click the Content folder (Structure panel) and choose Add Page Group.

Use the Properties panel to change the name of the page.




## Add a new section

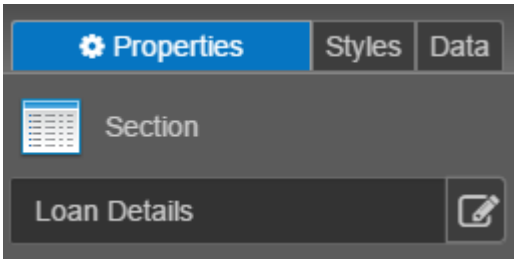
Sections can be added to pages to help organize the display of the components. Use the Search box in the Palette to find the Section component (or look under 'Favourites'). Drag the Section component to the Page container on the Structure panel.




NOTE

You can also drag a new 'Section' component onto the form.

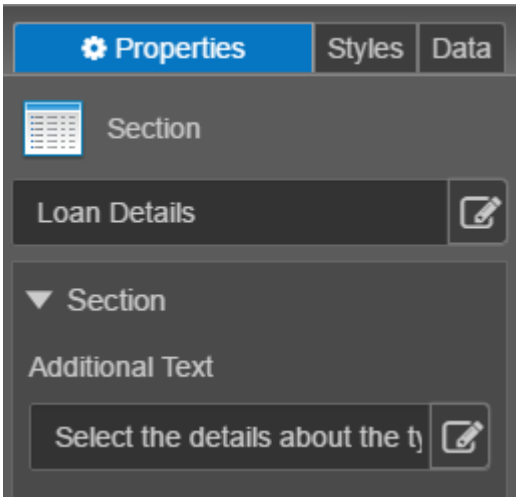
Use the Properties panel to change the name of the section.



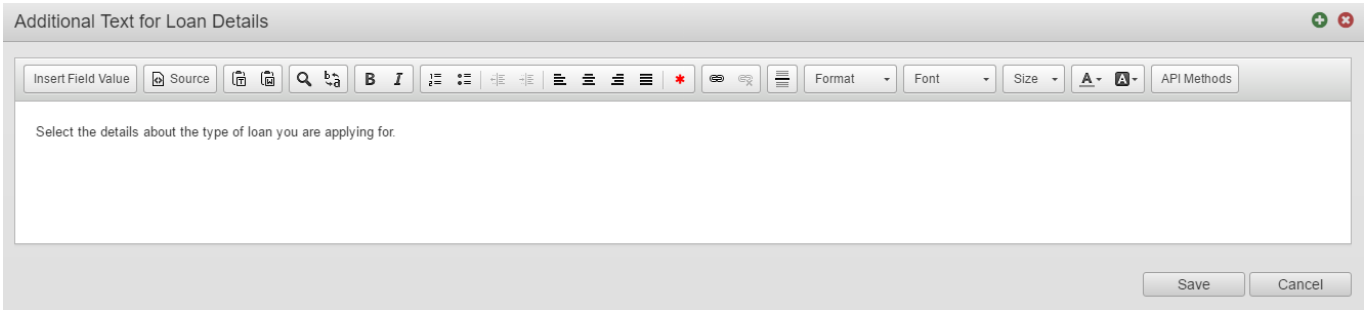

## Additional Text

Use the Properties panel to customize the text below the section title.

In the Properties panel, enter text in the Additional Text entry box.

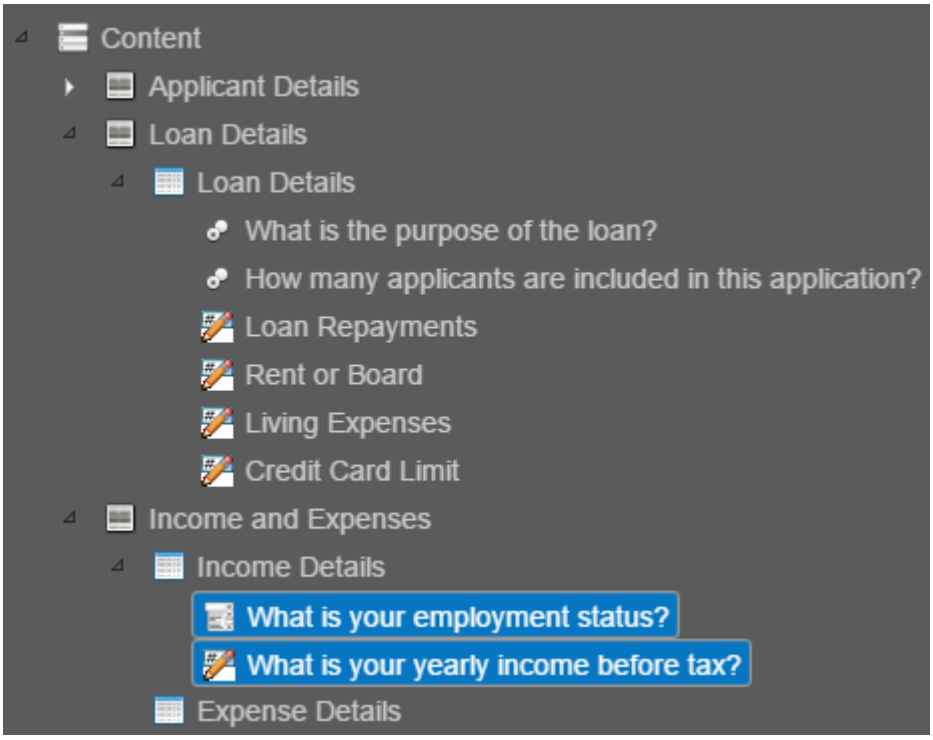



You can click the Edit button to display the Additional Text window. Here you can edit and format the additional text displayed on the form.



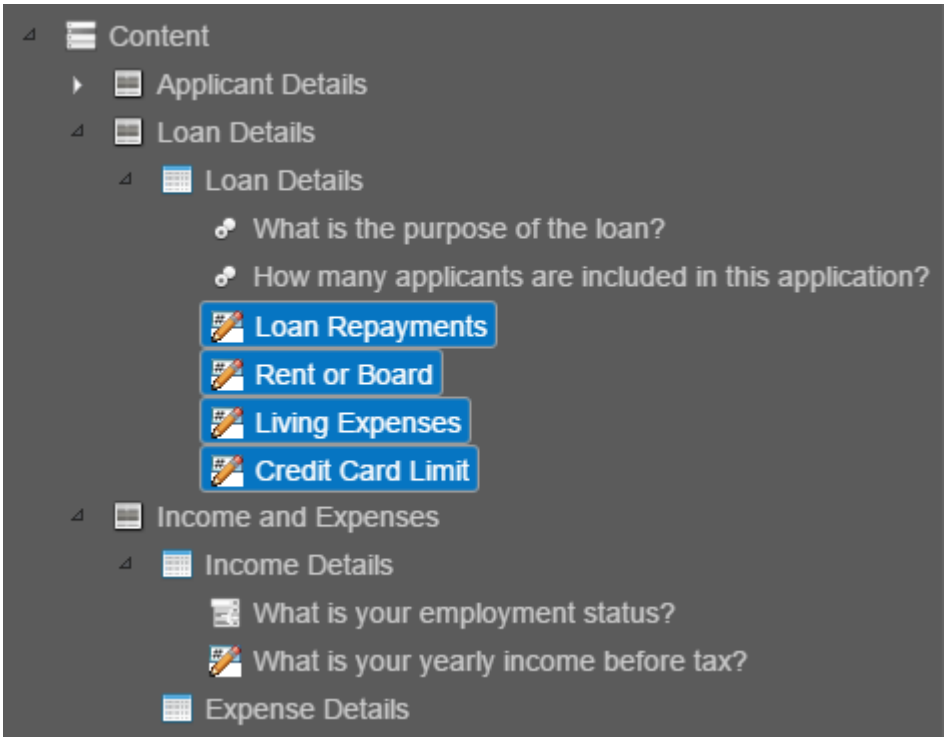

## Rearrange Components

Use the Structure panel to drag and drop components between pages and/or sections.

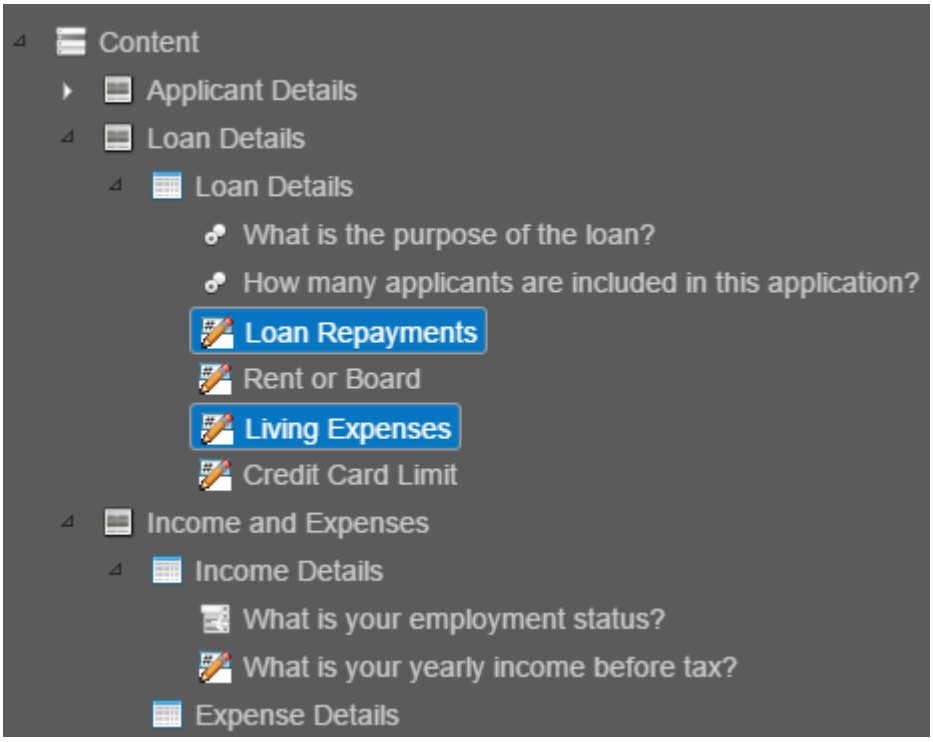



Select multiple components at one time using SHIFT or CTRL. Once selected, you can drag them to a different container.

Select adjacent components using SHIFT (below)




Select non-adjacent components using CTRL (below)


Content
Applicant Details
Loan Details
Loan Details
What is the purpose of the loan?
How many applicants are included in this application?
Loan Repayments
Rent or Board
Living Expenses
Credit Card Limit
Income and Expenses
Income Details
What is your employment status?
What is your yearly income before tax?
Expense Details

# Repeating and Shared Components Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for using repeating components and shared components. During this exercise you will use an existing form to add repeating and shared components.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Repeating and Shared Components Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open the Existing Form 'Repeating and Shared Components Begin'

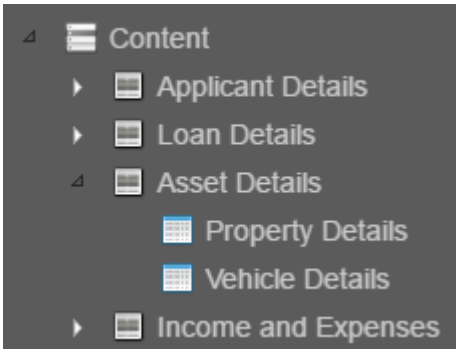
1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Repeating and Shared Components Begin.
5. Click the Edit Version button to open the form

## Step 2 Add a New Page with Sections to Your Form

Add a new Page called Asset Details.

Add two new Sections to this page called Property Details and Vehicle Details.

Your Structure panel should match the image below.




Click Save.

## Step 3 Add Components to the Page

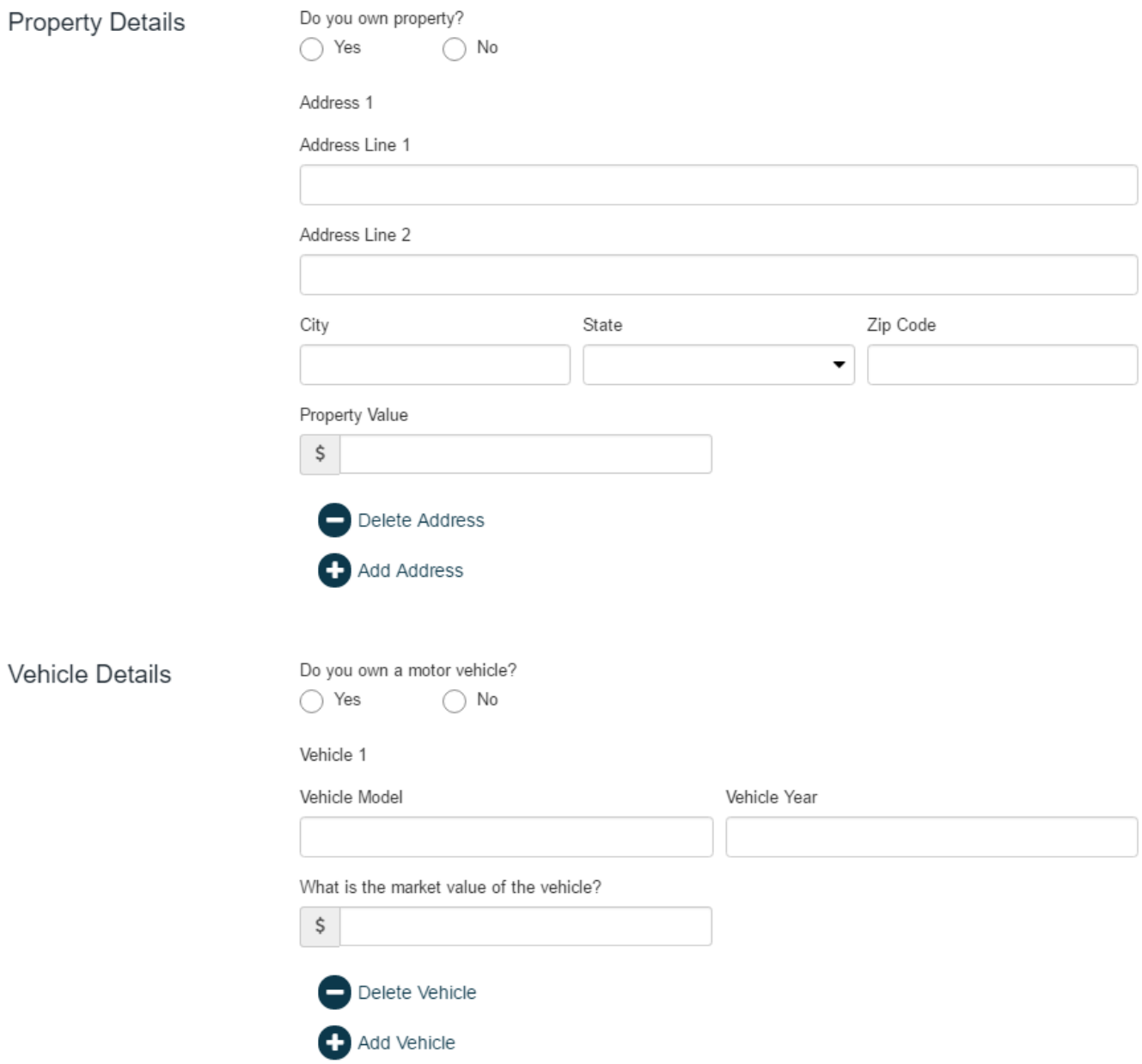
Add components to the new page so it matches the image below.

NOTE

Notice: the Address 1block and Property Value component are within a Repeating Block Template. Before you add components to the page, you should add the Repeating Block Template first, then add the components to the block.

Create a Show if rule to only show the Repeating Block Templates when the user selects Yes to owning Property or a Vehicle.

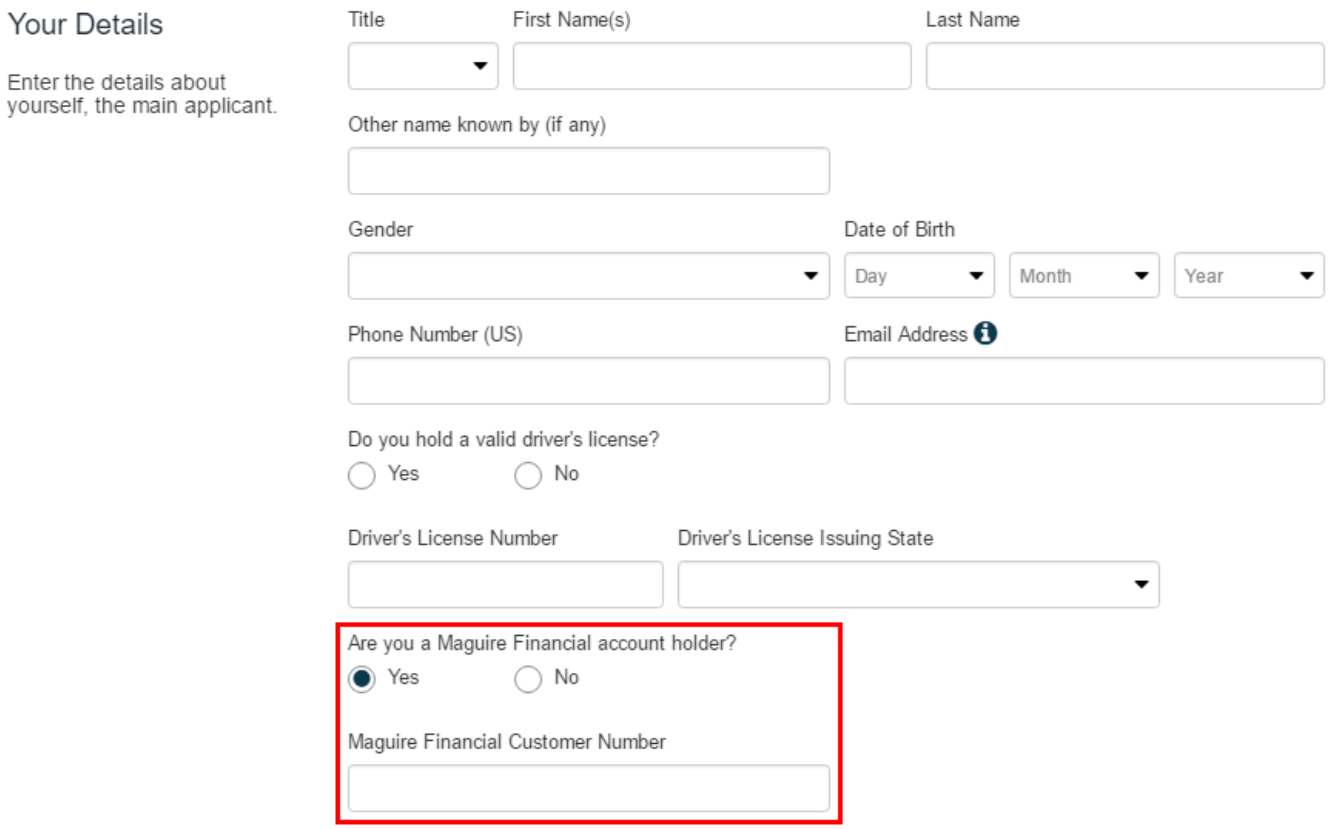
Click Save.




# Step 4 Add a Shared Component

Add the Maguire Customer shared component to the bottom of the Your Details section.

Click Save.




NOTE

Shared components can be stored anywhere in the Palette, so use the Search if you're unsure of a component's location.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Add a new Page and Section

Display the Palette and Structure panels side by side (use button in top left).

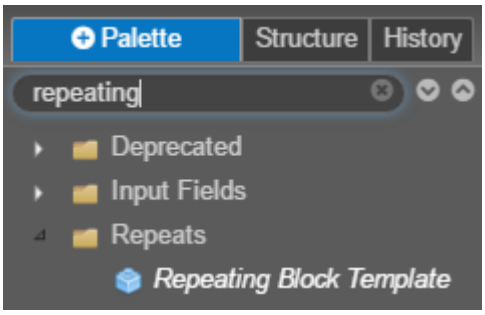
Search for the Page component and drag it onto the Content folder (Structure panel). Drag the new Page into the correct order.

Drag two new Section components onto the new Page.

## Using a Repeating Block Template

The Repeating Block Template includes all of the necessary items to easily setup repeating functionality.

Use the Palette Search to find the Repeating Block Template (see below).

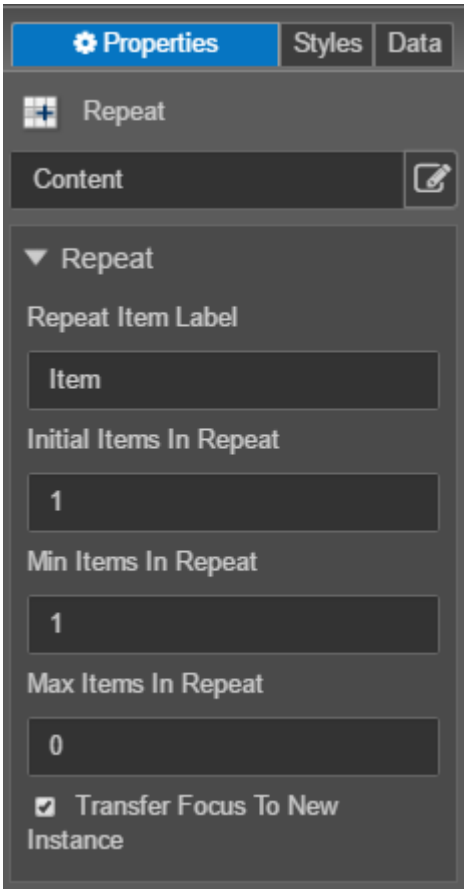



Drag the component onto your form.

You can add the components you want to repeat into the field area of the repeating block.

To make any adjustments to your repeating block, select Content within the Repeating Block Template (Structure panel).

With Content selected you can edit values in the Properties panel.




Repeat Item Label: this updates the label at the top of the block, as well as the button text.

Initial Items In Repeat: determines how many repeating components are on the form by default.

Min Items In Repeat: determines the minimum number of repeating components that must be displayed on the form.

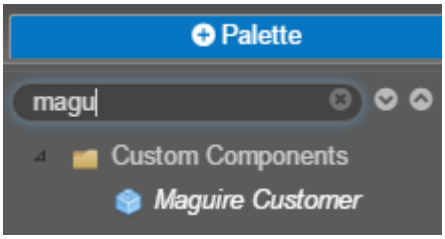
Max Items In Repeat: determines the maximum number of repeating components a user can add to the form.

## Using a Shared Component

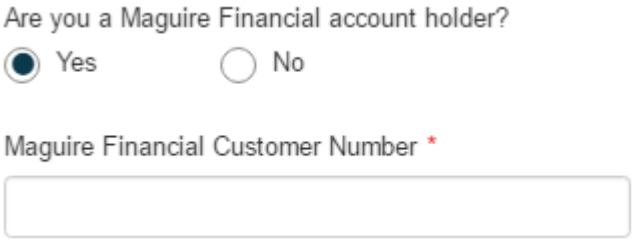
Shared components are stored outside of a form, in the Components folder within the project. A shared component can be updated outside the form. When updates are made, all forms using that component are updated automatically.

Use Search in the Palette to locate the shared component you want to use.

Drag the shared component to the form. The shared component will be added.




The shared component will contain the components along with any custom properties.



# Rules without Scripting Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating rules without scripting. During this exercise you will use an existing form to add non-scripted rules.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

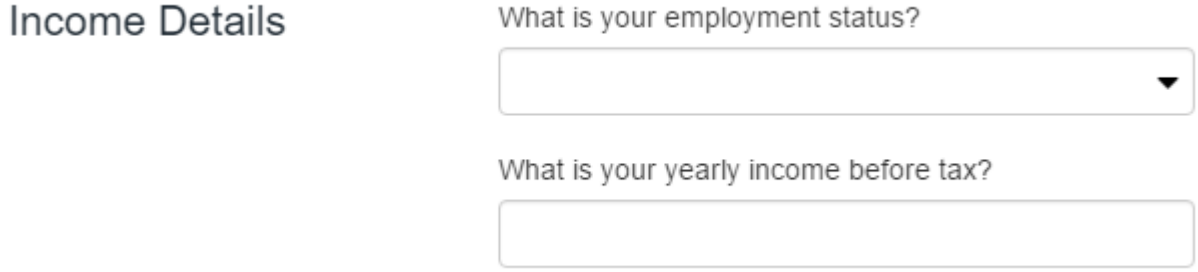
You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Rules without Scripting Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open the existing form Rules without Scripting Begin.

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Rules without Scripting Begin.
5. Click Edit Version to open the form.

## Step 2 Create a Rule for Income Details

Create a Show If rule that displays the 'yearly income' component if the 'employment status' is set to 'Employed' or 'Self-Employed'.

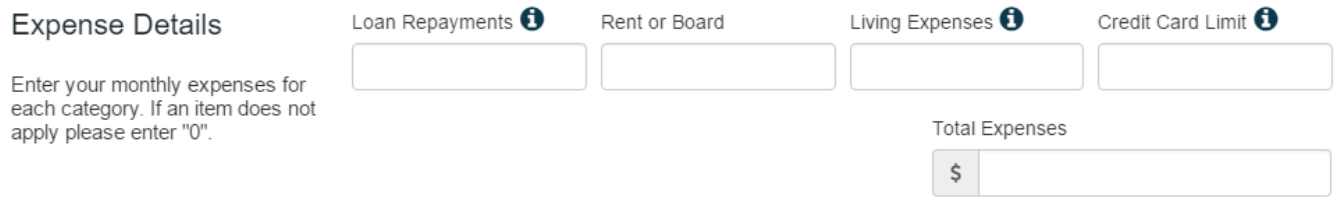


Click Save.

## Step 3 Calculate the Total of the Four Expenses in the Expense Details Section

Calculate the total of the four expenses in the Total Expenses field.

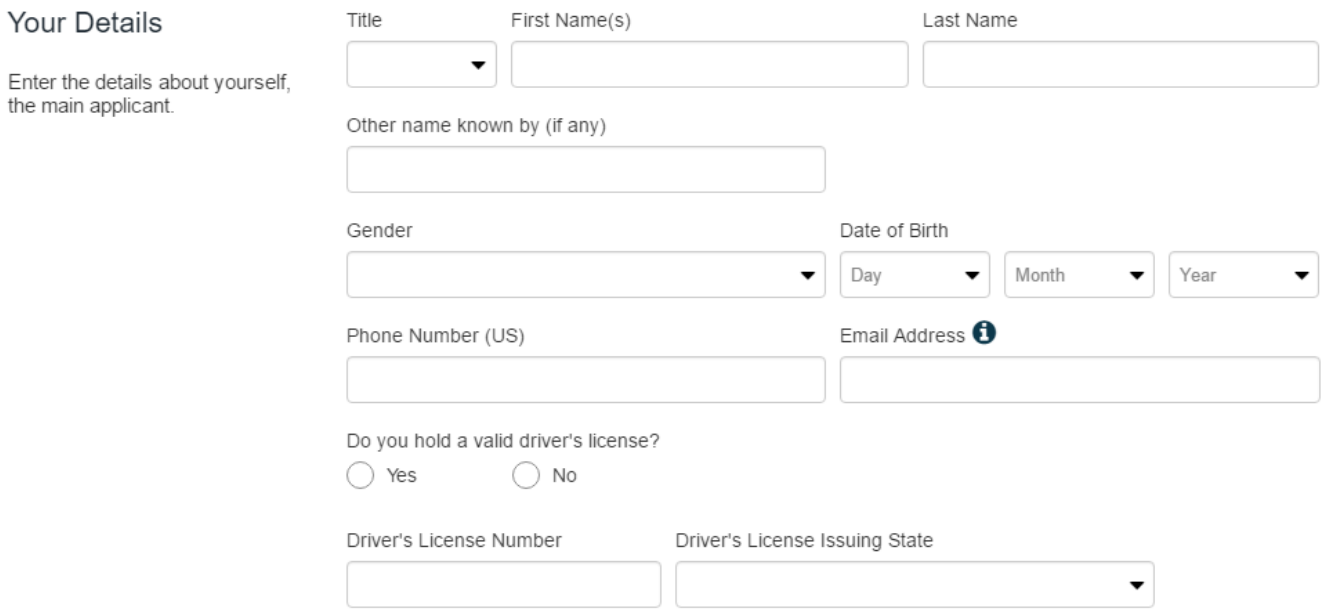
Set up another rule to make Total Expenses read only.




Click Save.

## Step 4 Add the Driver License Components to the Your Details Section.

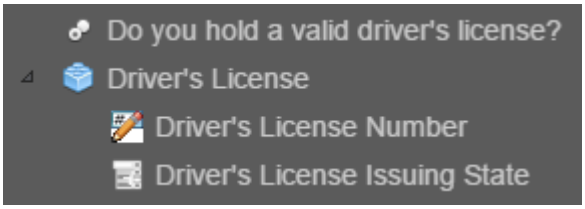
Add the Driver License components shown below.




Click Save.

# Step 5 Create a Rule for Driver License

Wrap the Driver's License Number and Driver's License Issuing State components into a block, then add a Show If rule so the components only display when the user selects Yes to having a driver's license.




Click Save.

NOTE

Important: you should wrap Driver's License Number and Driver's License Issuing State in a block before creating the rule. This way you only have to apply the rule to the block, rather than applying to individual components.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

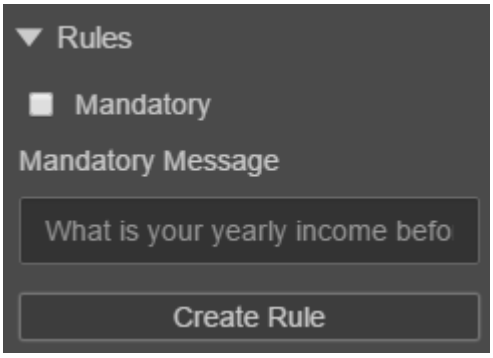
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create a Show If Rule

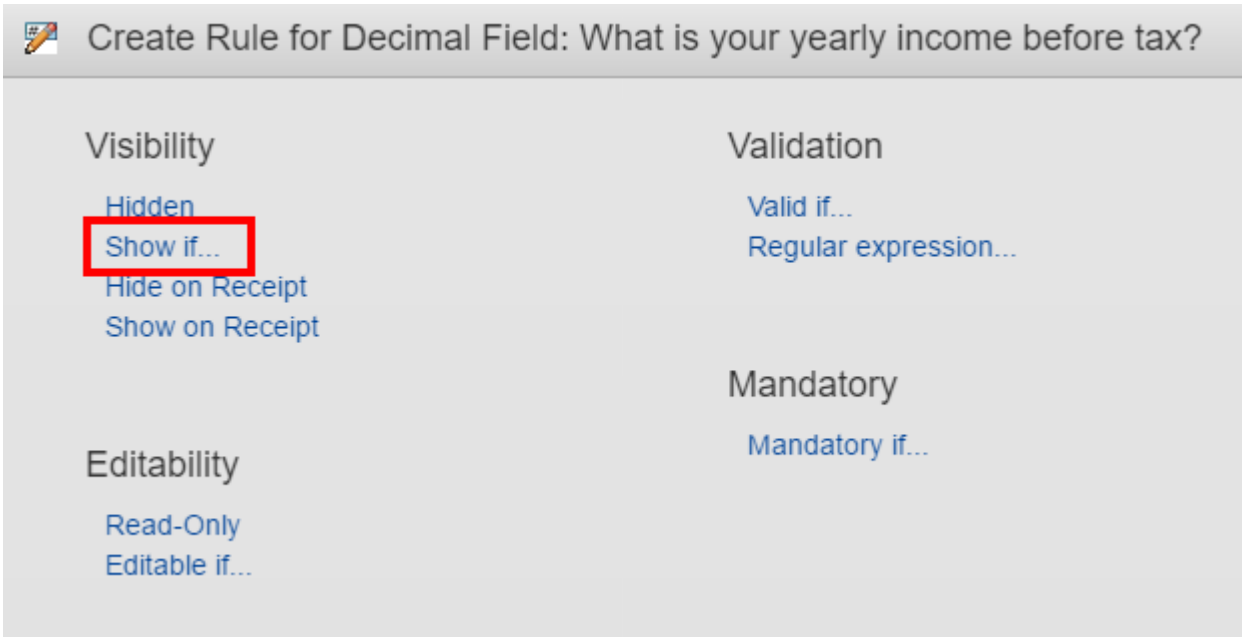
A Show If rule allows you to show or hide a component based on the selection of another component.

Select the component you want to show or hide.

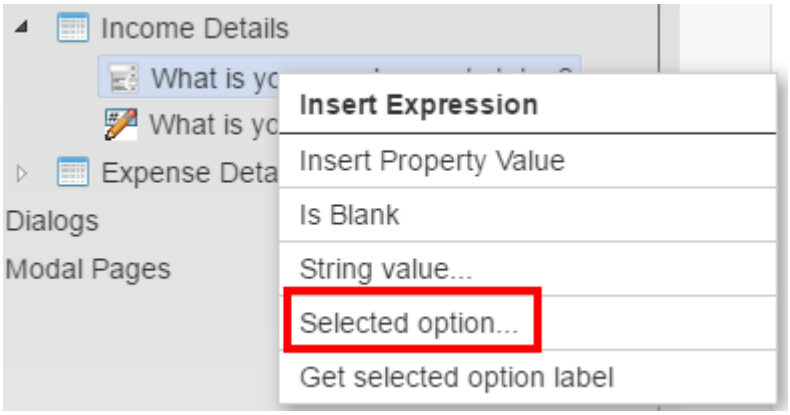
Click Create Rule in the Rules section (Properties panel).



Select Show If.

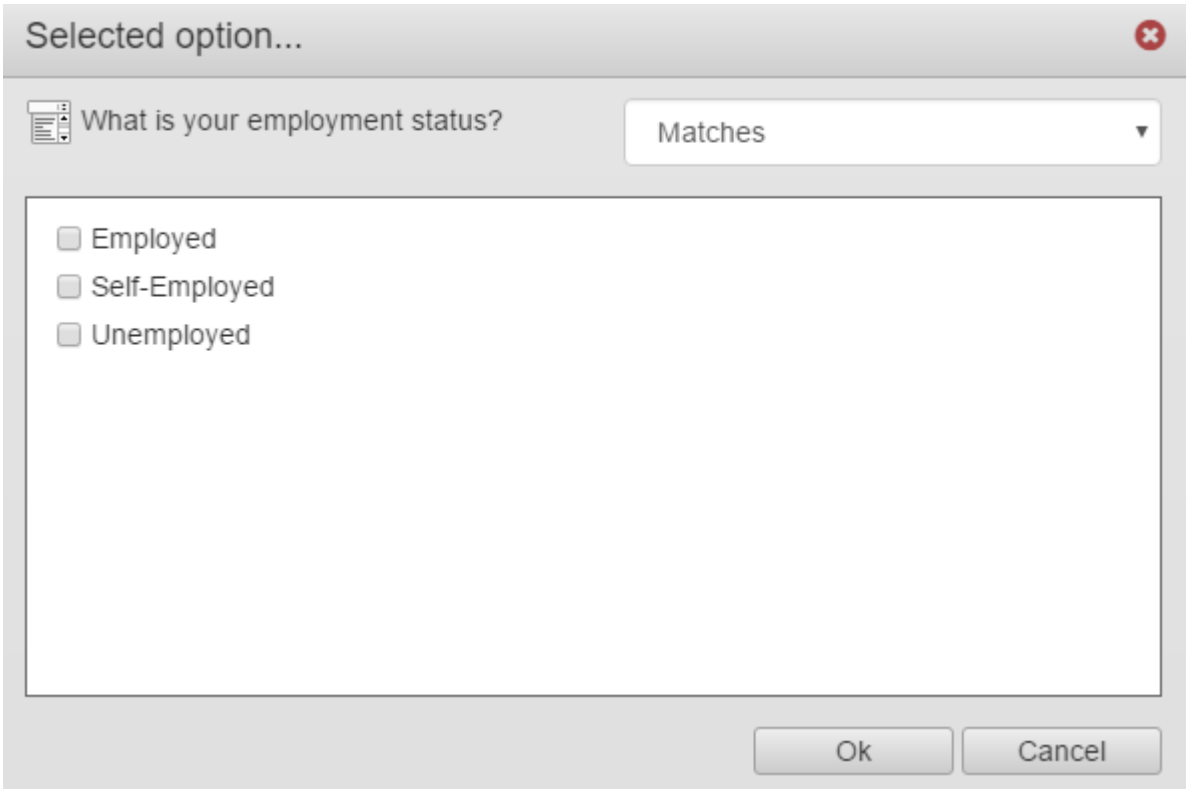



Right-click the component that determines if the selected component is displayed or hidden and click Selected option.




In the top right corner of the Selected option window, select if the option should match or not match, then select the relevant options.

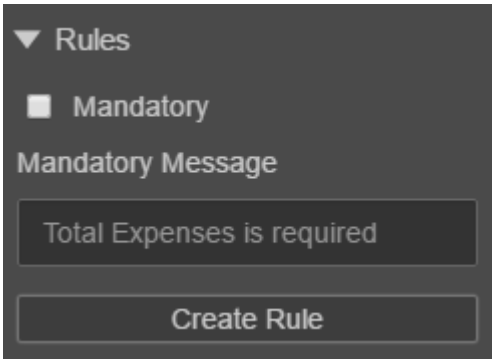
Click OK.



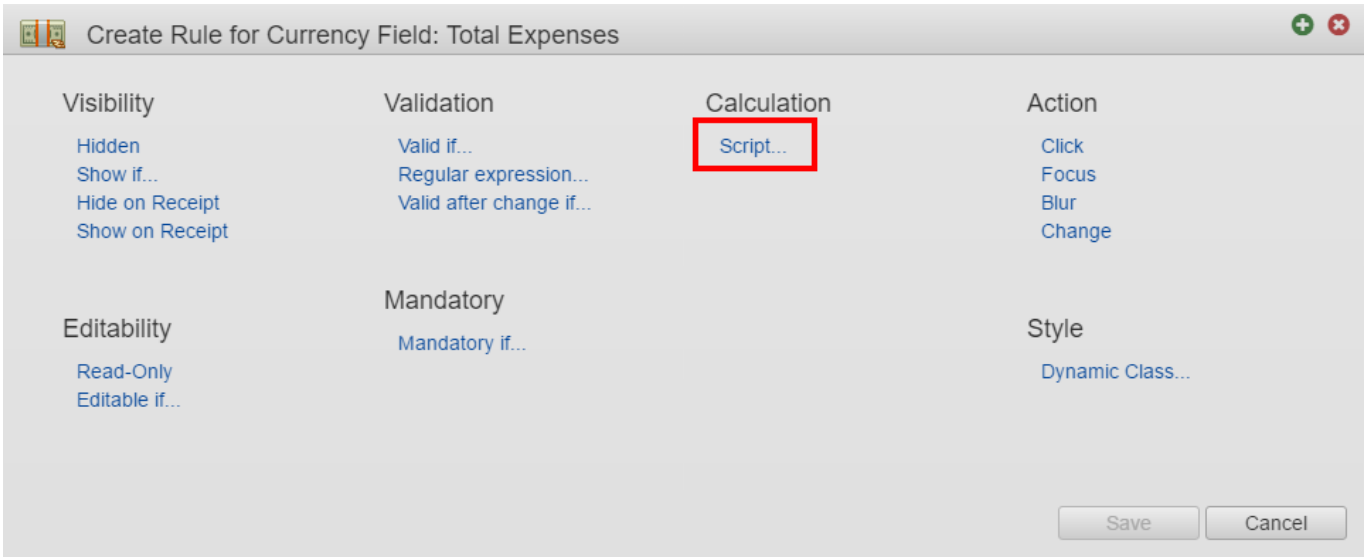

The script for the rule and selected components is displayed. Click Save.

## Create a Script Rule

A Script rule will perform calculations based on selected components. Select the component where the calculation will be displayed. Click Create Rule in the Rules section (Properties panel).

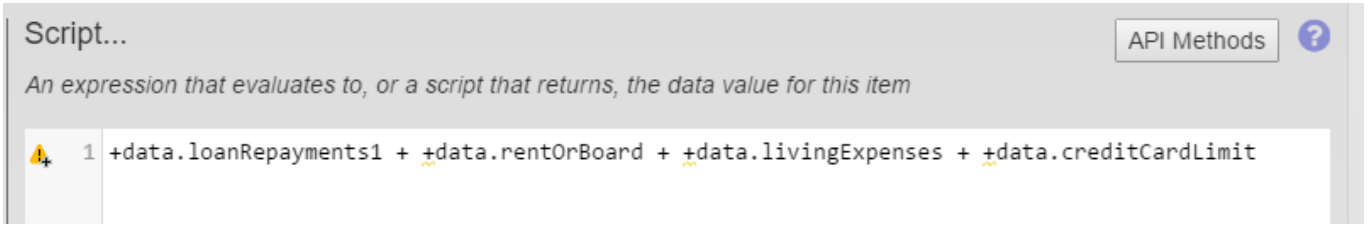



Click Script.




Double click each component you want to use in the calculation. Include a plus sign ( + ) between the components.

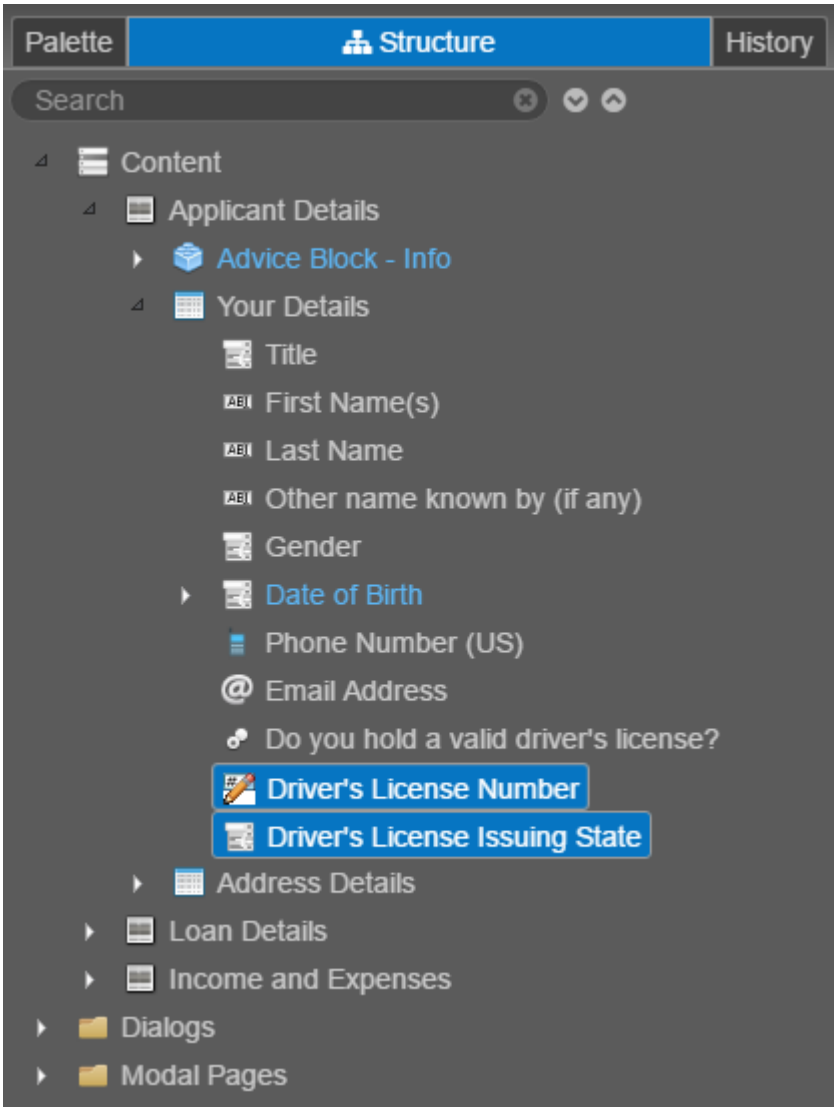
The selected components will display in the list. Click Save.



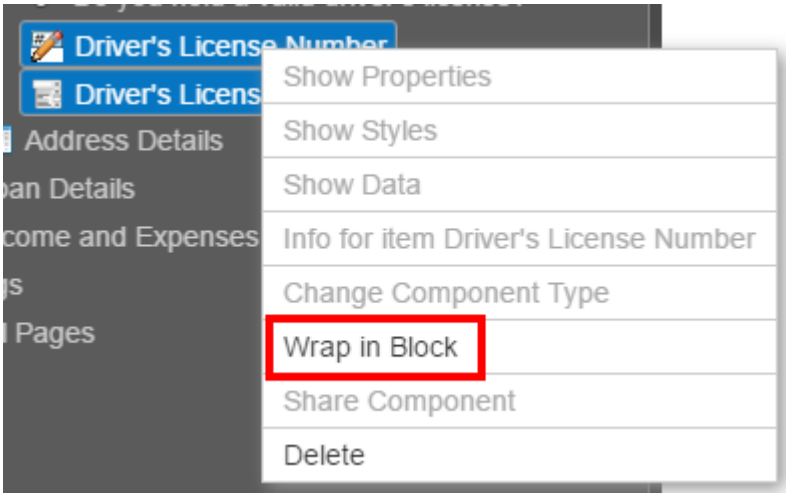

## Wrap Components in a Block

You can wrap components in a block to easily manage related components.

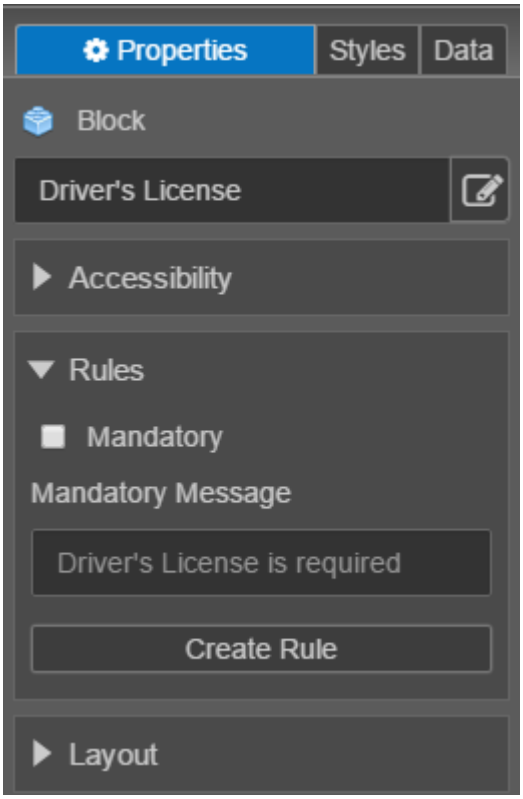
Select the components in the Structure panel you want to wrap in a block.




Right-click one of the selected components and click Wrap in Block.




With the block selected, use the Properties panel to rename the block.


Properties
Styles
Data
Block
Driver's License
Accessibility
Rules
Mandatory
Mandatory Message
Driver's License is required
Create Rule
Layout

# Two Level Navigation Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for working with two level navigation. During this exercise you will create page groups, which will allow you to use two level navigation within your form.

Do your best to follow the provided information and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Two Level Navigation Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open Two-Level Navigation Begin

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Two Level Navigation Begin.
5. Click Edit Version to open the form

## Step 2 Add Page Groups to the Form

Add Page Groups to the form, then move the relevant pages into each group. Your Structure panel should match the After image below.

**Before After**

To add a Page Group, you need to drag the component from the Palette panel onto the Structure panel.

Page groups cannot be dragged directly onto a form or template.

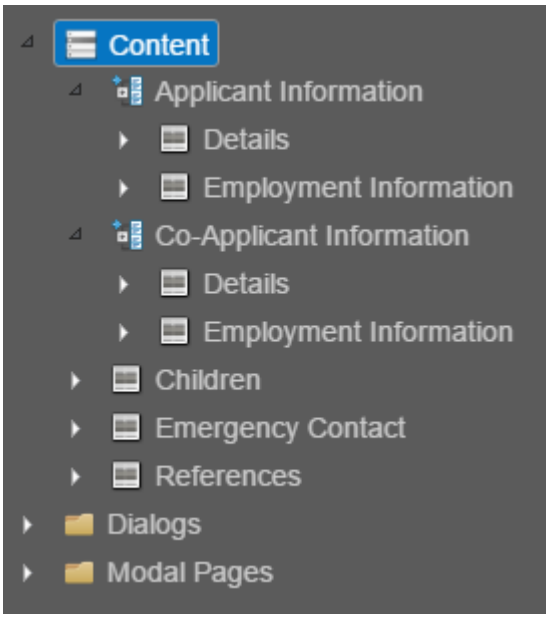
NOTE

Notice: some of the pages have been rearranged.

Click Save.

## Step 3: Rename Pages

Rename the Pages added to each Page Group. Your Structure panel should match the image below.




## Step 4 Set Second Level Navigator to Equal Width

Change the width of the Pages on the second level navigator so that they are equal. Your second level navigator should match the image below.

**Before**



**After**



To change the width of the Second Level Navigator:

1. Click Form Options.
2. Select Navigator Second Level.
3. Select Equal Width.

4. Check Equal Width.
5. Click Save.

# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

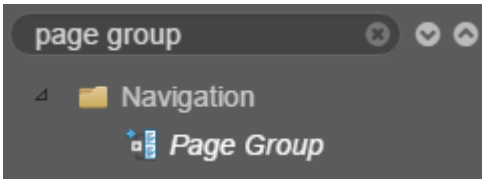
Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Using a Page Group

Page Groups let you group pages together. Adding page groups automatically creates a two level navigation. Each page group is displayed on the first level navigator and any pages in the page group are displayed on the second level navigator.

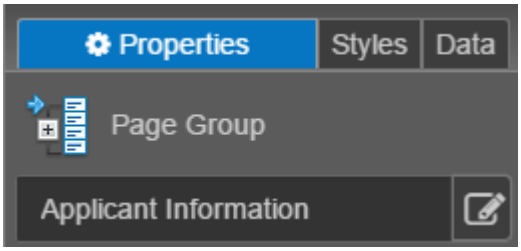
Use Search to find the Page Groups.

Drag the component onto the Structure panel.

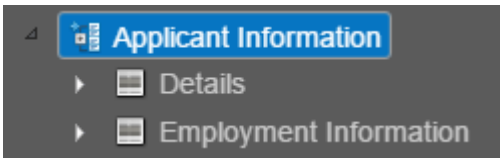



Use the Properties panel to rename the page group.

The Page Group label is automatically used for the first level navigator. If you want the label and menu text different, change the menu text in the Options section on the Properties panel.



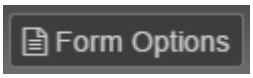

In the Structure panel, drag the pages you want grouped onto the page group component.



## Set the Second Level Navigator to equal widths

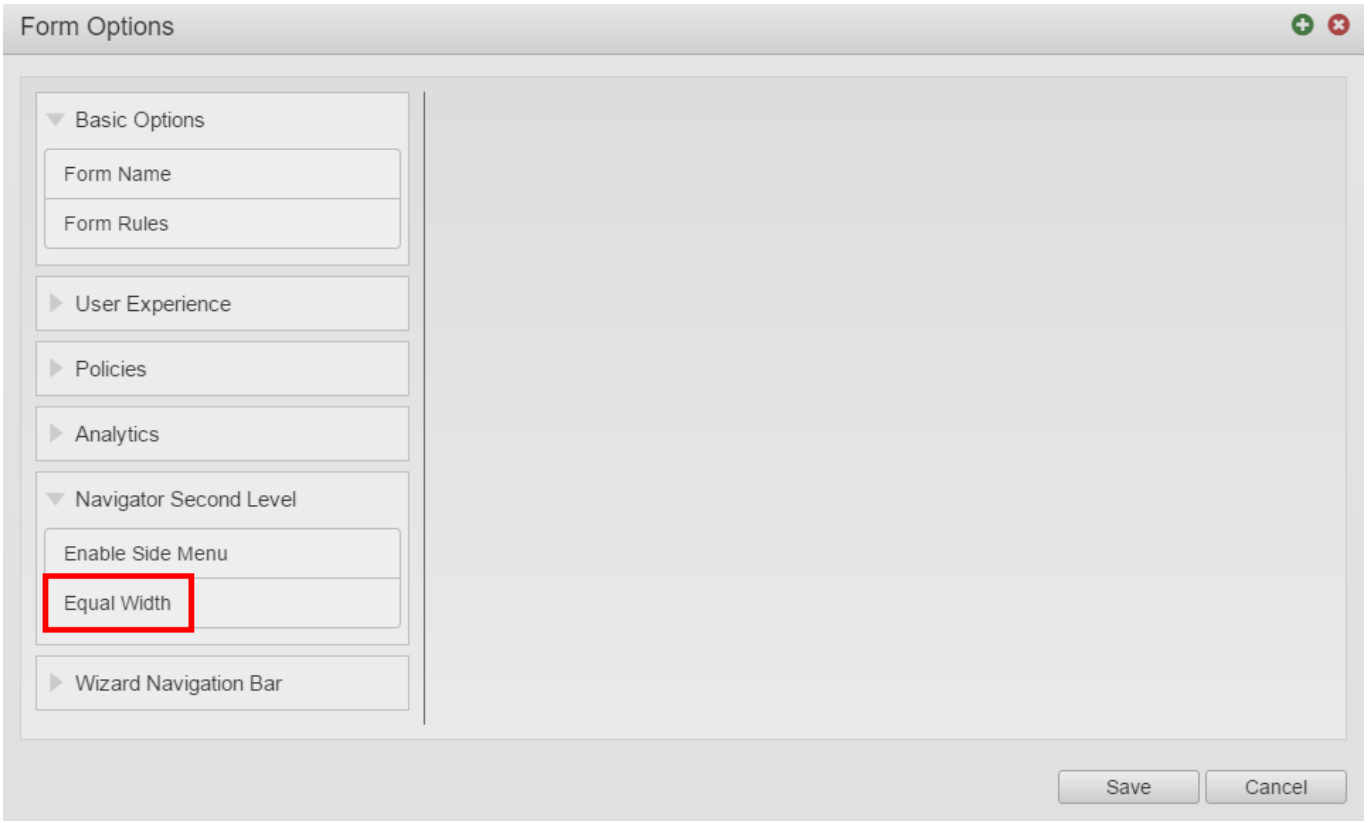
By default, the width of Second Level Navigator menu items is determined by the length of the menu text. You can change this, so each menu item takes up the same width.

Click the Form Options button (towards the top of the Design window).

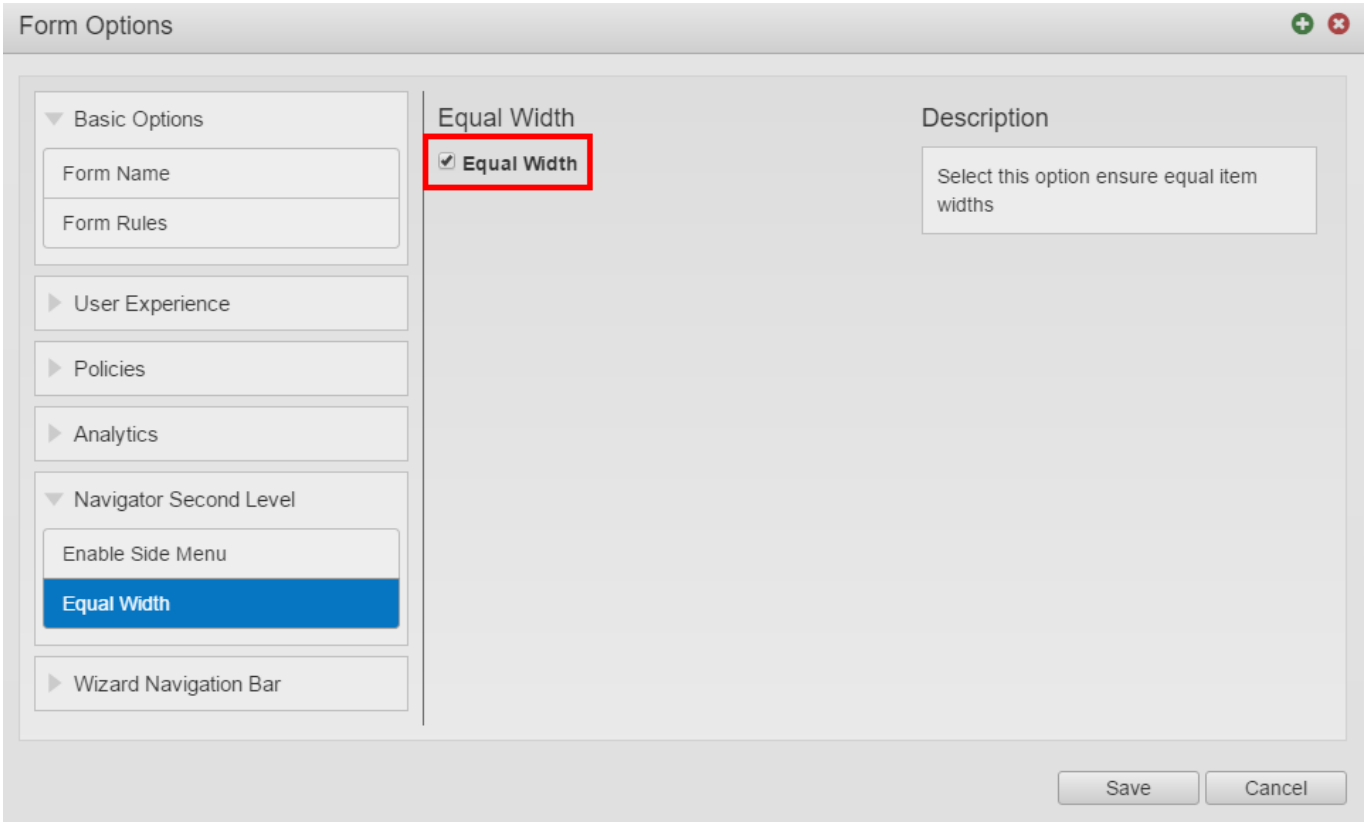



Expand Navigator Second Level.

Select Equal Width.




Check Equal Width, then click Save.



# Validation Rules Exercise v5.0

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | Form Builder | All versions
This feature is related to v5.1and higher.

This exercise will allow you to practice your skills for creating validation rules. During this exercise you will create a new form and add components. You will then create rules on the added components.

Do your best to follow the information provided and complete each step.

If you get stuck, you can always re-watch any of the online training modules. This is a good way to refresh your form building skills. You'll also find Extra Help at the end of this exercise, which contains additional information to help you complete the exercise.

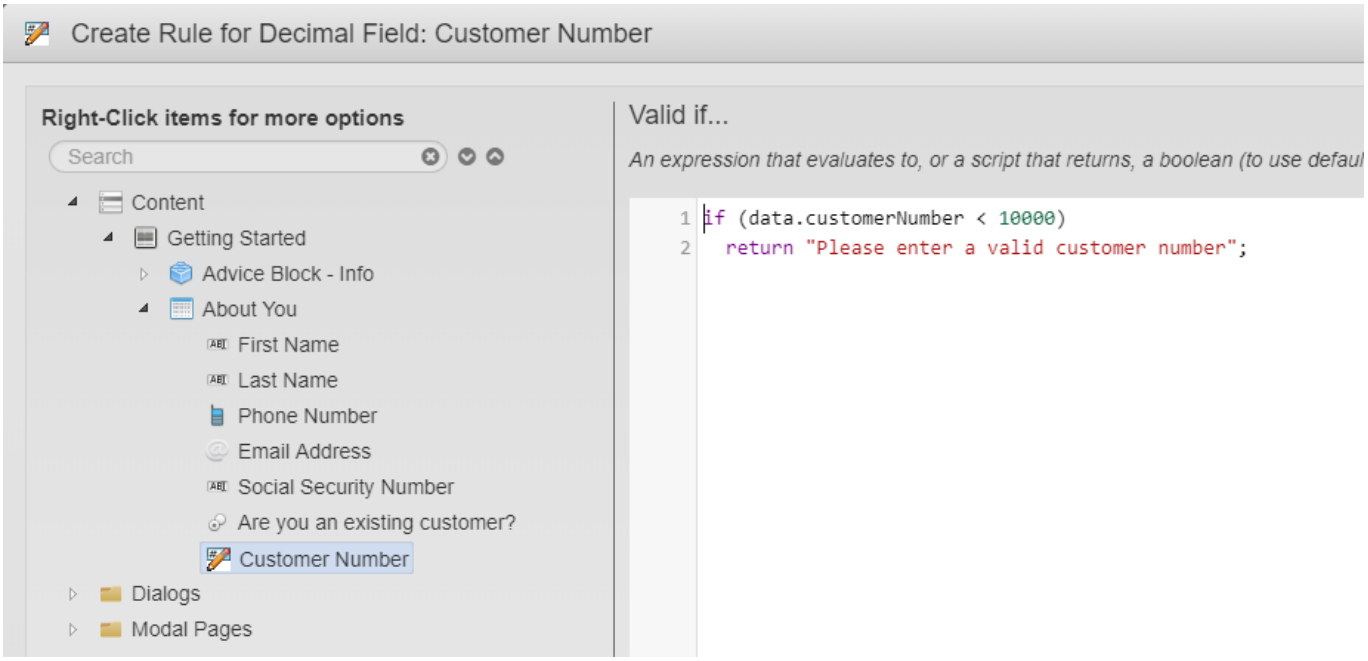
You can find a sample of the completed exercise form in the Maestro Exercise Project: Maestro Training Exercises > Validation Rules Finish. If you have not already imported the Maestro Exercise Project please visit Exercise Setup - Importing the Maestro Exercise Files for more information.

## Step 1 Open Validation Rules Begin

1. Expand the Organization.
2. Expand the Project.
3. Select Forms.
4. Double-click Validation Rules Begin.
5. Click Edit Version to open the form.

## Step 2 Create a Valid If Rule

Use the Valid If rule for the Customer Number. Create a rule where the Customer Number is valid if greater than 10000.




NOTE

Customer Number contains a visibility rule. You won't see this field in preview until you select Yes for the question 'Are you an existing customer?'

## Step 3 Create a Regular Expression Validation Rule

You can search the Regular Expression Library (http://regexlib.com) to locate pre-defined expressions to use in your Maestro form.

Setup a Regular Expression rule to validate the Social Security Number component. An example expression is included in the image below.

Example Regular expression: ^(?!219-09-9999|078-05-1120)(?!666|000|9\d{2})\d{3}-(?!00)\d{2}-(?!0{4})\d{4}$

Example Match Fails message: Please enter a number using this format ###-##-####

Once the validation rule is created, click Save and Preview the form.

Try entering this number first: 123-4-5678

Then try this number: 123-45-6789

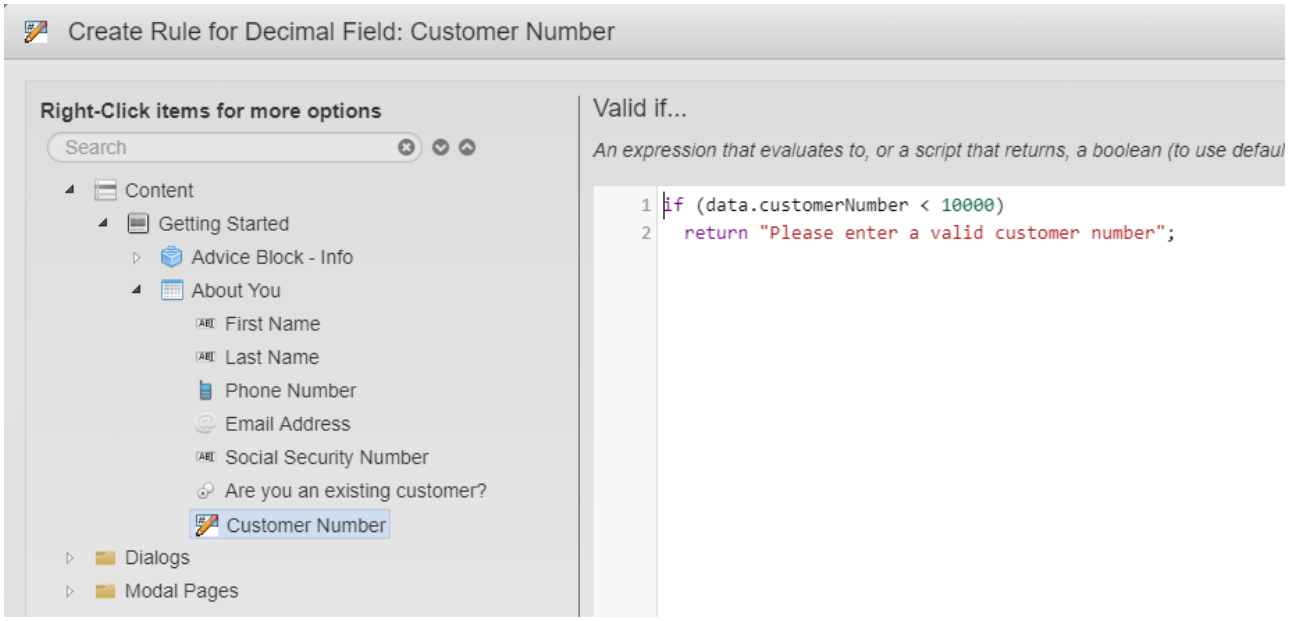
# Extra Help

Need some extra help?

Use the information below to assist you in completing the exercise steps.

## Create a Valid if rule

1. Select the component to contain the validation rule.
2. Click Create Rule then select Valid if.
3. Type if (.
4. Double-click the (Customer Number) component to add data.customerNumber to the script window.
5. Type < 10000) then press Enter.
6. Type return "Please enter a valid Customer Number.";.




7. Click Save.

## Create a Regular Expression rule

1. Launch the Regular Expression Library - http://regexlib.com
2. Locate the pre-defined expression you want to use.
3. Copy the expression, then return to the Maestro form.
4. Select the component to contain the validation rule.
5. Click Create Rule then select Regular Expression.
6. Paste the pre-defined expression in the Must Match this expression box.
7. Enter an appropriate failure message.

Create Rule for Text Field: Social Security Number
Regular expression...
This item will be valid if it matches the provided regular expression
Must match this expression
^(?!219-09-9999|078-05-1120)(?!666|000|9\d{2})\d{3}-(?!00)\d{2}-(?!0{4})\d{4}$
Expression Flags
Ignore case
Multi-line
Global
If the match fails, display this message
Please enter a number using this format ###-##-####
Save
Cancel

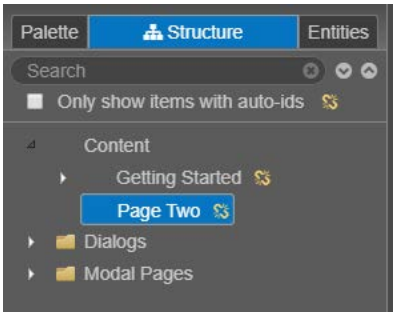
8. Click Save.

# Exercise - Assign an Entity to multiple items

You can assign an Entity to multiple items at once using the Structure panel.

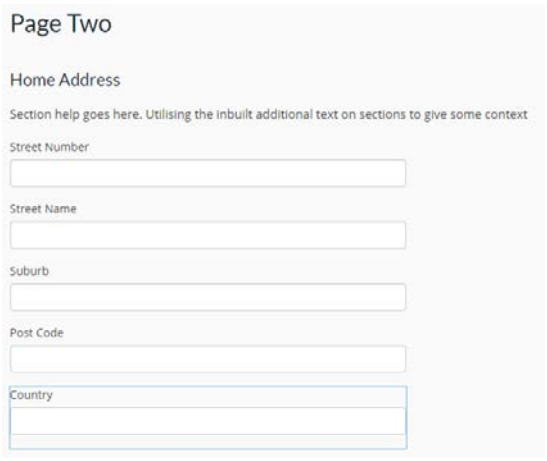
**Step 1: Add a Section and Components**

1. To go to Page Two, display the Structure panel and click Page Two (for the 'Exercise – Entities' form)

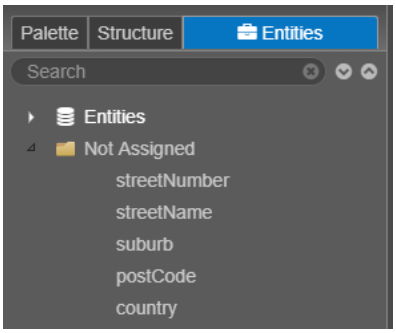



2. Add a new section to form called 'HomeAddress'

3. Add (and name) the following 'text field' components to the 'Address' Section:
   - StreetNumber
   - StreetName
   - Suburb
   - PostCode
   - Country



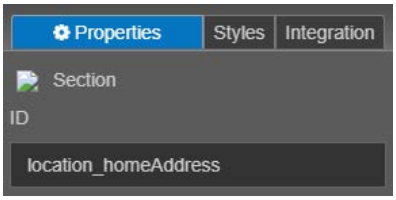

4. Display the Entities panel and confirm the new components are 'Not Assigned' to any Entities



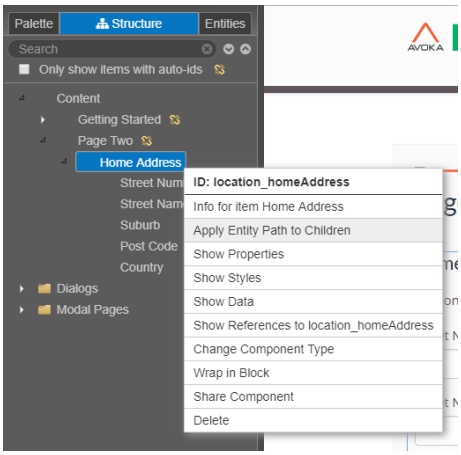
**Step 2: Assign an Entity to multiple items**

To apply the ‘location’ Entity to the new components, we need to assign it to the ‘Home Address’ section first, i.e. where all the components are located.

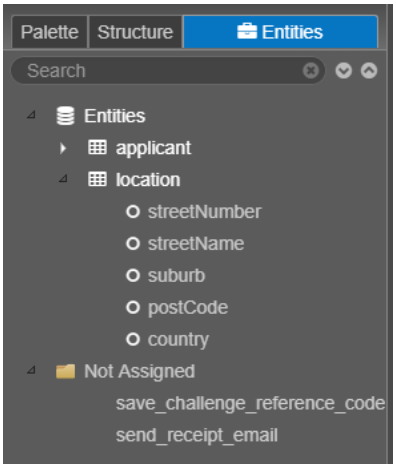
1. Select the ‘Home Address’ Section (the ID Property should show ’homeAddress’)
2. Use the ID property field to assign the ‘location’ Entity to the Section



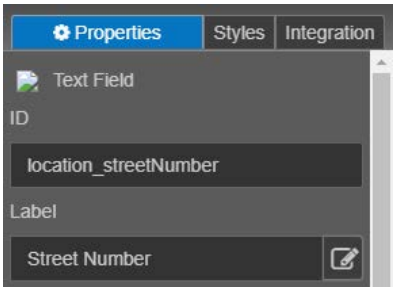

3. Display the ‘Structure’ panel > right-click the ‘homeAddress’ Section and choose ‘Apply Entity Path to Children’




4. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and confirm the components are assigned to the ‘location’ Entity




5. Select each component in the form and confirm the IDs have all been assigned to the ‘location’ Entity




6. Click Save

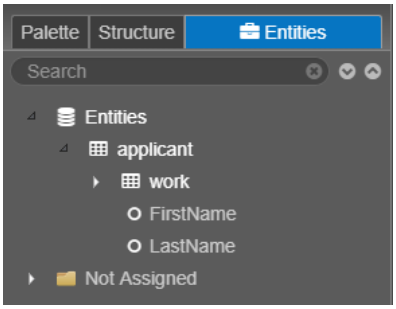
Close the form (Browser Tab)

# Exercise - Create an Entity (Entity panel)

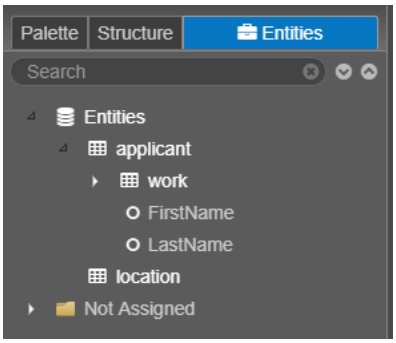
You can create a new Entity in the Entities panel by ‘right-clicking’ where you want the new Entity to be placed.

**Step 1: Create an Entity (Entities panel)**

1. Make sure the ‘Exercise – Entities’ form is displayed in Design view
2. Make sure the Entities panel is visible



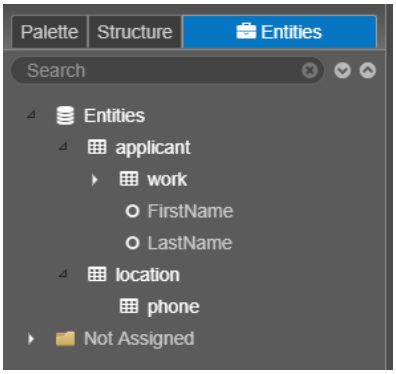

3. Right-click the ‘Entities’ icon
4. Choose ‘Add Entity’
5. Note: the ‘Create New Entity’ dialog is displayed
6. Enter ‘location’ for the Entity name and click Save
7. The new ‘location’ Entity now appears in the panel




**Step 2: Create a ‘nested’ Entity (Entities panel)**

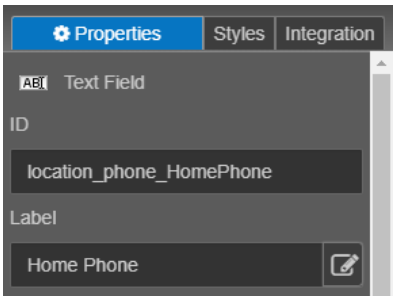
You can also create a nested Entity in the Entities panel.

1. Right-click the ‘location’ Entity
2. Click ‘Add Entity’
3. Enter ‘phone’ for the new nested Entity name and click Save
4. Expand the ‘location’ Entity to display the new nested ‘phone’ Entity

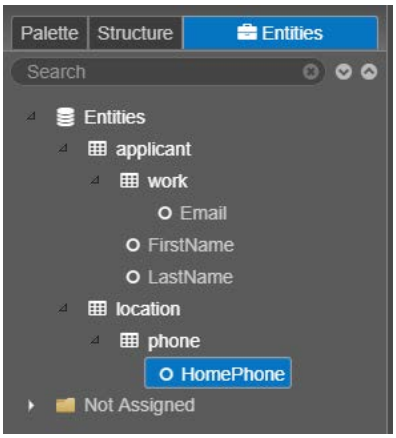



5. Add a new ‘Text Field’ component beneath ‘Email’

6. Use the ID Property field to add this to the nested ‘phone’ Entity and name it ‘HomePhone’




7. Display the ‘Entities’ panel to confirm the ‘Home Phone’ component is related to the nested ‘phone’ Entity




Click Save

# Exercise - Create an Entity (ID field)

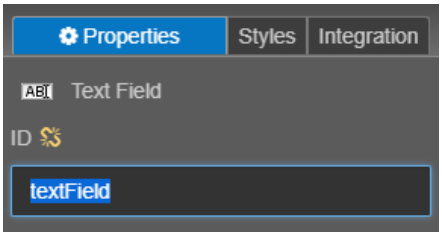
This exercise will demonstrate how to create an Entity directly in the ID field.

**Step 1: Create a form**

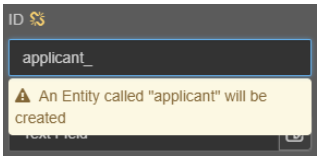
1. Make sure the Navigator Panel is visible
2. Select Forms
3. Click ‘Create Form’
4. Enter the follow details:
   - Form Name: Exercise - Entities
   - Description: This form is to demonstrate how to work with Entities.
   - Template: Training Template
5. Click ‘Create’
6. Note: a new form should display (new window tab) in Design view

**Step 2: Create an Entity**

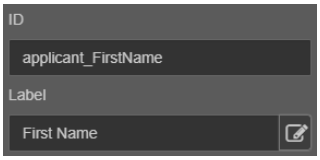
1. Make sure the Palette panel is visible
2. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section
3. Notice: the focus is set by default to the ID property (Properties panel)



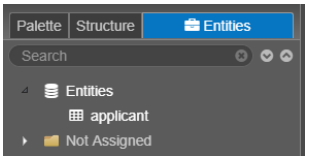

4. To create a new Entity, enter ‘applicant’ followed by an underscore, ‘_’
5. Notice: after you enter underscore (_) an inline warning displays beneath ‘An Entity called applicant will be created’




6. Enter ‘FirstName’ as the ID (after the underscore) then press TAB or click away.
7. Notice: the Label Property displays as ‘First Name’ (without the Entity name)




8. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and notice the ‘applicant’ Entity with one related ‘FirstName’ component

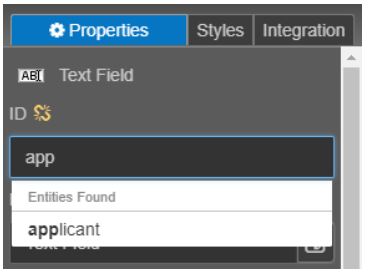



9. Click Save

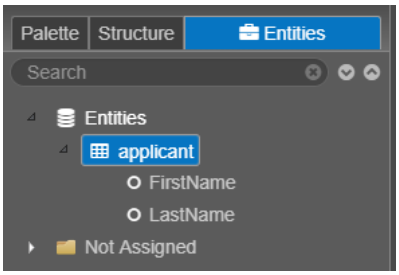
**Step 3: Assign an Entity**

An existing Entity can be assigned to a new component using the ID field.

1. Add another ‘Text Field’ component beneath ‘First Name’
2. Enter the first few letters of ‘applicant’ in the ID property field, i.e. ‘app’
3. Notice: as you type, any matching Entities will display in an inline dropdown menu



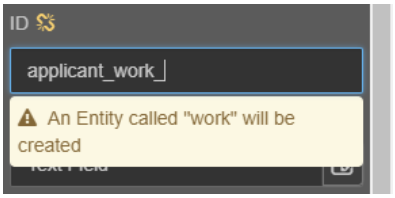

4. Select ‘applicant’ to populate the ID Property field
5. Enter ‘LastName’ (after the underscore) for the ID name.
6. Notice: the label name displays as ‘Last Name’ only
7. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and confirm the ‘applicant’ Entity now has two related components



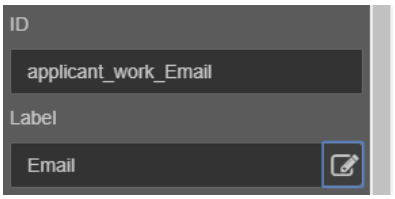

**Step 4: Create a nested Entity**

You can create Entities within Entities, i.e. a nested Entity.

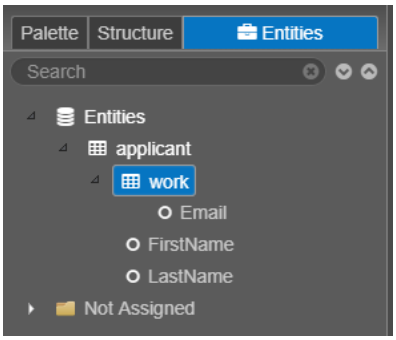
1. Add another new ‘Text Field’ beneath ‘Last Name’
2. Enter the first few letters of ‘applicant’ in the ID property field
3. Select the ‘applicant’ Entity
4. Enter ‘work_’ as the new nested Entity, e.g. ‘applicant1_work_’
5. Notice: after you enter the second underscore (_) an inline warning displays beneath ‘An Entity called work will be created’




6. Enter ‘Email’ for the ID name, e.g. ‘applicant1_work_Email’
7. Press Tab or click away from the ID property field
8. Notice: the label name displays as ‘Email’ only



9. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and confirm the nested ‘work’ Entity with one related component




10. Click Save

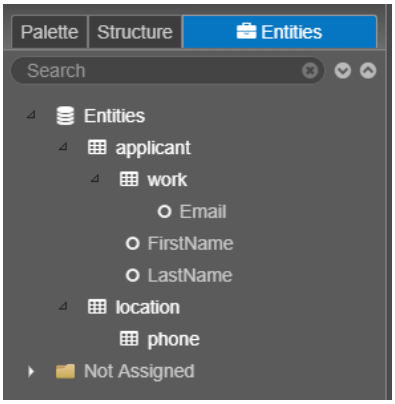
Please note: any existing IDs with an underscore will not automatically cause Entities to be created. Entities will only be created when you modify an existing ID. Any underscores followed by one or more digits (like suffixes applied by auto-generated IDs) will also be ignored.

# Exercise - Delete an Entity

You can delete Entities using the Entities panel.

Please note: You can't delete an Entity if any component IDs use that Entity.

1. Your task is to delete the 'phone' Entity, but you'll need to delete or re-assign any related components.
2. For this exercise, delete the 'Home Phone' component on the form
3. Notice: the 'phone' Entity no longer has any related component IDs




4. Right-click the 'phone' Entity and choose 'Delete Entity'
5. Click 'OK' to confirm
6. The Entity has now been deleted from the Entities panel
7. Click Save

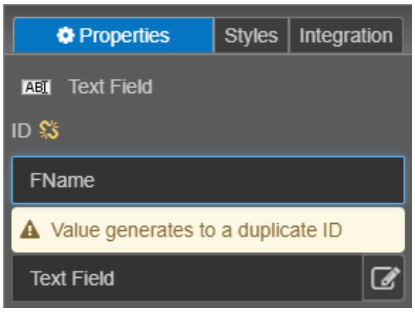
# Exercise - Duplicate IDs

This exercise will demonstrate the new duplicate ID functionality. You will:

1. Create a duplicate ID and ‘Review’
2. Create a duplicate ID and ‘Accept’

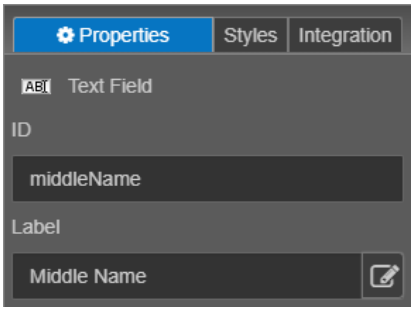
**Step 1: Add a component with a duplicate ID and ‘Review’**

1. Note: Make sure the form you created for the 'ID Management exercise' is open
2. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section (beneath ‘First Name’)
3. Update the ID Property to ‘FName’
4. An inline warning confirms ‘Value generates to a duplicate ID’
   Note: IDs are case sensitive - if you enter 'fname' instead of 'FName', the inline warning will not display




5. At this point, you can either modify the ID property directly in the field
6. Or if you ‘TAB’ (or click away), a popup will prompt you to ‘Review’ the duplicate ID or ‘Accept’ a suffix

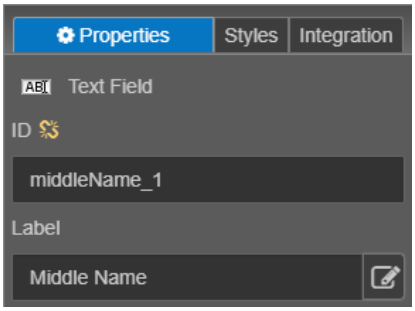
7. For this example, click ‘Review’ and update the ‘ID’ property to ‘MiddleName’




8. Choosing ‘Review’ would let you modify the ID property so that it doesn't cause a duplicate.

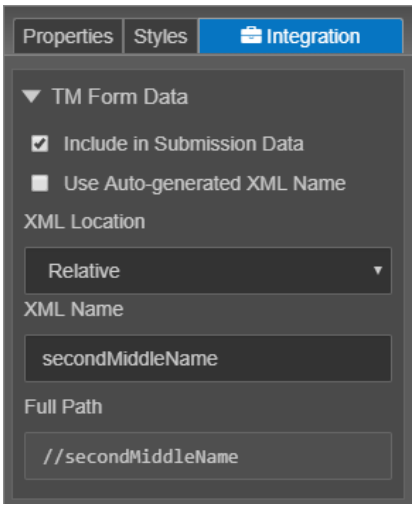
**Step 2: Add a component with a duplicate ID and ‘Accept’**

1. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section (beneath ‘Middle Name’)
2. Update the ID Property ‘MiddleName’ and TAB away
3. For this example, click ‘Accept’ in the popup
4. Choosing ‘Accept’ appends a suffix to the ID Property (i.e. middleName_1)




5. Click ‘Save’
6. Close the form, i.e. the browser tab

Please Note: If you choose ‘Accept’ for duplicate IDs, the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties (on the ‘Integration’ panel) keep their default names (i.e. ‘TextField’). To update these properties, you’ll need to uncheck ‘Use Auto-generated XML Name’ and manually update the ‘XML Name’.



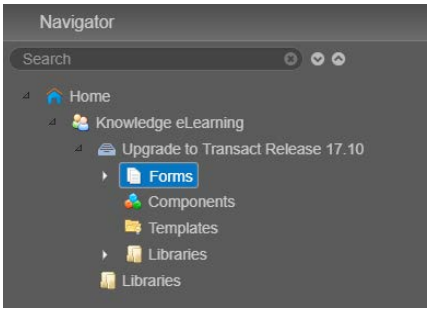
# Exercise - ID Management

This exercise will demonstrate the updated functionality for component IDs. You will:

- create a new form
- add a new component
- update the component ID

**Step 1: Create a new form**

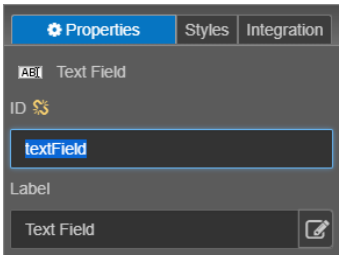
1. Expand the ‘Organization’ (Navigator Panel)
2. Expand the ‘Project’ (Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10)
3. Select ‘Forms’




4. Click the ‘Create Form’ button
5. Enter the following details:
   - Form Name: Exercise - ID Management
   - Description: This form is to demonstrate the new ID features.
   - Template: Training Template
6. Click the ‘Create’ button
7. Note: The form Design view should open in a new Tab

**Step 2: Add a new ‘Text Field’ component**

1. Make sure the ‘Palette’ panel is displayed
2. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section
3. Note: the initial focus is set to the ID Property field




**Step 3: Update the component**

1. Update the ‘ID’ Property value to ‘FirstName’
2. Note: The ‘Label’ Property has automatically updated to ‘First Name’
3. Click the ‘Integration’ tab
4. Note: the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties have updated to the new ‘ID’
5. Click the ‘Properties’ tab
6. Update the ‘ID’ Property to ‘FName’ (then TAB or click away)
7. Note: this time the ‘ID’ Property updates but the ‘Label’ Property remains unchanged. The ‘Label’ only updates when the default ‘ID’ Property is entered.
8. Click the ‘Integration’ tab
9. Note: the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties have updated to the latest ‘ID’ (i.e. ‘FName’)
10. Click ‘Save’

Please note: If the ‘Use Auto-generated XML Name’ Property is not checked, the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties won’t update if the ID changes. These properties will need to be manually updated if required.

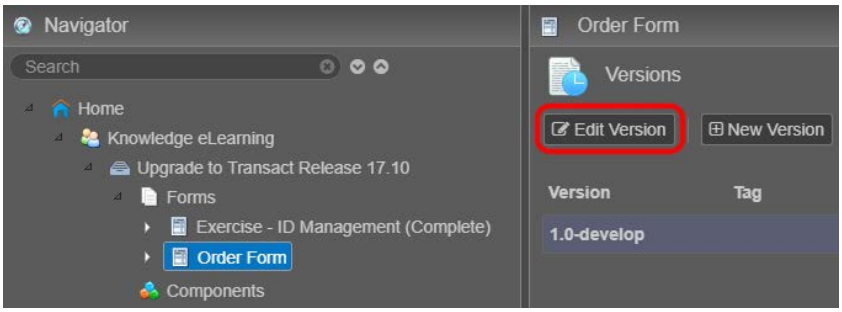
# Exercise - Impact Analysis

The following exercise will involve the ‘Order’ form.

**Step 1: Open the Order form**

From the Maestro Transact Management Dashboard:

1. Expand the ‘Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10’
2. Expand ‘Forms’ and select ‘Order Form’
3. Click the ‘Edit Version’ button

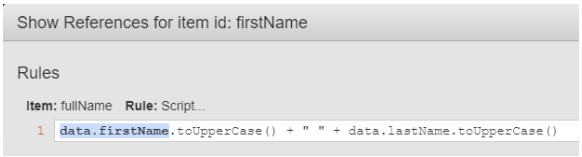



4. The ‘Order Form’ should open in a new browser tab

**Step 2: Review the current references**

Inspect references for the ‘First Name’ field.

1. Right-click the ‘First Name’ text field (in the form)
2. Choose ‘Show References to firstName’
3. Confirm one existing reference to the ‘FullName’ item

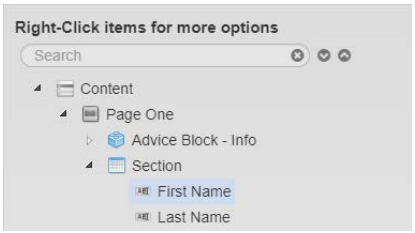



4. Click ‘Close’ (to close the window)

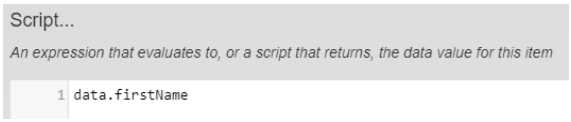
**Step 3: Add a new Text Field that references ‘First Name’**

Add a new Text Field to ‘Page Two’ that references the ‘First Name’ Text Field

1. Display the ‘Structure’ panel
2. Select ‘Page Two’ from the form structure
3. Re-display the ‘Palette’ panel
4. Add a new Text Field to the Page Two ‘Section’
5. Update the ID Property to ‘FirstNameP2’ and press TAB (focus moves to Label Property)
6. Update the Label Property to ‘First Name’ and press TAB
7. With the new Text Field selected, click ‘Create Rule’ (bottom of Properties panel)
8. Click ‘Script’ (under ‘Calculation’)
9. In the navigator column (on the left), expand ‘Page One’, then expand the first ‘Section’




10. Double-click ‘First Name’ to setup a reference to this component, i.e. ‘data.firstName’

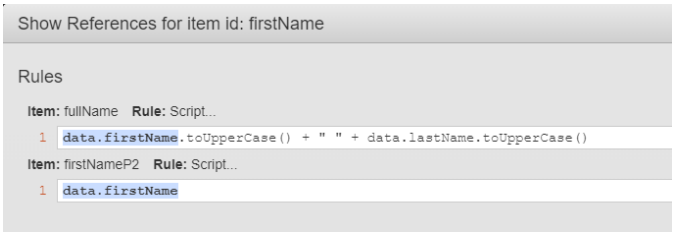



11. Click ‘Save’ (to close the window), then Save the form
12. Click ‘Preview’ to test the new reference, i.e. enter a ‘First Name’ on Page One and confirm it displays in ‘First Name’ on Page Two
13. When you’re ready, switch back to Design view

**Step 4: Review the updated references**

Inspect the references for the ‘First Name’ field on Page One

1. Display the ‘Structure’ panel
2. Select ‘Page One’ from the form structure
3. Re-display the ‘Palette’ panel
4. Right-click ‘First Name’ and click ‘Show References to ‘First Name’
5. Confirm a second reference to ‘firstNameP2’ (on Page Two) now exists



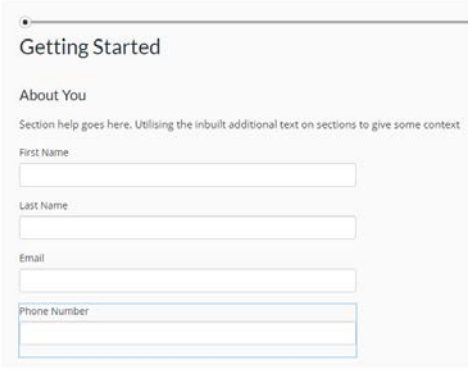

6. Click ‘Close’ (to close the dialog)
7. Click Save then close the form (i.e. the Browser Tab)

# Exercise - Semantic Versioning

This exercise will demonstrate how to create multiple semantic versions of a form.

**Step 1: Update the 1.0-develop version**

1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Click ‘Edit Version’ to open the form
3. Add a new text field to the ‘Getting Started’ section called ‘PhoneNumber’

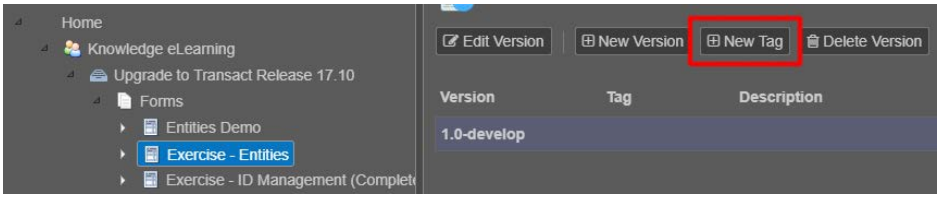



4. Save and Close the form (Browser Tab)

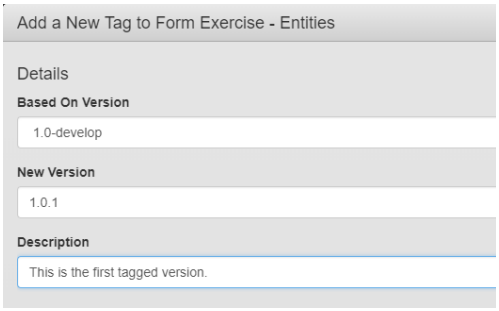
**Step 2: Create a ‘Tagged’ version**

Create the first read-only tagged version (based on ‘1.0-develop’)

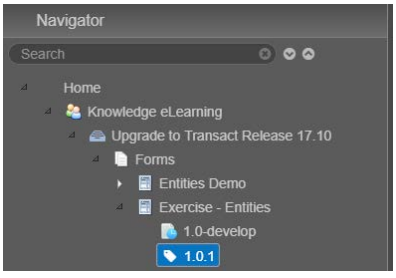
1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Click ‘New Tag’




3. Confirm the new Semantic Version number is 1.0.1
4. Enter Description: ‘This is the first tagged version.’
5. Click ‘Create’

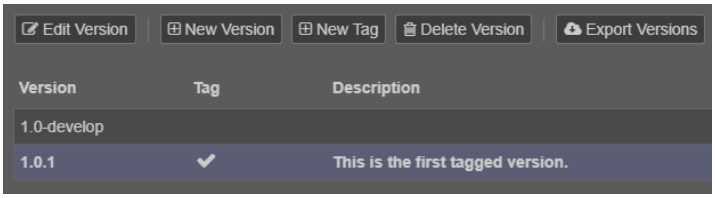



6. Expand the ‘Exercise – Entities’ form in the Navigator panel and confirm the tagged 1.0.1 version is displayed



**Step 3: Open the ‘Tagged’ version**

1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Select the ‘1.0.1’ tagged version (note the ‘tick’ icon)

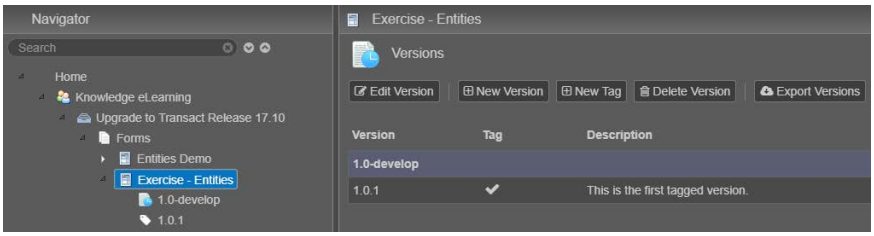



3. Click ‘Edit Version’ to open the form
4. Notice: the Palette panel is empty, i.e. you can’t add new or delete existing components
5. Close the form (Browser Tab)

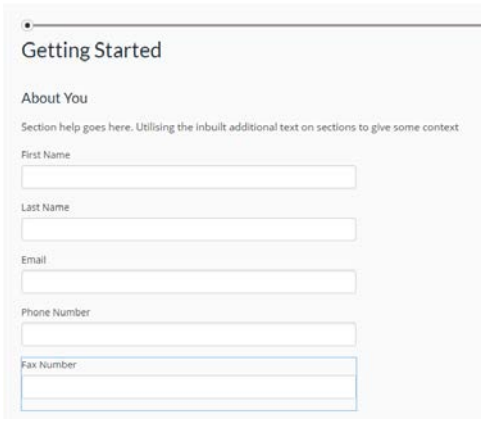
**Step 4: Update the 1.0-develop version**

Remember: all changes and updates are completed in 1.0-develop

1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Select the ‘1.0-develop’ version
3. Click ‘Edit Version’ to open the form




4. Add a new text field to the ‘Getting Started’ section called ‘FaxNumber’



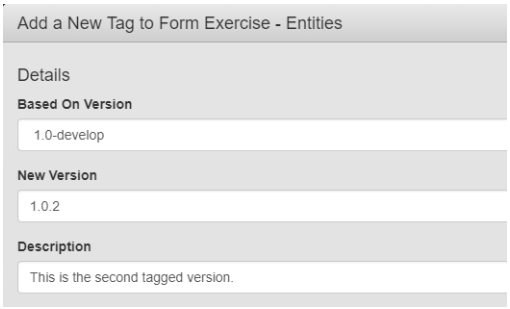

5. Save and Close the form (Browser Tab)

**Step 5: Create another ‘Tagged’ version**

Create another read-only version (based on ‘1.0-develop’)

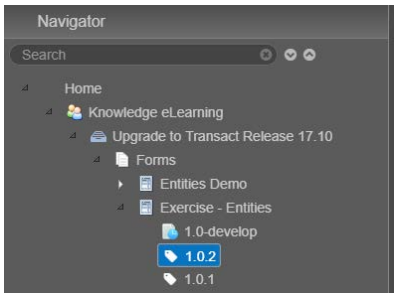
1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Select the ‘1.0-develop’ version
3. Click ‘New Tag’
4. Confirm the new Semantic Version number is 1.0.2

5. Enter Description: ‘This is the second tagged version.’




6. Click ‘Create’

Expand the ‘Exercise – Entities’ form in the Navigator panel and confirm the tagged 1.0.2 version is displayed



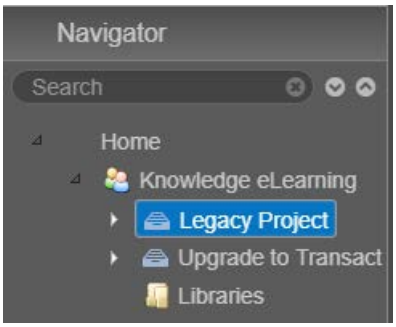
# Exercise - Upgrade a project

You can upgrade an existing project to the latest Maestro release from the Management Dashboard.

**Step 1: Import a project**

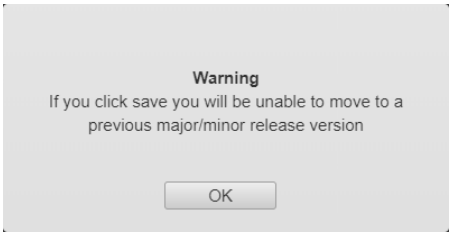
To upgrade a project, you'll need to add a legacy project to your organization first.

1. Download this sample project (zipped folder)
2. Remember where the project is stored, e.g. 'Downloads'
3. Navigate to the Maestro webpage
4. Expand Home (in Navigator Panel)
5. Select the Organization (the Organisation maybe your own name e.g. jsmith
6. Click 'Import Legacy Project'
7. Name the project - 'Legacy Project'
8. Click Import
9. Navigate to the location of the sample project
10. Select the project and click Open
11. The imported project should now appear under your organization



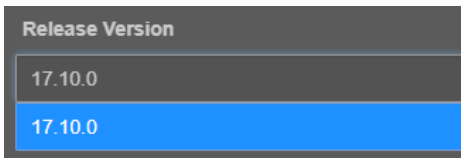

**Step 2: Upgrade the project**

1. Select 'Legacy Project' project in the Navigator
2. Click the Project Details tab
3. Display the 'Release Version' dropdown and choose '17.10.0'
4. Note: When you select a new version, a warning message confirms you can't change the release version back to a previous version once the Project Details are saved




5. Click OK in the warning message
6. Click Save
7. The project has now been upgraded

Notice: The Release Version dropdown no longer displays any previous release versions

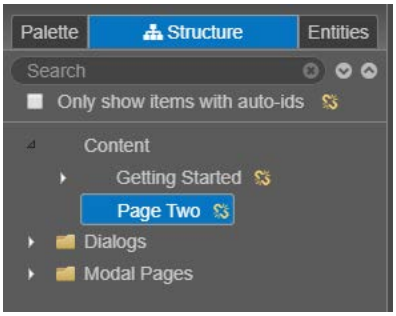


# Exercise - Assign an Entity to multiple items

You can assign an Entity to multiple items at once using the Structure panel.

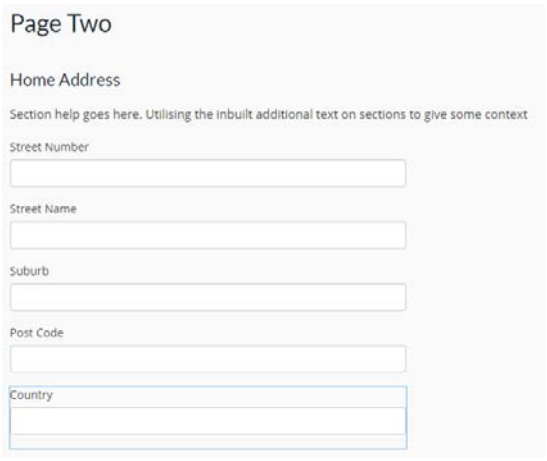
**Step 1: Add a Section and Components**

1. To go to Page Two, display the Structure panel and click Page Two (for the 'Exercise – Entities' form)

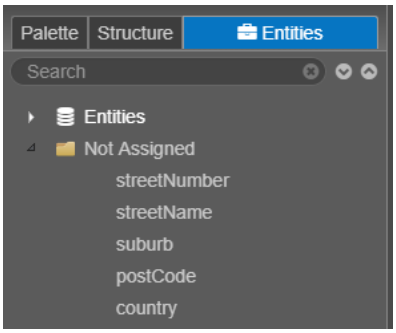



2. Add a new section to form called 'HomeAddress'

3. Add (and name) the following 'text field' components to the 'Address' Section:
   - StreetNumber
   - StreetName
   - Suburb
   - PostCode
   - Country



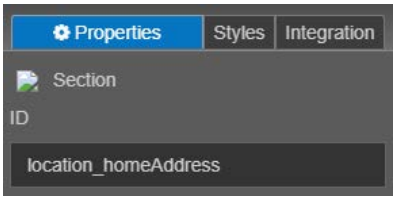

4. Display the Entities panel and confirm the new components are 'Not Assigned' to any Entities



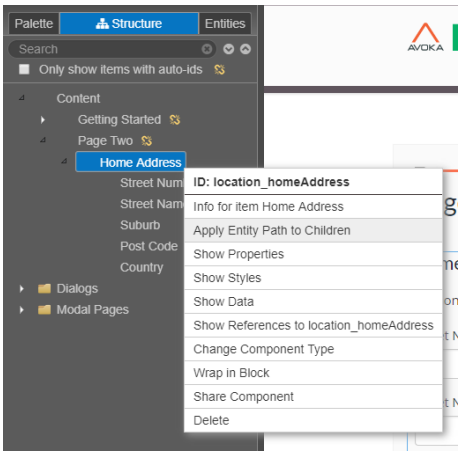
**Step 2: Assign an Entity to multiple items**

To apply the ‘location’ Entity to the new components, we need to assign it to the ‘Home Address’ section first, i.e. where all the components are located.

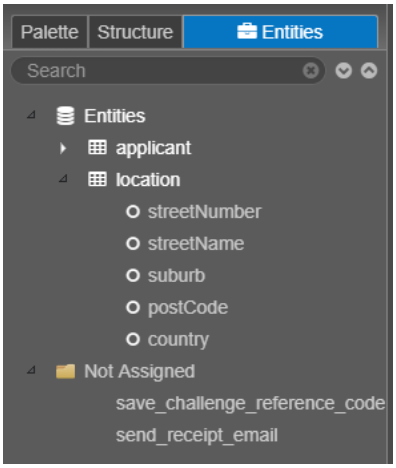
1. Select the ‘Home Address’ Section (the ID Property should show ’homeAddress’)
2. Use the ID property field to assign the ‘location’ Entity to the Section



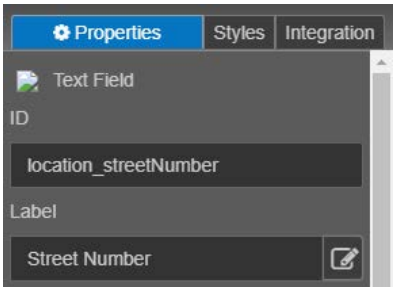

3. Display the ‘Structure’ panel > right-click the ‘homeAddress’ Section and choose ‘Apply Entity Path to Children’




4. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and confirm the components are assigned to the ‘location’ Entity




5. Select each component in the form and confirm the IDs have all been assigned to the ‘location’ Entity




6. Click Save

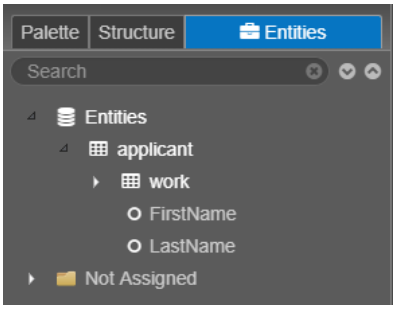
Close the form (Browser Tab)

# Exercise - Create an Entity (Entity panel)

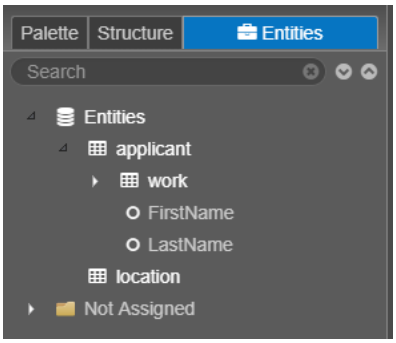
You can create a new Entity in the Entities panel by ‘right-clicking’ where you want the new Entity to be placed.

**Step 1: Create an Entity (Entities panel)**

1. Make sure the ‘Exercise – Entities’ form is displayed in Design view
2. Make sure the Entities panel is visible



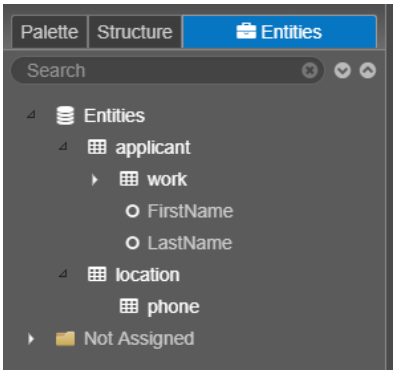

3. Right-click the ‘Entities’ icon
4. Choose ‘Add Entity’
5. Note: the ‘Create New Entity’ dialog is displayed
6. Enter ‘location’ for the Entity name and click Save
7. The new ‘location’ Entity now appears in the panel




**Step 2: Create a ‘nested’ Entity (Entities panel)**

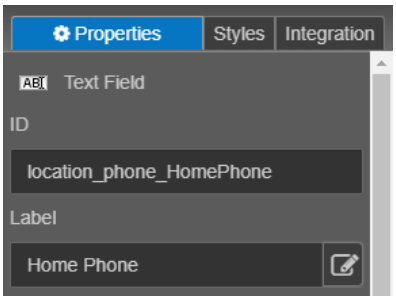
You can also create a nested Entity in the Entities panel.

1. Right-click the ‘location’ Entity
2. Click ‘Add Entity’
3. Enter ‘phone’ for the new nested Entity name and click Save
4. Expand the ‘location’ Entity to display the new nested ‘phone’ Entity

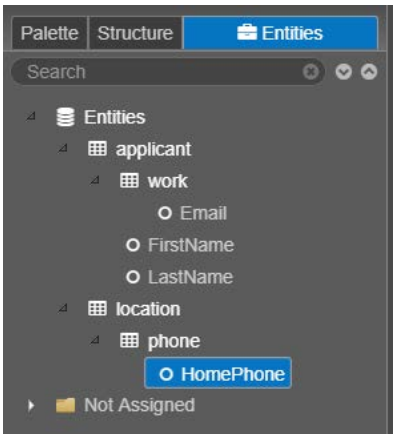



5. Add a new ‘Text Field’ component beneath ‘Email’

6. Use the ID Property field to add this to the nested ‘phone’ Entity and name it ‘HomePhone’




7. Display the ‘Entities’ panel to confirm the ‘Home Phone’ component is related to the nested ‘phone’ Entity




Click Save

# Exercise - Create an Entity (ID field)

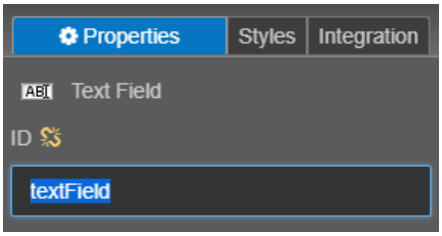
This exercise will demonstrate how to create an Entity directly in the ID field.

**Step 1: Create a form**

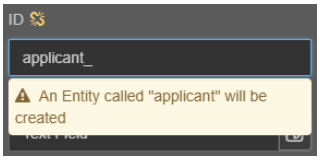
1. Make sure the Navigator Panel is visible
2. Select Forms
3. Click ‘Create Form’
4. Enter the follow details:
   - Form Name: Exercise - Entities
   - Description: This form is to demonstrate how to work with Entities.
   - Template: Training Template
5. Click ‘Create’
6. Note: a new form should display (new window tab) in Design view

**Step 2: Create an Entity**

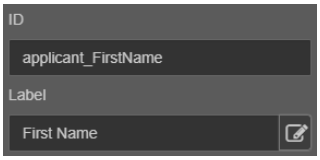
1. Make sure the Palette panel is visible
2. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section
3. Notice: the focus is set by default to the ID property (Properties panel)



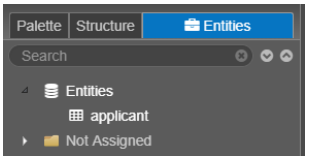

4. To create a new Entity, enter ‘applicant’ followed by an underscore, ‘_’
5. Notice: after you enter underscore (_) an inline warning displays beneath ‘An Entity called applicant will be created’




6. Enter ‘FirstName’ as the ID (after the underscore) then press TAB or click away.
7. Notice: the Label Property displays as ‘First Name’ (without the Entity name)




8. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and notice the ‘applicant’ Entity with one related ‘FirstName’ component

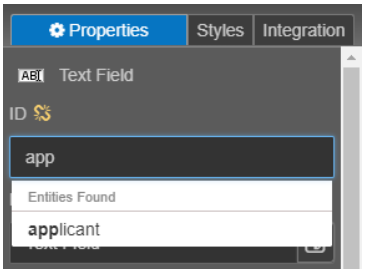



9. Click Save

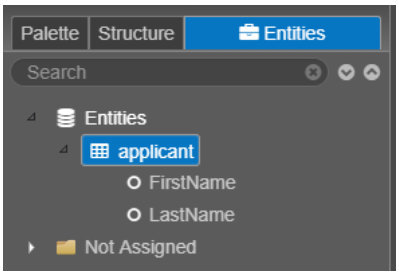
**Step 3: Assign an Entity**

An existing Entity can be assigned to a new component using the ID field.

1. Add another ‘Text Field’ component beneath ‘First Name’
2. Enter the first few letters of ‘applicant’ in the ID property field, i.e. ‘app’
3. Notice: as you type, any matching Entities will display in an inline dropdown menu



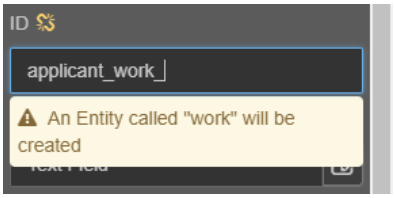

4. Select ‘applicant’ to populate the ID Property field
5. Enter ‘LastName’ (after the underscore) for the ID name.
6. Notice: the label name displays as ‘Last Name’ only
7. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and confirm the ‘applicant’ Entity now has two related components



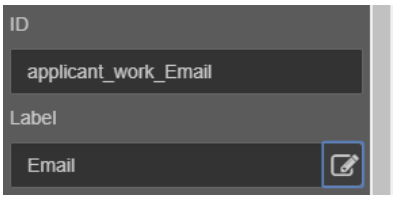

**Step 4: Create a nested Entity**

You can create Entities within Entities, i.e. a nested Entity.

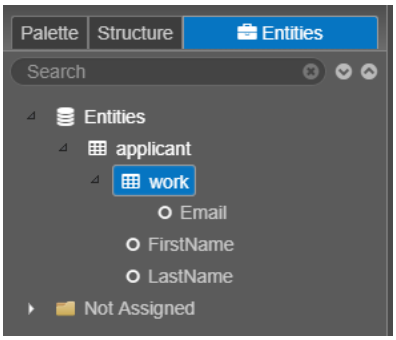
1. Add another new ‘Text Field’ beneath ‘Last Name’
2. Enter the first few letters of ‘applicant’ in the ID property field
3. Select the ‘applicant’ Entity
4. Enter ‘work_’ as the new nested Entity, e.g. ‘applicant1_work_’
5. Notice: after you enter the second underscore (_) an inline warning displays beneath ‘An Entity called work will be created’




6. Enter ‘Email’ for the ID name, e.g. ‘applicant1_work_Email’
7. Press Tab or click away from the ID property field
8. Notice: the label name displays as ‘Email’ only



9. Display the ‘Entities’ panel and confirm the nested ‘work’ Entity with one related component




10. Click Save

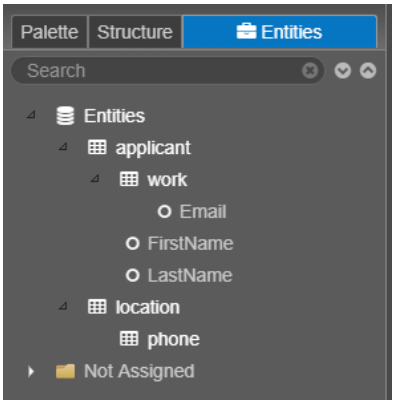
Please note: any existing IDs with an underscore will not automatically cause Entities to be created. Entities will only be created when you modify an existing ID. Any underscores followed by one or more digits (like suffixes applied by auto-generated IDs) will also be ignored.

# Exercise - Delete an Entity

You can delete Entities using the Entities panel.

Please note: You can't delete an Entity if any component IDs use that Entity.

1. Your task is to delete the 'phone' Entity, but you'll need to delete or re-assign any related components.
2. For this exercise, delete the 'Home Phone' component on the form
3. Notice: the 'phone' Entity no longer has any related component IDs




4. Right-click the 'phone' Entity and choose 'Delete Entity'
5. Click 'OK' to confirm
6. The Entity has now been deleted from the Entities panel
7. Click Save

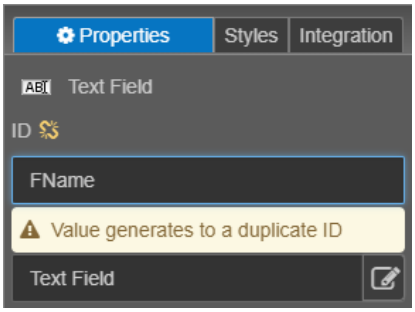
# Exercise - Duplicate IDs

This exercise will demonstrate the new duplicate ID functionality. You will:

1. Create a duplicate ID and ‘Review’
2. Create a duplicate ID and ‘Accept’

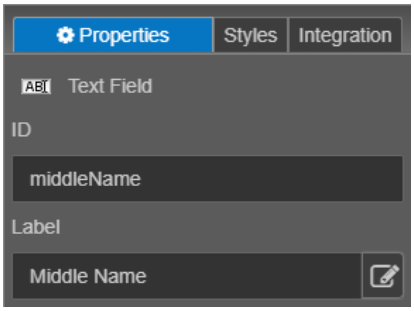
**Step 1: Add a component with a duplicate ID and ‘Review’**

1. Note: Make sure the form you created for the 'ID Management exercise' is open
2. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section (beneath ‘First Name’)
3. Update the ID Property to ‘FName’
4. An inline warning confirms ‘Value generates to a duplicate ID’
   Note: IDs are case sensitive - if you enter 'fname' instead of 'FName', the inline warning will not display




5. At this point, you can either modify the ID property directly in the field
6. Or if you ‘TAB’ (or click away), a popup will prompt you to ‘Review’ the duplicate ID or ‘Accept’ a suffix

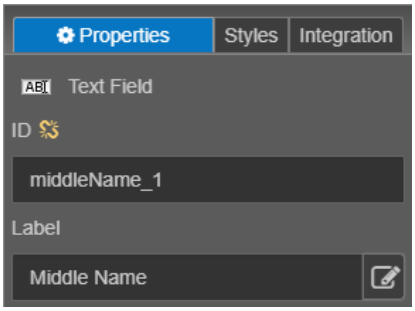
7. For this example, click ‘Review’ and update the ‘ID’ property to ‘MiddleName’




8. Choosing ‘Review’ would let you modify the ID property so that it doesn't cause a duplicate.

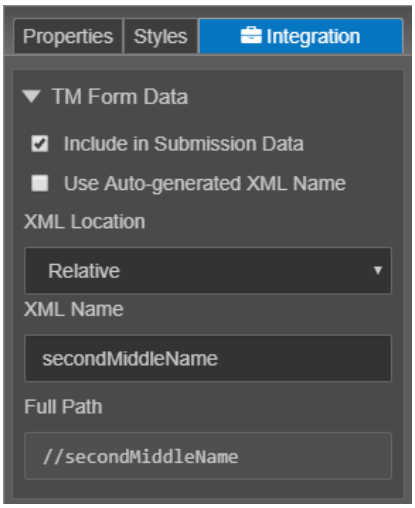
**Step 2: Add a component with a duplicate ID and ‘Accept’**

1. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section (beneath ‘Middle Name’)
2. Update the ID Property ‘MiddleName’ and TAB away
3. For this example, click ‘Accept’ in the popup
4. Choosing ‘Accept’ appends a suffix to the ID Property (i.e. middleName_1)




5. Click ‘Save’
6. Close the form, i.e. the browser tab

Please Note: If you choose ‘Accept’ for duplicate IDs, the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties (on the ‘Integration’ panel) keep their default names (i.e. ‘TextField’). To update these properties, you’ll need to uncheck ‘Use Auto-generated XML Name’ and manually update the ‘XML Name’.



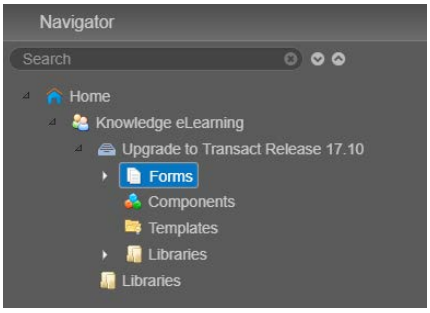
# Exercise - ID Management

This exercise will demonstrate the updated functionality for component IDs. You will:

- create a new form
- add a new component
- update the component ID

**Step 1: Create a new form**

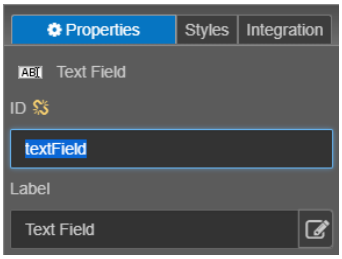
1. Expand the ‘Organization’ (Navigator Panel)
2. Expand the ‘Project’ (Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10)
3. Select ‘Forms’




4. Click the ‘Create Form’ button
5. Enter the following details:
   - Form Name: Exercise - ID Management
   - Description: This form is to demonstrate the new ID features.
   - Template: Training Template
6. Click the ‘Create’ button
7. Note: The form Design view should open in a new Tab

**Step 2: Add a new ‘Text Field’ component**

1. Make sure the ‘Palette’ panel is displayed
2. Add a new ‘Text Field’ into the ‘About You’ section
3. Note: the initial focus is set to the ID Property field




**Step 3: Update the component**

1. Update the ‘ID’ Property value to ‘FirstName’
2. Note: The ‘Label’ Property has automatically updated to ‘First Name’
3. Click the ‘Integration’ tab
4. Note: the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties have updated to the new ‘ID’
5. Click the ‘Properties’ tab
6. Update the ‘ID’ Property to ‘FName’ (then TAB or click away)
7. Note: this time the ‘ID’ Property updates but the ‘Label’ Property remains unchanged. The ‘Label’ only updates when the default ‘ID’ Property is entered.
8. Click the ‘Integration’ tab
9. Note: the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties have updated to the latest ‘ID’ (i.e. ‘FName’)
10. Click ‘Save’

Please note: If the ‘Use Auto-generated XML Name’ Property is not checked, the ‘XML Name’ and ‘Full Path’ properties won’t update if the ID changes. These properties will need to be manually updated if required.

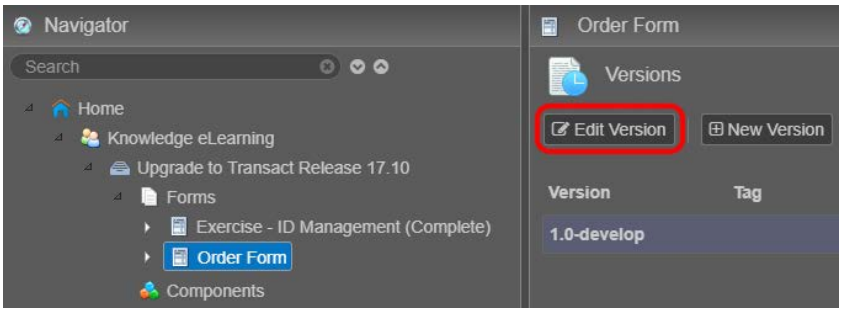
# Exercise - Impact Analysis

The following exercise will involve the ‘Order’ form.

**Step 1: Open the Order form**

From the Maestro Transact Management Dashboard:

1. Expand the ‘Upgrade to Transact Release 17.10’
2. Expand ‘Forms’ and select ‘Order Form’
3. Click the ‘Edit Version’ button

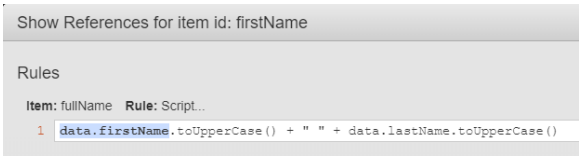



4. The ‘Order Form’ should open in a new browser tab

**Step 2: Review the current references**

Inspect references for the ‘First Name’ field.

1. Right-click the ‘First Name’ text field (in the form)
2. Choose ‘Show References to firstName’
3. Confirm one existing reference to the ‘FullName’ item

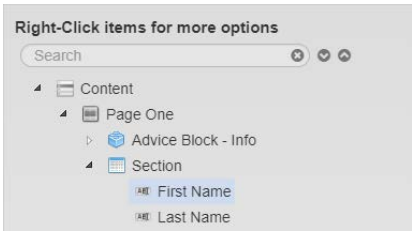



4. Click ‘Close’ (to close the window)

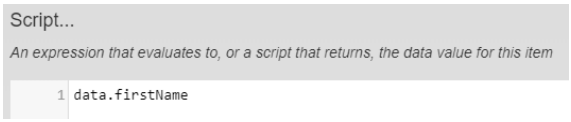
**Step 3: Add a new Text Field that references ‘First Name’**

Add a new Text Field to ‘Page Two’ that references the ‘First Name’ Text Field

1. Display the ‘Structure’ panel
2. Select ‘Page Two’ from the form structure
3. Re-display the ‘Palette’ panel
4. Add a new Text Field to the Page Two ‘Section’
5. Update the ID Property to ‘FirstNameP2’ and press TAB (focus moves to Label Property)
6. Update the Label Property to ‘First Name’ and press TAB
7. With the new Text Field selected, click ‘Create Rule’ (bottom of Properties panel)
8. Click ‘Script’ (under ‘Calculation’)
9. In the navigator column (on the left), expand ‘Page One’, then expand the first ‘Section’




10. Double-click ‘First Name’ to setup a reference to this component, i.e. ‘data.firstName’

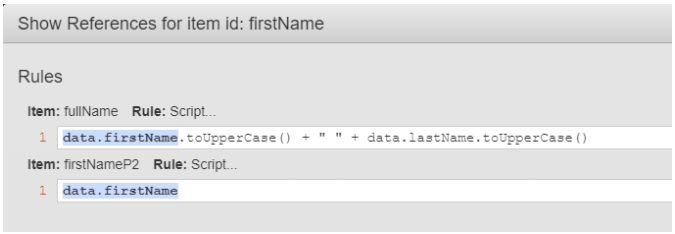



11. Click ‘Save’ (to close the window), then Save the form
12. Click ‘Preview’ to test the new reference, i.e. enter a ‘First Name’ on Page One and confirm it displays in ‘First Name’ on Page Two
13. When you’re ready, switch back to Design view

**Step 4: Review the updated references**

Inspect the references for the ‘First Name’ field on Page One

1. Display the ‘Structure’ panel
2. Select ‘Page One’ from the form structure
3. Re-display the ‘Palette’ panel
4. Right-click ‘First Name’ and click ‘Show References to ‘First Name’
5. Confirm a second reference to ‘firstNameP2’ (on Page Two) now exists



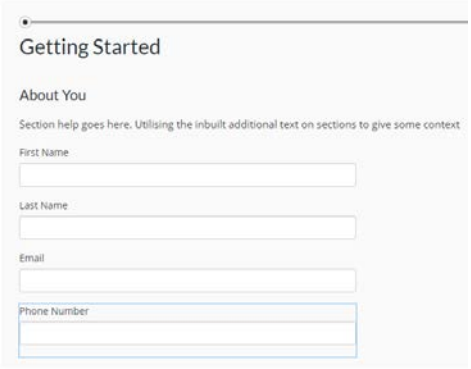

6. Click ‘Close’ (to close the dialog)
7. Click Save then close the form (i.e. the Browser Tab)

# Exercise - Semantic Versioning

This exercise will demonstrate how to create multiple semantic versions of a form.

**Step 1: Update the 1.0-develop version**

1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Click ‘Edit Version’ to open the form
3. Add a new text field to the ‘Getting Started’ section called ‘PhoneNumber’

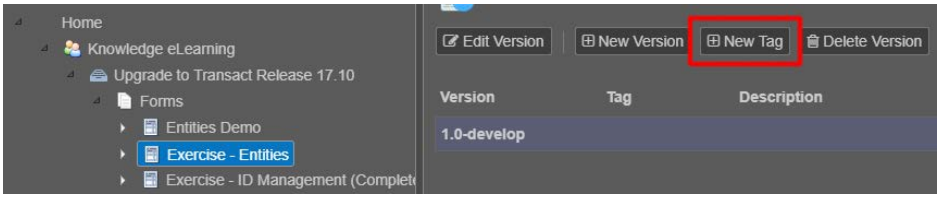



4. Save and Close the form (Browser Tab)

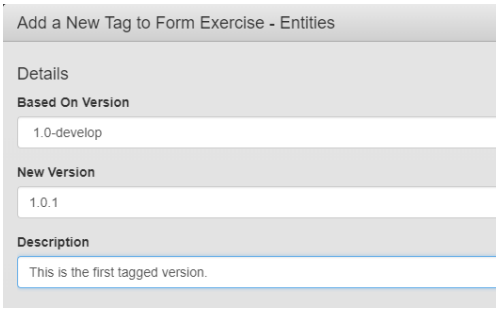
**Step 2: Create a ‘Tagged’ version**

Create the first read-only tagged version (based on ‘1.0-develop’)

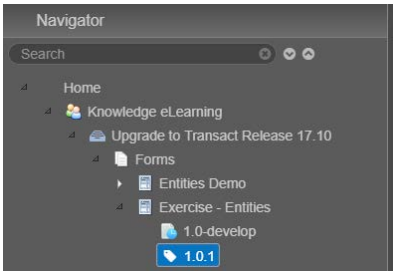
1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Click ‘New Tag’




3. Confirm the new Semantic Version number is 1.0.1
4. Enter Description: ‘This is the first tagged version.’
5. Click ‘Create’

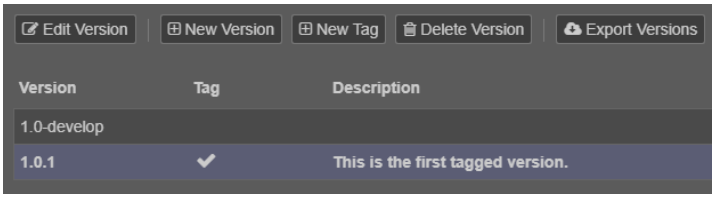



6. Expand the ‘Exercise – Entities’ form in the Navigator panel and confirm the tagged 1.0.1 version is displayed



**Step 3: Open the ‘Tagged’ version**

1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Select the ‘1.0.1’ tagged version (note the ‘tick’ icon)

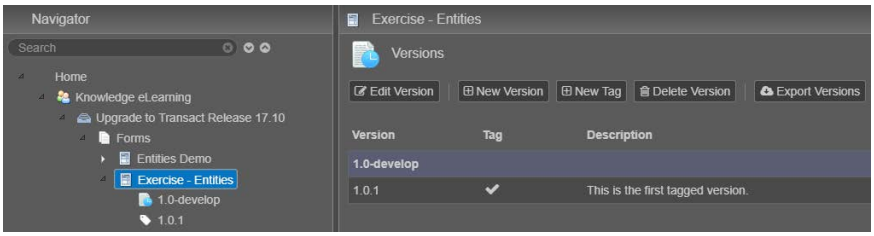



3. Click ‘Edit Version’ to open the form
4. Notice: the Palette panel is empty, i.e. you can’t add new or delete existing components
5. Close the form (Browser Tab)

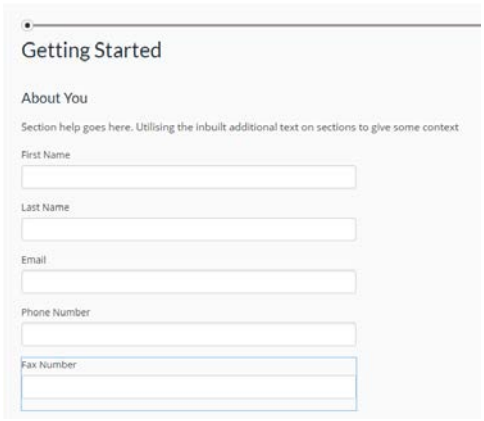
**Step 4: Update the 1.0-develop version**

Remember: all changes and updates are completed in 1.0-develop

1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Select the ‘1.0-develop’ version
3. Click ‘Edit Version’ to open the form




4. Add a new text field to the ‘Getting Started’ section called ‘FaxNumber’



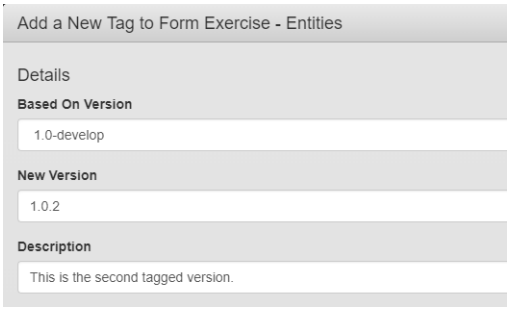

5. Save and Close the form (Browser Tab)

**Step 5: Create another ‘Tagged’ version**

Create another read-only version (based on ‘1.0-develop’)

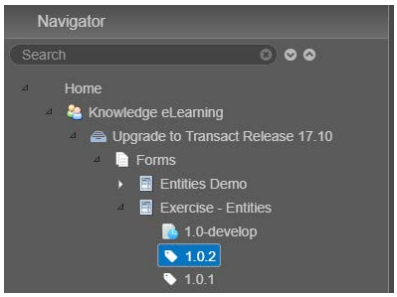
1. Select the ‘Exercise - Entities’ form in the Navigator panel
2. Select the ‘1.0-develop’ version
3. Click ‘New Tag’
4. Confirm the new Semantic Version number is 1.0.2

5. Enter Description: ‘This is the second tagged version.’




6. Click ‘Create’

Expand the ‘Exercise – Entities’ form in the Navigator panel and confirm the tagged 1.0.2 version is displayed



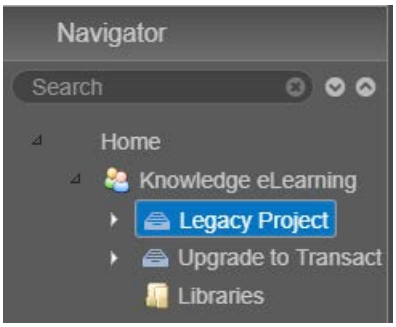
# Exercise - Upgrade a project

You can upgrade an existing project to the latest Maestro release from the Management Dashboard.

**Step 1: Import a project**

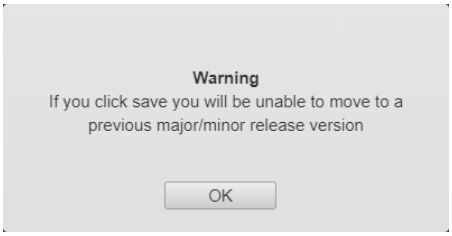
To upgrade a project, you'll need to add a legacy project to your organization first.

1. Download this sample project (zipped folder)
2. Remember where the project is stored, e.g. 'Downloads'
3. Navigate to the Maestro webpage
4. Expand Home (in Navigator Panel)
5. Select the Organization (the Organisation maybe your own name e.g. jsmith
6. Click 'Import Legacy Project'
7. Name the project - 'Legacy Project'
8. Click Import
9. Navigate to the location of the sample project
10. Select the project and click Open
11. The imported project should now appear under your organization



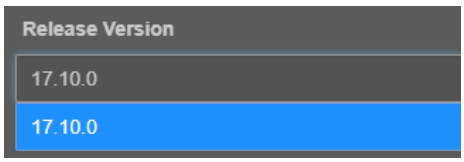

**Step 2: Upgrade the project**

1. Select 'Legacy Project' project in the Navigator
2. Click the Project Details tab
3. Display the 'Release Version' dropdown and choose '17.10.0'
4. Note: When you select a new version, a warning message confirms you can't change the release version back to a previous version once the Project Details are saved




5. Click OK in the warning message
6. Click Save
7. The project has now been upgraded

Notice: The Release Version dropdown no longer displays any previous release versions



# Glossary

PlatformApplicable to all products in Temenos Journey Manager. | All Personas

---

**A**

---

## A/B testing

A/B testing (bucket tests or split-run testing) is a randomized experiment with two variants, A and B. It includes application of statistical hypothesis testing or "two-sample hypothesis testing" as used in the field of statistics. A/B testing is a way to compare two versions of a single variable, typically by testing a subject's response to variant A against variant B, and determining which of the two variants is more effective.

## Abandoned Transaction

Any transaction that has been deemed as Abandoned in Manager. When a user leaves the application without explicitly canceling it, the transaction lives in Started status for a period defined in Manager, after which it is considered as an Abandoned transaction.

## Acquisition

Acquisition is the process of capturing data to start the process of becoming a new customer

## AcroForm

AcroForms are the original PDF forms technology that accepts input in both Forms Data Format (FDF) and XML Forms Data Format (XFDF). Many 3rd party vendors support AcroForms.

## ADFS

Active Directory Federation Services.

## Adobe Flash

Adobe Flash is a deprecated multimedia software platform used for production of animations, rich Internet applications, desktop applications, mobile applications, mobile games and embedded web browser video players. Flash displays text, vector graphics and raster graphics to provide animations, video games and

applications. It allows streaming of audio and video, and can capture mouse, keyboard, microphone and camera input. Related development platform Adobe AIR continues to be supported.

### Adobe LiveCycle ES

Adobe LiveCycle Enterprise Suite (ES4) is an service-oriented architecture Java EE server software product from Adobe Systems used to build applications that automate a broad range of business processes for enterprises and government agencies. LiveCycle ES4 is an enterprise document and form platform that allows capturing and processing information, delivering personalized communications, and protecting and tracking sensitive information. It is used for purposes such as account opening, services and benefits enrollment, correspondence management, request for proposal processes, and other manual based workflows.

### Agile software development

Agile software development is an approach to software development under which requirements and solutions evolve through the collaborative effort of self-organizing and cross-functional teams and their customer/end user.

### AIM

Association for Automatic Identification and Mobility (AIM) is an industry trade group that developed and standardized bar codes, Automatic identification and data capture.

### Amazon AWS Security Token Service

The AWS Security Token Service (STS) is a web service that enables you to request temporary, limited-privilege credentials for AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) users or for users that you authenticate (federated users).

### Amazon CloudFront

Amazon CloudFront is a content delivery network (CDN). It is integrated with Manager to provide an easy way to distribute static content such as images to end users with low latency, and high data transfer speeds. This improves the speed at which forms load, providing a better customer experience. It also reduces load on theManager servers, resulting in a higher transaction throughput per server.

## Amazon HSM

AWS CloudHSM is a cloud-based hardware security module (HSM) that enables you to easily generate and use your own encryption keys on the AWS Cloud. With CloudHSM, you can manage your own encryption keys using FIPS 140-2 Level 3 validated HSMs.

## Amazon Key Management Service

AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a managed service that makes it easy for you to create and control the encryption keys used to encrypt your data, and uses FIPS 140-2 validated hardware security modules to protect the security of your keys. AWS Key Management Service is integrated with most other AWS services to help you protect the data you store with these services. AWS Key Management Service is also integrated with AWS CloudTrail to provide you with logs of all key usage to help meet your regulatory and compliance needs.

## Amazon Redshift

Amazon Redshift is an Internet hosting service and data warehouse product which forms part of the larger cloud-computing platform Amazon Web Services. It is built on top of technology from the massive parallel processing (MPP) data-warehouse company ParAccel to handle large scale data sets and database migrations.

## Amazon Resource Name

An Amazon Resource Name (ARN) is a file naming convention used to identify a particular resource in the Amazon Web Services (AWS) public cloud. ARNs, which are specific to AWS, help an administrator track and use AWS items and policies across AWS products and API calls.

## Amazon S3

Amazon S3 is object storage built to store and retrieve any amount of data from anywhere – web sites and mobile apps, corporate applications, and data from IoT sensors or devices. It is designed to deliver 99.999999999% durability, and stores data for millions of applications used by market leaders in every industry. S3 provides comprehensive security and compliance capabilities that meet even the most stringent regulatory requirements.

### Amazon Simple Email Service

Amazon Simple Email Service (SES) is a pay-per-use service that allows you to build in email functionality into an application that you are running on AWS.

### Amazon Simple Queue Service

Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) is a pay-per-use web service for storing messages in transit between computers. Developers use SQS to build distributed applications with decoupled components without having to deal with the overhead of creating and maintaining message queues.

### Amazon Web Services

Amazon Web Services (AWS) is a comprehensive, evolving cloud computing platform provided by Amazon. It provides a mix of infrastructure as a service (IaaS), platform as a service (PaaS) and packaged software as a service (SaaS) offerings.

### Angular

Angular is a platform that makes it easy to build applications with the web. Angular combines declarative templates, dependency injection, end to end tooling, and integrated best practices to solve development challenges. Angular empowers developers to build applications that live on the web, mobile, or the desktop.

### AngularJS

AngularJS is a structural framework for dynamic web apps. It lets you use HTML as your template language and lets you extend HTML's syntax to express your application's components clearly and succinctly. AngularJS's data binding and dependency injection eliminate much of the code you would otherwise have to write. For more information, see http://angularjs.org/

### Anti-Money Laundering

Anti-Money Laundering (AML) refers to existing laws or procedures meant to reduce illegally obtained income. The legal controls that require financial institutions and other regulated entities to prevent, detect, and report money laundering activities.

### Apache Ant

Apache Ant is a software tool for automating software build processes, which originated from the Apache Tomcat project. It was a replacement for the Make build tool of Unix.

### Apache HTTP Server

Apache HTTP Server is free and open-source cross-platform web server software, released under the terms of Apache License 2.0. Apache is developed and maintained by an open community of developers under the auspices of the Apache Software Foundation.

### Apache Kafka

Apache Kafka is a distributed event store and stream-processing platform, which provide a unified, high-throughput, low-latency platform for handling real-time data feeds. For more information, see https://kafka.apache.org/intro

### Apache Velocity Template

Apache Velocity Templates are used extensively throughout Temenos Journey Manager platformto define html page layout, email body and subject. A template is combined with model containing a number or objects to produce a String. For more information see http://velocity.apache.org/engine/devel/user-guide.html

### API

Application Programming Interface.

### Applicant

An applicant is a person who uses application forms developed, hosted and managed by a Customer or a Client of Temenos Journey Manager. Other names for an applicant are: a customer end user, end user, form user, staff user, adviser, private banker, contact center.

### Artifactory

Artifactory is a product by JFrog that serves as a binary repository manager, which is an extension to the source code repository where it stores the outcome of your build process, often denoted as artifacts.

### Assistive Technology

Assistive Technology is an umbrella term that includes assistive, adaptive, and rehabilitative devices for people with disabilities while also including the process used in selecting, locating, and using them.

### Automated Clearing House

Automated Clearing House (ACH) is the electronic network used to transfer money between accounts at different institutions.

### AWS Aurora RDS

Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) is a web service that makes it easier to set up, operate, and scale a relational database in the cloud. It provides cost-efficient, resizable capacity for an industry-standard relational database and manages common database administration tasks.

### Azure

Microsoft Azure is a cloud computing service created by Microsoft for building, testing, deploying, and managing applications and services through Microsoft-managed data centers.

### Azure Blob Storage

Azure Blob Storage is Microsoft's object storage solution for the cloud. Blob storage is optimized for storing massive amounts of unstructured data. Unstructured data is data that doesn't adhere to a particular data model or definition, such as text or binary data.

### Azure Key Vault

Azure Key Vault is a cloud service that provides a secure store for secrets. You can securely store keys, passwords, certificates, and other secrets.

### Azure Queue Storage

Azure Queue Storage provides cloud messaging between application components. In designing applications for scale, application components are often decoupled so they can scale independently. Queue storage delivers asynchronous messaging between application components, whether they are running in the cloud, on the desktop, on an on-premises server, or on a mobile device.

Queue storage also supports managing asynchronous tasks and building process work flows.

## B

### Bank Secrecy Act

Bank Secrecy Act (BSA)/Anti-Money Laundering (AML) is the BSA requires financial institutions to collaborate with the government in cases of suspected money laundering and fraud. Banks must conduct anti-money laundering checks and keep records of suspicious events.

### Banking Platform

A plug-and-play business model that allows multiple participants (producers and consumers) to connect to it, interact with each other, and create and exchange value. Successful platforms attract both producers and consumers, match producers with consumers, and provide seamless integration among participants. Avoka Platform enables account opening and onboarding.

### Barcode

Barcode is a machine-readable code in the form of numbers and a pattern of parallel lines of varying widths, printed on a commodity and used especially for stock control.

### BAU

usiness As Usual (BAU) is the view of an organisation, business unit, work team or team member completing their everyday work in the normal way.

### Biometrics

Is the electronically matching of a person's unique physical characteristics with their account.

### BIRT

Business Intelligence and Reporting Tools (BIRT) is an open source data visualization and reporting platform. For more information, see http://www.eclipse.org/birt/

### Blockchain

Also known as distributed ledger technology (DLT), is a software that is a shared record of information managed by a network of computers rather than a central authority. It is secured using cryptography.

### Bounce or bounced transaction

Bounce is when a user views a form but never starts it and simply closes the window immediately or navigates away.

### Bounced Transaction

Any transaction where the applicant (user) did not interact with the web application (form). Navigation across the form or scrolling the page does not count as an interaction. A legitimate interaction is one where a user inputs data into the form in some way, such as text input, radio button input, clicking on a checkbox, clicking the Save button, attaching a file etc. It typically takes 24-48 hours for a transaction in Open status to transition to Bounced status. This time will vary based on the settings configured in Manager.

### BPMN

Business Process Modeling Notation (BPMN) is a method of illustrating business processes in the form of a diagram similar to a flowchart.

### BSG

Business Services Group (BSG)

## C

### CentOS

CentOS (Community Enterprise Operating System) is a Linux distribution that provides a free, enterprise-class, community-supported computing platform functionally compatible with its upstream source, Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL).

### Changelog

is a record of changes to a software project or other technology product. This type of record has its own format for various types of projects, but is generally useful in showing when and why changes were made, and who made them.

### Checking Account

The basic account for easy access to your money.

### ClamAV

Clam AntiVirus (ClamAV) is a free, cross-platform and open-source antivirus software toolkit able to detect many types of malicious software, including viruses. One of its main uses is on mail servers as a server-side email virus scanner. The application was developed for Unix and has third party versions available for AIX, BSD, HP-UX, Linux, macOS, OpenVMS, OSF (Tru64) and Solaris.

### CLI

A command line interface (CLI) is a text-based user interface (UI) used to view and manage computer files.

### Cloud computing

Cloud computing is shared pools of configurable computer system resources and higher-level services that can be rapidly provisioned with minimal management effort, often over the Internet. Cloud computing relies on sharing of resources to achieve coherence and economies of scale, similar to a public utility.

### Code Reuse

Code reuse aims to save time and resources and reduce redundancy by taking advantage of assets that have already been created in some form within the software product development process. The key idea in reuse is that parts of a computer program written at one time can be or should be used in the construction of other programs written at a later time.

### Completed Transaction

Any transaction that has been completed by the user and submitted to Manager.

### Component

A component is the general name for anything that can be dragged from the Palette onto a form. Components can be anything from a single data entry field, to a large complex re-usable block.

### Content Delivery Network

A content delivery network or Content Distribution Network (CDN) is a system of distributed servers (network) that deliver pages and other Web content to a user, based on the geographic locations of the user, the origin of the webpage and the content delivery server.

### Content Security Policy

Content Security Policy (CSP) is a computer security standard introduced to prevent cross-site scripting (XSS), clickjacking and other code injection attacks resulting from execution of malicious content in the trusted web page context. CSP provides a standard method for website owners to declare approved origins of content that browsers should be allowed to load on that website—covered types are JavaScript, CSS, HTML frames, web workers, fonts, images, embeddable objects such as Java applets, ActiveX, audio and video files, and other HTML5 features. For more information, see https://www.w3.org/TR/CSP/

### Continuous Integration

Continuous Integration (CI) is a development practice that requires developers to integrate code into a shared repository several times a day. Each check-in is then verified by an automated build, allowing teams to detect problems early.

### Coordinated Universal Time

Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) is the primary time standard by which the world regulates clocks and time.

### CORS

Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) is a mechanism that uses additional HTTP headers to tell a browser to let a web application running at one origin (domain) have permission to access selected resources from a server at a different origin. A web application executes a cross-origin HTTP request when it requests a resource that has a different origin (domain, protocol, and port) than its own origin.

### Credit Rating

An evaluation of credit-worthiness based on financial resources and credit history. Usually expressed as a letter grade (A, B+, etc.)

### Credit Report

A report on an individual or organisation identifying credit details such as: defaults, judgments, bankruptcies, etc.

### Credit Score

In contrast to a credit rating, the credit score is a number (600, 700, etc.) indicating an individual's credit-worthiness.

### Credit Union

A member-owned financial cooperative, controlled by its members and operated on the principle of people helping people, providing its members credit at competitive rates as well as other financial services. Credit unions offer many of the same financial services as banks, but often using a different terminology.

### CRM

Customer relationship management (CRM) is an approach to manage a company's interaction with current and potential customers. It uses data analysis about customers' history with a company to improve business relationships with customers, specifically focusing on customer retention and ultimately driving sales growth.

### Cron

Cron is a time-based job scheduler in Unix-like computer operating systems. People who set up and maintain software environments use cron to schedule jobs (commands or shell scripts) to run periodically at fixed times, dates, or intervals.

### Cryptocurrency

A digital currency that relies on cryptography to validate and secure transactions.

### CSRF

Cross-site request forgery (CSRF), also known as one-click attack or session riding, is a type of malicious exploit of a website where unauthorized commands are transmitted from a user that the web application trusts.

### CSS

CSS stands for Cascading Styles Sheets and is used to define styles for a Maestro Form, including the design, layout, and variations in the form's display on different devices and screen sizes. The CSS on a Maestro form is primarily taken care of by the Template Designer. The Template Designer will implement the branding and/or styling of the form's assets.CSS can be applied to the template of the form, individual components, and any other asset associated with a Maestro form.

### CSS3

CSS3 is the latest evolution of the Cascading Style Sheets language and aims at extending CSS2.1 It brings a lot of long-awaited novelties, like rounded corners, shadows, gradients, transitions or animations, as well as new layouts like multi-columns, flexible box or grid layouts.

### CSV

CSV is a comma-separated values fil, which s a delimited text file that uses a comma to separate values. A CSV file stores tabular data (numbers and text) in plain text. Each line of the file is a data record. Each record consists of one or more fields, separated by commas.

### Current Account

A transaction account, checking account, demand deposit account, or share draft account (at credit unions) is a deposit account held at a bank or other financial institution.

### Custom component

Sometimes it is useful to create a re-usable variant of either a simple or complex component. The main variations are: • A component with a re-usable business rule, particularly a validation rule. An email field is an example of this. • A component (radio button or dropdown list) with a specific set of values. An example of this is a dropdown list of States. • A component with a particular XML binding.

### Customer

A customer is a person who uses Temenos Journey Manager to create, host and manage application forms. Other names for a customer is a client.

## Customer Experience

Customer Experience (CX) is the product of an interaction between an organization and a customer over the duration of their relationship. This interaction is made up of three parts: the customer journey, the brand touchpoints the customer interacts with, and the environments the customer experiences (including digital environment) during their experience. A good customer experience means that the individual's experience during all points of contact matches the individual's expectations.

## Customer Identification Program

Customer Identification Program (CIP) The CIP is a required provision under the USA PATRIOT Act. CIP is more commonly known as KYC.

## CVE

Common Vulnerabilities and Exposures (CVE) is a list of publicly disclosed computer security flaws, where each security flaw has a CVE ID number assigned to it for further reference.

## CX

Customer Experience (CX) is an aggregate of a customer’s A-Z experience with a brand. It is not a snapshot in time, such as a key touchpoint or a critical interaction.

### D

## DAO

Deposit Account Opening ( DAO). DAO bank forms allow users to open Checking, Savings and Money Market Accounts.

## DB

A database is a data structure that stores organized information. Most databases contain multiple tables, which may each include several different fields. For example, a company database may include tables for products, employees, and financial records. Each of these tables would have different fields that are relevant to the information stored in the table.

### DDA

Direct Deposit Account (DDA) is simply a checking or savings account which offers the ability to send and receive funds electronically.

### DDS

The Data Distribution Service (DDS) is a middleware protocol and API standard for data-centric connectivity from the Object Management Group (OMG). It integrates the components of a system together, providing low-latency data connectivity, extreme reliability, and a scalable architecture that business and mission-critical Internet of Things (IoT) applications need.

### Design

A design is a generic name for a form, receipt, template, or component that you can create in Maestrousing the Maestro editor

### Design Mode

Design mode displays the editor window so that Maestro assets can be created and updated

### DevOps

DevOps is a software development methodology that combines software development (Dev) with information technology operations (Ops). The goal of DevOps is to shorten the systems development life cycle while also delivering features, fixes, and updates frequently in close alignment with business objectives.

### Digital Adoption

Achieving a state in which digital tools are being used as intended, and to their fullest extent. It is about more than just basic functions — digital adoption happens when technology becomes second nature to its user.

### Digital Banking

The move to online banking where banking services are delivered over the Internet. The advantages for banks and customers are providing more convenient and faster banking services.

### Digital ID

Also known as Digital Credential, is the electronic equivalent of an individual's identity card. A digital ID can be presented electronically to prove an individual's identity and their right to access information or services online.

### Digital Native

A person that grew-up in the digital age and is comfortable with technology.

### Disaster-Recovery-as-a-Service

Disaster-Recovery-as-a-Service (DRAAS) is the hosting of servers by a third party in case of a disaster.

### Document Object Model

The Document Object Model (DOM) is a cross-platform and language-independent application programming interface that treats an HTML, XHTML, or XML document as a tree structure wherein each node is an object representing a part of the document. The objects can be manipulated programmatically and any visible changes occurring as a result may then be reflected in the display of the document.

### DocuSign eSignature

DocuSign is the leader in eSignature transaction management. The Temenos Journey Manager platform uses this solution to speed the rate at which all digital documents are completed, signed, and returned.

### DOM

The Document Object Model is a cross-platform and language-independent interface that treats an XML or HTML document as a tree structure wherein each node is an object representing a part of the document. The DOM represents a document with a logical tree.

### DTO

Domain Transfer Object (DTO)

## E

### eAccessibility

Web accessibility, or eAccessibility, is the inclusive practice of ensuring there are no barriers that prevent interaction with, or access to, websites on the World Wide Web by people with physical disabilities, situational disabilities, and socio-economic restrictions on bandwidth and speed.

### EAR

Enterprise Archive.

### Electronic Check Presentment

Electronic Check Presentment (ECP) is an electronic image of a check that can be processed by banks.

### Electronic Deposit Verification

Electronic Deposit Verification (EDV) is a way to verify an account at another bank that you want to link to from the current institution.

### Electronic Funds Transfer

Electronic Funds Transfer (EFT) is the transfer of money between accounts through electronic payment systems.

### Electronic Identity Verification

Electronic Identity Verification (eIDV) is an electronic method to confirm the identification of an individual.

### End-of-Life

End-of-life (EOL) is a term used with respect to a product supplied to customers, indicating that the product is in the end of its useful life (from the vendor's point of view), and a vendor stops marketing, selling, or rework sustaining it.

### Endpoint

Endpoint is a web address (URL) at which clients of a specific service can gain access to it. By referencing that URL, clients can get to operations provided by that service.

### Entity

Entity is a generic name for various objects, which Journey Manager uses internally, for example, an organization is an entity that owns forms.

### EOT font

Embedded OpenType (EOT) fonts are a compact form of OpenType fonts designed by Microsoft for use as embedded fonts on web pages. These files use the extension .eot

### ERP

Enterprise resource planning (ERP) is the integrated management of main business processes, often in real-time and mediated by software and technology.

### ES6

ECMAScript (ES6) is a general-purpose programming language, standardized by Ecma International according to the document ECMA-262. It is a JavaScript standard meant to ensure the interoperability of Web pages across different Web browsers.

### Europay, MasterCard, and Visa

Europay, MasterCard, and Visa (EMV) is a payment method based on agreed standards for use with smart payment cards (also referred to as chip or IC cards).

## F

### FAR

FAR is a Form Archive that contains a form and all related resources that can be deployed as a package in various Journey Manager environments.

### Fast IDentity Online

Fast IDentity Online (FIDO) is an industry consortium with the aim to address the lack of interoperability among strong authentication devices and the problems users face creating and remembering multiple usernames and passwords. It comprises a set of technology-agnostic security specifications for strong authentication.

### Field

A field is a specific type of component used for displaying and entering data into a form application. Examples include the Text Field or Decimal Field. In Journey Analytics only, a field also refers to any field, radio button or component in a form application used to enter data.

### Financial Institution

An institution (public or private) that collects funds (from the public or other institutions) andinvests them in financial assets.

### Financial Technology

Financial Technology, also known as FinTech, is a new industry that uses new technology and innovation to improve activities in finance. It aims to compete with traditional financial methods in the delivery of financial services to customers by improving customer experience, reducing time-to-market, decreasing cost to mention a few.

### Financial Technology Terms

Financial technology, often referred to as FinTech or fintech, is an umbrella term describing new technology used to support or enable banking and financial services.

### Finovate

Also known as FinTech Innovation, a demo-focused conference series focused exclusively on showcasing the best and most innovative new financial and banking technologies.

### FinServ

Anything that describes Financial Services.

### Fluent

Fluent is a programming style that can be applied to a wide range of programming languages. Across the Temenos Journey Manager platform, fluent is commonly associated with the Fluent SDK. The Fluent SDK is intended for use in developer integrated developer environment's (IDE) and contains libraries and project files for all the different services it supports.

### Font Awesome

Font Awesome is a font and icon toolkit based on CSS and Less.

### Form Builder

A Form Builder is the role name of the person that creates the form. A Form Builder focuses on the specific form content as well as the journey of the form user.

### Form User

The form user is the person completing the form. They may also be known as "user".

### Frictionless

Achieved with or involving little difficulty, or effortless. Avoka's Platform helps to provide frictionless customer onboarding and account opening experiences.

### FTX

Form Transaction Experiences

### Fully qualified domain name

Fully qualified domain name (FQDN), sometimes also referred to as an absolute domain name, is a domain name that specifies its exact location in the tree hierarchy of the Domain Name System (DNS). It specifies all domain levels, including at least a second-level domain and a top-level domain.

## G

### GA

General Availability (GA) is the release of a product to the general public. When a product reaches GA, it becomes available through the company's general sales channel.

### General Availability

General availability (GA) is the marketing phase when all commercialization activities pertaining to the software product have been completed and it is available for purchase. It is also known as production release.

### Geolocation

Identifying person or device's geographical location. This may involve GPS or Global Positioning System.

### Git

Git is a version control system for tracking changes in computer files and coordinating work on those files among multiple people. It is primarily used for source code management in software development,[8] but it can be used to keep track of changes in any set of files.

### GitHub

GitHub Inc. is a web-based hosting service for version control using Git. It is mostly used for computer code. It offers all of the distributed version control and source code management (SCM) functionality of Git as well as adding its own features.

### GitLab

GitLab is a web-based Git-repository manager with wiki and issue-tracking features, using an open-source license, developed by GitLab Inc.

### Google Tag Manager

Google Tag Manager (GTM) is a tag management system (TMS) that allows you to quickly and easily update tracking codes and related code fragments collectively known as tags on your website or mobile app.

### Gradle

Gradle is a build automation tool for multi-language software development. It controls the development process in the tasks of compilation and packaging to testing, deployment, and publishing.

### Groovy

Groovy is a powerful scripting language which runs on the Java Virtual Machine. Across theTemenos Journey Manager platform, Groovy is used to create services in Manager. These services are primarily used to create plug-in style systems that interact with Manager.

### GUI

The graphical user interface (GUI) is a form of user interface that allows users to interact with electronic devices through graphical icons and audio indicator such as primary notation, instead of text-based user interfaces, typed command labels or text navigation.

### GUID

A GUID (global unique identifier) is a term for a number that its programming generates to create a unique identity for an entity such as a Word document. GUIDs are widely used in Microsoft products to identify interfaces, replica sets, records, and other objects.

### GZIP

GZIP is a file format and a software application used for file compression and decompression.

## H

### HA

High availability (HA) is a characteristic of a system which aims to ensure an agreed level of operational performance, usually uptime, for a higher than normal period.

### Happy path

A happy path is a default scenario featuring no exceptional or error conditions.

### Home Mortgage Disclosure Act

Home Mortgage Disclosure Act (HMDA) is HMDA requires banks and credit unions to collect and publicly report data on particular types of mortgages and lines of credit.

### HSM

A hardware security module (HSM) is a physical computing device that safeguards and manages digital keys for strong authentication and provides crypto-processing.

### HTML5

Maestro forms are fundamentally built using HTML 5. The structure of the form and the text displayed in the form are all configured and established using HTML5. HTML is the standard markup language for creating Web pages and stands for Hypertext Markup Language. HTML 5 describes the structure of a Maestro form.

### HTTP

HTTP ( HyperText Transfer Protocol) is the underlying protocol used by the World Wide Web and this protocol defines how messages are formatted and transmitted, and what actions Web servers and browsers should take in response to various commands.

## I

### Icon Picker

The Icon Picker is a selection dialog allowing you to pick an icon from the range of images shipped with Maestro.

### IDE

Integrated Development Environment.

### In- Progress Transaction

Any transaction that is Opened, Started or Saved.

### IP address

IP address is a unique string of numbers separated by full stops that identifies each computer using the Internet Protocol to communicate over a network.

### iText

iText is a library for creating and manipulating PDF files in Java and .NET.

## J

### Jakarta EE

Jakarta EE, formerly Java Platform, Enterprise Edition (Java EE) and Java 2 Platform, Enterprise Edition (J2EE), is a set of specifications, extending Java SE with

specifications for enterprise features such as distributed computing and web services.

### Java

Java is a programming language that produces software for multiple platforms. When a programmer writes a Java application, the compiled code (known as bytecode) runs on most operating systems (OS), including Windows, Linux and Mac OS. Java derives much of its syntax from the C and C++ programming languages.

### Javadoc

Javadoc is a documentation generator created by Sun Microsystems for the Java language for generating API documentation in HTML format from Java source code.

### JavaScript

Javascript (JS) is a scripting languages, primarily used on the Web. It is used to enhance HTML pages and is commonly found embedded in HTML code. JavaScript is an interpreted language. Thus, it doesn't need to be compiled.

### JDBC

JDBC (Java Database Connectivity) is the Java API that manages connecting to a database, issuing queries and commands, and handling result sets obtained from the database.

### JDK

The Java Development Kit is a distribution of Java Technology by Oracle Corporation. It implements the Java Language Specification and the Java Virtual Machine Specification and provides the Standard Edition of the Java Application Programming Interface. For more information, see https://www.oracle.com/java/

### Joint account

A bank account held by more than one person. Joint holders of an account are regarded in law as together making up the ‘owner’ of the account.

### Journey Workspaces

Journey Workspaces is a business portal designed to support resolution and customer service activities related to account opening and onboarding.

### JSON

JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) is an open standard file format and data interchange format that uses human-readable text to store and transmit data objects consisting of attribute–value pairs and arrays.

### JVM

Java Virtual Machine (JVM) is a software-based machine that runs Java programs. It can be installed on several different operating systems, including Windows, OS X, and Linux. JVMs allow Java apps to run on almost any computer.

## K

### KB

A knowledge base (KB) is a technology used to store complex structured and unstructured information used by a computer system.

### Know your customer

Know your customer (KYC) requires that banks have a reasonable belief that they know the true identity of customers and establish reasonable and practical risk-based procedures for verifying the identity of each customer. The procedures must include account opening procedures that specify the identifying info that will be obtained from each customer, such as name, date of birth, address, ID number (e.g. SSN).

### Knowledge-Based Authentication

Knowledge-Based Authentication (KBA) aid(s) used for fraud prevention? An example would be a “secret question” users must answer before being granted access to account information.

### Kofax

Kofax software enables organizations to Work Like Tomorrow - today. It helps organizations transform information-intensive business processes, reduce manual work and errors, minimize costs, and improve customer engagement.

### KPI

Key Performance Indicator (KPI) is a measurable value that demonstrates how effectively a company is achieving key business objectives. Organizations use KPIs to evaluate their success at reaching targets.

## L

### Landing Page

A web page that is accessed from another website or software application.

### LDAP

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an open, vendor-neutral, industry standard application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an Internet Protocol network.

### LESS

LESS is a dynamic preprocessor style sheet language that can be compiled into Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) and run on the client side or server side.

### Less CSS

Less is a dynamic preprocessor style sheet language that can be compiled into Cascading Style Sheets and run on the client side or server side.

### LexisNexis

LexisNexis is a corporation providing computer-assisted legal research (CALR) as well as business research and risk management services.

### Linux

Linux is a family of free and open-source software operating systems built around the Linux kernel. Typically, Linux is packaged in a form known as a Linux distribution (or distro for short) for both desktop and server use.

### LMS

Lifecycle Management Suiteis software designed for lending. For more information, see https://www.temenos.com/us/news/2015/02/10/temenos-purchases-us-based-financial-software-provider-akcelerant/

### Loan to Value Ratio

Loan to Value Ratio (LVR) is the amount, as a percentage, borrowed for an asset against the value of the asset.

### Locale

Locale is a set of parameters that defines the user's language, region and any special variant preferences that the user wants to see in their user interface. Usually a locale identifier consists of at least a language code and a country/region code.

## M

### Native multi-field component

A native multi-field (or complex) component is still a completely self-contained component. There is no fixed boundary between a simple and a complex native component, although any component with more than one visible data entry area within it would usually be considered to be complex

### Re-usable Block

A custom block is a collection of simple components, that can be re-used. An example of a re-usable block is an Address Block, which consists of two lines of text plus City, State, and ZIP Code. Unlike a native multi-field component, each of the sub-elements of the custom block will be visible in the Structure tab and can be modified individually by the person using your block.

### Multi-field component, or complex component

A multi-field component is made up of more sub-parts than a regular component. For example, a Section consists of the Heading text, sub-text, help text, a collapse/expand button and a significant amount of JavaScript and CSS. An address block contains several different simple data entry fields. A component such as a Driver's License scanning component may have multiple data entry fields, a camera button, descriptive images, and more. Multi-field components can be built as either a native component or a re-usable block.

### Template Designer

The Template Designer is responsible for implementing and maintaining templates which are the starting point for all forms created in Maestro. The key activity of the Template Designer is to implement the template content such as

common page components that typically surround specific form content, including header, navigator, and footer. The Template Designer will also create styles that the Form Builder will use in the creation of form content including text field styles, buttons, and section headers.

### Preview Mode

Preview mode displays the form so that you can interact with the components on the form as if it were live.

### Maestro form

Maestro form is a device used to collect information from a user. Its purpose will vary depending on the organization that is building and implementing the form. The development technologies and programming languages that are available to Form Builders will vary depending on these purposes. However, there are several development technologies and programming languages that are used in every Maestro form. These development technologies and programming languages are identified below, as well as their role in the development of a form or their place in the Temenos Journey Manager platform.

### Maven

Apache Maven is a software project management and comprehension tool. Based on the concept of a project object model (POM), Maven can manage a project's build, reporting and documentation from a central piece of information.

### MDS

Master Demo System (MDS) is the Temenos cloud platform, which hosts demo versions of some Temenos products.

### Metadata

Metadata is data that describes other data. Meta is a prefix that in most information technology usages means "an underlying definition or description." Metadata summarizes basic information about data, which can make finding and working with particular instances of data easier. For example, author, date created and date modified and file size are examples of very basic document metadata. Having the abilty to filter through that metadata makes it much easier for someone to locate a specific document.

### Micro-deposits

Small deposits (nominal amount) made to verify an account.

### Microsoft Azure Active Directory

Microsoft Azure Active Directory (Azure AD) is a system in Microsoft Azure that enables the identity management to configure accessibility of users and groups to services and resources.

### Microsoft SQL Server

Microsoft SQL Server is a relational database management system developed by Microsoft. As a database server, it is a software product with the primary function of storing and retrieving data as requested by other software applications—which may run either on the same computer or on another computer across a network (including the Internet).

### Microsoft Windows Server

Microsoft Windows Server OS (operating system) is a series of enterprise-class server operating systems designed to share services with multiple users and provide extensive administrative control of data storage, applications and corporate networks.

### Minification

Minification is the process of removing all unnecessary characters from the source code of interpreted programming languages or markup languages without changing its functionality.

### Mitek

Mitek is a software company that specializes in digital identity verification and mobile capture built on artificial intelligence algorithms. The company's technology allows people to deposit checks via their mobile phones and open bank accounts from mobile devices. Additionally, the technology verifies people's identity with patented algorithms that capture, classify and authenticate photos of identity documents including passports, ID cards, and driver's licenses. The identity of the person holding the document is confirmed through a biometric facial comparison of the photo on the document to a selfie.

### MongoDB

MongoDB is a cross-platform document-oriented database program. Classified as a NoSQL database program, MongoDB uses JSON-like documents with optional schemas.

### Multi-tenancy

Multi-tenancy is a software architecture in which a single instance of software runs on a server and serves multiple tenants. Systems designed in such manner are "shared" (rather than "dedicated" or "isolated"). A tenant is a group of users who share a common access with specific privileges to the software instance. With a multi-tenant architecture, a software application is designed to provide every tenant a dedicated share of the instance - including its data, configuration, user management, tenant individual functionality and non-functional properties.

### My Term

My definition

### MySQL

MySQL is an open-source relational database management system (RDBMS). It's an Oracle-backed open source relational database management system (RDBMS) based on Structured Query Language (SQL). MySQL runs on virtually all platforms, including Linux, UNIX and Windows. Although it can be used in a wide range of applications, MySQL is most often associated with web applications and online publishing.

## N

### Non-deterministic test

A test is non-deterministic when it passes sometimes and fails sometimes, without any noticeable change in the code, tests, or environment. Such tests fail, then you re-run them and they pass. Test failures for such tests are seemingly random.

## O

### OAuth

OAuth (Open Authorization) is an open standard for access delegation, commonly used as a way for internet users to grant websites or applications access to their information on other websites but without giving them the passwords.

### Object (computer science)

In computer science, an object can be a variable, a data structure, a function, or a method, and as such, is a value in memory referenced by an identifier. In the class-based object-oriented programming paradigm, object refers to a particular instance of a class, where the object can be a combination of variables, functions, and data structures. In relational database management, an object can be a table or column, or an association between data and a database entity (such as relating a person's age to a specific person).

### Office of Foreign Asset Control

Office of Foreign Asset Control (OFAC) enforces economic and trade sanctions. Banks must perform an OFAC screen on customers opening an account.

### Omnichannel

Omnichannel is a service delivery model that integrates different interaction points for customers such as online, by phone or in store. Omnichannel Banking offers banking access across these three methods.

### Onboarding

The steps required to get a new customer integrated into a new program. These steps may vary business to business.

### Open Banking

Indicated the use of open APIs by banks to enable software developers to create applications using the bank’s data.

### Open source

Open source software is software with source code that anyone can inspect, modify, and enhance.

### Open Transaction

All transactions, when created byManager, are considered to be in Open status. From this status, a transaction can either proceed to the Started or Bounced statuses.

### Open UX

Open UX is the open API for development of financial customer journeys on the Temenos Journey Manager platform. Teams skilled in use of React, Angular or other Javascript frameworks will find this the fastest path to developing production class applications.

### OpenSAML

OpenSAML is a set of open source C++ & Java libraries used in support of the Shibboleth Project's implementation of the Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML).

### OpenShift

OpenShift is a family of containerization software products developed by Red Hat. Its flagship product is the OpenShift Container Platform — a hybrid cloud platform as a service built around Linux containers orchestrated and managed by Kubernetes on a foundation of Red Hat Enterprise Linux.

### Oracle Linux

Oracle Linux (OL, formerly known as Oracle Enterprise Linux) is a Linux distribution packaged and freely distributed by Oracle, available partially under the GNU General Public License since late 2006. It is compiled from Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) source code, replacing Red Hat branding with Oracle's. It is also used by Oracle Cloud and Oracle Engineered Systems such as Oracle Exadata and others.

### Oracle RDBMS

Oracle Database is a multi-model database management system produced and marketed by Oracle Corporation. It is a database commonly used for running online transaction processing (OLTP), data warehousing (DW) and mixed (OLTP & DW) database workloads.

### Origination

Origination is the process of setting up the approved customer (new or existing) with specific products and features, and get them completely configured in the core.

## P

### PaaS

Platform as a Service (PaaS) is a category of cloud computing services that provides a platform allowing customers to develop, run, and manage applications without the complexity of building and maintaining the infrastructure typically associated with developing and launching an app.

### Page Base Content

A web page's content as defined in the form space in Manager.

### Payee

A person or business to whom a check is written.

### Payment Card Industry Compliance

Payment Card Industry Compliance (PCI Compliance) is a set of security standards designed to protect card information during and after financial transactions.

### Payment Gateway

A service provider that authorizes card payments.

### PCI policy

PCI policy is a type of security policy that covers how an organization addresses the 12 requirements of the Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS). A PCI policy is required of all merchants and service providers who store, process or transmit credit card holder data.

### Pen Test

Penetration testing, also called pen testing or ethical hacking, is the practice of testing a computer system, network or web application to find security vulnerabilities that an attacker could exploit. Penetration testing can be automated

with software applications or performed manually. Either way, the process involves gathering information about the target before the test, identifying possible entry points, attempting to break in, either virtually or for real, and reporting back the findings.

### Personal Identification Number

Personal identification Number (PIN) is a number issued with your debit or credit card.

### Personally identifiable information

Personally identifiable information (PII) is any data that could potentially identify a specific individual. Any information that can be used to distinguish one person from another and can be used for de-anonymizing anonymous data can be considered PII.

### Personally Identifiable Information

Personally Identifiable Information (PII) is information about an individual that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual‘s identity, such as name, social security number, date and place of birth, mother‘s maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked to an individual.

### PGP

PGP (Pretty Good Privacy) is the technology for encrypting and authenticating files. It can help encrypt, decrypt, authenticate, and verity various file types including emails, files, directories, disk partitions, and more.

### PhantomJS

PhantomJS is a scripted, headless browser used for automating web page interaction. PhantomJS provides a JavaScript API enabling automated navigation, screenshots, user behavior and assertions making it a common tool used to run browser-based unit tests in a headless system like a continuous integration environment. PhantomJS is based on WebKit making it a similar browsing environment to Safari and Google Chrome (before Chrome's fork of WebKit evolved into Blink). It is open-source software released under the BSD License.

### PII

Personally Identifiable Information (PII) is information about an individual that can be used to distinguish or trace an individual's identity, such as name, social security number, date and place of birth, mother's maiden name, or biometric records; and any other information that is linked to an individual. In Europe, PII is known as personal data.

### POM XML

A Project Object Model or POM is the fundamental unit of work in Maven. It is an XML file that contains information about the project and configuration details used by Maven to build the project. It contains default values for most projects.

### Proxy

A proxy server is a server (a computer system or an application) that acts as an intermediary (a gateway) for requests from clients seeking resources from other servers. A client connects to the proxy server, requesting some service, such as a file, connection, web page, or other resource available from a different server and the proxy server evaluates the request as a way to simplify and control its complexity.

### Puppeteer

Puppeteer is a Node library which provides a high-level API to control headless Chrome or Chromium over the DevTools Protocol. It can also be configured to use full (non-headless) Chrome or Chromium.

## Q

### QR Code

QR Code (Quick Response Code) is a machine-readable code consisting of an array of black and white squares, typically used for storing URLs or other information for reading by the camera on a smartphone.

## R

### RAF

RAF is an RAF file is a digital photograph captured by select Fuji digital cameras, such as the high-end FinePix models. It contains an image in the uncompressed

RAW Fuji (RAF) format. RAF files may also include a .JPG version of the same image within the file for thumbnail preview purposes.

### ReactJS

ReactJS is a JavaScript library for building user interfaces.

### Recovery Point Objective

Recovery point objective (RPO) is the age of files that must be recovered from backup storage for normal operations to resume if a computer, system, or network goes down as a result of a hardware, program, or communications failure.

### Recovery Time Objective

Recovery Time Objective (RTO) is the targeted duration of time and a service level within which a business process must be restored after a disaster (or disruption) in order to avoid unacceptable consequences associated with a break in business continuity.

### Red Hat Enterprise Linux Server

is a distribution of the Linux operating system developed for the business market.

### Reference Number

A reference number is a unique identifier assigned to each transaction.

### Referer HTTP request

The Referer HTTP request header contains an absolute or partial address of the page that makes the request. The Referer header allows a server to identify a page where people are visiting it from. This data can be used for analytics, logging, optimized caching, and more.

### Regular Expression

A regular expression (regex) is a sequence of characters that define a search pattern. Usually such patterns are used by string-searching algorithms for "find" or "find and replace" operations on strings, or for input validation.

### REST

REST or RESTful API design (Representational State Transfer) is designed to take advantage of existing protocols. While REST can be used over nearly any

protocol, it usually takes advantage of HTTP when used for Web APIs.

### Routing Number

The numbers that appear at the bottom of a check to identify the financial institution.

### RSA

RSA is a public-key cryptosystem that is widely used for secure data transmission.

## S

### SaaS

Software as a service (SaaS) is a software licensing and delivery model in which software is licensed on a subscription basis and is centrally hosted.

### SalesForce

Salesforce is the customer relationship management (CRM) platform.

### SAML

Security Assertion Markup Language (SAML) is an open standard that allows identity providers (IdP) to pass authorization credentials to service providers (SP). SAML transactions use Extensible Markup Language (XML) for standardized communications between the identity provider and service providers. SAML is the link between the authentication of a user's identity and the authorization to use a service.

### Saved Transaction

Any transaction that has explicitly been Saved by the user. When a user resumes a Saved transaction, it can move to Completed status if the user submits the form. Or it can move to Abandoned status if the user abandons the application.

### SCCS

Source Code Control System (SCCS) is a version control system designed to track changes in source code and other text files during the development of a piece of software. This allows the user to retrieve any of the previous versions of the original source code and the changes which are stored.

### SDK

Software Development Kit (SDK) brings together a group of tools that enable the programming of mobile applications.

### SDLC

Software Development Life Cycle (SDLC) is a process used by the software industry to design, develop and test high quality softwares.

### Section

Applications built in Maestro or Composer are divided into sections. A section can be a page or modal page or modal dialogue.

### Security Manager

Security managers are the Journey Manager's components that are responsible for User Authentication, User Authorization, User Self-Registration, and Session Management. Security mangers are designed to handle various sets of users requiring access to different form spaces and can be associated with one or more form spaces. Users can be external or internal, and they can require access to form spaces or a combination of form spaces and modules in different environments. You can find security managers under Security > Security Managers.

### Selenium

The Selenium testing software tool is used to automate tests across browsers for web applications. It's used to ensure high-quality web applications — whether they are responsive, progressive, or regular. Selenium is an open-source tool.

### Semantic versioning

Semantic Versioning is a formal convention for specifying compatibility using a three-part version number: major version; minor version; and patch. The patch number is incremented for minor changes and bug fixes which do not change the software's application programming interface (API). The minor version is incremented for releases which add new, but backward-compatible, API features, and the major version is incremented for API changes which are not backward-compatible. For example, software which relies on version 2.15 of an API is compatible with version 2.2.3, but not necessarily with 3.2.4.

### SEP

System Event Publisher

### Service-Level Agreement

A service-level agreement (SLA) is a commitment between a service provider and a client. Particular aspects of the service – quality, availability, responsibilities – are agreed between the service provider and the service user.

### Session ID

Session ID is a unique number that a Web site's server assigns a specific user for the duration of that user's visit (session). The session ID can be stored as a cookie, form field, or URL (Uniform Resource Locator). Some Web servers generate session IDs by simply incrementing static numbers.

### Session management

Session management is the rule set that governs interactions between a web-based application and users. Browsers and websites use HTTP to communicate, and a web session is a series of HTTP requests and response transactions created by the same user. Since HTTP is a stateless protocol, where each request and response pair is independent of other web interactions, each command runs independently without knowing previous commands. In order to introduce the concept of a session, it is necessary to implement session management capabilities that link both the authentication and access control (or authorization) modules commonly available in web applications.

### SharePoint

SharePoint is a web-based collaborative platform that integrates with Microsoft Office.

### Single-page web application

A single-page application (SPA) is a web application or website that interacts with the user by dynamically rewriting the current web page with new data from the web server, instead of the default method of a web browser loading entire new pages.

### Single Channel

The service delivery model that limits customers to a single interaction point or pathway. Customers are restricted to just online, phone, or in store/branch access, for example.

### SLA

A service-level agreement (SLA) is a commitment between a service provider and a client. Particular aspects of the service – quality, availability, responsibilities – are agreed between the service provider and the service user.

### SmartForm

A SmartForm is a dynamic electronic form with capabilities beyond a traditional paper or PDF form, allowing electronic completion, dynamic sections, database calls and electronic submission.

### SMTP

SMTP (Simple Mail Transfer Protocol) is a TCP/IP protocol used in sending and receiving e-mail. However, since it is limited in its ability to queue messages at the receiving end, it is usually used with one of two other protocols, POP3 or IMAP, that let the user save messages in a server mailbox and download them periodically from the server. In other words, users typically use a program that uses SMTP for sending e-mail and either POP3 or IMAP for receiving e-mail. On Unix-based systems, sendmail is the most widely-used SMTP server for e-mail. A commercial package, Sendmail, includes a POP3 server. Microsoft Exchange includes an SMTP server and can also be set up to include POP3 support.

### SoE

Systems of Engagement (SoE) is the technology used by an organization to help facilitate and orchestrate the customer journey via more personalized, seamless interactions across the various touchpoints. These include social media channels, email marketing platforms, mobile apps, and content management systems.

### Software as a Service

Software as a Service (SaaS) is a software distribution model where logical support and data are stored in the servers of an IT company, and customers access the service online. This model is common in FinTech services because of scalability and security.

## SOQL

Salesforce Object Query Language (SOQL) is used to construct simple but powerful query strings in the queryString parameter in the query() call, in Apex statements, in Visualforce controllers and getter methods, or in the Schema Explorer of the Force.com IDE.

## SoR

System of Record (SOR) is an ISRS (information storage and retrieval system) that is the authoritative source for a particular data element in a system containing multiple sources of the same element. To ensure data integrity, there must be one -- and only one -- system of record for a given piece of information.

## SoW

A statement of work (SoW) is a document routinely employed in the field of project management. It defines project-specific activities, deliverables and timelines for a vendor providing services to the client.

## SSL

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and its successor, TLS (Transport Layer Security), are protocols for establishing authenticated and encrypted links between networked computers. Although the SSL protocol was deprecated with the release of TLS 1.0 in 1999, it is still common to refer to these related technologies as "SSL" or "SSL/TLS."

## SSO

Single sign-on (SSO) is a property of access control of multiple related, yet independent, software systems. With this property, a user logs in with a single ID and password to gain access to any of several related systems.

## Started Transaction

Started Transaction is any transaction where a user interacted with a form application by inputting some data. A started transaction is a progressive step towards completion. Started transactions and Bounced transactions are mutually exclusive. For instance, a started transaction can never become a bounced transaction and vice versa.

### Static Content Externalization

Static Content Externalization (SCE).

### Submission

A submission is an event when a form user clicks a submit button when the form is completed. A submission is another name for a transaction, so they are treated interchangeably in Manager

### SVG font

An SVG font is a new version of the OpenType format, with SVG standing for Scalable Vector Graphics. The SVG glyph format allows the characters to be displayed in multiple colors and different transparencies, and some may even be animated.

### SVN

Subversion (SVN) is a software versioning and revision control system.

## T

### Task

A task in Journey Manager consists of a form that needs to be filled in by a user.

### Task submission

A task corresponding to processing a submission.

### Thread

A thread of execution is the smallest sequence of programmed instructions that can be managed independently by a scheduler, which is typically a part of the operating system.

### TIG

Transact Integration Gateway

### TimeToCustomerValue

TTCV

### TIS

Top Image Systems (TIS) is a global innovator of on-premise and cloud-based applications that optimize content-driven business processes such as procure to pay operations, remittance processing, integrated receivables, customer response management and more.

### TLS

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a cryptographic protocol designed to provide communications security over a computer network.

### Token-signing certificate

Token signing certificates are standard X509 certificates that are used to securely sign all tokens that the federation server issues. Token decryption certificates are standard X509 certificates that are used to decrypt any incoming tokens. They are also published in federation metadata.

### Topic-based authoring

Topic-based authoring is a modular approach to content creation where content is structured around topics that can be mixed and reused in different contexts.

### Transact Application

A Journey Application is what the applicant or user interacts with to submit their application. It is a Maestro or Transact Composer form, possibly with some Transact Exchange components, as well as other configuration information and services code. Once the user submits the form application, it becomes a completed transaction in Manager.

### Transact Application Version

A Journey Application Version is a version of a form application as published by Manager.

### Transact Insights Field Name

Journey Analytics Field Name is another version of a form application field name configured in the Maestro Data tab to improve readability of the analytics data on Journey Analytics.

### Transact Integration Agent

Transact Integration Agent is a software appliance hosted inside the client organization's data center, which receives form submission deliveries and file attachments from the Journey Manager server.

### Transact Manager

Journey Manager is a server application, deployed in the cloud or on-premise, that hosts forms, controls interaction with customers, calls on specialized services like identity verification or risk analysis and exchanges data with back office systems of record.

### Transaction

A transaction is created when a user opens a form application.

### Transpiler

Ttranspiler is a source-to-source translator, source-to-source compiler, transcompiler, which is a type of translator that takes the source code of a program written in a programming language as its input and produces an equivalent source code in the same or a different programming language.

### Transport Layer Security

Transport Layer Security (TLS) is a protocol that provides privacy and data integrity between two communicating applications. It's the most widely deployed security protocol used today, and is used for Web browsers and other applications that require data to be securely exchanged over a network, such as file transfers, VPN connections, instant messaging and voice over IP.

### TTF font

TrueType (TTF) is an outline font standard developed by Apple in the late 1980s as a competitor to Adobe's Type 1fonts used in PostScript. It has become the most common format for fonts on the classic Mac OS, macOS, and Microsoft Windows operating systems.

### Two-factor authentication

Two-factor authentication (2FA), sometimes referred to as two-step verification or dual factor authentication, is a security process in which the user provides two different authentication factors to verify themselves to better protect both

the user's credentials and the resources the user can access. Two-factor authentication provides a higher level of assurance than authentication methods that depend on single-factor authentication (SFA), in which the user provides only one factor -- typically a password or passcode. Two-factor authentication methods rely on users providing a password as well as a second factor, usually either a security token or a biometric factor like a fingerprint or facial scan.

## U

### UAT

User acceptance testing (UAT) is the last phase of the software testing process. During UAT, actual software users test the software to make sure it can handle required tasks in real-world scenarios, according to specifications.

### Underbanked

People who have limited or no access to proper banking or services.

### Unicode

Unicode is an information technology standard for the consistent encoding, representation, and handling of text expressed in most of the world's writing systems.

### Unit Test

is a software development life cycle (SDLC) component in which a comprehensive testing procedure is individually applied to the smallest parts of a software program for fitness or desired operation. Unit Testing is a software testing method by which individual units of source code are tested to determine whether they are fit for use. For more information, see http://docs.groovy-lang.org/next/html/documentation/core-testing-guide.html.

### URI

URI is A Uniform Resource Identifier, which is a unique sequence of characters that identifies a logical or physical resource used by web technologies.

### USA PATRIOT Act

The purpose of the USA PATRIOT Act is to deter and punish terrorist acts in the United States and around the world and strengthen U.S. measures to prevent,

detect and prosecute international money laundering and financing of terrorism.

### User Agent

User agent is software (a software agent) that is acting on behalf of a user. One common use of the term refers to a web browser that retrieves, renders and facilitates end user interaction with Web content.

### User authentication

User authentication is the verification of an active human-to-machine transfer of credentials required for confirmation of a user's authenticity.

### User authorization

User authorization is interested in who the user is, and is used to determine what functions, actions, data, or other parts of an application the user has access to.

### UTC

Universal Time Coordinated. Prior to 1972, this time was called Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) but is now referred to as Coordinated Universal Time or Universal Time Coordinated (UTC). It is a coordinated time scale, maintained by the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures (BIPM). It is also known as "Z time" or "Zulu Time".

### UX

User experience (UX) design is the process of creating products that provide meaningful and relevant experiences to users. This involves the design of the entire process of acquiring and integrating the product, including aspects of branding, design, usability, and function.

### UXP

A user experience platform (UXP) is an integrated set of technologies used to provide interaction between a user and a set of applications, processes, content, services or other users. A UXP has several components, including portals, mashup tools, content management, search, rich Internet application (RIA) tools, analytics, collaboration, social and mobile tools. It may be delivered as a suite of products or as a single product.

## V

### Virtual Data Centre

Virtual Data Centre (VDC) is an automated and scalable Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS) cloud platform providing compute, network and storage.

### Virtual Machine

A virtual machine (VM) is a software program or operating system that not only exhibits the behavior of a separate computer, but is also capable of performing tasks such as running applications and programs like a separate computer. A virtual machine, usually known as a guest is created within another computing environment referred as a "host." Multiple virtual machines can exist within a single host at one time.

### Virtualization

Virtualization is the creation of a virtual resource such as a server, desktop, operating system, file, storage or network to manage workloads by radically transforming traditional computing to make it more scalable.

### Virus Scanning Engine

Virus Scanning Engine is Antivirus software (AV software), also known as anti-malware, which is a computer program used to prevent, detect, and remove malware.

### VO

Value Object (VO)

## W

### WAR

WAR file (Web Application Resource or Web application ARchive) is a file used to distribute a collection of JAR-files, JavaServer Pages, Java Servlets, Java classes, XML files, tag libraries, static web pages (HTML and related files) and other resources that together constitute a web application.

### White-label

White-label software is software that is purchased by a company from a service provider and re-branded as its own.

### Wireframe

A wireframe is a diagram or a set of diagrams that consists of simple lines and shapes representing the skeleton of a website or an application's user interface (UI) and core functionality. In Maestro, it's the central part of the Design mode interface.

### WOFF font

The Web Open Font Format (WOFF) is a font format for use in web pages. WOFF files are OpenType or TrueType fonts, with format-specific compression applied and additional XML metadata added.

### WOFF2 font

WOFF2 font is a web font file created in the WOFF (Web Open Font Format) 2.0 format, an open format used to deliver webpage fonts on the fly. It is saved as a compressed container that supports TrueType (. TTF) and OpenType (. OTF) fonts. WOFF2 files also support font licensing metadata.

### Workflow

A workflow is progression of steps (tasks, events, interactions) that comprise a work process, involve two or more persons, and create or add value to the organization's activities. In a sequential workflow, each step is dependent on occurrence of the previous step; in a parallel workflow, two or more steps can occur concurrently.

### Workspaces REST API

The Workspaces REST API provides the integration with Journey Manager that Journey Workspaces needs.

### WYSIWYG

WYSIWYG, an acronym for What You See Is What You Get, is a system in which editing software allows content to be edited in a form that resembles its appearance when printed or displayed as a finished product, such as a printed document, web page, or slide presentation.

## X

### X-Frame-Options

X-Frame-Options HTTP response header can be used to indicate whether or not a browser should be allowed to render a page in a <frame>, <iframe>, <embed> or <object> . Sites can use this to avoid clickjacking attacks, by ensuring that their content is not embedded into other sites.

### XDP

XML Data Package (XDP) format is a file format developed by Adobe Systems for packaging PDF data into XML files; contains the entire PDF document contents including form and template data; may also include character-encoded sections for binary content.

### XLS

is a file extension for a spreadsheet file format created by Microsoft for use with Microsoft Excel. XLS stands for eXceL Spreadsheet. Microsoft Excel files use a proprietary format for storing Microsoft Excel documents.

### XML

XML (Extensible Markup Language) is a markup language that defines a set of rules for encoding documents in a format that is both human-readable and machine-readable.

### XPath

XPath (XML Path Language) is a query language for selecting nodes from an XML document. In addition, XPath may be used to compute values (e.g., strings, numbers, or Boolean values) from the content of an XML document. XPath was defined by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C).

### XQuery

XQuery is a specification for a query language that allows a user or programmer to extract information from an Extensible Markup Language (XML) file or any collection of data that can be XML-like.

## XSD

XSD (XML Schema Definition) is a World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) recommendation that specifies how to formally describe the elements in an Extensible Markup Language (XML) document.

## XSS

Cross-site scripting (XSS) is a type of security vulnerability that can be found in some web applications. XSS attacks enable attackers to inject client-side scripts into web pages viewed by other users. A cross-site scripting vulnerability may be used by attackers to bypass access controls such as the same-origin policy.